



JAVATM

Programming

Tenth Edition

A complex network graph composed of numerous glowing orange and yellow circular nodes connected by thin blue lines, set against a dark blue background.

Joyce Farrell

Java Programming

Tenth Edition

Joyce Farrell



Australia • Brazil • Canada • Mexico • Singapore • United Kingdom • United States

This is an electronic version of the print textbook. Due to electronic rights restrictions, some third party content may be suppressed. Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. The publisher reserves the right to remove content from this title at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it. For valuable information on pricing, previous editions, changes to current editions, and alternate formats, please visit www.cengage.com/highered to search by ISBN#, author, title, or keyword for materials in your areas of interest.

Important Notice: Media content referenced within the product description or the product text may not be available in the eBook version.

Java™ Programming, Tenth Edition**Joyce Farrell**

SVP, Higher Education Product Management: Erin Joyner

VP, Product Management, Learning Experiences: Thais Alencar

Product Director: Mark Santee

Associate Product Manager: Tran Pham

Product Assistant: Ethan Wheel

Learning Designer: Mary Convertino

Senior Content Manager: Maria Garguilo

Associate Digital Delivery Quality Partner: David O'Connor

Technical Editor: John Freitas

Developmental Editor: Dan Seiter

VP, Product Marketing: Jason Sakos

Director, Product Marketing: April Danaë

Portfolio Marketing Manager: Mackenzie Paine

IP Analyst: Ann Hoffman

IP Project Manager: Integra Software Services

Production Service: Straive

Senior Designer: Erin Griffin

Cover Image Source: iStock.com/gremlin

© 2023, © 2019, © 2016 Cengage Learning, Inc. WCN: 02-300

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. No part of this work covered by the copyright herein may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, except as permitted by U.S. copyright law, without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.

Unless otherwise noted, all content is Copyright © Cengage Learning, Inc.

Unless otherwise noted, all screenshots are courtesy of Microsoft Corporation.

Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.

The names of all products mentioned herein are used for identification purposes only and may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners. Cengage Learning disclaims any affiliation, association, connection with, sponsorship, or endorsement by such owners.

For product information and technology assistance, contact us at
Cengage Customer & Sales Support, 1-800-354-9706
or support.cengage.com.

For permission to use material from this text or product, submit all requests online at www.copyright.com.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2021925780

ISBN: 978-0-357-67342-3

Cengage
200 Pier 4 Boulevard
Boston, MA 02210
USA

Cengage is a leading provider of customized learning solutions with employees residing in nearly 40 different countries and sales in more than 125 countries around the world. Find your local representative at www.cengage.com.

To learn more about Cengage platforms and services, register or access your online learning solution, or purchase materials for your course, visit www.cengage.com.

Notice to the Reader

Publisher does not warrant or guarantee any of the products described herein or perform any independent analysis in connection with any of the product information contained herein. Publisher does not assume, and expressly disclaims, any obligation to obtain and include information other than that provided to it by the manufacturer. The reader is expressly warned to consider and adopt all safety precautions that might be indicated by the activities described herein and to avoid all potential hazards. By following the instructions contained herein, the reader willingly assumes all risks in connection with such instructions. The publisher makes no representations or warranties of any kind, including but not limited to, the warranties of fitness for particular purpose or merchantability, nor are any such representations implied with respect to the material set forth herein, and the publisher takes no responsibility with respect to such material. The publisher shall not be liable for any special, consequential, or exemplary damages resulting, in whole or part, from the readers' use of, or reliance upon, this material.

Printed in the United States of America

Print Number: 01 Print Year: 2022

BRIEF CONTENTS

PREFACE	XI
CHAPTER 1 Creating Java Programs	1
CHAPTER 2 Using Data.....	39
CHAPTER 3 Using Methods	83
CHAPTER 4 Using Classes and Objects	115
CHAPTER 5 Making Decisions	161
CHAPTER 6 Looping.....	201
CHAPTER 7 Characters, Strings, and the StringBuilder	237
CHAPTER 8 Arrays	267
CHAPTER 9 Inheritance and Interfaces.....	329
CHAPTER 10 Exception Handling.....	393
CHAPTER 11 File Input and Output.....	441
CHAPTER 12 Recursion.....	487
CHAPTER 13 Collections and Generics	511
CHAPTER 14 Introduction to Swing Components	545
APPENDIX A Working with the Java Platform	587
APPENDIX B Data Representation	591
APPENDIX C Formatting Output	595
APPENDIX D Generating Random Numbers	603
APPENDIX E Javadoc	607
APPENDIX F Using JavaFX and Scene Builder	613
GLOSSARY	625
INDEX	641

CONTENTS

PREFACE	XI	Key Terms	32
		Review Questions	33
		Programming Exercises	34
		Debugging Exercises	36
		Game Zone	36
		Case Problems	37
<hr/>			
CHAPTER 1			
CREATING JAVA PROGRAMS	1		
1.1 Learning Programming Terminology	1		
Procedural Programming	4		
Object-Oriented Programming	5		
Understanding Classes, Objects, and Encapsulation	6		
Understanding Inheritance and Polymorphism	7		
1.3 Features of the Java Programming Language	8		
1.4 Analyzing a Java Application That Produces Console Output	10		
Understanding the Statement That Produces the Output	10		
Understanding the <code>First</code> Class	12		
Understanding the <code>main()</code> Method	14		
Indent Style	15		
Saving a Java Class	16		
1.5 Compiling a Java Class and Correcting Syntax Errors			
Compiling a Java Class	18		
Correcting Syntax Errors	19		
1.6 Running a Java Application and Correcting Logic Errors	23		
Running a Java Application	23		
Modifying a Compiled Java Class	23		
Correcting Logic Errors	24		
1.7 Adding Comments to a Java Class	25		
1.8 Creating a Java Application That Produces GUI Output	27		
1.9 Finding Help	29		
Don't Do It	30		
Summary	31		
<hr/>			
CHAPTER 2			
USING DATA		39	
2.1 Declaring and Using Constants and Variables		39	
Declaring Variables		40	
Declaring Named Constants		42	
The Scope of Variables and Constants		43	
Concatenating Strings to Variables and Constants		43	
Pitfall: Forgetting That a Variable Holds One Value at a Time		45	
2.2 Learning About Integer Data Types		47	
2.3 Using the <code>boolean</code> Data Type		51	
2.4 Learning About Floating-Point Data Types		52	
2.5 Using the <code>char</code> Data Type		53	
2.6 Using the <code>Scanner</code> Class to Accept Keyboard Input		57	
Pitfall: Using <code>nextLine()</code> Following One of the Other <code>Scanner</code> Input Methods		59	
2.7 Using the <code>JOptionPane</code> Class to Accept GUI Input		64	
Using Input Dialog Boxes		64	
Using Confirm Dialog Boxes		66	
2.8 Performing Arithmetic Using Variables and Constants		68	
Associativity and Precedence		69	
Writing Arithmetic Statements Efficiently		69	

Pitfall: Not Understanding Imprecision in Floating-Point Numbers	70	Game Zone	113
		Case Problems	114
2.9 Understanding Type Conversion	72	CHAPTER 4	
Automatic Type Conversion	73	USING CLASSES AND OBJECTS 115	
Explicit Type Conversion	73		
Don't Do It	76	4.1 Learning About Classes and Objects	115
Summary	77		
Key Terms	77	4.2 Creating a Class	117
Review Questions	78		
Programming Exercises	80	4.3 Creating Instance Methods in a Class	119
Debugging Exercises	81		
Game Zone	81	4.4 Declaring Objects and Using Their Methods	124
Case Problems	82		
CHAPTER 3			
USING METHODS	83	4.5 Understanding That Classes Are Data Types	128
3.1 Understanding Method Calls and Placement	83	4.6 Creating and Using Constructors	131
		Creating Constructors with Parameters	132
3.2 Understanding Method Construction	86	4.7 Learning About the <code>this</code> Reference	134
Access Specifiers	86	Using the <code>this</code> Reference to Make Overloaded Constructors More Efficient	137
The <code>static</code> Modifier	87		
Return Type	87	4.8 Using <code>static</code> Fields	139
Method Name	87	Using Constant Fields	140
Parentheses	88		
3.3 Adding Parameters to Methods	91	4.9 Using Imported, Prewritten Constants and Methods	143
Creating a Method That Receives a Single Parameter	91	The <code>Math</code> Class	144
Creating a Method That Requires Multiple Parameters	94	Importing Classes That Are Not Imported Automatically	145
		Using the <code>LocalDate</code> Class	146
3.4 Creating Methods That Return Values	95	4.10 Understanding Composition and Nested Classes	150
		Composition	150
3.5 Understanding Blocks and Scope	99	Nested Classes	151
3.6 Overloading a Method	104		
3.7 Learning about Ambiguity	107	Don't Do It	153
		Summary	153
Don't Do It	108	Key Terms	154
Summary	108	Review Questions	154
Key Terms	109	Programming Exercises	156
Review Questions	109	Debugging Exercises	158
Programming Exercises	111	Game Zone	158
Debugging Exercises	113	Case Problems	159

CHAPTER 5

MAKING DECISIONS	161
5.1 Planning Decision-Making Logic	161
5.2 The if and if...else Statements	163
The if Statement	163
Pitfall: Misplacing a Semicolon in an if Statement	164
Pitfall: Using the Assignment Operator Instead of the Equivalency Operator	165
Pitfall: Attempting to Compare Objects Using the Relational Operators	165
The if...else Statement	166
5.3 Using Multiple Statements in if and if...else Clauses	168
5.4 Nesting if and if...else Statements	172
5.5 Using Logical AND and OR Operators	174
The AND Operator	174
The OR Operator	175
Short-Circuit Evaluation	175
5.6 Making Accurate and Efficient Decisions	178
Making Accurate Range Checks	178
Making Efficient Range Checks	180
Using && and Appropriately	180
5.7 Using switch	181
Using the switch Expression	183
5.8 Using the Conditional and NOT Operators	186
Using the NOT Operator	187
5.9 Understanding Operator Precedence	187
5.10 Making Constructors More Efficient by Using Decisions in Other Methods	189
Don't Do It	193
Summary	193
Key Terms	194
Review Questions	194
Programming Exercises	197
Debugging Exercises	198
Game Zone	199
Case Problems	200

CHAPTER 6

LOOPING	201	
6.1 Learning About the Loop Structure	201	
6.2 Creating while Loops	202	
Writing a Definite while Loop	202	
Pitfall: Failing to Alter the Loop Control Variable Within the Loop Body	204	
Pitfall: Unintentionally Creating a Loop with an Empty Body	204	
Altering a Definite Loop's Control Variable	206	
Writing an Indefinite while Loop	206	
Validating Data	208	
6.3 Using Shortcut Arithmetic Operators	210	
6.4 Creating a for Loop	214	
Variations in for Loops	215	
6.5 Learning How and When to Use a do...while Loop	217	
6.6 Learning About Nested Loops	220	
6.7 Improving Loop Performance	223	
Avoiding Unnecessary Operations	223	
Considering the Order of Evaluation of Short-Circuit Operators	224	
Comparing to Zero	224	
Employing Loop Fusion	226	
A Final Note on Improving Loop Performance	226	
186	Don't Do It	228
187	Summary	228
187	Key Terms	229
187	Review Questions	229
187	Programming Exercises	232
187	Debugging Exercises	233
189	Game Zone	234
189	Case Problems	235

CHAPTER 7

CHARACTERS, STRINGS, AND THE StringBuilder	237
7.1 Understanding String Data Problems	237
7.2 Using Character Class Methods	238

7.3 Declaring and Comparing String Objects	241	8.8 Using Two-Dimensional and Other Multidimensional Arrays	300
Comparing String Values	241	Passing a Two-Dimensional Array to a Method	302
Empty and null Strings	245	Using the length Field with a Two-Dimensional Array	303
7.4 Using a Variety of String Methods	246	Understanding Jagged Arrays	304
Converting String Objects to Numbers	249	Using Other Multidimensional Arrays	304
7.5 Learning About the <code>StringBuilder</code> and <code>StringBuffer</code> Classes	253	8.9 Using the <code>Arrays</code> Class	307
Don't Do It	257	8.10 Creating Enumerations	311
Summary	258	Don't Do It	316
Key Terms	258	Summary	317
Review Questions	258	Key Terms	318
Programming Exercises	260	Review Questions	318
Debugging Exercises	262	Programming Exercises	320
Game Zone	263	Debugging Exercises	323
Case Problems	264	Game Zone	323
		Case Problems	327

CHAPTER 8

ARRAYS	267
8.1 Declaring an Array	267
8.2 Initializing an Array	271
8.3 Using Variable Subscripts with an Array	273
Using the Enhanced <code>for</code> Loop	275
Using Part of an Array	275
8.4 Declaring and Using Arrays of Objects	277
Using the Enhanced <code>for</code> Loop with Objects	279
Manipulating Arrays of Strings	279
8.5 Searching an Array and Using Parallel Arrays	284
Using Parallel Arrays	284
Searching an Array for a Range Match	286
8.6 Passing Arrays to and Returning Arrays from Methods	289
Returning an Array from a Method	291
8.7 Sorting Array Elements	292
Using the Bubble Sort Algorithm	293
Improving Bubble Sort Efficiency	295
Sorting Arrays of Objects	295
Using the Insertion Sort Algorithm	296

CHAPTER 9

INHERITANCE AND INTERFACES	329
9.1 Learning About the Concept of Inheritance	329
Inheritance Terminology	331
9.2 Extending Classes	332
9.3 Overriding Superclass Methods	336
Using the <code>@Override</code> Annotation	337
9.4 Calling Constructors During Inheritance	339
Using Superclass Constructors That Require Arguments	340
9.5 Accessing Superclass Methods	344
Comparing <code>this</code> and <code>super</code>	345
9.6 Employing Information Hiding	346
9.7 Methods You Cannot Override	348
A Subclass Cannot Override <code>static</code> Methods in Its Superclass	348
A Subclass Cannot Override <code>final</code> Methods in Its Superclass	350
A Subclass Cannot Override Methods in a <code>final</code> Superclass	351
9.8 Creating and Using Abstract Classes	352

9.9 Using Dynamic Method Binding	359	10.7 Tracing Exceptions Through the Call Stack	415
Using a Superclass as a Method Parameter Type	360		
9.10 Creating Arrays of Subclass Objects	361	10.8 Creating Your Own Exception Classes	419
9.11 Using the <code>Object</code> Class and Its Methods	364	10.9 Using Assertions	421
Using the <code>toString()</code> Method	364	10.10 Displaying the Virtual Keyboard	430
Using the <code>equals()</code> Method	366		
Overloading <code>equals()</code>	367	Don't Do It	433
Overriding <code>equals()</code>	369	Summary	434
9.12 Creating and Using Interfaces	371	Key Terms	434
Creating Interfaces to Store Related Constants	374	Review Questions	435
9.13 Using <code>records</code>, Anonymous Inner Classes, and Lambda Expressions	377	Programming Exercises	437
Using <code>records</code>	377	Debugging Exercises	439
Using Anonymous Inner Classes	379	Game Zone	439
Using Lambda Expressions	380	Case Problems	440
Don't Do It	381		
Summary	381		
Key Terms	383		
Review Questions	383		
Programming Exercises	385		
Debugging Exercises	389		
Game Zone	390		
Case Problems	391		
CHAPTER 10			
EXCEPTION HANDLING	393	FILE INPUT AND OUTPUT	441
10.1 Learning About Exceptions	393	11.1 Understanding Computer Files	441
10.2 Trying Code and Catching Exceptions	397	11.2 Using the <code>Path</code> and <code>Files</code> Classes	443
Using a <code>try</code> Block to Make Programs "Foolproof"	400	Creating a Path	443
Declaring and Initializing Variables in <code>try...catch</code> Blocks	402	Retrieving Information About a Path	444
		Converting a Relative Path to an Absolute One	445
10.3 Throwing and Catching Multiple Exceptions	404	Checking File Accessibility	446
10.4 Using the <code>finally</code> Block	408	Deleting a Path	447
10.5 Understanding the Advantages of Exception Handling	410	Determining File Attributes	448
10.6 Specifying the Exceptions That a Method Can Throw	412	11.3 File Organization, Streams, and Buffers	450
		11.4 Using Java's IO Classes	452
		Writing to a File	454
		Reading from a File	454
		11.5 Creating and Using Sequential Data Files	457
		11.6 Learning About Random Access Files	461
		11.7 Writing Records to a Random Access Data File	463
		11.8 Reading Records from a Random Access Data File	468
		Accessing a Random Access File Sequentially	468
		Accessing a Random Access File Randomly	470

Don't Do It	479	13.4 Using the <code>LinkedList</code> Class	524
Summary	479	13.5 Using Iterators	528
Key Terms	480	13.6 Creating Generic Classes	530
Review Questions	480	13.7 Creating Generic Methods	532
Programming Exercises	482	Creating a Generic Method with More than One Type Parameter	533
Debugging Exercises	484		
Game Zone	484		
Case Problems	485		
CHAPTER 12			
RECURSION	487		
12.1 Understanding Recursion	487		
12.2 Using Recursion to Solve Mathematical Problems	489		
Computing Sums	490		
Computing Factorials	491		
12.3 Using Recursion to Manipulate Strings	495		
Using Recursion to Separate a Phrase into Words	495		
Using Recursion to Reverse the Characters in a String	496		
12.4 Using Recursion to Create Visual Patterns	499		
12.5 Recursion's Relationship to Iterative Programming	500		
Don't Do It	503		
Summary	503		
Key Terms	504		
Review Questions	504		
Programming Exercises	506		
Debugging Exercises	508		
Game Zone	509		
Case Problems	510		
CHAPTER 13			
COLLECTIONS AND GENERICS	511		
13.1 Understanding the <code>Collection</code> Interface	511		
13.2 Understanding the <code>List</code> Interface	513		
13.3 Using the <code>ArrayList</code> Class	514		
Don't Do It	537		
Summary	538		
Key Terms	538		
Review Questions	539		
Programming Exercises	541		
Debugging Exercises	542		
Game Zone	542		
Case Problems	543		
CHAPTER 14			
INTRODUCTION TO Swing COMPONENTS	545		
14.1 Understanding Swing Components	545		
14.2 Using the <code>JFrame</code> Class	547		
Customizing a <code>JFrame</code> 's Appearance	549		
14.3 Using the <code>JLabel</code> Class	552		
Changing a <code>JLabel</code> 's Font	553		
14.4 Using a Layout Manager	555		
14.5 Extending the <code>JFrame</code> Class	557		
14.6 Adding <code>JTextFields</code> and <code>JButtons</code> to a <code>JFrame</code>	559		
Adding <code>JTextFields</code> to a <code>JFrame</code>	559		
Adding <code>JButtons</code> to a <code>JFrame</code>	560		
14.7 Learning About Event-Driven Programming	563		
Preparing Your Class to Accept Event Messages	564		
Telling Your Class to Expect Events to Happen	564		
Telling Your Class How to Respond to Events	564		
Writing an Event-Driven Program	565		
Using Multiple Event Sources	566		
Using the <code>setEnabled()</code> Method	567		
14.8 Understanding Swing Event Listeners	569		

14.9 Using the JCheckBox, ButtonGroup, and JComboBox Classes	572	APPENDIX C
The JCheckBox Class	572	FORMATTING OUTPUT
The ButtonGroup Class	574	595
The JComboBox Class	575	<hr/>
Don't Do It	580	APPENDIX D
Summary	581	GENERATING RANDOM NUMBERS
Key Terms	581	603
Review Questions	582	<hr/>
Programming Exercises	584	APPENDIX E
Debugging Exercises	585	JAVADOC
Game Zone	585	607
Case Problems	586	<hr/>
APPENDIX A		APPENDIX F
WORKING WITH THE JAVA PLATFORM	587	USING JAVAFX AND SCENE BUILDER
APPENDIX B		613
DATA REPRESENTATION	591	GLOSSARY
		625
		INDEX
		641

Java Programming, Tenth Edition provides the beginning programmer with a guide to developing applications using the Java programming language. Java is popular among professional programmers because it is object-oriented, making complex problems easier to solve than in some other languages. Java is used for desktop computing, mobile computing, game development, Web development, and numerical computing.

This course assumes that you have little or no programming experience. It provides a solid background in good object-oriented programming techniques and introduces terminology using clear, familiar language. The programming examples are business examples; they do not assume a mathematical background beyond high school business math. In addition, the examples illustrate only one or two major points; they do not contain so many features that you become lost following irrelevant and extraneous details. Complete, working programs appear frequently in each chapter; these examples help students make the transition from the theoretical to the practical. The code presented in each chapter also can be downloaded from the Cengage website, so students easily can run the programs and experiment with changes to them.

The student using *Java Programming, Tenth Edition* builds applications from the bottom up rather than starting with existing objects. This facilitates a deeper understanding of the concepts used in object-oriented programming and engenders appreciation for the existing objects students use as their knowledge of the language advances. When students complete this course, they will know how to modify and create simple Java programs, and they will have the tools to create more complex examples. They also will have a fundamental knowledge of object-oriented programming, which will serve them well in advanced Java courses or in studying other object-oriented languages such as C++, C#, and Visual Basic.

Organization and Coverage

Java Programming, Tenth Edition presents Java programming concepts, enforcing good style, logical thinking, and the object-oriented paradigm. Objects are covered right from the beginning, earlier than in many other Java courses. You create your first Java program in Chapter 1. Chapters 2, 3, and 4 increase your understanding about how data, classes, objects, and methods interact in an object-oriented environment.

Chapters 5 and 6 explore input and repetition structures, which are the backbone of programming logic and essential to creating useful programs in any language. You learn the special considerations of string and array manipulation in Chapters 7 and 8.

Chapters 9 and 10 thoroughly cover inheritance, interfaces, and exception handling. Inheritance is the object-oriented concept that allows you to develop new objects quickly by adapting the features of existing objects, interfaces define common methods that must be implemented in all classes that use them, and exception handling is the object-oriented approach to handling errors. All of these are important concepts in object-oriented design. Chapter 11 provides information about handling files so you can store and retrieve program output.

Chapter 12 explains recursion, and Chapter 13 covers Java collections and generics. Both are important programming concepts, and Java provides excellent ways to implement and learn about them. Chapter 14 introduces GUI Swing components, which are used to create visually pleasing, user-friendly, interactive applications.

New in This Edition

The following features are new for the Tenth Edition:

- › **Java:** All programs have been tested using Java 16.
- › **Java help:** Instructions on searching for Java help have been updated to avoid using specific URLs because new Java versions are now being released twice a year.
- › **Text blocks:** Chapter 2 introduces text blocks—a new feature since Java 13.
- › **Methods:** Methods are covered thoroughly in Chapter 3, including topics such as overloading methods and avoiding ambiguity. In previous editions, the material was split between chapters.
- › **Classes and objects:** Classes and objects are covered thoroughly in Chapter 4. In previous editions, the material was split between chapters.
- › **The switch expression:** Chapter 5 includes the switch expression, which became a new feature in Java 14.
- › **Arrays:** Chapter 8 covers beginning and advanced array concepts. In previous editions, this content was split between chapters.
- › **Inheritance and interfaces:** Chapter 9 covers inheritance and interfaces. In previous editions, this content was split between chapters.
- › **The record keyword:** Chapter 9 also introduces the record keyword, which allows simple classes to be developed more quickly because a constructor and methods to get and set fields are created automatically based on field definitions.
- › **Recursion:** Chapter 12 is a new chapter on recursion. The chapter presents techniques to use to solve mathematical problems, manipulate strings, and create visual patterns using recursion.
- › **Collections and generics:** Chapter 13 is a new chapter on collections and generics. The chapter covers the Collection and List interfaces, the ArrayList and LinkedList classes, Iterators, and generic classes and methods.

Additionally, *Java Programming, Tenth Edition* includes the following features:

- › **Objectives:** Each chapter begins with a list of objectives so you know the topics that will be presented in the chapter. In addition to providing a quick reference to topics covered, this feature provides a useful study aid.
- › **You Do It:** In each chapter, step-by-step exercises help students create multiple working programs that emphasize the logic a programmer uses in choosing statements to include. These sections provide a means for students to achieve success on their own—even those in online or distance learning classes.
- › **Notes:** These highlighted tips provide additional information—for example, an alternative method of performing a procedure, another term for a concept, background information about a technique, or a common error to avoid.
- › **Emphasis on student research:** The student frequently is advised to use the Web to investigate Java classes, methods, and techniques. Computer languages evolve, and programming professionals must understand how to find the latest language improvements.
- › **Figures:** Each chapter contains many figures. Code figures are most frequently 25 lines or fewer, illustrating one concept at a time. Frequent screenshots show exactly how program output appears. Callouts appear where needed to emphasize a point.
- › **Color:** The code figures in each chapter contain all Java keywords in blue. This helps students identify keywords more easily, distinguishing them from programmer-selected names.
- › **Files:** More than 200 student files can be downloaded from the Cengage website. Most files contain the code presented in the figures in each chapter; students can run the code for themselves, view the output, and make

changes to the code to observe the effects. Other files include debugging exercises that help students improve their programming skills.

- › **Two Truths & a Lie:** A short quiz reviews almost every chapter section, with answers provided. This quiz contains three statements based on the preceding section of text—two statements are true, and one is false. Over the years, students have requested answers to problems, but we have hesitated to distribute them in case instructors want to use problems as assignments or test questions. These true-false quizzes provide students with immediate feedback as they read, without “giving away” answers to the multiple-choice questions and programming exercises.
- › **Don’t Do It:** This section at the end of each chapter summarizes common mistakes and pitfalls that plague new programmers while learning the current topic.
- › **Summary:** Following each chapter is a summary that recaps the programming concepts and techniques covered in the chapter. This feature provides a concise means for students to check their understanding of the main points in each chapter.
- › **Key Terms:** Each chapter includes a list of newly introduced vocabulary, shown in alphabetical order. The list of key terms provides a short review of the major concepts in the chapter.
- › **Review Questions:** Each chapter includes 20 multiple-choice questions that serve as a review of chapter topics.
- › **Programming Exercises:** Multiple programming exercises are included with each chapter. These challenge students to create complete Java programs that solve real-world problems.
- › **Debugging Exercises:** Four debugging exercises are included with each chapter. These are programs that contain logic or syntax errors that the student must correct. Besides providing practice in deciphering error messages and thinking about correct logic, these exercises provide examples of complete and useful Java programs after the errors are repaired.
- › **Game Zone:** Each chapter provides one or more exercises in which students can create interactive games using the programming techniques learned up to that point; 50 game programs are suggested in the course. The games are fun to create and play; writing them motivates students to master the necessary programming techniques. Students might exchange completed game programs with each other, suggesting improvements and discovering alternate ways to accomplish tasks.
- › **Cases:** Each chapter contains two running case problems. These cases represent projects that continue to grow throughout a semester using concepts learned in each new chapter. Two cases allow instructors to assign different cases in alternate semesters or to divide students in a class into two case teams.
- › **Glossary:** A glossary contains definitions for all key terms in the course.
- › **Appendices:** This edition includes useful appendices on working with the Java platform, data representation, formatting output, generating random numbers, creating Javadoc comments, and JavaFX.
- › **Quality:** Every program example, exercise, and game solution was tested by the author and then tested again by a quality assurance team.

MindTap Instructor Resources

MindTap activities for *Java Programming, Tenth Edition* are designed to help students master the skills they need in today’s workforce. Research shows employers need critical thinkers, troubleshooters, and creative problem-solvers to stay relevant in our fast-paced, technology-driven world. MindTap helps you achieve this with assignments and activities that provide hands-on practice and real-life relevance. Students are guided through assignments that help them master basic knowledge and understanding before moving on to more challenging problems.

All MindTap activities and assignments are tied to defined unit learning objectives. MindTap provides the analytics and reporting so you can easily see where the class stands in terms of progress, engagement, and completion rates. Use

the content and learning path as is or pick and choose how our materials will wrap around yours. You control what the students see and when they see it. Learn more at <http://www.cengage.com/mindtap/>.

In addition to the readings, the *Java Programming, Tenth Edition* MindTap includes the following:

- › **Gradeable assessments and activities:** All assessments and activities from the readings will be available as gradeable assignments within MindTap, including Review Questions, Game Zone, Case Problems, and Two Truths & a Lie.
- › **Videos:** Each unit is accompanied by videos that help to explain important unit concepts and provide demos on how students can apply those concepts.
- › **Coding Snippets:** These short, ungraded coding activities are embedded in the MindTap Reader and provide students an opportunity to practice new programming concepts “in the moment.” The coding Snippets help transition the students from conceptual understanding to application of Java code.
- › **Coding labs:** These assignments provide real-world application and encourage students to practice new coding skills in a complete online IDE. Guided feedback provides personalized and immediate feedback to students as they proceed through their coding assignments so that they can understand and correct errors in their code.
- › **Interactive study aids:** Flashcards and PowerPoint lectures help users review main concepts from the units.

Instructor and Student Resources

Additional instructor and student resources for this product are available online. Instructor assets include an Instructor’s Manual, Educator’s Guide, PowerPoint® slides, Solution and Answer Guide, solutions, and a test bank powered by Cognero®. Student assets include data files. Sign up or sign in at www.cengage.com to search for and access this product and its online resources.

- › **Instructor’s Manual:** The Instructor’s Manual includes additional instructional material to assist in class preparation, including sections such as Chapter Objectives, Complete List of Chapter Activities and Assessments, Key Terms, What’s New In This Chapter, Chapter Outline, Discussion Questions, Suggested Usage for Lab Activities, Additional Activities and Assignments, and Additional Resources. A sample syllabus also is available.
- › **PowerPoint presentations:** The PowerPoint slides can be used to guide classroom presentations, to make available to students for chapter review, or to print as classroom handouts.
- › **Solution and Answer Guide:** Solutions to all end-of-chapter assignments are provided along with feedback.
- › **Solutions:** Solutions to all programming exercises are available. If an input file is needed to run a programming exercise, it is included with the solution file.
- › **Test bank:** Cengage Testing Powered by Cognero is a flexible, online system that allows you to:
 - Author, edit, and manage test bank content from multiple Cengage solutions.
 - Create multiple test versions in an instant.
 - Deliver tests from your LMS, your classroom, or wherever you want.
- › **Educator’s Guide:** The Educator’s Guide contains a detailed outline of the corresponding MindTap course.
- › **Transition Guide:** The Transition Guide outlines information on what has changed from the Ninth Edition.
- › **Data files:** Data files necessary to complete some of the steps and projects in the course are available. The Data Files folder includes Java files that are provided for every program that appears in a figure in the text.

About the Author

Joyce Farrell has taught computer programming at McHenry County College, Crystal Lake, Illinois; the University of Wisconsin, Stevens Point, Wisconsin; and Harper College, Palatine, Illinois. Besides Java, she has written books on programming logic and design, C#, and C++ for Cengage.

Acknowledgments

I would like to thank all of the people who helped to make this project a reality, including Tran Pham, Associate Product Manager; Mary Convertino, Learning Designer; Maria Garguilo, Senior Content Manager; Dan Seiter, Developmental Editor, and John Freitas, Quality Assurance Tester. I am lucky to work with these professionals who are dedicated to producing high-quality instructional materials.

I am also grateful to the reviewers who provided comments and encouragement during this course's development, including Dr. Ross Foulz, Coastal Carolina University; and Dr. Carl M. Rebman, Jr., University of San Diego. Also, thank you to Charles W. Lively III, Ph.D. – Academic Faculty, Georgia Institute of Technology, who provided the appendix on JavaFX.

Thanks, too, to my husband, Geoff, for his constant support, advice, and encouragement. Finally, this project is dedicated to Norman Williams Peterson, who has brought a smile to my face every time I have seen him.

Joyce Farrell

Read This Before You Begin

The following information will help you as you prepare to complete this course.

To the User of the Data Files

To complete the steps and projects in this course, you need data files that have been created specifically for some of the exercises. Your instructor will provide the data files to you. You also can obtain the files electronically by signing up or signing in at www.cengage.com and then searching for and accessing this product and its online resources. Note that you can use a computer in your school lab or your own computer to complete the exercises.

Using Your Own Computer

To use your own computer to complete the steps and exercises, you need the following:

- › **Software:** Java SE 16 or later, available from www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/index.html. Although almost all of the examples in this course will work with earlier versions of Java, a few require Java 16 or later. You also need a text editor, such as Notepad. A few exercises ask you to use a browser for research.
- › **Hardware:** For operating system requirements (memory and disk space), see <http://java.com/en/download/help>.

Features

This text focuses on helping students become better programmers and understand Java program development through a variety of key features. In addition to Chapter Objectives, Summaries, and Key Terms, these useful features will help students regardless of their learning styles.

You Do It

These sections walk students through program development step by step.

Note

These notes provide additional information—for example, a common error to watch out for or background information on a topic.

Two Truths & a Lie

These quizzes appear after almost every chapter section, with answers provided. Each quiz contains three statements based on the preceding section of text—two statements are true and one is false.

Answers give immediate feedback without “giving away” answers to the multiple-choice questions and programming problems later in the chapter. Students also have the option to take these quizzes in MindTap.

Don't Do It Icon

The Don't Do It icon illustrates how NOT to do something—for example, having a dead code path in a program. These icons provide a visual jolt to the student, emphasizing that particular practices are NOT to be emulated and making students more likely to recognize problems in existing code.

```
import java.util.Scanner;
public class GetUserInfo2
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        String name;
        int age;
        Scanner inputDevice = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Please enter your age >> ");
        age = inputDevice.nextInt();
        System.out.print("Please enter your name >> ");
        name = inputDevice.nextLine();
        System.out.println("Your name is " + name +
                           " and you are " + age + " years old.");
    }
}
```

Don't Do It

If you accept numeric input prior to string input, the string input is ignored unless you take special action.

Don't Do It

These sections at the end of each chapter list advice for avoiding common programming errors.

Assessment



Review Questions

Review Questions test student comprehension of the major ideas and techniques presented. Twenty questions follow each chapter.



Programming Exercises

Programming Exercises provide opportunities to practice concepts. These exercises allow students to explore each major programming concept presented in the chapter. Additional coding labs and snippets are available in MindTap.



Debugging Exercises

Debugging Exercises are included with each chapter because examining programs critically and closely is a crucial programming skill. Students and instructors can download these exercises at www.cengage.com.



Game Zone

Game Zone exercises are included at the end of each chapter. Students can create games as an additional entertaining way to understand key programming concepts.



Case Problems

Case Problems provide opportunities to build more detailed programs that continue to incorporate increasing functionality throughout the course.

Creating Java Programs

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to:

- 1.1 Define basic programming terminology
- 1.2 Compare procedural and object-oriented programming
- 1.3 Describe the features of the Java programming language
- 1.4 Analyze a Java application that produces console output
- 1.5 Compile a Java class and correct syntax errors
- 1.6 Run a Java application and correct logic errors
- 1.7 Add comments to a Java class
- 1.8 Create a Java application that produces GUI output
- 1.9 Identify and consult resources to help develop Java programming skills

1.1 Learning Programming Terminology

You see many computers every day. There might be a laptop on your desk, and there also are computers in your phone, in your car, and perhaps in your thermostat, washing machine, and vacuum cleaner. When you learn computer terminology and how to program a computer, you learn a bit about how these devices work, you develop your critical thinking skills, and you learn to communicate more clearly. You will reap all these benefits as you work through this course.

Computer systems consist of both hardware and software.

- › Computer equipment, such as a monitor or keyboard, is **hardware**.
- › Programs are **software**. A **computer program** (or simply, **program**) is a set of instructions that you write to tell a computer what to do.

Software can be divided into two broad categories:

- › A program that performs a task for a user (such as calculating and producing paychecks, word processing, or playing a game) is **application software**. Programs that are application software are called *applications*, or *apps* for short.
- › A program that manages the computer itself (such as Windows or Linux) is **system software**.

The **logic** behind any computer program, whether it is an application or system program, determines the exact order of instructions needed to produce desired results. Much of this course describes how to develop the logic for application software.

You can write computer programs in high- or low-level programming languages:

- › A **high-level programming language** such as Java, Visual Basic, C++, or C# allows you to use English-like, easy-to-remember terms such as *read*, *write*, and *add*.
- › A **low-level programming language** corresponds closely to a computer's circuitry and is not as easily read or understood. Because they correspond to circuitry, low-level languages must be customized for every type of machine on which a program runs.

All computer programs, even high-level language programs, ultimately are converted to the lowest-level language, which is machine language. **Machine language**, or **machine code**, is the most basic set of instructions that a computer can execute. Each type of processor (the internal hardware that handles computer instructions) has its own set of machine language instructions. Programmers often describe machine language using 1s and 0s to represent the on-and-off circuitry of computer systems.

Note

The system that uses only 1s and 0s is the *binary numbering system*. Appendix B describes the binary system in detail. Later in this chapter, you will learn that *bytecode* is the name for the binary code created when Java programs are converted to machine language.

Every programming language has its own **syntax**, or rules about how language elements are combined correctly to produce usable statements. For example, depending on the specific high-level language, you might use the verb *print* or *write* to produce output. All languages have a specific, limited vocabulary (the language's **keywords**) and a specific set of rules for using that vocabulary. When you are learning a computer programming language, such as Java, C++, or Visual Basic, you are learning the vocabulary and syntax for that language.

Using a programming language, programmers write a series of **program statements**, which are similar to English sentences. The statements carry out the program's tasks. Program statements are also known as **commands** because they are orders to the computer, such as *Output this word* or *Add these two numbers*.

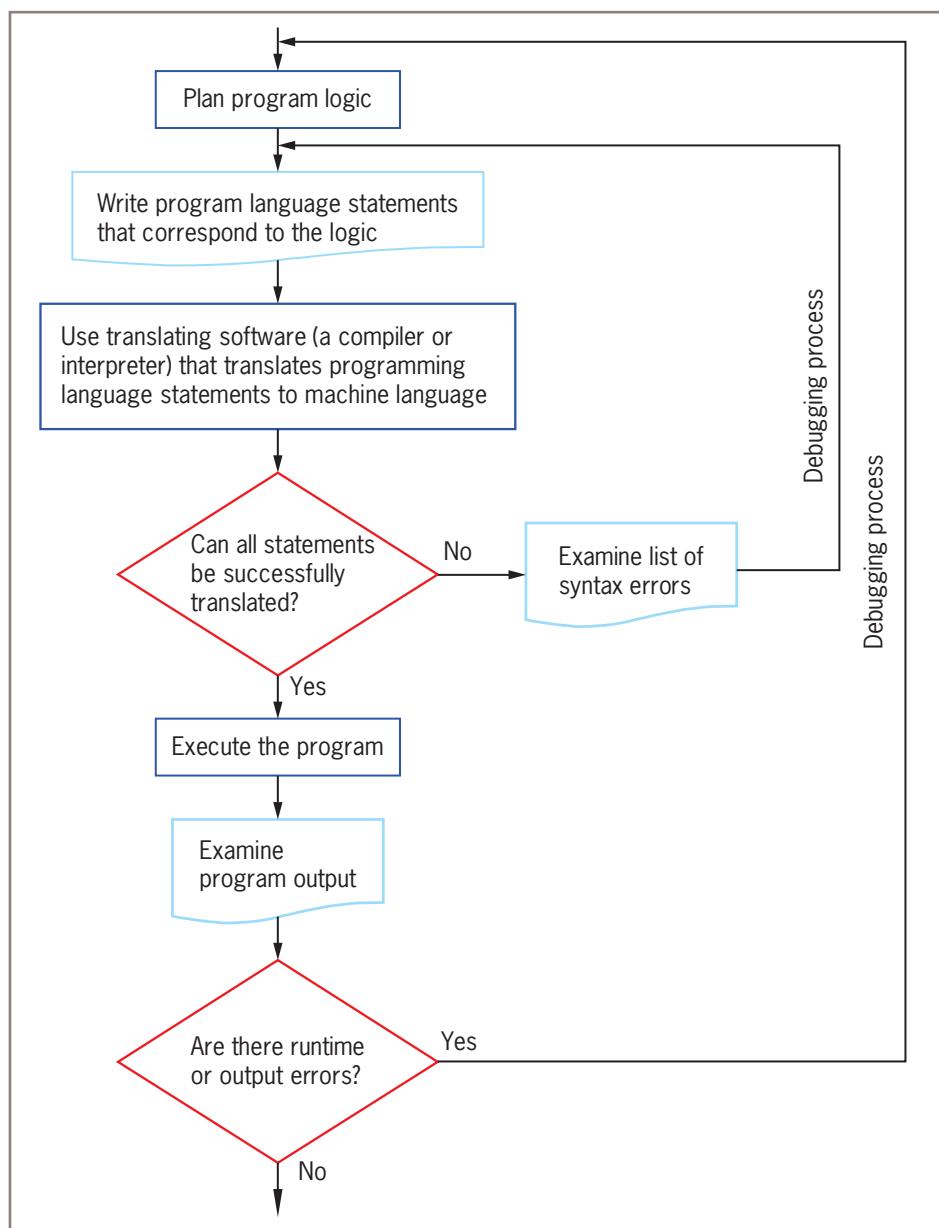
After the program statements are written in a high-level programming language, a computer program called a **compiler** or **interpreter** translates the statements into machine language. A compiler translates an entire program before carrying out any statements, or **executing** them, whereas an interpreter translates one program statement at a time, executing a statement as soon as it is translated.

Note

Whether you use a compiler or interpreter often depends on the programming language you use. For example, C++ is a compiled language, and Visual Basic is an interpreted language. Each type of translator has its supporters; programs written in compiled languages execute more quickly, whereas programs written in interpreted languages can be easier to develop and debug. Java uses the best of both technologies: a compiler to translate your programming statements and an interpreter to read the compiled code line by line when the program executes (also called **at run time**).

Compilers and interpreters issue one or more error messages each time they encounter an invalid program statement—that is, a statement containing a **syntax error**, or misuse of the language. Examples of syntax errors include misspelling a keyword or omitting a word that a statement requires. When a syntax error is detected, the programmer can correct the error and attempt another translation. Repairing all syntax errors is the first part of the process of **debugging** a program—freeing the program of all flaws or errors, also known as **bugs**. **Figure 1-1** illustrates the steps a programmer takes while developing an executable program. You will learn more about debugging Java programs later in this chapter.

Figure 1-1 The program development process



As Figure 1-1 shows, you might write a program that compiles successfully (that is, it contains no syntax errors), but it still might not be a correct program because it might contain one or more logic errors. A **logic error** is a bug that allows a program to run, but that causes it to operate incorrectly. Correct logic requires that all the right commands be issued in the appropriate order. Examples of logic errors include multiplying two values when you meant to divide them or producing output prior to obtaining the appropriate input. When you develop a program of any significant size, you should plan its logic before you write any program statements.

Correcting logic errors is much more difficult than correcting syntax errors. Syntax errors are discovered by the language translator when you compile a program, but a program can be free of syntax errors and execute while still

retaining logic errors. Sometimes you can find logic errors by carefully examining the structure of your program (when a group of programmers do this together, it is called a *structured walkthrough*), but sometimes you can identify logic errors only when you examine a program's output. For example, if you know an employee's paycheck should contain the value \$4,000, but when you examine a payroll program's output you see that it holds \$40, then a logic error has occurred. Perhaps an incorrect calculation was performed, or maybe the hours-worked value was output by mistake instead of the net pay value. When output is incorrect, the programmer must carefully examine all the statements within the program, revise or move the offending statements, and translate and test the program again.

Note

Just because a program produces correct output does not mean it is free from logic errors. For example, suppose that a program should multiply two values entered by the user, that the user enters two 2s, and that the output is 4. The program might actually be adding the values by mistake. The programmer would discover the logic error only by entering different values, such as 5 and 7, and examining the result.

Note

Programmers call some logic errors **semantic errors**. For example, if you misspell a programming language word, you commit a syntax error, but if you use a correct word in the wrong context, you commit a semantic error.

Two Truths & a Lie

Learning Programming Terminology

In each "Two Truths & a Lie" section, two of the numbered statements are true, and one is false. Identify the false statement and explain why it is false.

1. Unlike a low-level programming language, a high-level programming language allows you to use a vocabulary of reasonable terms instead of the sequences of on-and-off switches that perform the corresponding tasks.
2. A syntax error occurs when you violate the rules of a language; locating and repairing all syntax errors is part of the process of debugging a program.
3. Logic errors are fairly easy to find because the software that translates a program finds all the logic errors for you.

The false statement is #3. A language translator finds syntax errors, but logic errors can still exist in a program that is free of syntax errors.

1.2 Comparing Procedural and Object-Oriented Programming Concepts

All computer programmers must deal with syntax errors and logical errors in much the same way, but they might take different approaches to the entire programming process. Procedural programming and object-oriented programming describe two different approaches to writing computer programs.

Procedural Programming

Procedural programming is a style of programming in which operations are executed one after another in sequence.

The typical procedural program defines and uses named computer memory locations; each of these named locations that can hold data is called a **variable**. For example, data might be read from an input device and stored in a location the programmer has named `rateOfPay`. The variable value might be used in an arithmetic statement, used as the basis for a decision, sent to an output device, or have other operations performed with it. The data stored in a variable can change, or vary, during a program's execution.

For convenience, the individual operations used in a computer program are often grouped into logical units called **procedures**. For example, a series of four or five comparisons and calculations that together determine a person's federal withholding tax value might be grouped as a procedure named `calculateFederalWithholding()`. (As a convention, this course will show parentheses following every procedure name.) As a procedural program executes its statements, it can sometimes pause to **call a procedure**. When a program calls a procedure, the current logic is temporarily suspended so that the procedure's commands can execute. A single procedural program might contain any number of procedure calls. Procedures are also called *modules*, *methods*, *functions*, and *subroutines*. Users of different programming languages tend to use different terms. As you will learn later in this chapter, Java programmers most frequently use the term *method*.

Object-Oriented Programming

Object-oriented programming is an extension of procedural programming in which you take a slightly different approach to writing computer programs. Writing **object-oriented programs** involves the following:

- › Creating classes, which are blueprints for objects
- › Creating objects, which are specific instances of those classes
- › Creating applications that manipulate or use those objects

Note

Programmers use *OO* as an abbreviation for *object-oriented*; it is pronounced oh oh. Object-oriented programming is abbreviated *OOP*, and pronounced to rhyme with *soup*.

Originally, object-oriented programming was used most frequently for two major types of applications:

- › **Computer simulations**, which attempt to mimic real-world activities so that their processes can be improved or so that users can better understand how the real-world processes operate
- › **Graphical user interfaces (GUIs)**, pronounced *gooeys*, which allow users to interact with a program in a graphical environment

Thinking about objects in these two types of applications makes sense. For example, a city might want to develop a program that simulates traffic patterns and controls traffic signals to help prevent tie-ups. Programmers would create classes for objects such as cars and pedestrians that contain their own data and rules for behavior. For example, each car has a speed and a method for changing that speed. The specific instances of cars could be set in motion to create a simulation of a real city at rush hour.

Creating a GUI environment for users is also a natural use for object orientation. It is easy to think of the components a user manipulates on a computer screen, such as buttons and scroll bars, as similar to real-world objects. Each GUI object contains data—for example, a button on a screen has a specific size and color. Each object also contains behaviors—for example, each button can be clicked and reacts in a specific way when clicked. Some people consider the term *object-oriented programming* to be synonymous with GUI programming, but object-oriented programming means more. Although many GUI programs are object oriented, not all object-oriented programs use GUI objects. Modern businesses use object-oriented design techniques when developing all sorts of business applications, whether they are GUI applications or not. Early in this course, you will learn object-oriented techniques that are appropriate for any program type; in the last chapters, you will apply what you have learned about those techniques specifically to GUI applications.

Understanding object-oriented programming requires grasping three basic concepts:

- › Encapsulation as it applies to classes as objects
- › Inheritance
- › Polymorphism

Understanding Classes, Objects, and Encapsulation

In object-oriented terminology, a **class** is a group or collection of objects with common properties. In the same way that a blueprint exists before any houses are built from it, and a recipe exists before any cookies are baked from it, a class definition exists before any objects are created from it. A **class definition** describes what attributes its objects will have and what those objects will be able to do. **Attributes** are the characteristics that define an object; they are **properties** of the object. When you learn a programming language such as Java, you learn to work with two types of classes: those that have already been developed by the language's creators and your own new, customized classes.

An **object** is a specific, concrete **instance** of a class. Creating an instance is called **instantiation**. You can create objects from classes that you write and from classes written by other programmers, including Java's creators. The values contained in an object's properties often differentiate instances of the same class from one another. For example, the class `Automobile` describes what `Automobile` objects are like. Some properties of the `Automobile` class are make, model, year, and color. Each `Automobile` object possesses the same attributes, but not necessarily the same values for those attributes. One `Automobile` might be a 2014 white Honda Civic, and another might be a 2021 red Chevrolet Camaro. Similarly, your dog has the properties of all Dogs, including a breed, name, age, and whether the dog's shots are current. The values of the properties of an object are referred to as the object's **state**. In other words, you can think of objects as roughly equivalent to nouns (words that describe a person, place, or thing), and of their attributes as similar to adjectives that describe the nouns.

When you understand an object's class, you understand the characteristics of the object. If your friend purchases an `Automobile`, you know it has a model name, and if your friend gets a `Dog`, you know the dog has a breed. Knowing what attributes exist for classes allows you to ask appropriate questions about the states or values of those attributes. For example, you might ask how many miles the car gets per gallon, but you would not ask whether the car has had shots. Similarly, in a GUI operating environment, you expect each component to have specific, consistent attributes and methods, such as a window having a title bar and a close button, because each component gains these properties as a member of the general class of GUI components. **Figure 1-2** shows the relationship of some `Dog` objects to the `Dog` class.

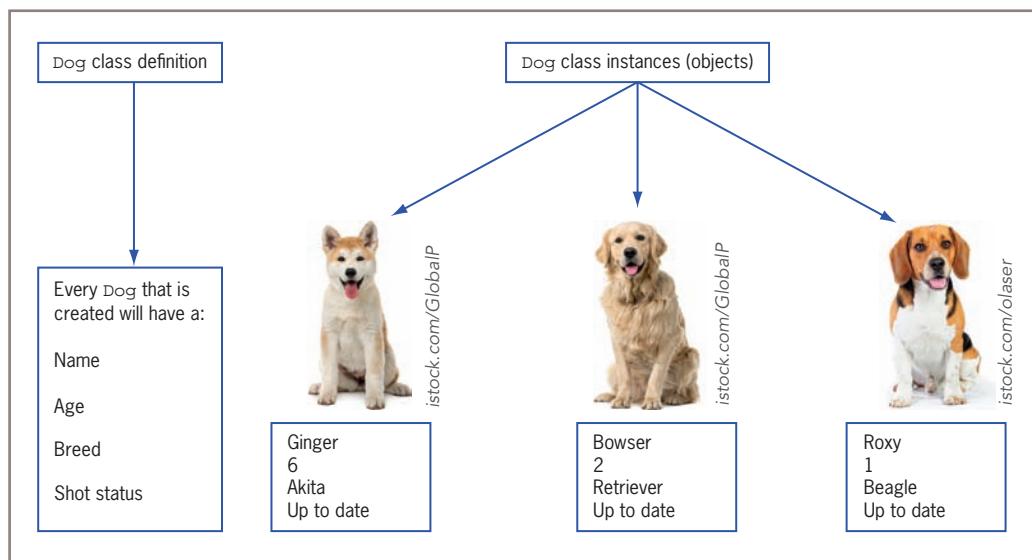
Note

By convention, programmers using Java begin their class names with an uppercase letter. Thus, the class that defines the attributes and methods of an automobile probably would be named `Automobile`, and the class for dogs probably would be named `Dog`. This convention, however, is not required to produce a workable program.

Besides defining properties, classes define methods their objects can use. A **method** is a self-contained block of program code that carries out some action, similar to a procedure in a procedural program. An `Automobile`, for example, might have methods for moving forward, moving backward, and determining the status of its gas tank. Similarly, a `Dog` might have methods for walking, eating, and determining its name, and a program's GUI components might have methods for maximizing and minimizing them as well as determining their size. In other words, if objects are similar to nouns, then methods are similar to verbs.

In object-oriented classes, attributes and methods are encapsulated into objects. **Encapsulation** refers to two closely related object-oriented notions:

- › Encapsulation is the enclosure of data and methods within an object. Encapsulation allows you to treat all of an object's methods and data as a single entity. Just as an actual dog contains all of its attributes and abilities, so would a program's `Dog` object.

Figure 1-2 Dog class definition and some objects created from it

- Encapsulation also refers to the concealment of an object’s data and methods from outside sources. Concealing data is sometimes called *information hiding*, and concealing how methods work is *implementation hiding*; you will learn more about both terms as you learn more about classes and objects. Encapsulation lets you hide specific object attributes and methods from outside sources and provides the security that keeps data and methods safe from inadvertent changes.

If an object’s methods are well written, the user can be unaware of the low-level details of how the methods are executed, and the user must simply understand the interface or interaction between the method and the object. For example, if you can fill your Automobile with gasoline, it is because you understand the interface between the gas pump nozzle and the vehicle’s gas tank opening. You don’t need to understand how the pump works mechanically or where the gas tank is located inside your vehicle. If you can read your speedometer, it does not matter how the displayed value is calculated. As a matter of fact, if someone produces a superior, more accurate speed-determining device and inserts it in your Automobile, you don’t have to know or care how it operates, as long as your interface remains the same. The same principles apply to well-constructed classes used in object-oriented programs—programs that use classes only need to work with interfaces.

Understanding Inheritance and Polymorphism

An important feature of object-oriented program design that differentiates it from procedural program design is **inheritance**—the ability to create classes that share the attributes and methods of existing classes, but with more specific features. For example, **Automobile** is a class, and all **Automobile** objects share many traits and abilities. **Convertible** is a class that inherits from the **Automobile** class; a **Convertible** is a type of **Automobile** that has and can do everything a “plain” **Automobile** does—but with an added ability to lower its top. (In turn, **Automobile** inherits from the **Vehicle** class.) **Convertible** is not an object—it is a class. A specific **Convertible** is an object—for example, `my1967BlueMustangConvertible`.

Inheritance helps you understand real-world objects. For example, the first time you encounter a convertible, you already understand how the ignition, brakes, door locks, and other systems work because you realize that a convertible is a type of automobile. Therefore, you need to be concerned only with the attributes and methods that are “new” with a convertible. The advantages in programming are the same—you can build new classes based on existing classes and concentrate on the specialized features you are adding.

A final important concept in object-oriented terminology (that does not exist in procedural programming terminology) is **polymorphism**. Literally, polymorphism means *many forms*—it describes the feature of languages that allows the

same word or symbol to be interpreted correctly in different situations based on the context. For example, although the classes `Automobile`, `Sailboat`, and `Airplane` all inherit from `Vehicle`, methods such as `turn()` and `stop()` work differently for instances of those classes. The advantages of polymorphism will become more apparent when you begin to create GUI applications containing features such as windows, buttons, and menu bars. In a GUI application, it is convenient to remember one method name, such as `setColor()` or `setHeight()`, and have it work correctly no matter what type of object you are modifying.

Note

When you see a plus sign (+) between two numbers, you understand they are being added. When you see it carved in a tree between two names, you understand that the names are linked romantically. Because the symbol has diverse meanings based on context, it is polymorphic. Later in this course, you will learn more about inheritance and polymorphism and how they are implemented in Java. Using Java, you can write either procedural or object-oriented programs. In this course, you will learn about how to do both.

Two Truths & a Lie | Comparing Procedural and Object-Oriented Programming Concepts

1. An instance of a class is a created object that possesses the attributes and methods described in the class definition.
2. Encapsulation protects data by hiding it within an object.
3. Polymorphism is the ability to create classes that share the attributes and methods of existing classes, but with more specific features.

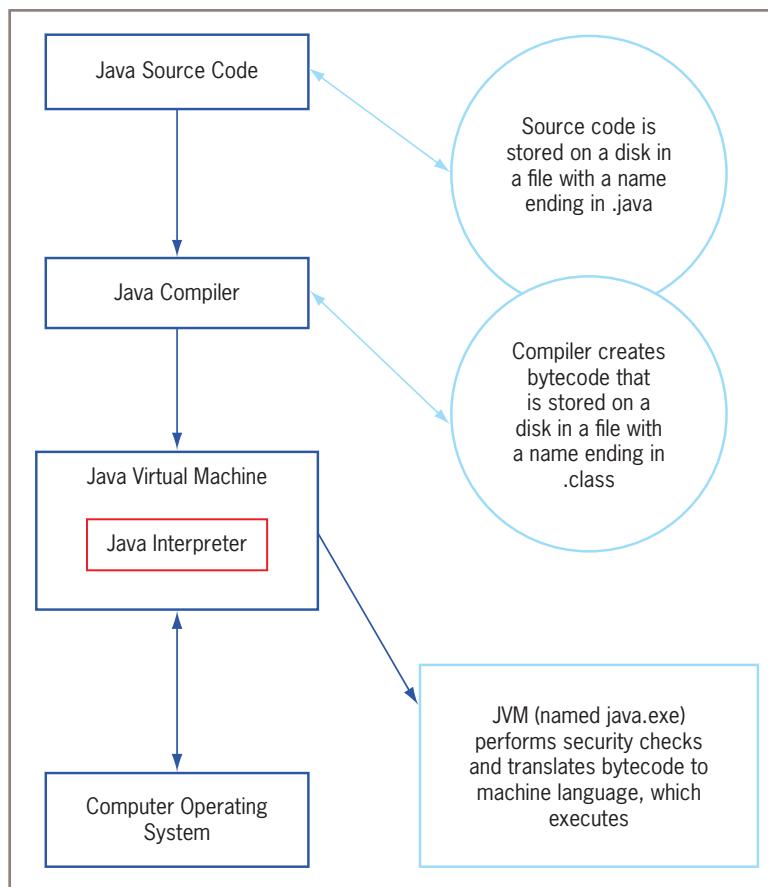
The false statement is #3. Inheritance is the ability to create classes that share the attributes and methods of existing classes, but with more specific features; polymorphism describes the ability to use one term to cause multiple actions.

1.3 Features of the Java Programming Language

Java was developed by Sun Microsystems as an object-oriented language for general-purpose business applications and for interactive, World Wide Web-based Internet applications. (Sun was later acquired by Oracle Corporation.) Some of the advantages that make Java a popular language are its security features and the fact that it is **architecturally neutral**. In other words, unlike many other languages, you can use Java to write a program that runs on any operating system (such as Windows, macOS, or Linux) or any device (such as PCs, phones, and tablet computers).

Java can be run on a wide variety of computers and devices because it does not execute instructions on a computer directly. Instead, Java runs on a hypothetical computer known as the **Java Virtual Machine (JVM)**. When programmers call the JVM *hypothetical*, they mean it is not a physical entity created from hardware, but is composed only of software.

Figure 1-3 shows the Java environment. Programming statements written in a high-level programming language are **source code**. When you write a Java program, you first construct the source code using a plain text editor such as Notepad, or you can use a development environment such as Eclipse, NetBeans, or JDeveloper. A **development environment** is a set of tools that help you write programs by providing such features as displaying a language's keywords in color.

Figure 1-3 The Java environment

When you write a Java program, the following steps take place:

- › The Java source code statements you write are saved in a file.
- › The Java compiler converts the source code into a binary program of **bytecode**.
- › A program called the **Java interpreter** then checks the bytecode and communicates with the operating system, executing the bytecode instructions line by line within the JVM.

Because the Java program is isolated from the operating system, it is also insulated from the particular hardware on which it is run. Because of this insulation, the JVM provides security against intruders accessing your computer's hardware through the operating system. Therefore, Java is more secure than other languages. Another advantage provided by the JVM means less work for programmers—when using other programming languages, software vendors usually have to produce multiple versions of the same product (a Windows version, Macintosh version, UNIX version, Linux version, and so on) so all users can run the program. With Java, one program version runs on all these platforms. **"Write once, run anywhere" (WORA)** is the slogan developed by Sun Microsystems to describe the ability of one Java program version to work correctly on multiple platforms.

Java also is simpler to use than many other object-oriented languages. Java is modeled after C++. Although neither language is easy to read or understand on first exposure, Java does eliminate some of the most difficult-to-understand features in C++, such as pointers and multiple inheritance.

You can write two types of Java applications:

- › **Console applications**, which support character or text output to a computer screen
- › **Windowed applications**, which create a GUI with elements such as menus, toolbars, and dialog boxes

Console applications are the easier applications to create; you start using them in the next section. You will create your first simple GUI application later in this chapter.

Two Truths & a Lie | Features of the Java Programming Language

1. Java was developed to be architecturally neutral, which means that anyone can build an application without extensive study.
2. After you write a Java program, the compiler converts the source code into a binary program of bytecode.
3. You can create both console applications and windowed applications using Java.

The false statement is #1. Java was developed to be architecturally neutral, which means that you can use Java to write a program that will run on any platform.

1.4 Analyzing a Java Application That Produces Console Output

At first glance, even the simplest Java application involves a fair amount of confusing syntax. Consider the application in **Figure 1-4**. This program is written on seven lines, and its only task is to display *First Java application* on the screen.

Figure 1-4 The `First` class

```
public class First
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.println("First Java application");
    }
}
```

Note

In program code in figures in this course, Java keywords as well as `true`, `false`, and `null` are blue, and all other program elements are black. A complete list of Java keywords is shown later in this chapter.

Note

The code for every complete program shown in this course is available in a set of student files you can download so that you can execute the programs on your own computer.

Understanding the Statement That Produces the Output

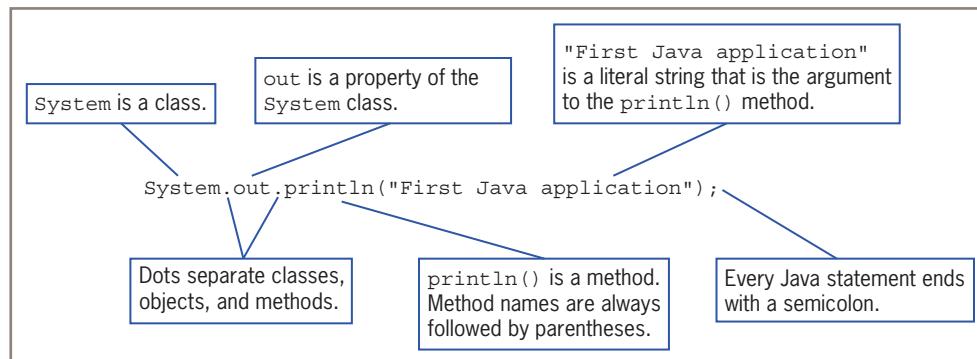
Although the program in Figure 1-4 occupies several lines, it contains only one Java programming statement. This statement does the actual work of the program:

```
System.out.println("First Java application");
```

Like all Java statements, this one ends with a semicolon. Most Java programming statements can be spread across as many lines as you choose, as long as you place line breaks in appropriate places. For example, in the program in Figure 1-4, you could place a line break immediately before or after the opening parenthesis, or immediately before or after the closing parenthesis. However, you usually want to place a short statement on a single line.

The text *First Java application* is a **literal string** of characters—a series of characters that will appear in output exactly as entered. Any literal string in Java is written between double quotation marks. In Java, a literal string cannot be broken and placed on multiple lines. **Figure 1-5** labels this string and the other parts of the statement.

Figure 1-5 Anatomy of a Java statement



The string within quotation marks, "First Java application", appears within parentheses because the string is an argument to a method, and arguments to methods always appear within parentheses following the method name. **Arguments** are pieces of information that are sent into a method. The act of sending arguments to a method is called **passing arguments** to the method.

As an analogy, consider placing a catalog order with a company that sells sporting goods. Processing a catalog order is a method that consists of a set of standard procedures—recording the order, checking the availability of the item, pulling the item from the warehouse, and so on. Each catalog order also requires a set of data items, such as which item number you are ordering and the quantity of the item desired; these data items can be considered the arguments to the order-processing method. If you order two of item 5432 from a catalog, you expect different results than if you order 1,000 of item 9008. Likewise, if you pass the argument "Happy Holidays" to a Java display method, you expect different results than if you pass the argument "First Java application".

Within the statement `System.out.println("First Java application");`, the method to which you are passing "First Java application" is named `println()`. The Java methods `println()` and `print()` both produce output, with a small difference:

- » With `println()`, after the output is displayed, the insertion point moves to the following line so that subsequent output appears on a new line.
- » With `print()`, the insertion point does not advance to a new line, so subsequent output appears at the end of the current line.

When you call a method, you always use parentheses following the method name. In this course, you will learn about many methods that require arguments between their parentheses, and many others for which you leave the parentheses empty. The `println()` method can be used with no arguments when you want to output a blank line. Later in this chapter, you will learn about a method named `showMessageDialog()` that requires two arguments. Other methods require more.

Within the statement `System.out.println("First Java application");`, `out` is an object that is a property of the `System` class; `out` refers to the **standard output device** for a system, normally the monitor. The `out` object itself is an instance of the `PrintStream` class, which contains several methods, including `println()`. Technically, you could create the `out` object and write the instructions within the `println()` method yourself, but it would be time consuming, and the creators of Java assumed you would want to frequently display output on a screen. Therefore, the `System` and `PrintStream` classes, the `out` object, and the `println()` and `print()` methods were created as conveniences for the programmer.

Within the statement `System.out.println("First Java application");`, `System` is a class. Therefore, `System` defines attributes for `System` objects, just as the `Dog` class defines the attributes for `Dog` objects. One of the `System` attributes is `out`. (You can probably guess that another attribute is `in` and that it represents an input device.)

The dots (periods) in `System.out.println()` are used to separate the names of the components in the statement. You will use this format repeatedly in your Java programs. Java is case sensitive; the class named `System` is a completely different class from one named `system`, `SYSTEM`, or even `sYsTeM`, and `out` is a different object from one named `Out` or `OUT`. You must pay close attention to using correct uppercase and lowercase values when you write Java programs.

So, the statement that displays the string "First Java application" contains the following:

- » A class name
- » An object reference
- » A method call
- » A method argument
- » A statement-ending semicolon

The statement that displays the string cannot stand alone; it is embedded within a class, as shown in Figure 1-4.

Understanding the First Class

Everything that you use within a Java program must be part of a class. When you write `public class First`, you are defining a class for which you have chosen the name `First`. You can define a Java class using any name or **identifier** you need, as long as it meets the following requirements:

- » A Java identifier must begin with a letter of the English alphabet, a non-English letter (such as α or π), an underscore, or a dollar sign. A class name cannot begin with a digit.
- » A Java identifier can contain only letters, digits, underscores, or dollar signs.
- » A Java identifier cannot be a reserved keyword, such as `public` or `class`. (See **Figure 1-6** for a list of reserved keywords.)

Figure 1-6 Java reserved keywords

<p>The underscore character is a reserved keyword in Java.</p>	-	abstract	double	int	strictfp
		assert	else	interface	super
		boolean	enum	long	switch
		break	extends	native	synchronized
		byte	final	new	this
		catch	finally	non-sealed	throw
		char	float	package	throws
		class	for	private	transient
		const	goto	protected	try
		continue	if	public	void
		default	implements	return	volatile
		do	import	short	while
			instanceof	static	

- › A Java identifier cannot be one of the following values: `true`, `false`, or `null`. These are not keywords (they are primitive values), but they are reserved and cannot be used.
- › The following are not keywords, but their use is restricted in some contexts: `permits`, `record`, `sealed`, `var`, and `yield`. It is better not to use these words as identifiers.

Note

Java is based on **Unicode**, which is an international system of character representation. The term *letter* indicates English-language letters as well as characters from Arabic, Greek, and other alphabets. You can learn more about Unicode in Appendix B.

Note

The first entry in Figure 1-6, the underscore, was added as a keyword in Java 9. The keyword `non-sealed` was added in Java 15. The keyword `non-sealed` is unconventional, as no other keywords use a hyphen.

Note

Although `const` and `goto` are reserved as keywords, they are not used in Java programs, and they have no function. Both words are used in other languages and were reserved in case developers of future versions of Java wanted to implement them.

It is a Java standard, although not a requirement, to begin class identifiers with an uppercase letter and employ other uppercase letters as needed to improve readability. (By contrast, method identifiers, like `println()`, conventionally begin with a lowercase letter.) The style that joins words in which each word begins with an uppercase letter is called **Pascal casing**, or sometimes **upper camel casing**. You should follow established conventions for Java so your programs will be easy for other programmers to interpret and follow. This course uses established Java programming conventions.

Table 1-1 lists some valid and conventional class names that you could use when writing programs in Java. **Table 1-2** provides some examples of class names that *could* be used in Java (if you use these class names, the class will compile) but that are unconventional and not recommended. **Table 1-3** provides some class name examples that are illegal.

Table 1-1 Some valid class names in Java

CLASS NAME	DESCRIPTION
<code>Employee</code>	Begins with an uppercase letter
<code>UnderGradStudent</code>	Begins with an uppercase letter, contains no spaces, and emphasizes each new word with an initial uppercase letter
<code>InventoryItem</code>	Begins with an uppercase letter, contains no spaces, and emphasizes the second word with an initial uppercase letter
<code>Budget2024</code>	Begins with an uppercase letter and contains no spaces

Table 1-2 Legal but unconventional and nonrecommended class names in Java

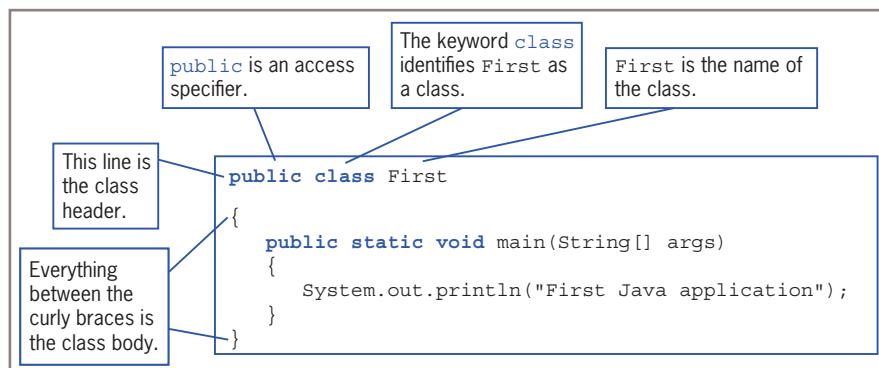
CLASS NAME	DESCRIPTION
<code>Undergradstudent</code>	New words are not indicated with initial uppercase letters, making this identifier difficult to read
<code>Inventory_Item</code>	An underscore is not commonly used to indicate new words
<code>BUDGET2024</code>	Using all uppercase letters for class identifiers is not conventional
<code>budget2024</code>	Conventionally, class names do not begin with a lowercase letter

Table 1-3 Some illegal class names in Java

CLASS NAME	DESCRIPTION
Inventory Item	The space character is illegal in an identifier
class	class is a reserved keyword
2024Budget	Class names cannot begin with a digit
phone#	The number symbol (#) is illegal in an identifier

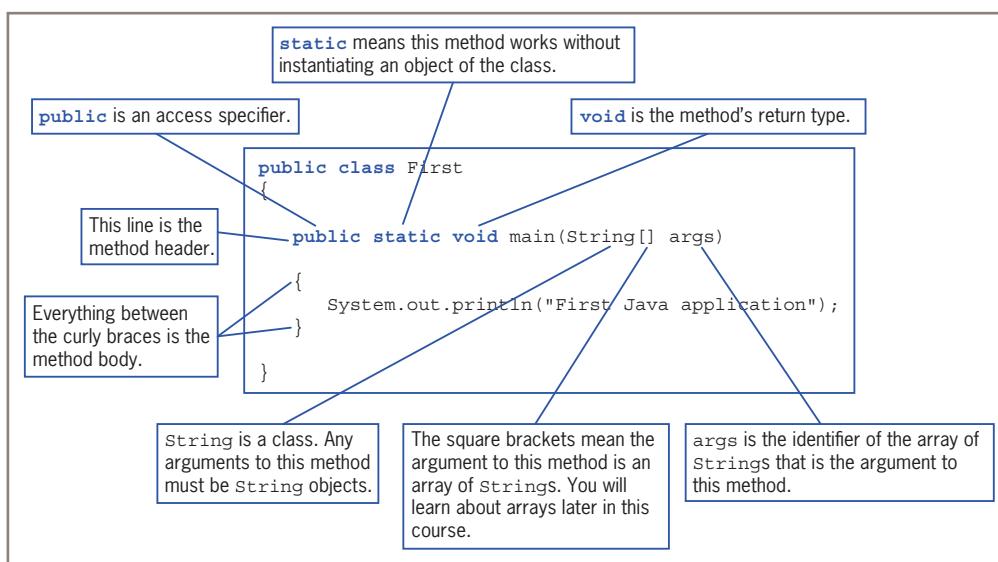
Figure 1-7 shows the parts of the First class shell in its first, second, and last lines—its header, and its opening and closing curly braces. The **class header** contains the keyword `class`, which identifies `First` as a class. The keyword **public** is an access specifier. An **access specifier** defines the circumstances under which a class can be accessed and the other classes that have the right to use a class. Public access is the most liberal type of access; you will learn about public access and other types of access when you learn more about methods.

After the class header, you enclose the contents of a class within curly braces (`{` and `}`); any data items and methods between the curly braces make up the **class body**. A class body can be composed of any number of data items and methods. In Figure 1-7 (and again in **Figure 1-8**), the class `First` contains four lines between the curly braces; these will be described in the next section.

Figure 1-7 The parts of a typical class

Understanding the `main()` Method

The `main()` method in Figure 1-8 is made up of the four lines between the curly braces of the `First` class.

Figure 1-8 The parts of a typical `main()` method

A **method header** is the first line in a method; it contains information about how other methods can interact with it. In Figure 1-8, the method header is `public static void main(String[] args)`. The meaning and purpose of each of the terms used in the method header will become clearer as you complete this course; a brief explanation will suffice for now.

- › The keyword `public` is an access specifier, just as it is when you use it to define the `First` class.
- › The keyword `static` means that a method is accessible and usable even though no objects of the class exist.
- › The keyword `void` indicates that the `main()` method does not return any value when it is called. This doesn't mean that `main()` doesn't produce output—in fact, this method does. It only means that the `main()` method does not send any value back to any other method that might use it. You will learn more about return values when you study methods in more detail.
- › The name of the method is `main()`. As is the convention with Java methods, its identifier begins with a lowercase letter. Not all classes have a `main()` method; in fact, many do not. All Java *applications*, however, must include a class containing a public method named `main()`, and most Java applications have additional classes and methods. When you execute a Java application, the JVM always executes the `main()` method first.
- › In the method header, the contents between the parentheses, `String[] args`, represent the type of argument that can be passed to the `main()` method, just as the string "First Java application" is an argument passed to the `println()` method. The **String class** is a Java class that can be used to hold character strings. According to Java convention, it begins with an uppercase letter, like other classes. The brackets following `String` mean that the argument is a list of `Strings`. You will learn more about the `String` class and lists later in this course. The identifier `args` is used to hold any `String` objects that might be sent to the `main()` method. The `main()` method could do something with those arguments, such as display them, but in Figures 1-4, 1-7, and 1-8, the `main()` method does not actually use the `args` identifier. Nevertheless, you must place an identifier within the `main()` method's parentheses. The identifier does not need to be named `args`—it could be any legal Java identifier—but the name `args` is traditional.

Note

In this course, you won't pass any arguments to a program's `main()` method, but when you run a program, you could. Even though you pass no arguments, the `main()` method must contain `String[]` and a legal identifier (such as `args`) within its parentheses.

The simple application originally shown in Figure 1-4 has many pieces to remember. However, for now, you can use the Java code shown in **Figure 1-9** as a shell, in which you replace `AnyClassName` with a class name you choose and the line `*****` with any statements that you want to execute.

Indent Style

In general, whitespace is optional in Java. **Whitespace** is any combination of nonprinting characters. You use whitespace to organize your program code and make it easier to read. You can insert whitespace between words or lines in your program code by typing spaces, tabs, or blank lines because the compiler ignores these extra spaces. However, you cannot use whitespace within an identifier or keyword, or surrounding the dots in any class-object-method combination.

For every opening curly brace (`{`) in a Java program, there must be a corresponding closing curly brace (`}`), but the placement of the opening and closing curly braces is not important to the compiler. For example, the following class

Figure 1-9 Shell code

```
public class AnyClassName
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        *****
    }
}
```

executes in exactly the same way as the one shown in Figure 1-4. The only difference is the layout of the braces—the line breaks occur after the opening braces instead of before them.

```
public class First{
    public static void main(String[] args){
        System.out.println("First Java application");
    }
}
```

The indent style shown in the preceding example, in which opening braces do not stand alone on separate lines, is known as the **K & R style** and is named for Kernighan and Ritchie, who wrote the first book about the C programming language. The indent style shown in Figures 1-4, 1-7, and 1-8, in which curly braces are aligned and each occupies its own line, is called the **Allman style** and is named for Eric Allman, a programmer who popularized the style. The Allman style is used throughout this course. However, Java programmers use a variety of indent styles, and all can produce workable Java programs. When you write your own code, you should develop a consistent style. In school, your instructor might have a preferred style, and when you get a job as a Java programmer, your organization most likely will have a preferred style. With many development environments, indentations are made for you automatically as you type.

Most programmers indent a method's statements a few spaces more than its curly braces. Some programmers indent two spaces, some three, and some four. Some programmers use the Tab key to create indentations, but others are opposed to this practice because the Tab key can indicate different indentation sizes on different systems. Some programmers don't care whether tabs or spaces are used, as long as they are not mixed in the same program. The Java compiler does not care how you indent. Again, the most important rule is to develop a consistent style of which your organization approves.

Saving a Java Class

When you write a Java class, you must save it using a writable storage medium such as a disk, DVD, or USB device. In Java, if a class is `public` (that is, if you use the `public` access specifier before the class name), you must save the class in a file with exactly the same name and a `.java` extension. For example, the `First` class must be stored in a file named `First.java`. The class name and filename must match exactly, including the use of uppercase and lowercase characters. If the extension is not `.java`, the Java compiler does not recognize the file as containing a Java class. Appendix A contains additional information about saving a Java application.

Two Truths & a Lie | Analyzing a Java Application That Produces Console Output

1. In the method header `public static void main(String[] args)`, the word `public` is an access specifier.
2. In the method header `public static void main(String[] args)`, the word `static` means that a method is accessible and usable, even though no objects of the class exist.
3. In the method header `public static void main(String[] args)`, the word `void` means that the `main()` method is an empty method.

The false statement is #3. In the method header `public static void main(String[] args)`, the word `void` means that the `main()` method does not return any value when it is called.

You Do It | Your First Application

Now that you understand the basics of an application written in Java, you are ready to enter your own Java application into a text editor. It is a tradition among programmers that the first program you write in any language produces “Hello, world!” as its output. You will create such a program now. You can use any text editor, such as Notepad or TextPad, or a development environment, such as Eclipse.

Note

It is best to use the simplest available text editor when writing Java programs. Multifeatured word-processing programs save documents as much larger files because of all the built-in features, such as font styles and margin settings, which the Java compiler cannot interpret. Additionally, one school of thought is that you should use a simple text editor such as Notepad because it does not provide features such as automatically completing statements for you or color-coding language features, thus forcing you to better learn all the nuances of the language.

1. Start the text editor, and then open a new document.

2. Type the class header as follows:

```
public class Hello
```

In this example, the class name is `Hello`. You can use any valid name you want for the class. If you choose `Hello`, you always must refer to the class as `Hello`, and not as `hello`, because Java is case sensitive.

3. Press **Enter** once, type `{` (opening curly brace), press **Enter** again, and type `}` (closing curly brace). You will add the `main()` method between these curly braces. Although it is not required, the convention used in this course is to place each curly brace on its own line and to align opening and closing curly brace pairs with each other. Using this format makes your code easier to read.
4. As shown in **Figure 1-10**, add the `main()` method header between the curly braces, and then type a set of curly braces for `main()`.
5. Next, add the statement within the `main()` method that will produce the output `Hello, world!`. Use **Figure 1-11** as a guide for adding the `println()` statement to the `main()` method.
6. Save the application as `Hello.java`. The class name and filename must match exactly, and you must use the `.java` extension.

Figure 1-10 The `main()` method shell for the `Hello` class

```
public class Hello
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
    }
}
```

Figure 1-11 Complete `Hello` class

```
public class Hello
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.println("Hello, world!");
    }
}
```

1.5 Compiling a Java Class and Correcting Syntax Errors

After you write and save an application, two steps must occur before you can view the application's output.

1. You must compile the class you wrote (called the *source code*) into bytecode.
2. You must use the Java interpreter to translate the bytecode into executable statements.

Compiling a Java Class

If you are using a development environment, you can compile your program by clicking the Compile button or by clicking the Build menu and selecting Compile. If you are using a text editor such as Notepad, you can compile your source code file from the command line. Your prompt should show the folder or directory where your program file is stored. Then you type `javac` followed by the name of the file that contains the source code. For example, to compile a file named *First.java*, you type the following and then press Enter:

```
javac First.java
```

Compiling the program will produce one of three outcomes:

- › You receive a message such as '`javac`' is not recognized as an internal or external command, operable program or batch file.
- › You receive one or more programming language error messages.
- › You receive no messages, which means that the application compiled successfully.

Note

When compiling, if the source code file is not in the current path, you can type a full path with the filename. For example:

```
javac c:\java\MyClasses\Chapter.01\First.java
```

Note

In a DOS environment, you can change directories using the `cd` command. For example, to change from the current directory to a subdirectory named `MyClasses`, you type `cd MyClasses` and press Enter. Within any directory, you can back up to the root directory by typing `cd\` and pressing Enter.

If you receive an error message that the command is not recognized, it might mean one of the following:

- › You misspelled the command `javac`.
- › You misspelled the filename.
- › You are not within the correct subfolder or subdirectory on your command line.
- › Java was not installed properly, or the `class` or `classpath` variable was not set correctly.
(See Appendix A for information about installation, `class`, and `classpath`.)

If you receive a programming language error message, it means the source code has one or more syntax errors. Recall that a syntax error is a programming error that occurs when you introduce typing errors into your program or use the programming language incorrectly. For example, if your class name is `first` (with a lowercase `f`) in the source code but you saved the file as `First.java` (with an uppercase `F`), you will receive an error message when you compile the application. The error message will be similar to *class first is public, should be declared in a file named first.java*

because *first* and *First* are not the same in a case-sensitive language. If this error occurs, you must reopen the text file that contains the source code, make the necessary corrections, and then save the file and attempt to compile it again.

Note

Appendix A contains information about troubleshooting, including how to change filenames in a Windows environment.

If you receive no error messages after compiling the code in a file named *First.java*, the application compiled successfully. In that case, a file named *First.class* is created and saved in the same folder as the text file that holds the source code. After a successful compile, you can execute the program (run the class file) on any computer that has a Java language interpreter. You will learn how to execute a program in the next section.

Correcting Syntax Errors

Frequently, you might make typing errors as you enter Java statements into your text editor. When you issue the command to compile a class containing errors, the Java compiler produces one or more error messages. The exact error message that appears varies depending on the compiler you are using.

The *FirstWithMissingSemicolon* class shown in **Figure 1-12** contains an error—the semicolon is missing at the end of the `println()` statement. (Of course, this class has been helpfully named to alert you to the error.) When you compile this class, an error message similar to the one shown in **Figure 1-13** is displayed.

Figure 1-12 The *FirstWithMissingSemicolon* class

```
public class FirstWithMissingSemicolon
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.println("First Java application")
    }
}
```

Don't Do It
The statement-ending
semicolon has been
omitted.

Figure 1-13 Error message generated when the *FirstWithMissingSemicolon* class is compiled

```
C:\Java>javac FirstWithMissingSemicolon.java
FirstWithMissingSemicolon.java:5: error: ';' expected
    System.out.println("First Java application")
                                         ^
1 error

C:\Java>
```

The first line of the error message in Figure 1-13 displays the name of the file in which the error was found (*FirstWithMissingSemicolon.java*), the line number in which it was found (5), and the nature of the error (`' ;' expected`). The next line of the error message displays the statement that contains the error, including a caret that points to the exact location where the error was first discovered. As you will see when you write and compile Java programs, the

place where an error is discovered is not necessarily where the error was made. For example, sometimes an error is not discovered until the line that follows the line that contains the error. Fairly frequently, it takes a little detective work to interpret an error message and determine its cause.

Finally, the message generated in Figure 1-13 includes a count of the number of errors found—in this case, there is just one error. This error is an example of a **compile-time error**, or one in which the compiler detects a violation of language syntax rules and is unable to translate the source code to machine code.

When you compile a class, the compiler reports as many errors as it can find so that you can fix as many errors as possible. Sometimes, one error in syntax causes multiple error messages that normally would not be errors if the first syntax error did not exist, so fixing one error might eliminate multiple error messages. Sometimes, when you fix a compile-time error and recompile a program, new error messages are generated. That's because when you fix the first error, the compiler can proceed beyond that point and possibly discover new errors. Of course, no programmer intends to type a program containing syntax errors, but when you do, the compiler finds them all for you.

Two Truths & a Lie | Compiling a Java Class and Correcting Syntax Errors

1. After you write and save an application, you can compile the bytecode to create source code.
2. When you compile a class, you create a new file with the same name as the original file but with a `.class` extension.
3. Syntax errors are compile-time errors.

The false statement is #1. After you write and save an application, you can compile the source code to create bytecode.

You Do It | Compiling a Java Class

You are ready to compile the `Hello` class that you created in the previous "You Do It" section.

1. If it is not still open on your screen, open the `Hello.java` file that you saved in the previous "You Do It" section.
2. If you are using a development environment, you can compile a program by clicking the **Compile** button. Otherwise, you can compile a program from the command prompt. Go to the command-line prompt for the drive and folder or subdirectory in which you saved `Hello.java`. At the command line, type the following:

```
javac Hello.java
```

After a few moments, you should return to the command prompt. If you see error messages instead, reread the previous section to discover whether you can determine the source of the error.

If the error message indicates that the command was not recognized, make sure that you spelled the `javac` command correctly, including using the correct case. Also, make sure you are using the correct directory or folder where the `Hello.java` file is stored.

If the error message indicates a language error, check your file against Figure 1-11, making sure it matches exactly. Fix any errors, and compile the application again. If errors persist, read through the next section to see if you can discover the solution.

Correcting Syntax Errors

In this section, you examine error messages and gain firsthand experience with syntax errors.

1. If your version of the `Hello` class did not compile successfully, examine the syntax error messages. Now that you know the messages contain line numbers and carets to pinpoint mistakes, it might be easier for you to fix problems. After you determine the nature of any errors, resave the file and recompile it.
2. Even if your `Hello` class compiled successfully, you need to gain experience with error messages. Your student files contain a file named `HelloErrors.java`. Find this file and open it in your text editor. If you do not have access to the student files that accompany this course, you can type the file yourself, as shown in **Figure 1-14**.
3. Save the file as `HelloErrors.java` in the folder in which you want to work. Then compile the class using the following command to confirm that it compiles without error:

```
javac HelloErrors.java
```

4. In the first line of the file, remove the `c` from `class`, making the first line read `public lass HelloErrors`. Save the file and compile the program. Error messages are generated similar to those shown in **Figure 1-15**. Even though you changed only one keystroke in the file, four error messages appear. The first indicates that `class`, `interface`, or `enum` is expected in line 1. You haven't learned about the Java keywords `enum` or `interface` yet, but you know that you caused the error by altering the word `class`. The next three errors in lines 3, 6, and 7 show that the compile is continuing to look for one of the three keywords, but fails to find them.

Figure 1-14 The `HelloErrors` class

```
public class HelloErrors
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.println("Hello");
        System.out.println("This is a test");
    }
}
```

Figure 1-15 Error messages generated when `class` is misspelled in the `HelloErrors` program

```
C:\Java>javac HelloErrors.java
HelloErrors.java:1: error: class, interface, or enum expected
public lass HelloErrors
          ^
HelloErrors.java:3: error: class, interface, or enum expected
    public static void main(String[] args)
              ^
HelloErrors.java:6: error: class, interface, or enum expected
        System.out.println("This is a test");
              ^
HelloErrors.java:7: error: class, interface, or enum expected
    }
          ^
4 errors

C:\Java>
```

5. Repair the program by reinserting the `c` in `class`. Save the file and compile it again. The program should compile successfully. In this case, when you fix one error, four error messages are removed.
6. Next, remove the word `void` from the third line of the program. Save the file and compile it. **Figure 1-16** shows the error message, which indicates that a return type is required. The message does not indicate that `void` is missing because Java supports many return types for methods. In this case, however, `void` is the correct return type, so reinsert it into the correct place in the program, and then save and recompile the file.

Figure 1-16 Error message generated when `void` is omitted from the `main()` method header in the `HelloErrors` program

```
C:\Java>javac HelloErrors.java
HelloErrors.java:3: error: invalid method declaration; return type required
    public static main(String[] args)
                    ^
1 error

C:\Java>
```

7. Remove the final closing curly brace from the `HelloErrors` program. Save the file and recompile it. **Figure 1-17** shows the generated message “reached end of file while parsing.” **Parsing** is the process the compiler uses to divide your source code into meaningful portions; the message means that the compiler was in the process of analyzing the code when the end of the file was encountered prematurely. If you repair the error by reinserting the closing curly brace, saving the file, and recompiling it, you remove the error message.

Figure 1-17 Error message generated when the closing curly brace is omitted from the `HelloErrors` program

```
C:\Java>javac HelloErrors.java
HelloErrors.java:7: error: reached end of file while parsing
    }
    ^
1 error

C:\Java>
```

8. Continue to introduce errors in the program by misspelling words, omitting punctuation, and adding extraneous keystrokes. Remember to save each program version before you recompile it; otherwise, you will recompile the previous version. When error messages are generated, read them carefully and try to understand their meaning in the context of the error you purposely caused. After all compiler error messages have been eliminated, you can run the program using the `java` command.

Occasionally, even though you inserted an error into the program, no error messages will be generated. That does not mean your program is correct. It only means that the program contains no syntax errors. A program can be free of syntax errors but still not be correct, as you will learn in the next section.

1.6 Running a Java Application and Correcting Logic Errors

After a program compiles with no syntax errors, you can execute it. Just because a program compiles and executes, however, does not mean the program is error free.

Running a Java Application

To run an application from a development environment, you can click the Run button or click the Build menu and then click Run. To run the *First* application from the command line, you type the following:

```
java First
```

Figure 1-18 shows the application's output in the command window. In this example, you can see that the *First* class is stored in a folder named *Java* on the C drive. After you type the `java` command to execute the program, the literal string in the call to the `println()` method is output, so *First Java application* appears on the screen. Control then returns to the command prompt.

Figure 1-18 Output of the *First* application

```
C:\Java>java First
First Java application
C:\Java>
```

Note

The procedure to confirm the storage location of your *First.java* class varies depending on your operating system. In a Windows operating system, for example, you can open Windows Explorer, locate the icon representing the storage device you are using, find the folder in which you have saved the file, and expand the folder. You should see the *First.java* file.

When you run a Java application using the `java` command, do not add the `.class` extension to the filename. If you type `java First`, the interpreter looks for a file named *First.class*. If you type `java First.class`, the interpreter looks for a file named *First.class.class*.

Modifying a Compiled Java Class

After viewing the application output, you might decide to modify the class to get a different result. For example, you might decide to change the *First* application's output from *First Java application* to the following:

```
My new and improved
Java application
```

To produce the new output, first you must modify the text file that contains the existing class. You need to change the existing literal string and then add an output statement for another text string. **Figure 1-19** shows the class that changes the output.

The changes to the *First* class include the addition of the statement `System.out.println("My new and improved");` and the removal of the word *First* from the string in the other `println()` statement.

Figure 1-19 *First* class containing output modified from the original version

```
public class First
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.println("My new and improved");
        System.out.println("Java application");
    }
}
```

If you make changes to the file, as shown in Figure 1-19, and save the file without recompiling it, then when you execute the program by typing `java First` at the command line, you will not see the new output—you will see the old output without the added line. Even though you save a text file that contains the modified source code for a class, the class in the already-compiled class file executes. After you save the file named `First.java`, the previously compiled version of the class with the same name is still stored on your computer. Before the new source code can execute, you must do the following:

1. Save the file with the changes (using the same filename).
2. Recompile the class with the `javac` command.
3. Interpret the class bytecode and execute the class using the `java` command.

Figure 1-20 shows the new output.

When you recompile a class, the original version of the compiled file with the `.class` extension is replaced, and the original version no longer exists. When you modify a class, you must decide whether you want to retain the original version. If you do, you must give the new version a new class name and a new filename, or you must save it in a different folder.

Figure 1-20 Execution of modified `First` class

```
C:\Java>java First
My new and improved
Java application
C:\Java>
```

Note

Once in a while, when you make a change to a Java class and then recompile and execute it, the old version still runs. The simplest solution is to delete the `.class` file and compile again. Programmers call this creating a **clean build**.

Correcting Logic Errors

A second kind of error occurs when the syntax of the program is correct and the program compiles but produces incorrect results when you execute it. This type of error is a logic error, which is often more difficult to find and resolve. For example, **Figure 1-21** shows the output of the execution of a successfully compiled program named `FirstBadOutput`. If you glance at the output too quickly, you might not notice that `Java` is misspelled. The compiler does not find spelling errors within a literal string; it is legitimate to produce any combination of letters as output. Other examples of logic errors include multiplying two values when you meant to add, printing one copy of a report when you meant to print five, or forgetting to produce a total at the end of a business report when a user has requested one. Errors of this type must be detected by carefully examining the program output. It is the responsibility of the program author to test programs and find any logic errors.

You have already learned that syntax errors are compile-time errors. A logic error is a type of **runtime error**—an error not detected until the program asks the computer to do something wrong, or even illegal, while executing. Not all runtime errors are the fault of the programmer. For example, a computer’s hardware might fail while a program is executing. Good programming practices, however, can help to minimize runtime errors.

Figure 1-21 Output of `FirstBadOutput` program

```
C:\Java>java FirstBadOutput
First Java application
C:\Java>
```

Note

The process of fixing computer errors has been known as debugging since a large moth was found wedged into the circuitry of a mainframe computer at Harvard University in 1947. You can search the Web for pictures of the moth.

Two Truths & a Lie

Running a Java Application and Correcting Logic Errors

1. In Java, if a class is `public`, you must save the class in a file with exactly the same name and a `.java` extension.
2. To compile a file named `MyProgram.java`, you type `java MyProgram`, but to execute the program, you type `java MyProgram.java`.
3. When you compile a program, sometimes one error in syntax causes multiple error messages.

The false statement is #2. To compile a file named `MyProgram.java`, you type `javac MyProgram.java`, but to execute the program, you type the following:

```
java MyProgram
```

1.7 Adding Comments to a Java Class

As you can see, even the simplest Java class requires several lines of code and contains somewhat perplexing syntax. Large applications that perform many tasks include much more code, and as you write larger applications, it becomes increasingly difficult to remember why you included steps or how you intended to use particular variables. Documenting your program code helps you remember why you wrote lines of code the way you did. **Program comments** are nonexecuting statements that you add to a program for the purpose of documentation. In other words, comments are designed for people reading the source code and not for the computer executing the program.

Programmers use comments to leave notes for themselves and for others who might read their programs in the future. At the very least, your Java class files should include comments indicating the author, the date, and the class name or function. The best practice dictates that you also include a brief comment to describe the purpose of each method you create within a class.

As you work through this course, add comments as the first lines of every file. The comments should contain the class name and purpose, your name, and the date. Your instructor might ask you to include additional comments.

Turning some program statements into comments can sometimes be useful when you are developing an application. If a program is not performing as expected, you can “comment out” various statements and subsequently run the program to observe the effect. When you **comment out** a statement, you turn it into a comment so the compiler does not translate it, and the JVM does not execute its command. This can help you pinpoint the location of errant statements in malfunctioning programs.

Java supports three types of comments:

- › **Line comments** start with two forward slashes (`//`) and continue to the end of the current line. A line comment can appear on a line by itself or at the end (and to the right) of a line following executable code. Line comments do not require an ending symbol.
- › **Block comments** start with a forward slash and an asterisk (`/*`) and end with an asterisk and a forward slash (`*/`). A block comment can appear on a line by itself, on a line before executable code, or on a line after executable code. Block comments also can extend across as many lines as needed.
- › **Javadoc** comments are a special case of block comments called **documentation comments** because they are used to automatically generate nicely formatted program documentation with a program named *Javadoc*. Javadoc comments begin with a forward slash and two asterisks (`/**`) and end with an asterisk and a forward slash (`*/`). Appendix E teaches you how to create Javadoc comments.

Note

The forward slash (/) and the backslash (\) characters often are confused, but they are two distinct characters. You cannot use them interchangeably. One way to remember the slash names is to picture the backslash falling backwards in the line as you read from left to right.

Figure 1-22 shows how comments are used in code. In this example, the only statement that executes is the `println`; statement; everything else is a comment.

Figure 1-22 A program segment containing several comments

```
// Demonstrating comments
/* This shows
   that these comments
   don't matter */
System.out.println("Hello"); // This line executes
                           // up to where the comment started
/* Everything but the println()
   is a comment */
```

The only executable code in this segment is the part of this line up to the semicolon.

You might want to create comments simply for aesthetics. For example, you might want to use a comment that is simply a row of dashes or asterisks to use as a visual dividing line between parts of a program.

Note

When a program is used in a business setting, the program frequently is modified over time because of changing business needs. If a programmer changes code but does not change the comments that go with it, it's very possible that people who read the program in the future will be confused or misled. When you modify a program, it's important to change any relevant comments.

Two Truths & a Lie | Adding Comments to a Java Class

1. Line comments start with two forward slashes (//) and end with two backslashes (\\\); they can extend across as many lines as needed.
2. Block comments start with a forward slash and an asterisk (*) and end with an asterisk and a forward slash (* /); they can extend across as many lines as needed.
3. Javadoc comments begin with a forward slash and two asterisks (/**) and end with an asterisk and a forward slash (* /); they are used to generate documentation with a program named Javadoc.

The false statement is #1. Line comments start with two forward slashes (//) and continue to the end of the current line; they do not require an ending symbol.

You Do It | Adding Comments to a Class

In this exercise, you add comments to your `Hello.java` application and save it as a new class named `Hello2` so that you can retain copies of both the original and modified classes.

1. Open the `Hello.java` file you created earlier in this chapter. Enter the following comments at the top of the file, inserting your name and today's date where indicated.

```
// Filename Hello2.java
// Written by <your name>
// Written on <today's date>
```

2. Change the class name to **Hello2**, and then type the following block comment after the class header:

```
/* This class demonstrates the use of the println()
method to print the message Hello, world! */
```

3. Save the file as **Hello2.java**. The file must be named *Hello2.java* because the class name is **Hello2**.
4. Go to the command-line prompt for the drive and folder or subdirectory in which you saved *Hello2.java*, and type the following command to compile the program:

```
javac Hello2.java
```

5. When the compile is successful, execute your application by typing **java Hello2** at the command line. The comments have no effect on program execution; the output should appear on the next line.

Note

After the application compiles successfully, a file named *Hello2.class* is created and stored in the same folder as the *Hello2.java* file. If your application compiled without error but you receive an error message, such as *Exception in thread 'main' java.lang.NoClassDefFoundError*, when you try to execute the application, you probably do not have your class path set correctly. See Appendix A for details.

1.8 Creating a Java Application That Produces GUI Output

Besides allowing you to use the `System` class to produce command window output, Java provides built-in classes that produce GUI output. For example, Java contains a class named `JOptionPane` that allows you to produce dialog boxes. A **dialog box** is a GUI object resembling a window in which you can place messages you want to display. **Figure 1-23** shows a class named `FirstDialog`. The `FirstDialog` class contains many elements that are familiar to you; only the first and sixth lines are new.

Figure 1-23 The `FirstDialog` class

```
import javax.swing.JOptionPane;
public class FirstDialog
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "First Java dialog");
    }
}
```

Note

In older versions of Java, any application that used a `JOptionPane` dialog was required to end with a `System.exit(0);` statement or the application would not terminate. You can add this statement to your programs, and they will work correctly, but it is not necessary. However, you might see this line when examining programs written by others.

In Figure 1-23, the first new statement is an **import statement**. You use an **import statement** when you want to access a built-in Java class that is contained in a group of classes called a **package**. To use the `JOptionPane` class, you must import the package named `javax.swing.JOptionPane`. Any **import statement** you use must be placed outside of any class you write in a file. You will learn more about **import statements** in general, and the `javax.swing` packages in particular, as you continue to study Java.

Note

You do not need to use an **import statement** when you use the `System` class (as with the `System.out.println()` method) because the `System` class is contained in the package `java.lang`, which is automatically imported in every Java program. You could include the statement `import java.lang;` at the top of any file in which you use the `System` class, but you are not required to do so.

The second new statement within the `main()` method in the `FirstDialog` class in Figure 1-23 uses the `showMessageDialog()` method that is part of the `JOptionPane` class. Like the `println()` method that is used for console output, the `showMessageDialog()` method starts with a lowercase letter and is followed by a set of parentheses. However, whereas the `println()` method requires only one argument between its parentheses to produce an output string, the `showMessageDialog()` method requires two arguments. Whenever a method requires multiple arguments, they are separated by commas.

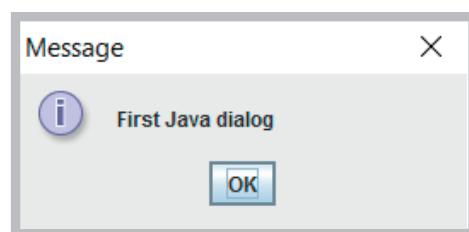
- › When the first argument to `showMessageDialog()` is `null`, as it is in the class in Figure 1-23, it means the output message box should be placed in the center of the screen. (You will learn more about dialog boxes, including how to position them in different locations and how to add more options to them, later in this course.)
- › The second argument to `showMessageDialog()`, after the comma, is the literal string that is displayed.

Note

Earlier in this chapter, you learned that `true`, `false`, and `null` are all reserved words that represent values.

When a user executes the `FirstDialog` class, the dialog box in **Figure 1-24** is displayed. The user must click the **OK** button or the Close button to dismiss the dialog box. If the user has a touch screen, the user can touch the **OK** button or the Close button.

Figure 1-24 Output of the `FirstDialog` application



Two Truths & a Lie | Creating a Java Application That Produces GUI Output

1. A dialog box is a GUI object resembling a window, in which you can place messages you want to display.
2. You use an `append` statement when you want to access a built-in Java class that is contained in a group of classes called a package.
3. Different methods can require different numbers of arguments.

The false statement is #2. You use an **import statement** when you want to access a built-in Java class that is contained in a group of classes called a package.

You Do It | Creating a Dialog Box

Next, you write a Java application that produces output in a dialog box.

1. Open a new file in your text editor. Type comments similar to the following, inserting your own name and today's date where indicated.

```
// Filename HelloDialog.java
// Written by <your name>
// Written on <today's date>
```

2. Enter the `import` statement that allows you to use the `JOptionPane` class:

```
import javax.swing.JOptionPane;
```

3. Enter the `HelloDialog` class:

```
public class HelloDialog
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Hello, world!");
    }
}
```

4. Save the file as `HelloDialog.java`. Compile the class using the following command:

```
javac HelloDialog.java
```

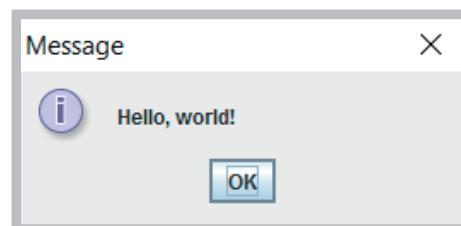
5. If necessary, eliminate any syntax errors, resave the file, and recompile. Then execute the program using the following command:

```
java HelloDialog
```

The output appears as shown in **Figure 1-25**.

6. Click **OK** to dismiss the dialog box.

Figure 1-25 Output of `HelloDialog` application



Note

Instead of clicking the Close button in a Java dialog box, you can press **Ctrl + C** at the command prompt to end a program.

1.9 Finding Help

As you write Java programs, you can consult these lessons and other Java documentation. A great wealth of helpful material exists online, especially at the Java website. (Using an Internet browser, search for *docs oracle java api*; you also have the option of including the version number you are using for your Java programs. For most documentation you will want to explore, the version number is not important because most Java classes and methods you use have not changed for many versions.) The Java application programming interface, more commonly referred to as the **Java API**, is also called the Java class library; it contains information about how to use every prewritten Java class, including lists of all the methods you can use with the classes.

Also of interest at the Java website are frequently asked questions (**FAQs**) that provide brief answers to many common questions about Java software and products. You can also find several versions of the Java Development Kit (**JDK**) that

you can download for free. The JDK is an **SDK**—a software development kit that includes tools used by programmers. Versions are available for Windows, Linux, and Solaris operating systems. You can search and browse documentation online, or you can download the documentation file for the JDK and install it on your computer. After it is installed, you can search and browse documentation locally.

A downloadable set of lessons titled “The Java Tutorial” with hundreds of complete working examples also is available online. The tutorial is organized into trails—groups of lessons on a particular subject. You can start the tutorial at the beginning and navigate sequentially to the end, or you can jump from one trail to another. As you study each chapter in this course, you are encouraged to make good use of these support materials.

You Do It | Exploring Java Documentation

In this section, you explore some of the material at the Java website.

1. Open an Internet browser, search for **oracle docs Java api java.lang.System**, and follow one of the links to the documentation.
2. Scroll down until you can see the **Field Summary** for the `System` class.
3. You can see that the `System` class contains three fields: `err`, `in`, and `out`. You are already familiar with the `out` field, and you can see that it is an object of type `PrintStream`. Click the hypertext for the `PrintStream` type to be taken to a new page with details about that class.
4. Scroll through the methods of the `PrintStream` class. Notice that the class contains several versions of the `print()` and `println()` methods. Find the version of the `println()` method that accepts a `String` argument. Click the link to the method to read details about it. For example, the link shows that the `println()` method prints a `String` and then terminates the line.

Many parts of the Java documentation won’t mean much to you until you study data types and methods in more detail in the next few chapters. For now, you can explore the Java website to get an idea of the wealth of classes that have been created for you.

Don’t Do It

At the end of each chapter, a Don’t Do It list will alert you to common mistakes made by beginning programmers.

- › Don’t forget that in Java, a public file’s name must match the name of the class it contains. For example, if a file is named `Program1.java`, you can’t simply rename it `Program1BackUp.java` and expect it to compile unless you change the class name within the file.
- › Don’t confuse the terms *parentheses*, *braces*, *brackets*, *curly braces*, *square brackets*, and *angle brackets*. When you are writing a program or performing some other computerized task and someone tells you, “Now, type some braces,” you might want to clarify which term is meant. **Table 1-4** summarizes these punctuation marks.
- › Don’t forget to end a block comment. Every `/*` must have a corresponding `*/`, even if it is several lines later. It’s harder to make a mistake with line comments (those that start with `//`), but remember that nothing on the line after the `//` will execute.
- › Don’t forget that Java is case sensitive.
- › Don’t forget to end every statement with a semicolon, but *not* to end class or method headers with a semicolon.

Table 1-4 Braces and brackets used in Java

PUNCTUATION	NAME	TYPICAL USE IN JAVA	ALTERNATE NAMES
()	Parentheses	A set of parentheses follows method names, as in <code>print()</code> .	Parentheses can be called <i>round brackets</i> , but such usage is unusual.
{ }	Curly braces	A pair of curly braces surrounds a class body, a method body, and a block of code. When you learn about arrays, you will find that curly braces also surround lists of array values.	Curly braces might also be called <i>curly brackets</i> .
[]	Square brackets	A pair signifies an array; you will learn about arrays later in this course.	Square brackets might be called <i>box brackets</i> or <i>square braces</i> .
< >	Angle brackets	Angle brackets are used with generic arguments in parameterized classes.	When angle brackets appear with nothing between them, they are called a <i>diamond</i> or a <i>chevron</i> .

- › Don't forget to recompile a program to which you have made changes. It can be very frustrating to fix an error, run a program, and not understand why you don't see evidence of your changes. The reason might be that the `.class` file does not contain your changes because you forgot to recompile.
- › Don't panic when you see a lot of compiler error messages. Often, fixing one will fix several.
- › Don't think your program is perfect when all compiler errors are eliminated. Only by running the program multiple times and carefully examining the output can you be assured that your program is logically correct.

Summary

- › A computer program is a set of instructions that tells a computer what to do. You can write a program using a high-level programming language, which has its own syntax, or rules of the language. After you write a program, you use a compiler or interpreter to translate the language statements into machine code.
- › Writing object-oriented programs involves creating classes, creating objects from those classes, and creating applications that use those objects. Object-oriented programming languages support encapsulation, inheritance, and polymorphism.
- › A program written in Java is run on a standardized hypothetical computer called the Java Virtual Machine (JVM). When a class is compiled into bytecode, an interpreter within the JVM subsequently interprets the bytecode and communicates with the operating system to produce the program results.
- › Everything within a Java program must be part of a class and contained within opening and closing curly braces. Methods within classes hold statements, and every statement ends with a semicolon. Dots are used to separate classes, objects, and methods in program code. All Java applications must have a method named `main()`, and many Java applications contain additional methods.
- › To compile your source code from the command line, type `javac` followed by the name of the file that contains the source code. The compiler might issue syntax error messages that you must correct. When you successfully compile your source code, the compiler creates a file with a `.class` extension.
- › You can run a compiled `.class` file on any computer that has a Java language interpreter by entering the `java` command followed by the name of the class file. When you modify a class, you must recompile it for the changes to take effect. After a program executes, you must examine the output for logic errors.
- › Program comments are nonexecuting statements that you add to a file for documentation. Java provides you with three types of comments: line comments, block comments, and Javadoc comments.

- › Java provides you with built-in classes that produce GUI output. For example, Java contains a class named `JOptionPane` that allows you to produce dialog boxes.
- › You can find a wealth of helpful material about Java programming online.

Key Terms

access specifier	graphical user interfaces (GUIs)	Pascal casing
Allman style	hardware	passing arguments
application software	high-level programming language	polymorphism
architecturally neutral	identifier	procedural programming
arguments	import statement	procedures
at run time	inheritance	program
attributes	instance	program comments
block comments	instantiation	program statements
bugs	interpreter	properties
bytecode	Java	public
call a procedure	Java API	runtime error
class	Java interpreter	SDK
class body	Java Virtual Machine (JVM)	semantic errors
class definition	Javadoc	software
class header	JDK	source code
clean build	K & R style	standard output device
commands	keywords	state
comment out	line comments	static
compile-time error	literal string	String class
compiler	logic	syntax
computer program	logic error	syntax error
computer simulations	low-level programming language	system software
console applications	machine code	Unicode
debugging	machine language	upper camel casing
development environment	method	variable
dialog box	method header	void
documentation comments	object	whitespace
encapsulation	object-oriented programs	windowed applications
executing	package	Write once, run anywhere (WORA)
FAQs	parsing	



Review Questions

1. The most basic circuitry-level computer language is _____.
a. machine language
b. Java
c. high-level language
d. C++
2. Languages that let you use an easily understood vocabulary of descriptive terms, such as *read*, *write*, or *add*, are known as _____ languages.
a. procedural
b. high-level
c. machine
d. object-oriented
3. The rules of a programming language constitute its _____.
a. syntax
b. logic
c. format
d. objects
4. A _____ translates high-level language statements into machine code.
a. programmer
b. syntax detector
c. compiler
d. decipherer
5. Named computer memory locations are called _____.
a. compilers
b. variables
c. addresses
d. appellations
6. The individual operations used in a computer program are often grouped into logical units called _____.
a. procedures
b. variables
c. constants
d. logistics
7. Envisioning program components as objects that are similar to concrete objects in the real world is the hallmark of _____.
a. command-line operating systems
b. procedural programming
c. object-oriented programming
d. machine languages
8. The values of an object's attributes are known as its _____.
a. state
b. orientation
c. methods
d. condition
9. An instance of a class is a(n) _____.
a. method
b. procedure
c. object
d. case
10. Java is architecturally _____.
a. neutral
b. oriented
c. specific
d. abstract
11. You must compile classes written in Java into _____.
a. bytecode
b. source code
c. Javadoc statements
d. object code

Programming Exercises

1. Is each of the following class identifiers (a) legal and conventional, (b) legal but unconventional, or (c) illegal?

a. myClass	f. Apartment
b. void	g. Fruit
c. Golden Retriever	h. 8888
d. invoice#	i. displayTotal()
e. 36542ZipCode	j. Accounts Receivable

2. Is each of the following method identifiers (a) legal and conventional, (b) legal but unconventional, or (c) illegal?

a. associationRules()	f. PayrollApp()
b. void()	g. getReady()
c. Golden Retriever()	h. 911()
d. invoice#()	i. displayTotal()
e. 36542ZipCode()	j. Accounts_Receivable()

3. Name at least three attributes that might be appropriate for each of the following classes:

a. RealEstateListing	c. CreditCardBill
b. Vacation	

4. Name at least three real-life objects that are instances of each of the following classes:

a. Song	c. Musician
b. CollegeCourse	

5. Name at least three classes to which each of these objects might belong:

a. myRedBicycle	c. cellphone
b. friedEgg	

6. Write, compile, and test a class that uses four `println()` statements to display four lines of the lyrics of your favorite song. Save the class as **SongLyrics.java**.

Note

As you work through the programming exercises in this course, you will create many files. To organize them, you might want to create a separate folder in which to store the files for each chapter.

7. Write, compile, and test a class that uses four `println()` statements to display, in order, your favorite movie quote, the movie it comes from, the character who said it, and the year of the movie. Save the class as **MovieQuoteInfo.java**.

8. Write, compile, and test a class that displays the pattern shown in **Figure 1-26**. Save the class as **TableAndChairs.java**.

9. Write, compile, and test a class that displays the pattern shown in **Figure 1-27**. Save the class as **Triangle.java**.

10. Write, compile, and test a class that displays the following statement about comments on two lines:

Program comments are nonexecuting statements you add to a file for documentation.

Also include the same statement in three different comments in the class; each comment should use one of the three different methods of including comments in a Java class. Save the class as **Comments.java**.

Figure 1-26 Output of **TableAndChairs** program

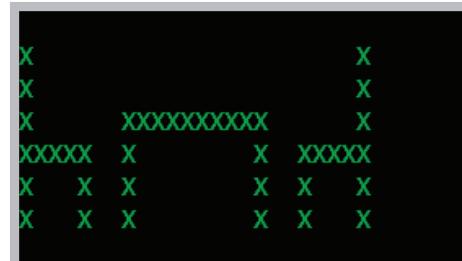


Figure 1-27 Output of **Triangle** program



11. From 1925 through 1963, Burma Shave advertising signs appeared next to highways across the United States. There were always four or five signs in a row containing pieces of a rhyme, followed by a final sign that read *Burma Shave*. For example, one set of signs that has been preserved by the Smithsonian Institution reads as follows:

Shaving brushes
You'll soon see 'em
On a shelf
In some museum
Burma Shave

Find a classic Burma Shave rhyme on the Web, making sure the fifth line is *Burma Shave*. Write, compile, and test a class that displays the slogan. Save the class as **BurmaShave.java**.

Debugging Exercises

- Each of the following files in the Chapter01 folder in your downloadable student files has syntax and/or logic errors. In each case, determine the problem and fix the errors. After you correct the errors, save each file using the same filename preceded with *Fix*. For example, *DebugOne1.java* will become **FixDebugOne1.java**.
 - DebugOne1.java*
 - DebugOne2.java*
 - DebugOne3.java*
 - DebugOne4.java*

Note

When you change a filename, remember to change every instance of the class name within the file so that it matches the new filename. In Java, the filename and class name must always match.

Game Zone

- Computer games have been around for a long time:
 - In 1947, Thomas T. Goldsmith, Jr., and Estle Ray Mann filed the first patent for a computer game.
 - In 1952, A. S. Douglas wrote his University of Cambridge Ph.D. dissertation on human-computer interaction, and created the first graphical computer game—a version of tic-tac-toe.
 - In 1962, the first computer game that could be played at multiple computers was developed at MIT. It was called *Spacewar!*
 - The first commercially available video game was *Pong*, introduced by Atari in 1973.
 - In 1980, Atari's *Asteroids* and *Lunar Lander* became the first video games to be registered in the U.S. Copyright Office.
 - Throughout the 1980s, players spent hours with games that now seem very simple and unglamorous, such as *Adventure*, *Oregon Trail*, *Where in the World Is Carmen Sandiego?*, and *Myst*.

Today, commercial computer games are much more complex; they require many programmers, graphic artists, and testers to develop them, and large management and marketing staffs are needed to promote them. A game might cost many millions of dollars to develop and market, but a successful game might earn hundreds of millions of dollars. Obviously, with the brief introduction to programming you have had in this chapter, you cannot create a very sophisticated game. However, you can get started.

For games to hold your interest, they almost always include some random, unpredictable behavior. For example, a game in which you shoot asteroids loses some of its fun if the asteroids follow the same, predictable path each time you play the game. Therefore, generating random values is a key component in creating most interesting computer games.

Appendix D contains information about generating random numbers. To fully understand the process, you must learn more about Java classes and methods. For now, however, you can copy the following statement to generate and use a dialog box that displays a random number between 1 and 10:

```
JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "The number is "+  
    (1 + (int)(Math.random() * 10)));
```

Write a Java application that displays two dialog boxes in sequence. The first asks you to think of a number between 1 and 10. The second displays a randomly generated number; the user can see whether the guess was accurate. (After you study future chapters, you will be able to improve this game so that the user can enter a guess, and the program can determine whether the user was correct. Also, as you gain skills in Java, you will be able to tell the user how far off the guess was, tell the user whether the guess was high or low, and provide a specific number of repeat attempts.) Save the file as **RandomGuess.java**.

Case Problems

The case problems in this section introduce two fictional businesses. Throughout this course, you will create increasingly complex classes for these businesses that use the newest concepts you have mastered in each chapter.

1.
 - a. Yummy Catering provides meals for parties and special events. Write a program that displays Yummy Catering's motto, which is *Yummy makes the food that makes it a party*. Save the file as **YummyMotto.java**.
 - b. Create a second program that displays the motto surrounded by a border composed of asterisks. Save the file as **YummyMotto2.java**.
2.
 - a. Sunshine Seashore Supplies rents beach equipment such as kayaks, canoes, beach chairs, and umbrellas to tourists. Write a program that displays Sunshine's motto, which is *Sunshine Seashore makes it fun in the sun*. Save the file as **SunshineMotto.java**.
 - b. Create a second program that displays the motto surrounded by a border composed of repeated Ss. Save the file as **SunshineMotto2.java**.

Using Data

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to:

- 2.1 Declare and use constants and variables
 - 2.2 Use integer data types
 - 2.3 Use the boolean data type
 - 2.4 Use floating-point data types
 - 2.5 Use the char data type
 - 2.6 Use the Scanner class to accept keyboard input
 - 2.7 Use the JOptionPane class to accept GUI input
 - 2.8 Perform arithmetic using variables and constants
 - 2.9 Describe type conversion
-

2.1 Declaring and Using Constants and Variables

A data item is **constant** when its value cannot be changed while a program is running. For example, when you include the following statement in a Java class, the number 459 is a constant:

```
System.out.println(459);
```

Every time an application containing the constant 459 is executed, the value 459 is displayed. Programmers refer to a number such as 459 in several ways:

- › It is a **literal constant** because its value is taken literally at each use.
- › It is a **numeric constant** as opposed to a character or string constant.
- › It is an **unnamed constant** as opposed to a named one, because no identifier is associated with it.

Note

A programmer also might say that when a constant value such as 459 appears in a program, it is *hard-coded*.

Instead of using constant data, you can set up a data item to be variable. Recall that a variable is a named memory location that can store a value. A variable can hold only one value at a time, but the value it holds can change. For example, if you create a variable named `ovenTemperature`, it might hold 0 when the application starts, later be altered to hold 350, and still later be altered to hold 400. Whether a data item is variable or constant, in Java it always has a data type. An item's **data type** describes the following:

- › The type of data that can be stored there
- › How much memory the item occupies
- › What types of operations can be performed on the data

Java provides for eight primitive types of data. A **primitive type** is a simple data type. Java's eight data types are described in **Table 2-1**. Later in this chapter, you will learn more specific information about several of these data types.

The eight data types in Table 2-1 are called *primitive* because they are simple and uncomplicated. Primitive types also serve as the building blocks for more complex data types, called **reference types**, which hold memory addresses. When you begin to create classes from which objects will be instantiated, they will be examples of reference types, as are the `System` class you have already used and the `Scanner` class you will use later in this chapter.

Table 2-1 Java primitive data types

KEYWORD	DESCRIPTION
<code>byte</code>	Byte-length integer
<code>short</code>	Short integer
<code>int</code>	Integer
<code>long</code>	Long integer
<code>float</code>	Single-precision floating point
<code>double</code>	Double-precision floating point
<code>char</code>	A single character
<code>boolean</code>	A Boolean value (<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>)

Declaring Variables

A **variable declaration** is a statement that reserves a named memory location and includes the following:

- › A data type that identifies the type of data that the variable will store
- › An identifier that is the variable's name
- › An optional assignment operator and assigned value, if you want a variable to contain an initial value
- › An ending semicolon

Variable names must be legal Java identifiers. Basically, a variable name must start with a letter, cannot contain spaces, and cannot be a reserved keyword. You must declare a variable before you can use it. You can declare a variable at any point before you use it, but it is common practice to declare variables first in a method and to place executable statements after the declarations. Java is a **strongly typed language**, or one in which each variable has a well-defined data type that limits the operations you can perform with it; strong typing implies that all variables must be declared before they can be used.

Variable names conventionally begin with lowercase letters to distinguish them from class names. However, as with class names, a program can compile without error even if names are constructed unconventionally. Beginning an identifier with a lowercase letter and capitalizing subsequent words within the identifier is a style known as **camel casing**. An identifier such as `lastName` resembles a camel because of the uppercase "hump" in the middle.

For example, the following declaration creates a conventionally named `int` variable, `myAge`, and assigns it an initial value of 25:

```
int myAge = 25;
```

This declaration is a complete, executable statement, so it ends with a semicolon. The equal sign (=) is the **assignment operator**. Any value to the right of the assignment operator is assigned to the memory location named on the left. An assignment made when you declare a variable is an **initialization**; an assignment made later is simply an **assignment**. Thus, the first statement that follows is an initialization, and the second is an assignment:

```
int myAge = 25;  
myAge = 42;
```

You declare a variable just once in a method, but you might assign new values to it any number of times. (A compiler error message will be displayed when there is a conflict between two variables with the same name.)

Note that an expression with a literal to the left of the assignment operator (such as 25 = myAge) is illegal. The assignment operator has right-to-left associativity. **Associativity** refers to the order in which values are used with operators. The associativity of every operator is either right-to-left or left-to-right. An identifier that can appear on the left side of an assignment operator sometimes is referred to as an **lvalue**, and an item that can appear only on the right side of an assignment operator is an **rvalue**. A variable can be used as an lvalue or an rvalue, but a literal constant can only be an rvalue.

When you declare a variable within a method but do not assign a value to it, it is an **uninitialized variable**. For example, the following variable declaration declares a variable of type int named myAge, but no value is assigned at the time of creation:

```
int myAge;
```

An uninitialized variable contains an unknown value called a **garbage value**. Java protects you from inadvertently using the garbage value that is stored in an uninitialized variable. For example, if you attempt to display garbage or use it as part of a calculation, you receive an error message stating that the variable might not have been initialized, and the program will not compile.

Note

When you learn about creating classes, you will discover that variables declared in a class, but outside any method, are automatically initialized for you.

Note

Some programmers prefer to initialize all variables. Others prefer to initialize a variable only if it can be given a meaningful value at the start of a program. For example, if an age will be entered by the user, many programmers would not assign the age a value when it is first declared. You should follow whichever practice your organization prefers.

You can declare multiple variables of the same type in separate statements. You also can declare two or more variables of the same type in a single statement by separating the variable declarations with a comma, as shown in the following statement:

```
int height = 70, weight = 190;
```

By convention, many programmers declare each variable in its own separate statement, but some follow the convention of declaring multiple variables in the same statement if their purposes are closely related. Remember that even if a statement occupies multiple lines, the statement is not complete until the semicolon is reached.

You can declare as many variables in a statement as you want, as long as the variables are the same data type. However, if you want to declare variables of different types, you must use a separate statement for each type.

Declaring Named Constants

A variable is a named memory location for which the contents can change. If a named location's value should not change during the execution of a program, you can create it to be a **named constant**. A named constant is also known as a **symbolic constant**. A named constant is similar to a variable in that it has a data type, a name, and a value. A named constant differs from a variable in several ways:

- › In its declaration statement, the data type of a named constant is preceded by the keyword **final**.
 - › A named constant can be assigned a value only once, and then it cannot be changed later in the program.
- Usually, you initialize a named constant when you declare it; if you do not initialize the constant at declaration, it is known as a **blank final**, and you can assign a value later. Either way, you must assign a value to a constant before it is used.
- › Although it is not a requirement, named constants conventionally are given identifiers using all uppercase letters, and using underscores as needed to separate words.

For example, each of the following defines a conventionally named constant:

```
final int NUMBER_OF_DEPTS = 20;
final double PI = 3.14159;
final double TAX_RATE = 0.015;
final String COMPANY = "ABC Manufacturing";
```

You can use each of these named constants anywhere you use a variable of the same type, except on the left side of an assignment statement after the first value has been assigned. In other words, when it receives a value, a named constant is an lvalue, but after the assignment, a named constant is an rvalue.

A constant always has the same value within a program, so you might wonder why you should not use the actual, literal value. For example, why not use the unnamed constant *20* when you need the number of departments in a company rather than going to the trouble of creating the *NUMBER_OF_DEPTS* named constant? There are several good reasons to use the named constant rather than the literal one:

- › The number 20 is more easily recognized as the number of departments if it is associated with an identifier. Using named constants makes your programs easier to read and understand. Some programmers refer to the use of a literal numeric constant, such as 20, as using a **magic number**—a value that does not have immediate, intuitive meaning or a number that cannot be explained without additional knowledge. For example, you might write a program that uses the value 7 for several purposes, so you might use constants such as *DAYS_IN_WEEK* and *NUM_RETAIL_OUTLETS* that both hold the value 7 but more clearly describe the purposes. Avoiding magic numbers helps provide internal documentation for your programs.
- › If the number of departments in your organization changes, you would change the value of *NUMBER_OF_DEPTS* at one location within your program—where the constant is defined—rather than searching for every use of 20 to change it to a different number. Being able to make the change at one location saves you time and prevents you from missing a reference to the number of departments.
- › Even if you are willing to search for every instance of 20 in a program to change it to the new department number value, you might inadvertently change the value of one instance of 20 that is being used for something else, such as a payroll deduction value.
- › Using named constants reduces typographical errors. For example, if you must include 20 at several places within a program, you might inadvertently type 10 or 200 for one of the instances, and the compiler will not recognize the mistake. However, if you use the identifier *NUMBER_OF_DEPTS*, the compiler will ensure that you spell it correctly.
- › When you use a named constant in an expression, it stands out as different from a variable. For example, in the following arithmetic statement, it is easy to see which elements are variable and which are constant because the constants have been named conventionally using all uppercase letters and underscores to separate words:

```
double payAmount = hoursWorked * STD_PAY_RATE - numDependents * DEDUCTION;
```

Although many programmers use named constants to stand for most of the constant values in their programs, many make an exception when using 0 or 1.

The Scope of Variables and Constants

A data item's **scope** is the area in which it is visible to a program and in which you can refer to it using its simple identifier. A variable or constant is in scope from the point it is declared until the end of the block of code in which the declaration lies. A **block of code** is the code contained between a set of curly braces. So, for example, if you declare a variable or constant within a method, it can be used from its declaration until the end of the method unless the method contains multiple sets of curly braces. Then, a data item is usable only until the end of the block that holds the declaration.

Note

Many classes you create later in this course will contain multiple sets of curly braces. Later, you will learn some techniques for using variables that are not currently in scope.

Concatenating Strings to Variables and Constants

As you have learned, you can use a `print()` or `println()` statement to create console output. The only difference between them is that the `println()` statement starts a new line after output. You can display a variable or a constant in a `print()` or `println()` statement alone or in combination with a string. For example, the `NumbersPrintln` class shown in **Figure 2-1** declares an integer `billingDate`, which is initialized to 5.

Figure 2-1 `NumbersPrintln` class

```
public class NumbersPrintln
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int billingDate = 5;
        System.out.print("Bills are sent on day ");
        System.out.print(billingDate); billingDate is used alone
        System.out.println(" of the month");
        System.out.println("Next bill: October " +
                           billingDate); billingDate is concatenated with a string
    }
}
```

In one output statement in Figure 2-1, the value of `billingDate` is sent alone to the `print()` method; in the other, `billingDate` is combined with, or **concatenated** to, a String. In Figure 2-1, `print()` and `println()` method calls are used to display different data types, including simple Strings, an `int`, and a concatenated String. The output appears in **Figure 2-2**.

Figure 2-2 Output of `NumbersPrintln` application

```
Bills are sent on day 5 of the month
Next bill: October 5
```

Note

The last output statement in Figure 2-1 is spread across two lines because it is relatively long. The statement could be written on a single line, or it could break to a new line before or after either parenthesis or before or after the plus sign. When a line is long and contains a plus sign, the examples used in this course will follow the convention of breaking the line following the sign. When you are reading a line, seeing a plus sign at the end makes it easier for you to recognize that the statement continues on the following line.

Note

Later in this chapter, you will learn that a plus sign (+) between two numeric values indicates an addition operation. However, when you place a string on one or both sides of a plus sign, concatenation occurs. Recall that *polymorphism* describes the feature of languages that allows the same word or symbol to be interpreted correctly in different situations based on the context. The plus sign is polymorphic in that it indicates concatenation when used with strings but addition when used with numbers.

When you concatenate `String`s with numbers, the entire expression is a `String`. Therefore, the expression "A" + 3 + 4 results in the `String` "A34". If your intention is to create the `String` "A7", then you could add parentheses to write "A" + (3 + 4) so that the numeric expression is evaluated first.

The program in Figure 2-1 uses the command line to display output, but you also can use a dialog box. Recall that you can use the `showMessageDialog()` method with two arguments: `null`, which indicates that the box should appear in the center of the screen, and the `String` to be displayed in the box. (Whenever a method contains more than one argument, the arguments are separated by commas.)

Note

In Java, `null` means that no value has been assigned. It is not the same as a space or a 0; it literally is nothing.

Figure 2-3 shows a `NumbersDialog` class that uses the `showMessageDialog()` method twice to display an integer declared as `creditDays` and initialized to 30. In each method call, the numeric variable is concatenated to a `String`, making the entire second argument a `String`. In the first call to `showMessageDialog()`, the concatenated `String` is an empty `String` that is created by typing a set of quotes with nothing between them. The application produces the two dialog boxes shown in **Figures 2-4** and **2-5**. The first dialog box shows just the value 30; after it is dismissed by clicking OK, the second dialog box appears.

Figure 2-3 `NumbersDialog` class

```
import javax.swing.JOptionPane;
public class NumbersDialog
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int creditDays = 30;
        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "" + creditDays);
        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Every bill is due in " + creditDays + " days");
    }
}
```

Figure 2-4 First dialog box created by `NumbersDialog` application

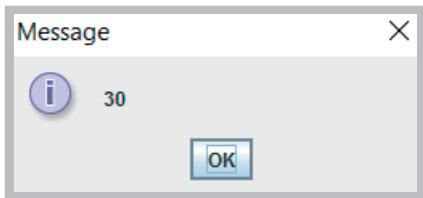
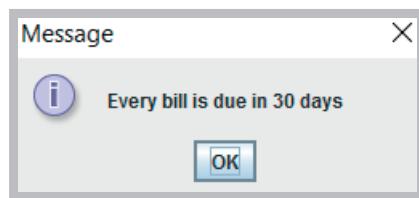


Figure 2-5 Second dialog box created by `NumbersDialog` application



Pitfall: Forgetting That a Variable Holds One Value at a Time

Each variable can hold just one value at a time. Suppose you have two variables, `x` and `y`, and `x` holds 2 and `y` holds 10. Suppose further that you want to switch their values so that `x` holds 10 and `y` holds 2. You cannot simply make an assignment such as `x = y` because then both variables will hold 10, and the 2 will be lost. Similarly, if you make the assignment `y = x`, then both variables will hold 2, and the 10 will be lost. The solution is to declare and use a third variable, as in the following sequence of events:

```
int x = 2, y = 10, z;
z = x;
x = y;
y = z;
```

In this example, the third variable, `z`, is used as a temporary holding spot for one of the original values.

- › The variable `z` is assigned the value of `x`, so `z` becomes 2.
- › Then the value of `y`, 10, is assigned to `x`.
- › Finally, the 2 held in `z` is assigned to `y`.

The extra variable is used because as soon as you assign a value to a variable, any value that was previously in the memory location is gone.

Two Truths & a Lie | Declaring and Using Constants and Variables

1. A variable is a named memory location that you can use to store a value; it can hold only one value at a time, but the value it holds can change.
2. An item's data type determines what legal identifiers can be used to describe variables and whether the variables can occupy memory.
3. A variable declaration is a statement that reserves a named memory location and includes a data type, an identifier, an optional assignment operator and assigned value, and an ending semicolon.

The false statement is #2. An item's data type describes the type of data that can be stored, how much memory the item occupies, and what types of operations can be performed on the data. The data type does not alter the rules for a legal identifier, and the data type does not determine whether variables can occupy memory—all variables occupy memory.

You Do It | Declaring and Using a Variable

In this section, you write an application to work with a variable and a constant.

1. Open a new document in your text editor. Create a class header and an opening and closing curly brace for a new class named `DataDemo` by typing the following:

```
public class DataDemo
{
}
```

2. Between the curly braces, indent a few spaces, and type the following `main()` method header and its curly braces:

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
}
```

3. Between the `main()` method's curly braces, type the following variable declaration:

```
int aWholeNumber = 315;
```

4. Type the following output statements. The first uses the `print()` method to display a string that includes a space before the closing quotation mark and leaves the insertion point for the next output on the same line. The second statement uses `println()` to display the value of `aWholeNumber` and then advance to a new line.

```
System.out.print("The number is ");
System.out.println(aWholeNumber);
```

5. Save the file as **DataDemo.java**.

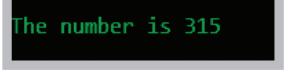
6. Up to this point, every `print()` and `println()` statement you have seen has used a `String` as an argument. When you added the last two statements to the `DataDemo` class, you wrote a `println()` statement that uses an `int` as an argument. As a matter of fact, there are many different versions of `print()` and `println()` that use different data types. Go to the Java website. (Search for *docs oracle java api PrintStream*, perhaps including the version number you are using.) Scroll down to view the list of methods in the Method Summary, and notice the many versions of the `print()` and `println()` methods, including ones that accept a `String`, an `int`, a `long`, and so on. In the last two statements you added to this program, one used a method version that accepts a `String` ("The number is "), and the other used a method version that accepts an `int` (`aWholeNumber`). Recall that the ability of a method to work appropriately depending on the context is *polymorphism*.

7. Compile the file from the command line by typing `javac DataDemo`.

`java`. If necessary, correct any errors, save the file, and then compile again.

8. Execute the application from the command line by typing `java DataDemo`. The command window output is shown in **Figure 2-6**.

Figure 2-6 Output of the `DataDemo` application



The number is 315

Trying to Use an Uninitialized Variable

In this section, you see what happens when a variable is uninitialized.

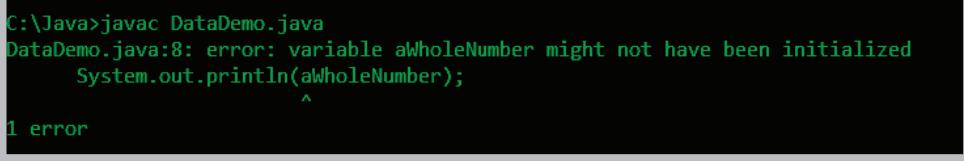
1. In the `DataDemo` class, remove the assignment operator and the initialization value of the `aWholeNumber` variable so the declaration becomes:

```
int aWholeNumber;
```

2. Save the class and recompile it. An error message appears as shown in **Figure 2-7**. Notice that the declaration statement does not generate an error because you can declare a variable without initializing it. However, the `println()` statement generates the error message because in Java, you cannot display an uninitialized variable.

3. Modify the `aWholeNumber` declaration so that the variable is again initialized to 315. Compile the class, and execute it again.

Figure 2-7 Error message generated when a variable is not initialized



```
C:\Java>javac DataDemo.java
DataDemo.java:8: error: variable aWholeNumber might not have been initialized
    System.out.println(aWholeNumber);
                           ^
1 error
```

Adding a Named Constant to a Program

In this section, you add a named constant to the DataDemo program.

- After the declaration of the aWholeNumber variable in the DataDemo class, insert a new line in your program, and type the following constant declaration:

```
final int STATES_IN_US = 50;
```

- Following the last `println()` statement in the existing program, add a new statement to display a concatenated string and numeric constant. The `println()` method call uses the version that accepts a `String` argument.

```
System.out.println ("The number of states is " +
STATES_IN_US);
```

- Save the program, and then compile and execute it. The output appears in **Figure 2-8**.

Figure 2-8 Output of DataDemo program after changes

```
The number is 315
The number of states is 50
```

2.2 Learning About Integer Data Types

In Java, you can use variables of data types `byte`, `short`, `int`, and `long` to store (or hold) integers; an **integer** is a whole number without decimal places. The `int` data type is the most commonly used integer type. A variable of type `int` can hold any whole number value from $-2,147,483,648$ to $+2,147,483,647$. When you assign a value to an `int` variable, you do not type any commas or periods. Java does allow underscores in numbers; these typically are used to make long numbers easier to read, as in the following statement:

```
corporateBudget = 8_435_000;
```

However, when you type a number, you usually type only digits. You can precede the digits with an optional plus or minus sign to indicate a positive or negative integer.

The data types `byte`, `short`, and `long` are all variations of the `int` type. The `byte` and `short` types occupy less memory and can hold only smaller values; the `long` type occupies more memory and can hold larger values. **Table 2-2** shows the upper and lower value limits for each of these types. In other programming languages, the format and size of primitive data types might depend on the platform on which a program is running. By contrast, Java consistently specifies the size and format of its primitive data types.

Table 2-2 Limits on integer values by type

TYPE	MINIMUM VALUE	MAXIMUM VALUE	SIZE IN BYTES
<code>byte</code>	-128	127	1
<code>short</code>	-32,768	32,767	2
<code>int</code>	-2,147,483,648	2,147,483,647	4
<code>long</code>	-9,223,372,036,854,775,808	9,223,372,036,854,775,807	8

It is important to choose appropriate types for the variables you will use in an application.

- › If you attempt to assign a value that is too large for the data type of the variable, the compiler issues an error message, and the application does not execute.
- › If you choose a data type that is larger than you need, you waste memory.

For example, a personnel application might use a `byte` variable for number of dependents (because a limit of 127 is more than enough), a `short` for hours worked in a month (because 127 isn't enough), and an `int` for an annual salary (because even though a limit of 32,000 might be large enough for your salary, it isn't enough for the CEO's).

Note

Some famous glitches have occurred because programmers did not pay attention to the limits of various data types. For example, a hospital computer system in Washington, D.C., used the equivalent of a `short` to count days elapsed since January 1, 1900. The system collapsed on the 32,768th day (which was in 1989), requiring manual operations for a lengthy period.

If an application uses a literal constant integer, such as 932, the number is an `int` by default. If you need to use a constant higher than 2,147,483,647, the letter `L` must follow the number to indicate `long`. For example, the following statement stores a number that is greater than the maximum limit for the `int` type.

```
long mosquitosInTheNorthWoods = 2444555888L;
```

You can type either an uppercase or a lowercase `L` after the digits to indicate the `long` type, but the uppercase `L` is preferred to avoid confusion with the number 1. You don't need any special notation to store a numeric constant in an `int`, a `byte`, or a `short`.

Because integer constants, such as 18, are type `int` by default, the examples in this course almost always declare a variable as type `int` when the variable's purpose is to hold a whole number. That is, even if the expected value is less than 128, such as `hoursWorkedToday`, the examples in this course will declare the variable to be an `int`. If you are writing an application in which saving memory is important, you might choose to declare the same variable as a `byte`. Saving memory is seldom an issue for an application that runs on a PC. However, when you write applications for small devices with limited memory, such as phones, conserving memory becomes more important.

Two Truths & a Lie | Learning About Integer Data Types

1. A variable of type `int` can hold any whole number value from approximately negative two billion to positive two billion.
2. When you assign a value to an `int` variable, you do not type any commas; you type only digits and an optional plus or minus sign to indicate a positive or negative integer.
3. You can use the data types `byte` or `short` to hold larger values than can be accommodated by an `int`.

The false statement is #3. You use a `long` if you know you will be working with very large values; you use a `byte` or a `short` if you know a variable will need to hold only small values.

You Do It | Working With Integers

In this section, you work more with integer values.

1. Open a new file in your text editor, and create a shell for an `IntegerDemo` class as follows:

```
public class IntegerDemo
{
}
```

2. Between the curly braces, indent a few spaces and write the shell for a `main()` method as follows:

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
}
```

3. Within the `main()` method, create four declarations, one each for the four integer data types.

```
int anInt = 12;
byte aByte = 12;
short aShort = 12;
long aLong = 12;
```

4. Next, add four output statements that describe and display each of the values. Extra spaces are included at the ends of the string literals so that the ending quotation marks align and the values will be aligned vertically when they are displayed.

```
System.out.println("The int is    " + anInt);
System.out.println("The byte is   " + aByte);
System.out.println("The short is  " + aShort);
System.out.println("The long is   " + aLong);
```

5. Save the file as **IntegerDemo.java**. Then compile and execute it.

Figure 2-9 shows the output. All the values are legal sizes for each data type, so the program compiles and executes without error.

Figure 2-9 Output of the IntegerDemo program

```
The int is 12
The byte is 12
The short is 12
The long is 12
```

6. Change each assigned value in the application from 12 to **1234**, and then save and recompile the program. **Figure 2-10** shows the error message generated because 1234 is too large to be placed in a `byte` variable. The message *possible lossy conversion from int to byte* means that if the large number had been inserted into the small space, the accuracy of the number would have been compromised. A **lossy conversion** is one in which some data is lost. The opposite of a lossy conversion is a **lossless conversion**—one in which no data is lost. (The error message differs in other development environments and in some earlier versions of Java.)

Figure 2-10 Error message generated when a value that is too large is assigned to a `byte` variable

```
IntegerDemo.java:6: error: incompatible types: possible lossy conversion from
int to byte
    byte aByte = 1234;
               ^
1 error
```

7. Change the value of `aByte` back to **12**. Change the value of `aShort` to **123456**. Save and recompile the program. **Figure 2-11** shows the result. The error message *possible lossy conversion* is the same as when the `byte` value was invalid, but the error indicates that the problem is now with the `short` variable.

Figure 2-11 Error message generated when a value that is too large is assigned to a `short` variable

```
C:\Java>javac IntegerDemo.java
IntegerDemo.java:7: error: incompatible types: possible lossy conversion from
int to short
    short aShort = 123456;
                   ^
1 error
```

8. Change the value of the short variable to **12345**, and then save and compile the program. Now, the program compiles without error. Execute the program, and confirm that it runs as expected.
9. At the Java website, examine the list of `println()` methods in the `PrintStream` class. Although you can find versions that accept `String`, `int`, and `long` arguments, you cannot find ones that accept `byte` or `short` values. Yet, the `println()` statements in the latest version of the program work correctly. The reason has to do with *type conversion*, which you will learn about later in this chapter.
10. Replace the value of `aLong` with **1234567890987654321**. Save the program and compile it. **Figure 2-12** shows the error message that indicates that the integer number is too large. The message does not say that the value is too big for a `long` type variable. Instead, it means that the literal constant was evaluated and found to be too large to be a default `int` before any attempt was made to store it in the `long` variable.

Figure 2-12 Error message generated when an integer value is too large

```
IntegerDemo.java:8: error: integer number too large: 1234567890987654321
    long aLong = 1234567890987654321;
                           ^
1 error
```

11. Remedy the problem by adding an **L** to the end of the `long` numeric value. Now, the constant is the correct data type that can be assigned to the `long` variable. Save, compile, and execute the program; it executes successfully.
12. Watch out for errors that occur when data values are acceptable for a data type when used alone, but together might produce arithmetic results that are out of range. To demonstrate, add the following declaration at the end of the current list of variable declarations in the `IntegerDemo` program:

```
int anotherInt = anInt * 10000000;
```

13. At the end of the current list of output statements, add another output statement so that you can see the result of the arithmetic:

```
System.out.println("Another int is " + anotherInt);
```

Save, compile, and execute the program. The output appears in **Figure 2-13**. Although 1234 and 10000000 are both acceptable `int` values, their product is out of range for an `int`, and the resulting `int` does not appear to have been calculated correctly. Because the arithmetic result was too large, some information about the value has been lost, including the result's sign. If you see such unreasonable results in your programs, you need to consider using different data types for your values.

Figure 2-13 Output of the modified `IntegerDemo` program with an out-of-range integer

```
The int is 1234
The byte is 12
The short is 12345
The long is 1234567890987654321
Another int is -544901888
```

2.3 Using the boolean Data Type

Boolean logic is based on true or false comparisons. Whereas an `int` variable can hold millions of different values (at different times), a variable that is the `boolean` data type can hold only one of two values—true or false. The following statements declare and assign appropriate values to Boolean variables:

```
boolean isItPayday = false;
boolean areYouBroke = true;
```

Although you can use any legal identifier for Boolean variables, they are easily identified as Boolean if you use a form of *to be* (such as *is* or *are*) as part of the variable name, as in `isItPayday`.

Besides assigning `true` and `false`, you also can assign a value to a Boolean variable based on the result of a comparison. Java supports six relational operators that are used to make comparisons. A **relational operator** compares two items; it is sometimes called a **comparison operator**. The value of an expression that contains a relational operator is always `true` or `false`. **Table 2-3** describes the relational operators.

Note

When you use *Boolean* as an adjective, as in *Boolean operators*, you usually begin with an uppercase *B* because the data type is named for Sir George Boole, the founder of symbolic logic, who lived from 1815 to 1864. The Java data type `boolean`, however, begins with a lowercase *b*.

Table 2-3 Relational operators

OPERATOR	DESCRIPTION	TRUE EXAMPLE	FALSE EXAMPLE
<code><</code>	Less than	<code>3 < 8</code>	<code>8 < 3</code>
<code>></code>	Greater than	<code>4 > 2</code>	<code>2 > 4</code>
<code>==</code>	Equal to	<code>7 == 7</code>	<code>3 == 9</code>
<code><=</code>	Less than or equal to	<code>5 <= 5</code>	<code>8 <= 6</code>
<code>>=</code>	Greater than or equal to	<code>7 >= 3</code>	<code>1 >= 2</code>
<code>!=</code>	Not equal to	<code>5 != 6</code>	<code>3 != 3</code>

When you use any of the operators that have two symbols (`==`, `<=`, `>=`, or `!=`), you cannot place any whitespace between the two symbols. You also cannot reverse the order of the symbols. That is, `=<`, `=>`, and `=!` are all invalid operators.

Legal declaration statements, which compare two values directly, might include the following statements:

```
boolean isSixBigger = (6 > 5);
// Value stored would be true
boolean isSevenSmallerOrEqual = (7 <= 4);
// Value stored would be false
```

Boolean expressions are more meaningful when a variable is used for one or both of the operands in a comparison, as in the following three examples, in which a variable is compared to a literal constant (40), a variable is compared to a named constant (`HIGH_CUTOFF`), and two variables are compared.

```
boolean isOvertimePay = (hours > 40);
boolean isTaxBracketHigh = (income > HIGH_CUTOFF);
boolean isFirstScoreHigher = (score1 > score2);
```

Boolean expressions will become far more useful to you when you learn about decision making and looping.

Two Truths & a Lie Using the boolean Data Type

1. A Boolean variable can hold only one of two values—true or false.
2. Java supports six relational operators that are used to make comparisons: `=`, `<`, `>`, `=<`, `=>`, and `!=`.
3. An expression that contains a relational operator has a Boolean value.

The false statement is #2. The six relational operators used to make comparisons are `==` (two equal signs), `<`, `>`, `<=` (the less-than sign precedes the equal sign), `>=` (the greater-than sign precedes the equal sign), and `!=` (the exclamation point precedes the equal sign).

2.4 Learning About Floating-Point Data Types

A **floating-point** number contains decimal positions. Java supports two floating-point data types: `float` and `double`. A `float` data type can hold floating-point values of up to six or seven significant digits of accuracy. A `double` data type requires more memory than a `float`, and can hold 14 or 15 significant digits of accuracy. The term **significant digits** refers to the mathematical accuracy of a value. For example, a `float` given the value 0.324616777 is displayed as 0.324617 because the value is accurate only to the sixth decimal position. **Table 2-4** shows the minimum and maximum values for each floating-point data type. Notice that the maximum value for a `double` is $1.7 * 10^{308}$ to the 308th power, which means 1.7 times 10 with 308 trailing zeros—a very large number.

Note

Depending on the environment in which you run your program, a `float` given the value 324616777 is displayed using a decimal point after the 3 and only six or seven digits followed by `e+008` or `E8`. This format is called **scientific notation** and means that the value is approximately 3.24617 times 10 to the eighth power, or 324617000. When a number is in scientific notation, the value to the left of the decimal point is always greater than or equal to 1 and less than 10. The `e` in the displayed value stands for **exponent**; the 8 means the true decimal point is eight positions to the right of where it is displayed, indicating a very large number. (A negative number following the `e` would mean that the true decimal point belongs to the left, indicating a very small number.)

Note

A programmer might choose to store a value as a `float` instead of a `double` to save memory. However, if high levels of accuracy are needed, such as in graphics-intensive software, the programmer might choose to use a `double`, opting for high accuracy over saved memory.

Table 2-4 Limits on floating-point values

TYPE	MINIMUM	MAXIMUM	SIZE IN BYTES
<code>float</code>	$-3.4 * 10^{-38}$	$3.4 * 10^{-38}$	4
<code>double</code>	$-1.7 * 10^{-308}$	$1.7 * 10^{-308}$	8

Note

A value stored in a `double` is a **double-precision floating-point number**; a value in a `float` is a **single-precision floating-point number**.

Just as an integer constant, such as 18, is a value of type `int` by default, a floating-point constant, such as 18.23, is a `double` by default. To indicate that a floating-point numeric constant is a `float`, you can type the letter `F` after the number, as in the following:

```
float pocketChange = 4.87F;
```

You can type either a lowercase or an uppercase *F*. You also can type *D* (or *d*) after a floating-point constant to indicate it is a `double`, but even without the *D*, the value will be stored as a `double` by default. Floating-point numbers can be imprecise, as you will see later in this chapter.

Two Truths & a Lie | Learning About Floating-Point Data Types

1. Java supports two floating-point data types: `float` and `double`. The `double` data type requires more memory and can hold more significant digits.
2. A floating-point constant, such as 5.6, is a `float` by default.
3. As with integers, you can perform the mathematical operations of addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division with floating-point numbers.

The false statement is #2. A floating-point constant, such as 5.6, is a `double` by default.

2.5 Using the `char` Data Type

You use the `char` data type to hold any single character. You place constant character values within single quotation marks because the computer stores characters and integers differently. For example, the following are typical character declarations:

```
char middleInitial = 'M';
char gradeInChemistry = 'A';
char aStar = '*';
```

Note

Some programmers prefer to pronounce `char` as *care* because it represents the first syllable in the word *character*. Others prefer to pronounce the word as *char* to rhyme with *car*. You should use the preferred pronunciation in your organization.

A character can be any letter—uppercase or lowercase. It also might be a punctuation mark or digit. A character that is a digit is represented in computer memory differently from a numeric value represented by the same digit. For example, the following two statements are legal:

```
char aCharValue = '9';
int aNumValue = 9;
```

If you display each of these values using a `println()` statement, you see a 9. However, only the numeric value, `aNumValue`, can be used to represent the value 9 in arithmetic statements.

A numeric constant can be stored in a character variable, and a character that represents a number can be stored in a numeric variable. For example, the following two statements are legal, but unless you understand their meanings, they might produce undesirable results:

```
char aCharValue = 9;
int aNumValue = '9';
```

If these variables are displayed using `println()` statements, then the resulting output is a blank for `aCharValue` and the number 57 for `aNumValue`. The unexpected values are Unicode values. Every computer stores every character it uses as a number; every character is assigned a unique numeric code using Unicode. **Table 2-5** shows some Unicode decimal values and their character equivalents. For example, the character *A* is stored using the value 65, and the character *B* is stored using the value 66. Appendix B contains more information on Unicode.

Table 2-5 Unicode values 0 through 127 and their character equivalents

DEC	CHAR	DEC	CHAR	DEC	CHAR	DEC	CHAR
0	nul	32		64	@	96	`
1	soh^A	33	!	65	A	97	a
2	stx^B	34	"	66	B	98	b
3	etx^C	35	#	67	C	99	c
4	eot^D	36	\$	68	D	100	d
5	enq^E	37	%	69	E	101	e
6	ask^F	38	&	70	F	102	f
7	bel^G	39	'	71	G	103	g
8	bs^H	40	(72	H	104	h
9	ht^I	41)	73	I	105	i
10	lf^J	42	*	74	J	106	j
11	vt^K	43	+	75	K	107	k
12	ff^L	44	,	76	L	108	l
13	cr^M	45	-	77	M	109	m
14	so^N	46	.	78	N	110	n
15	si^O	47	/	79	O	111	o
16	dle^P	48	0	80	P	112	p
17	dcl^Q	49	1	81	Q	113	q
18	dc2^R	50	2	82	R	114	r
19	dc3^S	51	3	83	S	115	s
20	dc4^T	52	4	84	T	116	t
21	nak^U	53	5	85	U	117	u
22	syn^V	54	6	86	V	118	v
23	etb^W	55	7	87	W	119	w
24	can^X	56	8	88	X	120	x
25	em^Y	57	9	89	Y	121	y
26	sub^Z	58	:	90	Z	122	z
27	esc	59	;	91	[123	{
28	fs	60	<	92	\	124	
29	gs	61	=	93]	125	}
30	rs	62	>	94	^	126	~
31	us	63	?	95	_	127	del

A variable of type `char` can hold only one character. To store a string of characters, such as a person's name, you must use a data structure called a `String`, which, as you have learned, is a built-in class that provides you with the means for storing and manipulating character strings. Unlike single characters, which use single quotation marks, string constants are written between double quotation marks. For example, the expression that stores the name *Guadalupe* as a string in a variable named `firstName` is as follows:

```
String firstName = "Guadalupe";
```

You can store any character—including nonprinting characters such as a backspace or a tab—in a char variable. To store these characters, you can use an **escape sequence**, which always begins with a backslash followed by a character—the pair represents a single character. For example, the following code stores a newline character and a tab character in the char variables aNewLine and aTabChar:

```
char aNewLine = '\n';
char aTabChar = '\t';
```

In the declarations of aNewLine and aTabChar, the backslash and character pair acts as a single character; the escape sequence serves to give a new meaning to the character. That is, the literal characters in the preceding code have different values from the “plain” characters 'n' or 't'. **Table 2-6** describes some common escape sequences that you can use with command window output in Java.

Table 2-6 Common escape sequences

ESCAPE SEQUENCE	DESCRIPTION
\b	Backspace; moves the cursor one space to the left
\t	Tab; moves the cursor to the next tab stop
\n	Newline or linefeed; moves the cursor to the beginning of the next line
\r	Carriage return; moves the cursor to the beginning of the current line
\"	Double quotation mark; displays a double quotation mark
''	Single quotation mark; displays a single quotation mark
\\\	Backslash; displays a backslash character

Note

When you display values within JOptionPane dialog boxes rather than in a command window, the escape sequences '\n' (newline), '\"' (double quote), and '\\\' (backslash) operate as expected within a JOptionPane object, but '\t', '\b', and '\r' do not work in the GUI environment.

When you want to produce console output on multiple lines in the command window, you have three options:

- » You can use the newline escape sequence within a single println() call.
- » You can call the println() method multiple times.
- » You can use text blocks.

For example, **Figures 2-14**, **2-15**, and **2-16** all show classes that produce the same output: *Hello* on one line and *there* on another. The method you choose to use to display multiline output is up to you.

Figure 2-14 HelloThere.NewLine class

```
public class HelloThere.NewLine
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.println("Hello\nthere");
    }
}
```

Figure 2-15 HelloThere.PrintlnTwice class

```
public class HelloThere.PrintlnTwice
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.println("Hello");
        System.out.println("there");
    }
}
```

The example in Figure 2-14 is more efficient than the one in Figure 2-15—from a typist’s point of view because the `System.out.println` appears only once, and from the compiler’s point of view because the `println()` method is called only once. The example in Figure 2-15, however, might be easier to read and understand than the one in Figure 2-14.

Text blocks have been added to the Java language starting with Java 13. A **text block** is a multiline string literal that avoids the need for an escape sequence to display output on multiple lines. Text blocks start and end with three double quote characters. The example shown in Figure 2-16 produces the same output as the examples in Figures 2-14 and 2-15.

When programming in Java, you will find occasions when each of these approaches makes sense.

Note

The `println()` method uses the local platform’s line terminator character, which might or might not be the newline character ‘`\n`’.

Two Truths & a Lie | Using the `char` Data Type

1. You use the `char` data type to hold any single character; you place constant character values within single quotation marks.
2. To store a string of characters, you use a data structure called a `Text`; string constants are written between parentheses.
3. An escape sequence always begins with a backslash followed by a character; the pair represents a single character.

The false statement is #2. To store a string of characters, you use a data structure called a `String`; string constants are written between double quotation marks.

You Do It | Working With the `char` Data Type

In the steps in this section, you create an application that demonstrates some features of the `char` data type.

1. Create the shells for a class named `CharDemo` and its `main()` method as follows:

```
public class CharDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
    }
}
```

Figure 2-16 `HelloThereTextBlock` class

```
public class HelloThereTextBlock
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        String block =
            """
            Hello
            there
            """;
        System.out.println(block);
    }
}
```

2. Between the curly braces for the `main()` method, declare a `char` variable, and provide an initialization value:

```
char initial = 'A';
```

3. Add two statements. The first displays the variable, and the second demonstrates some escape sequence characters.

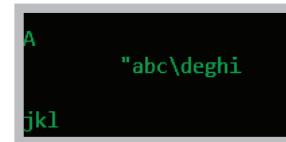
```
System.out.println(initial);
System.out.print("\t\"abc\\def\bghi\n\njkl");
```

4. Save the file as `CharDemo.java`, and then compile and execute it.

Figure 2-17 shows the output. The first line of output contains the value of the `char` variable. The next line starts with a tab created by the escape sequence `\t`. The tab is followed by a quotation mark produced by the escape sequence `\\"`. Then `abc` is displayed, followed by the next escape sequence that produces a backslash. The next series of characters to display is `def`, but because those letters are followed by a backspace escape sequence, the `f` is overridden by `ghi`. After `ghi`, two newline escape sequences provide a double-spaced effect. Finally, the last three characters `jkl` are displayed.

5. Modify, recompile, and execute the `CharDemo` program as many times as you like until you can accurately predict what will be displayed when you use various combinations of characters and escape sequences.

Figure 2-17 Output of the `CharDemo` program



2.6 Using the Scanner Class to Accept Keyboard Input

Although you can assign values to variables you declare, programs typically become more useful when a user can supply different values for variables each time a program executes. You have already learned how to display output on the monitor using the `System.out` property. `System.out` refers to the standard output device, which usually is the monitor. To create interactive programs that accept input from a user, you can use `System.in`, which refers to the **standard input device** (normally the keyboard).

You have learned that you can use the `print()` and `println()` methods to display many data types; for example, you can use them to display a `double`, `int`, or `String`. The `System.in` object is not as flexible; it is designed to read only bytes. That's a problem, because you often want to accept data of other types. Fortunately, the designers of Java have created a class named `Scanner` that makes `System.in` more flexible.

To create a `Scanner` object and connect it to the `System.in` object, you write a statement similar to the following:

```
Scanner inputDevice = new Scanner(System.in);
```

The portion of the statement to the left of the assignment operator, `Scanner inputDevice`, declares an object of type `Scanner` with the programmer-chosen name `inputDevice`, in exactly the same way that `int x;` declares an integer with the programmer-chosen name `x`.

The portion of the statement to the right of the assignment operator, `new Scanner(System.in)`, creates a `Scanner` object that is connected to the `System.in` property. In other words, the created `Scanner` object is connected to the default input device. The keyword `new` is required by Java; you will use it whenever you create objects that are more complex than the primitive data types.

Note

As you learn more about classes, you will learn that the second part of the `Scanner` declaration calls a special method called a **constructor** that is part of the prewritten `Scanner` class. You also will learn more about the Java keyword `new`.

The assignment operator in the `Scanner` declaration statement assigns the value of the new object—that is, its memory address—to the `inputDevice` object in the program.

The `Scanner` class contains methods that retrieve values from an input device. Each retrieved value is a **token**, which is a set of characters that is separated from the next set by whitespace. Most often, this means that data is accepted when a user presses the Enter key, but it also could mean that a token is accepted after a space or tab. **Table 2-7** summarizes some of the most useful methods that read different data types from the default input device. Each retrieves a value from the keyboard and returns it if the next token is the correct data type.

Table 2-7 Selected `Scanner` class methods

METHOD	DESCRIPTION
<code>nextDouble()</code>	Retrieves input as a <code>double</code>
<code>nextInt()</code>	Retrieves input as an <code>int</code>
<code>nextLine()</code>	Retrieves the next line of data and returns it as a <code>String</code>
<code>next()</code>	Retrieves the next complete token as a <code>String</code>
<code>nextShort()</code>	Retrieves input as a <code>short</code>
<code>nextByte()</code>	Retrieves input as a <code>byte</code>
<code>nextFloat()</code>	Retrieves input as a <code>float</code> . Note that when you enter an input value that will be stored as a <code>float</code> , you do not type an <code>F</code> . The <code>F</code> is used only with constants coded within a program.
<code>nextLong()</code>	Retrieves input as a <code>long</code> . Note that when you enter an input value that will be stored as a <code>long</code> , you do not type an <code>L</code> . The <code>L</code> is used only with constants coded within a program.

Note

The `Scanner` class does not contain a `nextChar()` method. To retrieve a single character from the keyboard, you can use the `nextLine()` method and then use the `charAt()` method.

Figure 2-18 contains a program that uses two of the `Scanner` class methods, and **Figure 2-19** shows a typical execution. The program reads a string and an integer from the keyboard and displays them. The `Scanner` class is used in four statements in the figure:

- › The first statement in the figure imports the package necessary to use the `Scanner` class.
- › A `Scanner` object named `inputDevice` is declared.
- › The `nextLine()` method is used with `inputDevice` to retrieve a line of text from the keyboard and store it in the `name` variable.
- › The `nextInt()` method is used with `inputDevice` to retrieve an integer from the keyboard and store it in the `age` variable.

Note

Java programmers would say that the `Scanner` methods *return* the appropriate value. That also means that the value of the method is the appropriate value, and that you can assign the returned value to a variable, display it, or use it in other legal statements. Later in this course, you will learn how to write your own methods that return values.

Figure 2-18 The GetUserInfo class

```

import java.util.Scanner;
public class GetUserInfo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        String name;
        int age;
        Scanner inputDevice = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Please enter your name >> ");
        name = inputDevice.nextLine();
        System.out.print("Please enter your age >> ");
        age = inputDevice.nextInt();
        System.out.println("Your name is " + name +
                           " and you are " + age + " years old.");
    }
}

```

Figure 2-19 Typical execution of the GetUserInfo program

```

Please enter your name >> Jin
Please enter your age >> 19
Your name is Jin and you are 19 years old.

```

Note | Repeating as output the values a user has entered is sometimes called *echoing the input*.

If you use any of the Scanner methods and the next token cannot be converted to the right data type, you receive an error message. For example, the program in Figure 2-18 uses `nextInt()` to retrieve age, so if the user entered a noninteger value for age, such as the double 19.5 or the String "nineteen", an error would occur. You will learn how to recover from this type of error later, but for now, you will have to trust the user to enter the correct data type.

The literal Strings contained in the `print()` statements that appear before each input statement in Figure 2-18 are examples of prompts. A **prompt** is a message displayed for the user that describes and requests input. Interactive programs would work without prompts, but they would not be as user friendly. Each prompt in the `GetUserInfo` class ends with two greater-than signs and a space. This punctuation is not required; it just separates the words in the prompt from the user's input value on the screen, improving readability. You might prefer to use a series of periods, several dashes, or just a few spaces.

It is legal to write a single prompt that requests multiple input values—for example, *Please enter your age, area code, and zip code >>*. The user could then enter the three values separated with spaces, tabs, or Enter key presses. The values would be interpreted as separate tokens and could be retrieved with three separate `nextInt()` method calls. However, asking a user to enter multiple values is more likely to lead to mistakes. For example, if a program asks a user to enter a name, address, and birthdate all at once, the user is likely to forget one of the values or to enter them in the wrong order. The examples in this course will follow the practice of using a separate prompt for each input value required.

Pitfall: Using `nextLine()` Following One of the Other Scanner Input Methods

You can encounter a problem when you use one of the numeric Scanner class retrieval methods or the `next()` method before you use the `nextLine()` method. Consider the program in Figure 2-20. It is identical to the one in Figure 2-18, except that the user is asked for an age before being asked for a name. Figure 2-21 shows a typical execution.

Figure 2-20 The GetUserInfo2 class

```

import java.util.Scanner;
public class GetUserInfo2
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        String name;
        int age;
        Scanner inputDevice = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Please enter your age >> ");
        age = inputDevice.nextInt();
        System.out.print("Please enter your name >> ");
        name = inputDevice.nextLine();
        System.out.println("Your name is " + name +
            " and you are " + age + " years old.");
    }
}

```

Don't Do It
If you accept numeric input prior to string input, the string input is ignored unless you take special action.

Figure 2-21 Typical execution of the GetUserInfo2 program

```

Please enter your age >> 28
Please enter your name >> Your name is and you are 28 years old.

```

In Figure 2-21, the user is prompted correctly for an age. However, after the user enters an age and the prompt for the name is displayed, the program does not pause to let the user enter a name. Instead, the program proceeds directly to the output statement, which does not contain a valid name.

When you type characters using the keyboard, they are stored temporarily in a location in memory called the **keyboard buffer** or the **type-ahead buffer**. All keystrokes are stored in the keyboard buffer, including the Enter key. The problem occurs because of a difference in the way the `nextLine()` method and the other `Scanner` retrieval methods work:

- › The `Scanner` methods `next()`, `nextInt()`, and `nextDouble()` retrieve the next token in the buffer up to the next whitespace, which might be a space, tab, or Enter key.
- › The `nextLine()` method reads all data up to the Enter key character.

So, in the execution of the program in Figure 2-21, the user is prompted for an age, types 28, and presses Enter. The call to the `nextInt()` method retrieves the 28 and leaves the Enter key press in the input buffer. Then, the name prompt is displayed and the call to `nextLine()` retrieves the waiting Enter key before the user has time to type a name.

The solution to the problem is simple. After any `next()`, `nextInt()`, or `nextDouble()` call, you can add an extra `nextLine()` method call that will retrieve the abandoned Enter key character. Then, no matter what type of input follows, the program will execute smoothly. **Figure 2-22** shows a program that contains just one change from Figure 2-20—the addition of the statement that retrieves the abandoned Enter key character from the input buffer. Figure 2-22 shows that the call to `nextInt()` accepts the integer, the first call to `nextLine()` consumes the Enter key that follows the integer entry, and the second `nextLine()` call accepts both the entered name and the Enter key that follows it. **Figure 2-23** shows that the revised program executes correctly.

Figure 2-22 The GetUserInfo3 class

```

import java.util.Scanner;
public class GetUserInfo3
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        String name;
        int age;
        Scanner inputDevice = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Please enter your age >> ");
        age = inputDevice.nextInt();
        inputDevice.nextLine();
        System.out.print("Please enter your name >> ");
        name = inputDevice.nextLine();
        System.out.println("Your name is " + name +
            " and you are " + age + " years old.");
    }
}

```

This statement gets the integer.

This statement consumes the Enter key that follows the integer.

This statement gets the name and discards the Enter key that follows the name.

Figure 2-23 Typical execution of the GetUserInfo3 program

```

Please enter your age >> 28
Please enter your name >> Julie
Your name is Julie and you are 28 years old.

```

Note

Although you could assign the Enter key value to a character variable in the program in Figure 2-22, there is no need to do so. When you accept an entry and discard it without using it, programmers say that the entry is consumed.

Note

When you write programs that accept user input, there is a risk that the user will enter the wrong type of data. For example, if you include a `nextInt()` method call in your program, but the user types an alphabetic character, an error will occur, and your program will stop running. You will learn to handle this type of error later in this course.

Two Truths & a Lie | Using the Scanner Class to Accept Keyboard Input

1. `System.in` refers to the standard input device, which normally is the keyboard.
2. `System.in` is more flexible than `System.out` because it can read all the basic Java data types.
3. When a user types data followed by the Enter key, the Enter key character is left in the keyboard buffer after `Scanner` class methods retrieve the other keystrokes.

The false statement is #2. `System.in` is not as flexible as `System.out`. While `System.out` can display various data types, `System.in` is designed to read only bytes.

You Do It | Accepting User Input

In the next steps, you create a program that accepts user input.

1. Open the `IntegerDemo.java` file you created in a “You Do It” section earlier in this chapter. Change the class name to `IntegerDemoInteractive`, and save the file as `IntegerDemolInteractive.java`.

2. As the first line in the file, insert an `import` statement that will allow you to use the `Scanner` class:

```
import java.util.Scanner;
```

3. Remove the assignment operator and the assigned values from each of the four numeric variable declarations.

4. Following the numeric variable declarations, insert a `Scanner` object declaration:

```
Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
```

5. Following the variable declarations, insert a prompt for the integer value, and an `input` statement that accepts the value, as follows:

```
System.out.print("Please enter an integer >> ");
anInt = input.nextInt();
```

6. Then add similar statements for the other three variables:

```
System.out.print("Please enter a byte integer >> ");
aByte = input.nextByte();
System.out.print("Please enter a short integer >> ");
aShort = input.nextShort();
System.out.print("Please enter a long integer >> ");
aLong = input.nextLong();
```

7. Save the file, and then compile and execute it. **Figure 2-24** shows a typical execution. Execute the program a few more times, using different values each time and confirming that the correct values have been accepted from the keyboard.

Figure 2-24 Typical execution of the `IntegerDemoInteractive` program

```
Please enter an integer >> 375
Please enter a byte integer >> 101
Please enter a short integer >> 415
Please enter a long integer >> 3487610
The int is 375
The byte is 101
The short is 415
The long is 3487610
```

Adding String Input

Next, you add string input to the `IntegerDemoInteractive` program.

1. Change the class name of the `IntegerDemoInteractive` program to `IntegerDemoInteractiveWithName`, and immediately save the file as `IntegerDemolInteractiveWithName.java`.

2. Add a new variable with the other variable declarations as follows:

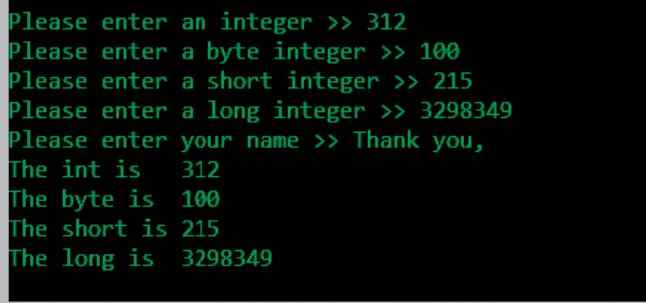
```
String name;
```

- After the last input statement (that gets the value for aLong), add three statements that prompt the user for a name, accept the name, and use the name as follows:

```
System.out.print("Please enter your name >> ");
name = input.nextLine();
System.out.println("Thank you, " + name);
```

- Save the file, and compile and execute it. **Figure 2-25** shows a typical execution. You can enter the numbers, but when the prompt for the name appears, you are not given the opportunity to respond. Instead, the string "Thank you, ", including the ending comma and space, is output immediately, and the program ends. This output is incorrect because the input statement that should retrieve the name from the keyboard instead retrieves the Enter key that was still in the keyboard buffer after the last numeric entry.

Figure 2-25 Typical execution of incomplete IntegerDemoInteractiveWithName application that does not accept a name



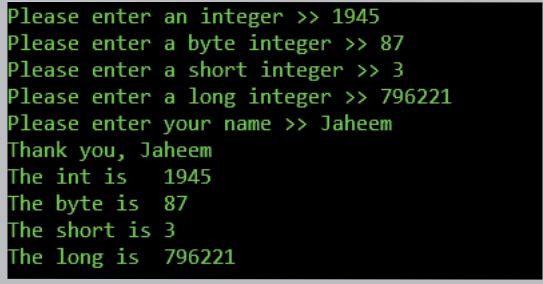
```
Please enter an integer >> 312
Please enter a byte integer >> 100
Please enter a short integer >> 215
Please enter a long integer >> 3298349
Please enter your name >> Thank you,
The int is 312
The byte is 100
The short is 215
The long is 3298349
```

- To fix the problem, insert an extra call to the `nextLine()` method just before the statement that accepts the name. This call will consume the Enter key. You do not need an assignment operator with this statement, because there is no need to store the Enter key character.

```
input.nextLine();
```

- Save, compile, and execute the program. **Figure 2-26** shows a typical successful execution.

Figure 2-26 Typical successful execution of IntegerDemoInteractiveWithName application



```
Please enter an integer >> 1945
Please enter a byte integer >> 87
Please enter a short integer >> 3
Please enter a long integer >> 796221
Please enter your name >> Jaheem
Thank you, Jaheem
The int is 1945
The byte is 87
The short is 3
The long is 796221
```

2.7 Using the JOptionPane Class to Accept GUI Input

You already know how to display output at the command line and how to create GUI message boxes to display String objects. Earlier in this chapter, you learned to accept input from the keyboard at the command line. You also can accept input in a GUI dialog box using the JOptionPane class.

Two dialog boxes that can be used to accept user input are as follows:

- › **InputDialog**—Prompts the user for text input
- › **ConfirmDialog**—Asks the user a question, providing buttons that the user can click for Yes, No, and Cancel responses

Using Input Dialog Boxes

An **input dialog box** asks a question and provides a text field in which the user can enter a response. You can create an input dialog box using the showInputDialog() method. Six versions of this method are available, but the simplest version uses a single argument that is the prompt you want to display within the dialog box. The showInputDialog() method returns a String that represents a user's response; this means that you can assign the showInputDialog() method to a String variable and the variable will hold the value that the user enters.

For example, **Figure 2-27** shows an application that creates an input dialog box containing a prompt for a first name. When the user executes the application, types *Hamza*, and then clicks the OK button or presses Enter on the keyboard, the result String will contain *Hamza*. In the application in Figure 2-27, the response is concatenated with a welcoming message and displayed in a message dialog box. **Figure 2-28** shows the dialog box containing a user's response, and **Figure 2-29** shows the resulting output message box.

Figure 2-27 The HelloNameDialog class

```
import javax.swing.JOptionPane;
public class HelloNameDialog
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        String result;
        result = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null, "What is your name?");
        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Hello, " + result + "!");
    }
}
```

Figure 2-28 Input dialog box of the HelloNameDialog application



Figure 2-29 Output of the HelloNameDialog application



Note

When a computer has a touch screen, you might want the user to be able to use the operating system's virtual keyboard to enter data. You will learn how to display the virtual keyboard after you learn about exception handling.

A different version of the `showInputDialog()` method requires four arguments that allow the programmer flexibility in controlling the appearance of the input dialog box. The four arguments to `showInputDialog()` include the following:

- › The parent component, which is the screen component, such as a frame, in front of which the dialog box will appear. If this argument is `null`, the dialog box is centered on the screen.
- › The message the user will see before entering a value. This message usually is a `String`, but it actually can be any type of object.
- › The title to be displayed in the title bar of the input dialog box.
- › A class field describing the type of dialog box; it can be one of the following:

`ERROR_MESSAGE`, `INFORMATION_MESSAGE`, `PLAIN_MESSAGE`, `QUESTION_MESSAGE`, or `WARNING_MESSAGE`.

For example, when the following statement executes, it displays the input dialog box shown in **Figure 2-30**.

```
JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
    "What is your area code?",
    "Area code information",
    JOptionPane.QUESTION_MESSAGE);
```

Note that the title bar displays *Area code information*, and the dialog box shows a question mark icon.

The `showInputDialog()` method returns a `String` object that holds the combination of keystrokes a user types into the dialog box. If the value that the user enters is intended to be used as a number, as in an arithmetic statement, the returned `String` must be converted to the correct numeric type. Later in this chapter, you will learn how to change primitive data from one data type to another. However, the techniques you will learn work only with primitive data types—`double`, `int`, `char`, and so on—not with class objects (that are reference types) such as a `String`. To convert a `String` to an `int` or `double`, you must use methods from the built-in Java classes `Integer` and `Double`. Each primitive type in Java has a corresponding class contained in the `java.lang` package; like most classes, the names of these classes begin with uppercase letters. These classes are called **type-wrapper classes**. They include methods that can process primitive type values.

Figure 2-31 shows a `SalaryDialog` application that contains two `String` objects—`wageString` and `dependentsString`. Two `showInputDialog()` methods are called, and the answers are stored in the declared `Strings`. **Figure 2-31** shows the `Strings` being converted to numeric values using the `Double.parseDouble()` method and the `Integer.parseInt()` method. The methods are, respectively, from the type-wrapper classes `Double` and `Integer`. **Figure 2-32** shows a typical execution of the application.

Note

Remember that in Java, the reserved keyword `static` means that a method is accessible and usable even though no objects of the class exist. You can tell that the method `Double.parseDouble()` is a `static` method because the method name is used with the class name `Double`—no object is needed. Similarly, you can tell that `Integer.parseInt()` is also a `static` method.

Note

The term *parse* means to break into component parts. Grammarians talk about *parsing a sentence*—deconstructing it so as to describe its grammatical components. Parsing a `String` converts it to its numeric equivalent. You have also seen this term in compiler error messages when the compiler is attempting to divide your program code into meaningful portions.

Figure 2-30 An input dialog box with a `String` in the title bar and a question mark icon

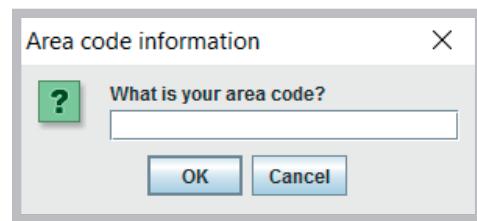


Figure 2-31 The `SalaryDialog` class

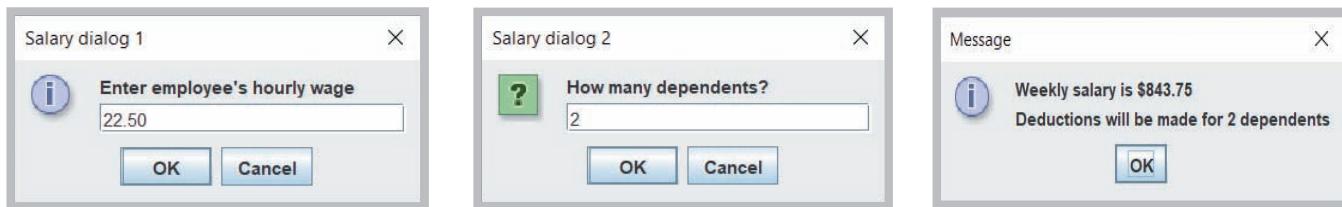
```

import javax.swing.JOptionPane;
public class SalaryDialog
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        String wageString, dependentsString;
        double wage, weeklyPay;
        int dependents;
        final double HOURS_IN_WEEK = 37.5;
        wageString = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
            "Enter employee's hourly wage", "Salary dialog 1",
            JOptionPane.INFORMATION_MESSAGE);
        weeklyPay = Double.parseDouble(wageString) *
            HOURS_IN_WEEK;
        dependentsString = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
            "How many dependents?", "Salary dialog 2",
            JOptionPane.QUESTION_MESSAGE);
        dependents = Integer.parseInt(dependentsString);
        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Weekly salary is $" +
            weeklyPay + "\nDeductions will be made for " +
            dependents + " dependents");
    }
}

```

Statement uses `parseDouble()` to convert `String`.

Statement uses `parseInt()` to convert `String`.

Figure 2-32 Sample execution of the `SalaryDialog` application

Using Confirm Dialog Boxes

Sometimes, the input you want from a user does not have to be typed from the keyboard. When you present simple options to a user, you can offer buttons that the user can click to confirm a choice. A **confirm dialog box** that displays the options *Yes*, *No*, and *Cancel* can be created using the `showConfirmDialog()` method in the `JOptionPane` class. Four versions of the method are available; the simplest requires a parent component (which can be `null`) and the `String` prompt that is displayed in the box. The `showConfirmDialog()` method returns an integer containing one of three possible values: `JOptionPane.YES_OPTION`, `JOptionPane.NO_OPTION`, or `JOptionPane.CANCEL_OPTION`.

Figure 2-33 shows an application that uses a dialog box to ask a user a question and shows the output when the user selects *Yes*. The user's response is stored in the integer variable named `selection`, and then a Boolean variable

Figure 2-33 The `AirlineDialog` class

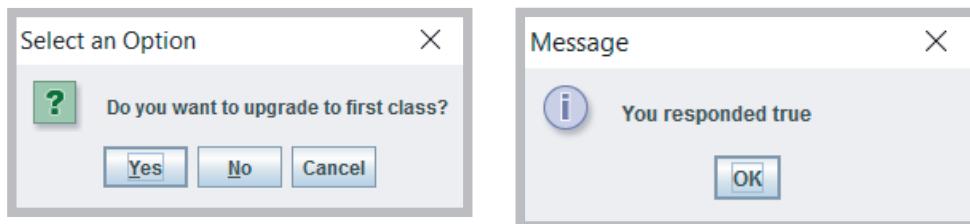
```

import javax.swing.JOptionPane;
public class AirlineDialog
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int selection;
        boolean isYes;
        selection = JOptionPane.showConfirmDialog(null,
            "Do you want to upgrade to first class?");
        isYes = (selection == JOptionPane.YES_OPTION);
        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null,
            "You responded " + isYes);
    }
}

```

named `isYes` is set to the result when selection and `JOptionPane.YES_OPTION` are compared. If the user has selected the Yes button in the dialog box, this variable is set to `true`; otherwise, the variable is set to `false`. Finally, the true or false result is displayed. See **Figure 2-34**.

Figure 2-34 The confirm dialog box displayed by the `AirlineDialog` application and its output when user clicks Yes



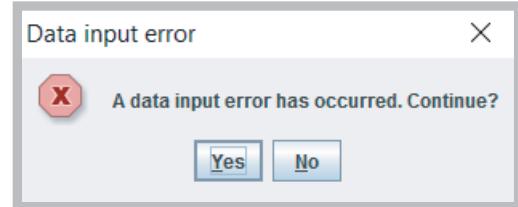
You can also create a confirm dialog box with five arguments, as follows:

- › The parent component, which can be `null`
- › The prompt message
- › The title to be displayed in the title bar
- › An integer that indicates which option button will be shown; it should be one of the constants `YES_NO_CANCEL_OPTION` or `YES_NO_OPTION`
- › An integer that describes the kind of dialog box; it should be one of the constants `ERROR_MESSAGE`, `INFORMATION_MESSAGE`, `PLAIN_MESSAGE`, `QUESTION_MESSAGE`, or `WARNING_MESSAGE`

For example, when the following statement is executed, it displays a confirm dialog box, as shown in **Figure 2-35**:

```
JOptionPane.showConfirmDialog(null,
    "A data input error has occurred. Continue?",
    "Data input error", JOptionPane.YES_NO_OPTION,
    JOptionPane.ERROR_MESSAGE);
```

Figure 2-35 Confirm dialog box with title, Yes and No buttons, and error icon



Note

Confirm dialog boxes provide more practical uses when your applications can make decisions based on the users' responses. Soon, you will learn how to make decisions within programs.

Two Truths & a Lie | Using the `JOptionPane` Class to Accept GUI Input

1. You can create an input dialog box using the `showInputDialog()` method; the method returns a `String` that represents a user's response.
2. You can use methods from the Java classes `Integer` and `Double` when you want to convert a dialog box's returned values to numbers.
3. A confirm dialog box can be created using the `showConfirmDialog()` method in the `JOptionPane` class; a confirm dialog box displays the options `Accept`, `Reject`, and `Escape`.

The false statement is #3. A confirm dialog box displays the options `Yes`, `No`, and `Cancel`.

2.8 Performing Arithmetic Using Variables and Constants

Table 2-8 describes the five **standard arithmetic operators** that you use to perform calculations with values in your programs. A value used on either side of an operator is an **operand**. For example, in the expression $45 + 2$, the numbers 45 and 2 are operands. The arithmetic operators are examples of **binary operators**, so named because they require two operands.

The operators / and % deserve special consideration. Java supports two types of division:

- › **Floating-point division** occurs when either or both of the operands are floating-point values. For example, $45.0 / 2$ is 22.5.
- › **Integer division** occurs when both of the operands are integers. The result is an integer, and any fractional part of the result is lost. For example, the result of $45 / 2$ is 22. As another example, $39 / 5$ is 7 because 5 “goes into” 39 seven whole times; $38 / 5$, $37 / 5$, $36 / 5$, and $35 / 5$ all evaluate to 7.

Table 2-8 Arithmetic operators

OPERATOR	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
+	Addition	$45 + 2$; the result is 47
-	Subtraction	$45 - 2$; the result is 43
*	Multiplication	$45 * 2$; the result is 90
/	Division	$45.0 / 2$; the result is 22.5 $45 / 2$; the result is 22 (not 22.5)
%	Remainder (modulus)	$45 \% 2$; the result is 1 (that is, $45 / 2 = 22$ with a remainder of 1)

The percent sign is the **remainder operator**. The remainder operator is most often used with two integers, and the result is an integer with the value of the remainder after division takes place. For example, the result of $45 \% 2$ is 1 because 2 goes into 45 twenty-two times with a remainder of 1. Other examples of remainder operations include the following:

- › $39 \% 5$ is 4 because 5 goes into 39 seven times with a remainder of 4.
- › $20 \% 3$ is 2 because when 20 is divided by 3, the remainder is 2.
- › $36 \% 4$ is 0 because there is no remainder when 4 is divided into 36.

Note that when you perform paper-and-pencil division, you divide first to determine a remainder. In Java, you do not need to perform a division operation before you can perform a remainder operation. A remainder operation can stand alone.

Although the remainder operator is most often used with integers, it is legal but less often useful to use the operator with floating-point values. In Java, when you use the % operator with floating-point values, the result is the remainder from a rounded division.

Note

The remainder operator is also called the **modulus operator**, or sometimes just *mod*. Mathematicians would argue that *remainder* is the better term because in Java, the result of using the remainder operator can be negative, but in mathematics, the result of a modulus operation can never be negative.

Associativity and Precedence

When you combine mathematical operations in a single statement, you must understand both associativity and precedence. The associativity of arithmetic operators with the same precedence is left to right. In a statement such as `answer = x + y + z;`, the `x` and `y` are added first, producing a temporary result, and then `z` is added to the temporary sum. After the sum is computed, the result is assigned to `answer`.

Operator precedence refers to the rules for the order in which parts of a mathematical expression are evaluated. The multiplication, division, and remainder operators have the same precedence, and it is higher than the precedence of the addition and subtraction operators. In other words, an arithmetic expression is evaluated from left to right, and any multiplication, division, and remainder operations take place. Then, the expression is evaluated from left to right again, and any addition and subtraction operations execute. **Table 2-9** summarizes the precedence of the arithmetic operators.

Table 2-9 Relative precedence of arithmetic operators

OPERATORS	DESCRIPTIONS	RELATIVE PRECEDENCE
<code>* / %</code>	Multiplication, division, remainder	Higher
<code>+ -</code>	Addition, subtraction	Lower

For example, the following statement assigns 14 to `result`:

```
int result = 2 + 3 * 4;
```

The multiplication operation (`3 * 4`) occurs before adding 2. You can override normal operator precedence by putting the operation to perform first in parentheses. The following statement assigns 20 to `result`:

```
int result = (2 + 3) * 4;
```

The addition within the parentheses takes place first, and then the intermediate result (5) is multiplied by 4. When multiple pairs of parentheses are used in a statement, the innermost expression surrounded by parentheses is evaluated first. For example, the value of the following expression is 46:

```
2 * (3 + (4 * 5))
```

First, `4 * 5` evaluates to 20, and then 3 is added, giving 23. Finally, the value is multiplied by 2, giving 46.

Remembering that `*`, `/`, and `%` have the same precedence is important in arithmetic calculations. These operations are performed from left to right, regardless of the order in which they appear. For example, the value of the following expression is 9:

```
25 / 8 * 3
```

First, 25 is divided by 8. The result is 3 because with integer division, you lose any remainder. Then 3 is multiplied by 3, giving 9. If you assumed that multiplication was performed before division, you would calculate an incorrect answer.

Writing Arithmetic Statements Efficiently

You can make your programs operate more efficiently if you avoid unnecessary repetition of arithmetic statements. For example, suppose you know the values for an employee's hourly pay and pay rate and you want to compute state and federal withholding tax based on known rates. You could write two statements as follows:

```
stateWithholding = hours * rate * STATE_RATE;
federalWithholding = hours * rate * FED_RATE;
```

With this approach, you perform the multiplication of `hours * rate` twice. It is more efficient to perform the calculation once, as follows:

```
grossPay = hours * rate;
stateWithholding = grossPay * STATE_RATE;
federalWithholding = grossPay * FED_RATE;
```

The time saved is very small, but these savings would be more important if the calculation was more complicated or if it was repeated many times in a program. As you think about the programs you write, remain on the lookout for ways to improve efficiency by avoiding duplication of operations.

Pitfall: Not Understanding Imprecision in Floating-Point Numbers

Integer values are exact, but floating-point numbers frequently are only approximations. For example, when you divide 1.0 by 3.0, the mathematical result is 0.3333333 ..., with the 3s continuing indefinitely. No matter how many decimal places you can store, the result is only an approximation. Even values that don't repeat indefinitely in our usual numbering system, such as 0.1, cannot be represented precisely in the binary format used by computers. Imprecision leads to several problems:

- When you produce floating-point output, it might not look like what you expect or want.
- When you make comparisons with floating-point numbers, the comparisons might not be what you expect or want.

Note

Appendix B provides a more thorough explanation of numbering systems and why fractional values cannot be represented accurately.

For example, **Figure 2-36** shows a class in which an answer is computed as 2.20 – 2.00.

Figure 2-36 The `ImprecisionDemo` program

```
public class ImprecisionDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        double answer = 2.20 - 2.00;
        boolean isEqual = answer == 0.20;
        System.out.println("answer is " + answer);
        System.out.println("isEqual is " + isEqual);
    }
}
```

Mathematically, the result in the program in Figure 2-36 should be 0.20. But, as the output in **Figure 2-37** shows, the result is calculated as a value that is slightly more than 0.20, and when `answer` is compared to 0.20, the result is false.

For now, you might choose to accept the slight imprecisions generated when you use floating-point numbers. However, if you want to eliminate the imprecisions, you can use one of several techniques to round values. Appendix C contains directions on how to round numbers and how to format a floating-point number so it displays the desired number of decimal positions.

Figure 2-37 Execution of the `ImprecisionDemo` program

```
answer is 0.2000000000000018
isEqual is false
```

Note

Several movies have used the fact that floating-point numbers are not precise as a plot element. For example, in the movies *Superman III* and *Office Space*, thieves round currency values and divert the remaining fractions of cents to their own accounts.

Two Truths & a Lie

Performing Arithmetic Using Variables and Constants

1. The arithmetic operators are examples of unary operators, which are so named because they perform one operation at a time.
2. In Java, operator precedence dictates that multiplication, division, and remainder always take place prior to addition or subtraction in an expression.
3. Floating-point arithmetic might produce imprecise results.

The false statement is #1. The arithmetic operators are examples of binary operators, which are so named because they require two operands.

You Do It

Using Arithmetic Operators

In these steps, you create a program that uses arithmetic operators.

1. Open a new file in your text editor, and type the `import` statement needed for interactive input with the `Scanner` class:

```
import java.util.Scanner;
```

2. Type the class header and its curly braces for a class named `ArithmeticDemo`. Within the class's curly braces, enter the `main()` method header and its braces.

```
public class ArithmeticDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
    }
}
```

3. Within the `main()` method, declare five `int` variables that will be used to hold two input values and their sum, difference, and average:

```
int firstNumber;
int secondNumber;
int sum;
int difference;
int average;
```

4. Also declare a `Scanner` object so that keyboard input can be accepted.

```
Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
```

5. Prompt the user for and accept two integers:

```
System.out.print("Please enter an integer >> ");
firstNumber = input.nextInt();
System.out.print("Please enter another integer >> ");
secondNumber = input.nextInt();
```

6. Add statements to perform the necessary arithmetic operations:

```
sum = firstNumber + secondNumber;
difference = firstNumber - secondNumber;
average = sum / 2;
```

7. Display the three calculated values:

```
System.out.println(firstNumber + " + " +
    secondNumber + " is " + sum);
System.out.println(firstNumber + " - " +
    secondNumber + " is " + difference);
System.out.println("The average of " + firstNumber +
    " and " + secondNumber + " is " + average);
```

8. Save the file as **ArithmeticDemo.java**, and then compile and execute it. Enter values of your choice. **Figure 2-38** shows a typical execution. Notice that because integer division was used to compute the average, the answer is an integer.
9. Execute the program multiple times using various integer values, and confirm that the results are accurate.

Performing Floating-Point Arithmetic

Next, you will modify the **ArithmeticDemo** application to work with floating-point values instead of integers.

- Within the **ArithmeticDemo** application, change the class name to **ArithmeticDemo2**, and immediately save the file as **ArithmeticDemo2.java**. Change all the variables' data types to **double**. Change the two prompts to request double values, and change the two calls to the **nextInt()** method to **nextDouble()**. Save, compile, and execute the program again. **Figure 2-39** shows a typical execution. Notice that the average calculation now includes decimal places.
- Rerun the program, experimenting with various input values. Some of your output might appear with imprecisions similar to those shown in **Figure 2-40**. If you are not satisfied with the slight imprecisions created when using floating-point arithmetic, you can round or change the display of the values, as discussed in Appendix C.

Figure 2-38 Typical execution of **ArithmeticDemo** application

```
Please enter an integer >> 14
Please enter another integer >> 11
14 + 11 is 25
14 - 11 is 3
The average of 14 and 11 is 12
```

Figure 2-39 Typical execution of the **ArithmeticDemo2** application

```
Please enter a double >> 15.5
Please enter another double >> 3.4
15.5 + 3.4 is 18.9
15.5 - 3.4 is 12.1
The average of 15.5 and 3.4 is 9.45
```

Figure 2-40 Another typical execution of the **ArithmeticDemo2** application

```
Please enter a double >> 16.4
Please enter another double >> 2.2
16.4 + 2.2 is 18.59999999999998
16.4 - 2.2 is 14.2
The average of 16.4 and 2.2 is 9.29999999999999
```

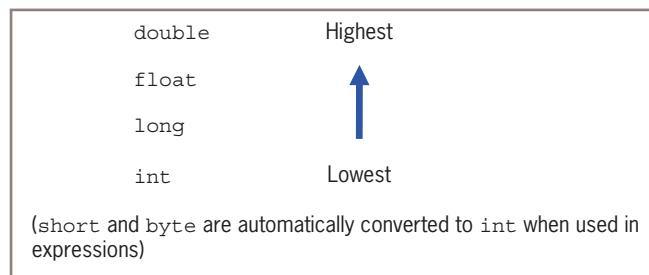
2.9 Understanding Type Conversion

When you perform arithmetic with variables or constants of the same type, the result of the operation retains the same type. For example, when you divide two **ints**, the result is an **int**, and when you subtract two **doubles**, the result is a **double**. Often, however, you might want to perform mathematical operations on operands with unlike types. The process of converting one data type to another is **type conversion**. Java performs some conversions for you automatically or implicitly, but other conversions must be requested explicitly by the programmer.

Automatic Type Conversion

When you perform arithmetic operations with operands of unlike types, Java chooses a unifying type for the result. The **unifying type** is the type to which all operands in an expression are converted so that they are compatible with each other. Java performs an **implicit conversion**; that is, it automatically converts nonconforming operands to the unifying type. An implicit conversion also is called a **promotion**. Figure 2-41 shows the order for establishing unifying types between values.

Figure 2-41 Order for establishing unifying data types



When two unlike types are used in an expression, the unifying type is the one that is higher in the list in Figure 2-41. In other words, when an operand that is a type lower on the list is combined with a type that is higher, the lower-type operand is converted to the higher one. For example, the addition of a `double` and an `int` results in a `double`, and the subtraction of a `long` from a `float` results in a `float`.

Note

Boolean values cannot be converted to another type. In some languages, such as C++, Boolean values are actually numbers. However, this is not the case in Java.

For example, assume that an `int`, `hoursWorked`, and a `double`, `payRate`, are defined and then multiplied as follows:

```
int hoursWorked = 37;
double payRate = 16.73;
double grossPay = hoursWorked * payRate;
```

The result of the multiplication is a `double` because when a `double` and an `int` are multiplied, the `int` is promoted to the higher-ranking unifying type `double`—the type that is higher in the list in Figure 2-41. Therefore, assigning the result to `grossPay` is legal.

The following code will not compile because `hoursWorked` times `payRate` is a `double`, and Java does not allow the loss of precision that occurs if you try to store the calculated `double` result in an `int`.

```
int hoursWorked = 37;
double payRate = 16.73;
int grossPay = hoursWorked * payRate;
```

The data types `char`, `short`, and `byte` all are promoted to `int` when used in statements with unlike types. If you perform a calculation with any combination of `char`, `short`, and `byte` values, the result is an `int` by default. For example, if you add two bytes, the result is an `int`, not a `byte`.

Explicit Type Conversion

You can purposely override the unifying type imposed by Java by performing a type cast. **Type casting** forces a value of one data type to be used as a value of another type. To perform a type cast, you use a **cast operator**, which is created by placing the desired result type in parentheses. Using a cast operator is an **explicit conversion**.

The cast operator is followed by the variable or constant to be cast. For example, a type cast is performed in the following code:

```
double bankBalance = 189.66;
float weeklyBudget = (float) (bankBalance / 4);
// weeklyBudget is 47.415, one-fourth of bankBalance
```

Note

The cast operator is more completely called the **unary cast operator**. Unlike a binary operator that requires two operands, a **unary operator** uses only one operand. The unary cast operator is followed by its operand.

In this example, the double value bankBalance is divided by the integer 4, and the result is a double. Then, the double result is converted to a float before it is stored in weeklyBudget. Without the conversion, the statement that assigns the result to weeklyBudget would not compile. Similarly, a cast from a float to an int occurs in this code segment:

```
float myMoney = 47.82f;
int dollars = (int) myMoney;
// dollars is 47, the integer part of myMoney
```

In this example, the float value myMoney is converted to an int before it is stored in the integer variable named dollars. When the float value is converted to an int, the decimal place values are lost. The cast operator does not permanently alter any variable's data type; the alteration is only for the duration of the current operation. In other words, if myMoney was used again in the previous example, it would still be a float, and its value would still be 47.82.

Note

The word cast is used in a similar fashion when referring to molding metal, as in *cast iron*. In a Java arithmetic cast, a value is "molded" into a different type.

Note

It is easy to lose data when performing a cast. For example, the largest byte value is 127, and the largest int value is 2,147,483,647, so the following statements produce distorted results:

```
int anOkayInt = 200;
byte aBadByte = (byte) anOkayInt;
```

A byte is constructed from eight 1s and 0s, or binary digits. The first binary digit, or bit, holds a 0 or 1 to represent positive or negative. The remaining seven bits store the actual value. When the integer value 200 is stored in the byte variable, its large value consumes the eighth bit, turning it to a 1, and forcing the aBadByte variable to appear to hold the value -72, which is inaccurate and misleading.

You do not need to perform a cast when assigning a value to a higher unifying type. For example, when you write a statement such as the following, Java automatically promotes the integer constant 10 to be a double so that it can be stored in the payRate variable:

```
double payRate = 10;
```

However, for clarity, if you want to assign 10 to payRate, you might prefer to write the following:

```
double payRate = 10.0;
```

The result is identical whether you assign the literal double 10.0 or the literal int 10 to the double variable.

Two Truths & a Lie | Understanding Type Conversion

- When you perform arithmetic operations with operands of unlike types, you must make an explicit conversion to a unifying type.
- Summing a double, int, and float results in a double.
- You can explicitly override the unifying type imposed by Java by performing a type cast; type casting forces a value of one data type to be used as a value of another type.

The false statement is #1. When you perform arithmetic operations with operands of unlike types, Java performs an implicit conversion to a unifying type.

You Do It | Implicit and Explicit Casting

In this section, you explore the concepts of the unifying types and casting.

- Open the **ArithmeticDemo.java** file that uses integer values to calculate a sum, difference, and average. Change the class name to **ArithmeticDemo3**, and immediately save the file as **ArithmeticDemo3.java**.
 - In the previous version of the program, the average was calculated without decimal places because when two integers are divided, the result is an integer. To compute a more accurate average, change the data type for the average variable from **int** to **double**.
 - Save, compile, and execute the program. As the sample execution in **Figure 2-42** shows, the program compiles and executes, but the average is still not accurate. The average of 20 and 19 is calculated to be just 19.0 because when two integers are divided, the decimal portion of the arithmetic result is lost.
 - Change the statement that computes the average to include a cast as follows:
- ```
average = (double) sum / 2;
```
- Save, compile, and execute the program. As shown in **Figure 2-43**, the program now displays a more accurate average. The integer **sum** has been cast to a double, and when the double is divided by the integer, the result is a double, which is then assigned to **average**.
  - Change the statement that computes the average to include a second set of parentheses, as follows:

```
average = (double) (sum / 2);
```

- Save, compile, and execute the program. Now, the fractional portion of the result is omitted again. That's because the result of **sum / 2** is calculated first, and the result is an integer. Then, the whole-number result is cast to a double and assigned to a double—but the fractional part of the answer was already lost, and casting is too late. Remove the newly added parentheses, save the program, compile it, and execute it again to confirm that the fractional part of the answer is reinstated.

**Figure 2-42** Typical execution of **ArithmeticDemo3** application

```
Please enter an integer >> 20
Please enter another integer >> 19
20 + 19 is 39
20 - 19 is 1
The average of 20 and 19 is 19.0
```

**Figure 2-43** Typical execution of **ArithmeticDemo3** application after addition of a cast operation for the average

```
Please enter an integer >> 20
Please enter another integer >> 19
20 + 19 is 39
20 - 19 is 1
The average of 20 and 19 is 19.5
```

8. As an alternative to the explicit cast in the division statement in the `ArithmeticDemo` program, you could write the average calculation as follows:

```
average = sum / 2.0;
```

In this calculation, when the integer `sum` is divided by the double constant `2.0`, the result is a double. The result then does not require any cast to be assigned to the double `average` without loss of data. Try this in your program.

## Don't Do It

- › Don't mispronounce *integer*. People who are unfamiliar with the term often say “interger,” inserting an extra *r*.
- › Don't attempt to assign a literal constant floating-point number, such as `2.5`, to a `float` without following the constant with an uppercase or lowercase *F*. By default, constant floating-point values are `doubles`.
- › Don't try to use a Java keyword as an identifier for a variable or constant.
- › Don't attempt to assign a constant value less than `-2,147,483,648` or greater than `+2,147,483,647` to a `long` variable without following the constant with an uppercase or lowercase *L*. By default, constant integers are `ints`, and a value less than `-2,147,483,648` or greater than `2,147,483,647` is too large to be an `int`.
- › Don't assume that you must divide numbers as a step to determining a remainder; the remainder operator (`%`) is all that's needed.
- › Don't try to use a variable or named constant that has not yet been assigned a value.
- › Don't forget to consume the Enter key after numeric input using the `Scanner` class when a `nextLine()` method call follows.
- › Don't forget to use the appropriate `import` statement when using the `Scanner` or `JOptionPane` class.
- › Don't forget precedence rules when you write statements that contain multiple arithmetic operations. For example, `score1 + score2 / 2` does not compute the average of two scores. Instead, it adds half of `score2` to `score1`. To compute the average, you would write `(score1 + score2) / 2`.
- › Don't forget that integer division results in an integer, dropping any fractional part. For example, `1/2` is not equal to `0.5`; it is equal to `0`.
- › Don't forget that extra parentheses can change the result of an operation that includes casting.
- › Don't forget that floating-point numbers are imprecise.
- › Don't attempt to assign a constant decimal value to an integer using a leading `0`. For example, if you declare `int num = 021;` and then display `num`, you will see `17`. The leading `0` indicates that the value is in base `8` (octal), so its value is two `8`s plus one `1`. In the decimal system, `21` and `021` mean the same thing, but they do not mean the same thing in Java.
- › Don't use a single equal sign (`=`) in a Boolean comparison for equality. The operator used for equivalency is composed of two equal signs (`==`).
- › Don't try to store a string of characters, such as a name, in a `char` variable. A `char` variable can hold only a single character.
- › Don't forget that when a `String` and a numeric value are concatenated, the resulting expression is a `String`. For example, `"X" + 2 + 4` results in `"X24"`, *not* `"X6"`. If you want the result to be `"X6"`, you can use the expression `"X" + (2 + 4)`.



## Summary

- › Variables are named memory locations in which programs store values; the value of a variable can change. You must declare all variables you want to use in a program by providing a data type and a name. Java provides for eight primitive types of data: boolean, byte, char, double, float, int, long, and short. A named constant is a memory location that holds a value that cannot be changed after it is assigned; it is preceded by the keyword final.
- › A variable of type int can hold any whole number value from  $-2,147,483,648$  to  $+2,147,483,647$ . The types byte, short, and long are all variations of the integer type.
- › A boolean type variable can hold a true or false value. Java supports six relational operators:  $>$ ,  $<$ ,  $==$ ,  $\geq$ ,  $\leq$ , and  $\neq$ .
- › A floating-point number contains decimal positions. Java supports two floating-point data types: float and double.
- › You use the char data type to hold any single character. You type constant character values between single quotation marks and String constants between double quotation marks. You can store some characters using an escape sequence, which always begins with a backslash.
- › You can use the Scanner class and the System.in object to accept user input from the keyboard. Several methods are available to convert input to usable data, including nextDouble(), nextInt(), and nextLine().
- › You can accept input using the JOptionPane class. The showInputDialog() method returns a String, which must be converted to a number using a type-wrapper class before you can use it as a numeric value.
- › There are five standard arithmetic operators: +, -, \*, /, and %. Operator precedence is the order in which parts of a mathematical expression are evaluated. Multiplication, division, and remainder always take place prior to addition or subtraction in an expression, but parentheses can be added to an expression to change precedence.
- › When you perform mathematical operations on unlike types, Java implicitly converts the variables to a unifying type. You can perform a type cast to explicitly override the unifying type imposed by Java.



## Key Terms

|                     |                                 |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| assignment          | confirm dialog box              | implicit conversion |
| assignment operator | constant                        | initialization      |
| associativity       | data type                       | input dialog box    |
| binary operators    | double                          | int                 |
| blank final         | double-precision floating-point | integer             |
| block of code       | number                          | integer division    |
| boolean             | escape sequence                 | keyboard buffer     |
| byte                | explicit conversion             | literal constant    |
| camel casing        | final                           | long                |
| cast operator       | float                           | lossless conversion |
| char                | floating-point                  | lossy conversion    |
| comparison operator | floating-point division         | lvalue              |
| concatenated        | garbage value                   | magic number        |

|                            |                                               |                               |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>modulus operator</b>    | <b>rvalue</b>                                 | <b>token</b>                  |
| <b>named constant</b>      | <b>scientific notation</b>                    | <b>type casting</b>           |
| <b>numeric constant</b>    | <b>scope</b>                                  | <b>type conversion</b>        |
| <b>operand</b>             | <b>short</b>                                  | <b>type-ahead buffer</b>      |
| <b>operator precedence</b> | <b>significant digits</b>                     | <b>type-wrapper classes</b>   |
| <b>primitive type</b>      | <b>single-precision floating-point number</b> | <b>unary cast operator</b>    |
| <b>promotion</b>           | <b>standard arithmetic operators</b>          | <b>unary operator</b>         |
| <b>prompt</b>              | <b>standard input device</b>                  | <b>unifying type</b>          |
| <b>reference types</b>     | <b>strongly typed language</b>                | <b>uninitialized variable</b> |
| <b>relational operator</b> | <b>symbolic constant</b>                      | <b>unnamed constant</b>       |
| <b>remainder operator</b>  | <b>text block</b>                             | <b>variable declaration</b>   |

## Review Questions

- When data cannot be changed after a class is compiled, the data is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. variable  
 b. constant  
 c. volatile  
 d. mutable
- Which of the following is not a primitive data type in Java?  
 a. boolean  
 b. byte  
 c. sector  
 d. int
- Which of the following elements is not required in a variable declaration?  
 a. a type  
 b. an identifier  
 c. an assigned value  
 d. a semicolon
- The assignment operator in Java is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. =  
 b. ==  
 c. :=  
 d. ::
- Assuming you have declared shoeSize to be a variable of type int, which of the following is a valid assignment statement in Java?  
 a. shoeSize = 9;  
 b. shoeSize = 9.5;  
 c. shoeSize = "nine";  
 d. shoeSize = 9.5F;
- Which of the following data types can store the value 0 using the least amount of memory?  
 a. short  
 b. long  
 c. int  
 d. byte
- A boolean variable can hold \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. a character  
 b. a whole number  
 c. a decimal number  
 d. the value true or false
- The value 137.68 can be held by a variable of type \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. int  
 b. short  
 c. double  
 d. byte

9. An escape sequence always begins with a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. e
  - b. forward slash
  - c. backslash
  - d. equal sign
10. Which Java statement produces *w* on one line and *xyz* on the next line?
- a. `System.out.println("wxyz");`
  - b. `System.out.println("w" + "xyz");`
  - c. `System.out.println("w\nxyz");`
  - d. `System.out.println("w\nx\ny\nz");`
11. The remainder operator \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. is represented by a forward slash
  - b. must follow a division operation
  - c. provides the quotient of integer division
  - d. is represented by a percent sign
12. Which of the following operators has the lowest precedence?
- a. multiplication
  - b. remainder
  - c. subtraction
  - d. division
13. The *equal to* relational operator is \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. =
  - b. ==
  - c. !=
  - d. !!
14. When you perform arithmetic with values of diverse types, Java \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. issues an error message
  - b. implicitly converts the values to a unifying type
  - c. requires you to explicitly convert the values to a unifying type
  - d. implicitly converts the values to the type of the first operand
15. If you attempt to add a float, an int, and a byte, the result will be a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. float
  - b. int
  - c. byte
  - d. error message
16. You use a \_\_\_\_\_ to explicitly override an implicit type.
- a. mistake
  - b. type cast
  - c. format
  - d. type set
17. In Java, what is the value of  $3 + 7 * 4 + 2$ ?
- a. 21
  - b. 33
  - c. 42
  - d. 48
18. Which assignment is correct in Java?
- a. `int value = (float) 4.5;`
  - b. `float value = 4 (double);`
  - c. `double value = 2.12;`
  - d. `char value = 5c;`
19. Which assignment is correct in Java?
- a. `double money = 12;`
  - b. `double money = 12.0;`
  - c. `double money = 12.0d;`
  - d. All of these are correct.
20. Which assignment is correct in Java?
- a. `char aChar = 5.5;`
  - b. `char aChar = "W";`
  - c. `char aChar = '*' ;`
  - d. `char aChar = $;`

## Programming Exercises

1. What is the numeric value of each of the following expressions, as evaluated by Java?
  - a.  $4 + 6 * 2$
  - b.  $10 / 5 + 8$
  - c.  $12 / 4 + 16 / 2$
  - d.  $17 / 2$
  - e.  $22 / 5$
  - f.  $39 / 10$
  - g.  $19 \% (2 + 3)$
  - h.  $3 + 4 * 20 / 3$
  - i.  $36 \% (6 + 2)$
  - j.  $8 \% 2 * 0$
2. What is the value of each of the following Boolean expressions?
  - a.  $15 < 13$
  - b.  $8 <= (2 + 6)$
  - c.  $15 == 15$
  - d.  $3 >= 3$
  - e.  $4 * 2 == 2 * 4$
  - f.  $5 < 8 - 3$
  - g.  $7 != 7$
  - h.  $8 != (2 + 5)$
  - i.  $10 - 20 == -10$
  - j.  $3 + 2 * 6 == 30$
3. Choose the best data type for each of the following so that any reasonable value is accommodated but no memory storage is wasted. Give an example of a typical value that would be held by the variable, and explain why you chose the type you did.
  - a. the number of siblings you have
  - b. your final grade in this class
  - c. the population of Earth
  - d. the population of a U.S. county
  - e. the number of passengers on a bus
  - f. one player's score in a Scrabble game
  - g. one team's score in a Major League Baseball game
  - h. the year an historical event occurred
  - i. the number of legs on an animal
  - j. the price of an automobile
4.
  - a. Write a program that declares a named constant to hold the number of quarts in a gallon (4). Also declare a variable to represent the number of quarts needed for a painting job. Name the variable `quartsNeeded`, and assign 18 to it. Compute and display the number of gallons and quarts needed for the job. Display explanatory text in the format *A job that needs 18 quarts requires 4 gallons plus 2 quarts.* Save the program as **QuartsToGallons.java**.
  - b. Convert the `QuartsToGallons` program to an interactive application. Instead of assigning a value to the number of quarts, accept the value from the user as input. Save the revised program as **QuartsToGallonsInteractive.java**.
5.
  - a. Write a program that declares named constants to represent the number of inches, feet, and yards in a mile. Also declare a variable named `miles` to represent a number of miles and assign a value to it. Compute and display, with explanatory text, the value in inches, feet, and yards. Save the program as **MileConversions.java**.
  - b. Convert the `MileConversions` program to an interactive application. Instead of assigning a value to the `miles` variable, accept the value from the user as input. Save the revised program as **MileConversionsInteractive.java**.
6.
  - a. Write a program that declares a variable named `inches`, which holds a length in inches, and assign a value. Display the value in feet and inches; for example, 86 inches becomes 7 feet and 2 inches. Be sure to use a named constant where appropriate. Save the program as **InchesToFeet.java**.
  - b. Write an interactive version of the `InchesToFeet` class that accepts the `inches` value from a user. Save the class as **InchesToFeetInteractive.java**.

7. Meadowdale Dairy Farm sells organic brown eggs to local customers. It charges \$3.25 for a dozen eggs or 45 cents for individual eggs that are not part of a dozen. Write a program that prompts a user for the number of eggs in the order and then display the amount owed with a full explanation. For example, typical output might be *You ordered 27 eggs. That's 2 dozen at \$3.25 per dozen and 3 loose eggs at 45 cents each for a total of \$7.85.* Save the program as **Eggs.java**.
8.
  - a. The Huntington Boys and Girls Club is conducting a fundraiser by selling chili dinners to go. The price is \$7 for an adult's meal and \$4 for a child's meal. Write a program that accepts the number of each type of meal ordered, and display the total money collected for adults' meals, children's meals, and all meals. Save the program as **ChiliToGo.java**.
  - b. In the **ChiliToGo** program, the costs to produce an adult's meal and a child's meal are \$4.35 and \$3.10, respectively. Modify the **ChiliToGo** program to display the total profit for each type of meal as well as the grand total profit. Save the program as **ChiliToGoProfit.java**.
9. Write a program that allows the user to enter an integer number of dollars and calculates and displays the conversion into currency denominations—20s, 10s, 5s, and 1s. Save the program as **Dollars.java**.
10. Write a program that accepts an integer number of minutes from a user and converts it both to hours and days. For example, 6,000 minutes equals 100 hours and equals 4.167 days. Save the program as **MinutesConversion.java**.
11. Write a program that accepts as user input the names of three political parties and the number of votes each received in the last mayoral election. Display the percentage of the vote each party received. Save the program as **ElectionStatistics.java**.

## Debugging Exercises

1. Each of the following files in the Chapter02 folder of your downloadable student files has syntax and/or logic errors. In each case, determine the problem and fix the application. After you correct the errors, save each file using the same filename preceded with *Fix*. For example, *DebugTwo1.java* will become **FixDebugTwo1.java**.
  - a. *DebugTwo1.java*
  - b. *DebugTwo2.java*
  - c. *DebugTwo3.java*
  - d. *DebugTwo4.java*

### Note

When you change a filename, remember to change every instance of the class name within the file so that it matches the new filename. In Java, the filename and class name must always match.

## Game Zone

1. *Mad Libs* is a children's game in which they provide a few words that are then incorporated into a silly story. The game helps children understand different parts of speech because they are asked to provide specific types of words. For example, you might ask a child for a noun, another noun, an adjective, and a past-tense verb. The child might reply with such answers as *table*, *book*, *silly*, and *studied*. The newly created *Mad Lib* might be the following:

Mary had a little *table*  
 Its *book* was *silly* as snow  
 And everywhere that Mary *studied*  
 The *table* was sure to go.

Create a *Mad Libs* program that asks the user to provide at least four or five words, and then create and display a short story or nursery rhyme that uses them. Save the file as **MadLib.java**.

- Recall how to obtain a random number. For example, the following statement generates a random number between the constants MIN and MAX inclusive and assigns it to a variable named random:

```
random = MIN + (int)(Math.random() * MAX);
```

Write a program that selects a random number between 1 and 5 and asks the user to guess the number. Display a message that indicates the difference between the random number and the user's guess. Display another message that displays the random number and the Boolean value true or false depending on whether the user's guess equals the random number. Save the file as **RandomGuessMatch.java**.

## Case Problems

- Yummy Catering provides meals for parties and special events. Write a program that prompts the user for the number of guests attending an event and then computes the total price, which is \$35 per person. Display the company motto with the border that you created in the `YummyMotto2` class in Chapter 1, and then display the number of guests, price per guest, and total price. Also display a message that indicates true or false depending on whether the job is classified as a large event—an event with 50 or more guests. Save the file as **YummyEventPrice.java**.
- Sunshine Seashore Supplies rents beach equipment such as kayaks, canoes, beach chairs, and umbrellas to tourists. Write a program that prompts the user for the number of minutes the user rented a piece of sports equipment. Compute the rental cost as \$40 per hour plus \$1 per additional minute. (You might have surmised already that this rate has a logical flaw, but for now, calculate rates as described here. You can fix the problem after you learn about decision making.) Display Sunshine's motto with the border that you created in the `SunshineMotto2` class in Chapter 1. Then display the hours, minutes, and total price. Save the file as **SunshineRentalPrice.java**.

# Using Methods

## Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to:

- 3.1 Describe method calls and placement
- 3.2 Identify the parts of a method
- 3.3 Add parameters to methods
- 3.4 Create methods that return values
- 3.5 Describe blocks and scope
- 3.6 Overload a method
- 3.7 Avoid ambiguity

### 3.1 Understanding Method Calls and Placement

A method is a program module that contains a series of statements that carry out a task. You have already seen Java classes that contain a `main()` method, which executes automatically when you run a program. A program's `main()` method can execute additional methods, and those methods can execute others. Any class can contain an unlimited number of methods, and each method can be called an unlimited number of times.

To execute a method, you call it or **invoke** it. In other words, a **calling method** (also known as a *client method*) invokes a **called method**.

Suppose you have created a class that displays your organization's name in a single line of output, as shown in **Figure 3-1**. Then, suppose that you want to add three lines of output to this application to display the business hours for your company. One approach would be to simply add three new `println()` statements, as shown in **Figure 3-2**.

**Figure 3-1** The `CompanyInfo` class

```
public class CompanyInfo
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 System.out.println("Smart Electronics");
 }
}
```

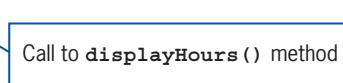
**Figure 3-2** The CompanyInfo class that displays hours of operation

```
public class CompanyInfo
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 System.out.println("Smart Electronics");
 System.out.println("Monday - Friday 8 am to 6 pm");
 System.out.println("Saturday 8 am to noon");
 System.out.println("Sunday closed");
 }
}
```

Instead of adding the three `println()` statements to the original application, you might prefer to call a method that executes the three new statements. Then the `main()` method would look like the one in **Figure 3-3** that calls a method named `displayHours()`.

**Figure 3-3** CompanyInfo class that calls the `displayHours()` method

```
public class CompanyInfo
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 System.out.println("Smart Electronics");
 displayHours();
 }
}
```



Advantages to creating a separate method to display the three new lines include the following:

- › By using a method call to execute the three separate `println()` statements, the `main()` method remains short and easy to follow.
- › By using a well-named method, it is easy to see the overall intent of the separate `println()` statements.
- › A method is easily reusable. After you create the `displayHours()` method, you can use it in any application that needs the company's hours of operation. In other words, you do the work once, and then you can use the method many times.

Besides adding a call to the method in the `CompanyInfo` class, you must actually write the method. You place a method within a class, but it must be outside of any other methods. In other words, you cannot place a method within another method. **Figure 3-4** shows the two locations where you can place additional methods within the `CompanyInfo` class—within the curly braces of the class, but outside of (either before or after) any other method. Methods can never overlap.

**Figure 3-4** Acceptable places to add a method in the `CompanyInfo` class

```
public class CompanyInfo
{
 // You can place the method here, before main()
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 System.out.println("Smart Electronics");
 displayHours();
 }
 // You can place the method here, after main()
}
```

The order in which methods appear in a class has no bearing on the order in which the methods are called or execute. No matter where you place it, the `main()` method is always executed first in any Java application, and it might call any other methods in any order and any number of times. The order in which you call methods, not their physical placement, is what makes a difference in how an application executes.

A `main()` method executes automatically when you run a program, but other methods do not execute simply because you place them within a class—they must be called. A class might contain methods that are never called from a particular application, just as some electronic devices might contain features you never use. For example, you might use your microwave oven for popcorn but never to defrost, or you might use a cell phone to send text messages but never to take photographs.

**Figure 3-5** shows the `CompanyInfo` class with two methods: the `main()` method and the `displayHours()` method, which is placed after `main()` in this example.

### Note

Using a method name to contain or encapsulate a series of statements is an example of the feature that programmers call **abstraction**. Consider abstract art, in which the artist tries to capture the essence of an object without focusing on the details. Similarly, when programmers employ abstraction, they use a general method name in a module rather than listing all the detailed activities that will be carried out by the method.

**Figure 3-5** The complete `CompanyInfo` class with a `displayHours()` method

```
public class CompanyInfo
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 System.out.println("Smart Electronics");
 displayHours();
 }
 public static void displayHours()
 {
 System.out.println("Monday - Friday 8 am to 6 pm");
 System.out.println("Saturday 8 am to noon");
 System.out.println("Sunday closed");
 }
}
```

This method call  
invokes this method.

**Figure 3-6** shows the output from the execution of the program in Figure 3-5. The `main()` method first displays the company name. Then it calls the `displayHours()` method, which displays three lines of output.

**Figure 3-6** Output of the `CompanyInfo` application

```
Smart Electronics
Monday - Friday 8 am to 6 pm
Saturday 8 am to noon
Sunday closed
```

### Note

The `main()` method in Figure 3-5 calls a method that resides in its own class. Later in this chapter, you will learn how to call a method that resides in a different class.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Understanding Method Calls and Placement

1. Any class can contain an unlimited number of methods.
2. During one program execution, a method might be called any number of times.
3. A method is usually written within another method.

The false statement is #3. A method is written within a class, but not within any other methods.

## 3.2 Understanding Method Construction

Every method must include two parts:

- › A **method header**—A method's header provides information about how other methods can interact with it. A method header is also called a **method declaration**.
- › A **method body** between a pair of curly braces—The method body contains the statements that carry out the work of the method. A method's body is called its **implementation**.

### Note

Technically, a method is not required to contain any statements in its body, but you usually would have no reason to create an empty method in a completed class. Sometimes, while developing a program, the programmer creates an empty method as a placeholder and fills in the implementation later. An empty method is called a **stub**.

The method header is the first line of a method. It contains the following:

- › Optional access specifiers
- › An optional `static` modifier
- › A return type
- › An identifier
- › Parentheses, which may or may not be empty

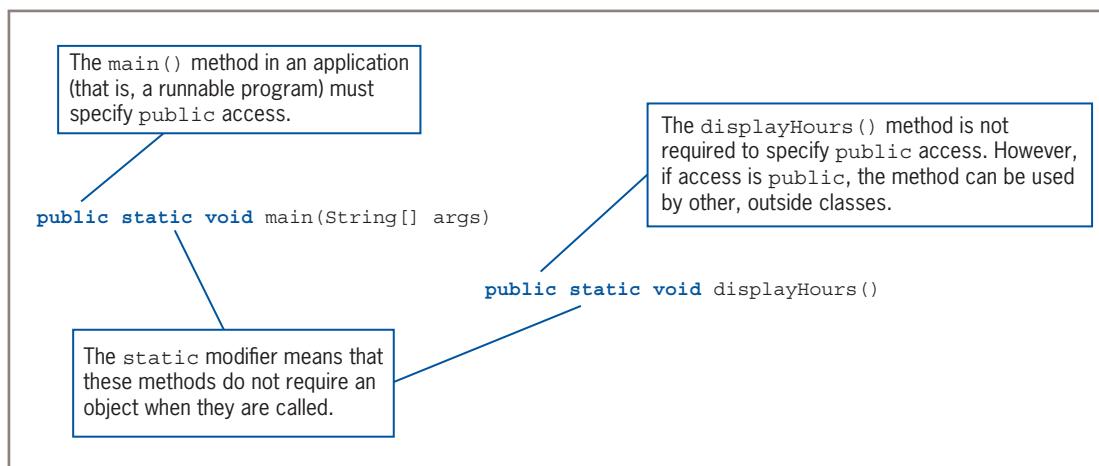
The next few figures compare these parts of a method header for the `main()` method and the `displayHours()` method in the `CompanyInfo` class.

## Access Specifiers

**Figure 3-7** highlights the optional access specifiers for the two methods in the `CompanyInfo` class. The access specifier for a Java method can be any of the following modifiers: `public`, `private`, `protected`, or, if left unspecified, package by default. Most often, methods are given `public` access; this course will cover the other modifiers later. Endowing a method with `public` access means that any other class can use it, not just the class in which the method resides.

### Note

You have already learned the term **access specifier** when creating applications that are `public`. The term defines the circumstances under which a class can be accessed and the other classes that have the right to use a class. An access specifier is sometimes called an **access modifier**.

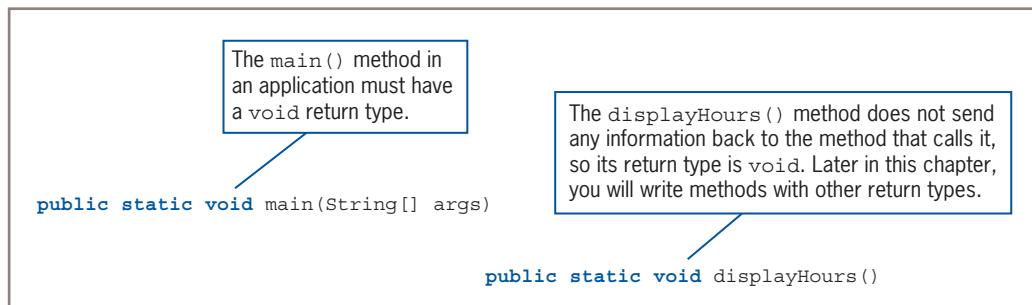
**Figure 3-7** Access specifiers for two methods

## The static Modifier

Figure 3-7 also highlights the `static` modifier in the method headers. Any method that can be used without instantiating an object requires the keyword modifier `static`. The `main()` method in an application must use the keyword `static`, but other methods, like `displayHours()`, can use it too. You will learn about nonstatic methods later.

## Return Type

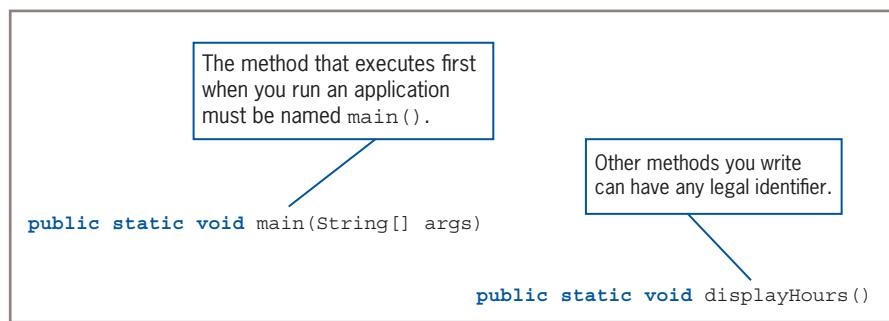
Figure 3-8 features the return types for the `main()` and `displayHours()` methods in the `CompanyInfo` class. A **return type** describes the type of data the method sends back to its calling method. Not all methods **return a value** to their calling methods; a method that returns no data has a return type of `void`. The `main()` method in an application must have a return type of `void`; in this example, `displayHours()` also has a `void` return type. Other methods that you will see later in this chapter have different return types such as `double` or `int`. The phrases *void method* and *method of type void* both refer to a method that has a `void` return type.

**Figure 3-8** Return types for two methods

## Method Name

Figure 3-9 highlights the names of the two methods in the `CompanyInfo` class. A method's name can be any legal identifier. That is, like identifiers for classes and variables, a method's identifier must be one word with no embedded spaces, and cannot be a Java keyword. The method that executes first when you run an application must be named `main()`, but you have a lot of leeway in naming other methods that you create. Technically, you could even name another method `main()` as long as you did not include `String []` within the parentheses, but doing so would be confusing and is not recommended. Because methods "do" something—that is, perform an action—their names frequently contain a verb, such as `display` or `compute`.

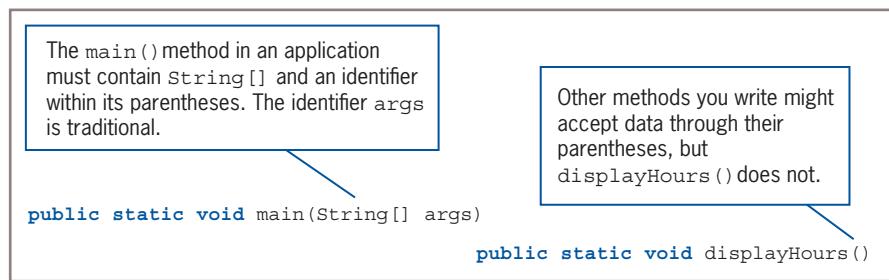
**Figure 3-9** Identifiers for two methods



## Parentheses

As **Figure 3-10** shows, every method header contains a set of parentheses that follow the identifier. The parentheses might contain data to be sent to the method. For example, when you write a `main()` method in a class, the parentheses in its header surround `String[] args`. The `displayHours()` method in the `CompanyInfo` class requires no outside data, so its parentheses are empty. Later in this chapter, you will see several methods that accept data.

**Figure 3-10** Parentheses and their contents for two methods



The full name of the `displayHours()` method is `CompanyInfo.displayHours()`, which includes the class name (`CompanyInfo`), a dot, and the method name. A complete name that includes the class is a **fully qualified identifier**. When you use a method within its own class, you do not need to use the fully qualified name (although you can); the simple method name alone is enough. However, if you want to use a method in another class, the compiler does not recognize the method unless you use the full name. You have used similar syntax (including a class name, dot, and method name) when calling the `JOptionPane.showMessageDialog()` method.

Each of two different classes can have its own method named `displayHours()`. Such a method in the second class would be entirely distinct from the identically named method in the first class. You could use both methods in a third class by using their fully qualified identifiers.

### Note

Think of the class name as the family name. Within your own family, you might refer to an activity as the *family reunion*, but outside the family, people need to use a surname as well, as in the *Nguyen family reunion*. Similarly, a method name alone is sufficient within a class, but outside the class, you need to use the fully qualified name.

## Two Truths & a Lie Understanding Method Construction

1. A method header is also called an implementation.
2. When a method is declared with public access, methods in other classes can call it.
3. Not all methods return a value, but every method requires a return type.

The false statement is #1. A method header is a declaration; a method body is its implementation.

## You Do It | Creating a static Method with Empty Parentheses

Paradise Day Spa provides many personal services such as haircuts, manicures, and facials. In this section, you create a new class named `ParadiseInfo`, which contains a `main()` method that calls a `displayInfo()` method.

1. Open a new document in your text editor, and type the following shell for the class:

```
public class ParadiseInfo
{
}
```

2. Between the curly braces of the class, indent a few spaces and create the shell for the `main()` method:

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
}
```

3. Between the braces of the `main()` method, insert a call to the `displayInfo()` method:

```
displayInfo();
```

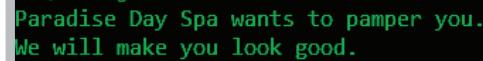
4. Place the `displayInfo()` method outside the `main()` method, just before the closing curly brace for the `ParadiseInfo` class:

```
public static void displayInfo()
{
 System.out.println("Paradise Day Spa wants to pamper you.");
 System.out.println("We will make you look good.");
}
```

5. Save the file as `ParadiseInfo.java`.

6. Compile the class, and then execute it. The output should look like **Figure 3-11**.

**Figure 3-11** Output of the `ParadiseInfo` application



```
Paradise Day Spa wants to pamper you.
We will make you look good.
```

### Calling a static Method from Another Class

Next, you see how to call the `displayInfo()` method from a method within another class.

1. Open a new document in your text editor, and then enter the following class in which the `main()` method calls the `displayInfo()` method that resides in the `ParadiseInfo` class:

```
public class TestInfo
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 System.out.println("Calling method from another class:");
 ParadiseInfo.displayInfo();
 }
}
```

#### Note

If you were to change the `println()` call to `print()` in the `TestInfo` class, the first output line of the `displayInfo()` information would appear on the same line as *Calling method from another class*:

2. Save the file as **TestInfo.java** in the same folder as the `ParadiseInfo` class. If the files are not saved in the same folder and you try to compile the calling class, your compiler issues the error message *cannot find symbol*; the symbol named is the missing class you tried to call.
3. Compile the application and execute it. Your output should look like **Figure 3-12**. The `TestInfo` class does not contain the `displayInfo()` method; it uses the method from the `ParadiseInfo` class. It's important that the `displayInfo()` method is `public`. If you had omitted the keyword `public` from the definition of the `displayInfo()` method in the `ParadiseInfo` class, then the `TestInfo` class would not have been able to use it.

### Examining the Details of a Prewritten static Method

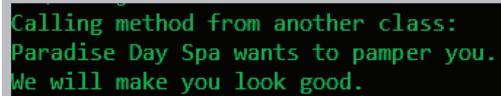
Recall that you can use the `JOptionPane` class to create statements such as the following:

```
JOptionPane.showMessageDialog
(null, "Every bill is due in " + creditDays + " days");
```

In the next steps, you examine the Java API documentation for the `showMessageDialog()` method so that you can better understand how prewritten methods are similar to ones that you write.

1. Using a browser, search for **Java API specifications JOptionPane class**, and scroll through the class documentation until you find **Method Summary**.
2. Examine the various versions of the `showMessageDialog()` method. Notice several method versions are defined as `static void` methods, just like the `main()` and `displayInfo()` methods discussed earlier in this “You Do It” section. You can use the `static showMessageDialog()` method in your classes by using its class name, a dot, and the method name, in the same way that you used the `ParadiseInfo.displayInfo()` method in the outside class named `TestInfo`.

**Figure 3-12** Output of the `TestInfo` application



```
Calling method from another class:
Paradise Day Spa wants to pamper you.
We will make you look good.
```

## 3.3 Adding Parameters to Methods

Some methods require that data items be sent to them when they are called. You have already learned that data items you use in a call to a method are called *arguments*. When a method receives a data item, it is called a **parameter**. Methods that receive data are flexible because they can produce different results depending on what data they receive.

As a real-life example, when you make a restaurant reservation, you do not need to employ a different method for every date of the year at every possible time of day. Rather, you can supply the date and time as information to the person who carries out the method. The method—recording the reservation—is then carried out in the same manner, no matter what date and time are supplied.

In a program, if you design a method to square numeric values, it makes sense to design a `square()` method that you can supply with an argument that represents the value to be squared, rather than having to develop a `square1()` method (that squares value 1), a `square2()` method (that squares value 2), and so on. To call a `square()` method that takes an argument, you might write a statement like `square(17);` or `square(86);`. Similarly, any time it is called, the `println()` method can receive any one of an infinite number of arguments—for example, "Hello", "Goodbye", or any other `String`. No matter what message is sent to `println()`, the message is displayed correctly. If the `println()` method could not accept arguments, it would not be practical to use.

In everyday life, you use many methods without understanding how they work. For example, when you make a real-life restaurant reservation, you do not need to know how the reservation is actually recorded at the restaurant—perhaps it is written in a book, marked on a large chalkboard, or entered into a computerized database. The implementation details don't concern you as a client, and if the restaurant changes its methods from one year to the next, the change does not affect your use of the reservation method—you still call and provide your name, a date, and a time.

Similarly, object-oriented programs use **implementation hiding**, which describes the encapsulation of method details. It means that a client does not have to know how a method works internally, but only needs to know the name of the called method and what type of information to send. (Usually, you also want to know about any data returned by the method; you will learn about returned data later in this chapter.) In other words, the calling method needs to understand only the interface to the called method. The **interface to a method** is the only part of a method that the method's client sees or with which it interacts. In addition, if you substitute a new or revised method implementation, as long as the interface to the method does not change, you won't need to make any changes in any methods that call the altered method.

### Note

Hidden implementation methods are often referred to as existing in a **black box**. Many everyday devices are black boxes—that is, you can use them without understanding how they work. For example, most of us use phones, television sets, and automobiles without understanding much about their internal mechanisms.

## Creating a Method That Receives a Single Parameter

All method declarations contain the same elements—optional access specifiers, the return type for the method, the method name, and a set of parentheses. However, if a method receives a parameter, two additional items are required within the parentheses:

- › The parameter type
- › A local name for the parameter

For example, you might want to create a method to compute gross pay based on a standard hourly pay rate; gross pay is the number of hours an employee worked multiplied by the hourly pay rate before any deductions such as payroll taxes are taken. The declaration for a public method named `calculateGross()` that accepts a value for an employee's hours worked could be written as follows:

```
public static void calculateGross(double hours)
```

You can think of the parentheses in a method declaration as a funnel into the method—parameters listed there contain data that is “dropped into” the method. A parameter accepted by a method can be any data type, including the primitive types, such as `int`, `double`, and `char`; it also can be a built-in class type such as `String` or `PrintStream`, or a class type you create.

In the method header for `calculateGross()`, the parameter `double hours` within the parentheses indicates that the method will receive a value of type `double`, and that within the method, the passed value will be known as `hours`. **Figure 3-13** shows a complete method that uses an hourly pay rate of \$22.75.

**Figure 3-13** The `calculateGross()` method with a parameter

```

public static void calculateGross(double hours)
{
 final double STD_RATE = 22.75;
 double gross;
 gross = hours * STD_RATE;
 System.out.println(hours + " hours at $" +
 STD_RATE + " per hour is $" + gross);
}

```

The diagram shows the `calculateGross()` method code. Two callout boxes point to specific parts of the parameter declaration: one labeled "Parameter data type" pointing to the `double` keyword, and another labeled "Parameter identifier" pointing to the variable name `hours`.

The `calculateGross()` method is a `void` method because it does not need to return a value to any other method that calls it—its only function is to receive the `hours` value, multiply it by the `STD_RATE` constant, and then display the result.

The `calculateGross()` method’s parameter is a `double`, so you call it using any argument that can be promoted to a `double`. Recall that Java uses a unifying type when implicitly converting the operands in an expression to be compatible with each other. Recall that the order of promotion is `double`, `float`, `long`, and `int`. Any type in this list can be promoted to any type that precedes it. In other words, a method that has a `double` parameter can accept a variable, constant, or expression that is a `double`, `float`, `long`, `int`, `short`, or `byte`. For example, all of the following method calls are valid:

- › `calculateGross(10);`—This call uses an unnamed `int` constant that is promoted to a `double`.
- › `calculateGross(28.5);`—This call uses an unnamed `double` constant.
- › `calculateGross(7.5 * 5);`—This call uses an arithmetic expression that results in a `double`.
- › `calculateGross(STANDARD_WORK_WEEK);`—This call uses a named constant that might be a `double`, `float`, `long`, `int`, `short`, or `byte`.
- › `calculateGross(myHours);`—This call uses a variable that might be a `double`, `float`, `long`, `int`, `short`, or `byte`.
- › `calculateGross(getGross());`—This call assumes that the `getGross()` method returns a `double`, `float`, `long`, `int`, `short`, or `byte`. You learn about methods that return data later in this chapter.

You can call the `calculateGross()` method any number of times, with a different argument each time. Each of these arguments becomes known as `hours` within the method. The identifier `hours` represents a variable that holds a copy of the value of any `double` value passed into the method.

It is interesting to note that if the value used as an argument in the method call to `calculateGross()` is a variable, it might possess the same identifier as `hours` or a different one, such as `myHours` or `timeWorked`. The code in **Figure 3-14** shows three calls to the `calculateGross()` method, and **Figure 3-15** shows the output.

**Figure 3-14** The DemoGrossPay class with a `main()` method that calls the `calculateGross()` method three times

```
public class DemoGrossPay
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 double hours = 25;
 double yourHoursWorked = 37.5;
 calculateGross(10);
 calculateGross(hours);
 calculateGross(yourHoursWorked);
 }
 public static void calculateGross(double hours)
 {
 final double STD_RATE = 22.75;
 double gross;
 gross = hours * STD_RATE;
 System.out.println(hours + " hours at $" +
 STD_RATE + " per hour is $" + gross);
 }
}
```

**Figure 3-15** Output of the DemoGrossPay application

```
10.0 hours at $22.75 per hour is $227.5
25.0 hours at $22.75 per hour is $568.75
37.5 hours at $22.75 per hour is $853.125
```

### Note

Recall that the `final` modifier makes `STD_RATE` constant. Because `hours` is not altered within the `calculateGross()` method in Figure 3-14, you also could make the method's parameter constant by declaring the method header as `public static void calculateGross(final double hours)`. There would be no difference in the program's execution, but declaring a parameter as `final` means it cannot be altered within the method. Someone reading your program would be able to see more easily that the parameter is not intended to change.

### Note

Note that the values output in Figure 3-15 do not display to two decimal places, as you would usually like to see with monetary values. You can discover how to remedy this issue in Appendix C.

In Figure 3-14, the identifier `hours` in the `main()` method that is used as an argument in one of the method calls refers to a different memory location than `hours` in the `calculateGross()` method. The parameter `hours` is simply a placeholder while it is being used within the method, no matter what name its value “goes by” in the calling method. The parameter `hours` is a **local variable** to the `calculateGross()` method; that is, it is known only within the boundaries of the method. The variable and constant declared within the method are also local to the method.

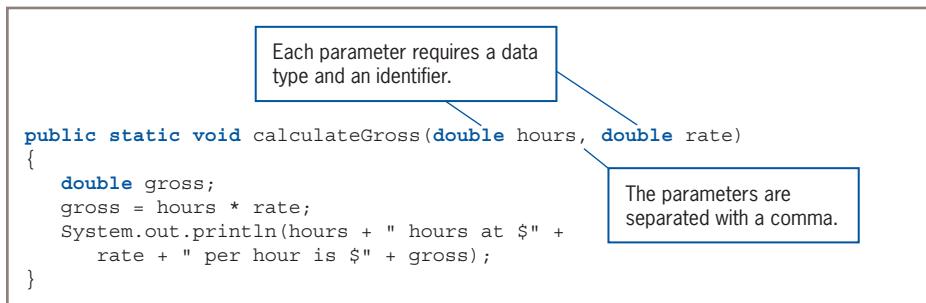
Each time the `calculateGross()` method in Figure 3-14 executes, a new `hours` variable is redeclared—that is, a new memory location large enough to hold a `double` is set up and named `hours`. Within the method, `hours` holds a copy of whatever value is passed into the method by the `main()` method. When the `calculateGross()` method ends at the closing curly brace, the local `hours` variable ceases to exist. That is, if you change the value of `hours` after you have used it in the calculation within `calculateGross()`, it affects nothing else. The memory location that holds `hours` is released at the end of the method, and changes to its value within the method do not affect any value in

the calling method. In particular, don't think there would be any change in the variable named `hours` in the `main()` method; that variable, even though it has the same name as the locally declared parameter in the `calculateGross()` method, is a different variable with its own memory address.

## Creating a Method That Requires Multiple Parameters

A method can require more than one parameter. For example, rather than creating a `calculateGross()` method that uses a standard hourly rate for every employee, you might prefer to create a method to which you can pass two values—the hours worked as well as a custom hourly rate. **Figure 3-16** shows a method that uses two such parameters.

**Figure 3-16** The `calculateGross()` method that accepts two parameters



In Figure 3-16, two parameters (`double hours` and `double rate`) appear within the parentheses in the method header. A comma separates each parameter, and each parameter requires its own declared type (in this case, both are `double`) as well as its own identifier. Note that a declaration for a method that receives two or more parameters must list the type for each parameter separately, even if the parameters have the same type.

You can pass multiple arguments to a method by listing the arguments within the call to the method and separating them with commas.

You can write a method so that it takes any number of parameters in any order. However, when you call a method, the arguments you send to a method must match in order—both in number and in type—the parameters listed in the method declaration. Although the calculated gross pay is the same either way, the call `calculateGross(10, 20)`; results in output describing 10 hours worked at \$20 per hour, but `calculateGross(20, 10)`; results in output describing 20 hours worked at \$10 per hour.

If arguments to a method are passed in the wrong order, the result is one of the following:

- › If the method can still accept all the arguments, the result is a logical error; that is, the program compiles and executes, but it probably produces incorrect results.
- › If the method cannot accept the arguments, passing arguments in the wrong order constitutes a syntax error, and the program does not compile. For example, if you try to pass a `double` value to a method that accepts an `int` parameter, the program fails to compile.

A method's **signature** is the combination of the method name and the number, types, and order of arguments. Therefore, you can say that a method call must match the called method's signature.

### Note

An argument in a method call is often referred to as an **actual parameter**. A variable in the method declaration that accepts the values from an actual parameter is a **formal parameter**.

**Note**

When you look at Java applications, you might see methods that appear to be callable in multiple ways. For example, you can use `System.out.println()` with no arguments to display a blank line, or with a `String` argument to display the `String`. You can use the method with different argument lists only because multiple versions of the method have been written, each taking a specific set of arguments. The ability to execute different method implementations by altering the argument used with the method name is known as **method overloading**, a concept you will learn about later in this chapter.

**Two Truths & a Lie**

## Adding Parameters to Methods

1. A class can contain any number of methods, and each method can be called any number of times.
2. Arguments are used in method calls; they are passed to parameters in method headers.
3. A method header always contains a return type, an identifier, and a parameter list within parentheses.

The false statement is #3. A method header always contains a return type, an identifier, and parentheses, but the parameter list might be empty.

## 3.4 Creating Methods That Return Values

A method ends when any of the following events takes place:

- › The method completes all of its statements. You saw methods like this in the last section.
- › The method throws an exception. Exceptions are errors; you will learn about them later.
- › The method reaches a `return` statement. A **return statement** causes a method to end and the program's logic to return to the calling method. Also, a `return` statement frequently sends a value back to the calling method.

The return type for a method can be any type used in Java, which includes the primitive types `int`, `double`, `char`, and so on, as well as class types (including class types you create). Of course, as you have seen in several examples so far, a method also can return nothing, in which case the return type is `void`.

A method's return type is known more succinctly as a **method's type**. For example, the declaration for the `displayHours()` method shown earlier in Figure 3-5 is written as follows:

```
public static void displayHours()
```

This method returns no value, so it is type `void`.

A method that prompts a user for an age and returns the age to the calling method might be declared as:

```
public static int getAge()
```

The method returns an `int`, so it is type `int`.

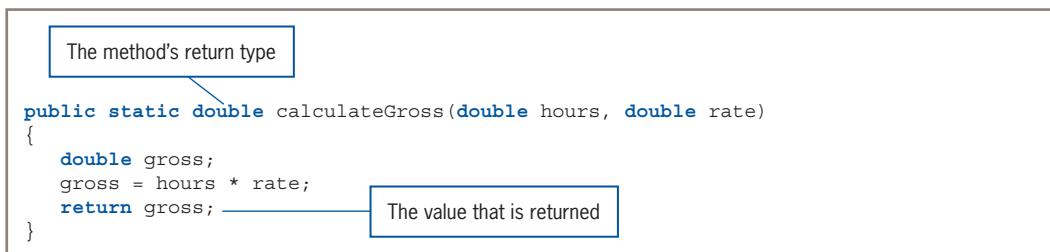
As another example, a method that returns `true` or `false` depending on whether an employee worked overtime hours might be declared as:

```
public static boolean didWorkOvertime()
```

This method returns a Boolean value, so it is type `boolean`.

The `calculateGross()` method shown earlier produces output, but does not return any value, so its return type is `void`. If you want to create a method to return the new, calculated salary value rather than display it, the header would be written as shown in **Figure 3-17**.

**Figure 3-17** A version of the `calculateGross()` method that returns a `double`



Notice the return type `double` that precedes the method name in the `calculateGross()` method header in Figure 3-17. Also notice the last statement in the method; it returns the value of the calculated gross back to the calling method. A method's declared return type must be compatible with the type of the value used in the `return` statement. In other words, the return value must match the return type or be promotable to the return type. If the returned value is not compatible with the method's return type, the class does not compile.

For example, a method with a `double` return type might have a `return` statement that looks like either of the following:

```
return 1;
return 1.0;
```

Additionally, if the types are compatible, a method might return a variable, a named constant, a call to another method, or the result of a calculation, as in the following examples:

```
return myHoursWorked;
return MAXIMUM_PAY;
return getHours();
return myRate * 1.2;
```

### Note

All methods except `void` methods require a `return` statement that returns a value of the appropriate type. You can place a `return` statement in a `void` method that is simply the word `return` followed by a semicolon. However, most Java programmers do not include a `return` statement in a method when nothing is returned.

You cannot place any statements after a method's `return` statement. Such statements are **unreachable statements** because the logical flow leaves the method at the `return` statement. An unreachable statement can never execute, and it causes a compiler error. Unreachable statements are also called **dead code**.

### Note

A method can contain multiple `return` clauses if they are embedded in a decision, although this practice is not recommended because it can lead to errors that are difficult to detect. However, no other statements can be placed after the last `return` clause in a method. You will learn about decision making later in this course.

If a method returns a value, then when you call the method, you normally use the returned value, although you are not required to do so. For example, when you invoke the `calculateGross()` method, you might want to assign the returned value (also called the method's value) to a `double` variable named `myPay`, as in the following statement:

```
myPay = calculateGross(myHoursWorked, myRate);
```

Alternatively, you can choose to use a method's returned value directly, without storing it in any variable. When you use a method's value, you use it in the same way you would use any variable of the same type. For example, you can display a method's returned value from within a `println()` method call, as in the following:

```
System.out.println("My pay is " +
 calculateGross(myHoursWorked, myRate));
```

Because `calculateGross()` returns a double, you can use the method call in the same way that you would use any simple double value. Notice the two closing parentheses at the end of the statement. The first one completes the call to the `calculateGross()` method, and the second one completes the call to the `println()` method.

You also might use a method's return value directly in an arithmetic expression, as in the following statement:

```
double spendingMoney = calculateGross(myHoursWorked, myRate) - expenses;
```

Any method might call any number of other methods. For example, a `main()` method might call a `calculateNetPay()` method, and the `calculateNetPay()` method might call both `calculateGross()` and `calculateWithholding()`, as shown in **Figure 3-18**.

**Figure 3-18** The `calculateNetPay()` method calling two other methods

```
public static double calculateNetPay(double hours, double rate)
{
 double gross;
 double withholding;
 double net;
 gross = calculateGross(hours, rate);
 withholding = calculateWithholding(gross);
 net = gross - withholding;
 return net;
}
```

The diagram shows the `calculateNetPay()` method. Inside the method, there is a call to `calculateGross()` and a call to `calculateWithholding()`. Blue arrows point from the text labels "Call to calculateGross()" and "Call to calculateWithholding()" to the respective method calls in the code.

When you look at the call to the `calculateWithholding()` method from the `calculateNetPay()` method, you do not know how `calculateWithholding()` works. You only know that the method accepts a double as a parameter (because `gross` is passed into it) and that it must return either a double or a type that can automatically be promoted to a double (because the result is stored in the double variable `withholding`). In other words, the method acts as a black box.

As examples, the `calculateWithholding()` method might subtract a fixed amount from the gross pay, might calculate a percentage of the gross pay, or might use a series of decisions to reduce gross pay by different amounts depending on its value. The `calculateWithholding()` method might even contain calls to more methods to get more information—for example, one that determines the number of dependents or the state of residence.

You also can nest method calls within method calls. If you create methods named `getHours()` and `getRate()`, and each returns a double, then you might want to call `calculateNetPay()` as follows:

```
double net = calculateNetPay(getHours(), getRate());
```

## Two Truths & a Lie | Creating Methods That Return Values

1. The return type for a method can be any type used in Java, including `int`, `double`, and `void`.
2. A method's declared return type must match the type of the value used in the parameter list.
3. You cannot place a method within another method, but you can call a method from within another method.

The false statement is #2. A method's declared return type must match the type of the value used in the return statement.

## You Do It | Creating static Methods That Accept Arguments and Return a Value

In this section, you add a method to the `ParadiseInfo` class you started in the last “You Do It” section. The new method receives two parameters and returns a value. The purpose of the method is to accept a minimum price for the current week’s featured discount and the percentage discount, and to return the minimum amount the customer will save.

1. Open the `ParadiseInfo.java` file in your text editor, and then change the class name to `ParadiseInfo2`.

Immediately save the file as `ParadiseInfo2.java`.

2. As the first line of the file, add the `import` statement that allows user input:

```
import java.util.Scanner;
```

3. Add four declarations as the first statements following the opening curly brace of the `main()` method. One holds the minimum price for which a discount will be allowed, and another holds the discount rate. The third variable is the minimum savings, which is calculated by multiplying the minimum price for a discount and the discount rate. The fourth variable is a `Scanner` object to use for keyboard input.

```
double price;
double discount;
double savings;
Scanner keyboard = new Scanner(System.in);
```

### Note

Instead of importing the `Scanner` class to provide console input, you could substitute `JOptionPane` and include program statements that provide GUI input. The input process can use other techniques too, such as getting data from a storage device. The concept of input (getting data into memory from the outside) is the same, no matter what specific technique or type of hardware device you use.

4. Following the declarations, prompt the user for the minimum discount price, and accept a value from the keyboard:

```
System.out.print("Enter cutoff price for discount >> ");
price = keyboard.nextDouble();
```

5. Prompt the user for the discount rate, and accept it.

```
System.out.print("Enter discount rate as a whole number >> ");
discount = keyboard.nextDouble();
```

6. After the call to `displayInfo()`, insert a call to `computeDiscountInfo()`. You will pass the `price` and `discount` values to the method, and the method returns the minimum that a consumer will save, which is stored in `savings`:

```
savings = computeDiscountInfo(price, discount);
```

7. Just before the closing curly brace for the `main()` method, display the savings information:

```
System.out.println("Special this week on any service over " + price);
System.out.println("Discount of " + discount + " percent");
System.out.println("That's a savings of at least $" + savings);
```

8. After the `displayInfo()` method implementation, but before the closing curly brace for the class, add the `computeDiscountInfo()` method. It accepts two doubles and returns a double.

```
public static double computeDiscountInfo(double price, double discountRate)
{
 double savings;
 savings = price * discountRate / 100;
 return savings;
}
```

9. Save the file, and then compile and execute it. **Figure 3-19** shows a typical execution. After the user is prompted for the cutoff price for the week's sale and the discount to be applied, the program executes the `displayInfo()` method. Then the program executes the `computeDiscountInfo()` method, which returns a value to store in the `savings` variable. Finally, the discount information is displayed.

**Figure 3-19** Typical execution of the `ParadiseInfo2` program

```
Enter cutoff price for discount >> 150
Enter discount rate as a whole number >> 10
Paradise Day Spa wants to pamper you.
We will make you look good.
Special this week on any service over 150.0
Discount of 10.0 percent
That's a savings of at least $15.0
```

### Note

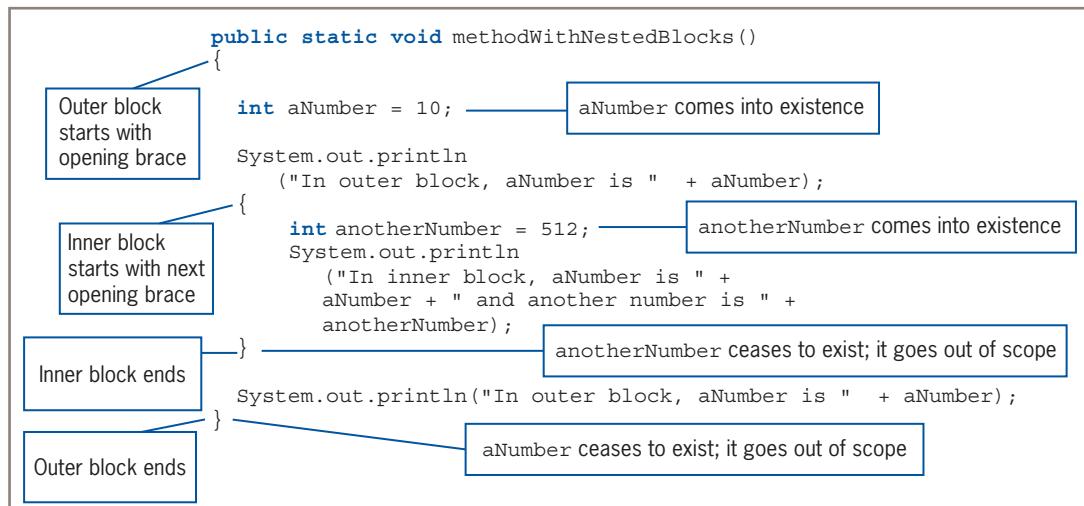
In this chapter, you have learned that methods can be used without knowing the details of their implementation. As an example of how professional programmers use implementation hiding, you can visit the Java website to see the interfaces for thousands of prewritten methods that reside in the Java prewritten classes. You are not allowed to see the code inside these methods; you see only their interfaces, which is all you need to be able to use the methods.

## 3.5 Understanding Blocks and Scope

Within any class or method, the code between a pair of curly braces is a *block of code*, or, more simply, a *block*. For example, the method shown in **Figure 3-20** contains two blocks:

- The **outer block** begins at the first opening curly brace and ends at the last closing curly brace, at the end of the method.
- The **inner block** starts with the second opening curly brace and ends with the first closing curly brace. It contains two executable statements: the declaration of `anotherNumber` and a `println()` statement. The inner block is **nested**, or contained entirely, within the outer block.

**Figure 3-20** A method with nested blocks



A block can exist entirely within another block or entirely outside and separate from another block, but blocks can never overlap.

You cannot refer to a variable outside the block in which it is declared. You have already learned that the portion of a program within which you can refer to a variable is the variable's *scope*; in this part of the program, the variable exists and can be accessed using its unqualified name. In Java, a variable comes into existence, or **comes into scope**, when you declare it, and a variable ceases to exist, or **goes out of scope**, at the end of the block in which it is declared. Programmers say that a Java variable's **scope level** is its block.

Although you can create as many variables and blocks as you need within any program, it is not wise to do so without a reason. The use of unnecessary variables and blocks increases the likelihood of improper use of variable names and scope.

In the `methodWithNestedBlocks()` method shown in Figure 3-20, the variable `aNumber` exists from the point of its declaration until the end of the method. This means `aNumber` exists both in the outer block and in the inner block and can be used anywhere in the method. The variable `anotherNumber` comes into existence within the inner block; `anotherNumber` goes out of scope when the inner block ends and cannot be used beyond its block. **Figure 3-21** shows the output when the method in Figure 3-20 executes.

**Figure 3-21** Output produced by application that uses `methodWithNestedBlocks()`

```
In outer block, aNumber is 10
In inner block, aNumber is 10 and another number is 512
In outer block, aNumber is 10
```

You cannot use a data item that is not in scope. For example, **Figure 3-22** shows a method that contains two blocks and some valid and invalid statements. The opening and closing braces for each block are vertically aligned. You are not required to vertically align the opening and closing braces for a block, but your programs are much easier to read if you do.

**Figure 3-22** The `methodWithInvalidStatements()` method

```
public static void methodWithInvalidStatements()
{
 aNumber = 75; _____Illegal statement; this variable has not been declared yet
 int aNumber = 22;
 aNumber = 6;
 anotherNumber = 489; _____Illegal statement; this variable has not been declared yet
 {
 anotherNumber = 165;
 int anotherNumber = 99; _____Illegal statement; this variable still has not been declared
 anotherNumber = 2;
 }
 aNumber = 50;
 anotherNumber = 34; _____Illegal statement; this variable was declared in the
 _____inner block and has gone out of scope here
}
aNumber = 29; _____Illegal statement; this variable has gone out of scope
```

The first assignment statement in the first, outer block in Figure 3-22, `aNumber = 75;`, is invalid because `aNumber` has not been declared yet. Similarly, the statements that attempt to assign 489 and 165 to `anotherNumber` are invalid because `anotherNumber` has not been declared yet. After `anotherNumber` is declared, it can be used for the remainder of the inner block, but the statement that attempts to assign 34 to it is outside the block in which `anotherNumber` was declared. The last statement in Figure 3-22, `aNumber = 29;`, does not work because it falls outside the block in which `aNumber` was declared; it actually falls outside the entire `methodWithInvalidStatements()` method.

Within a method, you can declare a variable with the same name multiple times, as long as each declaration is in its own nonoverlapping block. For example, the two declarations of variables named `someVar` in **Figure 3-23** are valid because each variable is contained within its own block. The first instance of `someVar` has gone out of scope before the second instance comes into scope.

### Note

Many programmers would recommend that you do not declare variables with the same name in the same method, even if doing so is legal because the variables exist in separate blocks. You should follow the recommendations of your instructor or supervisor.

**Figure 3-23** The `twoDeclarations()` method

```
public static void twoDeclarations()
{
 {
 int someVar = 7;
 System.out.println(someVar);
 }
 {
 int someVar = 845;
 System.out.println(someVar);
 }
}
```

You cannot declare the same variable name more than once within a block, even if a block contains other blocks. When you declare a variable more than once in a block, you are attempting to **redeclare a variable**, which is an illegal action. For example, in **Figure 3-24**, the second declaration of `aValue` causes an error because you cannot declare the same variable twice within the outer block of the method. By the same reasoning, the third declaration of `aValue` is also invalid, even though it appears within a new block. The block that contains the third declaration is entirely within the outer block, so the first declaration of `aValue` has not gone out of scope.

**Figure 3-24** The `invalidRedeclarationMethod()`

```
public static void invalidRedeclarationMethod()
{
 int aValue = 35;
 int aValue = 44;
 {
 int anotherValue = 0;
 int aValue = 10;
 }
}
```

Although you cannot declare a variable twice within the same block, you can declare a variable within one method of a class and use the same variable name within another method of the class. In this case, the variable declared inside each method resides in its own location in computer memory. In other words, a locally declared variable always masks or hides another variable with the same name elsewhere in the class.

For example, consider the class in **Figure 3-25**. In the `main()` method of the `MaskingVariable` class, `aNumber` is declared and assigned the value 10. When the program calls `firstMethod()`, a new variable is declared with the same name but with a different memory address and a new value. The new variable exists only within `firstMethod()`, where it is displayed holding the value 77. After `firstMethod()` executes and the logic returns to the `main()` method, the original `aNumber` is displayed, containing 10. When `aNumber` is passed to `secondMethod()`, a copy is made within the method. This copy has the same identifier as the original `aNumber`, but a different memory address. So, within `secondMethod()`, when the value is changed to 862 and displayed, it has no effect on the original variable in `main()`. When the logic returns to `main()` after `secondMethod()`, the original value is displayed again. Examine the output in **Figure 3-26** to understand the sequence of events.

**Figure 3-25** The MaskingVariable class

```

public class MaskingVariable
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 int aNumber = 10;
 System.out.println("In main(), aNumber is " + aNumber);
 firstMethod();
 System.out.println("Back in main(), aNumber is " + aNumber);
 secondMethod(aNumber);
 System.out.println("Back in main() again, aNumber is " + aNumber);
 }
 public static void firstMethod()
 {
 int aNumber = 77;
 System.out.println("In firstMethod(), aNumber is " +
 + aNumber);
 }
 public static void secondMethod(int aNumber)
 {
 System.out.println("In secondMethod(), at first " +
 "aNumber is " + aNumber);
 aNumber = 862;
 System.out.println("In secondMethod(), after an assignment " +
 "aNumber is " + aNumber);
 }
}

```

aNumber is declared in main().

Whenever aNumber is used in main(), it retains its value of 10.

This aNumber resides at a different memory address from the one in main(). It is declared locally in this method.

This aNumber also resides at a different memory address from the one in main(). It is declared locally in this method.

**Figure 3-26** Output of the MaskingVariable application

```

In main(), aNumber is 10
In firstMethod(), aNumber is 77
Back in main(), aNumber is 10
In secondMethod(), at first aNumber is 10
In secondMethod(), after an assignment aNumber is 862
Back in main() again, aNumber is 10

```

It is important to understand the impact that blocks and methods have on your variables. Variables and fields with the same names represent different memory locations when they are declared within different scopes. After you understand the scope of variables, you can avoid many potential errors in your programs.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Understanding Blocks and Scope

1. A variable ceases to exist, or goes out of scope, at the end of the block in which it is declared.
2. You can declare two variables with the same name more than once within any block.
3. You can declare two variables with the same name in different methods within a program.

The false statement is #2. You cannot declare two variables with the same name within a block.

## You Do It | Demonstrating Scope

In this section, you create a method with several blocks to demonstrate block scope.

1. Start your text editor, and then open a new document, if necessary.

2. Type the first few lines for a class named `DemoBlock`:

```
public class DemoBlock
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
```

3. Add a statement that displays the purpose of the program:

```
System.out.println("Demonstrating block scope");
```

4. On a new line, declare an integer named `x`, assign the value 1111 to it, and display its value:

```
int x = 1111;
System.out.println("In first block x is " + x);
```

5. Begin a new block by typing an opening curly brace on the next line. Within the new block, declare another integer named `y`, and display `x` and `y`. The value of `x` is 1111, and the value of `y` is 2222:

```
{
 int y = 2222;
 System.out.println("In second block x is " + x);
 System.out.println("In second block y is " + y);
}
```

6. On the next line, begin another new block. Within this new block, declare a new integer with the same name as the integer declared in the previous block; then display `x` and `y`. The value of `y` is 3333. Call a method named `demoMethod()`, and display `x` and `y` again. Even though you will include statements within `demoMethod()` that assign different values to `x` and `y`, the `x` and `y` displayed here are still 1111 and 3333:

```
{
 int y = 3333;
 System.out.println("In third block x is " + x);
 System.out.println("In third block y is " + y);
 demoMethod();
 System.out.println("After method x is " + x);
 System.out.println("After method block y is " + y);
}
```

7. On a new line after the end of the block, type the following:

```
System.out.println("At the end x is " + x);
```

This last statement in the `main()` method displays the value of `x`, which is still 1111. Type a closing curly brace.

8. Finally, enter the following `demoMethod()` that creates its own `x` and `y` variables, assigns different values, and then displays them:

```
public static void demoMethod()
{
 int x = 8888, y = 9999;
 System.out.println("In demoMethod x is " + x);
 System.out.println("In demoMethod block y is " + y);
}
```

9. Type the final closing curly brace, and then save the file as **DemoBlock.java**. Compile the program. If necessary, correct any errors, and compile the program again.
10. Run the program. Your output should look like **Figure 3-27**. Make certain you understand how the values of *x* and *y* are determined in each line of output.
11. To gain a more complete understanding of blocks and scope levels, change the values of *x* and *y* in several locations throughout the program, and try to predict the exact output before resaving, recompiling, and rerunning the program.

**Figure 3-27** Output of the **DemoBlock** application

```
Demonstrating block scope
In first block x is 1111
In second block x is 1111
In second block y is 2222
In third block x is 1111
In third block y is 3333
In demoMethod x is 8888
In demoMethod block y is 9999
After method x is 1111
After method block y is 3333
At the end x is 1111
```

## 3.6 Overloading a Method

**Overloading** a method allows you to use one identifier to execute diverse tasks. In Java, it more specifically means writing multiple methods in the same scope that have the same name but different parameter lists. In other words, you overload methods by providing different parameter lists for methods with the same name. In overloaded methods, the parameter identifiers do not have to be different, but the parameter lists must satisfy one or both of these conditions:

- › The lists must have different numbers of parameters. For example, one list could have one `double`, another list could have two `doubles`, and a third list could have 10 `doubles`.
- › The lists must have parameter data types in different orders. For example, one list could have two `doubles`, another could have an `int` followed by a `double`, and a third could have a `double` followed by an `int`.

When you use the English language, you overload words all the time. When you say *open the door*, *open your eyes*, and *open a computer file*, you are talking about three very different actions using very different methods and producing very different results. However, anyone who speaks English fluently has no trouble understanding your meaning because the verb *open* is understood in the context of the noun that follows it.

When you overload a Java method, multiple methods share a name, and the compiler understands which one to use based on the arguments in the method call. For example, suppose you create a class method to apply a simple interest rate to a bank balance. The method is named `calculateInterest()`; it receives two `double` parameters—the balance and the interest rate—and displays the multiplied result. **Figure 3-28** shows the method.

**Figure 3-28** The `calculateInterest()` method with two `double` parameters

```
public static void calculateInterest(double bal, double rate)
{
 double interest;
 interest = bal * rate;
 System.out.println("Simple interest on $" + bal +
 " at " + rate + "% rate is " + interest);
}
```

When an application calls the `calculateInterest()` method and passes two `double` values, as in `calculateInterest(1000.00, 0.04)`, the interest is calculated correctly as 4 percent of \$1,000.

Assume, however, that different users want to calculate interest using different argument types. Some users who want to indicate an interest rate of 4 percent might use `0.04`; others might use `4` and assume that it means 4 percent. When the `calculateInterest()` method is called with the arguments `1000.00` and `0.04`, the interest is calculated

correctly as \$40. When the method is called using 1000.00 and 4, the method works because the int argument is promoted to a double, but the interest is calculated incorrectly as 4000.00, which is 100 times too high.

A solution for the conflicting use of numbers to represent parameter values is to overload the `calculateInterest()` method. For example, in addition to the `calculateInterest()` method shown in Figure 3-28, you could add the method shown in **Figure 3-29**.

**Figure 3-29** The `calculateInterest()` method with a `double` parameter and an `int` parameter

```
public static void calculateInterest(double bal, int rate)
{
 double interest, rateAsPercent;
 rateAsPercent = rate / 100.0;
 interest = bal * rateAsPercent;
 System.out.println("Simple interest on $" +
 bal + " at " + rate + "% rate is " +
 interest);
}
```

Notice the data type for `rate`.

Dividing by 100.0 converts `rate` to its percent equivalent.

### Note

In Figure 3-29, note that `rateAsPercent` is calculated by dividing by 100.0 and not by 100. If two integers are divided, the result is a truncated integer; dividing by a double 100.0 causes the result to be a double. Alternatively, you could use an explicit cast such as `rateAsPercent = (double)rate / 100.`

If an application calls the `calculateInterest()` method using two double arguments—for example, `calculateInterest(1000.00, 0.04)`—the first version of the method, the one shown in Figure 3-28, executes. However, if an integer is used as the second argument in a call to `calculateInterest()`—as in `calculateInterest(1000.00, 4)`—the second version of the method, the one shown in Figure 3-29, executes. In this second example, the whole number rate figure is correctly divided by 100.0 before it is used to determine the interest earned.

Of course, you could use methods with different names to solve the dilemma of producing an accurate interest figure—for example, `calculateInterestUsingDouble()` and `calculateInterestUsingInt()`. However, it is easier and more convenient for programmers who use your methods to remember just one method name they can use in the form that is most appropriate for their programs. It is convenient to use one reasonable name for tasks that are functionally identical except for the argument types that can be passed to them. The compiler knows which method version to call based on the passed arguments.

## Two Truths & a Lie Overloading a Method

1. When you overload Java methods, you write multiple methods with a shared name.
2. When you overload Java methods, the methods are called using different arguments.
3. Instead of overloading methods, it is preferable to write methods with unique identifiers.

The false statement is #3. Overloading methods is preferable to using unique identifiers because it is convenient for programmers to use one reasonable name for tasks that are functionally identical, except for the argument types that can be passed to them.

## You Do It | Overloading Methods

In this section, you overload methods to display dates. The date-displaying methods might be used by many different applications in an organization, such as those that schedule jobs, appointments, and employee reviews. The methods take one, two, or three integer arguments. If there is one argument, it is the month, and the date becomes the first day of the given month in the year 2024. If there are two arguments, they are the month and the day in the year 2024. Three arguments represent the month, day, and year.

### Note

Instead of creating your own class to store dates, you can use the built-in Java class `LocalDate` to handle dates. You work with the class later in this course.

1. Open a new file in your text editor.
2. Begin the following `DemoOverload` class with three integer variables to test the method and three calls to a `displayDate()` method:

```
public class DemoOverload
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 int month = 6, day = 24, year = 2023;
 displayDate(month);
 displayDate(month, day);
 displayDate(month, day, year);
 }
}
```

3. Create the following `displayDate()` method that requires one parameter to represent the month and uses default values for the day and year:

```
public static void displayDate(int mm)
{
 System.out.println("Event date " + mm + "/1/2024");
}
```

4. Create the following `displayDate()` method that requires two parameters to represent the month and day and uses a default value for the year:

```
public static void displayDate(int mm, int dd)
{
 System.out.println("Event date " + mm + "/" + dd + "/2024");
}
```

5. Create the following `displayDate()` method that requires three parameters used as the month, day, and year:

```
public static void displayDate(int mm, int dd, int yy)
{
 System.out.println("Event date " + mm + "/" + dd + "/" + yy);
}
```

6. Type the closing curly brace for the `DemoOverload` class. Save the file as `DemoOverload.java`.
7. Compile the program, correct any errors, recompile if necessary, and then execute the program. **Figure 3-30** shows the output. Notice that whether you call the `displayDate()` method using one, two, or three arguments, the date is displayed correctly because you have successfully overloaded the `displayDate()` method.

**Figure 3-30** Output of the `DemoOverload` application

```
Event date 6/1/2024
Event date 6/24/2024
Event date 6/24/2023
```

### Examining Prewritten Overloaded Methods

In this section, you examine some built-in classes and recognize their correctly overloaded methods.

1. Search the Internet for the `PrintStream` class in the Java API for the version of Java you are using.
2. Examine the list of methods named `print()` and `println()`. Notice that each overloaded version has a unique parameter list.

## 3.7 Learning about Ambiguity

Overloading methods is useful because you can use a single identifier to execute different instructions depending on the arguments you send to the method. However, when you overload methods, you risk creating an **ambiguous** situation—one in which the compiler cannot determine which method to use. For example, consider the following overloaded `computeBalance()` method declarations:

```
public static void computeBalance(double deposit)
public static void computeBalance(double withdrawal)
```

A program that contains these two methods will not compile. If it did compile, and you made a method call such as `computeBalance(100.00);`, the compiler would not know which method to use because both methods would be exact matches for your call. Sometimes, it is hard to recognize potentially ambiguous situations. For example, consider the following two method declarations:

```
public static void calculateInterest(int bal, double rate)
public static void calculateInterest(double bal, int rate)
```

These `calculateInterest()` methods have different types in their parameter lists, so a program that contains these methods can compile. A call to `calculateInterest()` with an `int` and a `double` argument (in that order) executes the first version of the method, and a call to `calculateInterest()` with a `double` and an `int` argument executes the second version of the method. With each of these calls, the compiler can find an exact match for the arguments you send. However, if you call `calculateInterest()` using two integer arguments, as in `calculateInterest(300, 6);`, an ambiguous situation arises because there is no exact match for the method call. Because either of the two integers in the method call can be promoted to a `double`, the call matches both versions of the method. The compiler can't determine which version of the `calculateInterest()` method to use, and the program does not compile.

The two versions of `calculateInterest()` could coexist if no ambiguous calls were ever made. An overloaded method with different parameter lists is not ambiguous on its own—it becomes ambiguous only if you make an ambiguous method call. A program containing a potentially ambiguous situation will run problem-free if you do not make any ambiguous method calls.

It is important to remember that you can overload methods correctly by providing different parameter lists for methods with the same name. Methods with identical names that have identical parameter lists but different return types are not overloaded—they are illegal.

For example, the following two methods are illegal in the same class:

```
int aMethod(int x)
void aMethod(int x)
```

The compiler determines which of several versions of a method to call based on the arguments in the method call; it does not consider the return type.

**Note**

If the keyword `final` appears in a method's parameter list, it is ignored when determining ambiguity. In other words, two methods with the headers `void aMethod(int x)` and `void aMethod(final int x)` are ambiguous.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Learning about Ambiguity

- When it is part of the same program as `void myMethod(int age, String name)`, the following method would be ambiguous:

```
void myMethod(String name, int age)
```

- When it is part of the same program as `void myMethod(int age, String name)`, the following method would be ambiguous:

```
String myMethod(int zipCode, String address)
```

- When it is part of the same program as `void myMethod(int age, String name)`, the following method would be ambiguous:

```
void myMethod(int x, String y)
```

The false statement is #1. A method that accepts an `int` parameter followed by a `String` is not ambiguous with a method that accepts the parameters in the reverse order.

## Don't Do It

- Don't place a semicolon at the end of a method header. After you get used to putting semicolons at the end of every statement, it's easy to start putting them in too many places. Method headers never end in a semicolon.
- Don't try to use a variable that is out of scope.
- Don't assume that a constant is still a constant when passed to a method's parameter. If you want a parameter to be constant within a method, you must use `final` in the parameter list.
- Don't try to overload methods by giving them different return types. If their identifiers and parameter lists are the same, then two methods are ambiguous no matter what their return types are.

## Summary

- A method is an encapsulated series of statements that carry out a task. Any method can call, or invoke, another. You place a method within a class outside of any other methods.
- Methods must include a declaration (or header or definition) and a pair of curly braces that enclose the method body. A method declaration contains optional access specifiers, the return type for the method, the method name, and a pair of parentheses that might contain a list of parameters.
- When a method can receive a parameter, its declaration must contain the parameter type and an identifier within parentheses. A method can accept multiple parameters separated with commas. The arguments sent to a method must match (both in number and in type) the parameters listed in the method declaration.
- The return type for a method (the method's type) can be any Java type, including `void`. A `return` statement sends a value back to a calling method.

- › A variable's scope is the portion of a program within which it can be referenced. A block is the code between a pair of curly braces. Within a method, you can declare a variable with the same name multiple times, as long as each declaration is in its own nonoverlapping block.
- › Overloading involves writing multiple methods with the same name but different parameter lists. Methods that have identical parameter lists are illegal, even if they have different return types.
- › When you overload methods, you risk creating an ambiguous situation—one in which the compiler cannot determine which method to use.

## Key Terms

|                            |                       |                        |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| abstraction                | implementation        | overloading            |
| access modifier            | implementation hiding | parameter              |
| actual parameter           | inner block           | redeclare a variable   |
| ambiguous                  | interface to a method | return a value         |
| black box                  | invoke                | return statement       |
| called method              | local variable        | return type            |
| calling method             | method body           | scope level            |
| comes into scope           | method declaration    | signature              |
| dead code                  | method header         | stub                   |
| formal parameter           | method's type         | unreachable statements |
| fully qualified identifier | nested                |                        |
| goes out of scope          | outer block           |                        |

## Review Questions

1. Advantages to creating methods in addition to the `main()` method include all of the following *except* \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. the `main()` method is easier to follow  
 b. all methods are prewritten, saving the programmer work  
 c. it is easier to determine the overall intent of statements encapsulated in the methods  
 d. methods are reusable
2. In Java, methods must include all of the following *except* \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. a call to another method  
 b. a declaration  
 c. curly braces  
 d. a body
3. All method declarations contain \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. arguments  
 b. one or more explicitly named access specifiers  
 c. parentheses  
 d. the keyword `static`
4. A `public static` method named `computeSum()` is located in `ClassA`. To call the method from within `ClassB`, use the statement \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. `ClassA.computeSum();`  
 b. `ClassB(computeSum());`  
 c. `ComputeSum(ClassA);`  
 d. You cannot call `computeSum()` from within `ClassB`.

5. Which of the following method declarations is correct for a `static` method named `displayFacts()` if the method receives an `int` argument?
- a. `public static int displayFacts()`
  - b. `public void displayFacts(int data)`
  - c. `public static void displayFacts(int data)`
  - d. `public void displayFacts(static int)`
6. Which of the following method declarations is correct for a `static` method named `computeSum()` if the method receives two `double` arguments?
- a. `public static double, double computeSum()`
  - b. `public static void computeSum(double a, double b)`
  - c. `public int computeSum(double a, double b)`
  - d. `public static int computeSum(double a, b)`
7. The method with the declaration `public static int aMethod(double d)` is a method type of \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. static
  - b. int
  - c. double
  - d. You cannot determine the method type.
8. Which of the following is a correct call to a method declared as `public static void aMethod(char code)`?
- a. `void aMethod();`
  - b. `void aMethod('V');`
  - c. `aMethod(char 'M');`
  - d. `aMethod('Q');`
9. A method is declared as `public static void showResults(double d, int i)`. Which of the following is a correct method call?
- a. `showResults(double d, int i);`
  - b. `showResults(12.2, 67);`
  - c. `showResults(4, 99.7);`
  - d. Two of these are correct.
10. The method with the declaration `public static char procedure(double d)` has a method type of \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. public
  - b. static
  - c. char
  - d. double
11. The method `public static boolean testValue(int response)` returns \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. no value
  - b. an `int` value
  - c. a `boolean` value
  - d. You cannot determine what is returned.
12. Which of the following could be the last legally coded line of a method declared as `public static int getVal(double sum)`?
- a. `return;`
  - b. `return 77;`
  - c. `return 2.3;`
  - d. Any of these could be the last coded line of the method.
13. In the method header `public static boolean(int age)`, `age` is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. argument
  - b. parameter
  - c. return value
  - d. final value
14. The code between a pair of curly braces in a method is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. function
  - b. brick
  - c. block
  - d. sector

15. When a block exists within another block, the blocks are \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. structured  
 b. illegal  
 c. sheltered  
 d. nested
16. The portion of a program within which you can reference a variable is the variable's \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. scope  
 b. space  
 c. domain  
 d. range
17. You can declare variables with the same name multiple times \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. within a statement  
 b. within a block  
 c. within a method  
 d. You never can declare multiple variables with the same name.
18. Nonambiguous, overloaded methods must have the same \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. types of parameters  
 b. number of parameters  
 c. parameter names  
 d. name
19. If a method is written to receive a `double` parameter, and you pass an `int` to the method, then the method will \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. work correctly; the `int` will be promoted to a `double`  
 b. work correctly; the parameter type will automatically become an `int`  
 c. execute but issue a warning  
 d. not work; an error message will be issued
20. If a method is written to receive an `int` parameter, and you pass a `double` to the method, then the method will \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. work correctly; the `double` will be promoted to an `int`  
 b. work correctly, but the `double` might lose some data  
 c. execute but issue a warning  
 d. not work; an error message will be issued



## Programming Exercises

1. Suppose that you have created a program with only the following variables:

```
int x = 2;
int y = 3;
```

Suppose that you also have a method with the following header:

```
public static void mathMethod(int x)
```

Which of the following method calls are legal?

- a. `mathMethod(x);`
- b. `mathMethod(y);`
- c. `mathMethod(x, y);`
- d. `mathMethod(x + y);`
- e. `mathMethod(12L);`
- f. `mathMethod(12);`
- g. `mathMethod(12.2);`
- h. `mathMethod();`
- i. `mathMethod(a);`
- j. `mathMethod(a / x);`

2. Suppose that you have created a program with only the following variables:

```
int age = 34;
int weight = 180;
double height = 5.9;
```

Suppose that you also have a method with the following header:

```
public static void calculate(int age, double size)
```

Which of the following method calls are legal?

- a. calculate(age, weight);
  - b. calculate(age, height);
  - c. calculate(weight, height);
  - d. calculate(height, age);
  - e. calculate(45.5, 120);
  - f. calculate(12, 120.2);
  - g. calculate(age, size);
  - h. calculate(2, 3);
  - i. calculate(age);
  - j. calculate(weight, weight);
3. Create an application named `NumbersDemo` whose `main()` method holds two integer variables. Prompt the user for values for the variables. In turn, pass each value to methods named `displayTwiceTheNumber()`, `displayNumberPlusFive()`, and `displayNumberSquared()`. Create each method to perform the task its name implies. Save the application as `NumbersDemo.java`.
4. Create an application named `Percentages` whose `main()` method holds two double variables, and prompt the user for values. Pass both variables to a method named `computePercent()` that displays the two values and the value of the first number as a percentage of the second one. For example, if the numbers are 2.0 and 5.0, the method should display a statement similar to *2.0 is 40 percent of 5.0*. Then call the method a second time, passing the values in reverse order. Save the application as `Percentages.java`.
5. To encourage good grades, Hermosa High School has decided to award each student a bookstore credit that is 10 times the student's grade point average. In other words, a student with a 3.2 grade point average receives a \$32 credit. Create a class that prompts a student for a name and grade point average and then passes the values to a method that displays a descriptive message. The message uses the student's name, echoes the grade point average, and computes and displays the credit. Save the application as `BookstoreCredit.java`.
6. There are 12 inches in a foot and 3 feet in a yard. Create a class named `InchConversion`. Its `main()` method accepts a value in inches from a user at the keyboard and then passes the entered value to two methods. One converts the value from inches to feet, and the other converts the same value from inches to yards. Each method displays the results with appropriate explanation. Save the application as `InchConversion.java`.
7. Assume that a gallon of paint covers about 350 square feet of wall space. Create an application with a `main()` method that prompts the user for the length, width, and height of a rectangular room. Pass these three values to a method that does the following:
- › Calculates the wall area for a room
  - › Passes the calculated wall area to another method that calculates and returns the number of gallons of paint needed
  - › Displays the number of gallons needed
  - › Computes the price based on a paint price of \$32 per gallon, assuming that the painter can buy any fraction of a gallon of paint at the same price as a whole gallon
  - › Returns the price to the `main()` method

The `main()` method displays the final price. For example, the cost to paint a 15-by-20-foot room with 10-foot ceilings is \$64. Save the application as `PaintCalculator.java`.

8. The Harrison Group Life Insurance company computes annual policy premiums based on the age the customer turns in the current calendar year. The premium is computed by taking the decade of the customer's age, adding 15 to it, and multiplying by 20. For example, a 34-year-old would pay \$360, which is calculated by adding

the decades (3) to 15 and then multiplying by 20. Write an application that prompts a user for the current year and a birth year. Pass both to a method that calculates and returns the premium amount, and then display the returned amount. Save the application as **Insurance.java**.

9. The Renew Your Home Company estimates each job cost as the cost of materials plus \$35 per hour while on the job, plus \$12 per hour for travel time to the job site. Create a class that contains a `main()` method that prompts the user for the name of a job (for example, *Patel bathroom remodel*), the cost of materials, the number of hours of work required, and the number of hours of travel time. Pass the numeric data to a method that computes an estimate for the job and returns the computed value to the `main()` method, where the job name and estimated price are displayed. Save the program as **JobPricing.java**.
10. Create a class named `FormLetterWriter` that includes two overloaded methods named `displaySalutation()`. The first method takes one `String` parameter that represents a customer's first name, and it displays the salutation *Dear* followed by the first name. The second method accepts two `String` parameters that represent a first and last name, and it displays the greeting *Dear* followed by the first name, a space, and the last name. After each salutation, display the rest of a short business letter: *Thank you for your recent order*. Write a `main()` method that prompts the user for a first and last name and tests each overloaded method. Save the file as **FormLetterWriter.java**.
11. Create a class named `BookBilling` that includes three overloaded `computeBill()` methods for the Happy Memories Company, which sells photo books.
  - › When `computeBill()` receives no parameters, the method computes the price of one photo book at \$14.99, adds 8 percent tax, and returns the total due.
  - › When `computeBill()` receives one parameter, it represents the quantity ordered. Multiply the value by \$14.99, add 8 percent tax, and return the total due.
  - › When `computeBill()` receives two parameters, they represent the quantity ordered and a coupon value. Multiply the quantity by \$14.99, reduce the result by the coupon value, add 8 percent tax, and then return the total due.

Write a `main()` method that prompts the user for the number of books ordered, prompts for a coupon value, and tests all three overloaded methods. Save the application as **BookBilling.java**.

## Debugging Exercises

1. Each of the following files saved in the Chapter03 folder in your downloadable student files has syntax and/or logic errors. In each case, determine and fix the problem. After you correct the errors, save each file using the same filename preceded with *Fix*. For example, *DebugThree1.java* will become **FixDebugThree1.java**.
 

|                                                          |                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| a. <i>DebugThree1.java</i><br>b. <i>DebugThree2.java</i> | c. <i>DebugThree3.java</i><br>d. <i>DebugThree4.java</i> |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|

## Game Zone

1. *Mad Libs* is a children's game in which the players provide a few words that are then incorporated into a silly story. For example, you might ask a child for the name of an animal, a number, and a direction. The child might reply with such answers as *dog*, *13*, and *east*. The newly created Mad Lib might be:  
  
*Hickory Dickory Dock.*  
*The dog ran up the clock.*

*The clock struck 13.  
The dog ran east.  
Hickory Dickory Dock.*

Create a program that asks the user to provide a few words. Then send the words to a method that displays a short story or nursery rhyme that uses them. Save the file as **MadLibWithMethod.java**.

- Recall how to obtain a random number. For example, the following statement generates a random number between the constants MIN and MAX inclusive and assigns it to a variable named `random`:

```
random = MIN + (int)(Math.random() * MAX);
```

Write a program that declares `final` values for MIN and MAX within its `main()` method and passes the values to a method that displays a message asking the user to guess a value between MIN and MAX. Accept the user's guess and return it to the `main()` method. Set a `boolean` variable to `true` if the user guessed the value and `false` if the user did not guess the value. Call a method that accepts the random value, the user's guess value, and the `boolean` value and then displays all the values as well as how far away the user's guess was from the random number. Save the file as **RandomGuessMatchWithMethods.java**.

## Case Problems

- Yummy Catering provides meals for parties and special events. In Chapter 2, you wrote an application that prompts the user for the number of guests attending an event, displays the company motto with a border, and then displays the price of the event and whether the event is a large one. Now modify the program so that the `main()` method contains only three executable statements that each call a method as follows:

- › The first executable statement calls a `public static int` method that prompts the user for the number of guests and returns the value to the `main()` method.
- › The second executable statement calls a `public static void` method that displays the company motto with the border.
- › The last executable statement passes the number of guests to a `public static void` method that computes the price of the event, displays the price, and displays whether the event is a large event.

Save the file as **YummyEventPriceWithMethods.java**.

- Sunshine Seashore Supplies rents beach equipment such as kayaks, canoes, beach chairs, and umbrellas to tourists. In Chapter 2, you wrote an application that prompts the user for the number of minutes a piece of sports equipment was rented, displays the company motto with a border, and displays the price for the rental. Now modify the program so that the `main()` method contains only three executable statements that each call a method as follows:

- › The first executable statement calls a method that prompts the user for the rental time in minutes and returns the value to the `main()` method.
- › The second executable statement calls a method that displays the company motto with the border.
- › The last executable statement passes the number of minutes to a method that computes the hours, extra minutes, and price for the rental and then displays all the details.

Save the file as **SunshineRentalPriceWithMethods.java**.

# Using Classes and Objects

## Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to:

- 4.1 Describe classes and objects
  - 4.2 Create a class
  - 4.3 Create instance methods in a class
  - 4.4 Declare objects and use their methods
  - 4.5 Compare classes to data types
  - 4.6 Create and use constructors
  - 4.7 Use the `this` reference
  - 4.8 Use `static` fields
  - 4.9 Use imported, prewritten constants and methods
  - 4.10 Use composition and nest classes
- 

## 4.1 Learning About Classes and Objects

One way to classify Java classes is to differentiate between the two following types:

- › Classes from which objects are not instantiated, such as the application programs with `main()` methods that you have seen so far
- › Classes from which you create objects—these classes are the focus of this chapter

In other words, with object-oriented programming, sometimes you create classes to run as applications, and other times you create classes so that you can instantiate objects from them. Sometimes you write classes that do both.

When you think in an object-oriented manner, everything is an object, and every object is a member of a class. You can think of any inanimate physical item as an object—your desk, your computer, and the building in which you live are all called objects in everyday conversation. You also can think of living things as objects—your houseplant, your pet fish, and your sister are objects. Events are also objects—the stock purchase you made, the mortgage closing you attended, and a graduation party that was held in your honor are all objects.

Every object is a member of a more general class. Your desk is a member of the class that includes all desks, and your pet fish is a member of the class that contains all fish. An object-oriented programmer would say that your desk is an instance of the `Desk` class and your fish is an instance of the `Fish` class. Each of these statements represents an **is-a relationship**—that is, a relationship in which the object “is a” concrete example of the class. Expressing an is-a relationship is correct only when you refer to the object and the class in the proper order. You can say, “My oak desk with the scratch on top *is a* Desk, and my goldfish named Moby *is a* Fish.” You don’t define a `Desk` by saying, “A `Desk` *is an* oak desk with a scratch on top,” or explain what a `Fish` is by saying, “A `Fish` *is a* goldfish named Moby,” because both a `Desk` and a `Fish` are much more general. The difference between a class and an object parallels the difference between abstract and concrete. An object is an *instantiation* of a class, or one tangible example of a class. Your goldfish, my guppy, and the zoo’s shark each constitute one instantiation of the `Fish` class.

### Note

Objects can be members of more than one class. For example, your goldfish is not just a `Fish`, but also a `Vertebrate` and an `Animal`. Programmers also use the phrase *is-a* when talking about inheritance relationships. You will learn more about inheritance later.

The concept of a class is useful because it provides reusability. Objects gain their attributes from their classes, and all objects have predictable attributes because they are members of certain classes. For example, if you are invited to a graduation party, you automatically know many things about it. You assume there will be a starting time, a certain number of guests, and some quantity of food. You understand what a `Party` object entails because of your previous knowledge of the `Party` class. You don’t know the number of guests or what food will be served at this particular party, but you understand that because all parties have guests and refreshments, this one must too. Because you understand the general characteristics of a `Party`, you anticipate different attributes than if you plan to attend a `TheaterPerformance` object or a `DentalAppointment` object.

In addition to their attributes, objects have methods associated with them, and every object that is an instance of a class is assumed to possess the same methods. For example, for all `Party` objects, a date and time are set at some point. In a program, you might name these methods `setDate()` and `setTime()`. `Party` guests need to know the date and time and might use methods named `getDate()` and `getTime()` to find out the date and time of any `Party` object. Method names that begin with *get* and *set* are very typical. You will learn more about *get* and *set* methods later in this chapter.

Your graduation party, then, might have the identifier `myGraduationParty`. As a member of the `Party` class, `myGraduationParty`, like all `Party` objects, might have data methods `setDate()` and `setTime()`. When you use them, the `setDate()` and `setTime()` methods require arguments, or information passed to them. For example, the following statements invoke methods that are available for the `myGraduationParty` object:

```
› myGraduationParty.setDate("May 12");
› myGraduationParty.setTime("6 P.M.");
```

When you use an object and its methods, think of being able to send a message to the object to direct it to accomplish some task—you can tell the `Party` object named `myGraduationParty` to set the date and time you request. Even though `yourAnniversaryParty` is also a member of the `Party` class, and even though it also has access to `setDate()` and `setTime()` methods, the arguments you send to `yourAnniversaryParty` methods will be different from those you send to `myGraduationParty` methods. Within any object-oriented program, you are continuously making requests to objects’ methods and often including arguments to send information as part of those requests.

In addition, some methods used in an application must return a message or value. If one of your party guests uses the `getDate()` method, the guest hopes that the method will respond with the desired information. Similarly, within object-oriented programs, methods are often called upon to return a piece of information to the source of the request. For example, a method within a `Payroll` class that calculates federal withholding tax might return a tax amount in

**Note**

You can identify a class that is an application because it contains a `public static void main()` method. The `main()` method is the starting point for any application. You will write and use many classes that do not contain a `main()` method—these classes can be used by other classes that are applications.

**Note**

A Java application can contain only one method with the header `public static void main(String[] args)`. If you write a class that imports another class, and both classes have a `public static void main(String[] args)` method, your application will not compile.

dollars and cents, and a method within an `Inventory` class might return `true` or `false`, depending on the method's determination of whether an item is at the reorder point.

You don't need to create every class you use. Often, you will write programs that use classes created by others. For example, many programs you have seen so far have used the `System` class. You did not have to create it or its `println()` method; both were provided for you by Java's creators. Similarly, you might create a class that others will use to instantiate objects within their own applications. For example, you might write a `Dog` class that eventually will be used by breeders, animal shelters, and veterinarians' offices. You can call an application or class that instantiates objects of another class a **class client** or a **class user**. Understanding classes and how objects are instantiated from them is the heart of object-oriented thinking.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Learning About Classes and Objects

1. A class is an instantiation of many objects.
2. Objects gain their attributes and methods from their classes.
3. An application or class that instantiates objects of another prewritten class is a class client.

The false statement is #1. An object is one instantiation of a class.

## 4.2 Creating a Class

When you create a class, you must assign a name to the class, and you must determine what data and methods will be part of the class. Suppose you decide to create a class named `Employee`. One piece of data needed for an `Employee` might be an employee number, and two necessary methods might be a method to set (or provide a value for) the employee number and another method to get (or retrieve) that employee number. To begin, you create a class header with three parts:

- › An optional access specifier
- › The keyword `class`
- › Any legal identifier you choose for the name of your class—starting with an uppercase letter is conventional

For example, a header for a class that represents an employee might be:

```
public class Employee
```

The most liberal form of access is `public`. The keyword `public` is a class modifier. Classes that are `public` are accessible by all objects. Public classes also can be **extended**, or used as a basis for any other class. Making access `public` means that if you develop a good `Employee` class, and someday you want to develop two classes that are more specific, `SalariedEmployee` and `HourlyEmployee`, then you do not have to start from scratch. Each new class can become an extension of the original `Employee` class, inheriting its data and methods. Although other specifiers exist, you will use the `public` specifier for most of your classes. You will learn to extend classes when you learn about inheritance later in this course.

After writing the class header `public class Employee`, you write the body of the `Employee` class between a set of curly braces. The body contains the data and methods for the class. The data components of a class are often referred to as **data fields** to help distinguish them from other variables you might use. Data fields are variables you declare within a class but outside of any method. **Figure 4-1** shows an `Employee` class that contains one data field named `empNum`.

**Figure 4-1** The `Employee` class with one field

```
public class Employee
{
 private int empNum;
}
```

In Figure 4-1, the data field `empNum` is not preceded by the keyword `static`. If the keyword `static` had been inserted there, a single `empNum` value would be shared by all `Employee` objects that are eventually instantiated. Because the `empNum` field in Figure 4-1 is not preceded by `static`, it is nonstatic by default, and when you eventually create, or instantiate, objects from the class, each `Employee` can have its own unique `empNum`. Each object gets its own copy of each nonstatic data field in its class. A nonstatic field like `empNum` is an **instance variable** for the class because one copy exists for each object instantiation.

You already have learned that the access specifier for most Java methods is `public`. However, most fields, such as `empNum` in the `Employee` class, are `private`, which provides the highest level of security. Assigning **private access** to a field means that no other classes can access the field's values, and only methods of the same class are allowed to set, get, or otherwise use private variables. The principle used in creating private access is sometimes called **information hiding** and is an important component of object-oriented programs. A class's private data can be changed or manipulated only by a class's own methods and not by methods that belong to other classes.

In contrast to fields, which are usually `private`, most class methods are `public`. The resulting private data/public method arrangement provides a means for you to control outside access to your data—only a class's nonprivate methods can be used to access a class's private data. The situation is similar to hiring a public receptionist to sit in front of your private office and control which messages you receive (perhaps deflecting trivial or hostile ones) and which messages you send (perhaps checking your spelling, grammar, and any legal implications). A `BankAccount` class might contain a `getBalance()` method that sends an account's balance to a client, but only if a password or access code is sent to the method. The way in which the nonprivate methods are written controls how you use the private data.

## Note

The first release of Java (1.0) supported five access levels—the four listed previously plus a two-word level called `private protected`. The `private protected` access level is not supported in versions of Java higher than 1.0; you should not use it in your Java programs.

In summary, when you create classes from which you will instantiate objects:

- › The class's data fields are most often `private`.
- › The class's methods are most often not `static`.

Occasionally, you might have a reason to make a field `public`, and when you want to use a nonchanging value without being required to create an object, you make the field both `static` and `final`. For example, the Java `Math` class contains a `final, public, static` field named `PI` that you can use without instantiating a `Math` object. You will learn about the `Math` class later in this chapter.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Creating a Class

1. A class header contains an optional access specifier, the keyword `class`, and an identifier.
2. When you instantiate objects, each has its own copy of each `static` data field in the class.
3. Most fields in a class are `private`, and most methods are `public`.

The false statement is #2. When you instantiate objects, each has its own copy of each nonstatic data field in the class.

## 4.3 Creating Instance Methods in a Class

Classes from which you intend to instantiate objects typically contain both fields and methods. For example, one method you need for an `Employee` class that contains an `empNum` is the method to retrieve (or return) any `Employee`'s `empNum` for use by another class. A reasonable name for this method is `getEmpNum()`, and its declaration is `public int getEmpNum()` because it will have `public` access, return an integer (the employee number), and possess the identifier `getEmpNum()`. It is not `static` if the intention is that each `Employee` object has its own `empNum` value.

Similarly, you need a method with which to set the `empNum` field. A reasonable name for this method is `setEmpNum()`, and its declaration is `public void setEmpNum(int emp)` because it will have `public` access, return nothing, possess the identifier `setEmpNum()`, and require a parameter that represents the employee's ID number, which is type `int`.

Methods that set or change field values are called **mutator methods**; methods that retrieve values are called **accessor methods**. In Java, mutator methods are often called *setters*, and they conventionally start with the prefix `set`. Accessor methods are called *getters*, and they conventionally start with the prefix `get`. Using these three-letter prefixes with your method names is not required, but it is conventional. **Figure 4-2** shows the `get` and `set` methods for the `empNum` field for the `Employee` class.

**Figure 4-2** The `setEmpNum()` and `getEmpNum()` methods

```
public void setEmpNum(int emp)
{
 empNum = emp;
}

public int getEmpNum()
{
 return empNum;
}
```

Notice that, unlike the methods you have created in applications from which you don't instantiate objects, the `getEmpNum()` and `setEmpNum()` methods do not employ the `static` modifier. The keyword `static` is used for classwide methods, but not for methods that "belong" to objects. If you are creating a program with a `main()` method that you will execute to perform some task, many of your methods will be `static`, so you can call them from within `main()` without creating objects. However, if you are creating a class from which objects will be instantiated, most methods probably will be nonstatic because you will associate the methods with individual objects. For example, the `getEmpNum()` method must be nonstatic because it returns a different `empNum` value for every `Employee` object you ever create. **Nonstatic methods**, those methods used with object instantiations, are called **instance methods**. You *can* use either a `static` or nonstatic method with an object, but only nonstatic methods behave uniquely for each object. You cannot use a nonstatic method without an object.

Understanding when to declare fields and methods as `static` and nonstatic is a challenge for new programmers. To help you determine whether a data field should be `static`, you can ask yourself how many times it occurs. If it occurs once per class, it is `static`, but if it occurs once per object, it is not `static`. **Table 4-1** provides a summary.

**Table 4-1** Comparison of static and nonstatic

| STATIC                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | NONSTATIC                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| In Java, <code>static</code> is a keyword. It also can be used as an adjective.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | There is no keyword for nonstatic items. When you do not explicitly declare a field or method to be <code>static</code> , it is nonstatic by default.                                                                                      |
| Static fields in a class are called class fields.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Nonstatic fields in a class are called instance variables.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Static methods in a class are called class methods.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Nonstatic methods in a class are called instance methods.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| When you use a static field or method, you do not need to use an object; for example: <code>JOptionPane.showMessageDialog();</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | When you use a nonstatic field or method, you must use an object; for example: <code>System.out.println();</code>                                                                                                                          |
| When you create a class with a static field and instantiate 100 objects, only one copy of that field exists in memory.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | When you create a class with a nonstatic field and instantiate 100 objects, then 100 copies of that field exist in memory.                                                                                                                 |
| When you create a static method in a class and instantiate 100 objects, only one copy of the method exists in memory, and the method does not receive a <code>this</code> reference.                                                                                                                                                                      | When you create a nonstatic method in a class and instantiate 100 objects, only one copy of the method exists in memory, but the method receives a <code>this</code> reference that contains the address of the object currently using it. |
| Static class variables are not instance variables. The system allocates memory to hold class variables once per class, no matter how many instances of the class you instantiate. The system allocates memory for class variables the first time it encounters a class, and every instance of a class shares the same copy of any static class variables. | Instance fields and methods are nonstatic. The system allocates a separate memory location for each nonstatic field in each instance.                                                                                                      |

## Note

Table 4-1 mentions the `this` reference. You will learn about the `this` reference later in this chapter.

**Figure 4-3** provides examples of how `public`, `private`, `static`, and nonstatic class members can be used by another class. The figure shows a class named `MyClass` that contains four methods that are:

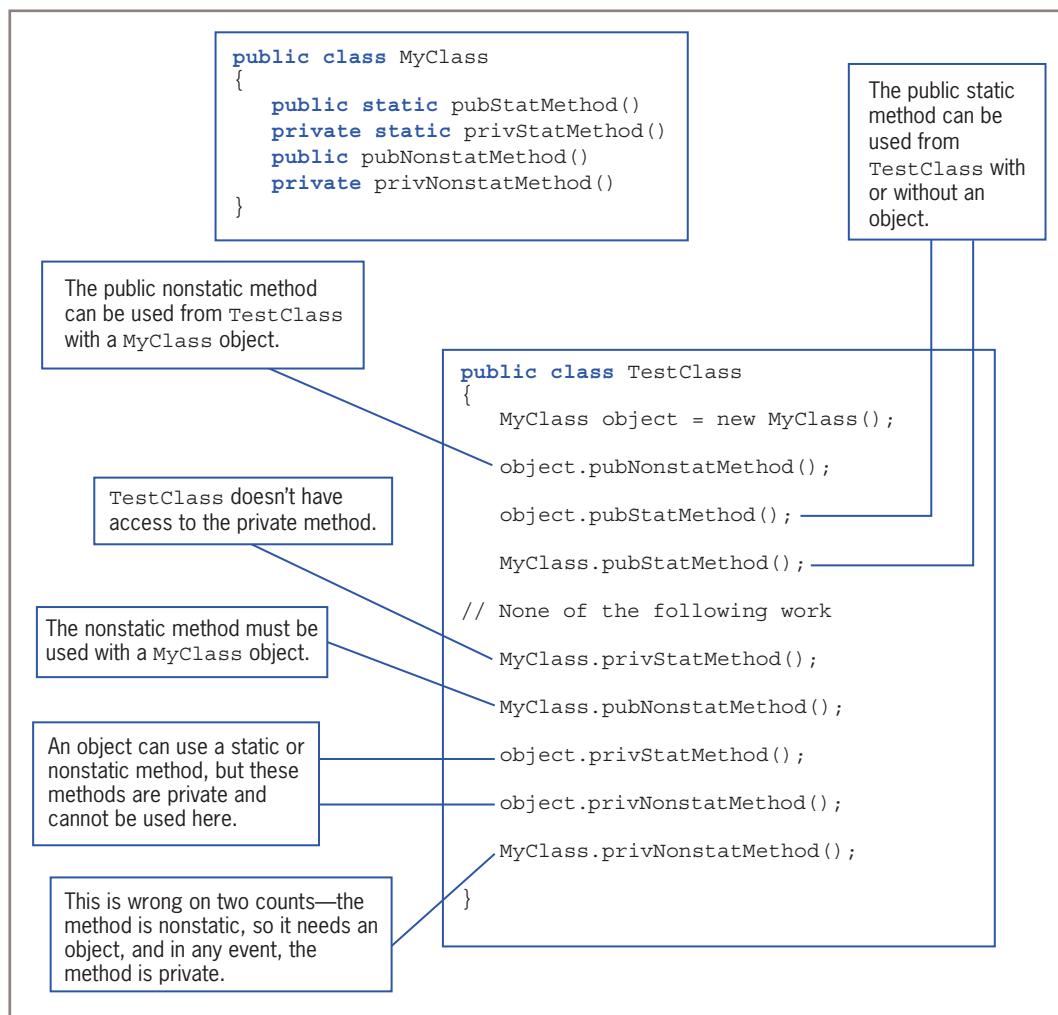
- › `public static`
- › `private static`
- › `public nonstatic`
- › `private nonstatic`

The figure also shows a `TestClass` that instantiates a `MyClass` object. The `TestClass` contains eight method calls.

- › The three valid calls are all to `public` methods. The call to the nonstatic method uses an object, and the two calls to the `static` method can use an object or not.
- › The five method calls after the comment in the `TestClass` class are all invalid. Private methods cannot be called from outside the class, and nonstatic methods require an object.

**Figure 4-4** shows a typical class that would be used to declare an `Employee` class containing one private data field and two public methods, all of which are nonstatic. This class becomes the model for a new data type named `Employee`; when `Employee` objects eventually are created, each will have its own `empNum` field, and each will have access to two methods—one that provides a value for its `empNum` field and another that retrieves the value stored there.

**Figure 4-3** Examples of legal and illegal method calls based on combinations of method modifiers



**Figure 4-4** The Employee class with one field and two methods

```

public class Employee
{
 private int empNum;
 public int getEmpNum()
 {
 return empNum;
 }
 public void setEmpNum(int emp)
 {
 empNum = emp;
 }
}

```

When you create a class such as `Employee`, you can compile it, but you cannot execute the class because it does not contain a `main()` method. A class such as `Employee` is intended to be used as a data type for objects within other applications.

Most classes that you create have multiple data fields and methods. For example, in addition to requiring an employee number, an `Employee` needs a last name, a first name, and a salary, as well as methods to set and get those fields. **Figure 4-5** shows one way you could arrange the data fields for the `Employee` class.

**Figure 4-5** An `Employee` class with several data fields

```
public class Employee
{
 private int empNum;
 private String empLastName;
 private String empFirstName;
 private double empSalary;
 //Methods will go here
}
```

Although there is no requirement to do so, most programmers place data fields in some logical order at the beginning of a class. For example, `empNum` is most likely used as a unique identifier for each employee (what database users often call a **primary key**), so it makes sense to list the employee number first in the class. An employee's last name and first name "go together," so it makes sense to store these two `Employee` components adjacently. Despite these commonsense rules, you have a lot of flexibility in how you position your data fields within any class.

### Note

A unique identifier is one that should have no duplicates within an application. For example, an organization might have many employees with the last name *Lopez* or a weekly salary of \$500.00, but there is only one employee with employee number 128.

Because the current `Employee` class has two `String` components, they might be declared within the same statement, such as the following:

```
private String empLastName, empFirstName;
```

However, it is usually easier to identify each `Employee` field at a glance if the fields are listed vertically.

You can place a class's data fields and methods in any order within a class. For example, you could place all the methods first, followed by all the data fields, or you could organize the class so that several data fields are followed by methods that use them, and then several more data fields are followed by the methods that use them. The classes you will see in this course follow the convention of having all data fields first so that you can see their names and data types before reading the methods that use them.

The `Employee` class started in Figure 4-5 contains only four fields. Even if only one `set` method and one `get` method are needed for each field, eight methods are required. Consider an employee record for most organizations, and you will realize that many more fields often are required (such as address, phone number, hire date, and number of dependents), as well as many more methods. Finding your way through the list can become a formidable task. For ease in locating class methods, many programmers store them in alphabetical order. Other programmers arrange values in pairs of `get` and `set` methods, an order that also results in functional groupings. **Figure 4-6** shows how the complete class definition for an `Employee` might appear.

**Figure 4-6** The `Employee` class with several data fields and corresponding methods

```
public class Employee
{
 private int empNum;
 private String empLastName;
 private String empFirstName;
 private double empSalary;
 public int getEmpNum()
 {
 return empNum;
 }
 public void setEmpNum(int emp)
 {
 empNum = emp;
 }
}
```

(Continues)

**Figure 4-6** The Employee class with several data fields and corresponding methods—*continued*

```

public String getEmpLastName()
{
 return empLastName;
}
public void setEmpLastName(String name)
{
 empLastName = name;
}
public String getEmpFirstName()
{
 return empFirstName;
}
public void setEmpFirstName(String name)
{
 empFirstName = name;
}
public double getEmpSalary()
{
 return empSalary;
}
public void setEmpSalary(double sal)
{
 empSalary = sal;
}
}

```

The Employee class is still not a particularly large class, and each of its methods is very short, but it is already becoming quite difficult to manage. It certainly can support some well-placed comments. For example, the purpose of the class and the programmer's name might appear in comments at the top of the file, and comments might be used to separate the data and method sections of the class. Your organization might have specific recommendations or requirements for placing comments within a class.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Creating Instance Methods in a Class

1. The keyword `static` is used with classwide methods, but not for methods that “belong” to objects.
2. When you create a class from which objects will be instantiated, most methods are nonstatic because they are associated with individual objects.
3. Static methods are instance methods.

The false statement is #3. Nonstatic methods are instance methods; static methods are class methods.

## You Do It | Creating a Class That Contains Instance Fields and Methods

Next, you create a class to store information about services offered at Paradise Day Spa.

1. Open a new document in your text editor, and type the following class header and the curly braces to surround the class body:

```

public class SpaService
{
}

```

2. Between the curly braces for the class, insert two private data fields that will hold data about a spa service:

```
private String serviceDescription;
private double price;
```

3. Within the class's curly braces and after the field declarations, enter the following two methods that set the field values. The `setServiceDescription()` method accepts a `String` parameter and assigns it to the `serviceDescription` field for each object that eventually will be instantiated. Similarly, the `setPrice()` method accepts a `double` parameter and assigns it to the `price` field. Note that neither of these methods is `static`.

```
public void setServiceDescription(String service)
{
 serviceDescription = service;
}
public void setPrice(double servicePrice)
{
 price = servicePrice;
}
```

4. Next, add two methods that retrieve the field values as follows:

```
public String getServiceDescription()
{
 return serviceDescription;
}
public double getPrice()
{
 return price;
}
```

5. Save the file as `SpaService.java`, compile it, and then correct any syntax errors. Remember, you cannot run this file as a program because it does not contain a `public static main()` method. After you read the next section, you will use this class to create objects.

## 4.4 Declaring Objects and Using Their Methods

Declaring a class does not create any actual objects. A class is just an abstract description of what an object will be like if any objects are ever actually instantiated. Just as you might understand all the characteristics of an item you intend to manufacture long before the first item rolls off the assembly line, you can create a class with fields and methods long before you instantiate any objects that are members of that class.

A two-step process creates an object that is an instance of a class. First, you supply a type and an identifier—just as when you declare any variable—and then you allocate computer memory for that object. For example, you might declare an integer as `int someValue;` and you might declare an `Employee` as follows:

```
Employee someEmployee;
```

In this statement, `someEmployee` can be any legal identifier, but objects conventionally start with a lowercase letter.

When you declare an integer as `int someValue;`, you notify the compiler that an integer named `someValue` will exist, and you reserve computer memory for it at the same time. When you declare the `someEmployee` instance of the `Employee` class, you are notifying the compiler that you will use the identifier `someEmployee`. However, you are not yet setting aside computer memory in which the `Employee` named `someEmployee` might be stored—that is done automatically only for primitive type variables. To allocate the needed memory for an object, you must use

the **new operator**. Two statements that actually complete the process by setting aside enough memory to hold an Employee are as follows:

```
Employee someEmployee;
someEmployee = new Employee();
```

### Note

You first learned about the new operator when you created a Scanner object to use for user input.

Instead of using two statements, you can declare and reserve memory for someEmployee in one statement, as in the following:

```
Employee someEmployee = new Employee();
```

In this statement, Employee is the object's type (as well as its class), and someEmployee is the name of the object. Also, someEmployee becomes a **reference to an object**—the name for a memory address where the object is held. Every object name is also a reference—that is, a computer memory location. You have already learned that a class such as Employee is a *reference type* as opposed to the built-in types like int that are *primitive types*.

The equal sign is the assignment operator, so a value is being assigned to someEmployee in the declaration. The new operator is allocating a new, unused portion of computer memory for someEmployee. The value that the statement is assigning to someEmployee is a memory address at which someEmployee is to be located. You do not need to be concerned with what the actual memory address is—when you refer to someEmployee, the compiler locates it at the appropriate address for you.

The final portion of the statement after the new operator, Employee(), with its parentheses, looks suspiciously like a method name. In fact, it is the name of a method that constructs an Employee object. The Employee() method is a **constructor**, a special type of method that creates and initializes objects. You can write your own constructor for a class, and you will learn how later in this chapter. However, when you don't write a constructor for a class, Java writes one for you. Whether you write your own constructor or use the one automatically created by Java, the name of the constructor is always the same as the name of the class whose objects it constructs.

After an object has been instantiated, its methods can be accessed using the object's identifier, a dot, and a method call. For example, **Figure 4-7** shows an application that instantiates two Employee objects. The two objects, clerk and driver, each use the setEmpNum() and getEmpNum() method one time. The DeclareTwoEmployees application can use these methods because they are public, and it must use each of them with an Employee object because the methods are not static. **Figure 4-8** shows the output of the application.

**Figure 4-7** The DeclareTwoEmployees class

```
public class DeclareTwoEmployees
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 Employee clerk = new Employee();
 Employee driver = new Employee();
 clerk.setEmpNum(345);
 driver.setEmpNum(567);
 System.out.println("The clerk's number is " +
 clerk.getEmpNum() + " and the driver's number is " +
 driver.getEmpNum());
 }
}
```

**Figure 4-8** Output of the DeclareTwoEmployees application

```
The clerk's number is 345 and the driver's number is 567
```

**Note**

The program in Figure 4-7 assumes that the *Employee.java* file is stored in the same folder as the application. If the *Employee.java* file was stored in a different folder, you would need an `import` statement at the top of the file, similar to the ones you use for the `Scanner` and `JOptionPane` classes.

## Understanding Data Hiding

Within the `DeclareTwoEmployees` class, you must use the public methods `setEmpNum()` and `getEmpNum()` to be able to set and retrieve the value of the `empNum` field for each `Employee` because you cannot access the private `empNum` field directly. For example, the following statement would not be allowed:

```
clerk.empNum = 789;
```

This statement generates the error message *empNum has private access in Employee*, meaning you cannot access `empNum` from the `DeclareTwoEmployees` class. If you made `empNum` `public` instead of `private`, a direct assignment statement would work, but you would violate an important principle of object-oriented programming—that of data hiding using encapsulation. Data fields usually should be private, and a client application should be able to access them only through the public interfaces—that is, through the class's public methods. However, you might reasonably ask, “When I write an application, if I *can't* set an object's data field directly, but I *can* set it using a public method, what's the difference? The field value is set either way!” Actually, the `setEmpNum()` method in the `DeclareTwoEmployees` class in Figure 4-7 does accept any integer value you send into it. However, you could rewrite the `setEmpNum()` method to prevent invalid data from being assigned to an object's data fields. For example, perhaps your organization has rules for valid employee ID numbers—they must be no fewer than five digits, or they must start with a 9, for instance. The statements that enforce these requirements would be part of the `setEmpNum()` method. Checking a value for validity requires decision making, which you will learn about soon.

Similarly, a `get` method might control how a value is retrieved. Perhaps you do not want clients to have access to part of an employee's ID number, or perhaps you always want to add a company code to every ID before it is returned to the client. Even when a field has no data value requirements or restrictions, making data private and providing public `set` and `get` methods establishes a framework that makes such modifications easier in the future. You will not necessarily write `set` and `get` methods for every field in a class; there are some fields that clients will not be allowed to alter. Some fields will simply be assigned values, and some field values might not be set directly but might be calculated from the values of others.

## Two Truths & a Lie

Declaring Objects and Using Their Methods

1. When you declare an object, you give it a name and set aside enough memory for the object to be stored.
2. An object name is a reference; it holds a memory address.
3. When you don't write a constructor for a class, Java creates one for you; the name of the constructor is always the same as the name of its class.

The false statement is #1. When you declare an object, you are not yet setting aside computer memory in which the object is stored; to allocate the needed memory for an object, you must use the `new` operator.

## You Do It | Declaring and Using Objects

In the last "You Do It" section, you created a class named `SpaService`. Now you create an application that instantiates and uses `SpaService` objects.

1. Open a new file in your text editor, and type the `import` statement needed for an interactive program that accepts user keyboard input:

```
import java.util.Scanner;
```

2. Create the shell for a class named `CreateSpaServices`:

```
public class CreateSpaServices
{
}
```

3. Between the curly braces of the `CreateSpaServices` class, create the shell for a `main()` method for the application:

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
}
```

4. Within the `main()` method, declare variables to hold a service description and price that a user can enter from the keyboard:

```
String service;
double price;
```

5. Next, declare three objects. Two are `SpaService` objects that use the class you created in the last set of "You Do It" steps. The third object uses the built-in Java `Scanner` class. Both classes use the `new` operator to allocate memory for their objects, and both call a constructor that has the same name as the class. The difference is that the `Scanner` constructor requires an argument (`System.in`), but the `SpaService` class does not.

```
SpaService firstService = new SpaService();
SpaService secondService = new SpaService();
Scanner keyboard = new Scanner(System.in);
```

6. In the next statements, you prompt the user for a service, accept it from the keyboard, prompt the user for a price, and accept it from the keyboard.

```
System.out.print("Enter service > ");
service = keyboard.nextLine();
System.out.print("Enter price > ");
price = keyboard.nextDouble();
```

7. Recall that the `setServiceDescription()` method in the `SpaService` class is nonstatic, meaning it is used with an object and it requires a `String` argument. Write the statement that sends the service the user entered to the `setServiceDescription()` method for the `firstService` object:

```
firstService.setServiceDescription(service);
```

8. Similarly, send the price the user entered to the `setPrice()` method for the `firstService` object. Recall that this method is nonstatic and requires a `double` argument.

```
firstService.setPrice(price);
```

9. Make a call to the `nextLine()` method to remove the Enter key that remains in the input buffer after the last numeric entry. Then repeat the prompts, and accept data for the second `SpaService` object.

```
keyboard.nextLine();
System.out.print("Enter service >> ");
service = keyboard.nextLine();
System.out.print("Enter price >> ");
price = keyboard.nextDouble();
secondService.setServiceDescription(service);
secondService.setPrice(price);
```

10. Display the details for the `firstService` object.

```
System.out.println("First service details:");
System.out.println(firstService.getServiceDescription() +
 " $" + firstService.getPrice());
```

11. Display the details for the `secondService` object.

```
System.out.println("Second service details:");
System.out.println(secondService.getServiceDescription() +
 " $" + secondService.getPrice());
```

12. Save the file as `CreateSpaServices.java`. Compile and execute the program. **Figure 4-9** shows a typical execution. Make sure you understand how the user's entered values are assigned to and retrieved from the two `SpaService` objects.

**Figure 4-9** Typical execution of the `CreateSpaServices` program

```
Enter service >> facial
Enter price >> 28.95
Enter service >> manicure
Enter price >> 35.25
First service details:
Facial $28.95
Second service details:
manicure $35.25
```

## 4.5 Understanding That Classes Are Data Types

The classes that you create become data types. Programmers sometimes refer to a class you create as an **abstract data type (ADT)**. An abstract data type is a type whose implementation is hidden and accessed through its public methods. A class that you create also can be called a **programmer-defined data type**; in other words, it is a type that is not built into the language. A class is a *composite type*—that is, a class is composed from smaller parts.

Java's eight built-in primitive data types such as `int` and `double` are not composite. Primitive types can also be called **scalar** types. You do not have to define these simple types; the creators of Java already have done so. For example, when the `int` type was first created, the programmers who designed it had to think about the following:

Q: What shall we call it?

A: `int`.

Q: What are its attributes?

A: An `int` is stored in four bytes; it holds whole-number values.

Q: What methods are needed by `int`?

A: A method to assign a value to a variable (for example, an `int`'s value might be 32).

Q: Any other methods?

A: Some operators to perform arithmetic with variables.

Q: Any other methods?

A: Of course, there are even more attributes and methods of an `int`, but these are a good start.

Your job in constructing a new data type is similar. If you need a class for employees, you should ask the following:

Q: What shall we call it?

A: Employee.

Q: What are its attributes?

A: It has an integer ID number, a String last name, and a double salary.

Q: What methods are needed by Employee?

A: A method to assign values to the data fields of an instance of this class.

Q: Any other methods?

A: A method to display data in an instance of this class.

Q: Any other methods?

A: Probably, but this is enough to get started.

When you declare a primitive type object, you provide its type and an identifier. When you declare an object from one of your classes, you do the same. After each exists, you can use them in similar ways. For example, suppose you declare an int named myInt and an Employee named myEmployee. Then each can be passed into a method, returned from a method, or assigned to another object of the same data type. For example, **Figure 4-10** shows a program in which the main() method uses two other methods. One method accepts an Employee as a parameter, and the other returns an Employee. (The Employee class is defined in Figure 4-6.)

**Figure 4-10** The MethodsThatUseAnEmployee application

```
import java.util.Scanner;
class MethodsThatUseAnEmployee
{
 public static void main (String args[])
 {
 Employee myEmployee;
 myEmployee = getEmployeeData();
 displayEmployee(myEmployee);
 }
 public static Employee getEmployeeData()
 {
 Employee tempEmp = new Employee();
 int id;
 double sal;
 Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
 System.out.print("Enter employee ID >> ");
 id = input.nextInt();
 tempEmp.setEmpNum(id);
 System.out.print("Enter employee salary >> ");
 sal = input.nextDouble();
 tempEmp.setEmpSalary(sal);
 return tempEmp;
 }
 public static void displayEmployee(Employee anEmp)
 {
 System.out.println("\nEmployee #" + anEmp.getEmpNum() +
 " Salary is " + anEmp.getEmpSalary());
 }
}
```

**Figure 4-11** shows a typical execution of the program in Figure 4-10. You can see in this sample program that an Employee is passed into and out of methods just like a primitive object would be. Classes are not mysterious; they are just new data types that you invent.

**Figure 4-11** Typical execution of the MethodsThatUseAnEmployee application

```
Enter employee ID >> 732
Enter employee salary >> 745.25

Employee #732 Salary is 745.25
```

Notice in the application in Figure 4-10 that the `Employee` declared in the `main()` method is not constructed there. An `Employee` is constructed in the `getEmployeeData()` method and passed back to the `main()` method, where it is assigned to the `myEmployee` reference. The `Employee` constructor could have been called in `main()`, but the values assigned would have been overwritten after the call to `getEmployeeData()`.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Understanding That Classes Are Data Types

1. When you declare a primitive variable or instantiate an object from a class, you provide both a type and an identifier.
2. Unlike a primitive variable, an instantiated object cannot be passed into or returned from a method.
3. The address of an instantiated object can be assigned to a declared reference of the same type.

The false statement is #2. An instantiated object can be passed into or returned from a method.

## You Do It | Understanding That Classes Are Data Types

In this section, you modify the `CreateSpaServices` class to include a method for data entry. This change makes the `main()` method shorter, gives you the ability to reuse code, and shows that an object of the `SpaService` class data type can be returned from a method as easily as a primitive data type.

1. Open the `CreateSpaServices.java` file if it is not still open in your text editor.
2. Delete the declarations for `service`, `price`, and `keyboard`. Declarations for these variables will now be part of the data entry method that you will create.
3. Delete the six statements that prompt the user and get values for the `firstService` objects. Also delete the seven statements that prompt the user and retrieve data for the `secondService` object.
4. In place of the statements you just deleted, insert two new statements. The first sends a copy of the `firstService` object to a method named `getData()`. The method returns a `SpaService` object that will be filled with appropriate data, and this object is assigned to `firstService`. The second statement does the same thing for `secondService`.

```
firstService = getData(firstService);
secondService = getData(secondService);
```

5. After the closing curly brace for the `main()` method, but before the closing curly brace for the class, start the following `public static getData()` method. The header indicates that the method both accepts and returns a `SpaService` object. Include the opening curly brace for the method, and make declarations for `serviceDescription`, `price`, and `keyboard`.

```
public static SpaService getData(SpaService service)
{
 String serviceDescription;
 double price;
 Scanner keyboard = new Scanner(System.in);
```

6. Continue the method by prompting the user for and accepting a service and its price. Include a final call to `nextLine()` so that the input buffer is cleared after the last numeric entry.

```
System.out.print("Enter service >> ");
serviceDescription = keyboard.nextLine();
System.out.print("Enter price >> ");
price = keyboard.nextDouble();
keyboard.nextLine();
```

7. Finish the method by assigning the entered service and price to the `SpaService` object parameter using the `SpaService` class's `setServiceDescription()` and `setPrice()` methods. Then return the full object to the `main()` method, where it is assigned to the object used in the method call. Add a closing curly brace for the method.

```
service.setServiceDescription(serviceDescription);
service.setPrice(price);
return service;
}
```

8. Save the file, compile it, and execute it. The execution looks no different from the original version in Figure 4-9 earlier in this chapter, but by creating a method that accepts an unfilled `SpaService` object and returns one filled with data, you have made the `main()` method shorter and reused the data entry code.

## 4.6 Creating and Using Constructors

When you create a class, such as `Employee`, and instantiate an object with a statement such as the following, you actually are calling the `Employee` class constructor that is provided by default by the Java compiler:

```
Employee chauffeur = new Employee();
```

A constructor establishes an object. A **default constructor** is one that requires no arguments. A default constructor is created automatically by the Java compiler for any class you create whenever you do not write your own constructor.

When the prewritten, default constructor for the `Employee` class is called, it establishes one `Employee` object with the identifier provided. The automatically supplied default constructor provides the following specific initial values to an object's data fields:

- › Numeric fields are set to 0 (zero).
- › Character fields are set to Unicode '\u0000'.
- › Boolean fields are set to `false`.
- › Fields that are object references (for example, `String` fields) are set to `null` (or empty).

If you do not want each field in an object to hold these default values, or if you want to perform additional tasks when you create an instance of a class, you can write your own constructor. Any constructor you write:

- › Must have the same name as the class it constructs
- › Cannot have a return type—not even `void`

Normally, you declare constructors to be `public` so that other classes can instantiate objects that belong to the class. When you write a constructor for a class, you no longer have access to the automatically created version.

For example, if you want every `Employee` object to have a default starting salary of \$800.00 per week, you could write the constructor for the `Employee` class that appears in **Figure 4-12**. Any `Employee` object instantiated will have an `empSalary` field value equal to 800.00, and the other `Employee` data fields will contain the values that are automatically

supplied for default (parameterless) constructors. Even though you might want a field to hold the default value for its data type—for example, 0 for a numeric field—you still might prefer to explicitly initialize the field for clarity.

You can write any Java statement in a constructor. Although you usually have no reason to do so, you could display a message from within a constructor, execute an arithmetic statement, or perform any other task.

You can place the constructor anywhere inside the class, outside of any other method. Typically, a constructor is placed with the other methods. Often, programmers list the constructor first because it is the first method used when an object is created.

You never are required to write a constructor for a class to make a class that compiles without error; Java provides you with a default version if the class contains no explicit constructor. Later in this chapter, you will learn to provide a class with more than one constructor.

## Creating Constructors with Parameters

In addition to writing a default constructor for a class, you also can write versions that receive parameters. Such parameters often are used to initialize data fields for an object.

For example, consider the `Employee` class with just one data field, shown in **Figure 4-13**. Its constructor assigns 999 to the `empNum` of each potentially instantiated `Employee` object. Anytime an `Employee` object is created using a statement such as `Employee partTimeWorker = new Employee();`, even if no other data-assigning methods are ever used, you ensure that the `partTimeWorker` `Employee`, like all `Employee` objects, will have an initial `empNum` of 999.

Alternatively, you might choose to create `Employee` objects with initial `empNum` values that differ for each `Employee`. To accomplish this when the object is instantiated, you can pass an employee number to the constructor. **Figure 4-14** shows an `Employee` class that contains a constructor that receives a parameter. With this constructor, an argument is passed using a statement such as the following:

```
Employee partTimeWorker = new Employee(881);
```

When the constructor executes, the integer within the constructor call is passed to `Employee()` as the parameter `num`, which is assigned to the `empNum` field.

When you create an `Employee` class with a constructor such as the one shown in Figure 4-14, every `Employee` object you create must have an integer argument in its constructor call. In other words, with this new version of the class, the following statement no longer works:

```
Employee partTimeWorker = new Employee();
```

After you write a constructor for a class, you no longer receive the automatically provided default constructor. If a class's only constructor requires an argument, you must provide an argument for every object of the class that you create. If you want to create a constructor with parameters and provide a default constructor as well, you can overload the constructors. Overloading constructors provides you with a way to create objects with different initializing arguments, or none, as needed.

For example, in addition to using the provided constructor shown in Figure 4-14, you can create a second constructor for the `Employee` class; **Figure 4-15** shows an `Employee` class that contains two constructors. When you use this class to create an `Employee` object, you have the option of creating the object either with or without an initial `empNum` value.

**Figure 4-12** The `Employee` class constructor that assigns a salary

```
public Employee()
{
 empSalary = 800.00;
}
```

**Figure 4-13** The `Employee` class with a default constructor that initializes the `empNum` field

```
public class Employee
{
 private int empNum;
 Employee()
 {
 empNum = 999;
 }
}
```

**Figure 4-14** The `Employee` class with a constructor that accepts a value

```
public class Employee
{
 private int empNum;
 Employee(int num)
 {
 empNum = num;
 }
}
```

- › When you create an Employee object with the statement Employee aWorker = new Employee();, the constructor with no parameters is called, and the Employee object receives an initial empNum value of 999.
- › When you create an Employee object with Employee anotherWorker = new Employee(7677);, the constructor version that requires an integer is used, and the anotherWorker Employee receives an initial empNum of 7677.

You can use constructor arguments to initialize field values, but you also can use them for any other purpose. For example, you could use the presence or absence of an argument simply to determine which of two possible constructors to call, yet not make use of the argument within the constructor. As long as the constructor parameter lists differ, the constructors are not ambiguous.

**Figure 4-15** The Employee class that contains two constructors

```
public class Employee
{
 private int empNum;
 Employee(int num)
 {
 empNum = num;
 }
 Employee()
 {
 empNum = 999;
 }
}
```

## Two Truths & a Lie | Creating and Using Constructors

1. A default constructor is one that is created automatically.
2. When you write a constructor, it can be written to receive parameters or not.
3. If a class's only constructor requires an argument, you must provide an argument for every object of the class that you create.

The false statement is #1. A default constructor is one that takes no arguments. The constructor that is created automatically when you do not write your own version is a default constructor, but so is one that you write to take no arguments.

## You Do It | Adding Constructors to a Class

1. Open the **SpaService.java** file that you created in a "You Do It" section earlier in this chapter.
2. After the field declarations, and before the method declarations, insert an explicit default constructor that sets serviceDescription to XXX and price to 0. Because numeric fields in objects are set to 0 by default, the last assignment is not really necessary. However, programmers sometimes code a statement like the one that sets price to 0 so that their intentions are clear to people reading their programs.

```
public SpaService()
{
 serviceDescription = "XXX";
 price = 0;
}
```

3. Save the class and compile it.
4. Open the **CreateSpaServices.java** file. Comment out the statement that gets data for the secondService object by placing double slashes at the start of the line, as shown here. By commenting out this statement, you change the program so that the user does not enter values for the secondService object. Instead, the values assigned by the constructor are the final values for the object.

```
// secondService = getData(secondService);
```

Save the file, and then compile and execute it. **Figure 4-16** shows a typical execution. The `firstService` object contains values supplied by the user, but the `secondService` object shows the values assigned during the object's construction.

5. Open the `SpaService.java` file. Overload the `SpaService` constructor by adding a two-parameter version just below the parameterless constructor:

```
public SpaService(String desc, double pr)
{
 serviceDescription = desc;
 price = pr;
}
```

6. Save the file and compile it.
7. Open the `CreateSpaServices.java` file. After the declaration for the first two services, add a third declaration that uses the newly created two-parameter constructor:

```
SpaService thirdService = new SpaService("facial", 22.99);
```

8. Just before the closing brace for the `main()` method, add the lines that will display the details of the third service:

```
System.out.println("Third service details:");
System.out.println(thirdService.getServiceDescription() +
 "$" + thirdService.getPrice());
```

9. Confirm that the statement that retrieves input for the second `SpaService` is still commented out so that the second service uses the default constructor.
10. Save, compile, and run the program. Confirm the following, as shown in **Figure 4-17**:
  - › The first service details are those you enter interactively.
  - › The second service details are from the default constructor.
  - › The third service details are *facial* and 22.99, as you assigned them as arguments to the two-parameter constructor.

**Figure 4-16** Typical execution of `CreateSpaServices` program that uses constructor values for the second object

```
Enter service >> aromatherapy
Enter price >> 19.99
First service details:
aromatherapy $19.99
Second service details:
XXX $0.0
```

**Figure 4-17** Output of the `CreateSpaServices` program

```
Enter service >> massage
Enter price >> 50
First service details:
massage $50.0
Second service details:
XXX $0.0
Third service details:
facial $22.99
```

## 4.7 Learning About the `this` Reference

When you start creating classes, they can become large very quickly. Besides data fields, each class can have many methods, including several overloaded versions. On paper, a single class might require several pages of coded statements.

When you instantiate an object from a class, memory is reserved for each instance field in the class. For example, if a class contains 20 data fields, when you create one object from that class, enough memory is reserved to hold the 20 field values for that object. When you create 200 objects of the same class, the computer reserves enough memory for 4,000 data fields—20 fields for each of the 200 objects. In many applications, the computer memory requirements can become substantial. Fortunately, objects can share some variables and methods.

You have learned that if a field or method name is preceded by the keyword `static` when it is declared, only one field or method exists, no matter how many objects are instantiated. In other words, if a field is `static`, then only one copy of the field exists, and all objects created have the same value for that field. However, you frequently want each

instantiation of a class to have its own copy of each data field so that each object can hold unique values. For example, if an `Employee` class contains fields for employee number, name, and salary, every individual `Employee` object needs a unique number, name, and salary value. Fields that hold unique values for each object are not defined as `static`.

When you create a method that uses a nonstatic field value for a class—for example, to get or set the field value—the method must be nonstatic. That means it performs in a different way for each object. However, it would take an enormous amount of memory to store a separate copy of each method for every object created from a class, and it would be wasteful, especially because each method's code would be identical. Luckily, in Java, just one copy of each nonstatic method in a class is stored, and all instantiated objects can use that copy. The secret behind a single method copy's ability to work with multiple object fields is that each nonstatic method in a class automatically receives the memory address of the object it references.

When you use a nonstatic method, you use the object name, a dot, and the method name—for example, `aWorker.getEmpNum()` or `anotherWorker.getEmpNum()`. When you execute the `getEmpNum()` method, you are running the only copy of the method. However, within the `getEmpNum()` method, when you access the `empNum` *field*, you access a different field depending on the object. The compiler accesses the correct object's field because every time you call a nonstatic method, a *reference*—an object's memory address—is implicitly understood. The reference to an object that is passed to any object's nonstatic method is called the **this reference**; `this` is a reserved word in Java. Only nonstatic instance methods have a `this` reference. For example, the two `getEmpNum()` methods for the `Employee` class shown in **Figure 4-18** perform identically. The first method simply uses the `this` reference without your being aware of it; the second method uses the `this` reference explicitly. Both methods return the `empNum` of the object used to call the method.

**Figure 4-18** Two versions of the `getEmpNum()` method, with and without an explicit `this` reference

```
public int getEmpNum()
{
 return empNum;
}

public int getEmpNum()
{
 return this.empNum;
}
```

The `this` reference is sent into this nonstatic method as a parameter automatically; you do not (and cannot) write code for it. You do not need to use `this` with `empNum`.

However, you can explicitly use the `this` reference with `empNum`. The two methods in this figure operate identically.

Usually, you neither want nor need to refer to the `this` reference within the instance methods that you write, but the `this` reference is always there, working behind the scenes so that the data field for the correct object can be accessed.

On a few occasions, you must use the `this` reference to make your classes work correctly; one example is shown in the `Student` class in **Figure 4-19**. Within the constructor for this class, the parameter names `stuNum` and `gpa` are identical to the class field names. Within the constructor, `stuNum` and `gpa` refer to the locally declared names, not the class field names. The statement `stuNum = stuNum` accomplishes nothing—it assigns the local variable value to itself.

**Figure 4-19** A `Student` class whose constructor does not work

```
public class Student
{
 private int stuNum;
 private double gpa;
 public Student (int stuNum, double gpa)
 {
 stuNum = stuNum; ←
 gpa = gpa;
 }
 public void showStudent()
 {
 System.out.println("Student #" + stuNum +
 " gpa is " + gpa);
 }
}
```

#### Don't Do It

All four variables used in these two statements are the local versions declared in the constructor's parameter list. The fields are never accessed because the local variables shadow the fields. These two assignment statements accomplish nothing.

**Note**

When they have the same name, variables within methods of a class **override** or hide the class's fields. Java calls this phenomenon **shadowing**; a variable that hides another shadows it. These local variables are said to be **closer in scope** than the fields with the same name that are shadowed.

**Note**

Object-oriented programmers also use the term **override** when a child class contains a field or method that has the same name as one in the parent class. You will learn more about inheritance later in this course.

**Note**

You are familiar with local names overriding names defined elsewhere. If someone in your household is named *Juan*, and someone in the house next door also is named *Juan*, members of your household who talk about *Juan* are referring to the local version. They would add a qualifier such as *Juan Garcia* or *Juan next door* to refer to the nonlocal version.

The client application in **Figure 4-20** attempts to create a **Student** object with an ID number of 111 and a grade point average of 3.5, but **Figure 4-21** shows the incorrect output. The values are not assigned to the fields; instead, the fields hold zeros.

**Figure 4-20** The **TestStudent** class that instantiates a **Student** object

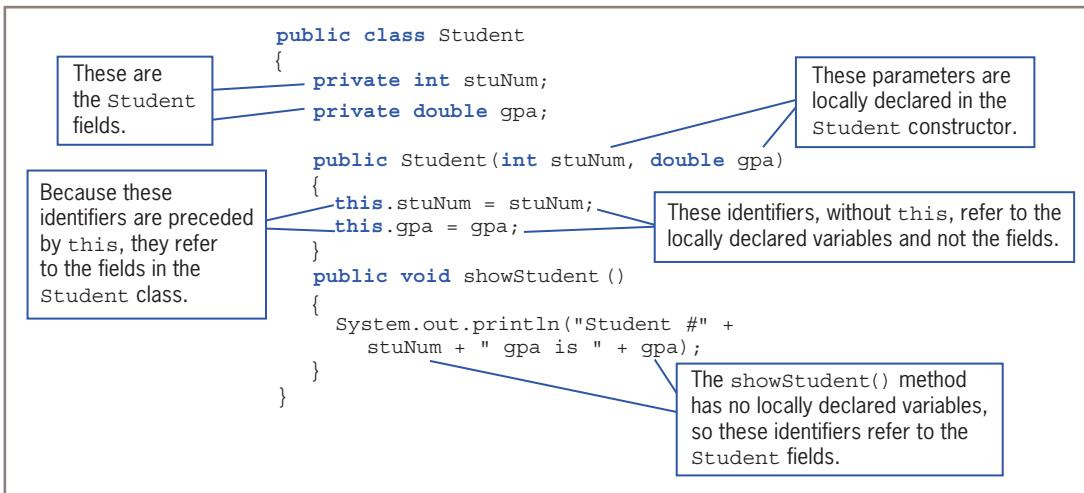
```
public class TestStudent
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 Student aPsychMajor = new Student(111, 3.5);
 aPsychMajor.showStudent();
 }
}
```

**Figure 4-21** Output of the **TestStudent** application using the incorrect **Student** class in Figure 4-19

Student #0 gpa is 0.0

One way to fix the problem with the **Student** class is to use different identifiers for the class's fields and the parameters to the constructor. However, sometimes the identifiers you have chosen are the best and simplest identifiers for a value. If you choose to use the same identifiers, you can use the **this** reference explicitly to identify the fields. **Figure 4-22** shows a modified **Student** class.

**Figure 4-22** The **Student** class using the explicit **this** reference within the constructor



The only difference between the classes in Figures 4-19 and 4-22 is the explicit use of the `this` reference within the constructor. When the `this` reference is used with a field name in a method, the reference is to the class's data field instead of to the local variable declared within the method. When the `TestStudent` application uses this new version of the `Student` class, the output appears as expected, as shown in **Figure 4-23**.

**Figure 4-23** Output of the `TestStudent` application using the new version of the `Student` class

Student #111 gpa is 3.5

## Using the `this` Reference to Make Overloaded Constructors More Efficient

Suppose you create a `Student` class with data fields for a student number and a grade point average. Further suppose you want four overloaded constructors as follows:

- › A constructor that accepts an `int` and a `double` and assigns them the student number and grade point average, respectively
- › A constructor that accepts a `double` and assigns it to the grade point average, but initializes every student number to 999
- › A constructor that accepts an `int` and assigns it to the student number, but initializes every grade point average to 0.0
- › A default constructor that assigns 999 to every student number and 0.0 to every grade point average

**Figure 4-24** shows the class. Although this class works and allows `Students` to be constructed in four different ways, there is a lot of repetition within the constructors.

**Figure 4-24** Student class with four constructors

```
public class Student
{
 private int stuNum;
 private double gpa;
 Student (int num, double avg)
 {
 stuNum = num;
 gpa = avg;
 }
 Student (double avg)
 {
 stuNum = 999;
 gpa = avg;
 }
 Student (int num)
 {
 stuNum = num;
 gpa = 0.0;
 }
 Student ()
 {
 stuNum = 999;
 gpa = 0.0;
 }
}
```

Each constructor contains similar statements.

You can reduce the amount of repeated code in Figure 4-24 and make the code less error-prone by calling one constructor version from the others. To do so, you use the `this` reference from one constructor version to call another version. **Figure 4-25** shows how the `Student` class can be rewritten.

**Figure 4-25** The Student class using `this` in three of four constructors

```
public class Student
{
 private int stuNum;
 private double gpa;
 Student (int num, double avg)
 {
 stuNum = num;
 gpa = avg;
 }
 Student (double avg)
 {
 this (999, avg);
 }
 Student (int num)
 {
 this (num, 0.0);
 }
 Student ()
 {
 this (999, 0.0);
 }
}
```

Each of these calls to `this()` calls the two-parameter version of the constructor.

By writing each constructor to call one master constructor, you save coding and reduce the chance for errors. For example, if code is added later to ensure that all student ID numbers are three digits or that no grade point average is greater than 4.0, the new code will be written only in the two-parameter version of the constructor, and all the other versions will use it.

Although you can use the `this` reference with field names in any method within a class, you cannot call `this()` from other methods in a class; you can call it only from constructors. Additionally, if you call `this()` from a constructor, it must be the first statement within the constructor.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Learning About the `this` Reference

- Usually, you want each instantiation of a class to have its own nonstatic data fields, but each object does not need its own copy of most methods.
- When you use a nonstatic method, the compiler accesses the correct object's field because you implicitly pass an object reference to the method.
- The `this` reference is supplied automatically in classes; you cannot use it explicitly.

The false statement is #3. Usually, you neither want nor need to refer to the `this` reference within the methods you write, but you can use it—for example, when there are conflicts between identifiers for fields and local variables.

## You Do It | Using the `this` Reference to Make Constructors More Efficient

In this section, you modify the `SpaService` class to use the `this` reference in one version of the constructor.

- Open the `SpaService.java` file.
- Replace the constructor that accepts no parameters with the following version that sends the default values to the two-parameter constructor:

```
public SpaService()
{
 this("XXX", 0);
}
```

3. Save the file, and compile it.
4. Rerun the CreateSpaServices program. The parameterless constructor now calls the one that requires parameters. The output is the same as in Figure 4-17.

## 4.8 Using static Fields

Methods you create to use without objects are static. Most methods you create within a class from which objects will be instantiated are nonstatic. Static methods do not have a `this` reference because they have no object associated with them; therefore, they are called **class methods**.

You can also create **class variables**, which are variables that are shared by every instantiation of a class. Whereas instance variables in a class exist separately for every object you create, there is only one copy of each static class variable per class. For example, consider the `BaseballPlayer` class in **Figure 4-26**. The `BaseballPlayer` class contains a static field named `countOfPlayers` and two nonstatic fields named `number` and `battingAverage`. The `BaseballPlayer` constructor sets values for `number` and `battingAverage` and increases `countOfPlayers` by one. In other words, every time a `BaseballPlayer` object is constructed, it contains individual values for `number` and `battingAverage`, and the `countOfPlayers` field contains a count of the number of existing objects and is shared by all `BaseballPlayer` objects.

**Figure 4-26** The `BaseballPlayer` class

```
public class BaseballPlayer
{
 private static int countOfPlayers = 0;
 private int number;
 private double battingAverage;
 public BaseballPlayer(int id, double avg)
 {
 number = id;
 battingAverage = avg;
 countOfPlayers = countOfPlayers + 1;
 }
 public void showPlayer()
 {
 System.out.println("Player #" + number +
 " batting average is " + battingAverage +
 " There are " + countOfPlayers + " players");
 }
}
```

The field `countOfPlayers` is static; all objects of type `BaseballPlayer` will share its value.

The `showPlayer()` method in the `BaseballPlayer` class displays a `BaseballPlayer`'s number, batting average, and a count of all current players. The `showPlayer()` method is not static—it accesses an individual object's data. Methods declared as static cannot access instance variables, but nonstatic instance methods such as `showPlayer()` can access both static and instance variables.

The `TestPlayer` class in **Figure 4-27** is an application that declares two `BaseballPlayer` objects, displays them, and then creates a third `BaseballPlayer` object and displays it. When you examine the output in **Figure 4-28**, you can see that by the time the first two objects are declared, the `countOfPlayers` value that they share is 2. Whether `countOfPlayers` is accessed using the `aCatcher` object or the `aShortstop` object, the value of `countOfPlayers` is the same. After the third object is declared, its `count` value is 3, as is the value of `count` associated with both of the previously declared objects. In other words, the `countOfPlayers` variable is incremented within the constructor,

so its value changes with each new instantiation, and because the field is `static`, each object has access to the single memory location that holds the `countOfPlayers` value. No matter how many `BaseballPlayer` objects are eventually instantiated, each refers to the single `countOfPlayers` field.

**Figure 4-27** The `TestPlayer` class

```
public class TestPlayer
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 BaseballPlayer aCatcher = new BaseballPlayer(12, .218);
 BaseballPlayer aShortstop = new BaseballPlayer(31, .385);
 aCatcher.showPlayer();
 aShortstop.showPlayer();
 BaseballPlayer anOutfielder = new BaseballPlayer(44, .505);
 anOutfielder.showPlayer();
 aCatcher.showPlayer();
 }
}
```

**Figure 4-28** Output of the `TestPlayer` application

```
Player #12 batting average is 0.218 There are 2 players
Player #31 batting average is 0.385 There are 2 players
Player #44 batting average is 0.505 There are 3 players
Player #12 batting average is 0.218 There are 3 players
```

## Using Constant Fields

Sometimes a data field in a class should be constant. For example, you might want to store a school ID value that is the same for every `Student` object you create, so you declare it to be static. In addition, if you want the value for the school ID to be fixed so that all `Student` objects use the same ID value—for example, when applying to scholarship-granting organizations or when registering for standardized tests—you might want to make the school ID unalterable. As with ordinary variables, you use the keyword `final` with a field to make its value unalterable after construction. For example, the class in **Figure 4-29** contains the symbolic constant `SCHOOL_ID`. Because it is static, all objects share a single memory location for the field, and because it is `final`, it cannot change during program execution.

**Figure 4-29** The `Student` class containing a symbolic constant

```
public class Student
{
 private static final int SCHOOL_ID = 12345;
 private int stuNum;
 private double gpa;
 public Student(int stuNum, double gpa)
 {
 this.stuNum = stuNum;
 this.gpa = gpa;
 }
 public void showStudent()
 {
 System.out.println("Student #" + stuNum +
 " gpa is " + gpa);
 }
}
```



A *nonstatic final* field's value can be assigned a value in a constructor. For example, you can set it using a constant, or you can set it using a parameter passed into the constructor. However, a `static final` field's value must be set at declaration, as in the `Student` class example in Figure 4-29. This makes sense because only one `static` field is stored for every object instantiated, so it would be redundant to continually reset the field's value during object construction.

**Note**

You can use the keyword `final` with methods or classes as well as with fields. When used in this manner, `final` indicates limitations placed on inheritance. You will learn more about inheritance later in this course.

**Note**

Fields that are `final` also can be initialized in a `static` initialization block. For more details about this technique, see the Java website.

Fields declared to be `static` are not always `final`. Conversely, `final` fields are not always `static`. In summary:

- › If you want to create a field that all instantiations of the class can access, but the field value can change, then it is `static` but not `final`. For example, in the last section you saw a nonfinal `static` field in the `BaseballPlayer` class that held a changing count of all instantiated objects.
- › If you want each object created from a class to contain its own `final` value, you would declare the field to be `final` but not `static`. For example, you might want each `BaseballPlayer` object to have its own nonchanging date of joining the team.
- › If you want all objects to share a single nonchanging value, then the field is `static` and `final`.

**Two Truths & a Lie | Using static Fields**

1. Methods declared as `static` receive a `this` reference that contains a reference to the object associated with them.
2. Methods declared as `static` are called class methods.
3. A `final static` field's value is shared by every object of a class.

The false statement is #1. Static methods do not have a `this` reference because they have no object associated with them.

**You Do It | Using Static and Nonstatic final Fields**

In this section, you create a class for the Riverdale Kennel Club to demonstrate the use of static and nonstatic `final` fields. The club enters its dogs in an annual triathlon event in which each dog receives three scores in agility, conformation, and obedience.

1. Open a new file in your text editor, and enter the first few lines for a `DogTriathlonParticipant` class. The class contains a `final` field that holds the number of events in which the dog participated. Once a `final` field is set, it should never change. The field is not `static` because it is different for each dog. The class also contains a static field that holds the total cumulative score for all the participating dogs. The field is not `final` because its value increases as each dog participates in the triathlon, but it is `static` because at any moment in time, it is the same for all participants.

```
public class DogTriathlonParticipant
{
 private final int NUM_EVENTS;
 private static int totalCumulativeScore = 0;
```

2. Add six private fields that hold the participating dog's name, the dog's score in three events, the total score, and the average score:

```
private String name;
private int obedienceScore;
private int conformationScore;
private int agilityScore;
private int total;
private double avg;
```

3. The constructor for the class requires five parameters—the dog's name, the number of events in which the dog participated, and the dog's scores in the three events. (After you read the chapter about decision making, you will be able to ensure that the number of nonzero scores entered matches the number of events, but for now, no such checks will be made.) The constructor assigns each value to the appropriate field.

```
public DogTriathlonParticipant(String name,
 int numEvents, int score1, int score2, int score3)
{
 this.name = name;
 NUM_EVENTS = numEvents;
 obedienceScore = score1;
 conformationScore = score2;
 agilityScore = score3;
```

4. After the assignments, the constructor calculates the total score for the participant and the participant's average score. Notice the result of the division is cast to a double so that any fractional part of the calculated average is not lost. Also, add the participant's total score to the cumulative score for all participants. Recall that this field is static because it should be the same for all participants at any point in time. After these statements, add a closing curly brace for the constructor.

```
total = obedienceScore + conformationScore + agilityScore;
avg = (double) total / NUM_EVENTS;
totalCumulativeScore = totalCumulativeScore + total;
}
```

5. Start a method that displays the data for each triathlon participant.

```
public void display()
{
 System.out.println(name + " participated in " +
 NUM_EVENTS +
 " events and has an average score of " + avg);
 System.out.println(" " + name +
 " has a total score of " + total +
 " bringing the total cumulative score to " +
 totalCumulativeScore);
}
```

6. Add a closing curly brace for the class. Then, save the file as **DogTriathlonParticipant.java**. Compile the class, and correct any errors.

7. Open a new file in your text editor, and then enter the header and opening and closing curly braces for a class you can use to test the DogTriathlonParticipant class. Also include a `main()` method header and its opening and closing braces.

```
public class TestDogs
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 }
}
```

8. Between the braces of the `main()` method, declare a `DogTriathlonParticipant` object. Provide values for the participant's name, number of events, and three scores, and then display the object.

```
DogTriathlonParticipant dog1 =
 new DogTriathlonParticipant("Bowser", 2, 85, 89, 0);
dog1.display();
```

9. Create and display two more objects within the `main()` method.

```
DogTriathlonParticipant dog2 =
 new DogTriathlonParticipant("Rush", 3, 78, 72, 80);
dog2.display();
DogTriathlonParticipant dog3 =
 new DogTriathlonParticipant("Ginger", 3, 90, 86, 72);
dog3.display();
```

10. Save the file as `TestDogs.java`. Compile and execute the program. The output looks like **Figure 4-30**. Visually confirm that each total, average, and cumulative total is correct.

**Figure 4-30** Output of the `TestDogs` program

```
Bowser participated in 2 events and has an average score of 87.0
 Bowser has a total score of 174 bringing the total cumulative score to 174
Rush participated in 3 events and has an average score of 76.66666666666667
 Rush has a total score of 230 bringing the total cumulative score to 404
Ginger participated in 3 events and has an average score of 82.66666666666667
 Ginger has a total score of 248 bringing the total cumulative score to 652
```

11. Experiment with the `DogTriathlonParticipant` class and its test class. For example, try the following:

- Add a new statement at the end of the `TestDogs` class that again displays the data for any one of the participants. Note that as long as no new objects are created, the cumulative score for all participants remains the same no matter which participant uses it.
- Try to assign a value to the `NUM_EVENTS` constant from the `display()` method, and then compile the class and read the error message generated.
- Remove the keyword `static` from the definition of `totalCumulativeScore` in the `DogTriathlonParticipant` class, and then recompile the classes and run the program. Notice in the output that the nonstatic cumulative score no longer reflects the cumulative score for all objects, but only the score for the current object using the `display()` method.
- Use 0 as the number of events for an object. When the participant's average is calculated, the result is not numeric, and `NaN` is displayed. **NaN** is an acronym for *Not a Number*. After you learn about decision making, you will be able to prevent the `NaN` output.

## 4.9 Using Imported, Prewritten Constants and Methods

If you write Java programs for an organization, you most likely will create dozens or hundreds of custom-made classes eventually. For example, you might create an `Employee` class with fields appropriate for describing employees in your organization and an `Inventory` class with fields appropriate for the type of item you sell or manufacture. However, many classes do not require customization for specific businesses. Instead, they are commonly used by a wide variety of programmers. Rather than have each Java programmer "reinvent the wheel," the creators of Java have produced hundreds of classes for you to use in your programs.

You already have used several of these prewritten classes; for example, you have used the `System` and `JOptionPane` classes to produce output. Each of these classes is stored in a *package*, or a **library of classes**, which is simply a folder that provides a convenient grouping for classes. Java has two categories of packages:

- › The `java.lang` package is implicitly imported into every program you write. The classes it contains are **fundamental classes** that provide the basis of the Java programming language. The `System` class, which you have used to access `print()` and `println()`, is an automatically imported class in the `java.lang` package. You will learn about many other fundamental classes later. Some references list a few other Java classes as also being “fundamental,” but the `java.lang` package is the only automatically imported, named package.
- › All other Java packages are available only if you explicitly name them within your program. These packages contain the **optional classes**. For example, when you use `JOptionPane`, you must import the `javax.swing` package into your program, and when you use the `LocalDate` class, you must import the `java.time` package, as you learn later in this chapter.

## The Math Class

The class `java.lang.Math` contains constants and methods that you can use to perform common mathematical functions. All of the constants and methods in the `Math` class are `static`—they are class variables and class methods. In other words, you do not create any `Math` objects when you use the class.

For example, `PI` is a commonly used `Math` class constant. In geometry, `pi` is an approximation of a circle’s radius based on the ratio of the circumference to the diameter. Within the `Math` class, the declaration for `PI` is as follows:

```
public final static double PI = 3.14159265358979323846;
```

Notice that `PI` is:

- › `public`, so any program can access it directly
- › `final`, so it cannot be changed
- › `static`, so only one copy exists and you can access it without declaring a `Math` object
- › `double`, so it holds a floating-point value

You can use the value of `PI` within any program you write by referencing the full package path in which `PI` is defined; for example, you can calculate the area of a circle using the following statement:

```
areaOfCircle = java.lang.Math.PI * radius * radius;
```

However, the `java.lang` package is imported automatically into your programs, so if you simply reference `Math.PI`, Java recognizes this code as a shortcut to the full package path. Therefore, the preferred (and simpler) statement is the following:

```
areaOfCircle = Math.PI * radius * radius;
```

In addition to constants, many useful methods are available within the `Math` class. For example, the `Math.max()` method returns the larger of two values, and the method `Math.abs()` returns the absolute value of a number. **Table 4-2** lists some common `Math` class methods.

**Table 4-2** Common `Math` class methods

| METHOD                   | VALUE THAT THE METHOD RETURNS                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>abs(x)</code>      | Absolute value of <code>x</code>                                                                                                 |
| <code>acos(x)</code>     | Arc cosine of <code>x</code>                                                                                                     |
| <code>asin(x)</code>     | Arc sine of <code>x</code>                                                                                                       |
| <code>atan(x)</code>     | Arc tangent of <code>x</code>                                                                                                    |
| <code>atan2(x, y)</code> | Theta component of the polar coordinate ( <code>r, theta</code> ) that corresponds to the Cartesian coordinate <code>x, y</code> |
| <code>ceil(x)</code>     | Smallest integral value not less than <code>x</code> (ceiling)                                                                   |

(Continues)

**Table 4-2** Common Math class methods—*continued*

| METHOD                 | VALUE THAT THE METHOD RETURNS                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cos(x)</code>    | Cosine of x                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>exp(x)</code>    | Exponent, where x is the base of the natural logarithms                                                                                           |
| <code>floor(x)</code>  | Largest integral value not greater than x                                                                                                         |
| <code>log(x)</code>    | Natural logarithm of x                                                                                                                            |
| <code>max(x, y)</code> | Larger of x and y                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>min(x, y)</code> | Smaller of x and y                                                                                                                                |
| <code>pow(x, y)</code> | x raised to the y power                                                                                                                           |
| <code>random()</code>  | Random double number between 0.0 and 1.0                                                                                                          |
| <code>rint(x)</code>   | Closest integer to x (x is a <code>double</code> , and the return value is expressed as a <code>double</code> )                                   |
| <code>round(x)</code>  | Closest integer to x (where x is a <code>float</code> or <code>double</code> , and the return value is an <code>int</code> or <code>long</code> ) |
| <code>sin(x)</code>    | Sine of x                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>sqrt(x)</code>   | Square root of x                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>tan(x)</code>    | Tangent of x                                                                                                                                      |

Because all constants and methods in the `Math` class are classwide (that is, `static`), there is no need to create an instance of the `Math` class. You cannot instantiate objects of type `Math` because the constructor for the `Math` class is `private`, and your programs cannot access the constructor.

### Note

Unless you are a mathematician, you won't use many of these `Math` class methods, and it is unwise to do so unless you understand their purposes. For example, because the square root of a negative number is undefined, if you display the result after the method call `imaginaryNumber = Math.sqrt(-12);`, you see `NaN`.

## Importing Classes That Are Not Imported Automatically

Java contains hundreds of classes, only a few of which—those in the `java.lang` package—are included automatically in the programs you write. To use any of the other prewritten classes, you must use one of three methods:

- › Use the entire path with the class name.
- › Import the class.
- › Import the package that contains the class you are using.

For example, in its `java.time` package, Java includes several classes that are useful when working with dates and time. One of the classes, `LocalDate`, holds data about a date, including a month, day, and year, and contains methods that allow you to easily work with dates. You can declare a `LocalDate` reference by using the full class path, as in the following:

```
java.time.LocalDate myAnniversary;
```

However, you probably prefer to use a shorter statement. You have seen examples in which the `Scanner` and `JOptionPane` classes were imported using the following statements:

```
import java.util.Scanner;
import javax.swing.JOptionPane;
```

These `import` statements allow you to create `Scanner` and `JOptionPane` references without typing the complete paths.

Similarly, you can import the `LocalDate` class using the following statement:

```
import java.time.LocalDate;
```

Then you can declare a `LocalDate` reference with a shortened statement such as the following:

```
LocalDate myAnniversary;
```

### Note

The `java.time` package was new in Java 8. Several other classes, such as `Calendar` and `GregorianCalendar`, were used for working with time in earlier Java versions. The classes defined in `java.time` base their calendar system on the ISO calendar, which is an international standard for expressing dates and times.

An alternative to importing a class is to import an entire package of classes. You can use the asterisk (\*) as a **wildcard symbol**, which indicates that it can be replaced by any set of characters. In a Java `import` statement, you use a wildcard symbol to represent all the classes in a package. Therefore, the following statement imports the `LocalDate` class and any other `java.time` classes as well:

```
import java.time.*;
```

The `import` statement does not move the entire imported class or package into your program, as its name implies. Rather, it simply notifies the program that you will use the data and method names that are part of the imported class or package.

There is no performance disadvantage to importing an entire package instead of just the classes you need, and you will commonly see the wildcard method in professionally written Java programs. However, you have the alternative of importing each class you need individually. Importing all of a package's classes at once saves typing, but importing each class by name, without wildcards, can be a form of documentation, specifically to show which parts of the package are being used. Additionally, if two or more packages contain classes with the same identifiers, then using the wildcard can result in conflicts.

You cannot use the `import` statement wildcard exactly like a DOS or UNIX wildcard because you cannot import all the Java classes with `import java.*;`. The Java wildcard works only with specific packages such as `import java.util.*;` or `import java.time.*;`. Also, note that the asterisk in an `import` statement imports all of the classes in a package, but not other packages that are within the imported package.

### Note

Your own classes are included in applications without `import` statements because of your `classpath` settings. See Appendix A for more information on `classpath`.

### Note

Java also uses the question mark character (?) as a wildcard when instantiating generic data types. You will learn about this topic as you continue to study Java.

## Using the `LocalDate` Class

A `LocalDate` object can be created using several approaches. For example, you can create two `LocalDate` objects with the current date and May 29, 2024, using the following statements:

```
LocalDate today = LocalDate.now();
LocalDate graduationDate = LocalDate.of(2024, 5, 29);
```

### Note

The `LocalDate` class is so named to distinguish it from other Java classes that include time zone information in their dates—in other words, dates that are not “local.”

These statements use the static methods `now()` and `of()`, respectively. You can tell the methods are static because they are used with the class name and without an object. The `now()` method accepts no arguments, and the `of()` method accepts three integers that represent a year, month, and day. You can tell from these two statements that both the `now()` and `of()` methods have a return type of `LocalDate` because their returned values are assigned to `LocalDate` objects.

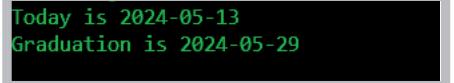
Unlike the other classes you have seen, you do not use the `new` operator and call a constructor when creating `LocalDate` objects; instead, you use `of()` or `now()`. The class's constructors are not usable because they are not public.

A `LocalDate` object can be displayed as a `String` with dashes separating the year, month, and day. For example, **Figure 4-31** shows a program that creates two `LocalDate` objects and then displays them. **Figure 4-32** shows the output.

**Figure 4-31** The `LocalDateDemo` application

```
import java.time.*;
public class LocalDateDemo
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 LocalDate today = LocalDate.now();
 LocalDate graduationDate = LocalDate.of(2024, 5, 29);
 System.out.println("Today is " + today);
 System.out.println("Graduation is " + graduationDate);
 }
}
```

**Figure 4-32** Execution of the `LocalDateDemo` application



```
Today is 2024-05-13
Graduation is 2024-05-29
```

Specific data field values can be retrieved from a `LocalDate` object by using the `getYear()`, `getMonthValue()`, and `getDayOfMonth()` methods that each return an integer. For example, assuming that `graduationDate` has been created with arguments 2024, 5, and 29, the following statement produces the output *Graduation will be on day 29 in month 5*:

```
System.out.println("Graduation will be on day " +
 graduationDate.getDayOfMonth() + " in month " +
 graduationDate.getMonthValue());
```

Other useful `LocalDate` methods include `getMonth()` and `getDayOfWeek()`. Each of these methods returns an **enumeration**, which is a data type that consists of a list of values. You will learn to create your own enumerations later, but for now, you can use Java's `Month` and `DayOfWeek` enumerations returned by these methods. The enumerations are constants with names such as `JANUARY`, `FEBRUARY`, and `MARCH` and `SUNDAY`, `MONDAY`, and `TUESDAY`. For example, assuming that `graduationDate` has been set to May 29, 2024, the following statement displays *Graduation is on WEDNESDAY*.

```
System.out.println("Graduation is on " + graduationDate.getDayOfWeek());
```

You might choose to create a `LocalDate` object using one of the `Month` enumerations, as in the following declaration:

```
LocalDate annualMeeting = LocalDate.of(2023, Month.OCTOBER, 1);
```

Another set of methods adds and subtracts time from an existing date. Some of the most useful method names are `plusDays()`, `plusWeeks()`, `plusMonths()`, `plusYears()`, `minusDays()`, `minusWeeks()`, `minusMonths()`, and `minusYears()`. Each of these methods accepts a `long` argument; of course, you can pass any of the methods an `int` to promote it to a `long`. For example, **Figure 4-33** shows an application that prompts a user for a furniture order date and displays details about the delivery date, which is two weeks later.

**Figure 4-33** The `DeliveryDate` application

```

import java.time.*;
import java.util.Scanner;
public class DeliveryDate
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
 LocalDate orderDate;
 int mo;
 int day;
 int year;
 final int WEEKS_FOR_DELIVERY = 2;
 System.out.print("Enter order month ");
 mo = input.nextInt();
 System.out.print("Enter order day ");
 day = input.nextInt();
 System.out.print("Enter order year ");
 year = input.nextInt();
 orderDate = LocalDate.of(year, mo, day);
 System.out.println("Order date is " + orderDate);
 System.out.println("Delivery date is " +
 orderDate.plusWeeks(WEEKS_FOR_DELIVERY));
 }
}

```

**Figure 4-34** shows a typical execution of the program in Figure 4-33. Notice that the two-week delivery date is displayed correctly, even though it falls both in the next month and the next year. Without the built-in methods of the `LocalDate` class, this output would require some fairly complicated calculations and decisions, but because the creators of Java have provided the class and its methods for you, your task is greatly simplified.

Many programmers need the methods in `LocalDate`, including those who manage personnel, inventory, and billing systems and programmers who write games that keep track of player records. Their jobs are easier because Java's creators implemented so many useful `LocalDate` methods. Additionally, when programmers advance to writing different types of applications or change employers, they do not have to learn how to use obscure date-handling methods that might have been written by previous programmers. After programmers have learned about `LocalDate`'s built-in methods and constants, they know how to work with dates in many situations.

**Figure 4-34** Typical execution of the `DeliveryDate` application

```

Enter order month 12
Enter order day 27
Enter order year 2024
Order date is 2024-12-27
Delivery date is 2025-01-10

```

## Two Truths & a Lie | Using Imported, Prewritten Constants and Methods

1. The creators of Java have produced hundreds of classes for you to use in your programs.
2. All Java packages are available only if you explicitly name them within your program.
3. The implicitly imported `java.lang` package contains fundamental Java classes.

The false statement is #2. Many Java packages are available only if you explicitly name them within your program, but others are imported automatically.

## You Do It | Using the Java Website

In this section, you learn more about using the `LocalDate` class and are introduced to the `LocalDateTime` class.

1. Using a Web browser, search for the Java API for the `LocalDate` class. Read the history and background of the `LocalDate` class to get an idea of how many issues are involved in determining values such as the first day of the week and a week's number in a year. Then read the rest of the documentation to get a feel for the fields and methods that are available with the class.
2. Find the documentation for the `LocalDateTime` class. It is similar to the `LocalDate` class, except it includes information about the time of day. Read descriptions of the methods `getHour()`, `getMinute()`, `getSecond()`, and `getNano()`. (A **nanosecond** is one-billionth of a second.)

### Using an Explicitly Imported, Prewritten Class

Next, you use the `LocalDateTime` class to create an application that outputs a user's response time to a question.

1. Open a new file in your text editor, and type the following two `import` statements. You need the `JOptionPane` class to use the `showConfirmDialog()` method, and you need the `java.time` package to use the `LocalDateTime` class:

```
import javax.swing.JOptionPane;
import java.time.*;
```

2. Begin the `TimedResponse` application as follows. Declare two `LocalDateTime` objects named `time1` and `time2`. These objects will hold the exact time before a user is prompted and the exact time after the user responds. Also declare integers to hold the value of the seconds for both times. The difference between these two values is the elapsed time between the creations of the two `LocalDateTime` values.

```
public class TimedResponse
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 LocalDateTime time1, time2;
 int seconds1, seconds2, difference;
```

3. Assign the current time to the `time1` object, and then extract the value of the current seconds field.

```
time1 = LocalDateTime.now();
seconds1 = time1.getSecond();
```

4. Display a dialog box that asks the user to make a difficult choice.

```
JOptionPane.showConfirmDialog
(null, "Is stealing ever justified? ");
```

5. Next, get the system time immediately after the user responds to the dialog box, and extract its seconds component.

```
time2 = LocalDateTime.now();
seconds2 = time2.getSecond();
```

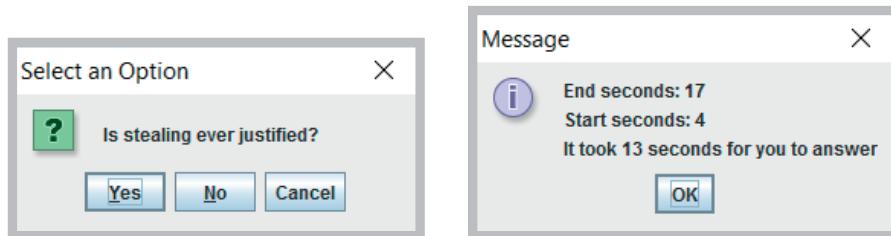
6. Compute the difference between the times, and display the result in a dialog box.

```
difference = seconds2 - seconds1;
JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "End seconds: " +
 seconds2 + "\nStart seconds: " + seconds1 +
 "\nIt took " + difference +
 " seconds for you to answer");
```

7. Add two closing curly braces—one for the method and the other for the class—and then save the file as `TimedResponse.java`.

8. Compile and execute the program. When the question appears, ponder it for a few seconds, and then choose a response. **Figure 4-35** shows a typical execution.

**Figure 4-35** Typical execution of the `TimedResponse` application



9. The output in the `TimedResponse` application is accurate only when the first and second `LocalDateTime` objects are created during the same minute, as in the output in Figure 4-35, when the question was asked at 4 seconds after the minute and then answered 17 seconds after the same minute. If the first object is created 58 seconds after a minute starts and the user doesn't respond to the question until 2 seconds after the next minute starts, the difference between the second values will be calculated incorrectly as -56 instead of 4 seconds. After you learn how to make decisions, you will be able to rectify this problem.

## 4.10 Understanding Composition and Nested Classes

Two of the ways that you can group classes are by using composition and by nesting classes. This section takes a brief look at both concepts.

### Composition

The fields in a class can be simple data types such as `int` and `double`, but they also can be class types. **Composition** describes the relationship between classes when an object of one class is a data field within another class. You already have studied many classes that contain `String` object fields. These classes employ composition.

When you use an object as a data member of another object, you must remember to supply values for the contained object if it has no default constructor. For example, you might create a class named `NameAndAddress` that stores name and address information. Such a class could be used for employees, customers, students, or anyone else who has a name and address. **Figure 4-36** shows a `NameAndAddress` class. The class contains three fields, all of which are set by the constructor. A `display()` method displays the name and address information on three lines.

**Figure 4-36** The `NameAndAddress` class

```
public class NameAndAddress
{
 private String name;
 private String address;
 private int zipCode;
 public NameAndAddress(String nm, String add, int zip)
 {
 name = nm;
 address = add;
 zipCode = zip;
 }
 public void display()
 {
 System.out.println(name);
 System.out.println(address);
 System.out.println(zipCode);
 }
}
```

Suppose you want to create a `School` class that holds information about a school. Instead of declaring fields for the School's name and address, you could use the `NameAndAddress` class. The relationship created is sometimes called a **has-a relationship** because one class "has an" instance of another. **Figure 4-37** shows a `School` class that declares and uses a `NameAndAddress` object.

**Figure 4-37** The `School` class

```

public class School
{
 private NameAndAddress nameAdd;
 private int enrollment;
 public School(String name, String add, int zip, int enrolled)
 {
 nameAdd = new NameAndAddress(name, add, zip);
 enrollment = enrolled;
 }
 public void display()
 {
 System.out.println("The school information:");
 nameAdd.display();
 System.out.println("Enrollment is " + enrollment);
 }
}

```

This statement declares a `NameAndAddress` object.

This statement calls the constructor in the `NameAndAddress` class.

This statement calls the `display()` method in the `NameAndAddress` class.

As Figure 4-37 shows, the `School` constructor requires four parameters. Within the constructor, three of the items—the name, address, and zip code—are passed to the `NameAndAddress` constructor to provide values for the appropriate fields. The fourth constructor parameter (the school's enrollment) is assigned to the `School` class enrollment field.

In the `School` class `display` method, the `NameAndAddress` object's `display()` method is called to display the school's name and address. The enrollment value is displayed afterward. **Figure 4-38** shows a simple program that instantiates one `School` object. **Figure 4-39** shows the execution.

**Figure 4-38** The `SchoolDemo` program

```

public class SchoolDemo
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 School mySchool = new School
 ("Audubon Elementary",
 "3500 Hoyne", 60618, 350);
 mySchool.display();
 }
}

```

**Figure 4-39** Output of the `SchoolDemo` program

```

The school information:
Audubon Elementary
3500 Hoyne
60618
Enrollment is 350

```

## Nested Classes

Every class you have studied so far has been stored in its own file, and the filename has always matched the class name. In Java, you can create a class within another class and store them together; such classes are **nested classes**. The containing class is the **top-level class**. There are four types of nested classes:

- › **static member classes**—A static member class has access to all static methods of the top-level class.
- › **Nonstatic member classes**, also known as **inner classes**—This type of class requires an instance; it has access to all data and methods of the top-level class.
- › **Local classes**—These are local to a block of code.
- › **Anonymous classes**—These are local classes that have no identifier.

The most common reason to nest a class inside another is because the inner class is used only by the top-level class; in other words, it is a "helper class" to the top-level class. Being able to package the classes together makes their connection easier to understand and their code easier to maintain.

For example, consider a `RealEstateListing` class used by a real estate company to describe houses that are available for sale. The class might contain separate fields for a listing number, the price, the street address, and the house's living area. As an alternative, you might decide that although the listing number and price "go with" the real estate listing, the street address and living area really "go with" the house. So you might create an inner class like the one in **Figure 4-40**.

**Figure 4-40** The `RealEstateListing` class

```
public class RealEstateListing
{
 private int listingNumber;
 private double price;
 private HouseData houseData;
 public RealEstateListing(int num, double price, String address,
 int sqFt)
 {
 listingNumber = num;
 this.price = price;
 houseData = new HouseData(address, sqFt);
 }
 public void display()
 {
 System.out.println("Listing number #" + listingNumber +
 " Selling for $" + price);
 System.out.println("Address: " + houseData.streetAddress);
 System.out.println(houseData.squareFeet + " square feet");
 }
 private class HouseData
 {
 private String streetAddress;
 private int squareFeet;
 public HouseData(String address, int sqFt)
 {
 streetAddress = address;
 squareFeet = sqFt;
 }
 }
}
```

This is an inner class.

Notice that the inner `HouseData` class in Figure 4-40 is a `private` class. You don't have to make an inner class `private`, but doing so keeps its members hidden from outside classes. If you wanted a class's members to be accessible, you would not make it an inner class. An inner class can access its top-level class's fields and methods, even if they are `private`, and an outer class can access its inner class's members.

You usually will not want to create inner classes. For example, if you made the `HouseData` class a regular class (as opposed to an inner class) and stored it in its own file, you could use it with composition in other classes—perhaps a `MortgageLoan` class or an `Appraisal` class. As it stands, it is usable only in the class in which it now resides. You probably will not create nested classes frequently, but you will see them implemented in some built-in Java classes.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Understanding Composition and Nested Classes

- Exposition describes the relationship between classes when an object of one class is a data field within another class.
- When you use an object as a data member of another object, you must remember to supply values for the contained object if it has no default constructor.
- A nested class resides within another class.

The false statement is #1. Composition describes the relationship between classes when an object of one class is a data field within another class.

## Don't Do It

- › Don't think that *default constructor* means only the automatically supplied version. A constructor with no parameters is a default constructor, whether it is the one that is automatically supplied or one you write.
- › Don't think that a class's methods must accept its own fields' values as parameters or return values to its own fields. When a class contains both fields and methods, each method has direct access to every field within the class.
- › Don't forget to write a default constructor for a class that has other constructors if you want to be able to instantiate objects without using arguments.
- › Don't assume that a wildcard in an `import` statement works like a DOS or UNIX wildcard. The wildcard works only with specific packages and does not import embedded packages.



## Summary

- › Objects are concrete instances of classes. Objects gain their attributes from their classes, and all objects have predictable attributes because they are members of certain classes. In addition to their attributes, objects have methods associated with them, and every object that is an instance of a class is assumed to possess the same methods.
- › A class header contains an optional access specifier, the keyword `class`, and any legal identifier you choose for the name of your class. A class contains fields, which are frequently `private`, and methods, which are frequently `public`.
- › Nonstatic instance methods operate uniquely for every object. Within a class, fields can be placed before or after methods, and methods can be placed in any logical order.
- › To create an object that is an instance of a class, you supply a type and an identifier, and then you allocate computer memory for that object using the `new` operator and the class constructor. With well-written object-oriented programming methods, using implementation hiding—or the encapsulation of method details within a class—means that the calling method needs to understand only the interface to the called method.
- › A class is an abstract, programmer-defined data type, similar to Java's built-in, primitive data types.
- › A constructor establishes an object and provides specific initial values for the object's data fields. A constructor always has the same name as the class of which it is a member. By default, numeric fields are set to 0 (zero), character fields are set to Unicode '\u0000', Boolean fields are set to `false`, and object type fields are set to `null`. When you write your own constructors, they can receive parameters. Such parameters often are used to initialize data fields for an object. After you write a constructor for a class, you no longer receive the automatically provided default constructor. If a class's only constructor requires an argument, you must provide an argument for every object of the class that you create. You can overload constructors just as you can other methods.
- › Within nonstatic methods, data fields for the correct object are accessed because a `this` reference is implicitly passed to nonstatic methods. Static methods do not have a `this` reference because they have no object associated with them; static methods are also called class methods.
- › Static class fields and methods are shared by every instantiation of a class. When a field in a class is `final`, it cannot change after it is assigned its initial value.
- › Java contains hundreds of prewritten classes that are stored in packages, which are folders that provide convenient groupings for classes. The `java.lang` package is implicitly imported into every Java program. The classes it contains are the fundamental classes, including `java.lang.Math`, `LocalDate`, and `LocalDateTime`.

To use any of the other prewritten classes, you must use the entire path with the class name, import the class, or import the package that contains the class you are using.

- Composition describes the relationship between classes when an object of one class is a data field within another class. You can create nested classes that are stored in the same file. The most common reason to nest a class inside another is because the inner class is used only by the outer or top-level class; in other words, it is a “helper class” to the top-level class.

## Key Terms

|                                 |                            |                                     |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>abstract data type (ADT)</b> | <b>fundamental classes</b> | <b>new operator</b>                 |
| <b>accessor methods</b>         | <b>has-a relationship</b>  | <b>nonstatic member classes</b>     |
| <b>anonymous classes</b>        | <b>information hiding</b>  | <b>nonstatic methods</b>            |
| <b>class client</b>             | <b>inner classes</b>       | <b>optional classes</b>             |
| <b>class methods</b>            | <b>instance methods</b>    | <b>override</b>                     |
| <b>class user</b>               | <b>instance variable</b>   | <b>primary key</b>                  |
| <b>class variables</b>          | <b>is-a relationship</b>   | <b>private access</b>               |
| <b>closer in scope</b>          | <b>java.lang package</b>   | <b>programmer-defined data type</b> |
| <b>composition</b>              | <b>library of classes</b>  | <b>reference to an object</b>       |
| <b>constructor</b>              | <b>local classes</b>       | <b>shadowing</b>                    |
| <b>data fields</b>              | <b>mutator methods</b>     | <b>static member classes</b>        |
| <b>default constructor</b>      | <b>NaN</b>                 | <b>this reference</b>               |
| <b>enumeration</b>              | <b>nanosecond</b>          | <b>top-level class</b>              |
| <b>extended</b>                 | <b>nested classes</b>      | <b>wildcard symbol</b>              |

## Review Questions

1. An object’s data items are also known as \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. fields
  - b. functions
  - c. themes
  - d. instances
  
2. You send messages or information to an object through its \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. fields
  - b. methods
  - c. classes
  - d. type
  
3. A program or class that instantiates objects of another prewritten class is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. class client
  - b. superclass
  - c. object
  - d. patron
  
4. The body of a class is always written \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. in a single line, as the first statement in a class
  - b. within parentheses
  - c. between curly braces
  - d. as a method call

5. Most class data fields are \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. private  
 b. public  
 c. static  
 d. final
6. The concept of allowing a class's private data to be changed only by a class's own methods is known as \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. structured logic  
 b. object orientation  
 c. information hiding  
 d. data masking
7. Suppose you declare an object as Book myJournal;. Before you store data in myJournal, you \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. also must explicitly allocate memory for it  
 b. need not explicitly allocate memory for it  
 c. must explicitly allocate memory for it only if it has a constructor  
 d. cannot explicitly declare memory for it
8. If a class is named Student, the class constructor name is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. any legal Java identifier  
 b. any legal Java identifier that begins with S  
 c. StudentConstructor()  
 d. Student()
9. If you use the automatically supplied default constructor when you create an object, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. int fields are set to 0 (zero)  
 b. char fields are set to blank  
 c. boolean fields are set to true  
 d. String fields are set to blanks
10. If you declare a variable as an instance variable within a class, and you declare and use the same variable name within a method of the class, then within the method, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. the variable used inside the method takes precedence  
 b. the class instance variable takes precedence  
 c. the two variables refer to a single memory address  
 d. an error will occur
11. A constructor \_\_\_\_\_ parameters.  
 a. can receive  
 b. cannot receive  
 c. must receive  
 d. can receive a maximum of 10
12. A constructor \_\_\_\_\_ overloaded.  
 a. must be  
 b. cannot be  
 c. can be  
 d. is always automatically
13. Usually, you want each instantiation of a class to have its own copy of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. the data fields but not the methods  
 b. the methods but not the data fields  
 c. both the data fields and the methods  
 d. neither the data fields nor the methods
14. If you create a class that contains one method, and you instantiate two objects, you usually store \_\_\_\_\_ for use with the objects.  
 a. one copy of the method  
 b. two copies of the method  
 c. two different methods containing two different this references  
 d. data only (the methods are not stored)
15. The this reference \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. can be used implicitly  
 b. must be used implicitly  
 c. must not be used implicitly  
 d. must not be used

# Programming Exercises

1.
    - a. Create a class named `Sandwich`. Data fields include a `String` for the main ingredient (such as `tuna`), a `String` for bread type (such as `wheat`), and a `double` for price (such as `4.99`). Include methods to get and set values for each of these fields. Save the class as `Sandwich.java`.
    - b. Create an application named `TestSandwich` that prompts the user for data, instantiates one `Sandwich` object, and displays its values. Save the application as `TestSandwich.java`.
  2.
    - a. Create a class named `Lease` with fields that hold an apartment tenant's name, apartment number, monthly rent amount, and term of the lease in months. Include a default constructor that initializes the name to `XXX`, the apartment number to `0`, the rent to `1000`, and the term to `12`. Also include methods to get and set each of the fields. Include a nonstatic method named `addPetFee()` that adds `$10` to the monthly rent value and calls a static method named `explainPetPolicy()` that explains the pet fee. Save the class as `Lease.java`.
    - b. Create a class named `TestLease` whose `main()` method declares four `Lease` objects named `lease1`, `lease2`, `lease3`, and `lease4`. Create a `getData()` method that prompts a user for values for each field for a `Lease`, and return a newly constructed `Lease` object to the `main()` method, where it is assigned to one of `main()`'s first three `Lease` objects. Do not prompt the user for values for the fourth `Lease` object, but let it hold the default values. After the four `Lease` objects have been assigned values, pass the `lease1` object to a `showValues()` method that displays the data. Then call the `addPetFee()` method with the `lease1` object, and confirm that the fee explanation statement is displayed. Next, call the `showValues()` method for the `lease1` object again and confirm that the pet fee has been added to the rent. Finally, call the `showValues()` method with each of the other three objects. Confirm that three hold the values you supplied as input and one holds the constructor default values. Save the application as `TestLease.java`.

3.
    - a. Create a `FitnessTracker` class that includes three data fields for a fitness activity: a `String` for the name of the activity, an `int` for the number of minutes spent participating, and a `LocalDate` for the date. The class includes methods to get each field. Create a default constructor that automatically sets the activity to `running`, the minutes to 0, and the date to January 1 of the current year. Overload the constructor that receives parameters for each of the fields and assigns them appropriately. Save the file as `FitnessTracker.java`.
    - b. Create an application that instantiates two `FitnessTracker` objects. Prompt the user for values for one object, and pass those values to the three constructor parameters. Retain the default constructor values for the other object. Display the values for each object. Save the program as `TestFitnessTracker.java`.
  4.
    - a. Create a class named `BloodData` that includes `String` fields that hold a blood type (the four blood types are *O*, *A*, *B*, and *AB*) and an Rh factor (the factors are + and -). Create a default constructor that sets the fields to *O* and + and an overloaded constructor that requires values for both fields. Include get and set methods for each field. Save this file as `BloodData.java`.
    - b. Create an application named `TestBloodData` that declares two objects. Prompt the user for values for one, and use the default constructor values for the other. Display the details of both objects. Then change the values in the default object so it uses the user's values, and display the details for the object again to confirm the changes are made correctly. Save the application as `TestBloodData.java`.
    - c. Create a class named `Patient` that includes an ID number, age, and `BloodData`. Provide a default constructor that sets the ID number to 0, the age to 0, and the `BloodData` values to the default `BloodData` values (*O* and +). Create an overloaded constructor that provides values for each field. Also provide get methods for each field. Save the file as `Patient.java`.
    - d. Create an application that declares three `Patient` objects. Use all default values for one `Patient` object, prompt the user for values for the second `Patient` object, and for the third object, prompt the user for `Patient` data but use default values for that `Patient`'s `BloodData`. Save the file as `TestPatient.java`.
  5.
    - a. Create a class to hold data about a high school sports team. The `Team` class holds data fields for high school name (such as *Roosevelt High*), sport (such as *Basketball*), and team name (such as *Dolphins*). Include a constructor that takes parameters for each field, and include get methods that return the values of the fields. Also include a public final static String named `MOTTO` and initialize it to *Sportsmanship!*. Save the class as `Team.java`.
    - b. Write an application named `TestTeam` whose `main()` method declares three `Team` objects. For each `Team` object, call a method named `setTeamData()` that declares a temporary `Team` object, prompts the user for values for the fields, and returns the temporary object to one of the Teams in the `main()` method. Display all the data, including the motto, for each `Team` object. Save the file as `TestTeam.java`.
    - c. Create a class named `Game`. Include two `Team` fields that hold data about the teams participating in the game. Also include a field for game time (for example, *7 PM*). Include a constructor that takes parameters for two `Team` objects and a time. Save the file as `Game.java`.
    - d. Write an application named `TestGame` to instantiate a `Game` object, prompt the user for the Game details, and then pass the `Game` to a method that displays the details about the `Game`. (Note that in this program, depending on what the user enters, the two teams are not necessarily playing the same sport! You will be able to fix this logical flaw after you learn about decision making.) Save the file as `TestGame.java`.
  6. Write a Java application that prompts the user for an `int` and a `double` and then uses `Math` class methods to display each of the following:
    - a. The square root of the `int`
    - b. A random number between 0 and the `int` (*Hint:* The `Math.random()` method returns a value between 0 and 1. For example, if the `int` is 10, you want a number that is 10 times larger than the value returned.)
    - c. The value of the floor, ceiling, and round of the `double`
    - d. The larger and the smaller of the `int` and the `double`
- Save the application as `MathTest.java`.

7. Write a program that declares two `LocalDate` objects and prompts the user for values. Display output that demonstrates the dates displayed when one, two, and three months are added to each of the objects. (When you test the program, be sure to try some date late in the month so you can observe what happens when a following month does not have as many days.) Save the application as `TestMonthHandling.java`.
8. Write an application that prompts a user for the user's month, day, and year of birth and uses the `LocalDate` class to compute the day on which the user will become (or became) 10,000 days old. Save the application as `TenThousandDaysOld.java`.
9. The `LocalDate` class includes an instance method named `lengthOfMonth()` that returns the number of days in the month. Write an application that allows the user to enter a month, day, and year and uses methods in the `LocalDate` class to calculate how many days are left until the first day of next month. For example, if the user enters 6 and 28 for the month and the day, the output should be *There are 3 days until JULY starts*. Save the file as `DaysTilNextMonth.java`.
10.
  - a. Create a class named `Person` that holds two `String` objects for the person's first and last name. Include a constructor that requires an argument for each field. Include get methods for each field. Save the file as `Person.java`.
  - b. Create a class named `Couple` that contains two `Person` objects that represent a bride and a groom. Include a constructor that requires two `Person` objects. Include two get methods that each return a `Person`. Save the file as `Couple.java`.
  - c. Create a class named `Wedding` for a wedding planner. The class includes the date of the wedding, the names of the `Couple` being married, and a `String` for the location (for example, *Smalltown VFW Hall*). Provide a constructor that requires a `Couple`, a `LocalDate`, and a `String` that contains data about a Wedding event. Include get methods that return the `Couple`, the `LocalDate`, and the `String` that represents the location. Save the file as `Wedding.java`.
  - d. Write a program that prompts the user for data, creates a `Wedding` object, and displays all the details. Save the file as `TestWedding.java`.

## Debugging Exercises

1. Each of the following files in the Chapter04 folder of your downloadable student files has syntax and/or logic errors. In each case, determine the problem and fix the program. After you correct the errors, save each file using the same filename preceded with *Fix*. For example, save `DebugFour1.java` as `FixDebugFour1.java`.
  - a. `DebugFour1.java` and `DebugCircle.java`
  - b. `DebugFour2.java` and `DebugPen.java`
  - c. `DebugFour3.java` and `DebugBox.java`
  - d. `DebugFour4.java` and `DebugTrip.java`

## Game Zone

1. Playing cards are used in many computer games, including versions of such classics as solitaire, hearts, and poker. Design a `Card` class that contains a character data field to hold a suit (*s* for spades, *h* for hearts, *d* for diamonds, or *c* for clubs) and an integer data field for a value from 1 to 13. Include get and set methods for each field. Save the class as `Card.java`.

Write an application that randomly selects two playing cards and displays their values. Simply assign a suit to each of the cards, but generate a random number for each card's value. The following statements generate a random number between 1 and 13 and assign it to a variable:

```
final int CARDS_IN_SUIT = 13;
myValue = ((int)(Math.random() * 100) % CARDS_IN_SUIT + 1);
```

Later in this course, you will be able to have the game determine the higher card. For now, just observe how the card values change as you execute the program multiple times. Save the application as **PickTwoCards.java**.

### Note

You use the `Math.random()` function to generate a random number. The function call uses only a class and method name—no object—so you know the `random()` method must be a `static` method.

2. Computer games often contain different characters or creatures. For example, you might design a game in which alien beings possess specific characteristics such as color, number of eyes, or number of lives. Design a character for a game, creating a class to hold at least three attributes for the character. Include methods to get and set each of the character's attributes. Save the file as **MyCharacter.java**. Then write an application in which you create at least two characters. In turn, pass each character to a display method that displays the character's attributes. Save the application as **TwoCharacters.java**.
3. Dice are used in many games. One die can be thrown to randomly show a value from 1 through 6. Design a `Die` class that can hold an integer data field for a value (from 1 to 6). Include a constructor that randomly assigns a value to a die object. For example, the following statement generates a random number between `LOWEST_DIE_VALUE` (which should contain the value 1) and `HIGHEST_DIE_VALUE` (which should contain the value 6) and assigns it to a variable.

```
randomValue = ((int)(Math.random() * 100) %
HIGHEST_DIE_VALUE + LOWEST_DIE_VALUE);
```

Also include a method in the class to return a `Die`'s value. Save the class as **Die.java**. Write an application that randomly “throws” two dice and displays their values. Save the application as **TwoDice.java**.

Using the `Die` class, write an application that randomly “throws” five dice for the computer and five dice for the player. Display the values and then, by observing the results, decide who wins based on the following hierarchy of `Die` values. (The computer will not decide the winner; the player will determine the winner based on observation. Later, you will learn to program the determination of the winner.) Any higher combination beats a lower one; for example, five of a kind beats four of a kind.

- › Five of a kind
- › Four of a kind
- › Three of a kind
- › A pair

After you learn about decision making, you will be able to make the program determine whether you or the computer had the better roll. For now, just observe how the values change as you execute the program multiple times. Save the application as **FiveDice.java**.

## Case Problems

1. a. Create a class to hold Event data for Yummy Catering. The class contains the following:
  - › Two `public final static` fields that hold the price per guest (\$35) and the cutoff value for a large event (50 guests).
  - › Three `private` fields that hold an event number, number of guests for the event, and the price. The event number is stored as a `String` because the company plans to assign event numbers such as `M312`.

- › Two `public set` methods that set the event number (`setEventNumber()`) and the number of guests (`setGuests()`). The price does not have a set method because the `setGuests()` method will calculate the price as the number of guests multiplied by the price per guest every time the number of guests is set.
- › Three `public get` methods that return the values in the three nonstatic fields.
- › A constructor that accepts an event number and number of guests as parameters. Pass these values to the `setEventNumber()` and `setGuests()` methods, respectively. The `setGuests()` method will automatically calculate the event price.
- › Another constructor that is a default constructor that passes `A000` and `0` to the two-parameter constructor.

Save the file as **Event.java**.

- b. Create an application that declares two `Event` objects.

- › One `Event` object uses the default constructor.
- › The other `Event` object is constructed from values input by a user.

Display the details of each object by passing them, in turn, to a method named `displayDetails()`.

Save the file as **EventDemo.java**.

2. a. Sunshine Seashore Supplies rents beach equipment such as kayaks, canoes, beach chairs, and umbrellas to tourists. Create a `Rental` class for the company. The `Rental` class contains the following:

- › Two `public final static` fields that hold the number of minutes in an hour (60) and the hourly rental rate (\$40).
- › Four `private` fields that hold a contract number, number of hours for the rental, number of minutes over an hour, and the price. The contract number is stored as a `String` because the company plans to assign contract numbers such as `K681`.
- › Two `public set` methods. One sets the contract number (`setContractNumber()`). The other is named `setHoursAndMinutes()`, and it accepts the number of minutes for the rental and then sets the hours, extra minutes over an hour, and the total price. For example, 70 minutes is 1 hour and 10 minutes. The total price is \$40 per hour plus \$1 for every extra minute.
- › Four `public get` methods that return the values in the four nonstatic fields.
- › A constructor that accepts a contract number and number of minutes as parameters. Pass these values to the `setContractNumber()` and `setHoursAndMinutes()` methods, respectively. The `setHoursAndMinutes()` method will automatically calculate the hours, extra minutes, and price.
- › An overloaded default constructor that passes `A000` and `0` to the two-parameter constructor.

Save the file as **Rental.java**.

- b. Create an application that declares two `Rental` objects.

- › One `Rental` object uses the default constructor.
- › The other `Rental` object is constructed from values input by a user.

Display the details of each object by passing them, in turn, to a method named `displayDetails()`.

Save the program as **RentalDemo.java**.

# Making Decisions

## Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to:

- 5.1** Plan decision-making logic
- 5.2** Make decisions with the `if` and `if...else` statements
- 5.3** Use multiple statements in `if` and `if...else` clauses
- 5.4** Nest `if` and `if...else` statements
- 5.5** Use AND and OR operators
- 5.6** Make accurate and efficient decisions
- 5.7** Use `switch`
- 5.8** Use the conditional and NOT operators
- 5.9** Assess operator precedence
- 5.10** Make constructors more efficient by using decisions in other methods

## 5.1 Planning Decision-Making Logic

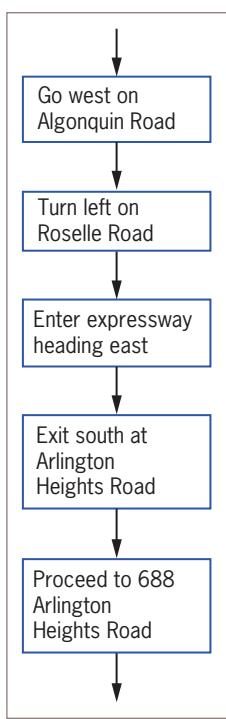
When computer programmers write programs, they rarely just sit down at a keyboard and begin typing. Programmers must plan the complex portions of programs. As you gain programming experience, you will come to appreciate all the unforeseen directions a program might take, and you will recognize the advantages of planning before starting to code. Programmers might use paper and pencil, a text editor, or specially designed software for such planning.

Programmers often use **pseudocode**, a tool that helps them plan a program's logic by writing down in plain English the steps needed to accomplish a given task. You write pseudocode in everyday language, not the syntax used in a programming language. In fact, a task you write in pseudocode does not have to be computer-related. If you have ever written a list of directions to your house—for example, (1) go west on Algonquin Road, (2) turn left on Roselle Road, (3) enter expressway heading east, and so on—you have written pseudocode. A **flowchart** is similar to pseudocode, but in a flowchart, you write the steps in diagram form, as a series of shapes connected by arrows.

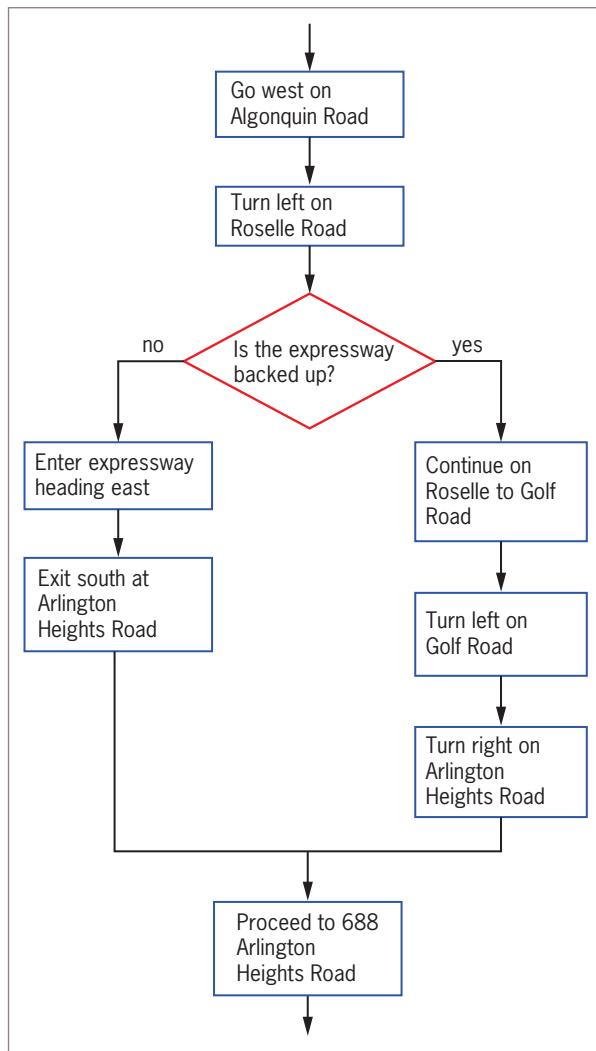
Some programmers use a variety of shapes to represent different tasks in their flowcharts, but you can draw simple flowcharts that express very complex situations using just rectangles, diamonds, and arrows. You use a rectangle to represent any unconditional step and a diamond to represent any decision. For example, **Figure 5-1** shows a flowchart describing driving directions to a friend's house. The logic in Figure 5-1 is an example of a **sequence structure**—a logical structure in which one step follows another unconditionally. A sequence structure might contain any number of steps in which one task follows another with no chance to branch away or skip a step.

Sometimes, logical steps do not follow in an unconditional sequence—some tasks might or might not occur based on decisions you make. To represent a decision, flowchart creators use a diamond shape to hold a question, and they draw paths to alternative courses of action emerging from the sides of the diamonds. **Figure 5-2** includes a **decision structure**—one that involves choosing between alternative courses of action based on some value within a program. Making decisions is what makes computer programs seem “smart.”

**Figure 5-1** Flowchart of a series of sequential steps



**Figure 5-2** Flowchart including a decision



When reduced to their most basic form, all computer decisions are yes-or-no decisions. That is, the answer to every computer question is yes or no (or *true* or *false*, or *on* or *off*). This is because computer circuitry consists of millions of tiny switches that are either on or off, and the result of every decision sets one of these switches in memory. The values *true* and *false* are *Boolean values*; every computer decision results in a Boolean value. (You already know that the Java data type that holds a Boolean value is *boolean*.) Thus, internally, a program never asks, for example, *What number did the user enter?* Instead, the decisions might be *Did the user enter a 1? If not, did the user enter a 2? If not, did the user enter a 3?*

## Two Truths & a Lie | Planning Decision-Making Logic

1. Pseudocode and flowcharts are both tools that are used to check the syntax of computer programs.
2. In a sequence structure, one step follows another unconditionally.
3. In a decision structure, alternative courses of action are chosen based on a Boolean value.

The false statement is #1. Pseudocode and flowcharts are both tools that help programmers plan a program's logic.

## 5.2 The if and if...else Statements

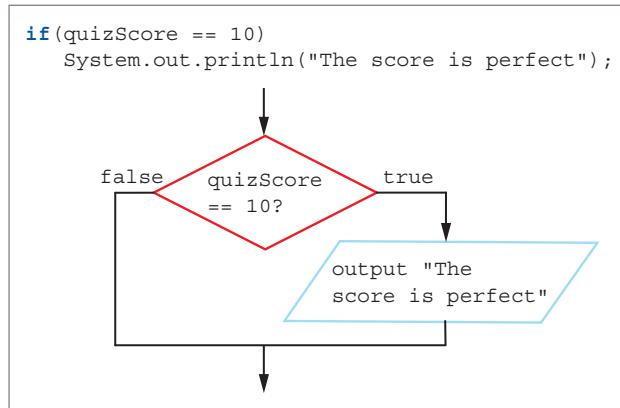
In Java, when you want to take an action if a Boolean expression is true, you use an `if` statement. If you want to take an action when a Boolean expression is true but take a different action when the expression is false, you use an `if...else` statement.

### The if Statement

The simplest statement you can use to make a decision is the **if statement**. An `if` statement is sometimes called a **single-alternative selection** because there is only one alternative—the true alternative.

For example, suppose you have declared an integer variable named `quizScore`, and you want to display a message when the value of `quizScore` is 10. The `if` statement in **Figure 5-3** makes the decision whether to produce output. Note that the double equal sign is used to determine equality; it is Java's **equivalency operator** (`==`).

**Figure 5-3** A Java `if` statement and its logic



In Figure 5-3, if `quizScore` holds the value *10*, the Boolean value of the expression `quizScore == 10` is `true`, and the subsequent output statement executes. If the value of the expression `quizScore == 10` is `false` (meaning that the score is any value *other* than 10), the output statement does not execute. As the flowchart segment shows, whether the tested expression is `true` or `false`, the program continues and executes any statements that follow the complete `if` statement.

A Java `if` statement always includes parentheses. Within the parentheses, you can place any Boolean expression. Most often you use a comparison that includes one of six relational operators (`==`, `<`, `>`, `<=`, `>=`, or `!=`). However, you can use any expression that evaluates as `true` or `false`, such as a simple `boolean` variable or a call to a method that returns a `boolean` value.

The code example in Figure 5-3 correctly determines whether `quizScore` is equivalent to 10. It also can be written with curly braces surrounding the action that takes place when the comparison is true, as in the following:

```
if(quizScore == 10)
{
 System.out.println("The score is perfect");
}
```

Alternatively, you will sometimes see code in which the opening curly brace appears on the same line as the comparison, as in the following:

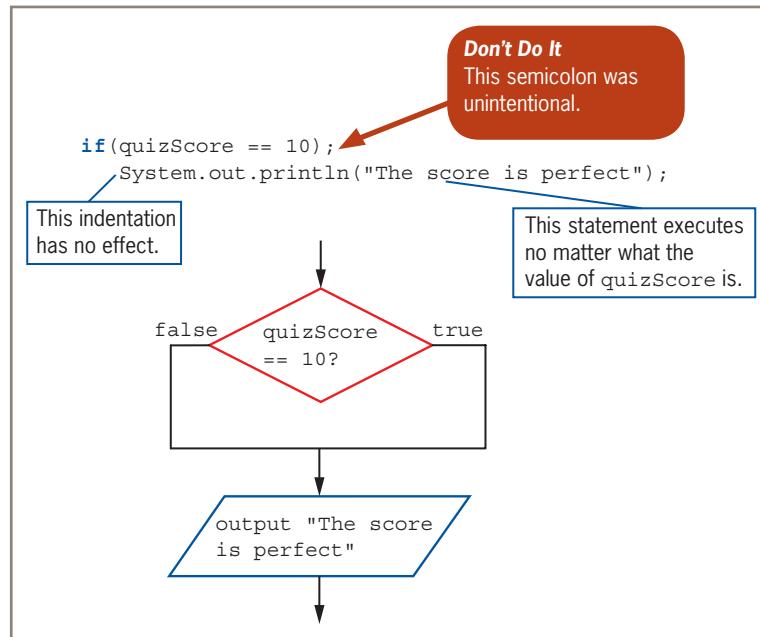
```
if(quizScore == 10) {
 System.out.println("The score is perfect");
}
```

Although the code works the same way with or without the curly braces and whether they are aligned or not, some organizations prefer one format over the others. You should follow the conventions your organization recommends.

## Pitfall: Misplacing a Semicolon in an `if` Statement

In Figure 5-3, there is no semicolon at the end of the first line of the `if` statement following the parentheses because the statement does not end there. The statement ends after the action that should execute if the Boolean expression in the `if` statement is true (in this case, the `println()` call), so that is where you type the semicolon. You could type the entire `if` statement on one line, and it would execute correctly. However, the two-line format for the `if` statement is more conventional and easier to read, so you usually type `if` and the Boolean expression on one line, press the Enter key, and then indent a few spaces before coding the action that occurs if the Boolean expression evaluates as `true`. Be careful—if you use the two-line format and type a semicolon at the end of the first line, as in the example shown in Figure 5-4, the results might not be what you intended.

**Figure 5-4** Logic that executes when an extra semicolon is inserted in an `if` statement



When the Boolean expression in Figure 5-4 is `true`, an **empty statement** that contains only a semicolon executes. Whether the tested expression evaluates as `true` or `false`, the decision is over immediately, and execution continues with the next independent statement that displays a message. In this case, because of the incorrect semicolon, the `if` statement accomplishes nothing.

## Pitfall: Using the Assignment Operator Instead of the Equivalency Operator

Another common programming error occurs when a programmer uses a single equal sign rather than the double equal sign when attempting to determine equivalency. The expression `quizScore = 10` does not compare `quizScore` to `10`; instead, it attempts to assign the value `10` to `quizScore`. When the expression `quizScore = 10` is used in the `if` statement, the assignment is illegal because only Boolean expressions are allowed. The confusion arises in part because the single equal sign is used within Boolean expressions in `if` statements in several older programming languages, such as COBOL, Pascal, and BASIC. Adding to the confusion, Java programmers use the word *equals* when speaking of equivalencies. For example, you might say, “If `quizScore equals 10...`”

### Note

The expression `if(x = true)` will compile only if `x` is a boolean variable, because it would be legal to assign `true` to `x`. After the assignment, the values of the variable `x` and the expression `(x = true)` are both `true`, so the `if` clause of the statement executes.

An alternative to using a Boolean expression in an `if` statement, such as `quizScore == 10`, is to store the Boolean expression’s value in a `boolean` type variable. For example, if `isPerfectScore` is a `boolean` variable, then the following statement compares `quizScore` to `10` and stores `true` or `false` in `isPerfectScore`:

```
isPerfectScore = (quizScore == 10);
```

Then, you can write the `if` statement as:

```
if(isPerfectScore)
 System.out.println("The score is perfect");
```

This adds an extra step to the program but makes the `if` statement more similar to an English-language statement.

### Note

When comparing a variable to a constant, some programmers prefer to place the constant to the left of the comparison operator, as in `10 == quizScore`. This practice is a holdover from other programming languages, such as C++, in which an accidental assignment might be made when the programmer types the assignment operator (a single equal sign) instead of the comparison operator (the double equal sign). In other words, in some languages, `if(quizScore = 10)` would assign `10` to `quizScore` instead of making a comparison. In Java, the compiler does not allow you to make a mistaken assignment in a Boolean expression, so Java programmers typically place the constant to the right in a Boolean expression because the statement reads more naturally.

## Pitfall: Attempting to Compare Objects Using the Relational Operators

You can use the standard relational operators (`==`, `<`, `>`, `<=`, `>=`, and `!=`) to compare the values of primitive data types such as `int` and `double`. However, you cannot use `<`, `>`, `<=`, or `>=` to compare objects; a program containing such comparisons does not compile. You can use the `equals` and `not equals` comparisons (`==` and `!=`) with objects, but when you use them, you compare the objects’ memory addresses instead of their values. Recall that every object name is a reference; the equivalency operators compare objects’ references. In other words, `==` yields `true` for two objects only when they refer to the same object in memory, not when they are different objects with the same value. To compare the values of objects, you should write specialized methods. Remember, `Strings` are objects, so do not use `==` to compare `Strings`. You will learn how to compare strings later in this course.

In Java, object names are references, but values that are simple data types are not. For example, suppose you have created a class named `Student` with a `double` grade point average field and a nonstatic public method named `getGpa()`. After instantiating two objects named `student1` and `student2`, you can write a statement such as the following:

```
if(student1.getGpa() > student2.getGpa())
 System.out.println("The first student has a higher gpa");
```

The values represented by `student1.getGpa()` and `student2.getGpa()` are both doubles, so they can be compared using any of the relational operators.

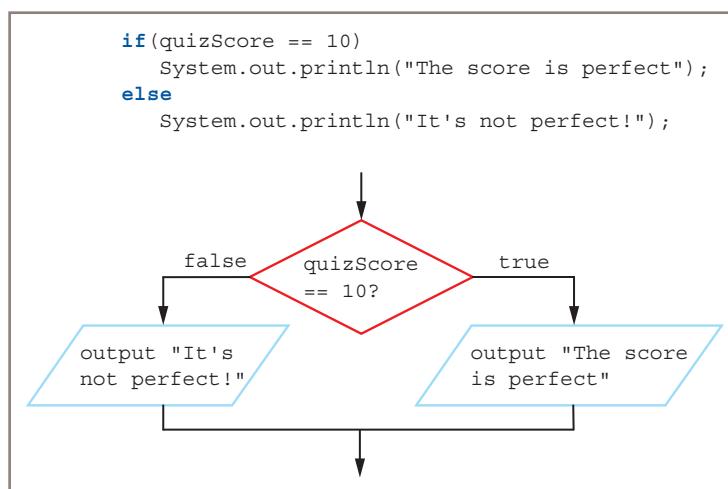
## The if...else Statement

In Java, the **if...else statement** provides the mechanism to perform one action when a Boolean expression evaluates as `true` and a different action when a Boolean expression evaluates as `false`. In other words, you use an **if...else** statement for a **dual-alternative selection**. For example, you would use an **if...else** statement if you wanted to display one message when the value of `quizScore` is 10 and a different message when it is not.

The code in **Figure 5-5** displays one of two messages. In this example, when the value of `quizScore` is 10, the **if clause** of the statement executes, displaying the message *The score is perfect*. When `quizScore` is any other value, the **else clause** of the statement executes and the program displays the message *It's not perfect!*. You can code an **if** without an **else**, but it is illegal to code an **else** without an **if** that precedes it.

The indentation shown in the example code in Figure 5-5 is not required but is standard usage. The keyword **if** is aligned vertically with the keyword **else**, and then the action statements that depend on the evaluation are indented.

**Figure 5-5** An **if...else** statement and its logic



When you execute an **if...else** statement, only one of the resulting actions takes place depending on the evaluation of the Boolean expression. Each of the two statements, the one dependent on the **if** and the one dependent on the **else**, is a complete statement, so each ends with a semicolon.

### Two Truths & a Lie | The if and if...else Statements

1. In a Java **if** statement, the keyword **if** is followed by a Boolean expression within parentheses.
2. In a Java **if** statement, a semicolon follows the Boolean expression.
3. When determining equivalency in Java, you use a double equal sign.

The false statement is #2. In a Java **if** statement, a semicolon ends the statement. It is used following the action that should occur if the Boolean expression is true. If a semicolon follows the Boolean expression, then the body of the **if** statement is empty.

## You Do It | Using an if...else Statement

In this section, you start writing a program for Sacks Fifth Avenue, a nonprofit thrift shop. The program determines which volunteer to assign to price a donated item. To begin, you prompt the user to answer a question about whether a donation is clothing or some other type, and then the program displays the name of the volunteer who handles such donations. Clothing donations are handled by Regina, and other donations are handled by Marco.

1. Start a new application by entering the following lines of code to create a class named `AssignVolunteer`. You import the `Scanner` class so that you can use keyboard input. The class contains a `main()` method that performs all the work of the class:

```
import java.util.Scanner;
public class AssignVolunteer
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
```

2. On new lines, declare the variables and constants this application uses. The user will be prompted to enter one of the values stored in the two constants. That value will then be assigned to the integer `donationType` and compared to the `CLOTHING_CODE` constant. Then, based on the results of that comparison, the program will assign the value of one of the `PRICER` constants to the `String` variable `volunteer`.

```
int donationType;
String volunteer;
final int CLOTHING_CODE = 1;
final int OTHER_CODE = 2;
final String CLOTHING_PRICER = "Regina";
final String OTHER_PRICER = "Marco";
```

3. Define the input device, and then add the code that prompts the user to enter a 1 or 2 for the donation type. Accept the response, and assign it to `donationType`:

```
Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
System.out.println("What type of donation is this?");
System.out.print("Enter " + CLOTHING_CODE +
 " for clothing, " + OTHER_CODE + " for anything else... ");
donationType = input.nextInt();
```

4. Use an `if...else` statement to choose the name of the volunteer to be assigned to the `volunteer` `String`, as follows:

```
if(donationType == CLOTHING_CODE)
 volunteer = CLOTHING_PRICER;
else
 volunteer = OTHER_PRICER;
```

5. Display the chosen code and corresponding volunteer's name:

```
System.out.println("You entered " + donationType);
System.out.println(
 ("The volunteer who will price this item is " + volunteer));
```

6. Type the two closing curly braces to end the `main()` method and the `AssignVolunteer` class.

7. Save the program as **AssignVolunteer.java**, and then compile and run the program. Confirm that the program selects the correct volunteer when you choose 1 for a clothing donation or 2 for any other donation type. For example, **Figure 5-6** shows a typical execution of the program when the user enters 1 for a clothing donation.

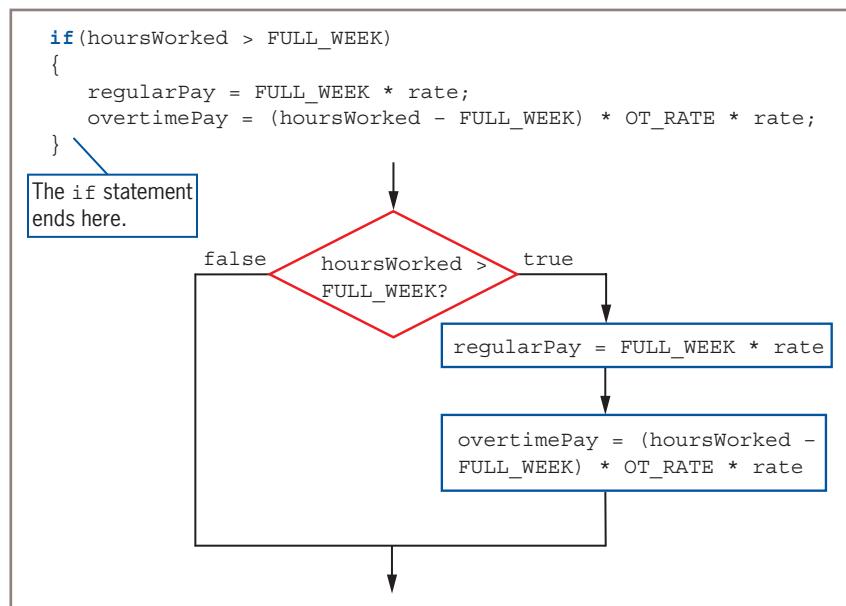
**Figure 5-6** Typical execution of the **AssignVolunteer** application

```
What type of donation is this?
Enter 1 for clothing, 2 for anything else... 1
You entered 1
The volunteer who will price this item is Regina
```

## 5.3 Using Multiple Statements in if and if...else Clauses

Often, you want to take more than one action following the evaluation of a Boolean expression within an **if** statement. For example, you might want to display several separate lines of output or perform several mathematical calculations. To execute more than one statement that depends on the evaluation of a Boolean expression, you use a pair of curly braces to place the dependent statements within a block. For example, the program segment shown in **Figure 5-7** determines whether an employee has worked more than the value of a **FULL\_WEEK** constant; if so, the program computes regular and overtime pay.

**Figure 5-7** An **if** statement that determines pay and its logic

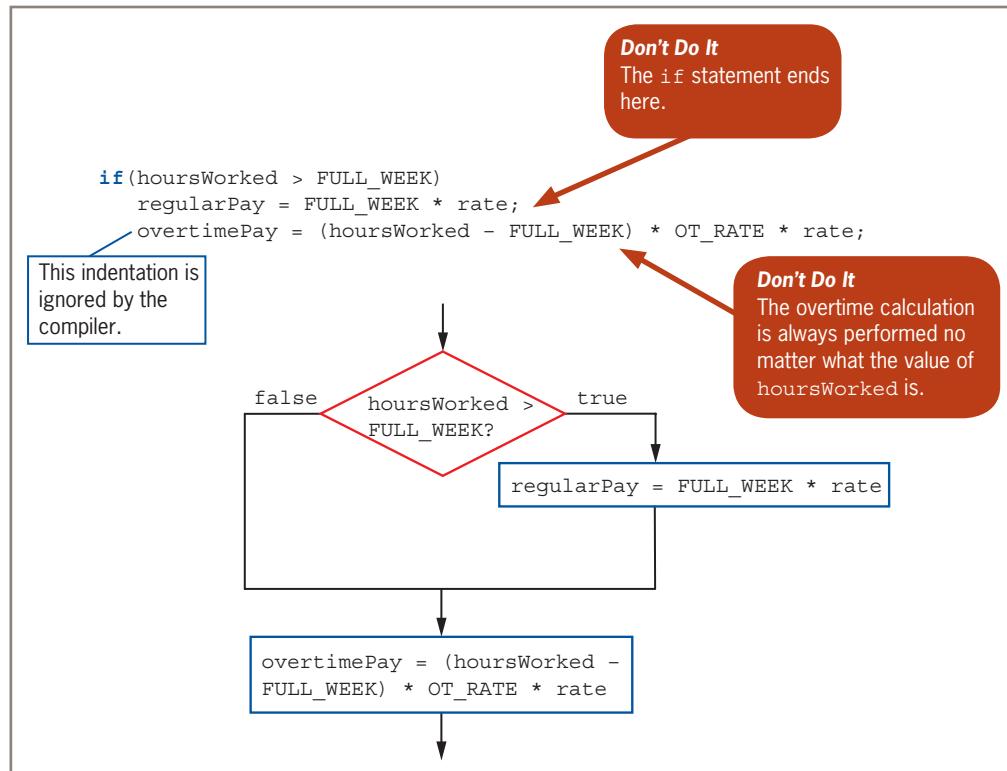


When you place a block within an **if** statement, it is crucial to place the curly braces correctly. For example, in **Figure 5-8**, the curly braces have been omitted. Within the code segment in Figure 5-8, when **hoursWorked > FULL\_WEEK** is **true**, **regularPay** is calculated and the **if** expression ends. The next statement that computes **overtimePay** executes every time the program runs, no matter what value is stored in **hoursWorked**. This last statement does not depend on the **if** statement; it is an independent, stand-alone statement. The indentation might be deceiving; it looks as though two statements depend on the **if** statement, but indentation does not cause statements following an **if** statement to be dependent. Rather, curly braces are required if multiple statements must be treated as

a block. For clarity, some programmers always use curly braces to surround the actions in every `if` statement, even when there is only one statement in the block.

In Figure 5-8, because the curly braces are missing, the last statement that computes overtime pay is a new stand-alone statement. The last statement is not part of the `if`, so it always executes, regardless of whether `hoursWorked` is more than `FULL_WEEK`. If `hoursWorked` is 30, for example, and `FULL_WEEK` is 40, then the program calculates the value of `overtimePay` as a negative number (because 30 minus 40 results in -10). Therefore, the output is incorrect. Correct blocking is crucial to achieving valid output.

**Figure 5-8** Erroneous overtime pay calculation with missing curly braces



When you fail to block statements that should depend on an `if`, and you also use an `else` clause, the program will not compile. For example, consider the following code:

```

if(hoursWorked > FULL_WEEK)
 regularPay = FULL_WEEK * rate;
 overtimePay = (hoursWorked - FULL_WEEK) * OT_RATE * rate;
else
 regularPay = FULL_WEEK * rate;

```

**Annotation:**

- A red callout bubble points to the second `regularPay` assignment with the text: "Don't Do It This statement does not depend on the if, so the else is illegal."

In this case, the `if` statement ends after the first `regularPay` calculation, and the second complete stand-alone statement performs the `overtimePay` calculation. The third statement in this code starts with `else`, which is illegal. An error message will indicate that the program contains *else without if*.

Just as you can block statements to depend on an `if`, you also can block statements to depend on an `else`. **Figure 5-9** shows an application that contains an `if` with two dependent statements and an `else` with two dependent statements. The program executes the final `println()` statement without regard to the `hoursWorked` variable's value; it is not part of the decision structure.

**Figure 5-9** Payroll application containing an if and else clause with blocks

```

import java.util.Scanner;
public class Payroll
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 double rate;
 double hoursWorked;
 double regularPay;
 double overtimePay;
 final int FULL_WEEK = 40;
 final double OT_RATE = 1.5;
 Scanner keyboard = new Scanner(System.in);
 System.out.print("How many hours did you work this week? ");
 hoursWorked = keyboard.nextDouble();
 System.out.print("What is your regular pay rate? ");
 rate = keyboard.nextDouble();
 if(hoursWorked > FULL_WEEK)
 {
 regularPay = FULL_WEEK * rate;
 overtimePay = (hoursWorked - FULL_WEEK) * OT_RATE * rate;
 }
 else
 {
 regularPay = hoursWorked * rate;
 overtimePay = 0.0;
 }
 System.out.println("Regular pay is " +
 regularPay + "\nOvertime pay is " + overtimePay);
 }
}

```

**Figure 5-10** shows the output from two executions of the program. In the first execution, the user entered 39 for the hoursWorked value and 20.00 for rate; in the second execution, the user entered 42 for hoursWorked and 20.00 for rate.

When you block statements, you must remember that any variable you declare within a block is local to that block. For example, the following code segment contains a variable named sum that is local to the block following the if. The last println() statement causes an error because the sum variable is not recognized:

```

if(a == b)
{
 int sum = a + b;
 System.out.println("The two variables are equal");
}
System.out.println("The sum is " + sum); ←

```

**Don't Do It**  
The variable sum is not recognized here.

**Figure 5-10** Two typical executions of the Payroll application

```

How many hours did you work this week? 39
What is your regular pay rate? 20.0
Regular pay is 780.0
Overtime pay is 0.0

```

```

How many hours did you work this week? 42
What is your regular pay rate? 20.00
Regular pay is 800.0
Overtime pay is 60.0

```

## Two Truths & a Lie | Using Multiple Statements in if and if...else Clauses

- To execute more than one statement that depends on the evaluation of a Boolean expression, you use a pair of curly braces to place the dependent statements within a block.
- Indentation can be used to cause statements following an if statement to depend on the evaluation of the Boolean expression.
- When you declare a variable within a block, it is local to that block.

The false statement is #2. Indentation does not cause statements following an if statement to be dependent; curly braces are required if multiple statements must be treated as a block.

## You Do It | Using Multiple Statements in if and else Clauses

In this section, you use a block of code to add multiple actions to an if...else statement.

- Open the AssignVolunteer application from the previous "You Do It" section. Change the class name to **AssignVolunteer2**, and immediately save the file as **AssignVolunteer2.java**. Don't forget that an application's class name and its filename must match.

- Add a String to the list of variables. This String will be assigned a message that displays the donation type:

```
String message;
```

- In place of the existing if...else statement in the program, insert the following statement that takes two blocked actions for each donation type. It assigns a volunteer and a value to the message String.

```
if(donationType == CLOTHING_CODE)
{
 volunteer = CLOTHING_PRICER;
 message = "a clothing donation";
}
else
{
 volunteer = OTHER_PRICER;
 message = "a non-clothing donation";
}
```

- Following the output statement that displays the donation type, add the following statement that displays the assigned message:

```
System.out.println("This is " + message);
```

- Save the file, and compile and execute the program. **Figure 5-11** shows two executions.

**Figure 5-11** Two typical executions of the **AssignVolunteer2** program

```
What type of donation is this?
Enter 1 for clothing, 2 for anything else... 1
You entered 1
This is a clothing donation
The volunteer who will price this item is Regina
```

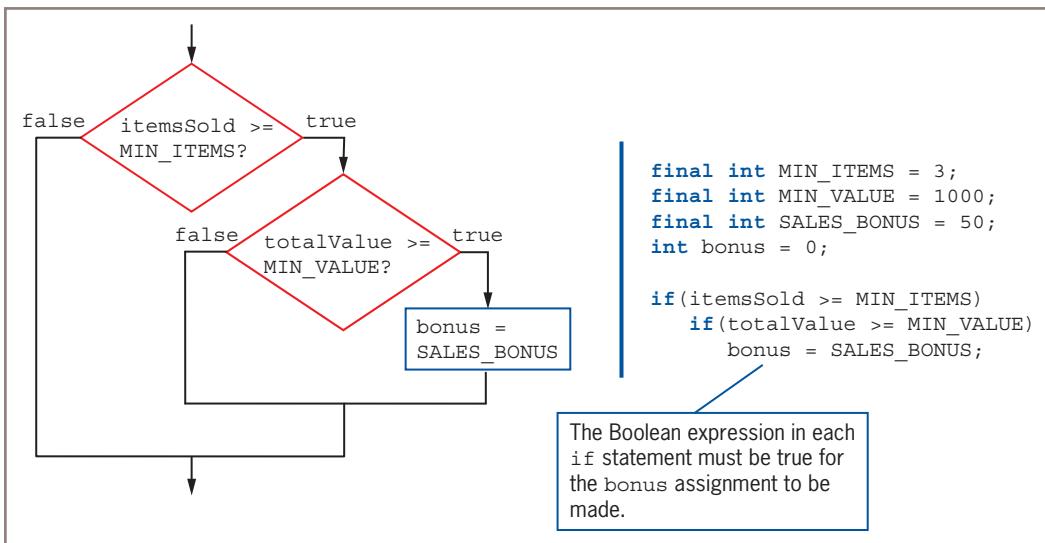
```
What type of donation is this?
Enter 1 for clothing, 2 for anything else... 2
You entered 2
This is a non-clothing donation
The volunteer who will price this item is Marco
```

## 5.4 Nesting if and if...else Statements

Within an `if` or an `else` clause, you can code as many dependent statements as you need, including other `if` and `else` statements. Statements in which a decision is contained inside either the `if` or `else` clause of another decision are **nested if statements**. Nested `if` statements are particularly useful when two or more conditions must be met before some action is taken.

For example, suppose you want to pay a \$50 bonus to a salesperson only if the salesperson sells at least three items with a total value of \$1,000 or more. **Figure 5-12** shows the logic and the code to solve the problem.

**Figure 5-12** Determining whether to assign a bonus using nested `if` statements



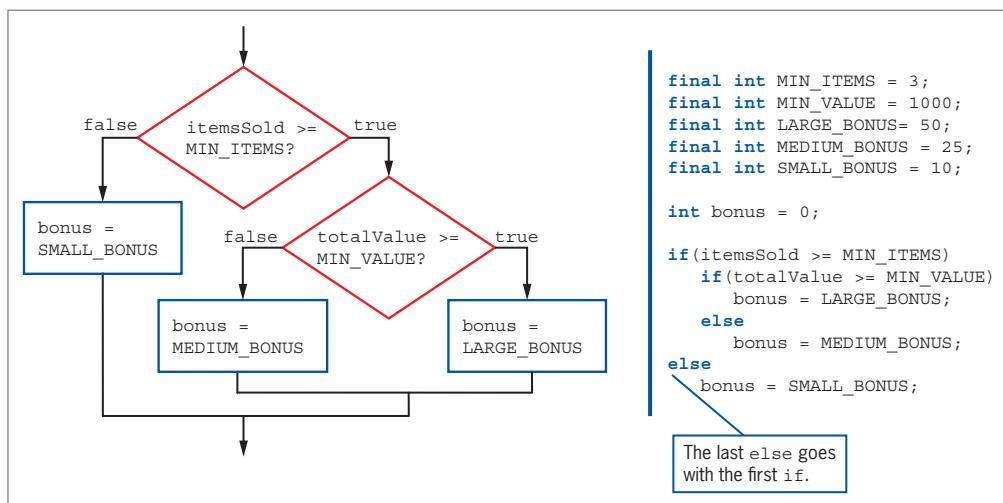
Notice there are no semicolons in the `if` statement code shown in Figure 5-12 until after the `bonus = SALES_BONUS;` statement. The expression `itemsSold >= MIN_ITEMS` is evaluated first. Only if this expression is `true` does the program evaluate the second Boolean expression, `totalValue >= MIN_VALUE`. If that expression is also `true`, the bonus assignment statement executes, and the nested `if` statement ends.

When you use nested `if` statements, you must pay careful attention to placement of any `else` clauses. For example, suppose you want to distribute bonuses on a revised schedule as follows:

- › \$10 bonus for selling fewer than three items
- › \$25 bonus for selling three or more items whose combined value is less than \$1,000
- › \$50 bonus for selling at least three items whose combined value is at least \$1,000

**Figure 5-13** shows the logic.

As Figure 5-13 shows, when one `if` statement follows another, the first `else` clause encountered is paired with the most recent `if` encountered. In this figure, the complete nested `if...else` statement fits entirely within the `if` portion of the outer `if...else` statement. No matter how many levels of `if...else` statements are needed to produce a solution, the `else` statements are always associated with their `ifs` on a “first in-last out” basis. In Figure 5-13, the indentation of the lines of code helps to show which `else` statement is paired with which `if` statement. Remember, the compiler does not take indentation into account, but consistent indentation can help readers understand a program’s logic.

**Figure 5-13** Determining one of three bonuses using nested if statements

## Two Truths & a Lie | Nesting if and if...else Statements

- Statements in which an if statement is contained inside another if statement commonly are called nested if statements.
- When one if statement follows another, the first else clause encountered is paired with the first if that occurred before it.
- A complete nested if...else statement always fits entirely within either the if portion or the else portion of its outer if...else statement.

The false statement is #2. When one if statement follows another, the first else clause encountered is paired with the most recent if encountered.

## You Do It | Using a Nested if Statement

In this section, you add a nested if statement to the `AssignVolunteer2` application.

- Rerun the `AssignVolunteer2` program, and enter an invalid code, such as 3. The selected volunteer is Marco because the program tests only for an entered value of 1 or not 1. Modify the program to display the entered code, volunteer, and donation type message only when the entered value is 1 or 2, and to display the entered code and an error message otherwise. Rename the class `AssignVolunteer3`, and save the file as `AssignVolunteer3.java`. **Figure 5-14** shows two typical executions of the program.

**Figure 5-14** Two typical executions of the `AssignVolunteer3` program

```

What type of donation is this?
Enter 1 for clothing, 2 for anything else... 3
You entered 3
This is an invalid donation type
The volunteer who will price this item is invalid

```

```

What type of donation is this?
Enter 1 for clothing, 2 for anything else... 2
You entered 2
This is a non-clothing donation
The volunteer who will price this item is Marco

```

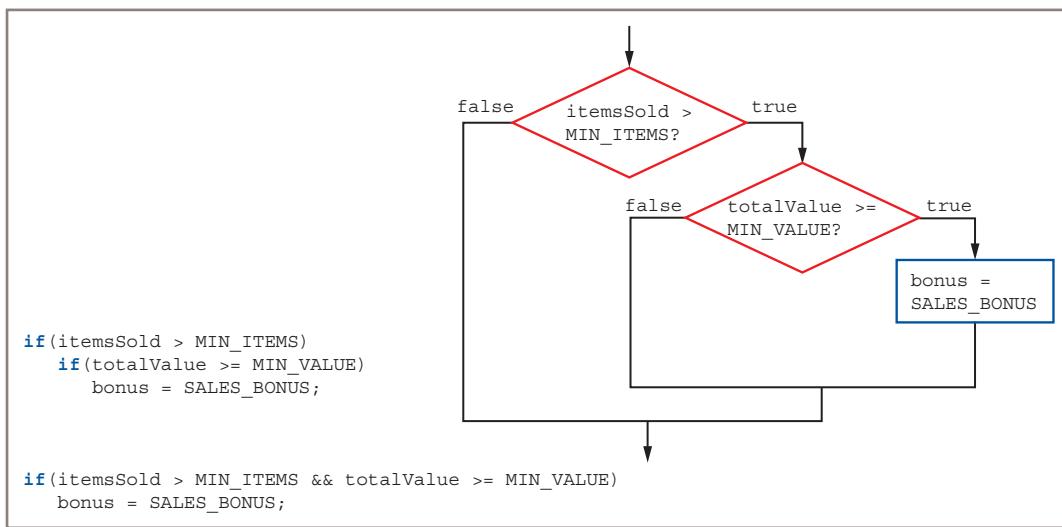
## 5.5 Using Logical AND and OR Operators

In Java, you can combine Boolean tests into a single expression using the logical AND and OR operators. Such an expression is a **compound Boolean expression** or a **compound condition**.

### The AND Operator

For an alternative to some nested `if` statements, you can use the **logical AND operator** (`&&`) between two Boolean expressions to create a compound Boolean expression that is `true` when both of its operands are `true`. For example, the two statements shown in **Figure 5-15** work exactly the same way. In each case, the `itemsSold` variable must be at least the minimum number of items required for a bonus and the `totalValue` variable must be at least the minimum required value for the bonus to be set to `SALES_BONUS`.

**Figure 5-15** Code and logic for bonus-determining decision using nested `ifs` and the `&&` operator



It is important to note that when you use the `&&` operator, you must include a complete Boolean expression on each side. In other words, like many arithmetic operators, the `&&` operator is a binary operator, meaning it requires an operand on each side. If you want to set a bonus to \$400 when a `saleAmount` is both greater than \$1,000 and less than \$5,000, the correct statement is as follows:

```
if(saleAmount > 1000 && saleAmount < 5000)
 bonus = 400;
```

Even though the `saleAmount` variable is intended to be used in both parts of the AND expression, the following statement is incorrect and does not compile because there is not a complete expression on both sides of the binary `&&` operator:

```
if(saleAmount > 1000 && < 5000) ←
 bonus = 400;
```

**Don't Do It**  
You must have a  
complete expression  
on both sides of the `&&`  
operator.

For clarity, many programmers prefer to surround each Boolean expression that is part of a compound Boolean expression with its own set of parentheses, as in the following example:

```
if((saleAmount > 1000) && (saleAmount < 5000))
 bonus = 400;
```

Use the extra parentheses if doing so makes the compound expression clearer to you.

You are never required to use the `&&` operator because using nested `if` statements always achieves the same result, but using the `&&` operator often makes your code more concise, less error-prone, and easier to understand.

## The OR Operator

When you want some action to occur even if only one of two conditions is `true`, you can use nested `if` statements, or you can use the **logical OR operator** (`||`). The logical OR operator is used to create a compound Boolean expression that is true when at least one of its operands is true.

For example, if you want to give a discount to any customer who satisfies at least one of two conditions—buying a minimum number of items or buying any number of items that total a minimum value—you can write the code using either of the ways shown in **Figure 5-16**.

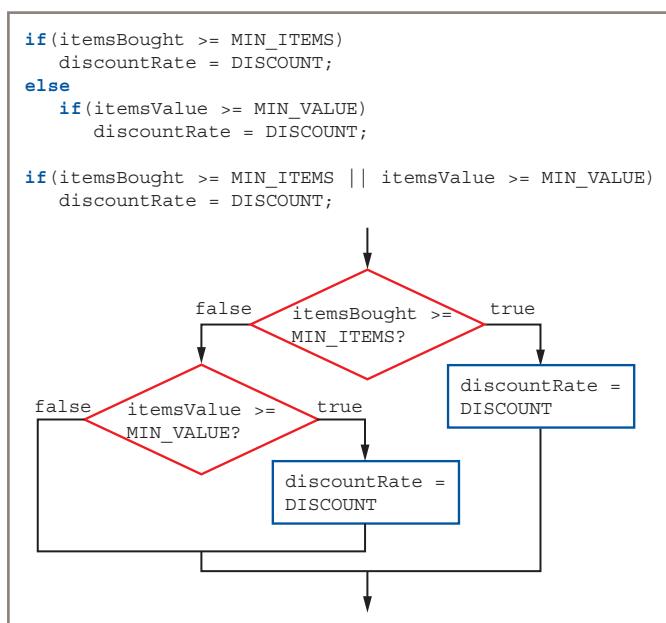
### Note

The two vertical lines used in the OR operator are sometimes called *pipes*. The pipe appears on the same key as the backslash on your keyboard.

**Figure 5-16** Determining customer discount when customer needs to meet only one of two criteria

```
if(itemsBought >= MIN_ITEMS)
 discountRate = DISCOUNT;
else
 if(itemsValue >= MIN_VALUE)
 discountRate = DISCOUNT;

if(itemsBought >= MIN_ITEMS || itemsValue >= MIN_VALUE)
 discountRate = DISCOUNT;
```



As with the `&&` operator, you are never required to use the `||` operator because using nested `if` statements always achieves the same result. However, using the `||` operator often makes your code more concise, less error-prone, and easier to understand.

## Short-Circuit Evaluation

The expressions on each side of the `&&` and `||` operators are evaluated only as far as necessary to determine whether the entire expression is `true` or `false`. This feature is called **short-circuit evaluation**.

- › With the `&&` operator, both Boolean expression operands must be `true` before the action in the result statement can occur. (The same is true for nested `ifs`, as you can see in Figure 5-15.) When you use the `&&` operator, if the first tested expression is `false`, the second expression is never evaluated because its value does not matter.
- › The `||` operator also uses short-circuit evaluation. In other words, because only one of the Boolean expressions in an `||` expression must be `true` to cause the dependent statements to execute, if the expression to the left of the `||` is `true`, then there is no need to evaluate the expression to the right of the `||`. (The same is true for nested `ifs`, as you can see in Figure 5-16.) However, when you use the `||` operator, if the first tested expression is `false`, then the second expression must be evaluated.

If you are using simple comparisons as the operands for the `&&` or `||` operators, as in the examples in Figures 5-15 and 5-16, you won't notice that short-circuit evaluation is occurring. However, suppose that you have created two methods that return Boolean values, and you use calls to those methods in an `if` statement, as in the following:

```
if(method1() && method2())
 System.out.println("OK");
```

Depending on the actions performed within the methods, it might be important to understand that in this case, if `method1()` is `false`, then `method2()` will not execute. If `method2()` contains statements that you want to execute no matter what the value of `method1()` is, then you should not use `method2()` as part of a compound condition; you should execute it on its own, as in the following example:

```
boolean isMethod2True = method2();
if(method1() && isMethod2True)
 System.out.println("OK");
```

Similarly, in the following statement, if `method1()` returns `true`, then `method2()` will not execute because only one operand in an OR expression needs to be `true` in order for the entire expression to be `true`.

```
if(method1() || method2())
 System.out.println("OK");
```

## Note

Anything a method does besides altering local variables or returning a value is a **side effect**. Because of short-circuit evaluation, you have to be aware of the possible side effects from an unexecuted method. In some languages, any method without side effects is called a **function**, but Java programmers tend not to use that term.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Using Logical AND and OR Operators

1. The AND operator is written as two ampersands (`&&`), and the OR operator is written as two pipes (`||`).
2. When you use the `&&` and `||` operators, you must include a complete Boolean expression on each side.
3. Whether you use an `&&` or `||` operator, both Boolean expressions are tested in order from left to right.

The false statement is #3. The expressions in each part of an AND or OR expression are evaluated only as much as necessary to determine whether the entire expression is `true` or `false`.

## You Do It | Using the `&&` and `||` Operators

This section helps you create a program that demonstrates how short-circuiting works with the `&&` operator.

1. Open a new file in your text editor, and type the header and curly braces for a class named `ShortCircuitTestAnd`:

```
public class ShortCircuitTestAnd
{
}
```

2. Between the curly braces for the class, type the header and braces for a `main()` method:

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
}
```

3. Within the `main()` method, insert an `if...else` statement that tests the return values of two method calls. If both methods are `true`, then *Both are true* is displayed. Otherwise, *Both are not true* is displayed.

```
if(trueMethod() && falseMethod())
 System.out.println("Both are true");
else
 System.out.println("Both are not true");
```

4. Following the closing curly brace for the `main()` method, but before the closing curly brace for the class, insert a method named `trueMethod()`. The method displays the message *Within trueMethod()* and returns a `true` value.

```
public static boolean trueMethod()
{
 System.out.println("Within trueMethod()");
 return true;
}
```

5. Following the closing curly brace of `trueMethod()`, insert a method named `falseMethod()` that displays the message *Within falseMethod()* and returns a `false` value.

```
public static boolean falseMethod()
{
 System.out.println("Within falseMethod()");
 return false;
}
```

6. Save the file as `ShortCircuitTestAnd.java`, and then compile and execute it.

**Figure 5-17** shows the output. First, *Within trueMethod()* is displayed because `trueMethod()` was executed as the first half of the Boolean expression in the program's `if` statement. Then, the second half of the Boolean expression calls `falseMethod()`, and *Within falseMethod()* is displayed. Finally, *Both are not true* is displayed because both halves of the tested expression were not true.

7. Change the position of the method calls in the `if` statement so that the statement becomes the following:

```
if(falseMethod() && trueMethod())
 System.out.println("Both are true");
else
 System.out.println("Both are not true");
```

8. Save the file, compile it, and execute it. Now the output looks like **Figure 5-18**. The `if` statement makes a call to `falseMethod()`, and its output is displayed. Because the first half of the Boolean expression is `false`, there is no need to test the second half, so `trueMethod()` never executes, and the program proceeds directly to the statement that displays *Both are not true*.

9. Change the class name to `ShortCircuitTestOr`, and immediately save the file as `ShortCircuitTestOr.java`. Replace the `&&` operator with the `||` operator. Compile and execute the program with `trueMethod()` to the right of the `||` operator and `falseMethod()` to its left. Then, reverse the positions of the methods, and compile and execute the program again. Make sure that you understand the output each way.

**Figure 5-17** Execution of `ShortCircuitTestAnd` program

```
Within trueMethod()
Within falseMethod()
Both are not true
```

**Figure 5-18** Execution of `ShortCircuitTestAnd` after reversing Boolean expressions

```
Within falseMethod()
Both are not true
```

## 5.6 Making Accurate and Efficient Decisions

When new programmers must make a range check, they often introduce incorrect or inefficient code into their programs. In this section, you learn how to make accurate and efficient range checks, and you also learn how to use the `&&` and `||` operators appropriately.

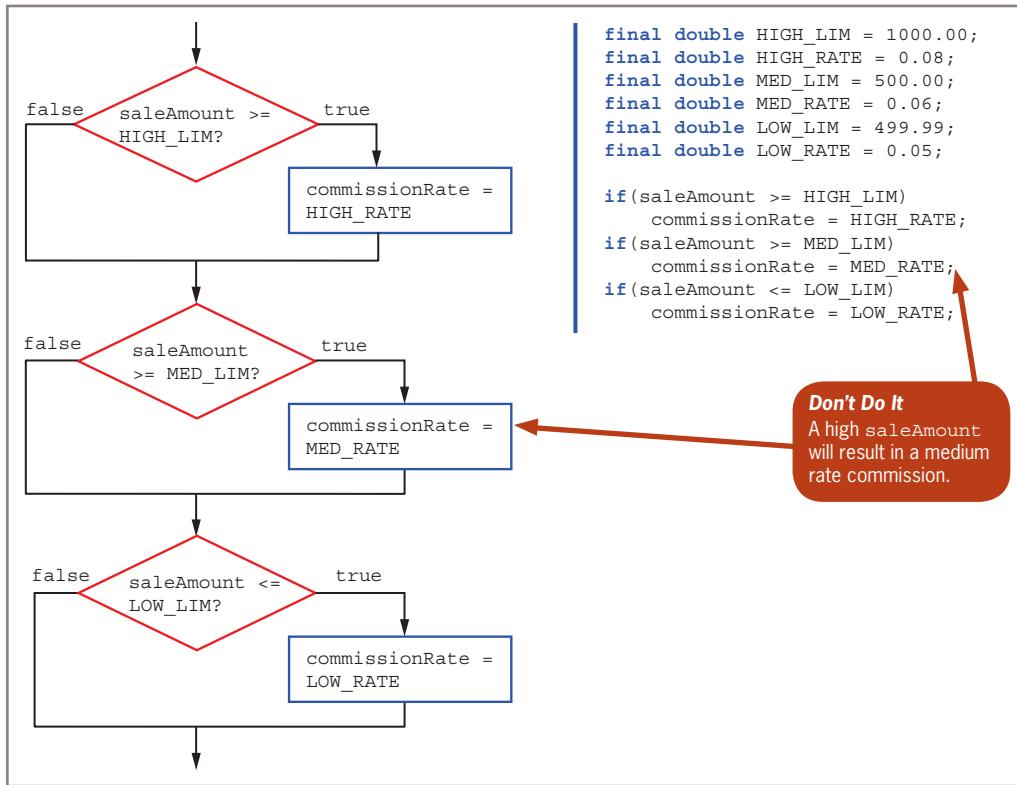
### Making Accurate Range Checks

A **range check** is a series of statements that determine to which of several consecutive series of values another value falls. Consider a situation in which salespeople can receive one of three possible commission rates based on their sales:

- › 8 percent commission on a sale of \$1,000 or more
- › 6 percent commission on a sale of \$500 to \$999
- › 5 percent commission on a sale of less than \$500

Using three separate `if` statements to test single Boolean expressions might result in some incorrect commission assignments. For example, examine the code shown in **Figure 5-19**.

**Figure 5-19** Incorrect commission-determining code and its logic



Using the code shown in Figure 5-19, when `saleAmount` is \$5,000, for example, the following occurs:

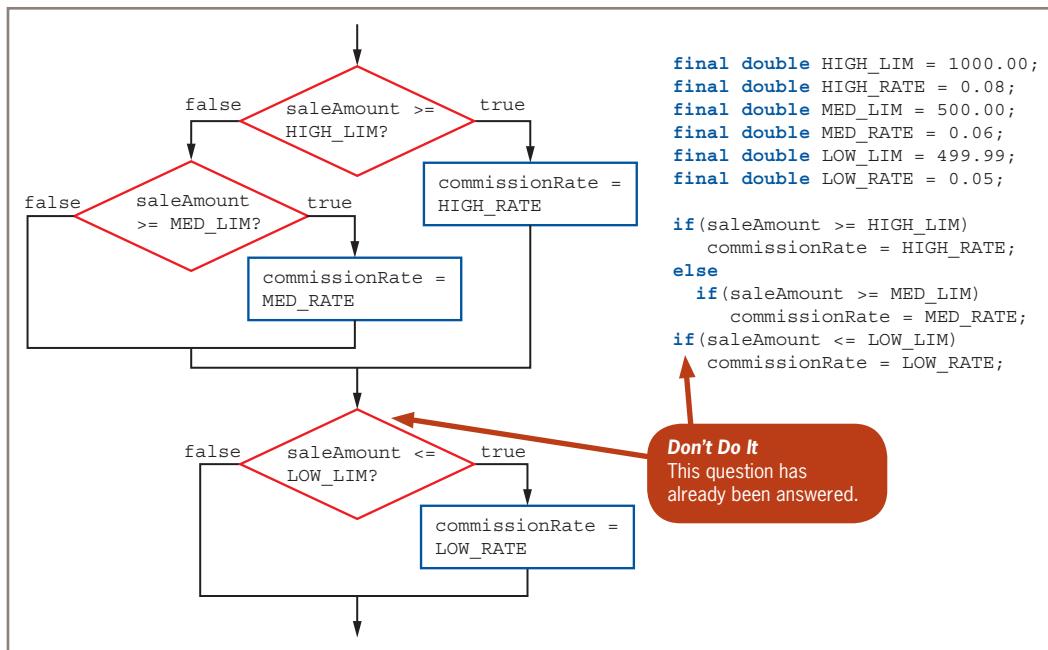
- › The first `if` statement executes, and the Boolean expression (`saleAmount >= HIGH_LIM`) evaluates as `true`, so `HIGH_RATE` is correctly assigned to `commissionRate`.
- › However, the next `if` expression, (`saleAmount >= MED_LIM`), also evaluates as `true`, so the `commissionRate`, which was just set to `HIGH_RATE`, is incorrectly reset to `MED_RATE`.

A partial solution to this problem is to use an `else` statement following the first evaluation, as shown in **Figure 5-20**. With the new code, the following occurs:

- › When the `saleAmount` is \$5,000, the expression (`saleAmount >= HIGH_LIM`) is `true` and the `commissionRate` becomes `HIGH_RATE`; then the entire `if` statement ends.

- When the saleAmount is not greater than or equal to \$1,000 (for example, \$800), the first if expression is false, and the else statement executes and correctly sets the commissionRate to MED\_RATE.

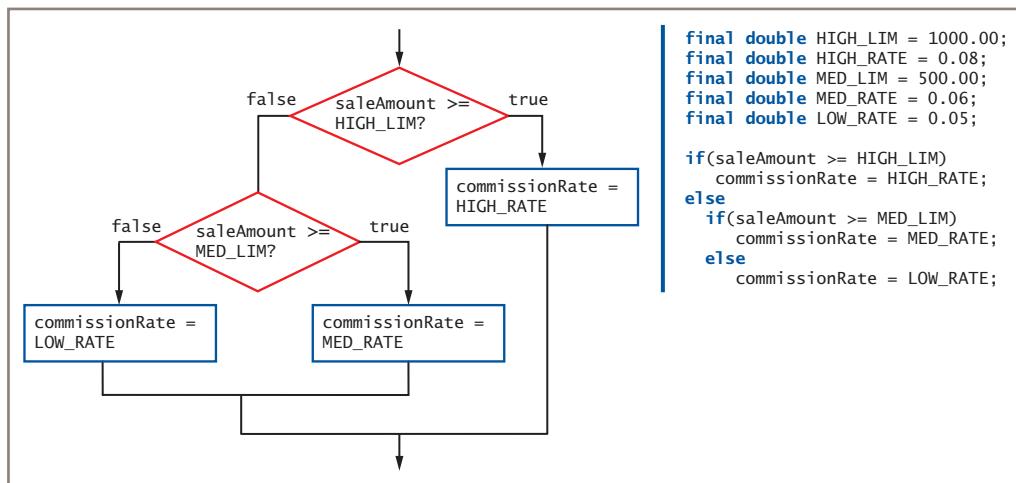
**Figure 5-20** Improved, but inefficient, commission-determining code and its logic



The code shown in Figure 5-20 works, but it is somewhat inefficient. When the saleAmount is any amount over LOW\_RATE, either the first if sets commissionRate to HIGH\_RATE for amounts that are at least \$1,000, or its else sets commissionRate to MED\_RATE for amounts that are at least \$500. In either of these two cases, the Boolean value tested in the next statement, if (saleAmount <= LOW\_LIM), is always false, so commissionRate retains its correct value. However, it was unnecessary to make the LOW\_LIM comparison.

After you know that saleAmount is not at least MED\_LIM, rather than asking if (saleAmount <= LOW\_LIM), it's easier, more efficient, and less error-prone to use an else. If the saleAmount is not at least HIGH\_LIM and is also not at least MED\_LIM, it must by default be less than or equal to LOW\_LIM. **Figure 5-21** shows this improved logic. Notice that the LOW\_LIM constant is no longer declared because it is not needed anymore—if saleAmount is not greater than or equal to MED\_LIM, the commissionRate must receive the LOW\_RATE.

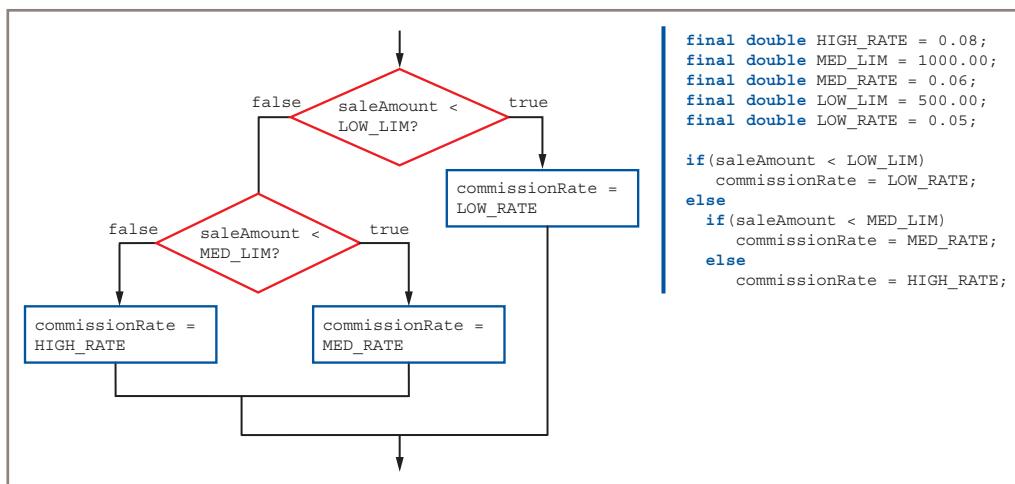
**Figure 5-21** Improved and efficient commission-determining code and its logic



## Making Efficient Range Checks

Within a nested if...else, like the one shown in Figure 5-21, it is most efficient to first ask the question that is most likely to be true. In other words, if you know that most saleAmount values are high, compare saleAmount to HIGH\_LIM first. That way, you more frequently avoid asking multiple questions. If, however, you know that most saleAmounts are small, you should ask if (saleAmount < LOW\_LIM) first. The code shown in Figure 5-22 results in the same commission value for any given saleAmount, but this sequence of decisions is more efficient when most saleAmount values are small.

**Figure 5-22** Commission-determining code and logic that evaluates smallest saleAmount first



Notice that, in Figure 5-22, the comparisons use the < operator instead of <=. That's because a saleAmount of \$1,000.00 should result in a HIGH\_RATE, and a saleAmount of \$500.00 should result in a MED\_RATE. If you wanted to use <= comparisons, then you could change the MED\_LIM and LOW\_LIM cutoff values to 999.99 and 499.99, respectively, assuming sales occur only in whole-cent increments.

### Note

Testing for a range greater than 500 or less than or equal to 499.99 might not always yield the same outcome if the value might contain a fraction of a cent. As examples, organizations might offer mileage allowances such as 42.5 cents per mile, and sales taxes often are based on values such as 8.2 percent. When you make calculations based on such values, you need to learn the business rules that govern the desired outcomes.

## Using && and || Appropriately

Beginning programmers often use the && operator when they mean to use ||, and they often use || when they should use &&. Part of the problem lies in the way we use the English language. For example, your boss might request, “Display an error message when an employee’s hourly pay rate is less than \$17.85 and when an employee’s hourly pay rate is greater than \$60.” You define \$17.85 as a named constant LOW and \$60 as HIGH. However, because your boss used the word *and* in the request, you might be tempted to write a program statement like the following:

```
if(payRate < LOW && payRate > HIGH)
 System.out.println("Error in pay rate");
```

However, as a single variable, a payRate value can never be both less than 17.85 *and* greater than 60 at the same time, so the output statement can never execute, no matter what value payRate has. In this case, you can write the following code that uses the || operator to display the error message under the correct circumstances:

```
if(payRate < LOW || payRate > HIGH)
 System.out.println("Error in pay rate");
```

Similarly, your boss might request, “Display the names of those employees in departments 1 and 2.” Because the boss used the word *and* in the request, you might be tempted to write the following:

```
if(department == 1 && department == 2)
 System.out.println("Name is: " + name);
```

However, the variable `department` can never contain both a 1 and a 2 at the same time, so no employee name will ever be output, no matter what the value of `department` is. The correct statement chooses employees whose department is 1 *or* 2, as follows:

```
if(department == 1 || department == 2)
 System.out.println("Name is: " + name);
```

Another type of mistake occurs if you use a single ampersand or pipe when you try to indicate a logical AND or OR. Both `&` and `|` are valid Java operators, but a single `&` or `|` with integer operands operates on individual bits. You will learn more about `&` and `|` as you continue to study Java.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Making Accurate and Efficient Decisions

1. A range check is a series of statements that determine within which of a set of ranges a value falls.
2. When you must make a series of decisions in a program, it is most efficient to first ask the question that is most likely to be true.
3. The statement `if(payRate < 16.00 && payRate > 50.00)` can be used to select `payRate` values that are higher or lower than the specified limits.

The false statement is #3. The statement `if(payRate < 16.00 && payRate > 50.00)` cannot be used to make a selection because no value for `payRate` can be both below 16.00 and above 50.00 at the same time.

## 5.7 Using switch

By nesting a series of `if` and `else` statements, you can choose from any number of alternatives. For example, suppose you want to display a student’s class year based on a stored number. **Figure 5-23** shows one possible implementation of the logic.

**Figure 5-23** Determining class status using nested `if` statements

```
if(year == 1)
 System.out.println("Freshman");
else
 if(year == 2)
 System.out.println("Sophomore");
 else
 if(year == 3)
 System.out.println("Junior");
 else
 if(year == 4)
 System.out.println("Senior");
 else
 System.out.println("Invalid year");
```

### Note

In program segments such as the one in Figure 5-23, many programmers (particularly those familiar with the Visual Basic programming language) would code each `else` and the `if` clause that follows it on the same line, and refer to the format as an **else...if clause**. Because Java ignores whitespace, the logic is the same whether each `else` and the subsequent `if` are on the same line or different lines.

An alternative to using the series of nested `if` statements shown in Figure 5-23 is to use the `switch` statement. The **switch statement** is useful when you need to test a single variable against a series of exact integer (including `int`, `byte`, and `short` types), character, or string values.

## Note

The ability to use strings as the tested values in a `switch` statement was a new feature in Java 7; only numbers or characters could be used prior to that release.

The `switch` statement uses four keywords:

- › `switch` starts the statement and is followed immediately by a test expression enclosed in parentheses.
- › `case` is followed by one of the possible values for the test expression and a colon.
- › `break` optionally terminates a `switch` statement at the end of each case.
- › `default` optionally is used prior to any action that should occur if the test variable does not match any case.

**Figure 5-24** shows the `switch` statement used to display the four school years based on an integer named `year`.

You are not required to list the `case` values in ascending order, as shown in Figure 5-24, although doing so often makes a statement easier to understand.

The `switch` statement shown in Figure 5-24 begins by evaluating the `year` variable shown in the first line. For example, if `year` is equal to 3, the statement that displays *Junior* executes. The `break` statement bypasses the rest of the `switch` statement, and execution continues with any statement after the closing curly brace of the `switch` statement. If the `year` variable does not contain the same value as any of the `case` statements, the `default` statement or statements execute.

You can leave out the `break` statements in a `switch` statement.

However, if you omit the `break` and the program finds a match for the test variable, all the statements within the `switch` statement execute from that point forward. For example, if you omit each `break` statement in the code shown in Figure 5-24, when the `year` is 3, the first two cases are bypassed, but *Junior*, *Senior*, and *Invalid year* all are output. You should intentionally omit the `break` statements if you want all subsequent cases to execute after the test variable is matched. For example, the `switch` statement in **Figure 5-25** displays all the tasks that remain for the week after any particular day as well as displaying the default message. When day is *Wednesday*, all the following messages are displayed: *Send out meeting reminders*, *Order snacks for delivery*, *Meeting 10 am*, and *Invalid day*.

**Figure 5-24** Determining class status using a `switch` statement

```
switch(year)
{
 case 1:
 System.out.println("Freshman");
 break;
 case 2:
 System.out.println("Sophomore");
 break;
 case 3:
 System.out.println("Junior");
 break;
 case 4:
 System.out.println("Senior");
 break;
 default:
 System.out.println("Invalid year");
}
```

**Figure 5-25** Determining all the tasks left for the week using a `switch` statement

```
switch(day)
{
 case "Monday":
 System.out.println("Reserve room for Friday meeting");
 case "Tuesday":
 System.out.println("Prepare PowerPoint slides");
 case "Wednesday":
 System.out.println("Send out meeting reminders");
 case "Thursday":
 System.out.println("Order snacks for delivery");
 case "Friday":
 System.out.println("Meeting 10 am");
 default:
 System.out.println("Invalid day");
}
```

You do not need to write code for each case in a `switch` statement. For example, suppose that the supervisor for departments 1, 2, and 3 is *Jones*, but other departments have different supervisors. In that case, you might use the code in **Figure 5-26**.

**Figure 5-26** Using empty `case` statements so the same result occurs in multiple cases

```
int department;
String supervisor;
// Statements to get department go here
switch(department)
{
 case 1:
 case 2:
 case 3:
 supervisor = "Jones";
 break;
 case 4:
 supervisor = "Staples";
 break;
 case 5:
 supervisor = "Tejano";
 break;
 default:
 System.out.println("Invalid department code");
}
```

On the other hand, you might use strings in a `switch` statement to determine whether a supervisor name is valid, as shown in the method in **Figure 5-27**.

When several `char` variables must be checked and you want to ignore whether they are uppercase or lowercase, one frequently used technique employs empty `case` statements, as in **Figure 5-28**.

**Figure 5-27** A method that uses a `switch` statement with string values

```
public static boolean isValidSupervisor(String name)
{
 boolean isValid;
 switch(name)
 {
 case "Jones":
 case "Staples":
 case "Tejano":
 isValid = true;
 break;
 default:
 isValid = false;
 }
 return isValid;
}
```

**Figure 5-28** Using a `switch` statement to ignore character case

```
switch(departmentCode)
{
 case 'a':
 case 'A':
 departmentName = "Accounting";
 break;
 case 'm':
 case 'M':
 departmentName = "Marketing";
 break;
 // and so on
}
```

## Using the `switch` Expression

**Figure 5-29** shows the `switch expression`—another option that can be used in Java 14 or later versions when all cases result in an assignment to the same variable. In this example, you use a `switch expression` to compare the `char` variable `departmentCode` to different values. Notice the differences with this option:

- » The keyword `case` is not repeated for each case in a category; instead, multiple `case` labels are separated by commas.

**Figure 5-29** A `switch` expression

```
switch(departmentCode)
{
 case 'a', 'A' -> departmentName = "Accounting";
 case 'm', 'M' -> departmentName = "Marketing";
}
```

- The assignment operator is not used to assign a value to `departmentName`; instead, the arrow operator (composed of two keystrokes, `->`) is used.
- In the `switch` expression, each case does not have to end with the keyword `break`. This not only makes the entire structure shorter, it also eliminates the common error of forgetting to include the `break` keyword.

If you don't need the `departmentName` variable later in the program but just need to display its value, you can use a `switch` expression within an output statement, as shown in **Figure 5-30**.

**Figure 5-31** shows an example in which the result of one `switch` statement case is a block. Suppose that when the code is '`m`' or '`M`', you want to display some text as well as assigning "Marketing" to the `departmentName` string. In this case, you can use the keyword `yield` to return a value.

**Figure 5-30** A `switch` expression within a call to `println()`

```
System.out.println(switch(departmentCode)
{
 case 'A', 'a' -> "Accounting";
 case 'M', 'm' -> "Marketing";
 default -> "Invalid department";
});
```

The closing brace ends the `switch` statement, and the closing parenthesis and the semicolon end the `println()` call.

**Figure 5-31** A `switch` expression including a block and a `yield` statement

```
departmentName = switch(departmentCode)
{
 case 'a', 'A' -> "Accounting";
 case 'm', 'M' ->
 {
 System.out.println("Note that the Marketing Department");
 System.out.println("is closed on Fridays");
 yield "Marketing";
 }
 default -> "Invalid";
};
```

You are never required to use a `switch` statement or `switch` expression; you can always achieve the same results with nested `if` statements. Using `switch` is simply convenient when several alternative courses of action depend on a value. Most programmers would choose to use an `if` statement if there were only two or three options, and to use a `switch` statement for more, but your instructor or supervisor might provide different guidelines. In addition, it makes sense to use `switch` only when a reasonable number of specific matching values need to be tested. For example, if every integer value from 1 through 100 results in the same action, a single `if` statement is far easier to write than `switch`.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Using `switch`

- When you must make more decisions than Java can support, you use a `switch` statement instead of nested `if...else` statements.
- The `switch` statement is useful when you need to test a single variable against a series of exact integer or character values.
- A `break` statement bypasses the rest of its `switch` statement, and execution continues with any statement after the closing curly brace of the `switch` statement.

The false statement is #1. By nesting a series of `if` and `else` statements, you can choose from any number of alternatives. The `switch` statement is just a convenient alternative.

## You Do It | Using switch

In this section, you alter the `AssignVolunteer3` program to add more options for donation types, and then use a `switch` statement to assign the appropriate volunteer.

1. Open the `AssignVolunteer3.java` file that you created in a “You Do It” section earlier in this chapter. Change the class name to `AssignVolunteer4`, and immediately save the file as `AssignVolunteer4.java`.

2. Keep the declaration `CLOTHING_CODE`, but replace the `OTHER_CODE` declaration with three new ones:

```
final int FURNITURE_CODE = 2;
final int ELECTRONICS_CODE = 3;
final int OTHER_CODE = 4;
```

3. Retain the two pricing volunteer declarations, but add two new ones:

```
final String FURNITURE_PRICER = "Wei";
final String ELECTRONICS_PRICER = "Lydia";
```

4. Replace the output statement that asks the user to enter 1 or 2 with the following simpler statement:

```
System.out.print("Enter an integer... ");
```

In a professional program, you might want to present the user with details about all the options, but this example keeps the prompt simple to save you from excessive typing.

5. Replace the existing `if...else` statement with the following `switch` statement:

```
switch(donationType)
{
 case(CLOTHING_CODE):
 {
 volunteer = CLOTHING_PRICER;
 message = "a clothing donation";
 break;
 }
 case(FURNITURE_CODE):
 {
 volunteer = FURNITURE_PRICER;
 message = "a furniture donation";
 break;
 }
 case(ELECTRONICS_CODE):
 {
 volunteer = ELECTRONICS_PRICER;
 message = "an electronics donation";
 break;
 }
 case(OTHER_CODE):
 {
 volunteer = OTHER_PRICER;
 message = "another donation type";
 break;
 }
 default:
 {
 volunteer = "invalid";
 message = "an invalid donation type";
 }
}
```

**Note**

The inner set of curly braces that surround the statements executed in each case in the `AssignVolunteer4` program could be omitted and the program would execute identically. Adding the braces helps to delineate the group of statements that belong with each case.

- Save the file, and then compile and execute it. **Figure 5-32** shows a typical execution.

**Figure 5-32** Typical execution of the `AssignVolunteer4` program

```
What type of donation is this?
Enter an integer... 3
You entered 3
This is an electronics donation
The volunteer who will price this item is Lydia
```

## 5.8 Using the Conditional and NOT Operators

Besides using `if` statements and `switch` statements, Java provides one more way to make decisions. The **conditional operator** requires three expressions separated with a question mark and a colon; it is used as an abbreviated version of the `if...else` statement. As with the `switch` statement, you are never required to use the conditional operator; it is simply a convenient shortcut. The syntax of the conditional operator is as follows:

```
testExpression ? trueResult : falseResult;
```

The first expression, `testExpression`, is a Boolean expression that is evaluated as `true` or `false`. If it is `true`, the entire conditional expression takes on the value of the expression following the question mark (`trueResult`). If the value of the `testExpression` is `false`, the entire expression takes on the value of `falseResult`.

**Note**

You have seen many examples of binary operators, such as `==` and `&&`. The conditional operator is a **ternary operator**—one that needs three operands. Through Java 6, the conditional operator was the only ternary operator in Java, so it is sometimes referred to as the ternary operator. Java 7 introduced an additional ternary operator—a collapsed version of the ternary operator that checks for `null` values assigned to objects. It is called the *Elvis operator* because it uses a question mark and colon together (`?:`); if you view it sideways, it supposedly reminds you of Elvis Presley's hair and eyes.

For example, suppose you want to assign the smaller of two values, `a` and `b`, to a variable named `smallerNum`. The expression you can use is:

```
smallerNum = (a < b) ? a : b;
```

When evaluating the expression `a < b`, if `a` is less than `b`, the entire conditional expression takes the value to the left of the colon, `a`, which then is assigned to `smallerNum`. If `a` is not less than `b`, then the expression assumes the value to the right of the colon, and `b` is assigned to `smallerNum`.

You could achieve the same results with the following if...else statement:

```
if(a < b)
 smallerNum = a;
else
 smallerNum = b;
```

The disadvantage to using the conditional operator is that, at least at first, it is more difficult to read. The advantage is the conciseness of the statement.

## Using the NOT Operator

You use the **NOT operator** (`!`) to negate the result of any Boolean expression. Any expression that evaluates as true becomes false when preceded by the NOT operator, and accordingly, any false expression preceded by the NOT operator becomes true.

For example, suppose a monthly car insurance premium is \$200 if the driver is age 25 or younger and \$125 if the driver is age 26 or older. Each of the if...else statements in **Figure 5-33** correctly assigns the premium values.

In Figure 5-33, the statements with the NOT operator are somewhat harder to read, particularly because they require the double set of parentheses, but the result of the decision-making process is the same in each case. Using the NOT operator is clearer when the value of a Boolean variable is tested. For example, a variable initialized as `boolean oldEnough = (age >= 25);` can become part of the relatively easy-to-read expression `if (!oldEnough) ....`

**Figure 5-33** Four if...else statements that all do the same thing

|                                                                                      |                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>if(age &lt;= 25)<br/>    premium = 200;<br/>else<br/>    premium = 125;</code> | <code>if(! (age &lt;= 25))<br/>    premium = 125;<br/>else<br/>    premium = 200;</code> |
| <code>if(age &gt;= 26)<br/>    premium = 125;<br/>else<br/>    premium = 200;</code> | <code>if(! (age &gt;= 26))<br/>    premium = 200;<br/>else<br/>    premium = 125;</code> |

### Two Truths & a Lie | Using the Conditional and NOT Operators

1. The conditional operator is used as an abbreviated version of the if...else statement and requires two expressions separated with an exclamation point.
2. The NOT operator is written as the exclamation point (`!`).
3. The value of any false expression becomes true when preceded by the NOT operator.

The false statement is #1. The conditional operator requires three expressions separated with a question mark and a colon.

## 5.9 Understanding Operator Precedence

You can combine as many `&&` or `||` operators in an expression as you need to make a decision. For example, if you want to award bonus points (defined as `BONUS`) to any student who receives a perfect score on any of four quizzes, you might write a statement like the following:

```
if(score1 == PERFECT || score2 == PERFECT ||
 score3 == PERFECT || score4 == PERFECT)
 bonus = BONUS;
else
 bonus = 0;
```

In this case, if at least one of the score variables is equal to the PERFECT constant, the student receives the bonus points.

Although you can combine any number of `&&` or `||` operations in an expression, special care must be taken when you mix them. You already know that arithmetic operations have higher and lower precedences, and that an operator's precedence makes a difference in how an expression is evaluated. For example, within an arithmetic expression, multiplication and division are always performed prior to addition or subtraction. In the same way, `&&` has higher precedence than `||`. Table 5-1 shows the precedence of the operators you have used so far.

**Table 5-1** Precedence for operators used so far

| PRECEDENCE  | OPERATOR(S)                       | SYMBOL(S) |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| Highest (9) | Logical NOT                       | !         |
| 8           | Multiplication, division, modulus | * / %     |
| 7           | Addition, subtraction             | + -       |
| 6           | Relational                        | > < >= <= |
| 5           | Equality                          | == !=     |
| 4           | Logical AND                       | &&        |
| 3           | Logical OR                        |           |
| 2           | Conditional                       | ? :       |
| Lowest (1)  | Assignment                        | =         |

For example, consider the program segments shown in **Figure 5-34**. These code segments are intended to be part of an insurance company program that determines whether an additional premium should be charged to a driver who meets both of the following criteria:

- » Has more than two traffic tickets (an integer stored in `trafficTickets`) or is under 25 years old (an integer stored in `age`)
- » Drives a sports car (a character stored in `carCode`)

**Figure 5-34** Two comparisons using `&&` and `||`

```
// Assigns extra premiums incorrectly
if(trafficTickets > 2 || age < 25 && carCode == 'S')
 extraPremium = 200;
```

```
// Assigns extra premiums correctly
if((trafficTickets > 2 || age < 25) && carCode == 'S')
 extraPremium = 200;
```

The expression that uses the `&&` operator is evaluated first.

The expression within the inner parentheses is evaluated first.

## Note

One way to remember the precedence of the AND and OR operators is to remember that they are evaluated in alphabetical order.

Consider a 40-year-old minivan driver with three traffic tickets; according to the stated criteria, the driver should not be assigned the extra premium because the driver does not have a sports car (does not have `carCode == 'S'`).

- › With the first `if` statement in Figure 5-34, the `&&` operator takes precedence, so `age < 25 && carCode == 'S'` is evaluated first. The value is `false` because `age` is not less than 25, so the expression is reduced to `trafficTickets > 2` or `false`. Because the value of the `tickets` variable is greater than 2, the entire expression is `true`, and \$200 is assigned to `extraPremium`, even though it should not be.
- › In the second `if` statement shown in Figure 5-34, parentheses have been added so the `||` operator is evaluated first. The expression `trafficTickets > 2 || age < 25` is `true` because the value of `trafficTickets` is 3. So, the expression evolves to `true && carCode == 'S'`. Because the driver's code for a minivan is not 'S', the value of the entire expression is `false`, and the `extraPremium` value is not assigned 200, which is the correct outcome.

Even when an expression would be evaluated as you intend without adding extra parentheses, you can always add them to help others more easily understand your programs.

The following two conventions are important to keep in mind:

- › The order in which you use operators makes a difference.
- › You can always use parentheses to change precedence or make your intentions clearer.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Understanding Operator Precedence

1. Assume `p`, `q`, and `r` are all Boolean variables that have been assigned the value `true`. After the following statement executes, the value of `p` is still `true`.

```
p = !q || r;
```

2. Assume `p`, `q`, and `r` are all Boolean variables that have been assigned the value `true`. After the following statement executes, the value of `p` is still `true`.

```
p = !(!q && !r);
```

3. Assume `p`, `q`, and `r` are all Boolean variables that have been assigned the value `true`. After the following statement executes, the value of `p` is still `true`.

```
p = !(q || !r);
```

The false statement is #3. If `p`, `q`, and `r` are all Boolean variables that have been assigned the value `true`, then after `p = !(q || !r);` executes, the value of `p` is `false`. First `q` is evaluated as `true`, so the entire expression within the parentheses is `true`. The leading NOT operator reverses that result to `false` and assigns it to `p`.

## 5.10 Making Constructors More Efficient by Using Decisions in Other Methods

You frequently will want to use what you have learned about decision making to control the allowed values in objects' fields. Whether values are assigned to objects by constructors or by mutator methods, you often will need to use decisions to restrict the values assigned to fields.

For example, suppose that you create an Employee class as shown in **Figure 5-35**. The class contains two fields that hold an employee number and pay rate. The constructor accepts values for these fields as parameters, but instead of simply assigning the parameters to the fields, the code determines whether each value is within the allowed limits for the field.

If the Employee class in Figure 5-35 also contained set methods for empNum and payRate, and the rules governing appropriate values were the same as the rules used in the constructor, then it would make sense for the decisions to be made in the set methods and to code the constructor to call the set methods. That way, the decisions would appear only once in the class, saving time and space. Additionally, if a change to the rules was needed in the future—for example, if different default values were desired for either of the fields—then the code would be changed in just one place, reducing the likelihood of error or inconsistency. **Figure 5-36** shows a class that uses this technique.

**Figure 5-35** The Employee class that contains a constructor that makes decisions

```
public class Employee
{
 private int empNum;
 private double payRate;
 public final int MAX_EMP_NUM = 9999;
 public final double MAX_RATE = 60.00;
 public Employee(int num, double rate)
 {
 if(num <= MAX_EMP_NUM)
 empNum = num;
 else
 empNum = MAX_EMP_NUM;
 if(payRate <= MAX_RATE)
 payRate = rate;
 else
 payRate = 0;
 }
}
```

**Figure 5-36** The Employee class that contains a constructor that calls set methods to make decisions

```
public class Employee
{
 private int empNum;
 private double payRate;
 public final int MAX_EMP_NUM = 9999;
 public final double MAX_RATE = 60.00;
 public Employee(int num, double rate)
 {
 setEmpNum(num);
 setPayRate(rate);
 }
 public void setEmpNum(int num)
 {
 if(num <= MAX_EMP_NUM)
 empNum = num;
 else
 empNum = MAX_EMP_NUM;
 }
 public void setPayRate(double rate)
 {
 if(payRate <= MAX_RATE)
 payRate = rate;
 else
 payRate = 0;
 }
}
```

The constructor calls the set methods instead of repeating the if statements to enforce the rules for the field values.

## You Do It | Making Constructors More Efficient by Using Decisions in Other Methods

In this section, you create a class named `PreschoolStudent` that holds data about preschool enrollees and checks to ensure that fields are valid.

1. Start a class that holds data about preschool students. The fields include an ID number and an age.

```
public class PreschoolStudent
{
 int idNum;
 int age;
```

2. Add two constants that hold the highest allowed value for an ID number and the highest allowed value for the age of a preschool student.

```
public final int HIGH_ID = 9999;
public final int HIGH_AGE = 6;
```

3. Write a `setIdNum()` method that accepts an integer argument and checks to make sure it is no larger than the highest allowed value. If the ID number is valid, assign it to the `idNum` field; otherwise, set the `idNum` field to zero.

```
public void setIdNum(int num)
{
 if(num <= HIGH_ID)
 idNum = num;
 else
 idNum = 0;
}
```

4. Write a similar `setAge()` method that makes sure a preschool student's age is no more than 6 or else assigns a zero.

```
public void setAge(int studentAge)
{
 if(studentAge <= HIGH_AGE)
 age = studentAge;
 else
 {
 age = 0;
 }
}
```

5. Add two get methods that each return one of the field values. Also add a closing curly brace for the class.

```
public int getIdNum()
{
 return idNum;
}
public int getAge()
{
 return age;
}
```

6. Above the `setIdNum()` method, insert a constructor for the class that requires parameters for both fields. You could include code within the constructor to ensure that the fields have good values, but that code is already written, so it is more efficient and less error-prone to have the constructor call the `setIdNum()` and `setAge()` methods.

```
public PreschoolStudent(int num, int studentAge)
{
 setIdNum(num);
 setAge(studentAge);
}
```

7. Compile the class and correct any errors.
8. Next, you will write a program to demonstrate that the methods and constructor work correctly. Open a new file and start an application named `PreschoolDemo`.

```
public class PreschoolDemo
{
 public static void main(String args[])
 {
```

9. Construct two `PreschoolStudent` objects. Pass valid values to the constructor for one, and pass invalid values to the constructor for the other.

```
PreschoolStudent ps1 =
 new PreschoolStudent(2345, 5);
PreschoolStudent ps2 =
 new PreschoolStudent(67890, 8);
```

10. Send each object to a `display()` method that will display the assigned values for the fields. Change the age for the first object, and display it again. Then change the age again, and display it again. Add a closing curly brace for the `main()` method.

```
display(ps1);
display(ps2);
ps1.setAge(6);
display(ps1);
ps1.setAge(7);
display(ps1);
}
```

11. Write the `display()` method. Then add a closing curly brace for the class.

```
public static void display(PreschoolStudent ps)
{
 System.out.print("Student ID " + ps.getIdNum());
 System.out.println(" Student age " + ps.getAge());
 System.out.println();
}
```

12. Save the program, then compile and run it. **Figure 5-37** shows the execution. The first line of output shows a student that was constructed with valid values. The second line shows a student that was constructed with invalid values, so both fields were set to zero. The third line shows the first student after the age field was changed to a valid value, and the last line shows the same student after the age was changed to an invalid value.

**Figure 5-37** Output of PreschoolDemo program

```
Student ID 2345 Student age 5
Student ID 0 Student age 0
Student ID 2345 Student age 6
Student ID 2345 Student age 0
```

- 13.** Modify the program so that you can experiment with creating students with combinations of valid and invalid values, and confirm that the output is what you expected.

## Don't Do It

- › Don't ignore subtleties in boundaries used in decision making. For example, selecting employees who make less than \$20 per hour is different from selecting employees who make \$20 per hour or less.
- › Don't use the assignment operator instead of the comparison operator when testing for equality.
- › Don't insert a semicolon after the Boolean expression in an `if` statement; insert the semicolon after the entire statement is completed.
- › Don't forget to block a set of statements with curly braces when several statements depend on the `if` or the `else` clause.
- › Don't forget to include a complete Boolean expression on each side of an `&&` or `||` operator in a compound Boolean expression.
- › Don't try to use a `switch` statement to test anything other than a `byte`, `short`, `char`, `int`, or `String`. (Later, you will learn that you can also use a few other types.)
- › Don't forget a `break` statement if one is required by the logic of your `switch` statement.
- › Don't use the standard relational operators to compare objects; use them only with the built-in Java types.



## Summary

- › Making a decision involves choosing between two alternative courses of action based on some value within a program.
- › The `if` statement is used to make a decision based on a Boolean expression. A single-alternative selection performs an action based on one alternative; a dual-alternative selection, or `if...else`, provides the mechanism for performing one action when a Boolean expression is `true` and a different action when the expression is `false`.
- › Any number of statements can be blocked to be dependent on an `if` or an `else` clause.

- Nested `if` statements are particularly useful when two or more conditions must be met before some action occurs.
- The AND operator (`&&`) is used to create a compound Boolean expression that is `true` when all of its operands are `true`. The OR operator (`||`) is used to create a compound Boolean expression that is `true` when at least one of its operands is `true`.
- New programmers frequently cause errors in their `if` statements when they perform a range check incorrectly or inefficiently, or when they use the wrong operator while trying to make an AND or OR decision.
- The `switch` statement and `switch` expression test a single variable against a series of exact integer, character, or string values.
- The conditional operator requires three expressions, a question mark, and a colon, and is used as an abbreviated version of the `if...else` statement. The NOT operator (`!`) negates the result of any Boolean expression.
- Operator precedence controls how expressions are evaluated. You can use parentheses to change precedence or make your intentions clearer.
- Decisions are frequently used to control field values in a class. When both constructors and set methods need to follow the same decision rules, it is efficient to code the decisions once in the set methods and to have the constructors use the set method logic.

## Key Terms

|                                                 |                                                         |                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>compound Boolean expression</b>              | <b>flowchart</b>                                        | <b>pseudocode</b>                   |
| <b>compound condition</b>                       | <b>function</b>                                         | <b>range check</b>                  |
| <b>conditional operator</b>                     | <b>if clause</b>                                        | <b>sequence structure</b>           |
| <b>decision structure</b>                       | <b>if statement</b>                                     | <b>short-circuit evaluation</b>     |
| <b>dual-alternative selection</b>               | <b>if...else statement</b>                              | <b>side effect</b>                  |
| <b>else clause</b>                              | <b>logical AND operator ( <code>&amp;&amp;</code> )</b> | <b>single-alternative selection</b> |
| <b>else...if clause</b>                         | <b>logical OR operator ( <code>  </code> )</b>          | <b>switch expression</b>            |
| <b>empty statement</b>                          | <b>nested if statements</b>                             | <b>switch statement</b>             |
| <b>equivalency operator ( <code>==</code> )</b> | <b>NOT operator ( <code>!</code> )</b>                  | <b>ternary operator</b>             |

## Review Questions

1. The logical structure in which one instruction occurs after another with no branching is a \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. sequence  
 b. selection  
 c. loop  
 d. case
2. Which of the following is typically used in a flowchart to indicate a decision?  
 a. square  
 b. rectangle  
 c. oval  
 d. diamond

3. Which of the following is not a type of `if` statement?
- a. single-alternative
  - b. dual-alternative
  - c. reverse
  - d. nested
4. A decision is based on a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ value.
- a. Boolean
  - b. absolute
  - c. definitive
  - d. convoluted
5. In Java, the value of `(14 > 7)` is \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. true
  - b. false
  - c. 14
  - d. 7
6. Assuming the variable `score` has been assigned the value 9, which of the following does not display `XXX`?
- a. `if(score <= 9)  
    System.out.println("XXX");`
  - b. `if(score > 9)  
    System.out.println("XXX");`
  - c. `if(score > 0);  
    System.out.println("XXX");`
  - d. `if(score == 5)  
    System.out.println("XXX");`
7. What is the output of the following code segment?
- ```
t = 10;  
if(t > 7){  
    System.out.print("AAA");  
    System.out.print("BBB");  
}
```
- a. AAA
 - b. BBB
 - c. AAABBB
 - d. nothing
8. What is the output of the following code segment?
- ```
t = 0;
if(t > 7)
 System.out.print("AAA");
 System.out.print("BBB");
```
- a. AAA
  - b. BBB
  - c. AAABBB
  - d. nothing
9. What is the output of the following code segment?
- ```
t = 7;  
if(t > 7){  
    System.out.print("AAA");  
    System.out.print("BBB");  
}
```
- a. AAA
 - b. BBB
 - c. AAABBB
 - d. nothing
10. When you code an `if` statement within another `if` statement, the statements are _____.
- a. notched
 - b. nested
 - c. nestled
 - d. sheltered

11. The operator that combines two conditions into a single Boolean value that is true only when both of the conditions are true is _____.
- a. \$\$
 - b. &&
 - c. ||
 - d. !!
12. The operator that combines two conditions into a single Boolean value that is true when at least one of the conditions is true is _____.
- a. ||
 - b. !!
 - c. \$\$
 - d. &&
13. Assuming a variable f has been initialized to 5, which of the following statements sets g to 0?
- a. if(f > 6 || f != 5) g = 0;
 - b. if(f < 3 || f > 9) g = 0;
 - c. if(f >= 0 || f < 2) g = 0;
 - d. if(f == 0 || f == 2) g = 0;
14. Which of the following has the lowest precedence?
- a. <
 - b. ==
 - c. &&
 - d. ||
15. Which of the following statements correctly outputs the names of voters who live in district 6 and voters who live in district 7?
- a. if(district == 6 || 7)
 System.out.println("Name is " + name);
 - b. if(district == 6 || district == 7)
 System.out.println("Name is " + name);
 - c. if(district = 6 && district == 7)
 System.out.println("Name is " + name);
 - d. if(district != 6 && district != 7)
 System.out.println("Name is " + name);
16. Which of the following displays *Error* when a student ID is less than 1,000 or more than 9999?
- a. if(stuId < 1000) if(stuId > 9999)
 System.out.println("Error");
 - b. if(stuId < 1000 && stuId > 9999)
 System.out.println("Error");
 - c. if(stuId < 1000)
 System.out.println("Error");
 else
 if(stuId > 9999)
 System.out.println("Error");
 - d. if(stuId < 1000 || > 9999)
 System.out.println("Error");
17. You can use the _____ statement to terminate a switch statement.
- a. switch
 - b. break
 - c. case
 - d. end
18. Which of the following cannot be the argument tested in a switch statement?
- a. int
 - b. char
 - c. double
 - d. String

19. Assuming a variable w has been assigned the value 15, what does the following statement do?

```
w == 15 ? x = 2 : x = 0;
```

- a. assigns 15 to w
- b. assigns 2 to x
- c. assigns 0 to x
- d. nothing

20. Assuming a variable y has been assigned the value 6, the value of !(y < 7) is _____.

- a. 6
- b. 7
- c. true
- d. false

Programming Exercises

1. Write an application that asks a user to enter an integer. Pass the integer to a method that determines whether the number is even and returns a Boolean value. Display a statement that indicates whether the integer is even or odd. Save the file as **EvenOdd.java**.
2. Write an application that asks a user to enter three integers. Display them in ascending and descending order. Save the file as **AscendingAndDescending.java**.
3.
 - a. Write an application for the Shady Rest Hotel; the program determines the price of a room. Ask the user to choose 1 for a queen bed, 2 for a king, or 3 for a king and a pullout couch. The output echoes the input and displays the price of the room: \$125 for queen, \$139 for king, and \$165 for a suite with a king bed and a pullout couch. If the user enters an invalid code, display an appropriate message and set the price to 0. Save the file as **ShadyRestRoom.java**.
 - b. Add a prompt to the ShadyRestRoom application to ask the user to specify a (1) lake view or a (2) park view, but ask that question only if the bed size entry is valid. Add \$15 to the price of any room with a lake view. If the view value is invalid, display an appropriate message and assume that the price is for a room with a lake view. Save the file as **ShadyRestRoom2.java**.
4. Write a program for Horizon Phones, a provider of cellular phone service. Prompt a user for maximum monthly values for talk minutes needed, text messages needed, and gigabytes of data needed, and then display a recommendation for the best plan for the customer's needs. A customer who needs fewer than 500 minutes of talk and no text or data should buy Plan A at \$49 per month. A customer who needs fewer than 500 minutes of talk and any text messages should buy Plan B at \$55 per month. A customer who needs 500 or more minutes of talk and no data should buy either Plan C for up to 100 text messages at \$61 per month or Plan D for 100 text messages or more at \$70 per month. A customer who needs any data should buy Plan E for up to 3 gigabytes at \$79 per month or Plan F for 3 gigabytes or more at \$87 per month. Save the file as **CellPhoneService.java**.
5.
 - a. Write an application that uses the `LocalDate` class to access the current date. Prompt a user for a month, day, and year. Display a message that specifies whether the entered date is (1) not this year, (2) in an earlier month this year, (3) in a later month this year, or (4) this month. Save the file as **PastPresentFuture.java**.
 - b. Use the Web to learn how to use the `LocalDate` Boolean methods `isBefore()`, `isAfter()`, and `equals()`. Use your knowledge to write a program that prompts a user for a month, day, and year, and then displays a message specifying whether the entered day is in the past, the current date, or in the future. Save the file as **PastPresentFuture2.java**.
6. Acme Parts runs a small factory and employs workers who are paid one of three hourly rates depending on their shift: first shift, \$17 per hour; second shift, \$18.50 per hour; third shift, \$22 per hour. Each factory worker might work any number of hours per week; any hours greater than 40 are paid at one and one-half times the usual rate. In addition, second- and third-shift workers can elect to participate in the retirement plan, for which

3 percent of the worker's gross pay is deducted from the paychecks. Write a program that prompts the user for hours worked and the shift number; if the shift number is 2 or 3, prompt the user to enter the worker's choice to participate in the retirement plan. Display (1) the hours worked, (2) the shift, (3) the hourly pay rate, (4) the regular pay, (5) overtime pay, (6) the total of regular and overtime pay, (7) the retirement deduction, if any, and (8) the net pay. Save the file as **AcmePay.java**.

7. Create a class named **JobApplicant** that holds data about a job applicant. Include a name, a phone number, and four Boolean fields that represent whether the applicant is skilled in each of the following areas: word processing, spreadsheets, databases, and graphics. Include a constructor that accepts values for each of the fields. Also include a get method for each field. Save the class as **JobApplicant.java**.

Create an application that instantiates three **JobApplicant** objects in the **main()** method. Pass each object, in turn, to a method that gets user data for each field: the user enters **Strings** for the name and phone number, and enters four integers that indicate whether the applicant possesses each of the four skills. Return a complete **JobApplicant** object to the **main()** method.

After the objects are returned to the **main()** method, pass each to a boolean method that determines whether an applicant is qualified for an interview and returns **true** or **false**. A qualified applicant has at least three of the four skills. Then, in the **main()** method, display a message that includes the applicant's name, phone number, and whether the applicant is qualified. Save the application as **TestJobApplicants.java**.

8. Create an **Automobile** class for a dealership. Include fields for an ID number, make, model, color, year, and miles per gallon. Include get and set methods for each field. Do not allow the ID to be negative or more than 9999; if it is, set the ID to 0. Do not allow the year to be earlier than 2005 or later than 2024; if it is, set the year to 0. Do not allow the miles per gallon to be less than 10 or more than 60; if it is, set the miles per gallon to 0. Include a constructor that accepts arguments for each field value and uses the set methods to assign the values. Write an application that declares two **Automobile** objects and prompts the user for values. When you test the program, be sure to enter some invalid data to demonstrate that all the methods work correctly. Save the files as **Automobile.java** and **TestAutomobiles.java**.
9. Create a class named **Apartment** that holds an apartment number, number of bedrooms, number of baths, and rent amount. Create a constructor that accepts values for each data field. Also create a get method for each field. Write an application that creates at least five **Apartment** objects. Then prompt a user to enter a minimum number of bedrooms required, a minimum number of baths required, and a maximum rent the user is willing to pay. Display data for all the **Apartment** objects that meet the user's criteria or an appropriate message if no such apartments are available. Save the files as **Apartment.java** and **TestApartments.java**.
10. Use the Web to locate the lyrics to the traditional song "The Twelve Days of Christmas." The song contains a list of gifts received for the holiday. The list is cumulative so that as each "day" passes, a new verse contains all the words of the previous verse, plus a new item. Write an application that displays the words to the song starting with any day the user enters. (*Hint:* Use a **switch** statement with cases in descending day order and without any **break** statements so that the lyrics for any day repeat all the lyrics for previous days.) Save the file as **TwelveDays.java**.

Debugging Exercises

1. Each of the following files in the Chapter05 folder of your downloadable student files has syntax and/or logic errors. In each case, determine the problem and fix the program. After you correct the errors, save each file using the same filename preceded with **Fix**. For example, save **DebugFive1.java** as **FixDebugFive1.java**.
 - a. **DebugFive1.java**
 - b. **DebugFive2.java**
 - c. **DebugFive3.java**
 - d. **DebugFive4.java**



Game Zone

1. Create a class called `RandomGuess2` that contains a game in which a player guesses a random number. (See Appendix D for help with creating a random number.) Allow a player to enter a guess, and then display a message indicating whether the player's guess was correct, too high, or too low. Save the file as `RandomGuess2.java`.
2. Create a lottery game application. Generate three random numbers (see Appendix D for help in doing so), each between 0 and 9. Allow the user to guess three numbers. Compare each of the user's guesses to the three random numbers and display a message that includes the user's guess, the randomly determined three-digit number, and the amount of money the user has won, as follows:
 - › No matching numbers; award is \$0
 - › Any one matching number; award is \$10
 - › Two matching numbers; award is \$100
 - › Three matching numbers, not in order; award is \$1,000
 - › Three matching numbers in exact order; award is \$1,000,000

Make certain that your application accommodates repeating digits. For example, if a user guesses 1, 2, and 3, and the randomly generated digits are 1, 1, and 1, do not give the user credit for three correct guesses—just one. Save the file as `Lottery.java`.

3. Design a `Card` class that contains a character data field to hold a suit (`s` for spades, `h` for hearts, `d` for diamonds, or `c` for clubs) and an integer data field for a value from 1 to 13. Include a `setValue()` method that does not allow a `Card`'s value to be less than 1 or higher than 13. If the argument to `setValue()` is out of range, assign 1 to the `Card`'s value. Save the file as `Card.java`.

Play a very simple version of the card game War. Deal two `Cards`—one for the computer and one for the player—and set their suits and values randomly. Determine the higher card, then display a message indicating whether the cards are equal, the computer won, or the player won. (Playing cards are considered equal when they have the same value, no matter what their suit is.) For this game, assume the Ace (value 1) is low. Make sure that the two `Cards` dealt are not the same `Card`. For example, a deck cannot contain more than one `Card` representing the 2 of Spades. If two `Cards` are created to have the same values, change the suit for one of them. Save the application as `War.java`.

4. Create a `Die` class from which you can instantiate an object containing a random value from 1 through 6. Save the class as `Die.java`. Write an application that randomly “throws” two dice and displays their values. Determine whether the two dice are the same, the first has a higher value, or the second has a higher value. Save the application as `TwoDice2.java`.
5. In the game Rock Paper Scissors, two players simultaneously choose one of three options: rock, paper, or scissors. If both players choose the same option, then the result is a tie. However, if they choose differently, the winner is determined as follows:
 - › Rock beats scissors, because a rock can break a pair of scissors.
 - › Scissors beats paper, because scissors can cut paper.
 - › Paper beats rock, because a piece of paper can cover a rock.

Create a game in which the computer randomly chooses rock, paper, or scissors. Let the user enter a number 1, 2, or 3, each representing one of the three choices. Then, determine the winner. Save the application as `RockPaperScissors.java`.

Case Problems

1. a. Yummy Catering provides meals for parties and special events. In Chapter 4, you created an Event class for the company. Now, make the following changes to the class:

- › Currently, the class contains a constant for the price per guest (\$35) that is used for every guest. Replace that constant field with two constant fields—a lower price per guest that is \$32 and a higher price per guest that is \$35.
- › Add a new method named `isLargeEvent()` that returns `true` if the number of guests is 50 or greater and otherwise returns `false`.
- › Modify the method that sets the number of guests so that a large Event (more than 50 guests) uses the lower price per guest to set the field that holds the price per guest and to calculate the total Event price. A small Event uses the higher price.

Save the file as **Event.java**.

- b. Write a program that demonstrates using the Event class as follows:

- › Instantiate three Event objects, and prompt the user for values for each object.
- › Display the details for all three objects.
- › Create a method that accepts two Event objects and returns the larger one based on the number of guests. (If the Events have the same number of guests, you can return either object.)
- › Call this method three times—once with each pair of instantiated Events—and display the event number and number of guests for each argument as well as the event number and number of guests for the larger Event.

Save the file as **EventDemo.java**.

2. a. Sunshine Seashore Supplies rents beach equipment such as kayaks, canoes, beach chairs, and umbrellas to tourists. In Chapter 4, you created a Rental class for the company. Now, make the following change to the class:

- › Currently, a rental price is calculated as \$40 per hour plus \$1 for each minute over a full hour. This means that a customer who rents equipment for 41 or more minutes past an hour pays more than a customer who waits until the next hour to return the equipment. Change the price calculation so that a customer pays \$40 for each full hour and \$1 for each extra minute up to and including 40 minutes.

Save the file as **Rental.java**.

- b. Write a program that demonstrates using the Rental class as follows:

- › Instantiate three Rental objects, and prompt the user for values for each object.
- › Display the details for each object to verify that the new price calculation works correctly.
- › Create a method that accepts two Rental objects and returns the one with the longer rental time. (If the Rentals have the same time, you can return either object.) Call this method three times—once with each pair of instantiated Rentals—and display the contract number and time in hours and minutes for each argument as well as the contract number of the longer Rental.

Save the file as **RentalDemo.java**.

Looping

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to:

- 6.1 Describe the loop structure
 - 6.2 Create while loops
 - 6.3 Use shortcut arithmetic operators
 - 6.4 Create for loops
 - 6.5 Create do...while loops
 - 6.6 Nest loops
 - 6.7 Improve loop performance
-

6.1 Learning About the Loop Structure

If making decisions is what makes programs seem smart, looping is what makes programs seem powerful. A **loop** is a structure that allows repeated execution of a block of statements. Within a looping structure:

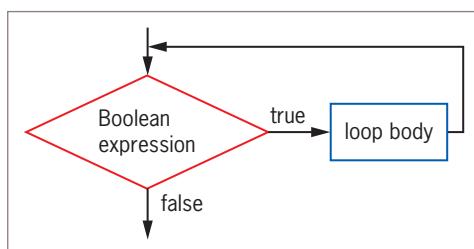
- › A Boolean expression is evaluated.
- › If it is true, a block of statements called the **loop body** executes, and the Boolean expression is evaluated again. The loop body can be a single statement or a block of statements between curly braces. As long as the loop-controlling Boolean expression is true, the statements in the loop body continue to execute, and the Boolean expression is evaluated again.
- › When the Boolean evaluation is false, the loop ends.

One execution of any loop is called an **iteration**. **Figure 6-1** shows a diagram of the logic of a loop.

In Java, you can use several mechanisms to create loops. In this chapter, you learn to use three types of loops:

- › A `while` loop, in which the loop-controlling Boolean expression is the first statement in the loop, evaluated before the loop body ever executes
- › A `for` loop, which is usually used as a concise format in which to execute loops
- › A `do...while` loop, in which the loop-controlling Boolean expression is the last statement in the loop, evaluated after the loop body executes one time

Figure 6-1 Flowchart of a loop structure



Two Truths & a Lie | Learning About the Loop Structure

1. A loop is a structure that allows repeated execution of a block of statements as long as a tested expression is `true`.
2. If a loop's tested Boolean expression is `true`, a block of statements called the loop body executes before the Boolean expression is evaluated again.
3. When the Boolean evaluation tested in a loop becomes `false`, the loop body executes one last time.

The false statement is #3. When the Boolean evaluation tested in a loop is `false`, the loop ends.

6.2 Creating while Loops

You can use a **while loop** to execute a body of statements continually as long as the Boolean expression that controls entry into the loop continues to be `true`. In Java, a `while` loop consists of the keyword `while` followed by a Boolean expression within parentheses, followed by the body of the loop.

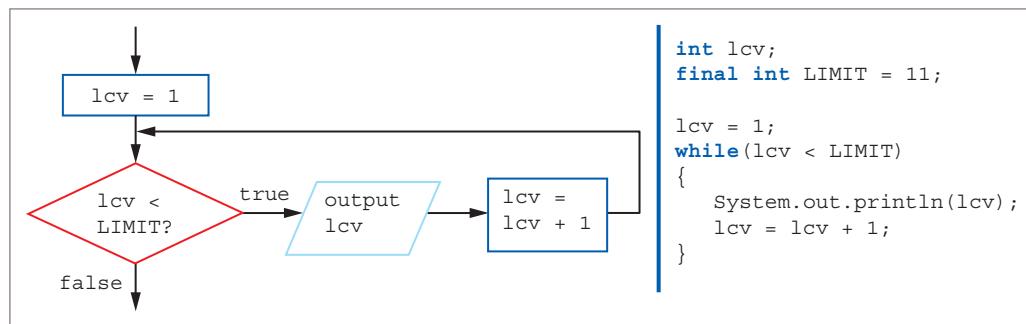
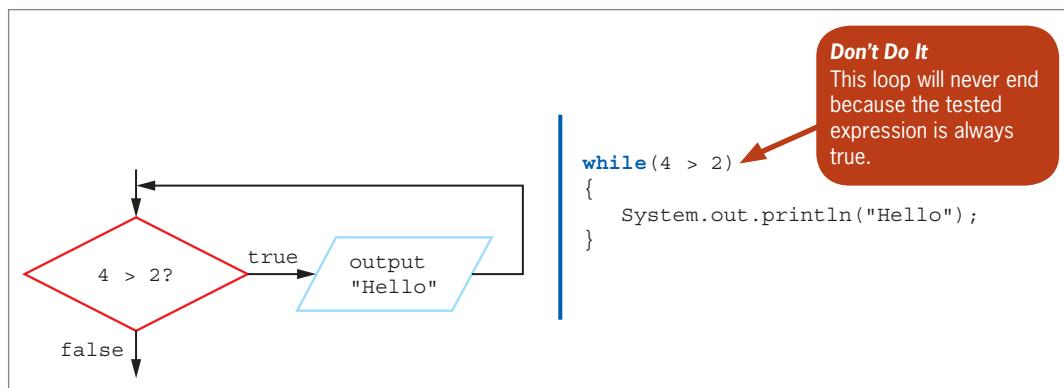
You can use a `while` loop when you need to perform a task either a predetermined or unpredictable number of times.

- › Sometimes a programmer knows precisely how many times a loop should execute. A loop that executes a specific number of times is a **definite loop** or a **counted loop**.
- › Sometimes a programmer does not know how many times a loop will execute because the number of iterations is determined while the program is running. Such a loop is an **indefinite loop**.

Writing a Definite while Loop

To write a definite loop, you initialize a **loop control variable**, which is a variable whose value determines whether loop execution continues. While the Boolean value that results from comparing the loop control variable and another value is `true`, the body of the `while` loop continues to execute. In the body of the loop, you must include a statement that alters the loop control variable; otherwise, the loop will never end. For example, the program segment shown in **Figure 6-2** displays the series of integers 1 through 10. The variable `lcv` is the loop control variable—it starts the loop holding a value of 1, and while the value remains less than 11, `lcv` continues to be output and increased.

When you write applications containing loops, it is easy to make mistakes. For example, executing the code shown in **Figure 6-3** causes the message `Hello` to be displayed forever (theoretically) because there is no code to end the loop. A loop that never ends is called an **infinite loop**.

Figure 6-2 A `while` loop that displays the integers 1 through 10**Figure 6-3** A loop that displays *Hello* infinitely**Note**

An infinite loop might not actually execute infinitely. Depending on the tasks the loop performs, the computer memory eventually might be exhausted (literally and figuratively), and execution might stop. Also, it's possible that the processor has a time-out feature that forces the loop to end. Either way, and depending on your system, quite a bit of time could pass before the loop stops running.

Note

As an inside joke among programmers, the address of Apple Inc. is 1 Infinite Loop, Cupertino, California.

In Figure 6-3, the expression `4 > 2` evaluates to `true`. You obviously never need to make such an evaluation, but if you do so in this `while` loop, the body of the loop is entered and *Hello* is displayed. Next, the expression is evaluated again. The expression `4 > 2` is still `true`, so the body is entered again. *Hello* is displayed repeatedly; the loop never finishes because `4 > 2` is never `false`.

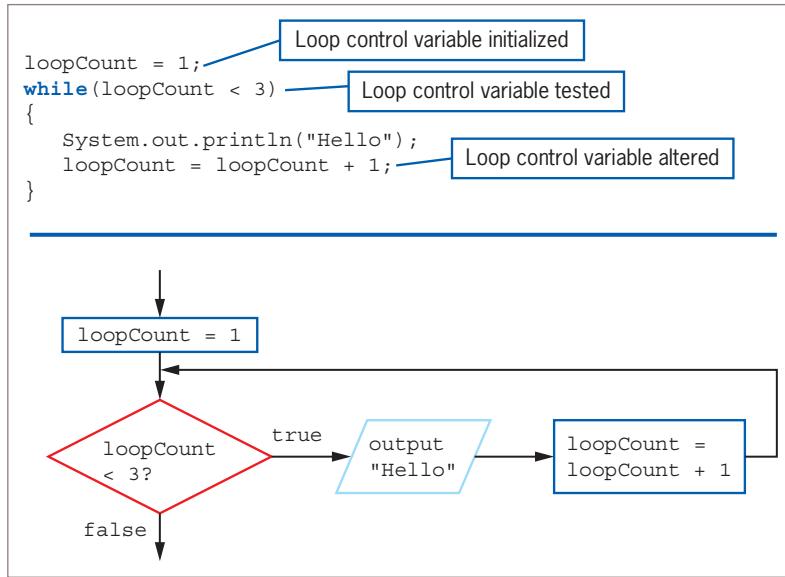
It is a bad idea to write an infinite loop intentionally. However, even experienced programmers write them by accident. So, before you start writing loops, it is good to know how to exit from an infinite loop. You might suspect an infinite loop if the same output is displayed repeatedly or if the screen simply remains idle for an extended period of time without displaying the expected output. If you think your application is in an infinite loop, you can press and hold the `Ctrl` key, and then press `C`; the looping program should terminate.

To prevent a `while` loop from executing infinitely, three separate actions must occur:

- » A loop control variable is initialized to a starting value.
- » The loop control variable is tested in the `while` statement.
- » The loop control variable is altered within the body of the loop. The variable must be altered so that the test expression eventually can evaluate to `false` and the loop can end.

All of these conditions are met by the example in **Figure 6-4**.

Figure 6-4 A `while` loop that displays *Hello* twice



- › First, a loop control variable `loopCount` is named and set to a value of 1.
- › Second, `loopCount` is compared to 3.
- › Third, `loopCount` is altered in the loop body when 1 is added to it.

Note that the loop body shown in Figure 6-4 consists of two statements made into a block by their surrounding curly braces. When `loopCount` is 1, it is compared to 3, and because it is less than 3, the loop body executes, displaying *Hello* and increasing `loopCount`. The next time `loopCount` is evaluated, it is 2. It is still less than 3, so the loop body executes again. *Hello* is displayed a second time, and `loopCount` becomes 3. Finally, because the expression `loopCount < 3` now evaluates to `false`, the loop ends. Program execution then continues with any subsequent statements.

Pitfall: Failing to Alter the Loop Control Variable Within the Loop Body

It is important that the loop control variable be altered within the body of the loop. **Figure 6-5** shows the same code as in Figure 6-4, but the curly braces have been eliminated. In this case, the `while` loop body ends at the semicolon that appears at the end of the output statement. Adding 1 to the `loopCount` is no longer part of a block that contains the loop, so the value of `loopCount` never changes, and an infinite loop is created.

Pitfall: Unintentionally Creating a Loop with an Empty Body

As you have already learned when using the decision-making `if` statement, placement of the statement-ending semicolon is important when you work with the `while` statement. If a semicolon is mistakenly placed at the end of the partial statement `while (loopCount < 3);`, as shown in **Figure 6-6**, the loop is also infinite. This loop has an **empty body**, or a body with no statements in it. So, the Boolean expression is evaluated, and because it is `true`, the loop body is entered. Because the loop body is empty, no action is taken, and the Boolean expression is evaluated again. Nothing has changed, so it is still `true`, the empty body is entered, and the infinite loop continues.

Figure 6-5 A `while` loop that displays *Hello* infinitely because `loopCount` is not altered in the loop body

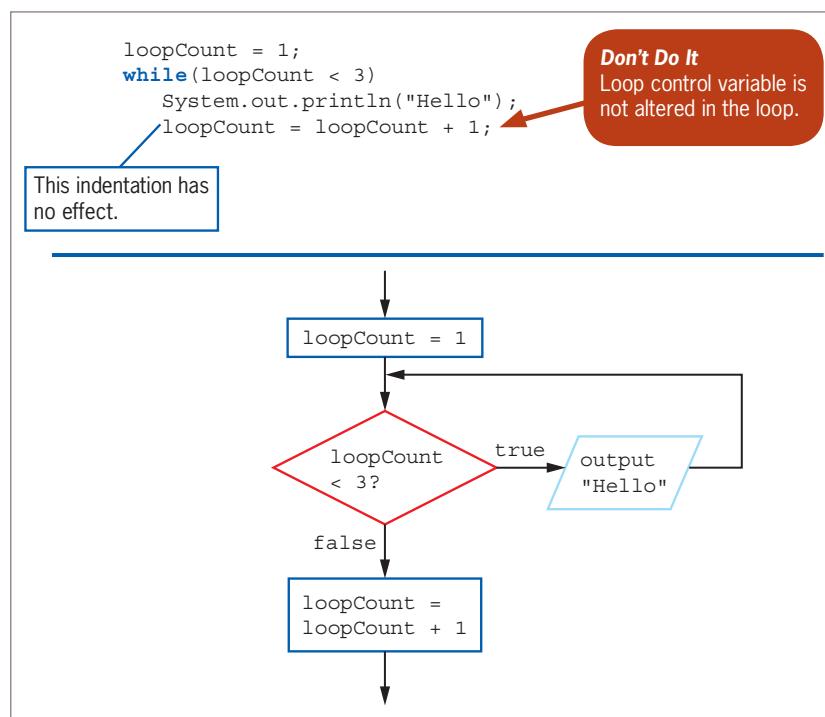
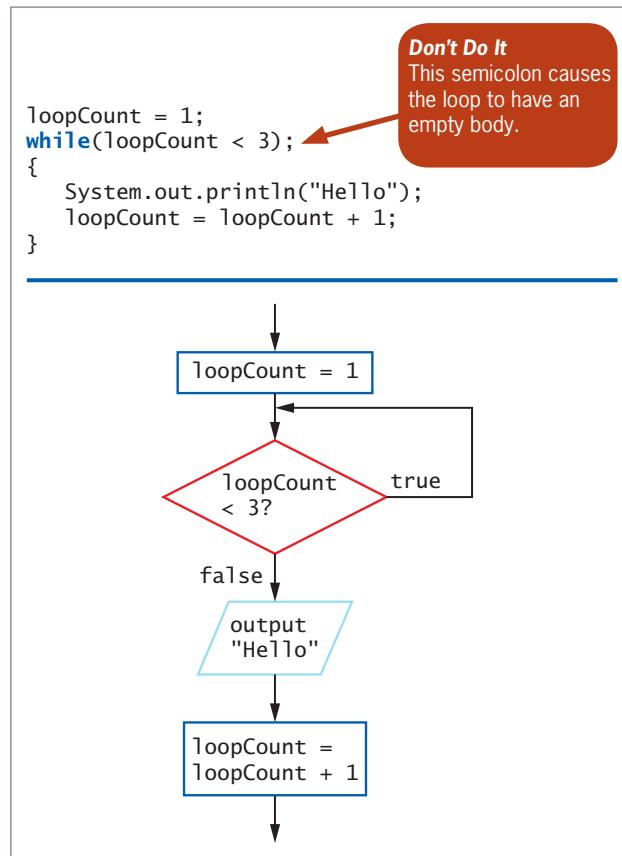


Figure 6-6 A `while` loop that loops infinitely with no output because the loop body is empty



Altering a Definite Loop's Control Variable

A definite loop is a **counter-controlled loop** because the loop control variable is changed by counting. It is very common to alter the value of a loop control variable by adding 1 to it, or **incrementing** the variable. However, not all loops are controlled by adding 1. The loop shown in **Figure 6-7** displays *Hello* twice, just as the loop in Figure 6-4 does, but its loop is controlled by subtracting 1 from a loop control variable, or **decrementing** it.

In the program segment shown in Figure 6-7, the variable `loopCount` begins with a value of 3.

- › The `loopCount` is greater than 1, so the loop body displays *Hello* and decrements `loopCount` to 2.
- › The Boolean expression in the `while` loop is tested again. Because 2 is greater than 1, *Hello* is displayed again, and `loopCount` becomes 1.
- › Now `loopCount` is not greater than 1, so the loop ends.

There are many ways to execute a loop two times. For example, you can initialize a loop control variable to 10 and continue while the value is greater than 8, decreasing the value by 1 each time you pass through the loop. Similarly, you can initialize the loop control variable to 12, continue while it is greater than 2, and decrease the value by 5 each time. In general, you should not use such unusual methods to count repetitions because they simply make a program confusing. To execute a loop a specific number of times, the clearest and best method is to start the loop control variable at 0 or 1, increment by 1 each time through the loop, and stop when the loop control variable reaches the appropriate limit.

Note

When you first start programming, it seems reasonable to initialize counter values to 1, and that is a workable approach. However, many seasoned programmers start counter values at 0 because they are used to doing so when working with arrays. When you study arrays later in this course, you will learn that their elements are numbered, beginning with 0.

Writing an Indefinite `while` Loop

Often, the value of a loop control variable is not altered by adding to it or subtracting from it, but instead it is altered by some other event. Such a loop is an **event-controlled loop**. An event-controlled loop is a type of indefinite loop because you don't know how many times it eventually will repeat during each program execution. For example, perhaps you want to continue asking a user questions as long as the response is correct, but want to stop when a response is incorrect. In this case, while you are writing the program, you do not know whether the loop eventually will be executed two times or 200 times.

Consider an application in which you ask the user for a bank balance and then ask whether the user wants to see the balance after interest has accumulated. Each time the user chooses to continue, an increased balance appears, reflecting one more year of accumulated interest. When the user finally chooses to exit, the program ends. The program appears in **Figure 6-8**.

Figure 6-7 A `while` loop that displays *Hello* twice, decrementing the `loopCount` variable in the loop body

```
loopCount = 3;
while(loopCount > 1)
{
    System.out.println("Hello");
    loopCount = loopCount - 1;
}
```

Figure 6-8 The BankBalance application

```

import java.util.Scanner;
public class BankBalance
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        double balance;
        int response;
        int year = 1;
        final double INT_RATE = 0.03;
        Scanner keyboard = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Enter initial bank balance > ");
        balance = keyboard.nextDouble();
        System.out.println("Do you want to see next year's balance?");
        System.out.print("Enter 1 for yes");
        System.out.print(" or any other number for no >> ");
        response = keyboard.nextInt();
        while(response == 1)
        {
            balance = balance + balance * INT_RATE;
            System.out.println("After year " + year + " at " + INT_RATE +
                " interest rate, balance is $" + balance);
            year = year + 1;
            System.out.println("\nDo you want to see the balance " +
                "at the end of another year?");
            System.out.print("Enter 1 for yes");
            System.out.print(" or any other number for no >> ");
            response = keyboard.nextInt();
        }
    }
}

```

Note

In the BankBalance program, as in any interactive program, the user must enter data that has the expected data types. If not, an error occurs and the program terminates. You will learn to manage user entry errors later in this course.

The program shown in Figure 6-8 declares needed variables and a constant for a 3 percent interest rate, and then asks the user for a balance. The application then asks the user to enter *1* if the user wants to see the next year's balance. As long as the user wants to continue, the application continues to display increasing bank balances.

The loop in the application in Figure 6-8 begins with the line that contains:

```
while(response == 1)
```

If the user enters any integer value other than *1*, the loop body never executes; instead, the program ends. However, if the user enters *1*, all the statements within the loop body execute. The application increases the balance by the interest rate value, displays the new balance, adds 1 to year, and asks whether the user wants another balance. The last statement in the loop body accepts the user's response. After the loop body executes, control returns to the top of the loop, where the Boolean expression in the while loop is tested again. If the user's response is *1*, the loop is entered and the process begins again. **Figure 6-9** shows the execution of the BankBalance application when the user enters a starting balance and responds with *1* five times to the prompt for increased interest payments before responding *2*.

Figure 6-9 Typical execution of the BankBalance application

```

Enter initial bank balance > 575
Do you want to see next year's balance?
Enter 1 for yes or any other number for no >> 1
After year 1 at 0.03 interest rate, balance is $592.25

Do you want to see the balance at the end of another year?
Enter 1 for yes or any other number for no >> 1
After year 2 at 0.03 interest rate, balance is $610.0175

Do you want to see the balance at the end of another year?
Enter 1 for yes or any other number for no >> 1
After year 3 at 0.03 interest rate, balance is $628.318025

Do you want to see the balance at the end of another year?
Enter 1 for yes or any other number for no >> 1
After year 4 at 0.03 interest rate, balance is $647.16756575

Do you want to see the balance at the end of another year?
Enter 1 for yes or any other number for no >> 1
After year 5 at 0.03 interest rate, balance is $666.5825927225

Do you want to see the balance at the end of another year?
Enter 1 for yes or any other number for no >> 2

```

Note

Many indefinite loops are written to continue as long as an ending value is *not* entered. A value that stops a loop is a **sentinel**. In some exercises at the end of this chapter and throughout the rest of this course, you will write programs that use sentinels.

Validating Data

Programmers commonly use indefinite loops when validating input data. **Validating data** is the process of ensuring that a value falls within a specified range. For example, suppose you require a user to enter a value no greater than 3. **Figure 6-10** shows an application that does not progress past the data entry loop until the user enters a correct value. If the user enters 3 or less at the first prompt, the loop never executes. However, if the user enters a number greater than 3, the loop executes, providing the user with another chance to enter a correct value.

Figure 6-10 The EnterSmallValue application

```

import java.util.Scanner;
public class EnterSmallValue
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int userEntry;
        final int LIMIT = 3;
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Please enter an integer no higher than " +
            LIMIT + " > ");
        userEntry = input.nextInt();
        while(userEntry > LIMIT)
        {
            System.out.println("The number you entered was too high");
            System.out.print("Please enter an integer no higher than " +
                LIMIT + " > ");
            userEntry = input.nextInt();
        }
        System.out.println("You correctly entered " + userEntry);
    }
}

```

The while statement controls the loop.

The loop body is between the curly braces.

Figure 6-11 shows a typical execution of the program in Figure 6-10. While the user continues to enter incorrect data, the loop repeats. It ends only when a value of 3 or less is entered.

Figure 6-11 Typical execution of the `EnterSmallValue` program

```
Please enter an integer no higher than 3 > 7
The number you entered was too high
Please enter an integer no higher than 3 > 5
The number you entered was too high
Please enter an integer no higher than 3 > 4
The number you entered was too high
Please enter an integer no higher than 3 > 3
You correctly entered 3
```

Figure 6-10 illustrates an excellent method for validating input. Before the loop is entered, the first input value is retrieved. This first input might be a value that prevents any executions of the loop. The first input statement prior to the loop is called a **priming input**. (When the input comes from a stored file rather than from user entry, programmers sometimes call it a *priming read*.) Within the loop, the last statement retrieves subsequent input values for the same variable that will be checked at the entrance to the loop.

Novice programmers often make the mistake of checking for invalid data by using a decision instead of a loop. That is, they ask whether the data is invalid by using an `if` statement; if the data is invalid, they reprompt the user. However, they forget that a user might enter incorrect data multiple times. Usually, a loop is the best structure to use when validating input data.

Two Truths & a Lie | Creating while Loops

1. A finite loop executes a specific number of times; an indefinite loop is one that never ends.
2. A well-written while loop contains an initialized loop control variable that is tested in the `while` expression and then altered in the loop body.
3. In an indefinite loop, you don't know how many times the loop will occur.

The false statement is #1. A loop that executes a specific number of times is a definite loop or a counted loop; a loop that never ends is an infinite loop.

You Do It | Writing a Loop to Validate Data Entries

Customer satisfaction surveys often ask consumers to rate services they have received. Here, you will write a survey that contains a loop to ensure that a valid code always is entered in response to a survey question.

1. Start a new program named `CustomerSurvey`.

```
import java.util.*;
public class CustomerSurvey
{
    public static void main (String args[])
    {
```

2. Declare a variable to hold the consumer's rating. Also declare constants for the lowest and highest ratings (1 and 5) and a Scanner input object.

```
int rating;
final int MIN = 1;
final int MAX = 5;
Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
```

3. Add a series of nine output statements that explain the rating system and prompt the user:

```
System.out.println("Please enter a value that");
System.out.println("represents your satisfaction with");
System.out.println("our service.");
System.out.println("Enter a value between " + MIN);
System.out.println("and " + MAX);
System.out.println("with " + MAX + " meaning highly");
System.out.println("satisfied and");
System.out.println(MIN + " meaning not at all satisfied.");
System.out.print("Enter your rating >> ");
```

4. Get the numeric rating from the user.

```
rating = input.nextInt();
```

5. Add a loop that continues to execute while the user's response is out of range—that is, while it is less than 1 or greater than 5.

```
while(rating < MIN || rating > MAX)
{
    System.out.println("You must enter a value");
    System.out.println("between " + MIN + " and "
        + MAX);
    System.out.print("Please try again >> ");
    rating = input.nextInt();
}
```

6. The loop ends only when the user's response is in range. Thank the user, and add closing curly braces for the main() method and for the class.

```
    System.out.println("Thank you.");
}
}
```

7. Save the program as **CustomerSurvey.java**; then compile and execute it. **Figure 6-12** shows an execution during which the user entered three invalid ratings before entering a valid one.

Figure 6-12 Typical execution of the CustomerSurvey application

```
Please enter a value that
represents your satisfaction with
our service.
Enter a value between 1
and 5
with 5 meaning highly
satisfied and
1 meaning not at all satisfied.
Enter your rating >> 0
You must enter a value
between 1 and 5
Please try again >> 7
You must enter a value
between 1 and 5
Please try again >> 6
You must enter a value
between 1 and 5
Please try again >> 5
Thank you.
```

6.3 Using Shortcut Arithmetic Operators

Programmers commonly need to increase the value of a variable in a program. As you saw in the previous section, many loops are controlled by continually adding 1 to some variable, as in `count = count + 1;`. Incrementing a variable in a loop to keep track of the number of occurrences of some event is also known as **counting**. Similarly, in the looping bank balance program shown in Figure 6-8, the program not only incremented the `year` variable by adding 1, it increased the bank balance by an interest amount with the statement `balance = balance + balance * INT_RATE;`. In other words, the bank balance became its old value *plus* a new interest amount; the process of repeatedly increasing a value by some amount is known as **accumulating**.

Because increasing a variable is so common, many modern languages, including Java, provide you with several shortcuts for incrementing and accumulating. The statement `count += 1;` is identical in meaning to `count = count + 1.` The **add and assign operator** (`+=`) adds and assigns in one operation. Similarly, `balance += balance * INT_RATE;` increases a balance by the `INT_RATE` percentage. Besides using the shortcut operator `+=`, you can use the **subtract and assign operator** (`-=`), the **multiply and assign operator** (`*=`), the **divide and assign operator** (`/=`), and the **remainder and assign operator** (`%=`). Each of these operators is used to perform the operation and assign the result in one step. For example, `balanceDue -= payment` subtracts `payment` from `balanceDue` and assigns the result to `balanceDue`.

When you want to increase a variable's value by exactly 1, you can use two other shortcut operators—the **prefix increment operator** and the **postfix increment operator**.

To use a prefix increment operator, you type two plus signs before the variable name. The statement `someValue = 6;` followed by `++someValue;` results in `someValue` holding 7—one more than it held before you applied the `++`. To use a postfix increment operator, you type two plus signs just after a variable name. The statements `anotherValue = 56;` `anotherValue++;` result in `anotherValue` containing 57. **Figure 6-13** shows four ways you can increase a value by 1; each method produces the same result. You are never required to use shortcut operators; they are merely a convenience.

You cannot use the prefix `++` and postfix `++` operators with constants. An expression such as `++84;` is illegal because an 84 must always remain an 84. However, you can create a variable named `val`, assign 84 to it, and then write `++val;` or `val++;` to increase the variable's value.

Note

The prefix and postfix increment operators are unary operators because you use them with one value. Most arithmetic operators, such as those used for addition and multiplication, are binary operators—they operate on two values. Other examples of unary operators include the cast operator, as well as `(+)` and `(-)` when used to indicate positive and negative values.

When you simply want to increase a variable's value by 1, there is no difference in the outcome whether you use the prefix or postfix increment operator. For example, when `value` is set to 24 in Figure 6-13, both `++value` and `value++` result in `value` becoming 25. However, when a prefix or postfix operator is used as part of a larger expression, it does make a difference which operator you use because they function differently in terms of what they *return*.

- » When a prefix operator is used in an expression, the value *after* the calculation is returned.
- » When a postfix operator is used in an expression, the value *before* the calculation is returned.

When you use the prefix `++`, the result is calculated, and then its value is used. For example, consider the following statements:

```
b = 4;
c = ++b;
```

The result after the second statement is that both `b` and `c` hold the value 5 because `b` is increased to 5 and then the value of the expression is assigned to `c`.

Figure 6-13 Four ways to add 1 to a value

```
int value;
value = 24;
++value; // Result: value is 25
value = 24;
value++; // Result: value is 25
value = 24;
value = value + 1; // Result: value is 25
value = 24;
value += 1; // Result: value is 25
```

When you use the postfix `++`, the value of the expression before the increase is stored. For example, consider these statements:

```
b = 4;
c = b++;
```

The result after the second statement is that `c` is only 4, but `b` is 5. The value of `b` is assigned to `c` *before* `b` is incremented. In other words, if `b = 4`, the value of `b++` is also 4, but after the statement is completed, the value of `b` is 5.

Figure 6-14 shows an application that illustrates the difference between how the prefix and postfix increment operators work. Notice from the output in **Figure 6-15** that when the prefix increment operator is used on `myNumber`, the value of `myNumber` increases from 17 to 18, and the result is stored in `answer`, which also becomes 18. After the value is reset to 17, the postfix increment operator is used; 17 is assigned to `answer`, and `myNumber` is incremented to 18.

Figure 6-14 The `PrefixPostfixDemo` application

```
public class PrefixPostfixDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int myNumber, answer;
        myNumber = 17;
        System.out.println("Before incrementing, myNumber is " +
            myNumber);
        answer = ++myNumber;
        System.out.println("After prefix increment, myNumber is " +
            myNumber);
        System.out.println(" and answer is " + answer);
        myNumber = 17;
        System.out.println("Before incrementing, myNumber is " +
            myNumber);
        answer = myNumber++;
        System.out.println("After postfix increment, myNumber is " +
            myNumber);
        System.out.println(" and answer is " + answer);
    }
}
```

Figure 6-15 Output of the `PrefixPostfixDemo` application

```
Before incrementing, myNumber is 17
After prefix increment, myNumber is 18
    and answer is 18
Before incrementing, myNumber is 17
After postfix increment, myNumber is 18
    and answer is 17
```

Choosing whether to use a prefix or postfix operator is important when one is part of a larger expression. For example, if `d` is 5, then `2 * ++d` is 12, but `2 * d++` is 10.

Similar logic can be applied when you use the **prefix decrement operator** and the **postfix decrement operator**. For example, if $b = 4$ and $c = b--$, 4 is assigned to c , but b is decreased and takes the value 3. If $b = 4$ and $c = --b$, b is decreased to 3 and 3 is assigned to c .

Two Truths & a Lie | Using Shortcut Arithmetic Operators

1. Assume that $x = 4$ and $y = 5$. The value of $++y + ++x$ is 11.
2. Assume that $x = 4$ and $y = 5$. The value of $y == x++$ is true.
3. Assume that $x = 4$ and $y = 5$. The value of $y += x$ is 9.

The false statement is #2. If x is 4 and y is 5, then the value of $x++$ is 4, so y is not equal to 4.

You Do It | Working with Prefix and Postfix Increment Operators

Next, you write an application that demonstrates how prefix and postfix operators are used to increment variables and how incrementing affects the expressions that contain these operators.

1. Start a new application named `DemoIncrement` by typing the following:

```
public class DemoIncrement
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

2. On a new line, add a variable `v`, and assign it a value of 4. Then declare a variable named `plusPlusV`, and assign it a value of `++v` by typing the following:

```
int v = 4;
int plusPlusV = ++v;
```

3. The last statement, `int plusPlusV = ++v;`, increases `v` to 5, so before declaring a `vPlusPlus` variable to which you assign `v++`, reset `v` to 4 by typing the following:

```
v = 4;
int vPlusPlus = v++;
```

4. Add the following statements to display the three values:

```
System.out.println("v is " + v);
System.out.println("++v is " + plusPlusV);
System.out.println("v++ is " + vPlusPlus);
```

5. Add the closing curly brace for the `main()` method and the closing curly brace for the `DemoIncrement` class. Save the file as `DemoIncrement.java`; then compile and execute the program. Your output should look like **Figure 6-16**.

6. To illustrate how comparisons are made, add a few more variables to the `DemoIncrement` program. Change the class name to `DemoIncrement2`, and immediately save the file as `DemoIncrement2.java`.

Figure 6-16 Output of the `DemoIncrement` application

```
v is 5
++v is 5
v++ is 4
```

7. After the last `println()` statement, add three new integer variables and two new Boolean variables. The first Boolean variable compares `++w` to `y`; the second Boolean variable compares `x++` to `y`:

```
int w = 17, x = 17, y = 18;
boolean compare1 = (++w == y);
boolean compare2 = (x++ == y);
```

8. Add the following statements to display the values stored in the `compare` variables:

```
System.out.println("First compare is " + compare1);
System.out.println("Second compare is " + compare2);
```

9. Save the file again, and then compile and run the program. The output appears in **Figure 6-17**. Make certain you understand why each statement displays the values it does. Experiment by changing the values of the variables, and see if you can predict the output before recompiling and rerunning the program.

Figure 6-17 Output of the `DemoIncrement2` application

```
v is 5
++v is 5
v++ is 4
First compare is true
Second compare is false
```

6.4 Creating a for Loop

A **for loop** is a special loop that is convenient to use when a definite number of loop iterations is required; it provides a concise way to create a counter-controlled loop. Although a `while` loop also can be used to meet this requirement, the `for` loop provides you with a shorthand notation for this type of loop. When you use a `for` loop, you can indicate the starting value for the loop control variable, the test condition that controls loop entry, and the expression that alters the loop control variable—all in one convenient place.

You begin a `for` loop with the keyword `for` followed by a set of parentheses. Within the parentheses are three sections separated by exactly two semicolons. The three sections are usually used for the following:

- › Initializing the loop control variable
- › Testing the loop control variable
- › Updating the loop control variable

The body of the `for` statement follows the parentheses. As with an `if` statement or a `while` loop, you can use a single statement as the body of a `for` loop, or you can use a block of statements enclosed in curly braces. Many programmers recommend that you always use a set of curly braces to surround the body of a `for` loop for clarity, even when the body contains only a single statement. You should use the conventions recommended by your organization.

Assuming that a variable named `val` has been declared as an integer, the `for` statement shown in **Figure 6-18** produces the same output as the `while` statement shown below it—both display the integers 1 through 10.

Within the parentheses of the `for` statement shown in Figure 6-18, the following steps take place:

- › The first section prior to the first semicolon initializes `val` to 1. The program executes this statement once, no matter how many times the body of the `for` loop executes.
- › After initialization, program control passes to the middle, or test section, of the `for` statement that lies between the two semicolons. If the Boolean expression found there evaluates to `true`, the body of the `for` loop is entered. In the program segment shown in Figure 6-18, `val` initially is set to 1, so when `val < 11` is tested, it evaluates to `true`.

Figure 6-18 A `for` loop and a `while` loop that display the integers 1 through 10

```
for(val = 1; val < 11; ++val)
{
    System.out.println(val);
}

val = 1;
while(val < 11)
{
    System.out.println(val);
    ++val;
}
```

- › The loop body displays `val`. In this example, the loop body is a single statement, so no curly braces are needed (although they could be added).
- › After the loop body executes, the final one-third of the `for` loop that follows the second semicolon executes, and `val` is increased to 2.
- › Following the third section in the `for` statement, program control returns to the second section, where `val` is compared to 11 a second time. Because `val` is still less than 11, the body executes: `val` (now 2) is displayed.
- › Then the third, altering portion of the `for` loop executes again. The variable `val` increases to 3, and the `for` loop continues.
- › Eventually, when `val` is not less than 11 (after 1 through 10 have been displayed), the `for` loop ends, and the program continues with any statements that follow the `for` loop.

Variations in `for` Loops

Although the three sections of the `for` loop are most commonly used to hold single expressions for initializing, testing, and incrementing, you also can perform the following tasks:

- › Initialization of more than one variable in the first section of the `for` statement by placing commas between the separate statements, as in the following:

```
for(g = 0, h = 1; g < 6; ++g)
```

- › Declaration of a variable within a `for` statement, as in the following:

```
for(int val = 1; val < 11; ++val)
```

Programmers often use this technique when the loop control variable is not needed in any other part of the program. If you declare a variable within a `for` statement, the variable can only be used in the block that depends on the `for` statement; when the block ends, the variable goes out of scope.

- › Performance of more than one test using compound conditions in the second section, as in the following:

```
for(g = 0; g < 3 && h > 1; ++g)
```

- › Decrementation or performance of some other task in the third section, as in the following:

```
for(g = 5; g >= 1; --g)
```

- › Performance of multiple actions in the third section, separated by commas, as in the following:

```
for(g = 0; g < 10; ++g, ++h, sum += g)
```

- › Use of method calls in any section of the `for` statement, as in the following example. Here, the `isFinished()` method would be required to return a Boolean value, and the `alter()` method would be required to return a data type accepted by `x`.

```
for(x = initMethod(); isFinished(); x = alter(x))
```

- › Leaving one or more portions of a `for` loop empty, although the two semicolons are still required as placeholders. For example, if `x` has been initialized in a previous program statement, you might write the following:

```
for(; x < 10; ++x)
```

You might encounter `for` loops in which all three sections of the `for` statement are left empty. For example, consider the `Clock` class in **Figure 6-19**. The program contains a `for` loop that is meant to execute infinitely and display a clock with an updated time every second. Within the loop, the current time is retrieved using the `LocalDateTime` class. If the `getSecond()` value has changed since the last loop execution, the hour, minute, and second are displayed and the `prevSec` variable is updated.

Figure 6-20 shows a typical execution of the program in Figure 6-19. The user stopped the program after several seconds by holding down the Ctrl key and pressing C.

Figure 6-19 The Clock application

```

import java.time.*;
public class Clock
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        LocalDateTime now;
        int nowSec;
        int prevSec = 0;
        for (;;)
        {
            now = LocalDateTime.now();
            nowSec = now.getSecond();
            if(nowSec != prevSec)
            {
                System.out.println(now.getHour() + " : " +
                    now.getMinute() + " : " + nowSec);
                prevSec = nowSec;
            }
        }
    }
}

```

Figure 6-20 Typical execution of the Clock application

```

16 : 8 : 54
16 : 8 : 55
16 : 8 : 56
16 : 8 : 57
16 : 8 : 58
16 : 8 : 59
16 : 9 : 0
16 : 9 : 1
16 : 9 : 2
16 : 9 : 3
16 : 9 : 4
16 : 9 : 5
16 : 9 : 6
16 : 9 : 7

```

In general, you should use the same loop control variable in all three parts of a `for` statement, although you might see some programs written by others in which this is not the case. You also should avoid altering the loop control variable in the body of the loop. If a variable is altered both within a `for` statement and within the block it controls, it can be very difficult to follow the program’s logic. This technique also can produce program bugs that are hard to find. Usually, you should use the `for` loop for its intended purpose—as a shorthand way of programming a definite loop.

Occasionally, you will encounter a `for` loop that contains no body but was purposely written that way, such as the following:

```
for(x = 0; x < 100000; ++x);
```

Notice the final semicolon in this statement. This loop is a **do-nothing loop** that performs no actions in its body. It simply uses time—that is, it occupies the central processing unit for thousands of processing cycles because a brief pause is desired during program execution. As with `if` and `while` statements, you usually do not want to place a semicolon at the end of the `for` statement before the body of the loop. Java also contains a built-in method to pause program execution. The `sleep()` method is part of the `Thread` class in the `java.lang` package, and the time for which it pauses is more accurate than using a `for` loop. You will learn how to use the method as you continue to study Java.

Note

Java also supports an *enhanced for* loop. You will learn about this loop when you learn about arrays later in this course.

Two Truths & a Lie | Creating a for Loop

1. A `for` loop must always contain two semicolons within its parentheses.
2. The body of a `for` loop might never execute.
3. Within the parentheses of a `for` loop, the last section must alter the loop control variable.

The false statement is #3. Frequently, the third section of a `for` loop is used to alter the loop control variable, but it is not required.

You Do It | Working with Definite Loops

Suppose you want to find all the numbers that divide evenly into 100. You want to write a definite loop—one that executes exactly 100 times. In this section, you write a `for` loop that sets a variable to 1 and increments it to 100. Each of the 100 times through the loop, if 100 is evenly divisible by the variable, the application displays the number.

1. Start a new application named `DivideEvenly` by typing the following code. Use a named constant for the 100 value and a variable named `var` that will hold, in turn, every value from 1 through 100:

```
public class DivideEvenly
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        final int LIMIT = 100;
        int var;
```

2. Type a statement that explains the purpose of the program:

```
System.out.print(LIMIT + " is evenly divisible by ");
```

3. Write the `for` loop that varies `var` from 1 through 100. With each iteration of the loop, test whether 100 percent `var` is 0. If you divide 100 by a number and there is no remainder, the number goes into 100 evenly.

```
for(var = 1; var <= LIMIT; ++var)
    if(LIMIT % var == 0)
        System.out.print(var + " ");
```

4. Add an empty `println()` statement to advance the insertion point to the next line by typing the following:

```
System.out.println();
```

5. Type the closing curly braces for the `main()` method and the `DivideEvenly` class.

6. Save the program as `DivideEvenly.java`. Compile and run the program. **Figure 6-21** shows the output.

Figure 6-21 Output of the `DivideEvenly` application



```
100 is evenly divisible by 1 2 4 5 10 20 25 50 100
```

7. By definition, no value that is greater than half of `LIMIT` can possibly go into `LIMIT` evenly. Therefore, the loop in the `DivideEvenly` program could be made to execute faster if the loop executes while `var` is less than or equal to half of `LIMIT`. If you decide to make this change to the program, remember that you must include the value of `LIMIT` in the output because it is evenly divisible into itself.

6.5 Learning How and When to Use a do...while Loop

With all the loops you have written so far, the loop body might execute many times, but it also is possible that the loop will not execute at all. For example, recall the bank balance program that displays compound interest, which was shown in Figure 6-8. The program begins by asking whether the user wants to see next year's balance. If the user doesn't enter a 1 for yes, the loop body never executes.

Similarly, recall the EnterSmallValue application in Figure 6-10. The user is prompted to enter a value, and if the user enters a value that is 3 or less, the error-reporting loop body never executes.

In each of these cases, the loop control variable is evaluated at the “top” of the loop before the body has a chance to execute. Both `while` loops and `for` loops are pretest loops. A **pretest loop** is one in which the loop control variable is tested before the loop body executes.

Sometimes, you might need to ensure that a loop body executes at least one time. If so, you want to write a loop that checks at the “bottom” of the loop after the first iteration. The **do...while loop** is such a loop; it is a **posttest loop**—one in which the loop control variable is tested after the loop body executes.

Figure 6-22 shows the general structure of a `do...while` loop. Notice that the loop body executes before the loop-controlling question is asked even one time. In other words, the decision is at the end of the loop body, making this a posttest loop.

Figure 6-23 shows a `BankBalance2` application that contains a `do...while` loop. The loop starts with the keyword `do`. The body of the loop follows and is contained within curly braces. The first year’s balance is output before the user has any option of responding. At the bottom of the loop, the user is prompted, *Do you want to see the balance at the end of another year?* Now the user has the option of seeing more balances, but viewing the first display was unavoidable. The user’s response is checked in the evaluation at the bottom of the loop; if it is `1` for yes, the loop repeats.

Figure 6-22 General structure of a `do...while` loop

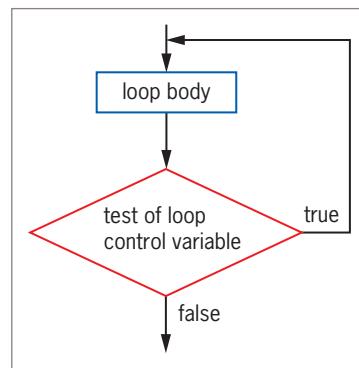


Figure 6-23 A `do...while` loop for the `BankBalance2` application

```

import java.util.Scanner;
public class BankBalance2
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        double balance;
        int response;
        int year = 1;
        final double INT_RATE = 0.03;
        Scanner keyboard = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Enter initial bank balance > ");
        balance = keyboard.nextDouble();
        keyboard.nextLine();
        do
        {
            balance = balance + balance * INT_RATE;
            System.out.println("After year " + year + " at " + INT_RATE +
                " interest rate, balance is $" + balance);
            year = year + 1;
            System.out.println("\nDo you want to see the balance " +
                "at the end of another year?");
            System.out.println("Enter 1 for yes");
            System.out.print(" or any other number for no >> ");
            response = keyboard.nextInt();
        } while(response == 1);
    }
}
  
```

The keyword `do` starts the loop.

The loop control variable is tested after the loop body executes.

Figure 6-24 shows a typical execution of the `BankBalance2` program. During the execution, the bank balance with interest is shown once before the first time the user is asked *Do you want to see the balance at the end of another year?*

Figure 6-24 Typical execution of the BankBalance2 program

```
Enter initial bank balance > 2000
After year 1 at 0.03  interest rate, balance is $2060.0

Do you want to see the balance at the end of another year?
Enter 1 for yes
    or any other number for no >> 1
After year 2 at 0.03  interest rate, balance is $2121.8

Do you want to see the balance at the end of another year?
Enter 1 for yes
    or any other number for no >> 2
```

When the body of a do...while loop contains a single statement, you do not need to use curly braces to block the statement. For example, the following loop correctly adds `numberValue` to `total` while `total` remains less than 200:

```
do
    total += numberValue;
while(total < 200);
```

Even though curly braces are not required in this case, many programmers recommend using them. Doing so prevents the third line of code from looking like it should begin a new while loop instead of ending the previous do...while loop. Therefore, even though the result is the same, the following example that includes curly braces is less likely to be misunderstood by a reader:

```
do
{
    total += numberValue;
} while(total < 200);
```

You are never required to use a do...while loop. In the bank balance example, you could achieve the same results as the logic shown in Figure 6-23 by unconditionally displaying the first year's bank balance once before starting the loop, prompting the user, and then starting a while loop that might not be entered. However, when you know you want to perform some task at least one time, the do...while loop is convenient.

Two Truths & a Lie | Learning How and When to Use a do...while Loop

1. The do...while loop checks the value of the loop control variable at the top of the loop prior to loop execution.
2. When the statements in a loop body must execute at least one time, it is convenient to use a do...while loop.
3. When the body of a do...while loop contains a single statement, you do not need to use curly braces to block the statement.

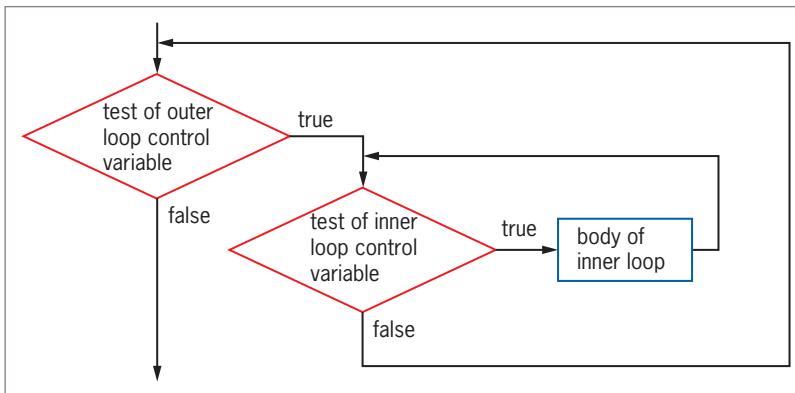
The false statement is #1. The do...while loop checks the value of the loop control variable at the bottom of the loop after one repetition has occurred.

6.6 Learning About Nested Loops

Just as if statements can be nested, so can loops. **Nested loops** occur when a loop is coded inside another loop. You can place a while loop within a while loop, a for loop within a for loop, a while loop within a for loop, or any other combination. When loops are nested, each pair contains an **inner loop** and an **outer loop**. The inner loop must be entirely contained within the outer loop; loops can never overlap.

Figure 6-25 shows a diagram in which an inner loop is nested within an outer loop. You can nest virtually any number of loops; however, at some point, your machine will no longer be able to store all the necessary looping information.

Figure 6-25 Nested loops



Note | You have learned that decisions can be nested but can never overlap. The same is true for loops.

Suppose you want to display future bank balances while varying both years and interest rates. **Figure 6-26** shows an application that contains an outer loop that varies interest rates between specified limits and an inner loop that varies a number of years.

Figure 6-26 The `BankBalanceByRateAndYear` class containing nested loops

```

import java.util.Scanner;
public class BankBalanceByRateAndYear
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        double initialBalance;
        double balance;
        int year;
        double interest;
        final double LOW = 0.02;
        final double HIGH = 0.05;
        final double INCREMENT = 0.01;
        final int MAX_YEAR = 4;
        Scanner keyboard = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Enter initial bank balance > ");
        initialBalance = keyboard.nextDouble();
        keyboard.nextLine();
        for(interest = LOW; interest <= HIGH; interest += INCREMENT)
        {
            balance = initialBalance;
            System.out.println("\nWith an initial balance of $" +
                balance + " at an interest rate of " + interest);
            for(year = 1; year <= MAX_YEAR; ++ year)
            {
                balance = balance + balance * interest;
                System.out.println("After year " + year +
                    " balance is $" + balance);
            }
        }
    }
}
  
```

The loop that varies interest is the outer loop.

The loop that varies year is the inner loop.

At the start of the outer loop in Figure 6-26, the value of `interest` is set to `LOW`; the outer loop will execute once for each interest rate value from `LOW` to `HIGH`. Within the loop, `balance` is set to `initialBalance` so that the four calculations for each interest rate all start with the same balance. Once the starting balance is set, the inner loop varies the number of years from 1 through 4 and displays each calculated balance. **Figure 6-27** shows a typical execution.

Figure 6-27 Typical execution of the `BankBalanceByRateAndYear` program

```
Enter initial bank balance > 1000.00

With an initial balance of $1000.0 at an interest rate of 0.02
After year 1 balance is $1020.0
After year 2 balance is $1040.4
After year 3 balance is $1061.208
After year 4 balance is $1082.43216

With an initial balance of $1000.0 at an interest rate of 0.03
After year 1 balance is $1030.0
After year 2 balance is $1060.9
After year 3 balance is $1092.727
After year 4 balance is $1125.50881

With an initial balance of $1000.0 at an interest rate of 0.04
After year 1 balance is $1040.0
After year 2 balance is $1081.6
After year 3 balance is $1124.8639999999998
After year 4 balance is $1169.85856

With an initial balance of $1000.0 at an interest rate of 0.05
After year 1 balance is $1050.0
After year 2 balance is $1102.5
After year 3 balance is $1157.625
After year 4 balance is $1215.50625
```

Note

In Figure 6-27, the floating-point calculations result in balances that contain fractions of pennies. If you wrote this program for a bank, you would have to ask whether interest should be compounded on fractions of a cent, as it is here, or whether the amounts should be either rounded or truncated.

When you nest loops, sometimes it doesn't make any difference which variable controls the outer loop and which variable controls the inner one, but frequently it does make a difference. When you use a loop within a loop, you should always think of the outer loop as the all-encompassing loop. The variable in the outer loop changes more infrequently. For example, suppose a method named `outputLabel()` creates customer mailing labels in three different colors to use in successive promotional mailings, and that the `color` value is stored as an integer. The following nested loop calls the `outputLabel()` method 60 times and produces three labels for the first customer, three labels for the second customer, and so on:

```
for(customer = 1; customer <= 20; ++customer)
    for(color = 1; color <= 3; ++color)
        outputLabel();
```

The following nested loop also calls `outputLabel()` 60 times, and it ultimately produces the same 60 labels, but it creates 20 labels in the first color, 20 labels in the second color, and then 20 labels in the third color.

```
for(color = 1; color <= 3; ++color)
    for(customer = 1; customer <= 20; ++customer)
        outputLabel();
```

If changing the ink color is a time-consuming process that occurs in the `outputLabel()` method, the second nested loop might execute much faster than the first one.

Two Truths & a Lie

Learning About Nested Loops

1. You can place a `while` loop within a `while` loop or a `for` loop within a `for` loop, but you cannot mix loop types.
2. An inner nested loop must be entirely contained within its outer loop.
3. The body of the following loop executes 20 times:

```
for(int x = 0; x < 4; ++x)
    for(int y = 0; y < 5; ++y)
        System.out.println("Hi");
```

The false statement is #1. You can place a `while` loop within a `while` loop, a `for` loop within a `for` loop, a `while` loop within a `for` loop, or any other combination.

You Do It

Working with Nested Loops

Suppose you want to know not just what numbers go evenly into 100, but also what numbers go evenly into every positive number, up to and including 100. You can write 99 more loops—one that shows the numbers that divide evenly into 1, another that shows the numbers that divide evenly into 2, and so on—or you can place the current loop inside a different, outer loop, as you do next.

1. If necessary, open the file `DivideEvenly.java`, change the class name to `DivideEvenly2`, and then save the class as `DivideEvenly2.java`.
2. Add a new variable declaration at the beginning of the file with the other variable declarations:

```
int number;
```

3. Replace the existing `for` loop with the following nested loop. The outer loop varies `number` from 1 to 100. For each number in the outer loop, the inner loop uses each positive integer from 1 up to the number and tests whether it divides evenly into the number:

```
for(number = 1; number <= LIMIT; ++number)
{
    System.out.print(number + " is evenly divisible by ");
    for(var = 1; var <= number; ++var)
        if(number % var == 0)
            System.out.print(var + " ");
    System.out.println();
}
```

4. Make certain the file ends with three curly braces—one for the `for` outer loop that varies `number`, one for the `main()` method, and one for the class. The inner loop does not need curly braces because it contains a single output statement, although you could add a set of braces for the loop.
5. Save the file as `DivideEvenly2.java`, and then compile and execute the application. When the output stops scrolling, it should look similar to **Figure 6-28**.

Figure 6-28 Output of the DivideEvenly2 application when scrolling stops

```
85 is evenly divisible by 1 5 17 85
86 is evenly divisible by 1 2 43 86
87 is evenly divisible by 1 3 29 87
88 is evenly divisible by 1 2 4 8 11 22 44 88
89 is evenly divisible by 1 89
90 is evenly divisible by 1 2 3 5 6 9 10 15 18 30 45 90
91 is evenly divisible by 1 7 13 91
92 is evenly divisible by 1 2 4 23 46 92
93 is evenly divisible by 1 3 31 93
94 is evenly divisible by 1 2 47 94
95 is evenly divisible by 1 5 19 95
96 is evenly divisible by 1 2 3 4 6 8 12 16 24 32 48 96
97 is evenly divisible by 1 97
98 is evenly divisible by 1 2 7 14 49 98
99 is evenly divisible by 1 3 9 11 33 99
100 is evenly divisible by 1 2 4 5 10 20 25 50 100
```

6.7 Improving Loop Performance

Whether you decide to use a while, for, or do...while loop in an application, you can improve loop performance by doing one or more of the following things:

- › Making sure the loop does not include unnecessary operations or statements
- › Considering the order of evaluation for short-circuit operators
- › Making a comparison to 0
- › Employing loop fusion to combine loops

If a loop executes only a few times, implementing the suggestions presented in this section won't change program performance very much, but for a large-scale application in which speed is important, some of these suggestions can make a difference. Thinking about these suggestions also improves your understanding of how loops work.

Avoiding Unnecessary Operations

You can make loops more efficient by not using unnecessary operations or statements, either within a loop's tested expression or within the loop body. For example, suppose a loop should execute while *x* is less than the sum of two integers, *a* and *b*. The loop could be written as:

```
while(x < a + b) //sum is recalculated for every iteration
    // loop body
```

If this loop executes 1,000 times, then the expression *a* + *b* is calculated 1,000 times. Instead, if you use the following code, the results are the same, but the arithmetic is performed only once:

```
int sum = a + b; // sum is calculated just once
while(x < sum)
    // loop body
```

Of course, if `a` or `b` is altered in the loop body, then a new sum must be calculated with every loop iteration. However, if the sum of `a` and `b` is fixed prior to the start of the loop, then writing the code the second way is far more efficient.

Similarly, if the method `getNumberOfEmployees()` always returns the same value during a program's execution, then a loop that begins as follows might unnecessarily call the method many times:

```
while(count < getNumberOfEmployees()) ...
```

It is more efficient to call the method once, store the result in a variable, and use the variable in the repeated evaluations, as in this example:

```
numEmployees = getNumberOfEmployees();
while(count < numEmployees) ...
```

Considering the Order of Evaluation of Short-Circuit Operators

You have learned that the operands in each part of an AND or an OR expression use short-circuit evaluation; that is, they are evaluated only as much as necessary to determine whether the entire expression is `true` or `false`. When a loop might execute many times, it becomes increasingly important to consider the number of evaluations that take place.

For example, suppose a user can request any number of printed copies of a report from 0 to 15, and you want to validate the user's input before proceeding. If you believe that users are far more likely to enter a value that is too high than to enter a negative one, then you want to start a loop that reprompts the user with the following expression:

```
while(requestedNum > LIMIT || requestedNum < 0) ...
```

Because you believe that the first Boolean expression is more likely to be `true` than the second one, you can eliminate testing the second one on more occasions. The order of the expressions might not be very important in a single loop, but if this loop is nested within another loop, the difference in the number of comparisons increases. Similarly, when compound `if` statements are contained in a loop that might execute thousands of times, the order of the evaluations in `if` statements is more important than when the evaluation is made only once.

Comparing to Zero

Making a comparison to 0 is faster than making a comparison to any other value. Therefore, if your application makes comparison to 0 feasible, you can improve loop performance by structuring your loops to compare the loop control variable to 0 instead of some other value. For example, a loop that performs based on a variable that varies from 0 up to 100,000 executes the same number of times as a loop based on a variable that varies from 100,000 down to 0. However, the second loop performs slightly faster. Comparing a value to 0 instead of other values is faster because in a compiled language, condition flags for the comparison are set once, no matter how many times the loop executes. Comparing a value to 0 is faster than comparing to other values, no matter which comparison operator you use—greater than, less than, equal to, and so on.

Figure 6-29 contains a program that tests the execution times of two nested do-nothing loops. The program declares variables to hold a `startTime` before each nested loop begins and an `endTime` after each nested loop is complete. Before each nested loop execution, the current time is retrieved from the `LocalDateTime` class, and the value of the nanoseconds (billions of a second) is retrieved using the `getNano()` method. After each nested loop repeats 100,000 times, the current time is retrieved again. Subtracting one time from the other computes the interval, and dividing by 1 million converts nanoseconds to more readable milliseconds.

As the execution in **Figure 6-30** shows, there is a small difference in execution time between the two loops in the program in Figure 6-29—about one-tenth of a second. The amount of time varies on different machines and for subsequent executions on the same machine, depending on events occurring elsewhere on the machine during the

Figure 6-29 The CompareLoopTimes application

```

import java.time.*;
public class CompareLoopTimes
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int startTime, endTime;
        final int REPEAT = 100_000;
        final int FACTOR = 1_000_000;
        LocalDateTime now;
        now = LocalDateTime.now();
        startTime = now.getNano();
        for(int x = 0; x <= REPEAT; ++x)
            for(int y = 0; y <= REPEAT; ++y); ━━━━━━ Nested do-nothing loop
        now = LocalDateTime.now();
        endTime = now.getNano();
        System.out.println("Time for loops starting from 0: " +
                           ((endTime - startTime) / FACTOR) + " milliseconds");
        now = LocalDateTime.now();
        startTime = now.getNano();
        for(int x = REPEAT; x >= 0; --x)
            for(int y = REPEAT; y >= 0; --y); ━━━━━━ Nested do-nothing loop
        now = LocalDateTime.now();
        endTime = now.getNano();
        System.out.println("Time for loops ending with 0: " +
                           ((endTime - startTime) / FACTOR) + " milliseconds");
    }
}

```

Figure 6-30 Typical execution of the CompareLoopTimes application

```

Time for loops starting from 0: 123 milliseconds
Time for loops ending with 0: 14 milliseconds

```

same time period, but the loop that uses the 0 comparison will never be slower than the other one. The difference would become more pronounced with additional repetitions or further nesting levels. For example, if the value of the loop control variable was needed within the loops to display a count to the user, then you might be required to vary the loop starting with 0. However, if the purposes of the loops are just to count iterations, you might consider making the loop comparison use 0.

Note

Note the use of the underscores in the large numbers in the CompareLoopTimes application. The underscores are not required, but they make the numbers easier to read.

Note

If you execute the program in Figure 6-29, you probably will see different results. With a fast operating system, you might not see the differences shown in Figure 6-30. If that is the case, experiment with the program by increasing the value of REPEAT or by adding more nested levels to the loops.

Note

When you execute the `CompareLoopTimes` program, you will occasionally see a negative number output. Such output occurs when the nanoseconds values retrieved fall in different seconds so that the start time is a very high nanosecond number in one second and the end time is a very low number in the next second.

Employing Loop Fusion

Loop fusion is the technique of combining two loops into one. For example, suppose you want to call two methods 100 times each. You can set a constant named `TIMES` to 100 and use the following code:

```
for(int x = 0; x < TIMES; ++x)
    method1();
for(int x = 0; x < TIMES; ++x)
    method2();
```

However, you can also use the following code:

```
for(int x = 0; x < TIMES; ++x)
{
    method1();
    method2();
}
```

Fusing loops will not work in every situation; sometimes all the activities for all the executions of `method1()` must be finished before those in `method2()` can begin. However, if the two methods do not depend on each other, fusing the loops can improve performance.

A Final Note on Improving Loop Performance

In the previous sections, you have learned to improve loop performance by eliminating unnecessary operations, considering the order of evaluation for short-circuit operators, making comparisons to 0, and employing loop fusion. As you become an experienced programmer, you will discover other ways to enhance the operation of the programs you write. You should always be on the lookout for ways to improve program performance. However, almost all business professionals agree that if saving a few milliseconds ends up making your code harder to understand, you have not succeeded. For most business applications, you almost always should err in favor of programs that are more readable and easier to maintain, even if they execute more slowly.

Two Truths & a Lie | Improving Loop Performance

1. You can improve the performance of a loop by making sure the loop does not include unnecessary operations in the tested expression.
2. You can improve loop performance by making sure the loop does not include unnecessary operations in the body of the loop.
3. You can improve loop performance when two conditions must both be true by testing for the most likely occurrence first.

The false statement is #3. You can improve loop performance when two conditions must both be true by testing for the least likely occurrence first. That way, the second test will need to be performed less frequently.

You Do It | Comparing Execution Times for Separate and Fused Loops

In this section, you compare the execution times for accomplishing the same tasks using two loops or a single one.

1. Start a new application named `TestFusedLoopTime`.

```
import java.time.*;
public class TestFusedLoopTime
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

2. Create variables to hold starting and ending times for loop execution. Also declare a loop control variable, `x`, and two named constants that hold a number of times to repeat loops and a factor for converting nanoseconds to milliseconds:

```
int startTime, endTime;
int x;
final int REPEAT = 5_000_000;
final int FACTOR = 1_000_000;
```

Recall that the underscore can be used to make long numbers easier to read. The underscores could be omitted.

3. Declare a `LocalDateTime` object, initialize it to a starting time, and extract its nanoseconds component.

```
LocalDateTime now;
now = LocalDateTime.now();
startTime = now.getNano();
```

4. In a loop that repeats 5 million times, call a method named `method1()`. When the calls to `method1()` are complete, execute a second loop that also repeats 5 million times, calling another method named `method2()`.

```
for(x = 0; x < REPEAT; ++x)
    method1();
for(x = 0; x < REPEAT; ++x)
    method2();
```

5. When both loops are finished, get the current time, extract the nanoseconds value, and display the difference between the start time and the end time, expressed in milliseconds:

```
now = LocalDateTime.now();
endTime = now.getNano();
System.out.println("Time for loops executed separately: " +
    ((endTime - startTime) / FACTOR) + " milliseconds");
```

6. Get a new starting time, and, within a single loop, call `method1()` and `method2()` 5 million times each.

```
now = LocalDateTime.now();
startTime = now.getNano();
for(x = 0; x < REPEAT; ++x)
{
    method1();
    method2();
}
```

7. Get the ending time for the loop, and display the value of the elapsed interval. Add a closing curly brace for the method.

```
now = LocalDateTime.now();
endTime = now.getNano();
System.out.println("Time for loops executed in a block: " +
    ((endTime - startTime) / FACTOR) + " milliseconds");
}
```

8. Create the two methods named `method1()` and `method2()`. Each is simply a stub—a method that contains no statements. Add a closing curly brace for the class.

```
public static void method1()
{
}
public static void method2()
{
}
}
```

9. Save the file as `TestFusedLoopTime.java`, and then compile and execute it. **Figure 6-31** shows a typical execution. The times might differ on your system, but you should be able to see that using a single loop significantly improves performance over using separate loops.

Figure 6-31 Typical execution of the `TestFusedLoopTime` program

```
Time for loops executed separately: 111 milliseconds
Time for loops executed in a block: 6 milliseconds
```

10. Experiment with increasing and decreasing the value of `REPEAT`, and observe the effects. Experiment with adding statements to `method1()` and `method2()`, perhaps including do-nothing loops within one or both of the methods. The time values you observe also might differ when you run the program at different times, depending on what other tasks are running on your system concurrently.

Don't Do It

- › Don't insert a semicolon at the end of a `while` clause before the loop body; doing so creates an empty loop body.
- › Don't forget to block multiple statements that should execute in a loop.
- › Don't make the mistake of checking for invalid data by using a decision instead of a loop. Users might enter incorrect data multiple times, so a loop is the superior choice for input validation.
- › Don't ignore subtleties in the boundaries used to stop loop performance. For example, looping while interest rates are less than 3 percent is different from looping while interest rates are no more than 3 percent.
- › Don't repeat steps within a loop that could just as well be placed outside the loop; your program performance will improve if such steps are outside the loop.

Summary

- › A loop is a structure that allows repeated execution of a block of statements. Within a looping structure, a Boolean expression is evaluated, and if it is `true`, a block of statements called the loop body executes; then the Boolean expression is evaluated again.

- › You can use a `while` loop to execute a body of statements continually while some condition continues to be true. To correctly execute a `while` loop, you should initialize a loop control variable, test it in a `while` statement, and then alter the loop control variable in the loop body.
- › The add and assign operator (`+=`) adds the value on the right side of the operator to the variable on the left. Similar operations are available for subtraction, multiplication, and division. The prefix and postfix increment operators increase a variable's value by 1. The prefix and postfix decrement operators reduce a variable's value by 1. The prefix operator alters its operand and then uses it; the postfix operator uses the value and then alters it.
- › A `for` loop initializes, tests, and increments in one statement. There are three sections within the parentheses of a `for` loop that are separated by exactly two semicolons.
- › The `do...while` loop tests a Boolean expression after one repetition has taken place. The test is performed at the bottom of the loop.
- › Loops can be nested, creating inner and outer loops.
- › You can improve loop performance by making sure the loop does not include unnecessary operations or statements and by considering factors such as short-circuit evaluation, zero comparisons, and loop fusion.

Key Terms

accumulating	incrementing	postfix increment operator
add and assign operator (<code>+=</code>)	indefinite loop	posttest loop
counted loop	infinite loop	prefix decrement operator
counter-controlled loop	inner loop	prefix increment operator
counting	iteration	pretest loop
decrementing	loop	priming input
definite loop	loop body	remainder and assign operator (<code>%=</code>)
divide and assign operator (<code>/=</code>)	loop control variable	sentinel
do-nothing loop	loop fusion	subtract and assign operator (<code>-=</code>)
do...while loop	multiply and assign operator (<code>*=</code>)	validating data
empty body	nested loops	while loop
event-controlled loop	outer loop	
for loop	postfix decrement operator	

Review Questions

1. A structure that allows repeated execution of a block of statements is a _____.
 - a. cycle
 - b. ring
 - c. loop
 - d. band
2. A loop that never ends is a(n) _____ loop.
 - a. infinite
 - b. iterative
 - c. structured
 - d. illegal

3. To construct a loop that works correctly, you should initialize a loop control _____.

- a. condition
- b. constant
- c. structure
- d. variable

4. What is the output of the following code?

```
b = 3;
while(b < 6)
    System.out.print(b + " ");
```

- a. 3
- b. 3 4 5
- c. 3 4 5 6
- d. 3 3 3 3 3 ...

5. What is the output of the following code?

```
b = 3;
while(b < 6)
{
    System.out.print(b + " ");
    b = b + 1;
}
```

- a. 3
- b. 3 4 5
- c. 3 4 5 6
- d. 3 3 3 3 3 ...

6. What is the output of the following code?

```
e = 1;
while(e < 4);
    System.out.print(e + " ");
```

- a. nothing
- b. 1
- c. 1 1 1 1 ...
- d. 4 4 4 4 4 ...

7. If total = 100 and amt = 200, then after the statement total += amt, _____.

- a. total is equal to 200
- b. total is equal to 300
- c. amt is equal to 100
- d. amt is equal to 300

8. The prefix ++ is a _____ operator.

- a. unary
- b. binary
- c. tertiary
- d. postfix

9. If g = 5, then after h = ++g, the value of h is _____.

- a. 4
- b. 5
- c. 6
- d. 7

10. If m = 9, then after n = m++, the value of m is _____.

- a. 8
- b. 9
- c. 10
- d. 11

11. If m = 9, then after n = m++, the value of n is _____.

- a. 8
- b. 9
- c. 10
- d. 11

12. If j = 5 and k = 6, then the value of j++ == k is _____.

- a. 5
- b. 6
- c. true
- d. false

13. You must always include _____ in a `for` loop's parentheses.

- a. two semicolons
- b. three semicolons
- c. two commas
- d. three commas

14. What does the following statement output?

```
for(a = 0; a < 5; ++a)
    System.out.print(a + " ");
a. 0 0 0 0
b. 0 1 2 3 4
```

- c. 0 1 2 3 4 5
- d. nothing

15. What does the following statement output?

```
for(b = 1; b > 3; ++b)
    System.out.print(b + " ");
a. 1 1 1
b. 1 2 3
```

- c. 1 2 3 4
- d. nothing

16. What does the following statement output?

```
for(f = 1, g = 4; f < g; ++f, --g)
    System.out.print(f + " " + g + " ");
a. 1 4 2 5 3 6 4 7...
b. 1 4 2 3 3 2
```

- c. 1 4 2 3
- d. nothing

17. The loop that performs its conditional check at the bottom of the loop is a _____ loop.

- a. while
- b. do...while
- c. for
- d. for...while

18. What does the following program segment output?

```
d = 0;
do
{
    System.out.print(d + " ");
    d++;
} while (d < 2);
```

- a. 0
- b. 0 1
- c. 0 1 2
- d. nothing

19. What does the following program segment output?

```
for(f = 0; f < 3; ++f)
    for(g = 0; g < 2; ++g)
        System.out.print(f + " " + g + " ");
```

- a. 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 1 2 0 2 1
- b. 0 1 0 2 0 3 1 1 1 2 1 3
- c. 0 1 0 2 1 1 1 2
- d. 0 0 0 1 0 2 1 0 1 1 1 2 2 0 2 1 2 2

20. What does the following program segment output?

```
for(m = 0; m < 4; ++m);
    for(n = 0; n < 2; ++n);
        System.out.print(m + " " + n + " ");
```

- a. 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 1 2 0 2 1 3 0 3 1
- b. 0 1 0 2 1 1 1 2 2 1 2 2
- c. 4 2
- d. 3 1

Programming Exercises

1. a. Write an application that includes final constants named START and STOP that are set to 5 and 500, respectively. The application counts by five from 5 through 500 inclusive, and it starts a new line after every multiple of 50 (50, 100, 150, and so on). Save the file as **CountByFives.java**.
 b. Modify the **CountByFives** application so that the user enters the value to count by. Start each new line after 10 values have been displayed. Save the file as **CountByAnything.java**.
2. Write an application that asks a user to type an even number or the sentinel value 999 to stop. When the user types an even number, display the message *Good job!* and then ask for another input. When the user types an odd number, display an error message and then ask for another input. When the user types the sentinel value 999, end the program. Save the file as **EvenEntryLoop.java**.
3. Write an application that displays the factorial for every integer value from 1 to a user-entered limit. A factorial of a number is the product of that number multiplied by each positive integer lower than it. For example, 4 factorial is $4 * 3 * 2 * 1$, or 24. (You can use the `int` data type for the factorial, but if you enter a number greater than 16, the results will be unexpected because the factorial value exceeds the largest value that can be stored in an `int`.) Save the file as **Factorials.java**.
4. Write an application that prompts a user for two integers and displays every integer between them. Display a message if there are no integers between the entered values. Make sure the program works regardless of which entered value is larger. Save the file as **Inbetween.java**.
5. Write an application that displays every perfect number from 1 through a user-supplied limit. A perfect number is one that equals the sum of all the numbers that divide evenly into it. For example, 6 is perfect because 1, 2, and 3 divide evenly into it, and their sum is 6; however, 12 is not a perfect number because 1, 2, 3, 4, and 6 divide evenly into it, and their sum is greater than 12. Save the file as **Perfect.java**.
6. Write an application that prompts the user for a single-digit integer and uses a loop to create the pattern shown in the example in **Figure 6-32**. In the example, the user entered a 3, and 10 lines are displayed; each 3 appears one additional space to the right. Save the file as **DiagonalNums.java**.
7. Accept a digit from the user, then display a seven-line triangle pattern that uses the digit. **Figure 6-33** shows a typical execution. The program can contain no more than three output statements. Save the file as **TriangleWithLoops.java**.
8. Write an application that allows a user to enter any number of student quiz scores until the user enters a sentinel 99. If the score entered is less than 0 or greater than 10, display an appropriate message and do not use the score. After all the scores have been entered, display the number of scores entered, the highest score, the lowest score, and the arithmetic average. Save the file as **QuizScoreStatistics.java**.
9. The Freemont Automobile Factory has set a goal that each worker will eventually produce 10,000 parts per month. The company has discovered that the longer a worker has been on the job, the more parts the worker can produce. Write an application that prompts for the number of parts a worker currently produces. Then compute and display a worker's anticipated output

Figure 6-32 Typical execution of the **DiagonalNums** application

```
Enter a single digit >> 3
3
 3
    3
      3
        3
          3
            3
              3
                3
                  3
```

Figure 6-33 Typical execution of the **TriangleWithLoops** application

```
Enter a digit >> 4
4
 44
    444
      4444
        44444
          444444
            4444444
              44444444
```

each month for 24 months, assuming the worker's production increases by 6 percent each month. Also display a message that shows the month number in which production exceeds 10,000 parts or a message indicating that the worker will not reach the goal within 24 months. Save the file as **IncreasedProduction.java**.

10. a. Write an application that prompts a user for the number of years the user has until retirement and the amount of money the user can save annually. If the user enters 0 or a negative number for either value, reprompt the user until valid entries are made. Assume that no interest is earned on the money. Display the amount of money the user will have at retirement. Save the file as **RetirementGoal.java**.
 b. Modify the **RetirementGoal** application to display the amount of money the user will have if the user earns 4 percent interest on the balance every year. Save the file as **RetirementGoal2.java**.
11. Assume that the population of Mexico is 128 million and the population of the United States is 323 million. Accept two values from a user: an assumption of an annual increase in the population of Mexico and an assumption for an annual decrease in the U.S. population. Accept both figures as percentages; in other words, a 1.5 percent decrease is entered as 0.015. Write an application that displays the populations of the two countries every year until the population of Mexico exceeds that of the United States, and display the number of years it took. Save the file as **Population.java**.
12. a. The Huntington High School basketball team has five players named Ali, Bob, Cai, Dan, and Eli. Accept the number of points scored by each player in a game, and create a bar chart that illustrates the points scored by displaying an asterisk for each point. The output looks similar to the chart in **Figure 6-34**. Save the file as **BarChart.java**.
 b. Modify the **BarChart** program to accept the number of points scored by each player in a season. The bar chart displays one asterisk for each 10 points scored by a player. For example, if a player has scored 48 points, then display four asterisks. Save the program as **BarChart2.java**.
13. Create a class named **Purchase**. Each **Purchase** contains an invoice number, amount of sale, and amount of sales tax. Include set methods for the invoice number and sale amount. Within the set method for the sale amount, calculate the sales tax as 5 percent of the sale amount. Also include a display method that displays a purchase's details. Save the file as **Purchase.java**. Next, create an application that declares a **Purchase** object and prompts the user for purchase details. When you prompt for an invoice number, do not let the user proceed until a number between 1,000 and 8,000 inclusive has been entered. When you prompt for a sale amount, do not proceed until the user has entered a nonnegative value. After a valid **Purchase** object has been created, display the object's invoice number, sale amount, and sales tax. Save the file as **CreatePurchase.java**.

Figure 6-34 Typical execution of the **BarChart** application

```
Enter points earned by Ali >> 5
Enter points earned by Bob >> 8
Enter points earned by Cai >> 14
Enter points earned by Dan >> 7
Enter points earned by Eli >> 2

Points for Game

Ali *****
Bob ******
Cai *****
Dan *****
Eli **
```

Debugging Exercises

1. Each of the following files in the Chapter06 folder of your downloadable student files has syntax and/or logic errors. In each case, determine the problem and fix the program. After you correct the errors, save each file using the same filename preceded with *Fix*. For example, *DebugSix1.java* will become *FixDebugSix1.java*.
 - a. *DebugSix1.java*
 - b. *DebugSix2.java*
 - c. *DebugSix3.java*
 - d. *DebugSix4.java*

Game Zone

1. a. Write an application that creates a quiz. The quiz should contain at least five questions about a hobby, popular music, astronomy, or any other personal interest. Each question should be a multiple-choice question with at least four answer options. When the user answers the question correctly, display a congratulatory message. If the user responds to a question incorrectly, display an appropriate message as well as the correct answer. At the end of the quiz, display the number of correct and incorrect answers and the percentage of correct answers. Save the file as **Quiz.java**.
 b. Modify the Quiz application so that the user is presented with each question continually until it is answered correctly. Remove the calculation for percentage of correct answers—all users will have 100 percent correct by the time they complete the application. Save the file as **Quiz2.java**.
2. Create a game that generates a random number from 1 to 10. Include a loop that continually prompts the user for the number, indicating whether the guess is high or low, until the user enters the correct value. After the user correctly guesses the number, display a count of the number of attempts it took. Save the file as **RandomGuess3.java**.
3. Many games use coin tosses, particularly to determine events such as which player takes the first turn in a game. When you toss one coin, the probability of getting “heads” is 50 percent. When you toss two coins, the probability of getting exactly one “head” is also 50 percent. (The possible tosses are HH, HT, TH, and TT.) When you toss four coins, is the probability of getting exactly two heads also 50 percent? Write a program that calculates the number of times exactly two heads come up in 1,000 attempts in four random coin toss sets. Run the program multiple times to ensure that your results are reasonably consistent, and then search the Internet to get an additional check on your answer. Save the program as **HeadsTails.java**.
4. a. Create a **Die** class from which you can instantiate an object containing a random value from 1 through 6. The constructor sets the value. Include a method to return the value. Save the file as **Die.java**.
 b. Use the **Die** class to create a simple dice game in which the user chooses a number between 2 (the lowest total possible from two dice) and 12 (the highest total possible). The user “rolls” two dice up to three times. If the number chosen by the user comes up, the user wins and the game ends. If the number does not come up within three rolls, the computer wins. Save the application as **TwoDice3.java**.
 c. Using the **Die** class, create a version of the dice game Pig that a user can play against the computer. The object of the game is to be the first to score 100 points. The user and computer take turns rolling a pair of dice following these rules:
 - › On a turn, each player “rolls” two dice. If no 1 appears, the dice values are added to a running total, and the player can choose whether to roll again or pass the turn to the other player.
 - › If a 1 appears on one of the dice, nothing more is added to the player’s total, and it becomes the other player’s turn.
 - › If a 1 appears on both of the dice, not only is the player’s turn over, but the player’s entire accumulated score is reset to 0.
 - › In this version of the game, when the computer does not roll a 1 and can choose whether to roll again, generate a random value between 0 and 1. Have the computer continue to roll the dice when the value is 0.5 or more, and have the computer quit and pass the turn to the player when the value is not 0.5 or more.
 Save the game as **PigDiceGame.java**.
- d. Modify the **PigDiceGame** application so that if a player rolls a 1, not only does the player’s turn end, but all the player’s earned points during that round are eliminated. (Points from earlier rounds are not affected. That is, when either the player or computer rolls a 1, all the points accumulated since the other’s turn are subtracted.) Save the game as **PigDiceGame2.java**.

5. Two people play the game of Count 21 by taking turns entering a 1, 2, or 3, which is added to a running total. The player who adds the value that makes the total reach or exceed 21 loses the game. Create a game of Count 21 in which a player competes against the computer, and program a strategy that always allows the computer to win. On any turn, if the player enters a value other than 1, 2, or 3, force the player to reenter the value. Save the game as **Count21.java**.



Case Problems

1. Yummy Catering provides meals for parties and special events. In previous chapters, you developed a class named `Event` that holds catering event information. Now create an `EventDemo` application to do the following:

- › Create three `Event` objects.
- › Continually prompt the user for the number of guests for each `Event` until the value falls between 5 and 100 inclusive.
- › Display the details for each `Event` object.
- › For the `Event` object with the fewest number of guests, create a loop that displays *Please come to my event!* as many times as there are guests for the `Event`.

Save the file as **EventDemo.java**.

2. Sunshine Seashore Supplies rents beach equipment to tourists. In previous chapters, you developed a `Rental` class that holds equipment rental information and an application that tests the methods using three objects of the class. Now create a `RentalDemo` class to do the following:

- › Construct three `Rental` objects.
- › Continually prompt the user for the number of minutes of each `Rental` until the value falls between 60 and 7,200 inclusive.
- › Display the details for each `Rental` object.
- › Display *Have fun and be safe in Hour 1*, *Have fun and be safe in Hour 2*, and so on for the number of hours in the shortest `Rental`.

Save the file as **RentalDemo.java**.

Characters, Strings, and the StringBuilder

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to:

- 7.1 Identify string data problems
 - 7.2 Use character class methods
 - 7.3 Declare and compare String objects
 - 7.4 Use a variety of String methods
 - 7.5 Use the StringBuilder and StringBuffer classes
-

7.1 Understanding String Data Problems

You have been using `Strings` since the beginning of this course. You have placed them in `print()`, `println()`, and `showMessageDialog()` method calls. However, manipulating characters and strings provides some challenges for the beginning Java programmer and requires a little more knowledge about how strings and characters work.

For example, consider the `TryToCompareStrings` application shown in **Figure 7-1**. The `main()` method declares a `String` named `aName` and assigns `Carmen` to it. The user is then prompted to enter a name. The application compares the two names using the equivalency operator (`==`) and displays one of two messages indicating whether the strings are equivalent.

Figure 7-2 shows a typical execution of the application. When the user types `Carmen` as the value for anotherName, the application concludes that the two names are not equal. The application seems to produce incorrect results. The problem stems from the fact that in Java, `String` is a class, and each created `String` is an object. As an object, a `String` variable name is not a simple data type—it is a *reference*; that is, it is a

Figure 7-1 The TryToCompareStrings application

```

import java.util.Scanner;
public class TryToCompareStrings
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        String aName = "Carmen";
        String anotherName;
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Enter your name > ");
        anotherName = input.nextLine();
        if(aName == anotherName)
            System.out.println(aName + " equals " + anotherName);
        else
            System.out.println(aName + " does not equal " + anotherName);
    }
}

```

Don't Do It
Do not use `==` to compare Strings' contents.

variable that holds a memory address. Therefore, when you compare two `String` objects using the `==` operator, you are not comparing their values, but their computer memory locations.

Programmers want to compare the contents of memory locations (the values stored there) more frequently than they want to compare the addresses of the locations. Fortunately, the creators of Java have provided several classes that you can use when working with text data; these classes provide you with many methods that make working with characters and strings easier:

- › `Character`—A class whose instances can hold a single character value (for example, '`A`', '`8`', or '`$`') and whose methods manipulate and inspect single-character data
- › `String`—A class for working with fixed-string data—that is, unchanging data composed of one or more characters
- › `StringBuilder` and `StringBuffer`—Classes for storing and manipulating changeable data composed of one or more characters

Figure 7-2 Typical execution of the TryToCompareStrings application

```

Enter your name > Carmen
Carmen does not equal Carmen

```

Two Truths & a Lie | Understanding String Data Problems

1. A `String` is a simple data type that can hold text data.
2. Programmers want to compare the values of `Strings` more frequently than they want to compare their memory addresses.
3. `Character`, `String`, and `StringBuilder` are useful built-in classes for working with text data.

The false statement is #1. A `String` variable name is a reference; that is, it holds a memory address.

7.2 Using Character Class Methods

The `char` data type is used to hold any single character—for example, a letter, digit, or punctuation mark. Recall that `char` literals are surrounded by single quotation marks. Because `char` is a primitive data type, variables of type `char` are not references, so you can compare their values using relational operators such as `==` and `>`. Comparisons are made using each character's Unicode value. Character comparisons are evaluated the way you generally would

expect them to be—alphabetically. For example, if `yourInitial` is 'A' and `myInitial` is 'B', then `yourInitial < myInitial` is true.

In addition to the primitive data type `char`, Java offers a `Character` class. The `Character` class contains standard methods for testing the values of characters. The `Character` class is defined in `java.lang` and is imported automatically into every program you write.

Table 7-1 describes many of the `Character` class methods. The methods that begin with `is`, such as `isUpperCase()`, return a Boolean value that can be used in comparison statements; the methods that begin with `to`, such as `toUpperCase()`, return a character that has been converted to the requested format.

Table 7-1 Commonly used methods of the `Character` class

METHOD	DESCRIPTION
<code>isUpperCase()</code>	Tests if character is uppercase
<code>toUpperCase()</code>	Returns the uppercase equivalent of the argument; no change is made if the argument is not a lowercase letter
<code>isLowerCase()</code>	Tests if character is lowercase
<code>toLowerCase()</code>	Returns the lowercase equivalent of the argument; no change is made if the argument is not an uppercase letter
<code>isDigit()</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the argument is a digit (0–9) and <code>false</code> otherwise
<code>isLetter()</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the argument is a letter and <code>false</code> otherwise
<code>isLetterOrDigit()</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the argument is a letter or digit and <code>false</code> otherwise
<code>isWhitespace()</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the argument is whitespace and <code>false</code> otherwise; this includes the space, tab, newline, carriage return, and form feed

Figure 7-3 contains an application that uses many of the methods shown in Table 7-1. The application defines the variable `aChar` as 'C' and displays information about it.

Figure 7-3 The `CharacterInfo` application

```
public class CharacterInfo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        char aChar = 'C';
        System.out.println("The character is " + aChar);
        if(Character.isUpperCase(aChar))
            System.out.println(aChar + " is uppercase");
        else
            System.out.println(aChar + " is not uppercase");
        if(Character.isLowerCase(aChar))
            System.out.println(aChar + " is lowercase");
        else
            System.out.println(aChar + " is not lowercase");
        aChar = Character.toLowerCase(aChar);
        System.out.println("After toLowerCase(), aChar is " + aChar);
        aChar = Character.toUpperCase(aChar);
        System.out.println("After toUpperCase(), aChar is " + aChar);
        if(Character.isLetterOrDigit(aChar))
            System.out.println(aChar + " is a letter or digit");
        else
            System.out.println(aChar +
                " is neither a letter nor a digit");
        if(Character.isWhitespace(aChar))
            System.out.println(aChar + " is whitespace");
        else
            System.out.println(aChar + " is not whitespace");
    }
}
```

Note

You can tell that each of the `Character` class methods used in the `CharacterInfo` application in Figure 7-3 is a `static` method because the method name is used without an object reference—you use only the class name, a dot, and the method name.

The output of the `CharacterInfo` application is shown in **Figure 7-4**, where you can see the following:

- › The value returned by the `isUpperCase()` method is `true`.
- › The value returned by the `isLowerCase()` method is `false`.
- › The value returned by the `toLowerCase()` method is '`c`'.
- › The value returned by the `toUpperCase()` method is '`C`'.
- › The value returned by the `isLetterOrDigit()` method is `true`.
- › The value returned by the `isWhitespace()` method is `false`.

Figure 7-4 Output of the `CharacterInfo` application

```
The character is C
C is uppercase
C is not lowercase
After toLowerCase(), aChar is c
After toUpperCase(), aChar is C
C is a letter or digit
C is not whitespace
```

Two Truths & a Lie | Using Character Class Methods

1. `Character` is a class, but `char` is a simple data type.
2. The `Character` class method `isLowerCase()` returns the lowercase version of any uppercase character.
3. If a `char` variable holds the Unicode value for the Tab key, `isWhitespace()` would be `true` and `isLetterOrDigit()` would be `false`.

The false statement is #2. The `Character` class method `isLowerCase()` returns `true` or `false`, as do all the `Character` class methods whose names use the `is` prefix.

You Do It | Testing Characters

In this section, you experiment with the `CharacterInfo` application in order to become comfortable with different character properties.

1. Locate the `CharacterInfo.java` file that is stored in the **Chapter 7** student data files for this course. (If you cannot locate your student files, you can type the program shown in Figure 7-3.) Change the value of the `aChar` variable, compile and execute the program, and examine the results. Repeat this task multiple times using a variety of character values, including uppercase and lowercase letters, numbers, punctuation, and special characters.

such as '@' and '[', and whitespace characters, such as a space or Tab. Verify that the output is what you expect in each case.

Examining the Character Class Online

1. Using a Web browser, search for [oracle Java docs api Character class](#) and select a version to view the Character class documentation.
2. Examine the extensive list of methods for the Character class. Find one with which you are familiar, such as `toLowerCase()`. Notice that there are two overloaded versions of the method. The one you used in the `CharacterInfo` application accepts a `char` and returns a `char`. The other version that accepts and returns an `int` uses Unicode values. Appendix B provides more information on Unicode.

7.3 Declaring and Comparing String Objects

A sequence of characters enclosed within double quotation marks is a *literal string* or a *string literal*. You have used many literal strings—for example, within method calls to `println()`. A literal string is an unnamed object, or **anonymous object**, of the `String` class, and a `String` variable is simply a named object of the same class. The class `String` is defined in `java.lang.String`, which is imported automatically into every program you write.

Note

You have declared a `String` array named `args` in every `main()` method header that you have written.

When you declare a `String` object, the `String` itself—that is, the series of characters contained in the `String`—is distinct from the identifier you use to refer to it. You can create a `String` object by using the keyword `new` and the `String` constructor, just as you would create an object of any other type. For example, the following statement defines an object named `aGreeting`, declares it to be of type `String`, and assigns an initial value of `Hello` to the `String`:

```
String aGreeting = new String("Hello");
```

The variable `aGreeting` stores a reference to a `String` object—it keeps track of where the `String` object is stored in memory. When you declare and initialize `aGreeting`, it links to the initializing `String` value. Because `Strings` are declared so routinely in programs, Java provides a shortcut, so you can declare a `String` containing `Hello` with the following statement that omits the keyword `new` and does not explicitly call the class constructor:

```
String aGreeting = "Hello";
```

This format makes `String` declarations look like declarations of primitive types such as `int` and `double`. Unfortunately, this format also makes it easier for you to forget that `String` is not a primitive type; it is a reference.

Comparing String Values

In Java:

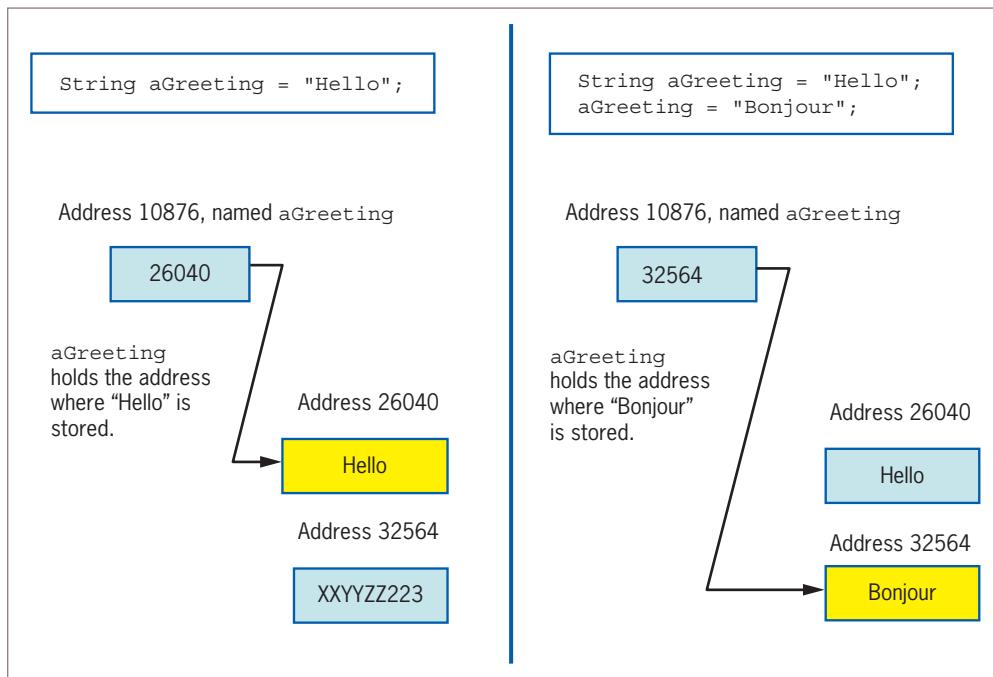
- › `String` is a class.
- › Each created `String` is an object.
- › A `String` variable name is a reference; that is, a `String` variable name refers to a location in memory, rather than to a particular value.

The distinction is subtle, but when you declare a variable of a basic, primitive type, such as `int x = 10;`, the memory address where `x` is located holds the value 10. If you later assign a new value to `x`, the new value replaces the old one at the assigned memory address. For example, if you code `x = 45;`, then 45 replaces 10 at the address of `x`.

By contrast, when you declare a `String`, such as `String aGreeting = "Hello";`, `aGreeting` does not hold the characters that make up *Hello*; instead it holds a memory address where the characters are stored.

The left side of **Figure 7-5** shows a diagram of computer memory in which `aGreeting` happens to be stored at memory address 10876 and the `String Hello` happens to be stored at memory address 26040. You cannot choose the memory address where a value is stored; addresses such as 10876 and 26040 are chosen by the operating system.

Figure 7-5 Contents of `aGreeting` at declaration and after an assignment



When you refer to `aGreeting`, you actually are accessing the address of the characters you want to use. (In the example on the left side of Figure 7-5, the memory location beginning at address 32564 has not yet been used by this program; in Java, you have no way of finding out what is stored there.)

If you subsequently assign a new value to `aGreeting`, such as `aGreeting = "Bonjour";`, the address held by `aGreeting` is altered; now, `aGreeting` holds a new address where the characters *Bonjour* are stored. As shown on the right side of Figure 7-5, *Bonjour* is an entirely new object created with its own location. The *Hello* `String` is still in memory, but `aGreeting` no longer holds its address. Eventually, a part of the Java system called the *garbage collector* discards the *Hello* characters so the memory address can be used for something else. `Strings`, therefore, are never actually changed; instead, new `Strings` are created and `String` references hold the new addresses. `Strings` and other objects that can't be changed are **immutable**.

Note

The creators of Java made `Strings` immutable for several reasons. For example, in environments where multiple programs (or parts of programs, called *threads of execution*) run concurrently, one logical path cannot change a `String` being used by another path. The compiler also can be made to execute more efficiently with immutable `String` objects. In simple programs, you don't care much about these features. However, immutability leads to performance problems. Later in this chapter, you will learn that if you want to use a *mutable* object to hold strings of characters, you can use the `StringBuilder` class.

Because `String` references hold memory addresses, making simple comparisons between them often produces misleading results. For example, recall the `TryToCompareStrings` application in Figure 7-1. In this example, Java evaluates the `String` variables `aName` and `anotherName` as not equal because even though the variables contain the same series of characters, one set is assigned directly and the other is entered from the keyboard and stored in a different area of memory. When you compare `Strings` with the `==` operator, you are comparing their memory addresses, not their values. Furthermore, when you try to compare `Strings` using the less-than (`<`) or greater-than (`>`) operator, you will receive an error message, and the program will not compile.

If you declare two `String` objects and initialize both to the same value, the value is stored only once in memory and the two object references hold the same memory address. Because the data that comprises the `String` is stored just once, memory is saved. Consider the following example in which the same value is assigned to two `Strings` (as opposed to getting one from user input). The reason for the output in the following example is misleading. When you write the following code, the output is *Strings are the same*.

```
String firstString = "abc";
String secondString = "abc";
if(firstString == secondString)
    System.out.println("Strings are the same");
```

The output is *Strings are the same* because the memory addresses held by `firstString` and `secondString` are the same, not because their contents are the same.

Fortunately, the `String` class provides you with a number of useful methods that compare `Strings` in the way you usually intend. The `String` class `equals()` method evaluates the contents of two `String` objects to determine if they are equivalent. The method returns `true` if the objects have identical contents, no matter how the contents were assigned. For example, **Figure 7-6** shows a `CompareStrings` application, which is identical to the `TryToCompareStrings` application in Figure 7-1 except for the use of the `equals()` method in the comparison in the `if` statement.

Figure 7-6 The `CompareStrings` application

```
import java.util.Scanner;
public class CompareStrings
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        String aName = "Carmen";
        String anotherName;
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Enter your name > ");
        anotherName = input.nextLine();
        if(aName.equals(anotherName))
            System.out.println(aName + " equals " + anotherName);
        else
            System.out.println(aName + " does not equal " + anotherName);
    }
}
```

When a user runs the `CompareStrings` application and enters *Carmen* for the name, the output appears as shown in **Figure 7-7**; the contents of the `Strings` are equal. The `String` class `equals()` method returns `true` only if two `Strings` are identical in content. Thus, a `String` with the value *"Carmen"* is not equivalent to one with the value *"CARMEN"*, and a `String` with the value *"Carmen "* (with a space after the *n*) is not equivalent to one with the value *"Carmen"* (with no space after the *n*).

Figure 7-7 Typical execution of the `CompareStrings` application

```
Enter your name > Carmen
Carmen equals Carmen
```

Note

Technically, the `equals()` method does not perform an alphabetical comparison with `Strings`; it performs a **lexicographical comparison**—a comparison based on the integer Unicode values of the characters.

Each of the two `String` objects declared in Figure 7-6 (`aName` and `anotherName`) has access to the `String` class `equals()` method. If you analyze how the `equals()` method is used in the application in Figure 7-6, you can tell quite a bit about how the method was written by Java's creators:

- › Because you use the `equals()` method with a `String` object and the method uses the unique contents of that object to make a comparison, you can tell that it is not a static method.
- › Because the call to the `equals()` method can be used in an `if` statement, you can tell that it returns a Boolean value.
- › Because you see a `String` used between the parentheses in the method call, you can tell that the `equals()` method takes a `String` argument.

So, the method header of the `equals()` method within the `String` class must be similar to the following:

```
public boolean equals(String s)
```

The only thing you do not know about the method header is the local name used for the `String` argument—it might be `s`, or it might be any other legal Java identifier. When you use a prewritten method such as `equals()`, you do not know how the code looks inside it. For example, you do not know whether the `equals()` method compares the characters in the `Strings` from left to right or from right to left. All you know is that the method returns `true` if the two `Strings` are completely equivalent and `false` if they are not.

Because both `aName` and `anotherName` are `Strings` in the application in Figure 7-6, the `aName` object can call `equals()` with `aName.equals(anotherName)` as shown, or the `anotherName` object could call `equals()` with `anotherName.equals(aName)`. The `equals()` method can take either a variable `String` object or a literal string as its argument.

The `String` class `equalsIgnoreCase()` method is similar to the `equals()` method. As its name implies, this method ignores case when determining if two `Strings` are equivalent. Thus, if you declare a `String` as `String aName = "Carmen";`, then `aName.equals("caRMen")` is `false`, but `aName.equalsIgnoreCase("caRMen")` is `true`. This method is useful when users type responses to prompts in your programs. You cannot predict when a user might use the Shift key or the Caps Lock key during data entry, and you might want to ignore such a mistake.

When the `String` class `compareTo()` method is used to compare two `Strings`, it provides additional information to the user in the form of an integer value. When you use `compareTo()` to compare two `String` objects, the method:

- › Returns zero if the values of two `Strings` are exactly the same
- › Returns a negative number if the calling object is “less than” the argument
- › Returns a positive number if the calling object is “more than” the argument

`Strings` are considered “less than” or “more than” each other based on their Unicode values; thus, *a* is less than *b*, and *b* is less than *c*. For example, if `aName` refers to *Roger*, then `aName.compareTo("Rodrigo")` returns a 3. The number is positive, indicating that *Roger* is more than *Rodrigo*. This does not mean that *Roger* has more characters than *Rodrigo*; it means that *Roger* is alphabetically “more” than *Rodrigo*. The comparison proceeds as follows:

- › The *R* in *Roger* and the *R* in *Rodrigo* are compared, and found to be equal.
- › The *o* in *Roger* and the *o* in *Rodrigo* are compared, and found to be equal.
- › The *g* in *Roger* and the *d* in *Rodrigo* are compared; they are different. The `compareTo()` method returns the value 3 because the numeric value of the first difference in the names is 3 (*g* is three letters after *d* in Unicode value).

In contrast, if `aName` is `Rodrigo`, then `aName.compareTo("Roger")` ; returns `-3` because `d` is three letters before `g` in Unicode value.

Note

The Unicode value for `A` is 32 less than the value for `a`. The value for `B` is 32 less than the value for `b`, and so on. If you make a comparison between two `String`s using the `compareTo()` method and see that the returned value is 32 or `-32`, then the first difference found in the `String`s is a difference in case.

When you use the `equals()` method, you often won't care what the specific return value of `compareTo()` is; you simply want to determine if it is positive or negative. For example, you can use a test such as `if (aWord.compareTo(anotherWord) < 0)`... to determine whether `aWord` is alphabetically less than `anotherWord`. If `aWord` is a `String` variable that refers to the value `hamster`, and `anotherWord` is a `String` variable that refers to the value `iguana`, the comparison `if (aWord.compareTo(anotherWord) < 0)` yields true.

Empty and null Strings

Programmers often are confused by the difference between empty `String`s and `null` `String`s. You can create an empty `String` named `word1` with the following statement:

```
String word1 = "";
```

You can create two `null` `String`s named `word2` and `word3` with the following statements:

```
String word2 = null;
String word3;
```

The empty `String` `word1` references a memory address where no characters are stored. The **null String** `word2` uses the Java keyword `null` so that `word2` does not yet hold a memory address. The unassigned `String` `word3` is also a `null` `String` by default. A significant difference among these declarations is that `word1` can be used with the `String` methods described in this chapter, but `word2` and `word3` cannot be. For example, assuming a `String` named `someOtherString` has been assigned a value, then:

- › `word1.equals(someOtherString)` is a valid comparison.
- › `word2.equals(someOtherString)` is not valid; it causes an error.

Because `String`s are set to `null` by default, some programmers think explicitly setting a `String` to `null` is redundant. Other programmers feel that explicitly using the keyword `null`, as in the `word2` example, makes your intentions clearer to those reading your program. You should use the style your organization recommends.

Two Truths & a Lie

Declaring and Comparing String Objects

1. To create a `String` object, you must use the keyword `new` and explicitly call the class constructor.
2. When you compare `String`s with the `==` operator, you are comparing their memory addresses, not their values.
3. When you compare `String`s with the `equals()` method, you are comparing their values, not their memory addresses.

The false statement is #1. You can create a `String` object with or without the keyword `new` and without explicitly calling the `String` constructor.

You Do It | Examining the String Class Online

In this section, you learn more about the `String` class.

1. Use a browser to search for [oracle docs Java api String class](#) and select a version to view the Java documentation.
2. Examine the `equals()` method. In the last section, you saw this method used in expressions such as `aName.equals(anotherName)`. Because `equals()` is used with the object `aName`, you could predict that the `equals()` method is not static. When you look at the documentation for the `equals()` method, you can see this is true. You also can see that it returns a boolean value. What you might have predicted is that the `equals()` method takes a `String` argument, because `anotherName` is a `String`. However, the documentation shows that the `equals()` method accepts an `Object` argument. You will learn more about the `Object` class later, but for now, understand that a `String` is a type of `Object`. `Object` is a class from which all other classes stem. In Java, every class is a type of `Object`.

7.4 Using a Variety of String Methods

A wide variety of additional methods are available with the `String` class. The methods `toUpperCase()` and `toLowerCase()` convert any `String` to its uppercase or lowercase equivalent. For example, if you declare a `String` as `String aWord = "something";`, then the string *something* is created in memory and its address is assigned to `aWord`. The statement `aWord = aWord.toUpperCase();` creates *SOMETHING* in memory and assigns its address to `aWord`. Because `aWord` now refers to *SOMETHING*, `aWord = aWord.toLowerCase();` alters `aWord` to refer to *something*.

The `length()` method is an accessor method that returns the length of a `String`. For example, the following statements result in the variable `len` that holds the value 5.

```
String greeting = "Hello";
int len = greeting.length();
```

Note

You have learned that accessor methods often start with the prefix `get`. The creators of Java did not follow this convention when naming the `length()` method.

When you must determine whether a `String` is empty, it is more efficient to compare its length to 0 than it is to use the `equals()` method.

The `indexOf()` method determines whether a specific character occurs within a `String`. If it does, the method returns the position of the character; the first position of a `String` is 0. The return value is -1 if the character does not exist in the `String`. For example, in `String fruit = "Lemon";`, the value of `fruit.indexOf('L')` is 0, the value of `fruit.indexOf('m')` is 2, and the value of `fruit.indexOf('q')` is -1.

The `charAt()` method requires an integer argument that indicates the position of the character that the method returns, starting with 0. For example, if `fruit` is a `String` that refers to *Lemon*, the value of `fruit.charAt(0)` is *L* and the value of `fruit.charAt(4)` is *n*. An error occurs if you use an argument that is negative or an argument greater than or equal to the length of the calling `String`. Instead of using a constant argument with `charAt()`, frequently you will want to use a variable argument to examine every character in a loop. For example, to count the number of spaces in the `String mySentence`, you might write a loop such as the following:

```
for(int x = 0; x < mySentence.length(); ++x)
    if(mySentence.charAt(x) == ' ')
        ++countOfSpaces;
```

The `charAt()` method also is useful when you want a user to enter a single character from the keyboard. The `nextLine()` method with a `Scanner` object for console input and the `JOptionPane.showInputDialog()` method for GUI input both return `String`s. For example, if `input` has been declared as a `Scanner` object, you can extract a character from the user's keyboard input with a statement such as the following:

```
char userLetter = input.nextLine().charAt(0);
```

The `endsWith()` method and the `startsWith()` method each take a `String` argument and return `true` or `false` if a `String` object does or does not end or start with the specified argument. For example, if `String fruit = "Lemon";`, then `fruit.startsWith("Lem")` is `true`, and `fruit.endsWith("z")` is `false`. These methods are case sensitive, so if `String fruit = "Lemon";`, then `fruit.startsWith("lem")` is `false`.

The `replace()` method allows you to replace all occurrences of some character within a `String`. For example, suppose that you decide to replace spaces with dashes in a part number. If `String partNum = "BK 761 23";`, then `String newPartNum = partNum.replace(' ', '-');` replaces each space with a dash and assigns `"BK-761-23"` to `newPartNum`. The statement `newPartNum = partNum.replace('X', '-');` would assign `"BK 761 23"` to `newPartNum` without any changes because 'X' is not found in `newPartNum`. The `replace()` method is case sensitive, so if `String partNum = "BK 761 23";`, then `String newPartNum = partNum.replace('k', 'w');` results in no change.

The `contains()` method allows you to determine whether one `String` contains another. The method is case sensitive. For example, the following statements result in `doesContain` being `true`:

```
String s1 = "abcdefghijkl";
String s2 = "efg";
boolean doesContain = s1.contains(s2)
```

Although not part of the `String` class, the `toString()` method is defined for other classes to convert their objects to strings. For example, the `Integer` class `toString()` method converts an integer to a `String`. After the following three statements, `theString` refers to "4"—a `String` of length 1:

```
String theString;
int someInt = 4;
theString = Integer.toString(someInt);
```

If you declare another `String` and a `double` as follows, then after the following statements, `anotherString` refers to "8.25"—a `String` of length 4:

```
String anotherString;
double someDouble = 8.25;
anotherString = Double.toString(someDouble);
```

You also can use concatenation to convert any primitive type (variable or constant) to a `String` using the `+` operator. For example, if you declare a variable as `int myAge = 25;`, the following statement results in `aString` that refers to *My age is 25*:

```
String aString = "My age is " + myAge;
```

You have used concatenation with `Strings` in `print()` and `println()` method calls throughout this course.

Similarly, if you write the following that concatenates an empty string to a `float`, then `anotherString` refers to "12.34".

```
String anotherString;
float someFloat = 12.34f;
anotherString = "" + someFloat;
```

Note

The `toString()` method originates in the `Object` class; it is a method included in Java that you can use with any type of object. When you learn more about the `Object` class, you will learn how to construct versions of the `toString()` method for your own classes.

You have been using `toString()` throughout this course without knowing it. When you use `print()` and `println()`—for example, with an `int` or `double`, as in `print(22)`; and `println(3.14)`—their arguments are converted automatically to `Strings`. You don't need `import` statements to use `toString()` with primitive data types because it is part of `java.lang`, which is imported automatically. Because the `toString()` method you use with `println()` takes arguments of any primitive type, including `int`, `char`, `double`, and so on, it is a working example of polymorphism.

You already know that you can concatenate `Strings` with other `Strings` or values by using a plus sign (`+`); you have used this approach in methods such as `println()` and `showMessageDialog()`. For example, you can display a `firstName`, a space, and a `lastName` with the following statement:

```
System.out.println(firstName + " " + lastName);
```

In addition, you can extract part of a `String` with the `substring()` method, and use it alone or concatenate it with another `String`. The `substring()` method takes two integer arguments—a start position and an end position—that are both based on the fact that a `String`'s first position is position zero. The length of the extracted substring is the difference between the second integer and the first integer; if you call the method without a second integer argument, the `substring` extends to the end of the original string.

For example, the application in **Figure 7-8** prompts the user for a customer's first and last names. The application then extracts these names so that a friendly business letter can be constructed. After the application prompts the user to enter a name, a loop control variable is initialized to 0. While the variable remains less than the length of the entered name, each character is compared to the space character. When a space is found, two new strings are created. The first, `firstName`, is the substring of the original entry from position 0 to the location where the space was found. The second, `familyName`, is the substring of the original entry from the position after the space to the end of the string.

Figure 7-8 The `BusinessLetter` application

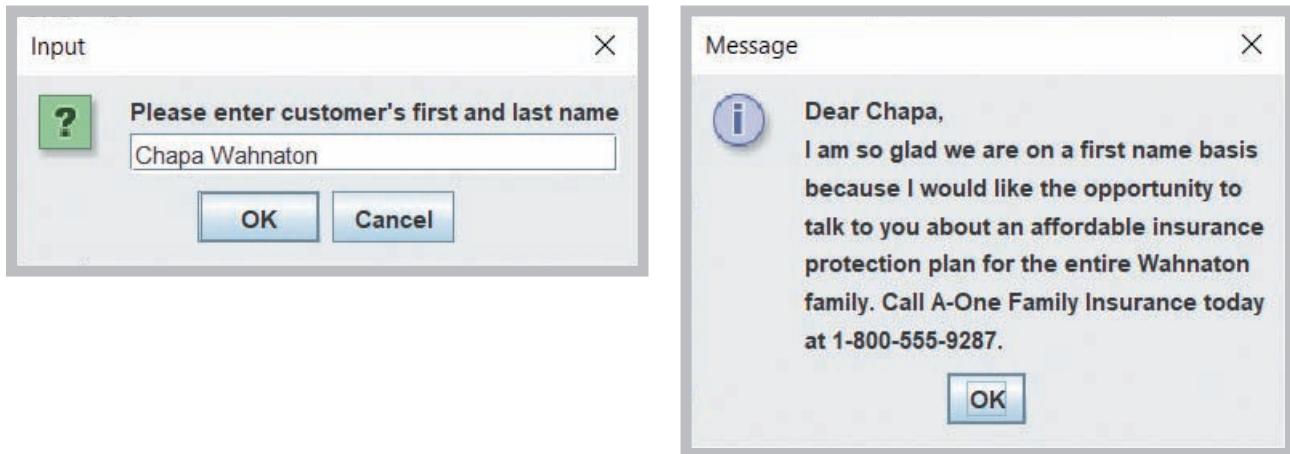
```
import javax.swing.*;
public class BusinessLetter
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        String name;
        String firstName = "";
        String familyName = "";
        int x;
        char c;
        name = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
            "Please enter customer's first and last name");
        x = 0;
        while(x < name.length())
        {
            if(name.charAt(x) == ' ')
            {
                firstName = name.substring(0, x);
                familyName = name.substring(x + 1, name.length());
                x = name.length();
            }
            ++x;
        }
        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null,
            "Dear " + firstName +
            ",\nI am so glad we are on a first name basis" +
            "\nbecause I would like the opportunity to" +
            "\ntalk to you about an affordable insurance" +
            "\nprotection plan for the entire " + familyName +
            "\nfamily. Call A-One Family Insurance today" +
            "\nat 1-800-555-9287.");
    }
}
```

Note

To keep the example simple, the `BusinessLetter` application in Figure 7-8 displays a letter for just one customer. An actual business application would most likely allow a clerk to enter dozens or even hundreds of customer names and store them in a data file for future use. You will learn to store data permanently later. For now, just concentrate on the string-handling capabilities of the application.

In the program in Figure 7-8, after the first and last names have been created, the loop control variable is set to the length of the original string so the loop will exit and proceed to the display of the friendly business letter. **Figure 7-9** shows the data entry screen as well as the output letter.

Figure 7-9 Typical execution of the `BusinessLetter` application



The `regionMatches()` method can be used to test whether two `String` regions are the same. One version of the `regionMatches()` method takes four arguments—the position at which to start in the calling `String`, the other `String` being compared, the position to start in the other `String`, and the length of the comparison. For example, suppose that you have declared two `String` objects as follows:

```
String firstString = "abcde";
String secondString = "xxbcdef";
```

Then, the expression `firstString.regionMatches(1, secondString, 2, 4)` is true because the four-character substring starting at position 1 in `firstString` is "bcde" and the four-character substring starting at position 2 in `secondString` is also "bcde". The expression `firstString.regionMatches(0, secondString, 3, 2)` is false because the two-character substring starting at position 0 in `firstString` is "ab" and the two-character substring starting at position 3 in `secondString` is "cd".

A second version of the `regionMatches()` method takes an additional boolean argument as the first argument. This argument represents whether case should be ignored in deciding whether regions match. For example, suppose that you have declared two `Strings` as follows:

```
String thirdString = "123 Maple Drive";
String fourthString = "a maple tree";
```

Then the following expression is true because the substring of `thirdString` that starts at position 4 and continues for five characters is "Maple", the substring of `fourthString` that starts at position 2 and continues for five characters is "maple", and the argument that ignores case has been set to `true`:

```
thirdString.regionMatches(true, 4, fourthString, 2, 5)
```

Converting String Objects to Numbers

If a `String` contains all numbers, as in "649", you can convert it from a `String` to a number so you can use it for arithmetic, or use it like any other number. For example, suppose you ask a user to enter a salary in an input dialog box. When you accept input using `showInputDialog()`, the accepted value is always a `String`. An advantage to a dialog box accepting a `String` by default is that no error is generated if the user enters a nonnumeric value. However, to be able to use the entered value in arithmetic statements, you must convert the `String` to a number.

Note

When you use any of the methods described in this section to attempt to convert a `String` to a number, the `String` might not represent a valid number. For example, it might contain a letter, comma, or dollar sign, or it might represent a valid number that is the wrong data type for the conversion. In such cases, an error called a `NumberFormatException` occurs. You will learn about exceptions later in this course.

To convert a `String` to an integer, you use the `Integer` class, which is part of `java.lang` and is imported automatically into programs you write. The `Integer` class is an example of a wrapper. A **wrapper** is a class or object that is “wrapped around” a simpler element; the `Integer` wrapper class contains a simple integer and useful methods to manipulate it. You have learned about the `parseInt()` method, which is part of the `Integer` class; the method takes a `String` argument and returns its integer value. For example, the following statement stores the numeric value 649 in the variable `anInt`:

```
int anInt = Integer.parseInt("649");
```

You then can use the integer value just as you would any other integer. You can tell that `parseInt()` is a `static` method because you use it with the class name and not with an object.

It is also easy to convert a `String` object to a double value. You must use the `Double` class, which, like the `Integer` class, is a wrapper class and is imported into your programs automatically. The `Double` class `parseDouble()` method takes a `String` argument and returns its double value. For example, the following statement stores the numeric value 147.82 in the variable `doubleValue`.

```
double doubleValue = Double.parseDouble("147.82");
```

Besides `Double` and `Integer`, other wrapper classes such as `Float` and `Long` provide methods such as `parseFloat()` and `parseLong()`.

Two Truths & a Lie | Using a Variety of `String` Methods

1. If `myName` is a `String` that contains `molly`, then the value of `myName.toUpperCase()` is `Molly`.
2. If `myName` is a `String` that contains `molly`, then the value of `myName.length()` is 5.
3. If `myName` is a `String` that contains `molly`, then the value of `myName.indexOf('M')` is -1.

The false statement is #1. If `myName` is `molly`, then `myName.toUpperCase()` is `MOLLY`.

You Do It | Using `String` Methods

To demonstrate the use of the `String` methods, in this section you create an application that asks a user for a name and then “fixes” the name so that the first letter of each new word is uppercase, whether the user entered the name that way or not.

1. Open a new text file in your text editor. Enter the following first few lines of a `RepairName` program. The program declares several variables, including two strings that will refer to a name: One will be “repaired” with correct capitalization, and the other will be saved as the user entered it so it can be displayed in its original form at the end of the program. After declaring the variables, prompt the user for a name:

```

import javax.swing.*;
public class RepairName
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        String name, saveOriginalName;
        int stringLength;
        int i;
        char c;
        name = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
            "Please enter your first and last name");
    }
}

```

2. Store the name entered in the `saveOriginalName` variable. Next, calculate the length of the name the user entered, and then begin a loop that will examine every character in the name. The first character of a name is always capitalized, so when the loop control variable `i` is 0, the character in that position in the name string is extracted and converted to its uppercase equivalent. Then the name is replaced with the uppercase character appended to the remainder of the existing name.

```

saveOriginalName = name;
stringLength = name.length();
for(i = 0; i < stringLength; i++)
{
    c = name.charAt(i);
    if(i == 0)
    {
        c = Character.toUpperCase(c);
        name = c + name.substring(1, stringLength);
    }
}

```

3. After the first character in the name is converted, the program looks through the rest of the name, testing for spaces and capitalizing every character that follows a space. When a space is found at position `i`, `i` is increased, the next character is extracted from the name, the character is converted to its uppercase version, and a new name string is created using the old string up to the current position, the newly capitalized letter, and the remainder of the name string. The `if...else` ends and the `for` loop ends.

```

else
    if(name.charAt(i) == ' ')
    {
        ++i;
        c = name.charAt(i);
        c = Character.toUpperCase(c);
        name = name.substring(0, i) + c +
            name.substring(i + 1, stringLength);
    }
}

```

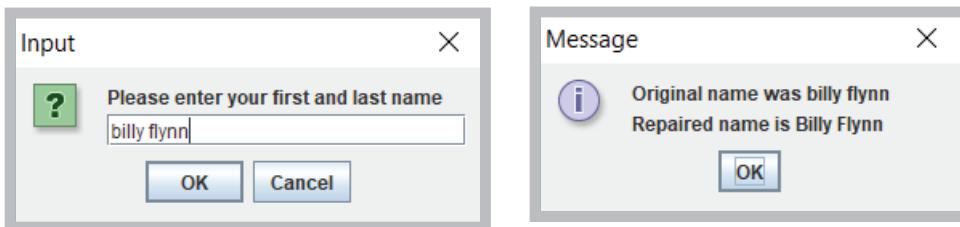
4. After every character has been examined, display the original and repaired names, and add closing braces for the `main()` method and the class.

```

JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Original name was " +
    saveOriginalName + "\nRepaired name is " + name);
}
}

```

5. Save the application as `RepairName.java`, and then compile and run the program. **Figure 7-10** shows a typical program execution. Make certain you understand how all the `String` methods contribute to the success of this program.

Figure 7-10 Typical execution of the RepairName application**Converting a String to an Integer**

In the next steps, you write a program that prompts the user for a number, reads characters from the keyboard, stores the characters in a `String`, and then converts the `String` to an integer that can be used in arithmetic statements.

1. Open a new text file in your text editor. Type the first few lines of a `NumberInput` class that will accept string input:

```
import javax.swing.*;
public class NumberInput
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

2. Declare the following variables for the input `String`, the integer to which it is converted, and the result:

```
String inputString;
int inputNumber;
int result;
```

3. Declare a constant that holds a multiplier factor. This program will multiply the user's input by 10:

```
final int FACTOR = 10;
```

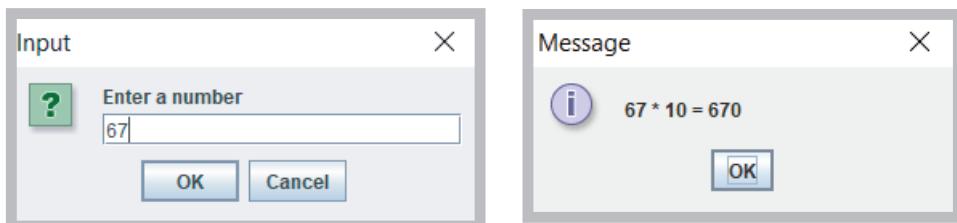
4. Enter the following input dialog box statement that stores the user keyboard input in the `String` variable `inputString`:

```
inputString = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
    "Enter a number");
```

5. Use the following `Integer.parseInt()` method to convert the input `String` to an integer. (If the entered value cannot be converted to an integer, an error will be generated. You will learn how to handle the error later; for now, you will have to trust the user to enter a valid value.) After the `String` is converted to an integer, multiply the integer by 10 and display the result:

```
inputNumber = Integer.parseInt(inputString);
result = inputNumber * FACTOR;
JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null,
    inputNumber + " * " + FACTOR + " = " + result);
```

6. Add the final two closing curly braces for the program, then save the program as `NumberInput.java` and compile and test the program. **Figure 7-11** shows a typical execution. Even though the user enters a `String`, it can be used successfully in an arithmetic statement because it was converted using the `parseInt()` method.

Figure 7-11 Typical execution of the `NumberInput` program

Examining the `parseInt()` Method Online

1. Using an Internet browser, search for [oracle docs Java api Integer class](#) and select a version to view the documentation.
2. Find the `parseInt()` method that accepts a `String` parameter and examine it. You can see that the method is `static`, which is why you use it with the class name `Integer` and not with an object. You also see that it returns an `int`. You have used this method since the earliest chapters in this course, but now that you understand classes, objects, and methods, you can more easily interpret the Java documentation.

7.5 Learning About the `StringBuilder` and `StringBuffer` Classes

In Java, the value of a `String` is fixed after the `String` is created; `Strings` are immutable, or unchangeable. When you write `someString = "Hello";` and follow it with `someString = "Goodbye";`, you have neither changed the contents of computer memory at the address represented by `someString` nor eliminated the characters that comprise *Hello*. Instead, you have stored *Goodbye* at a new computer memory location and stored the new address in the `someString` variable. If you want to modify `someString` from *Goodbye* to *Goodbye Everybody*, you cannot add a space and *Everybody* to the `someString` that contains *Goodbye*. Instead, you must create an entirely new `String`, *Goodbye Everybody*, and assign it to the `someString` address. If you perform many such operations with `Strings`, you end up creating many different `String` objects in memory, which takes time and resources.

To circumvent these limitations, you can use either the `StringBuilder` class or the `StringBuffer` class. You use one of these classes, which are alternatives to the `String` class, when you know a `String` will be modified repeatedly. Usually, you can use a `StringBuilder` or `StringBuffer` object anywhere you would use a `String`. Like the `String` class, these two classes are part of the `java.lang` package and are imported automatically into every program. The classes are identical except for the following:

- » `StringBuilder` is more efficient.
- » `StringBuffer` is thread safe. This means you should use it in applications that run multiple **threads of execution**, which are units of processing that are scheduled by an operating system and that can be used to create multiple paths of control during program execution. Because most programs you write (and all the programs you will write during this course) contain a single thread, usually you should use `StringBuilder`.

The rest of this section discusses `StringBuilder`, but every statement is also true of `StringBuffer`.

You can create a `StringBuilder` object that contains a `String` with a statement such as the following:

```
StringBuilder message = new StringBuilder("Hello there");
```

When you use the `nextLine()` method with a `Scanner` object for console input or a `JOptionPane.showInputDialog()` method for GUI input, user input comes into your program as a `String`. If you want to work with the input as a `StringBuilder` object, you can convert the `String` using the `StringBuilder` constructor. For example, the following two statements get a user's input using a `Scanner` object named `keyboard` and then store it in the `StringBuilder` name:

```
String stringName = keyboard.nextLine();
StringBuilder name = new StringBuilder(stringName);
```

Alternatively, you can combine the two statements into one and avoid declaring the variable `stringName`, as in the following:

```
StringBuilder name = new StringBuilder(keyboard.nextLine());
```

When you create a `String`, you have the option of omitting the keyword `new`, but when you initialize a `StringBuilder` object you must use the keyword `new`, the constructor name, and an initializing value between the constructor's parentheses. You can create a null `StringBuilder` variable using a statement such as the following:

```
StringBuilder uninitializedString = null;
```

The variable does not refer to anything until you initialize it with a defined `StringBuilder` object. Generally, when you create a `String` object, sufficient memory is allocated to accommodate the number of Unicode characters in the string. A `StringBuilder` object, however, contains a memory block called a **buffer**, which might or might not contain a string. Even if it does contain a string, the string might not occupy the entire buffer. In other words, the length of a string can be different from the length of the buffer. The actual length of the buffer is the **capacity of the `StringBuilder` object**.

You can change the length of a string in a `StringBuilder` object with the `setLength()` method. The length of a `StringBuilder` object equals the number of characters in the string contained in the `StringBuilder`. When you increase a `StringBuilder` object's length to be longer than the string it holds, the extra characters contain '`\u0000`'. If you use the `setLength()` method to specify a length shorter than its `String`, the string is truncated.

To find the capacity of a `StringBuilder` object, you use the `capacity()` method. The `StringBuilderDemo` application in **Figure 7-12** demonstrates this method. The application creates a `nameString` object containing the seven characters *Barbara*. The capacity of the `StringBuilder` object is obtained and stored in an integer variable named `nameStringCapacity` and displayed.

Figure 7-12 The `StringBuilderDemo` application

```
import javax.swing.JOptionPane;
public class StringBuilderDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        StringBuilder nameString = new StringBuilder("Barbara");
        int nameStringCapacity = nameString.capacity();
        System.out.println("Capacity of nameString is " +
                           nameStringCapacity);
        StringBuilder addressString = null;
        addressString = new
                        StringBuilder("6311 Hickory Nut Grove Road");
        int addStringCapacity = addressString.capacity();
        System.out.println("Capacity of addressString is " +
                           addStringCapacity);
        nameString.setLength(20);
        System.out.println("The name is " + nameString + "end");
        addressString.setLength(20);
        System.out.println("The address is " + addressString);
    }
}
```

Figure 7-13 shows the `StringBuilder` capacity is 23, which is 16 characters more than the length of the string *Barbara*. Whenever you create a `StringBuilder` object using a `String` as an argument to the constructor, the `StringBuilder`'s capacity is the length of the `String` contained as the argument to the `StringBuilder`, plus 16. The “extra” 16 positions allow for reasonable modification of the `StringBuilder` object after creation without allocating any new memory locations.

Figure 7-13 Output of the `StringBuilderDemo` application

```
Capacity of nameString is 23
Capacity of addressString is 43
The name is Barbara          end
The address is 6311 Hickory Nut Gro
```

Note

The creators of Java chose 16 characters as the “extra” length for a `StringBuilder` object because 16 characters fully occupy four bytes of memory. As you work more with computers in general and programming in particular, you will notice that storage capacities are almost always created in exponential values of 2, such as 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, and so on.

In the application in Figure 7-12, the `addressString` variable is created as `StringBuilder addressString = null;`. The variable does not refer to anything until it is initialized with the defined `StringBuilder` object in the following statement:

```
addressString = new StringBuilder("6311 Hickory Nut Grove Road");
```

The capacity of this new `StringBuilder` object is shown in Figure 7-13 as the length of the string plus 16, or 43.

In the application in Figure 7-12, the length of each of the `Strings` is changed to 20 using the `setLength()` method. The application displays the expanded `nameString` and `end`, so you can see in the output that there are 13 extra spaces at the end of the `String`. The application also displays the truncated `addressString` so that you can see the effect of reducing its length to 20.

The ability of `StringBuilder` objects to be modified can make using them more efficient than using `Strings` when you know string contents will change repeatedly. However, if your program makes relatively few changes to strings, or requires `String` comparisons, you should not use `StringBuilder`. For example, although the `equals()` method compares `String` object contents, when you use it with `StringBuilder` objects, it compares references. To compare the contents of two `StringBuilder` objects named `obj1` and `obj2`, you must first convert them to `Strings` with an expression such as the following:

```
obj1.toString().equals(obj2.toString())
```

The `append()` method of the `StringBuilder` class lets you add characters to the end of a `StringBuilder` object. For example, the following two statements together declare `phrase` to hold *Happy* and alter the phrase to hold *Happy birthday*:

```
StringBuilder phrase = new StringBuilder("Happy");
phrase.append(" birthday");
```

You can convert a `String` to a `StringBuilder` object by using `append()` with an empty `StringBuilder` object. For example, the following statements convert the name `String` to a `convertedName` `StringBuilder` object:

```
String name = "Raj";
StringBuilder convertedName = new StringBuilder();
convertedName.append(name);
```

The `insert()` method lets you add characters at a specific location within a `StringBuilder` object. For example, if `phrase` refers to *Happy birthday*, then `phrase.insert(6, "30th ")`; alters the `StringBuilder` to contain *Happy 30th birthday*. The first character in the `StringBuilder` object occupies position zero.

To alter just one character in a `StringBuilder` object, you can use the `setCharAt()` method, which allows you to change a character at a specified position. This method requires two arguments: an integer position and a character. If `phrase` refers to *Happy 30th birthday*, then `phrase.setCharAt(6, '4')`; changes the value into a 40th birthday greeting.

One way you can extract a character from a `StringBuilder` object is to use the `charAt()` method. The `charAt()` method accepts an argument that is the offset of the character position from the beginning of a `String` and returns the character at that position. The following statements assign the character 'P' to the variable `letter`:

```
StringBuilder text = new StringBuilder("Java Programming");
char letter = text.charAt(5);
```

If you try to use an index that is less than 0 or greater than the index of the last position in the `StringBuilder` object, you cause an error known as an exception and your program terminates.

One version of the `StringBuilder` constructor allows you to assign a capacity to a `StringBuilder` object when you create it. For example:

```
StringBuilder prettyBigString = new StringBuilder(300);
```

When you can approximate the eventual size needed for a `StringBuilder` object, assigning sufficient capacity can improve program performance. For example, the program in **Figure 7-14** compares the time needed to append *Java* 200,000 times to two `StringBuilder` objects—one that has an initial capacity of 16 characters and another that

has an initial capacity of 800,000 characters. **Figure 7-15** shows a typical execution; the actual times will vary from execution to execution and will be different on different computers. However, extra time is always needed for the loop that appends to the initially shorter `StringBuilder` because new memory must be allocated for it repeatedly as the object grows in size.

Figure 7-14 The `ConcatenationTimeComparison` application

```
import java.time.*;
public class ConcatenationTimeComparison
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        long startTime, endTime;
        final int TIMES = 200_000;
        final int FACTOR = 1_000_000;
        int x;
        StringBuilder string1 = new StringBuilder("");
        StringBuilder string2 = new StringBuilder(TIMES * 4);
        LocalDateTime now;
        now = LocalDateTime.now();
        startTime = now.getNano();
        for(x = 0; x < TIMES; ++x)
            string1.append("Java");
        now = LocalDateTime.now();
        endTime = now.getNano();
        System.out.println("Time with empty StringBuilder: " +
            ((endTime - startTime) / FACTOR + " milliseconds"));
        now = LocalDateTime.now();
        startTime = now.getNano();
        for(x = 0; x < TIMES; ++x)
            string2.append("Java");
        now = LocalDateTime.now();
        endTime = now.getNano();
        System.out.println("Time with empty StringBuilder: " +
            ((endTime - startTime) / FACTOR + " milliseconds"));
    }
}
```

Figure 7-15 Typical execution of the `ConcatenationTimeComparison` program

```
Time with empty StringBuilder: 84 milliseconds
Time with empty StringBuilder: 4 milliseconds
```

Two Truths & a Lie | Learning About the `StringBuilder` and `StringBuffer` Classes

- When you create a `String`, you have the option of omitting the keyword `new`, but when you initialize a `StringBuilder` object, you must use the keyword `new`, the constructor name, and an initializing value between the constructor's parentheses.
- When you create a `StringBuilder` object with an initial value of "Juan", its capacity is 16.
- If a `StringBuilder` named `myAddress` contains "817", then `myAddress.append(" Maple Lane");` alters `myAddress` to contain "817 Maple Lane".

The false statement is #2. When you create a `StringBuilder` object with an initial value of "Juan", its capacity is the length of the `String` contained in `StringBuilder`, 4, plus 16 more, for a total of 20.

You Do It | Using `StringBuilder` Methods

In these steps, you write a program that demonstrates some methods in the `StringBuilder` class.

1. Open a new text file, and type the following first lines of a `StringBuilderMethods` class:

```
public class StringBuilderMethods
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

2. Use the following code to create a `StringBuilder` object, and then display it:

```
StringBuilder str = new StringBuilder("singing");
System.out.println(str);
```

3. Enter the following `append()` method to add characters to the existing `StringBuilder` and display it again:

```
str.append(" in the dead of ");
System.out.println(str);
```

4. Enter the following `insert()` method to insert characters. Then display the `StringBuilder`, insert additional characters, and display it again:

```
str.insert(0, "Black");
System.out.println(str);
str.insert(5, "bird ");
System.out.println(str);
```

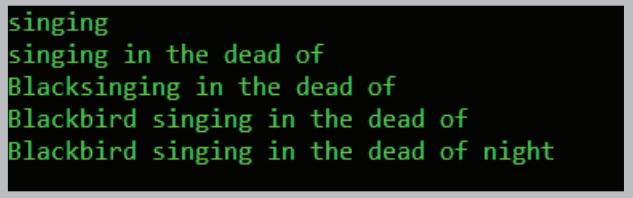
5. Add one more `append` and display sequence:

```
str.append("night");
System.out.println(str);
```

6. Add a closing curly brace for the `main()` method.

7. Type the closing curly brace for the class, and then save the file as `StringBuilderMethods.java`. Compile and execute the program, and then compare your output to **Figure 7-16**.

Figure 7-16 Output of the `StringBuilderMethods` application



```
singing
singing in the dead of
Blacksinging in the dead of
Blackbird singing in the dead of
Blackbird singing in the dead of night
```

Don't Do It

- Don't attempt to compare `String` objects using the standard comparison operators. The `==` operator will compare the addresses of strings, not their contents. The `<` and `>` operators will not work with `String` operands.

- › Don't forget that `startsWith()`, `endsWith()`, `replace()`, and `contains()` are case sensitive, so you might want to convert participating `String`s to the same case before using them.
- › Don't forget to use the `new` operator and the constructor when declaring initialized `StringBuilder` or `StringBuffer` objects.
- › Don't use `StringBuilder` or `StringBuffer` unless you have a good reason; otherwise, use the `String` class.

Summary

- › `String` variables are references, so they require special techniques for making comparisons of their contents.
- › The `Character` class is one whose instances can hold a single character value. This class also defines methods that can manipulate or inspect single-character data.
- › A sequence of characters enclosed within double quotation marks is a literal string. Unlike other classes, you are not required to use the keyword `new` or explicitly call a constructor when you declare a `String`, although you can do so. `Strings` are immutable. Useful `String` class methods include `equals()`, `equalsIgnoreCase()`, and `compareTo()`.
- › Additional useful `String` methods include `toUpperCase()`, `toLowerCase()`, `length()`, `indexOf()`, `charAt()`, `endsWith()`, `startsWith()`, and `replace()`. The `toString()` method converts any object to a `String`. You can concatenate `Strings` using a plus sign (+). You can extract part of a `String` with the `substring()` method. If a `String` contains appropriate characters, you can convert it to a number with the help of methods such as `Integer.parseInt()` and `Double.parseDouble()`.
- › You can use the `StringBuilder` or `StringBuffer` class to improve performance when a string's contents must change.

Key Terms

anonymous object	Character class	StringBuffer class
buffer	immutable	StringBuilder class
capacity of the <code>StringBuilder</code> object	lexicographical comparison	threads of execution

null String

wrapper

Review Questions

1. A sequence of characters enclosed within double quotation marks is a _____.
 a. literal string
 b. symbolic string
 c. prompt
 d. command
2. To create a `String` object, you can use the keyword _____ before the constructor call, but you are not required to use this format.
 a. object
 b. create
 c. new
 d. char

3. A String variable name is a _____.

- a. literal
- b. value
- c. constant
- d. reference

4. The term that programmers use to describe objects that cannot be changed is _____.

- a. irrevocable
- b. nonvolatile
- c. immutable
- d. stable

5. Suppose that you declare two String objects as:

```
String word1 = new String("happy");
String word2;
```

When you ask a user to enter a value for word2, and the user types *happy*, the value of word1 == word2 is _____.

- a. true
- b. false
- c. illegal
- d. unknown

6. Suppose that you declare two String objects as:

```
String word1 = new String("happy");
String word2 = new String("happy");
```

The value of word1.equals(word2) is _____.

- a. true
- b. false
- c. illegal
- d. unknown

7. The method that determines whether two String objects are equivalent, regardless of case, is _____.

- a. equalsIgnoreCase()
- b. toUpperCase()
- c. equalsNoCase()
- d. equals()

8. Suppose that a String is declared as:

```
String aStr = new String("lima bean");
```

The value of aStr.equals("Lima Bean") is _____.

- a. true
- b. false
- c. illegal
- d. unknown

9. Suppose that you create two String objects:

```
String name1 = new String("Jordan");
String name2 = new String("Jore");
```

The expression name1.compareTo(name2) has a value of _____.

- a. true
- b. false
- c. -1
- d. 1

10. If String myFriend = new String("Ginny");, which of the following has the value 1?

- a. myFriend.compareTo("Gabby");
- b. myFriend.compareTo("Gabriella");
- c. myFriend.compareTo("Ghazala");
- d. myFriend.compareTo("Hammie");

11. If String movie = new String("Finding Dory");, the value of movie.indexOf('i') is _____.

- a. true
- b. false
- c. 1
- d. 2

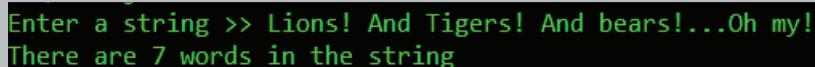
12. The `String` class `replace()` method replaces _____.
- a. a `String` with a character
 - b. one `String` with another `String`
 - c. the first occurrence of a character in a `String` with another character
 - d. every occurrence of a character in a `String` with another character
13. The `toString()` method converts the data type(s) _____ to a `String`.
- a. `char`
 - b. `char` and `int`
 - c. `char`, `int`, and `float`
 - d. `char`, `int`, `float`, and `double`
14. Joining `Strings` with a plus sign is called _____.
- a. chaining
 - b. concatenation
 - c. parsing
 - d. linking
15. The first position in a `String` _____.
- a. must be alphabetic
 - b. must be uppercase
 - c. is position zero
 - d. is ignored by the `compareTo()` method
16. The method that extracts a `String` from another `String` is _____.
- a. `extract()`
 - b. `parseString()`
 - c. `substring()`
 - d. `append()`
17. The method `parseInt()` converts a(n) _____.
- a. integer to a `String`
 - b. integer to a `Double`
 - c. `Double` to a `String`
 - d. `String` to an integer
18. The difference between `int` and `Integer` is _____.
- a. `int` is a primitive type; `Integer` is a class
 - b. `int` is a class; `Integer` is a primitive type
 - c. nonexistent; both are primitive types
 - d. nonexistent; both are classes
19. For an alternative to the `String` class, and so that you can change a `String`'s contents, you can use _____.
- a. `char`
 - b. `StringHolder`
 - c. `StringBuilder`
 - d. `StringMerger`
20. Unlike when you create a `String`, when you create a `StringBuilder`, you must use the keyword _____.
- a. `buffer`
 - b. `new`
 - c. `null`
 - d. `class`

Programming Exercises

1. Modify the `CharacterInfo` class shown in Figure 7-3 so that the tested character is retrieved from user input. Save the file as `InputCharacterInfo.java`.
2. Write an application that prompts the user for three first names and concatenates them in every possible two-name combination so that new parents can easily compare them to find the most pleasing baby name. Save the file as `BabyNameComparison.java`.

3.
 - a. Create a program that contains a `String` that holds your favorite inspirational quote and display the total number of spaces contained in the `String`. Save the file as `CountSpaces.java`.
 - b. Write an application that counts the total number of spaces contained in a quote entered by the user. Save the file as `CountSpaces2.java`.
4. Write an application that prompts the user for a password that contains at least two uppercase letters, at least three lowercase letters, and at least one digit. Continually reprompt the user until a valid password is entered. Display a message indicating whether the password is valid; if not, display the reason the password is not valid. Save the file as `ValidatePassword.java`.
5. Write an application that counts the words in a `String` entered by a user. Words are separated by any combination of spaces, periods, commas, semicolons, question marks, exclamation points, or dashes. **Figure 7-17** shows a typical execution. Save the file as `CountWords.java`.

Figure 7-17 Typical execution of the `CountWords` application



```
Enter a string >> Lions! And Tigers! And bears!...Oh my!
There are 7 words in the string
```

6.
 - a. Write an application that accepts three `Strings` from the user and, without regard to case, appropriately displays a message that indicates whether the `Strings` were entered in alphabetical order. Save the file as `Alphabetize.java`.
 - b. Write an application that accepts three `Strings` from the user and displays them in alphabetical order without regard to case. Save the file as `Alphabetize2.java`.
7. Three-letter acronyms are common in the business world. For example, in Java you use the IDE (Integrated Development Environment) in the JDK (Java Development Kit) to write programs used by the JVM (Java Virtual Machine) that you might send over a LAN (local area network). Programmers even use the acronym TLA to stand for *three-letter acronym*. Write a program that allows a user to enter three words, and display the appropriate three-letter acronym in all uppercase letters. If the user enters more than three words, ignore the extra words. Save the file as `ThreeLetterAcronym.java`.
8. Write an application that accepts a word from a user and converts it to Pig Latin. If a word starts with a consonant, the Pig Latin version removes all consonants from the beginning of the word and places them at the end, followed by *ay*. For example, *cricket* becomes *icketcray*. If a word starts with a vowel, the Pig Latin version is the original word with *ay* added to the end. For example, *apple* becomes *appleay*. If *y* is the first letter in a word, it is treated as a consonant; otherwise, it is treated as a vowel. For example, *young* becomes *oungyay*, but *system* becomes *ystemsay*. For this program, assume that the user will enter only a single word consisting of all lowercase letters. Save the file as `PigLatin.java`.
9.
 - a. Write an application that accepts up to 20 `Strings`, or fewer if the user enters a terminating value. Store each `String` in one of two lists—one list for short `Strings` that are 10 characters or fewer and another list for long `Strings` that are 11 characters or more. After data entry is complete, prompt the user to enter which type of `String` (short or long) to display, and then output the correct list. For this exercise, you can assume that if the user does not request the list of short `Strings`, the user wants the list of long `Strings`. If a requested list has no `Strings`, output an appropriate message. Prompt the user continually until a sentinel value is entered. Save the file as `CategorizeStrings.java`.
 - b. Modify the `CategorizeStrings` application to divide the entered `Strings` into those that contain no spaces, one space, or more. After data entry is complete, continually prompt the user to enter the type of `String` to display. If the user does not enter one of the three valid choices, display all of the `Strings`. Save the file as `CategorizeStrings2.java`.

10. Write a program that inserts parentheses, a space, and a dash into a `String` of 10 user-entered numbers to format it as a phone number. For example, `5153458912` becomes `(515)345-8912`. If the user does not enter exactly 10 digits, display an error message. Continue to accept user input until the user enters `999`. Save the file as `PhoneNumberFormat.java`.
11. Write an application that determines whether a phrase entered by the user is a palindrome. A palindrome is a phrase that reads the same backward and forward without regarding capitalization or punctuation. For example, *Dot saw I was Tod, Was it a car or a cat I saw?*, and *Madam, I'm Adam* are palindromes. Save the file as `Palindrome.java`.
12. a. Create a `TaxReturn` class with fields that hold a taxpayer's Social Security number, last name, first name, street address, city, state, zip code, annual income, marital status, and tax liability. Include a constructor that requires arguments that provide values for all the fields other than the tax liability. The constructor calculates the tax liability based on annual income and marital status. The following table shows the percentage of income that is taxed.

INCOME (\$)	SINGLE STATUS	MARRIED STATUS
0–20,000	15%	14%
20,001–50,000	22%	20%
50,001 and over	30%	28%

In the `TaxReturn` class, also include a `display` method that displays all the `TaxReturn` data. Save the file as `TaxReturn.java`.

- b. Create an application that prompts a user for the data needed to create a `TaxReturn`. Continue to prompt the user for data as long as any of the following are true:
 - › The Social Security number is not in the correct format, with digits and dashes in the appropriate positions—for example, `999-99-9999`.
 - › The zip code is not five digits.
 - › The marital status does not begin with one of the following: *S, s, M, or m*.
 - › The annual income is negative.

After each item of the input data is correct, create a `TaxReturn` object and then display its values. Save the file as `PrepareTax.java`.

Debugging Exercises

1. Each of the following files in the Chapter07 folder of your downloadable student files has syntax and/or logic errors. In each case, determine the problem and fix the application. After you correct the errors, save each file using the same filename preceded with *Fix*. For example, `DebugSeven1.java` will become `FixDebugSeven1.java`.
 - a. `DebugSeven1.java`
 - b. `DebugSeven2.java`
 - c. `DebugSeven3.java`
 - d. `DebugSeven4.java`

Game Zone

1. a. Design a Card class. The class holds fields that contain a Card's value and a suit that is one of the four strings *Spades*, *Hearts*, *Diamonds*, or *Clubs*. Also, add a field to the class to hold the String representation of a Card's rank based on its value. Within the Card class `setValue()` method, besides setting the numeric value, also set the String rank value as follows:

NUMERIC VALUE	STRING VALUE FOR RANK
1	Ace
2 through 10	2 through 10
11	Jack
12	Queen
13	King

Save the file as **Card.java**.

1. b. Create a War Card game that randomly selects two cards (one for the player and one for the computer) and declares a winner (or a tie). **Figure 7-18** shows a typical execution. Recall that in this version of War, you assume that the Ace is the lowest-valued card. Save the game as **War2.java**.

Figure 7-18 Typical execution of the **War2** game

```
My card is the King of Diamonds
Your card is the 6 of Clubs
I win
```

2. Create a Rock Paper Scissors game in which the user enters a string *rock*, *paper*, or *scissors*. Allow the choice to be valid whether the player enters a choice in uppercase letters, lowercase letters, or a combination of the two. To allow for player misspellings, accept the player's entry as long as the first two letters are correct. (In other words, if a player types *scixxrs*, you will accept it as *scissors* because at least the first two letters are correct.)

When the player does not type at least the first two letters of the choice correctly, reprompt the player and continue to do so until the player's entry contains at least the first two letters of one of the options.

Allow 10 complete rounds of the game. At the end, display counts of the number of times the player won, the number of times the computer won, and the number of tie games.

Save the file as **RockPaperScissors2.java**.

3. Create a simple guessing game, similar to Hangman, in which the user guesses letters and then attempts to guess a partially hidden phrase. Display a phrase in which some of the letters are replaced by asterisks: for example, *G* T**** (for *Go Team*). Each time the user guesses a letter, either place the letter in the correct spot (or spots) in the phrase and display it again or tell the user the guessed letter is not in the phrase. Display a congratulatory message when the entire correct phrase has been deduced. Save the game as **SecretPhrase.java**.
4. Eliza is a famous 1966 computer program written by Joseph Weizenbaum. It imitates a psychologist (more specifically, a Rogerian therapist) by rephrasing many of a patient's statements as questions and posing them to the patient. This type of therapy (sometimes called nondirectional) is often parodied in movies and television shows, in which the therapist does not even have to listen to the patient, but gives "canned" responses that lead the patient from statement to statement. For example, when the patient says, *I am having trouble with my brother*, the therapist might say, *Tell me more about your brother*. If the patient says, *I dislike school*, the therapist might say, *Why do you say you dislike school?* Eliza became a milestone in the history of computers

because it was the first time a computer programmer attempted to create the illusion of human-to-human interaction.

Create a simple version of Eliza by allowing the user to enter statements continually until the user quits by typing *Goodbye*. After each statement, have the computer make one of the following responses:

- › If the user entered the word *my* (for example, *I am having trouble with my brother*), respond with *Tell me more about your* and insert the noun in question—for example, *Tell me more about your brother*. When you search for a word in the user’s entry, make sure it is the entire word and not just letters within another word. For example, when searching for *my*, make sure it is not part of another word such as *dummy* or *mystic*.
- › If the user entered a strong word, such as *love* or *hate*, respond with *You seem to have strong feelings about that*.
- › Add a few other appropriate responses of your choosing.
- › In the absence of any of the preceding inputs, respond with a random phrase from the following: *Please go on*, *Tell me more*, or *Continue*.

Save the file as **Eliza.java**.

Case Problems

1. a. Yummy Catering provides meals for parties and special events. In previous chapters, you have developed an `Event` class that holds catering event information. Now modify the `Event` class as follows:
 - › Modify the method that sets the event number in the `Event` class so that if the argument passed to the method is not a four-character `String` that starts with a letter followed by three digits, then the event number is forced to *A000*. If the initial letter in the event number is not uppercase, force it to be so.
 - › Add a contact phone number field to the `Event` class.
 - › Add a set method for the contact phone number field in the `Event` class. Whether the user enters all digits or any combination of digits, spaces, dashes, dots, or parentheses for a phone number, store it as all digits. (Assume a phone number is 10 digits and does not require a leading digit that might be needed when dialing.) For example, if the user enters *(920) 872-9182*, store the phone number as *9208729182*. If the user enters a number with fewer or more than 10 digits, store the number as *0000000000*.
 - › Add a get method for the phone number field. The get method returns the phone number as a `String` constructed as follows: parentheses surround a three-digit area code, followed by a space, followed by the three-digit phone exchange, followed by a hyphen, followed by the last four digits of the phone number.

Save the file as **Event.java**.

- b. Create an `EventDemo` application that does the following:

- › Prompts the user for event numbers and numbers of guests and constructs three `Event` objects.
- › Prompts the user for and retrieves a contact phone number for each of the `Event` objects.
- › Displays the event number and contact phone number for each `Event`.

Save the file as **EventDemo.java**.

2. a. Sunshine Seashore Supplies rents beach equipment to tourists. In previous chapters, you have developed a `Rental` class that holds equipment rental information. Now modify the `Rental` class as follows:
- › Modify the method that sets the contract number in the `Rental` class so that if the argument passed to the method is not a four-character `String` that starts with a letter followed by three digits, then the contract number is forced to `A000`. If the initial letter in the contract number is not uppercase, force it to be so.
 - › Add a contact phone number field to the `Rental` class.
 - › Add a set method for the contact phone number field in the `Rental` class. Whether the user enters all digits or any combination of digits, spaces, dashes, dots, or parentheses for a phone number, store it as all digits. (Assume a phone number is 10 digits and does not require a leading digit that might be needed when dialing.) For example, if the user enters `(920) 872-9182`, store the phone number as `9208729182`. If the user enters a number with fewer or more than 10 digits, store the number as `0000000000`.
 - › Add a get method for the phone number field. The get method returns the phone number as a `String` constructed as follows: parentheses surround a three-digit area code, followed by a space, followed by the three-digit phone exchange, followed by a hyphen, followed by the last four digits of the phone number.

Save the file as `Rental.java`.

- b. Create a `RentalDemo` application that does the following:

- › Prompts the user for a contract number and number of minutes for three `Rental` objects.
- › Prompts the user for and retrieves a contact phone number for each of the `Rental` objects.
- › Displays the contract number and contact phone number for each `Rental`.

Save the file as `RentalDemo.java`.

Arrays

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to:

- 8.1** Declare an array
 - 8.2** Initialize an array
 - 8.3** Use variable subscripts with an array
 - 8.4** Declare and use arrays of objects
 - 8.5** Search an array and use parallel arrays
 - 8.6** Pass arrays to and return arrays from methods
 - 8.7** Sort array elements
 - 8.8** Use two-dimensional and other multidimensional arrays
 - 8.9** Use the `Arrays` class
 - 8.10** Create enumerations
-

8.1 Declaring an Array

So far in this course, you have stored values in variables and used them, usually only once, but never more than a few times. When you learned to place variables within loops, you gained the ability to efficiently use the same variable many times.

At times, however, you might encounter situations in which storing just one value at a time in memory does not meet your needs. For example, a sales manager who supervises 20 employees might want to determine whether each employee has produced sales above or below the average amount. When you enter the first employee's sales value into an application, you can't determine whether it is above or below average because you don't know the average until you have all 20 values. Unfortunately, if you attempt to assign 20 sales values to the same variable, it replaces the value for the first employee when you assign the value for the second employee.

A possible solution is to create 20 separate employee sales variables, each with a unique name, so you can store all the sales until you can determine an average. A drawback to this method is that if you have 20 different

variable names to be assigned values, you need 20 separate assignment statements. For 20 different variable names, the statement that calculates total sales will be unwieldy, such as:

```
total = firstAmt + secondAmt + thirdAmt + ...
```

This method might work for 20 salespeople, but what if you have 10,000 salespeople? The best solution is to create an array. An **array** is a named list of data items that all have the same data type. Each data item is an **element** of the array. You declare an array variable in the same way you declare any simple variable, but you insert a pair of square brackets after the data type. For example, to declare an array of double values to hold sales figures for salespeople, you can write the following:

```
double[] salesFigures;
```

Similarly, to create an array of integers to hold student ID numbers, you can write the following:

```
int[] idNums;
```

Note

In Java, you also can declare an array variable by placing the square brackets after the array name, as in `double salesFigures [] ;`. This format is familiar to C and C++ programmers, but the preferred format among Java programmers is to place the brackets following the variable type and before the variable name.

You can provide any legal identifier you want for an array, but Java programmers conventionally name arrays by following the same rules they use for variables—array names start with a lowercase letter and use uppercase letters to begin subsequent words. Additionally, many programmers observe one of the following conventions to make it more obvious that the name represents a group of items:

- › Because arrays store multiple items, they often are named using a plural noun such as `salesFigures`.
- › Sometimes, arrays are named by adding a final word that implies a group, such as `salesList`, `salesTable`, or `salesArray`.

After you create an array variable, you still need to reserve memory space. You use the same procedure to create an array that you use to create an object. Recall that when you create a class named `Employee`, you can declare an `Employee` object with a declaration such as:

```
Employee oneWorker;
```

However, that declaration does not actually create the `oneWorker` object. You create the `oneWorker` object when you use the keyword `new` and a call to the constructor, as in:

```
oneWorker = new Employee();
```

Similarly, declaring an array and reserving memory space for it are two distinct processes. To reserve memory locations for 20 `salesFigures` values, you can declare the array variable and create the array with two separate statements as follows:

```
double[] salesFigures;
salesFigures = new double[20];
```

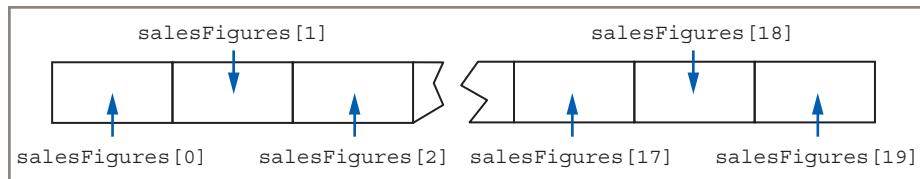
Alternatively, just as with objects, you can declare and create an array in one statement with the following:

```
double[] salesFigures = new double[20];
```

In Java, the size of an array follows the data type and is never declared immediately following the array name, as it is in some other languages such as C++. Other languages, such as Visual Basic, BASIC, and COBOL, use parentheses rather than brackets to refer to individual array elements. By using brackets, the creators of Java made it easier for you to distinguish array names from methods.

The statement `double[] salesFigures = new double[20];` reserves 20 memory locations for 20 double values. You can distinguish each `salesFigures` item from the others with a subscript. A **subscript** is an integer contained within square brackets that specifies one of an array's elements. In Java, any array's elements are numbered beginning with 0, so you can legally use any subscript from 0 through 19 when working with an array that has 20 elements. In other words, the first `salesFigures` array element is `salesFigures[0]` and the last `salesFigures` element is `salesFigures[19]`. **Figure 8-1** shows how the first few and last few elements of an array of 20 `salesFigures` values appear in computer memory.

Figure 8-1 The first few and last few elements of an array of 20 `salesFigures` items in memory



Note

A subscript is also called an **index**. In particular, you will see the term *index* in some error messages issued by the compiler.

It is a common mistake to forget that the first element in an array is element 0, especially if you know another programming language in which the first array element is element 1. Making this mistake means you will be “off by one” in your use of any array. It is also common to forget that the last element’s subscript is one less than the array’s size and not the array’s size. For example, the highest allowed subscript for a 100-element array is 99. To remember that array elements begin with element 0, it might help if you think of the first array element as being “zero elements away from” the beginning of the array, the second element as being “one element away from” the beginning of the array, and so on. If you use a subscript that is too small (that is, negative) or too large for an array, the subscript is **out of bounds**, and an error message is generated.

When you work with any individual array element, you treat it no differently from how you would treat a single variable of the same type. For example, to assign a value to the first `salesFigures` element in an array, you use a simple assignment statement, such as the following:

```
salesFigures[0] = 2100.00;
```

To display the last `salesFigures` element in an array of 20, you can write:

```
System.out.println(salesFigures[19]);
```

When programmers talk about these statements, they typically say things like, “`salesFigures` sub zero is assigned 2100.00,” and “`salesFigures` sub 19 is output.” In other words, they use *sub* as shorthand for *with the subscript*.

When you declare or access an array, you can use any expression to represent the size, as long as the expression is an integer. Some other programming languages, such as C++, allow only named or unnamed constants to be used for the size when an array is declared. Java allows variables, arithmetic expressions, and method return values to be used as array sizes, which makes array declaration more flexible.

For example, to declare a `double` array named `moneyValues`, you might use any of the following:

» A literal integer constant; for example:

```
double[] moneyValues = new double[10];
```

» A named integer constant; for example:

```
double[] moneyValues = new double[NUMBER_ELS];
```

In this example, the constant `NUMBER_ELS` must have been declared previously and assigned a value.

- › An integer variable; for example:

```
double[] moneyValues = new double[numberOfEls];
```

In this example, the variable `numberOfEls` must have been declared previously and assigned a value.

- › A calculation; for example:

```
double[] moneyValues = new double[x + y * z];
```

In this example, the variables `x`, `y`, and `z` must have been declared previously and assigned values, and the result of the expression `x + y * z` must be an integer.

- › A method's return value; for example:

```
double[] moneyValues = new double[getElements()];
```

In this example, the method `getElements()` must return an integer.

Two Truths & a Lie | Declaring an Array

1. The statement `int[] idNums = new int[35];` reserves enough memory for exactly 34 integers.
2. The first element in any array has a subscript of 0, no matter what data type is stored.
3. In Java, you can use a variable as well as a constant to declare an array's size.

The false statement is #1. The statement `int[] idNums = new int[35];` reserves enough memory for exactly 35 integers numbered 0 through 34.

You Do It | Declaring an Array

In this section, you create a small array to see how arrays are used. The array holds salaries for four categories of employees.

1. Open a new text file, and begin the class that demonstrates how arrays are used by typing the following class and `main()` headers and their corresponding opening curly braces:

```
public class DemoArray
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

2. On a new line, declare and create an array that can hold four `double` values by typing the following:

```
double[] salaries = new double[4];
```

3. One by one, assign four values to the four array elements by typing the following:

```
salaries[0] = 16.25;
salaries[1] = 17.55;
salaries[2] = 18.25;
salaries[3] = 19.85;
```

4. To confirm that the four values have been assigned, display the salaries one by one using the following code:

```
System.out.println("Salaries one by one are:");
System.out.println(salaries[0]);
System.out.println(salaries[1]);
System.out.println(salaries[2]);
System.out.println(salaries[3]);
```

5. Add the two closing curly braces that end the `main()` method and the `DemoArray` class.
6. Save the program as `DemoArray.java`. Compile and run the program. The program's output appears in **Figure 8-2**.

Using a Subscript That is Out of Bounds

In this section, you purposely generate an out-of-bounds error so you can familiarize yourself with the error message that appears.

1. As the last executable line in the `DemoArray.java` file, add a new output statement that attempts to display a `salaries` value using a subscript that is beyond the range of the array:

```
System.out.println(salaries[4]);
```

2. Save the file, and then compile and execute it. The output looks like **Figure 8-3**. The program runs successfully when the subscript used with the array is 0, 1, 2, or 3. However, when the subscript reaches 4, the error in **Figure 8-3** is generated. The message indicates that an `ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException` has occurred and that the offending index is 4.

Figure 8-2 Output of the `DemoArray` application

```
Salaries one by one are:
16.25
17.55
18.25
19.85
```

Figure 8-3 Output of the `DemoArray` application when a subscript is out of bounds

```
16.25
17.55
18.25
19.85
Exception in thread "main" java.lang.ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException: Index 4
out of bounds for length 4
        at DemoArray.main(DemoArray.java:15)
```

3. Remove the offending statement from the `DemoArray` class. Save the program, and then compile and run it again to confirm that it again executes correctly.

8.2 Initializing an Array

A variable that has a primitive type, such as `int`, holds a value. A variable with a reference type, such as an array, holds a memory address where a value is stored. In other words, array names contain references, as do all Java object names.

No memory address is assigned when you declare an array using only a data type, brackets, and a name. Instead, the array variable name has the value `null`, which means the identifier is not associated with a memory address. You can explicitly assign `null` to an array reference, but it is not required. Each of the following statements assigns `null` to `someNums`:

```
int[] someNums;
int[] someNums = null;
```

When you use the keyword new to define an array, the array reference acquires a memory address value. For example, when you define someNums in the following statement, a memory address is assigned:

```
int[] someNums = new int[10];
```

When you declare `int[] someNums = new int[10];`, someNums holds an address, but each element of someNums has a value of 0 by default because someNums is an integer array. The following default values are used for different array types:

- › Each element in an int array is assigned 0.
- › Each element in a double or float array is assigned 0.0.
- › Each element in a char array is assigned \u0000, which is the Unicode value for a null character.
- › Each element in a boolean array is assigned the value false.
- › Each element in an array of objects, including Strings, is assigned null.

You already know how to assign a different value to a single element of an array, as in:

```
someNums[0] = 46;
```

You also can assign nondefault values to array elements upon creation. To initialize an array, you use an **initialization list** of values separated by commas and enclosed within curly braces. Providing values for all the elements in an array also is called **populating an array**.

For example, if you want to create an array named `multsOfTen` and store the first six multiples of 10 within the array, you can declare the array as follows:

```
int[] multsOfTen = {10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60};
```

Notice the semicolon at the end of the statement. You don't use a semicolon following a method's closing curly brace, but you do use one following the closing brace of an array initialization list.

When you populate an array upon creation by providing an initialization list, you do not give the array a size—the size is assigned based on the number of values you place in the initializing list. For example, the `multsOfTen` array just defined has a size of 6. Also, when you initialize an array, you do not need to use the keyword new; instead, new memory is assigned based on the length of the list of provided values.

In Java, you cannot directly initialize part of an array. For example, you cannot create an array of 10 elements and initialize only five; you either must initialize every element or you must initialize none of them.

Two Truths & a Lie | Initializing an Array

1. When you declare `int[] idNums = new int[35];`, each element of the array has a value of 0.
2. When you declare `double[] salaries = new double[10];`, each element of the array has a value of 0.0.
3. When you declare `int[] scores = {100, 90, 80};`, the first three elements of the array are assigned the values listed, but all the remaining elements are assigned 0.

The false statement is #3. When you provide an initialization list for an array, the array contains exactly the number of elements in the list.

You Do It | Initializing an Array

Next, you alter your `DemoArray` program to initialize the array of doubles, rather than declaring the array and assigning values later.

1. Open the `DemoArray.java` file. Immediately save the file as `DemoArray2.java`. Change the class name to `DemoArray2`. Delete the statement that declares the array of four doubles named `salaries`, and then replace it with the following initialization statement:

```
double[] salaries = {16.25, 17.55, 18.25, 19.85};
```

2. Delete the following four statements that individually assign the values to the array:

```
salaries[0] = 16.25;
salaries[1] = 17.55;
salaries[2] = 18.25;
salaries[3] = 19.85;
```

3. Save the file (as `DemoArray2.java`), compile, and test the application. The values that are output are the same as those shown for the `DemoArray` application in Figure 8-2.

8.3 Using Variable Subscripts with an Array

If you treat each array element as an individual entity, there isn't much of an advantage to declaring an array over declaring individual primitive type variables, such as those with the type `int`, `double`, or `char`. The power of arrays becomes apparent when you begin to use subscripts that are variables, rather than subscripts that are constant values.

For example, suppose you declare an array of five integers that holds quiz scores, such as the following:

```
int[] scoreArray = {2, 14, 35, 67, 85};
```

Suppose that the quiz administrator decides to increase each score by 3 to make up for a question that was determined to be invalid. To increase each `scoreArray` element by three points, you can write the following:

```
final int INCREASE = 3;
scoreArray[0] += INCREASE;
scoreArray[1] += INCREASE;
scoreArray[2] += INCREASE;
scoreArray[3] += INCREASE;
scoreArray[4] += INCREASE;
```

With five `scoreArray` elements, this task is manageable, requiring only five statements. However, you can reduce the amount of program code needed by using a variable as the subscript. Then, you can use a loop to perform arithmetic on each array element, as in the following example:

```
int sub;
final int INCREASE = 3;
for(sub = 0; sub < 5; ++sub)
    scoreArray[sub] += INCREASE;
```

With this `for` loop, the following steps occur:

- › The loop control variable `sub` is set to 0.
- › The loop control variable is compared to 5.
- › Because the value of `sub` is less than 5, the loop executes and 3 is added to `scoreArray[0]`.

- › The variable `sub` is incremented and it becomes 1.
- › The value of `sub` is still less than 5, so when the loop executes again, `scoreArray[1]` is increased by 3, and so on.

A process that took five statements now takes only one. In addition, if the array had 100 elements, the first method of increasing the array values by 3 in separate statements would result in 95 additional statements. The only changes required using the second method would be:

- › Change the array size to 100 by inserting additional initial values for the scores in the array initialization list.
- › Change the middle portion of the `for` statement to compare `sub` to 100 instead of to 5.

The loop to increase 100 separate scores by 3 each is:

```
for(sub = 0; sub < 100; ++sub)
    scoreArray[sub] += INCREASE;
```

When an application contains an array and you want to use every element of the array in some task, it is common to perform loops that vary the loop control variable from 0 to one less than the size of the array. For example, if you get input values for the elements in the array, alter every value in the array, sum all the values in the array, or display every element in the array, you need to perform a loop that executes the same number of times as there are elements. (If you perform the loop too many times, the subscript will be out of bounds; if you do not perform the loop enough times, you will miss processing some elements in the list.) When there are 10 array elements, the subscript varies from 0 through 9; when there are 800 elements, the subscript varies from 0 through 799. Therefore, in an application that includes an array, it is convenient to declare a named constant equal to the size of the array and use it as a limiting value in every loop that processes the array. That way, if the array size changes in the future, you need to modify only the value stored in the named, symbolic constant, and you do not need to search for and modify the limiting value in every loop that processes the array.

For example, suppose you declare an integer named `sub`, an array named `scoreArray`, and a named constant `NUMBER_OF_SCORES` as follows:

```
int sub;
int[] scoreArray = {2, 14, 35, 67, 85};
final int NUMBER_OF_SCORES = 5;
```

Then, the following two loops are identical:

```
for(sub = 0; sub < 5; ++sub)
    scoreArray[sub] += INCREASE;
for(sub = 0; sub < NUMBER_OF_SCORES; ++sub)
    scoreArray[sub] += INCREASE;
```

The second format has two advantages.

- › First, by using the named constant, `NUMBER_OF_SCORES`, the reader understands that you are processing every array element for the size of the entire array. If you use the number 5, the reader must look back to the array declaration to confirm that 5 represents the full size of the array.
- › Second, if the array size changes because you remove or add scores, you change the named constant value only once, and all loops that use the constant are automatically altered to perform the correct number of repetitions.

As an even better option, you can use a field (instance variable) that is automatically assigned a value for every array you create; the `length` field contains the number of elements in the array. For example, when you declare an array using either of the following statements, the field `scoreArray.length` is assigned the value 5:

```
int[] scoreArray = {2, 14, 35, 67, 85};
int[] scoreArray = new int[5];
```

Therefore, you can use the following loop to add 3 to every array element:

```
for(sub = 0; sub < scoreArray.length; ++sub)
    scoreArray[sub] += INCREASE;
```

Later, if you modify the size of the array and recompile the program, the value in the `length` field of the array changes appropriately. When you work with array elements, it is always better to use a named constant or the `length` field when writing a loop that manipulates an array.

A frequent programmer error is to attempt to use `length` as an array method, referring to `scoreArray.length()`. You have learned that `length()` is a method used to determine a `String`'s length. However, with an array, `length` is not a method; it is a field. An instance variable or object field such as `length` is also called a *property* of the object.

Note

Many programmers traditionally use `i` as the identifier for a subscript variable because it is short for `index`. Others, however, feel that `i` is too easily misread as a 1 and that other identifiers are better.

Using the Enhanced for Loop

Besides the `for` loop you have already studied, Java supports an **enhanced for loop**. This loop allows you to cycle through an array without specifying the starting and ending points for the loop control variable. For example, you can use either of the following statements to display every element in an array named `scoreArray`:

```
for(int sub = 0; sub < scoreArray.length; ++sub)
    System.out.println(scoreArray[sub]);
for(int val : scoreArray)
    System.out.println(val);
```

In the second example, `val` is defined to be the same type as the array named following the colon. Within the loop, `val` takes on, in turn, each value in the array. You can read the second example as, “For each `val` in `scoreArray`, display `val`.” As a matter of fact, you will see the enhanced `for` loop referred to as a **foreach loop**. You can also use the enhanced `for` loop with more complicated Java objects, as you will see in the next section.

Using Part of an Array

Sometimes, you do not want to use every value in an array. For example, suppose that you write a program that allows a student to enter up to 10 quiz scores and then computes and displays the average. To allow for 10 quiz scores, you create an array that can hold 10 values, but because the student might enter fewer than 10 values, you might use only part of the array. **Figure 8-4** shows such a program.

The `AverageOfQuizzes` program declares an array that can hold 10 quiz scores. The user is prompted for a first quiz score; then, a `while` loop starts and continues as long as the user does not enter 999. Within the loop, the entered score is placed in the `scores` array, the score is added to a running total, and the count of scores entered is incremented. If the score just entered is the tenth score, the score is forced to 999 and the loop ends; otherwise, the user is prompted for the next score. The `while` loop continually checks to ensure that the user has not entered 999 to quit. When the loop eventually ends, `count` holds the number of scores entered. The variable `count` then can be used to control the output loop and to calculate the average score. **Figure 8-5** shows two typical executions of the program. In the first execution, only two scores are entered before the sentinel value. In the second execution, all 10 allowed scores are entered, so the user never enters a sentinel value.

Figure 8-4 The AverageOfQuizzes application

```

import java.util.*;
public class AverageOfQuizzes
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int[] scores = new int[10];
        int score = 0;
        int count = 0;
        int total = 0;
        final int QUIT = 999;
        final int MAX = 10;
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Enter quiz score or " +
            QUIT + " to quit >> ");
        score = input.nextInt();
        while(score != QUIT) Loop continues as long as user does not enter QUIT value
        {
            scores[count] = score;
            total += scores[count];
            ++count;
            if(count == MAX)
                score = QUIT;
            else
            {
                System.out.print("Enter next quiz score or " +
                    QUIT + " to quit >> ");
                score = input.nextInt();
            }
        }
        System.out.print("\nThe scores entered were: ")
        for(int x = 0; x < count; ++x) The variable count is used to control output.
            System.out.print(scores[x] + " ");
        if(count != 0)
            System.out.println("\n The average is " + (total * 1.0 / count));
        else
            System.out.println("No scores were entered.");
    }
}

```

Figure 8-5 Two typical executions of the AverageOfQuizzes application

```

Enter quiz score or 999 to quit    >> 60
Enter next quiz score or 999 to quit >> 70
Enter next quiz score or 999 to quit >> 999

```

```

The scores entered were: 60  70
The average is 65.0

```

(Continues)

Figure 8-5 Two typical executions of the `AverageOfQuizzes` application—Continued

```
Enter quiz score or 999 to quit    >> 60
Enter next quiz score or 999 to quit >> 70
Enter next quiz score or 999 to quit >> 80
Enter next quiz score or 999 to quit >> 90
Enter next quiz score or 999 to quit >> 65
Enter next quiz score or 999 to quit >> 75
Enter next quiz score or 999 to quit >> 85
Enter next quiz score or 999 to quit >> 95
Enter next quiz score or 999 to quit >> 96
Enter next quiz score or 999 to quit >> 97

The scores entered were: 60 70 80 90 65 75 85 95 96 97
The average is 81.3
```

Two Truths & a Lie | Using Variable Subscripts with an Array

1. When an application contains an array, it is common to perform loops that vary the loop control variable from 0 to one less than the size of the array.
2. An array's `length` field contains the highest value that can be used as the array's subscript.
3. The enhanced `for` loop allows you to cycle through an array without specifying the starting and ending points for the loop control variable.

The false statement is #2. An array's `length` field contains the number of elements in the array; the highest allowed subscript is one less than `length`.

You Do It | Using a `for` Loop to Access Array Elements

Next, you modify the `DemoArray2` program to use a `for` loop with the array.

1. Open the `DemoArray2.java` file, and immediately save the file as `DemoArray3.java`. Change the class name to `DemoArray3`. Delete the four `println()` statements that display the four array values, and then replace them with the following `for` loop:

```
for(int x = 0; x < salaries.length; ++x)
    System.out.println(salaries[x]);
```

2. Save the program (as `DemoArray3.java`), compile, and run the program. Again, the output is the same as that shown in Figure 8-2.

8.4 Declaring and Using Arrays of Objects

Just as you can declare arrays of simple types such as `int` or `double`, you can declare arrays that hold elements of objects. For example, assume you create the `Employee` class shown in **Figure 8-6**. This class has two data fields (`empNum` and `empSal`), a constructor, and a get method for each field.

Figure 8-6 The Employee class

```

public class Employee
{
    private int empNum;
    private double empSal;
    Employee(int e, double s)
    {
        empNum = e;
        empSal = s;
    }
    public int getEmpNum()
    {
        return empNum;
    }
    public double getSalary()
    {
        return empSal;
    }
}

```

You can create separate Employee objects with unique names, such as the following:

```

Employee painter, electrician, plumber;
Employee firstEmployee, secondEmployee, thirdEmployee;

```

However, in many programs it is far more convenient to create an array of Employee objects. An array named emps that holds seven Employee objects can be defined as:

```
Employee[] emps = new Employee[7];
```

This statement reserves enough computer memory for seven Employee objects named emps [0] through emps [6]. However, the statement does not actually construct those Employee objects; instead, you must call the seven individual constructors. According to the class definition shown in Figure 8-6, the Employee constructor requires two arguments: an employee number and a salary. If you want to number your Employees 101, 102, 103, and so on, and start each Employee at a salary of \$20,000, the loop that constructs seven Employee objects is as follows:

```

final int START_NUM = 101;
final double STARTING_SALARY = 20_000;
for(int x = 0; x < emps.length; ++x)
    emps[x] = new Employee(START_NUM + x, STARTING_SALARY);

```

As x varies from 0 through 6, each of the seven emps objects is constructed with an employee number that is 101 more than x, and each of the seven emps objects holds the same salary.

Unlike the Employee class in Figure 8-6, which contains a constructor that requires arguments, some classes contain only a default constructor, which might be supplied automatically when no other constructors are created or might be written explicitly. To construct an array of objects using a default constructor, you must still call the constructor using the keyword new for each declared array element. For example, suppose you have created a class named InventoryItem but have not written a constructor. To create an array of 1,000 InventoryItem objects, you would write the following:

```

final int NUM_ITEMS = 1000;
InventoryItem[] items = new InventoryItem[NUM_ITEMS];
for(int x = 0; x < NUM_ITEMS; ++x)
    items[x] = new InventoryItem();

```

Note

You could use an initialization list to create an array of objects, as in the following example:

```

InventoryItem[] items = {new InventoryItem(), new
    InventoryItem(), new InventoryItem()};

```

However, even with only a few objects in the array, this approach is unwieldy.

To use a method that belongs to an object that is part of an array, you insert the appropriate subscript notation after the array name and before the dot that precedes the method name. For example, to display data for seven Employees stored in the `emps` array, you can write the following:

```
for(int x = 0; x < emps.length; ++x)
    System.out.println(emps[x].getEmpNum() + " " +
        emps[x].getSalary());
```

Pay attention to the syntax of the Employee objects' method calls, such as `emps[x].getEmpNum()`. Although you might be tempted to place the subscript at the end of the expression after the method name—as in `emps.getEmpNum[x]` or `emps.getEmpNum()[x]`—you cannot; the values in `x` (0 through 6) refer to a particular `emps` object, each of which has access to a single `getEmpNum()` method. Placement of the bracketed subscript so it follows `emps` means the method “belongs” to a particular element of `emps`.

Using the Enhanced for Loop with Objects

You can use the enhanced `for` loop to cycle through an array of objects. For example, to display data for seven Employees stored in the `emps` array, you can write the following:

```
for(Employee worker : emps)
    System.out.println(worker.getEmpNum() + " " +
        worker.getSalary());
```

In this loop, `worker` is a local variable that represents each element of `emps` in turn. Using the enhanced `for` loop eliminates the need to use a limiting value for the loop and eliminates the need for a subscript following each element.

Manipulating Arrays of Strings

As with any other object, you can create an array of `String` objects. For example, you can store three company department names as follows:

```
String[] deptNames = {"Accounting", "Human Resources", "Sales"};
```

You can access these department names with a subscript like any other array object. For example, you can use the following code to display the list of `Strings` stored in the `deptNames` array:

```
for(int a = 0; a < deptNames.length; ++a)
    System.out.println(deptNames[a]);
```

Notice that `deptNames.length`; refers to the length of the array `deptNames` (three elements) and not to the length of any `String` objects stored in the `deptNames` array. Remember:

- › Arrays use a `length` field (no parentheses follow) to indicate the number of elements in the array.
- › `String` objects use a `length()` method to indicate the number of characters in the `String`.

For example, if `deptNames[0]` is *Accounting*, then `deptNames[0].length()` is 10 because *Accounting* contains 10 characters.

Two Truths & a Lie | Declaring and Using Arrays of Objects

1. The following statement declares an array named `students` that holds 10 `Student` objects:

```
Student[] students = new Student[10];
```

(Continued)

2. When a class has a default constructor and you create an array of objects from the class, you do not need to call the constructor explicitly.
3. To use a method that belongs to an object that is part of an array, you insert the appropriate subscript notation after the array name and before the dot that precedes the method name.

The false statement is #2. Whether a class has a default constructor or not, when you create an array of objects from the class, you must call the constructor using the keyword `new` for each declared array element.

You Do It | Creating a Class That Contains an Array of Strings

In this section, you create a class named `BowlingTeam` that contains the name of a bowling team and an array that holds the names of the four team members.

1. Open a new file, and type the header and curly braces for the `BowlingTeam` class:

```
public class BowlingTeam
{
}
```

2. Between the braces, create a field for the team name and an array that holds the team members' names.

```
private String teamName;
private String[] members = new String[4];
```

3. Create get and set methods for the `teamName` field as follows:

```
public void setTeamName(String team)
{
    teamName = team;
}
public String getTeamName()
{
    return teamName;
}
```

4. Add a method that sets a team member's name. The method requires a position number and a name, and it uses the position number as a subscript to the `members` array.

```
public void setMember(int number, String name)
{
    members[number] = name;
}
```

5. Add a method that returns a team member's name. The method requires a value used as the subscript that determines which member's name to return.

```
public String getMember(int number)
{
    return members[number];
}
```

6. Save the file as `BowlingTeam.java`. Compile it and correct any errors.

Creating a Program to Demonstrate an Instance of the `BowlingTeam` Class

In this section, you write a program in which you create an instance of the `BowlingTeam` class and provide values for it.

1. Open a new file, and enter the following code to begin the class.

```
import java.util.*;
public class BowlingTeamDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

2. Add five declarations. These include a String that holds user input, a BowlingTeam object, an integer to use as a subscript, a constant that represents the number of members on a bowling team, and a Scanner object for input.

```
String name;
BowlingTeam bowlTeam = new BowlingTeam();
int x;
final int NUM_TEAM_MEMBERS = 4;
Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
```

3. Prompt the user for a bowling team name. Accept it, and then assign it to the BowlingTeam object:

```
System.out.print("Enter team name >> ");
name = input.nextLine();
bowlTeam.setTeamName(name);
```

4. In a loop that executes four times, prompt the user for a team member's name. Accept the name and assign it to the BowlingTeam object using the subscript to indicate the team member's position in the array in the BowlingTeam class.

```
for(x = 0; x < NUM_TEAM_MEMBERS; ++x)
{
    System.out.print("Enter team member's name >> ");
    name = input.nextLine();
    bowlTeam.setMember(x, name);
}
```

5. Display the details of the BowlingTeam object using the following code:

```
System.out.println("\nMembers of team " +
    bowlTeam.getTeamName());
for(x = 0; x < NUM_TEAM_MEMBERS; ++x)
    System.out.print(bowlTeam.getMember(x) + " ");
System.out.println();
```

6. Add a closing curly brace for the `main()` method and another for the class.

7. Save the file as `BowlingTeamDemo.java`, and then compile and execute it. **Figure 8-7** shows a typical execution.

Figure 8-7 Typical execution of the `BowlingTeamDemo` class

```
Enter team name >> Pin Pushers
Enter team member's name >> Naveen
Enter team member's name >> Wesley
Enter team member's name >> Chris
Enter team member's name >> Lee

Members of team Pin Pushers
Naveen Wesley Chris Lee
```

Creating a Program That Declares an Array of BowlingTeam Objects

Next, you create and use an array of `BowlingTeam` objects.

1. Open the `BowlingTeamDemo.java` file. Rename the class `BowlingTeamDemo2`, and immediately save the file as `BowlingTeamDemo2.java`.
2. Above the declaration of the `BowlingTeam` object, add a new named constant that holds a number of `BowlingTeam` objects, and then replace the statement that declares the single `BowlingTeam` with an array declaration of four `BowlingTeam` objects.

```
final int NUM_TEAMS = 4;
BowlingTeam[] teams = new BowlingTeam[NUM_TEAMS];
```

3. The current program declares `x`, which is used as a subscript to display team member names. Now, following the declaration of `x`, add a variable that is used as a subscript to display the team names:

```
int y;
```

4. Following the declaration of the `Scanner` object, and before the team name prompt, insert a `for` loop that executes as many times as there are `BowlingTeams`. Add the opening curly brace, and within the loop, allocate memory for each array element:

```
for(y = 0; y < NUM_TEAMS; ++y)
{
    teams[y] = new BowlingTeam();
```

5. Delete the statement that uses the `setTeamName()` method with the single `bowlTeam` object. In its place, insert a statement that uses the method with one of the array elements:

```
teams[y].setTeamName(name);
```

6. Within the first `for` loop controlled by `x`, delete the statement that uses the `setMember()` method with the single `bowlTeam` object. In its place, insert a statement that uses the method with one of the array elements:

```
teams[y].setMember(x, name);
```

7. After the closing curly brace for the `for` loop controlled by the variable `x`, add a closing curly brace for the `for` loop controlled by the variable `y`.

8. Adjust the indentation of the program statements so that the program logic is easy to follow with the new nested loops. The nested loops that you just modified should look like the following 13 lines of code:

```
for(y = 0; y < NUM_TEAMS; ++y)
{
    teams[y] = new BowlingTeam();
    System.out.print("Enter team name >> ");
    name = input.nextLine();
    teams[y].setTeamName(name);
    for(x = 0; x < NUM_TEAM_MEMBERS; ++x)
    {
        System.out.print("Enter team member's name >> ");
        name = input.nextLine();
        teams[y].setMember(x, name);
    }
}
```

9. The `for` loop at the end of the current program lists four team members' names. Replace this loop with the following nested version that lists four members' names for each of four teams:

```
for(y = 0; y < NUM_TEAMS; ++y)
{
    System.out.println("\nMembers of team " +
        teams[y].getTeamName());
    for(x = 0; x < NUM_TEAM_MEMBERS; ++x)
        System.out.print(teams[y].getMember(x) + " ");
    System.out.println();
}
```

10. Save the file, and then compile and execute the program. **Figure 8-8** shows a typical execution. The user can enter data into the array of `BowlingTeam` objects, including the array of `Strings` within each object, and then see all the entered data successfully displayed.

Figure 8-8 Typical execution of the `BowlingTeamDemo2` application

```
Enter team name >> The Lucky Strikes
Enter team member's name >> Carlos
Enter team member's name >> Diego
Enter team member's name >> Rose
Enter team member's name >> Lynn
Enter team name >> I Can't Believe It's Not Gutter
Enter team member's name >> Ricardo
Enter team member's name >> Pam
Enter team member's name >> Cindy
Enter team member's name >> Mike
Enter team name >> Spare Me
Enter team member's name >> Quincy
Enter team member's name >> Olivia
Enter team member's name >> Darlene
Enter team member's name >> Ted
Enter team name >> Lords of the Pins
Enter team member's name >> Linus
Enter team member's name >> Niles
Enter team member's name >> William
Enter team member's name >> Don

Members of team The Lucky Strikes
Carlos  Diego  Rose  Lynn

Members of team I Can't Believe It's Not Gutter
Ricardo  Pam  Cindy  Mike

Members of team Spare Me
Quincy  Olivia  Darlene  Ted

Members of team Lords of the Pins
Linus  Niles  William  Don
```

8.5 Searching an Array and Using Parallel Arrays

Suppose that a company manufactures 10 items. When a customer places an order for an item, you need to determine whether the item number on the order form is valid. When you want to determine whether a variable holds one of many valid values, one option is to use a series of `if` statements to compare the variable to a series of valid values. If valid item numbers are sequential, such as 101 through 110, the following simple `if` statement that uses a logical AND expression can verify the order number and set a Boolean field to `true`:

```
final int LOW = 101;
final int HIGH = 110;
boolean isValidItem = false;
if(itemOrdered >= LOW && itemOrdered <= HIGH)
    isValidItem = true;
```

In this example, the Boolean field `isValidItem` is used as a **flag**—a variable that holds a value as an indicator of whether some condition has been met. If the valid item numbers are nonsequential—for example, 101, 108, 201, and so on—you can code the following deeply nested `if` statement or a lengthy OR comparison to determine the validity of an item number:

```
if(itemOrdered == 101)
    isValidItem = true;
else if(itemOrdered == 108)
    isValidItem = true;
else if(itemOrdered == 201)
    isValidItem = true;
// and so on
```

Instead of a long series of `if` statements, a more elegant solution is to compare the `itemOrdered` variable to a list of values in an array, a process called **searching an array**. You can initialize the array with the valid values using the following statement, which creates exactly 10 array elements with subscripts 0 through 9:

```
int[] validValues = {101, 108, 201, 213, 266,
304, 311, 409, 411, 412};
```

After the list of valid values is initialized, you can use a `for` statement to loop through the array, and set a Boolean variable to `true` when a match is found:

```
for(int x = 0; x < validValues.length; ++x)
{
    if(itemOrdered == validValues[x])
        isValidItem = true;
}
```

This simple `for` loop replaces the long series of `if` statements; it checks the `itemOrdered` value against each of the 10 array values in turn. Also, if a company carries 1,000 items instead of 10, nothing changes in the `for` statement—the value of `validValues.length` is updated automatically.

Using Parallel Arrays

As an added bonus, if you set up another array with the same number of elements and corresponding data, you can use the same subscript to access additional information. A **parallel array** is one with the same number of elements as another, and for which the values in corresponding elements are related. For example, if the 10 items your company carries have 10 different prices, you can set up an array to hold those prices as follows:

```
double[] prices = {0.29, 1.23, 3.50, 0.69...};
```

The prices must appear in the same order as their corresponding item numbers in the `validValues` array. Now, the same `for` loop that finds the valid item number also finds the price, as shown in the application in **Figure 8-9**. In the `for` loop, notice that when the ordered item's number is found in the `validValues` array, the `itemPrice` value is “pulled” from the `prices` array. In other words, if the item number is found in the second position in the `validValues` array, you can find the correct price in the second position in the `prices` array.

Figure 8-9 The `FindPrice` application that accesses information in parallel arrays

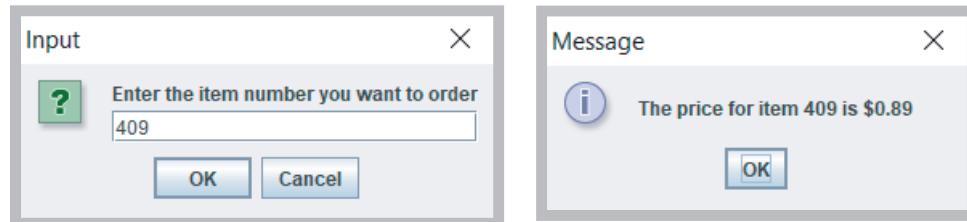
```

import javax.swing.*;
public class FindPrice
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        final int NUMBER_OF_ITEMS = 10;
        int[] validValues = {101, 108, 201, 213, 266,
            304, 311, 409, 411, 412};
        double[] prices = {0.29, 1.23, 3.50, 0.69, 6.79,
            3.19, 0.99, 0.89, 1.26, 8.00};
        String strItem;
        int itemOrdered;
        double itemPrice = 0.0;
        boolean isValidItem = false;
        strItem = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
            "Enter the item number you want to order");
        itemOrdered = Integer.parseInt(strItem);
        for(int x = 0; x < NUMBER_OF_ITEMS; ++x)
        {
            if(itemOrdered == validValues[x])
            {
                isValidItem = true;
                itemPrice = prices[x];
            }
        }
        if(isValidItem)
            JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, The price for item " +
                itemOrdered + " is $" + itemPrice);
        else
            JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null,
                "Sorry - invalid item entered");
    }
}

```

Corresponding price is pulled from `prices` array

Figure 8-10 shows a typical execution of the program in Figure 8-9. A user requests item 409, which is the eighth element in the `validValues` array, so the price displayed is the eighth element in the `prices` array.

Figure 8-10 Typical execution of the `FindPrice` application**Note**

When you initialize parallel arrays, it is convenient to use spacing so that the values that correspond to each other visually align on the screen or printed page.

Note

Instead of parallel arrays containing item numbers and prices, you might prefer to create a class named `Item` in which each instance contains two fields—`itemOrdered` and `itemPrice`. Then you could create a single array of objects that encapsulate item numbers and prices. Most object-oriented programmers would prefer that approach. However, you might find that you need parallel arrays for a specific application, and it is useful to understand how they work. There are almost always multiple ways to approach programming problems.

Within the code shown in Figure 8-9, you compare every `itemOrdered` with each of the 10 `validValues`. Even when an `itemOrdered` is equivalent to the first value in the `validValues` array (101), you always make nine additional cycles through the array. On each of these nine additional cycles, the comparison between `itemOrdered` and `validValues[x]` is always `false`. As soon as a match for an `itemOrdered` is found, it is most efficient to break out of the `for` loop early. An easy way to accomplish this is to set `x` to a high value within the block of statements executed when there is a match. Then, after a match, the `for` loop does not execute again because the limiting comparison (`x < NUMBER_OF_ITEMS`) is surpassed.

Figure 8-11 shows a loop that ends early. In an array with many possible matches, it is most efficient to place the more common items first, so they are matched right away. For example, if item 311 is ordered most often, place 311 first in the `validValues` array, and place its price (\$0.99) first in the `prices` array.

Figure 8-11 A `for` loop with an early exit

```
for(int x = 0; x < NUMBER_OF_ITEMS; ++x)
{
    if(itemOrdered == validValues[x])
    {
        isValidItem = true;
        itemPrice = prices[x];
        x = NUMBER_OF_ITEMS
    }
}
```

Force the loop control variable to a value that stops the loop.

In the code in Figure 8-11, the loop control variable is altered within the loop body. Some programmers object to altering a loop control variable within the body of a `for` loop; they believe that the loop control variable should be altered only in the third section of the `for` clause (where `x` is incremented). These programmers would prefer the loop in **Figure 8-12**, in which a compound Boolean expression appears in the middle portion of the `for` clause. In this example, the loop control variable is not altered within the loop body. Instead, `x` must be within range before each iteration and `isValidItem` must not yet have been set to `true`.

Figure 8-12 A `for` loop that uses a compound test for termination

```
for(int x = 0; x < NUMBER_OF_ITEMS && !isValidItem; ++x)
{
    if(itemOrdered == validValues[x])
    {
        isValidItem = true;
        itemPrice = prices [x];
    }
}
```

Compound expression controls the `for` loop

Searching an Array for a Range Match

Searching an array for an exact match is not always practical. Suppose your company gives customer discounts based on the quantity of items ordered. Perhaps no discount is given for any order of fewer than a dozen items, but increasing discounts are available for orders of increasing quantities, as shown in **Table 8-1**.

One awkward option is to create a single array to store the discount rates. You could use a variable named `numOfItems` as a subscript to the array, but the array would need hundreds of entries, as in the following example:

```
double[] discounts = {0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0,
0, 0, 0, 0, 0.10, 0.10, 0.10 ...};
```

Table 8-1 Discount table

TOTAL QUANTITY ORDERED	DISCOUNT
1 to 12	None
13 to 49	10%
50 to 99	14%
100 to 199	18%
200 or more	20%

Thirteen zeroes are listed in the `discounts` array. The first array element has a 0 subscript and represents a zero discount for zero items. The next 12 discounts (for items 1 through 12) are also zero. When `numOfItems` is 13, `discounts[numOfItems]`, or `discounts[13]`, is 0.10. The array would store 37 copies of 0.10 for elements 13 through 49. The `discounts` array would need to be ridiculously large to hold an exact value for each possible quantity ordered.

A better option is to create two corresponding arrays and perform a **range match**, in which you compare a value to the endpoints of numerical ranges to find the category in which a value belongs. For example, one array can hold the five discount rates, and the other array can hold five discount range limits. The Total Quantity Ordered column in Table 8-1 shows five ranges. If you use only the first figure in each range, you can create an array that holds five low limits:

```
int[] discountRangeLimits = {1, 13, 50, 100, 200};
```

A parallel array can hold the five discount rates:

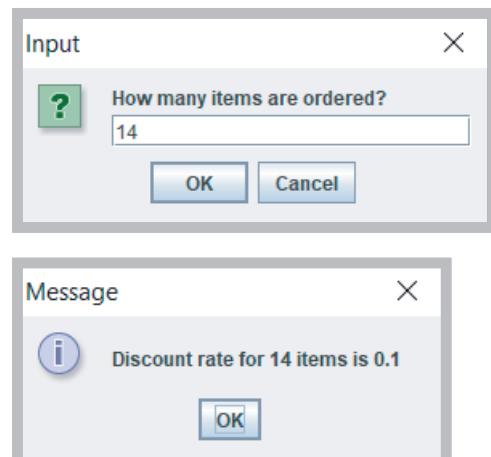
```
double[] discountRates = {0.00, 0.10, 0.14, 0.18, 0.20};
```

Then, starting at the last `discountRangeLimits` array element, for any `numOfItems` greater than or equal to `discountRangeLimits[4]`, the appropriate discount is `discounts[4]`. In other words, for any `numOrdered` less than `discountRangeLimits[4]`, you should decrement the subscript and look in a lower range. **Figure 8-13** shows an application that uses the parallel arrays, and **Figure 8-14** shows a typical execution of the program.

Figure 8-13 The `FindDiscount` class

```
import javax.swing.*;
public class FindDiscount
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        final int NUM_RANGES = 5;
        int[] discountRangeLimits = { 1, 13, 50, 100, 200};
        double[] discountRates = { 0.00, 0.10, 0.14, 0.18, 0.20};
        double customerDiscount;
        String strNumOrdered;
        int numOrdered;
        int sub = NUM_RANGES - 1;
        strNumOrdered = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
            "How many items are ordered?");
        numOrdered = Integer.parseInt(strNumOrdered);
        while(sub >= 0 && numOrdered < discountRangeLimits[sub])
            --sub;
        customerDiscount = discountRates[sub];
        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Discount rate for " +
            numOrdered + " items is " + customerDiscount);
    }
}
```

Figure 8-14 Typical execution of the `FindDiscount` class



Note

In the while loop in the application in Figure 8-13, `sub` is required to be greater than or equal to 0 before the second half of the statement that compares `numOrdered` to `discountRangeLimits[sub]` executes. It is a good programming practice to ensure that a subscript to an array does not fall below zero, causing a runtime error.

Two Truths & a Lie | Searching an Array and Using Parallel Arrays

1. A parallel array is one with the same number of elements as another, and for which the values in corresponding elements are related.
2. When searching an array, it is usually most efficient to abandon the search as soon as the sought-after element is found.

(Continued)

3. In a range match, you commonly compare a value to the midpoint of each of a series of numerical ranges.

The false statement is #3. In a range match, you commonly compare a value to the low or high endpoint of each of a series of numerical ranges, but not to the midpoint.

You Do It | Searching an Array

In this section, you modify the `BowlingTeamDemo2` program so that after the bowling team data has been entered, a user can request the roster for a specific team.

1. Open the `BowlingTeamDemo2.java` file, and change the class name to `BowlingTeamDemo3`. Immediately save the file as `BowlingTeamDemo3.java`.
2. At the end of the existing application, just before the two final closing curly braces, insert a prompt asking the user to enter a team name. Then accept the entered value.

```
System.out.print("\n\nEnter a team name to see its roster >> ");
name = input.nextLine();
```

3. Next, insert a nested `for` loop. The outer loop varies `y` from 0 through the highest subscript allowed in the `teams` array. Within this loop, the team name requested by the user is compared to each stored team name; when they are equal, another `for` loop displays the four team member names.

```
for(y = 0; y < teams.length; ++y)
    if(name.equals(teams[y].getTeamName()))
        for(x = 0; x < NUM_TEAM_MEMBERS; ++x)
            System.out.print(teams[y].getMember(x) + " ");
```

4. Insert an additional empty `println()` method call.

```
System.out.println();
```

5. Save the file, and then compile and execute the program. **Figure 8-15** shows the last part of a typical execution, which contains the output after input is complete.

Figure 8-15 Typical output of the `BowlingTeamDemo3` application

```
Members of team The Breakers
Walter Skyler Jesse Saul

Members of team The Middlemen
Frankie Axl Sue Brick

Members of team The Kings
Doug Carrie Arthur Deacon

Members of team The Nothings
Jerry George Elaine Cosmo

Enter a team name to see its roster >> The Kings
Doug Carrie Arthur Deacon
```

8.6 Passing Arrays to and Returning Arrays from Methods

You already have seen that you can use any individual array element in the same manner as you use any single variable of the same type. That is, if you declare an integer array as `int[] someNums = new int[12];`, you can subsequently display `someNums[0]`, or increment `someNums[1]`, or work with any element just as you do for any integer. Similarly, you can pass a single array element to a method in exactly the same manner as you pass any variable.

Examine the `PassArrayElement` application shown in **Figure 8-16** and the output shown in **Figure 8-17**. The application creates an array of four integers and displays them. Then, the application calls the `methodGetsOneInt()` method four times, passing each element in turn. The method displays the number, changes the number to 999, and then displays the number again. Finally, back in the `main()` method, the four numbers are displayed again.

Figure 8-16 The `PassArrayElement` class

```
public class PassArrayElement
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        final int NUM_ELEMENTS = 4;
        int[] someNums = {5, 10, 15, 20};
        int x;
        System.out.print("At start of main: ");
        for(x = 0; x < NUM_ELEMENTS; ++x)
            System.out.print(" " + someNums[x]);
        System.out.println();
        for(x = 0; x < NUM_ELEMENTS; ++x)
            methodGetsOneInt(someNums[x]);
        System.out.print("At end of main: ");
        for(x = 0; x < NUM_ELEMENTS; ++x)
            System.out.print(" " + someNums[x]);
        System.out.println();
    }
    public static void methodGetsOneInt(int one)
    {
        System.out.print("At start of method one is: " + one);
        one = 999;
        System.out.println(" and at end of method one is: " + one);
    }
}
```

Figure 8-17 Output of the `PassArrayElement` application

```
At start of main: 5 10 15 20
At start of method one is: 5 and at end of method one is: 999
At start of method one is: 10 and at end of method one is: 999
At start of method one is: 15 and at end of method one is: 999
At start of method one is: 20 and at end of method one is: 999
At end of main: 5 10 15 20
```

As you can see in Figure 8-17, the four numbers that were changed in the `methodGetsOneInt()` method remain unchanged back in `main()` after the method executes. The variable named `one` is local to the `methodGetsOneInt()` method, and any changes to variables passed into the method are not permanent and are not reflected in the array in the `main()` program. Each variable named `one` in the `methodGetsOneInt()` method holds only a copy of the array element passed into the method. The individual array elements are **passed by value**; that is, a copy of the value is made and used within the receiving method. When any primitive type (`boolean`, `char`, `byte`, `short`, `int`, `long`, `float`, or `double`) is passed to a method, the value is passed.

Arrays, like all nonprimitive objects, are reference types; this means that the object actually holds a memory address where the values are stored. Because an array name is a reference, you cannot assign another array to it using the `=` operator, nor can you compare two arrays using the `==` operator. Additionally, when you pass an array (that is, pass its name) to a method, the receiving method gets a copy of the array's actual memory address. This means that the receiving method has access to, and the ability to alter, the original values in the array elements in the calling method.

The class shown in **Figure 8-18** creates an array of four integers. After the integers are displayed, the array name (its address) is passed to a method named `methodGetsArray()`. Within the method, the numbers are displayed, which shows that they retain their values from `main()`, but then the value 888 is assigned to each number. Even though `methodGetsArray()` is a `void` method—meaning nothing is returned to the `main()` method—when the `main()` method displays the array for the second time, all of the values have been changed to 888, as you can see in the output in **Figure 8-19**. Because the method receives a reference to the array, the `methodGetsArray()` method “knows” the address of the array declared in `main()` and makes its changes directly to the original array.

Figure 8-18 The `PassArray` class

```
public class PassArray
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        final int NUM_ELEMENTS = 4;
        int[] someNums = {5, 10, 15, 20};
        int x;
        System.out.print("At start of main: ");
        for(x = 0; x < NUM_ELEMENTS; ++x)
            System.out.print(" " + someNums[x]);
        System.out.println();
        methodGetsArray(someNums);
        System.out.print("At end of main: ");
        for(x = 0; x < NUM_ELEMENTS; ++x)
            System.out.print(" " + someNums[x]);
        System.out.println();
    }
    public static void methodGetsArray(int[] arr)
    {
        int x;
        System.out.print("At start of method arr holds: ");
        for(x = 0; x < arr.length; ++x)
            System.out.print(" " + arr[x]);
        System.out.println();
        for(x = 0; x < arr.length; ++x)
            arr[x] = 888;
        System.out.print(" and at end of method arr holds: ");
        for(x = 0; x < arr.length; ++x)
            System.out.print(" " + arr[x]);
        System.out.println();
    }
}
```

Note

In some languages, arrays are **passed by reference**, meaning that a receiving method gets the memory address. It is a subtle distinction, but in Java, the receiving method gets a copy of the original address. In other words, in Java, an array is not passed by reference, but a reference to an array is passed by value.

Figure 8-19 Output of the `PassArray` application

```
At start of main: 5 10 15 20
At start of method arr holds: 5 10 15 20
and at end of method arr holds: 888 888 888 888
At end of main: 888 888 888 888
```

Notice in Figure 8-18 that the array name is passed to the method and no brackets are used. In the method header, brackets are used to show that the parameter is an array of integers (a reference) and not a simple int.

Note

In some other languages, notably C, C++, and C#, you can choose to pass variables to methods by value or reference. In Java, you cannot make this choice. Primitive type variables are always passed by value. When you pass an object, a copy of the reference to the object is always passed.

Returning an Array from a Method

A method can return an array reference, and when it does, you include square brackets with the return type in the method header. For example, **Figure 8-20** shows a `getArray()` method that returns a locally declared array of ints. Square brackets are used as part of the return type; the return statement returns the array name without any brackets.

When you call the `getArray()` method in Figure 8-20, you can store its returned value in any integer array reference. For example, you might declare an array and make the method call in the following statement:

```
int [] scoresFromMethod = getArray();
```

Two Truths & a Lie

Passing Arrays to and Returning Arrays from Methods

1. You pass a single array element to a method using its name, and the method must be prepared to receive the appropriate data type.
2. You pass an array to a method using its name followed by a pair of brackets; arrays are passed by value.
3. When a method returns an array reference, you include square brackets with the return type in the method header.

The false statement is #2. You pass an array to a method using its name; a copy of the array's address is passed to the method.

You Do It

Passing an Array to a Method

Next, you add a method to the `BowlingTeamDemo3` application. The improvement allows you to remove the data entry process from the main program and encapsulate the process in its own method.

1. Open the `BowlingTeamDemo3.java` file if it is not already open. Immediately save the file as `BowlingTeamDemo4.java`. Change the class name to match the filename.
2. Just before the closing curly brace for the class, add the following shell for a method that accepts a `BowlingTeam` array argument.

```
public static void getTeamData(BowlingTeam[] teams)
{
}
```

Figure 8-20 The `getArray()` method

```
public static int[] getArray()
{
    int[] scores = {90, 80, 70, 60};
    return scores;
}
```

3. Within the `getTeamData()` method, add the following six declarations (or copy them from the `main()` method):

```
String name;
final int NUM_TEAMS = 4;
int x;
int y;
final int NUM_TEAM_MEMBERS = 4;
Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
```

4. Cut the 13 lines of code that assign memory to the `BowlingTeam` array and obtain all the data values. Place these 13 lines within the `getTeamData()` method following the declarations.

```
for(y = 0; y < NUM_TEAMS; ++y)
{
    teams[y] = new BowlingTeam();
    System.out.print("Enter team name >> ");
    name = input.nextLine();
    teams[y].setTeamName(name);
    for(x = 0; x < NUM_TEAM_MEMBERS; ++x)
    {
        System.out.print("Enter team member's name >> ");
        name = input.nextLine();
        teams[y].setMember(x, name);
    }
}
```

5. In place of the 13 cut lines, insert a method call. This call passes a copy of the array reference to the method. Notice that this call does not assign a return value. The method is a `void` method and returns nothing. Nevertheless, the array in the `main()` method will be updated because the method is receiving access to the array's memory address.

```
getTeamData(teams);
```

6. Save the file (as `BowlingTeamDemo4.java`), and then compile and execute the program. Confirm that the program works exactly as it did before the new method was added.

8.7 Sorting Array Elements

Sorting is the process of arranging a series of objects in some logical order. For example, you might want to sort a list of names in alphabetical order by their starting letter from *A* to *Z*, or you might want to sort a series of prices from highest to lowest. When you place objects in order beginning with the object that has the lowest value, you are sorting in **ascending order**; conversely, when you start with the object that has the largest value, you are sorting in **descending order**.

The simplest possible sort involves two values. If the values are out of order and you want to place them in order, you must swap the two values. Suppose that you have two variables—`valA` and `valB`—and further suppose that `valA = 16` and `valB = 2`. To exchange the values of the two variables, you cannot simply use the following code:

```
valA = valB; // 2 goes to valA
valB = valA; // 2 goes to valB
```

If `valB` is 2, after you execute `valA = valB;`, both variables hold the value 2. The value 16 that was held in `valA` is lost. When you execute the second assignment statement, `valB = valA;`, each variable still holds the value 2.

The solution that allows you to retain both values is to employ a variable to hold `valA`'s value in a temporary memory location during the swap:

```
temp = valA; // 16 goes to temp
valA = valB; // 2 goes to valA
valB = temp; // 16 goes to valB
```

Using this technique, `valA`'s value (16) is assigned to the `temp` variable. The value of `valB` (2) is then assigned to `valA`, so `valA` and `valB` are equivalent. Then, the `temp` value (16) is assigned to `valB`, so the values of the two variables finally are swapped.

If you want to sort any two values, `valA` and `valB`, in ascending order so that `valA` is the lower value, you use the following `if` statement to decide whether to swap. If `valA` is more than `valB`, you want to swap the values. If `valA` is not more than `valB`, you do not want to swap the values.

```
if(valA > valB)
{
    temp = valA;
    valA = valB;
    valB = temp;
}
```

Note

Assume that you can hold only one piece of fruit in your hand at a time. If you hold an apple in your left hand and a banana in your right hand, you cannot swap their positions without temporarily setting down one piece of fruit. The principle is the same with the swapping code.

Sorting two values is a fairly simple task; sorting more values is more complicated, especially if you attempt to use a series of decisions. The task becomes manageable when you know how to use an array. Multiple sorting algorithms have been developed; an **algorithm** is a process or set of steps that solve a problem. In the next sections you will study two popular sorting algorithms.

Using the Bubble Sort Algorithm

In the ascending **bubble sort** algorithm, you repeatedly compare pairs of items, swapping them if they are out of order, and eventually creating a sorted list. The bubble sort is neither the fastest nor most efficient sorting technique, but it is one of the simplest to comprehend and provides deeper understanding of array element manipulation.

To use a bubble sort, you place the original, unsorted values in an array. You compare the first two numbers; if they are not in ascending order, you swap them. You compare the second and third numbers; if they are not in ascending order, you swap them. You continue down the list, and for each position `x`, if the value at position `x + 1` is not larger, you want to swap the two values.

Suppose you have declared an array as:

```
int[] someNums = {88, 33, 99, 22, 54};
```

Then, the process proceeds as follows:

- › Compare 88 and 33. They are out of order. Swap them. The list becomes 33, 88, 99, 22, 54.
- › Compare the second and third numbers in the list—88 and 99. They are in order. Do nothing.
- › Compare the third and fourth numbers in the list—99 and 22. They are out of order. Swap them. The list becomes 33, 88, 22, 99, 54.
- › Compare the fourth and fifth numbers—99 and 54. They are out of order. Swap them. The list becomes 33, 88, 22, 54, 99.

When you reach the bottom of the list, the numbers are not in ascending order, but the largest number, 99, has moved to the bottom of the list. This feature gives the bubble sort its name—the “heaviest” value has sunk to the bottom of the list as the “lighter” values have bubbled to the top.

Assuming `b` and `temp` both have been declared as integer variables, the code so far is as follows:

```
for(b = 0; b < someNums.length - 1; ++b)
    if(someNums[b] > someNums[b + 1])
    {
        temp = someNums[b];
        someNums[b] = someNums[b + 1];
        someNums[b + 1] = temp;
    }
```

Note

Instead of comparing `b` to `someNums.length - 1` on every pass through the loop, it would be more efficient to declare a variable to which you assign `someNums.length - 1` and use that variable in the comparison. That way, the subtraction operation is performed just once. That step is omitted here to reduce the number of steps in the example.

Notice that the `for` statement tests every value of `b` from 0 through 3. The array `someNums` contains five integers, so the subscripts in the array range in value from 0 through 4. Within the `for` loop, each `someNums[b]` is compared to `someNums[b + 1]`, so the highest legal value for `b` is 3. For a sort on any size array, the value of `b` must remain less than the array’s length minus 1.

› The list of numbers began as this:

88, 33, 99, 22, 54

› After one pass through the list, the numbers are these:

33, 88, 22, 54, 99.

To continue to sort the list, you must perform the entire comparison-swap procedure again.

› Compare the first two values—33 and 88. They are in order; do nothing.

› Compare the second and third values—88 and 22. They are out of order. Swap them so the list becomes 33, 22, 88, 54, 99.

› Compare the third and fourth values—88 and 54. They are out of order. Swap them so the list becomes 33, 22, 54, 88, 99.

› Compare the fourth and fifth values—88 and 99. They are in order; do nothing.

After this second pass through the list, the numbers are 33, 22, 54, 88, and 99—close to ascending order, but not quite. You can see that with one more pass through the list, the values 22 and 33 will swap, and the list is finally placed in order.

To fully sort the worst-case list, one in which the original numbers are descending (as out-of-ascending order as they could possibly be), you need to go through the list four times, making comparisons and swaps. At most, you always need to pass through the list as many times as its length minus one. **Figure 8-21** assumes that `a`, `b`, and `temp` are integers and shows the entire procedure.

Figure 8-21 Ascending bubble sort of the `someNums` array elements

```
for(a = 0; a < someNums.length - 1; ++a)
    for(b = 0; b < someNums.length - 1; ++b)
        if(someNums[b] > someNums[b + 1])
        {
            temp = someNums[b];
            someNums[b] = someNums[b + 1];
            someNums[b + 1] = temp;
        }
```

Note

To place the list in descending order, you need to make only one change in the code in Figure 8-21: You change the greater-than sign ($>$) in `if (someNums [b] > someNums [b + 1])` to a less-than sign ($<$).

Improving Bubble Sort Efficiency

When you use a bubble sort to sort any array into ascending order, the largest value “falls” to the bottom of the array after you have compared each pair of values in the array one time. The second time you go through the array making comparisons, there is no need to check the last pair of values because the largest value is guaranteed to already be at the bottom of the array. You can make the sort process more efficient by using a new control variable to limit the repetitions of the inner `for` loop and reducing the value by one on each cycle through the array. **Figure 8-22** shows how you can use a new variable named `comparisonsToMake` to control how many comparisons are made in the inner loop during each pass through the list of values to be sorted; the `comparisonsToMake` value is decremented by 1 on each pass through the list.

Figure 8-22 More efficient ascending bubble sort of the `someNums` array elements

```
int comparisonsToMake = someNums.length - 1;
for(a = 0; a < someNums.length - 1; ++a)
{
    for(b = 0; b < comparisonsToMake; ++b)
    {
        if(someNums [b] > someNums [b + 1])
        {
            temp = someNums [b];
            someNums [b] = someNums [b + 1];
            someNums [b + 1] = temp;
        }
    }
    --comparisonsToMake;
}
```

The `comparisonsToMake` variable is decreased after each pass through the inner loop.

Sorting Arrays of Objects

You can sort arrays of objects in much the same way that you sort arrays of primitive types. The major difference occurs when you make the comparison that determines whether you want to swap two array elements. When you sort an array of a primitive element type, you compare the values of two array elements to determine whether they are out of order. When array elements are objects, you usually want to sort based on a particular object field.

Assume that you have created a simple `Employee` class, as shown in **Figure 8-23**. The class holds four data fields and get and set methods for the fields.

You can write a program that contains an array of five `Employee` objects using the following statement:

```
Employee [] someEmps = new Employee [5];
```

Assume that after you assign employee numbers and salaries to the `Employee` objects, you want to sort the `Employees` in salary order. You can pass the array to a `bubbleSort ()` method that is prepared to receive `Employee` objects. **Figure 8-24** shows the method.

Examine Figure 8-24 carefully and notice that the `bubbleSort ()` method is very similar to the `bubbleSort ()` method you use for an array of any primitive type, but there are three major differences:

- » The `bubbleSort ()` method header shows that it receives an array of type `Employee`.

- The `temp` variable created for swapping is type `Employee`. The `temp` variable will hold an `Employee` object, not just one number or one field. It is important to note that even though only employee salaries are compared, you do not just swap employee salaries. You do not want to substitute one employee's salary for another's. Instead, you swap each `Employee` object's `empNum`, `firstName`, `lastName`, and `salary` as a unit.
- The comparison for determining whether a swap should occur uses method calls to the `getSalary()` method to compare the returned salary for each `Employee` object in the array with the salary of the adjacent `Employee` object.

Using the Insertion Sort Algorithm

The bubble sort works well and is relatively easy to understand and manipulate, but many other sorting algorithms have been developed. For example, when you use an **insertion sort**, you look at each list element one at a time. If an element is out of order relative to any of the items earlier in the list, you move each earlier item down one position and then insert the tested element. The insertion sort is similar to the technique you might use to sort a group of objects manually. For example, if a list contains the values 2, 3, 1, and 4, and you want to place them in ascending order using an insertion sort, you test the values 2 and 3, but you do not move them because they are in order. However, when you test the third value in the list, 1, you move both 2 and 3 to later positions and insert 1 at the first position.

Figure 8-25 shows the logic that performs an ascending insertion sort using a five-element integer array named `someNums`. The logic assumes that `a`, `b`, and `temp` have all been declared as integers.

Figure 8-23 The `Employee` class

```
public class Employee
{
    private int empNum;
    private String lastName;
    private String firstName;
    private double salary;
    public int getEmpNum()
    {
        return empNum;
    }
    public void setEmpNum(int emp)
    {
        empNum = emp;
    }
    public String getLastname()
    {
        return lastName;
    }
    public void setLastName(String name)
    {
        lastName = name;
    }
    public String getFirstName()
    {
        return firstName;
    }
    public void setFirstName(String name)
    {
        firstName = name;
    }
    public double getSalary()
    {
        return salary;
    }
    public void setSalary(double sal)
    {
        salary = sal;
    }
}
```

Figure 8-24 The `bubbleSort()` method that sorts `Employee` objects by their salaries

```
public static void bubbleSort(Employee[] array)
{
    int a, b;
    Employee temp;
    int highSubscript = array.length - 1;
    for(a = 0; a < highSubscript; ++a)
        for(b = 0; b < highSubscript; ++b)
            if(array[b].getSalary() > array[b + 1].getSalary())
            {
                temp = array[b];
                array[b] = array[b + 1];
                array[b + 1] = temp;
            }
}
```

Figure 8-25 The insertion sort

```
int[] someNums = {90, 85, 65, 95, 75};
a = 1;
while(a < someNums.length)
{
    temp = someNums[a];
    b = a - 1;
    while(b >= 0 && someNums[b] > temp)
    {
        someNums[b + 1] = someNums[b];
        --b;
    }
    someNums[b + 1] = temp;
    ++a;
}
```

The outer loop in Figure 8-25 varies a loop control variable *a* from 1 through one less than the size of the array. The logic proceeds as follows:

1. First *a* is set to 1, and then the while loop begins.
2. The value of *temp* is set to *someNums* [1], which is 85, and *b* is set to 0.
3. Because *b* is greater than or equal to 0 and *someNums* [*b*] (90) is greater than *temp*, the inner loop is entered. (If you were performing a descending sort, then you would ask whether *someNums* [*b*] was less than *temp*.)
4. The value of *someNums* [1] becomes 90, and *b* is decremented, making it -1, so *b* is no longer greater than or equal to 0, and the inner loop ends.
5. Then *someNums* [0] is set to *temp*, which is 85.

After these steps, 90 was moved down one position and 85 was inserted in the first position, so the array values are in slightly better order than they were originally. The values are as follows: 85, 90, 65, 95, 75.

Now, in the outer loop, *a* becomes 2. The logic in Figure 8-25 proceeds as follows:

1. The value of *temp* becomes 65, and *b* is set to 1.
2. The value of *b* is greater than or equal to 0, and *someNums* [*b*] (90) is greater than *temp*, so the inner loop is entered.
3. The value of *someNums* [2] becomes 90, and *b* is decremented, making it 0, so the loop executes again.
4. The value of *someNums* [1] becomes 85, and *b* is decremented, making it -1, so the loop ends.
5. Then *someNums* [0] becomes 65.

After these steps, the array values are in an even better order, because 65 and 85 now both come before 90. The values are: 65, 85, 90, 95, 75. Now, *a* becomes 3. The logic in Figure 8-25 proceeds to work on the new list as follows:

1. The value of *temp* becomes 95, and *b* is set to 2.
2. For the loop to execute, *b* must be greater than or equal to 0, which it is, and *someNums* [*b*] (90) must be greater than *temp*, which it is *not*. So, the inner loop does not execute.
3. Therefore, *someNums* [2] is set to 90, which it already was. In other words, no changes are made.

Now, *a* is increased to 4. The logic in Figure 8-25 proceeds as follows:

1. The value of *temp* becomes 75, and *b* is set to 3.
2. The value of *b* is greater than or equal to 0, and *someNums* [*b*] (95) is greater than *temp*, so the inner loop is entered.
3. The value of *someNums* [4] becomes 95, and *b* is decremented, making it 2, so the loop executes again.
4. The value of *someNums* [3] becomes 90, and *b* is decremented, making it 1, so the loop executes again.
5. The value of *someNums* [2] becomes 85, and *b* is decremented, making it 0; *someNums* [*b*] (65) is no longer greater than *temp* (75), so the inner loop ends. In other words, the values 85, 90, and 95 are each moved down one position, but 65 is left in place.
6. Then *someNums* [1] becomes 75.

After these steps, all the array values have been rearranged in ascending order as follows: 65, 75, 85, 90, 95.

Note

Many sorting algorithms exist in addition to the bubble sort and insertion sort. You might want to investigate the logic used by the *selection sort*, *cocktail sort*, *gnome sort*, and *quick sort*.

Two Truths & a Lie

Sorting Array Elements

1. In an ascending bubble sort, you compare pairs of items, swapping them if they are out of order, so that the largest items “bubble” to the top of the list, eventually creating a sorted list.
2. When you make a swap while sorting an array of objects, you typically swap entire objects and not just the field on which the comparison is made.
3. When you use an insertion sort, you look at each list element one at a time and move items down if the tested element should be inserted before them.

The false statement is #1. In an ascending bubble sort, you compare pairs of items, swapping them if they are out of order, so that the smallest items “bubble” to the top of the list, eventually creating a sorted list.

You Do It

Using a Bubble Sort

In this section, you create a program in which you enter values that you sort using the bubble sort algorithm. You display the values during each iteration of the outer sorting loop so that you can track the values as they are repositioned in the array.

1. Open a new file in your text editor, and create the shell for a `BubbleSortDemo` program as follows:

```
import java.util.*;
class BubbleSortDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
    }
}
```

2. Make some declarations between the curly braces of the `main()` method. Declare an array of five integers and a variable to control the number of comparisons to make during the sort. Declare a `Scanner` object, two integers to use as subscripts for handling the array, and a temporary integer value to use during the sort.

```
int[] someNums = new int[5];
int comparisonsToMake = someNums.length - 1;
Scanner keyboard = new Scanner(System.in);
int a, b, temp;
```

3. Write a `for` loop that prompts the user for a value for each array element and accepts them.

```
for(a = 0; a < someNums.length; ++a)
{
    System.out.print("Enter number " + (a + 1) + " >> ");
    someNums[a] = keyboard.nextInt();
}
```

4. Next, call a method that accepts the array and the number of sort iterations performed so far, which is 0. The purpose of the method is to display the current status of the array as it is being sorted.

```
display(someNums, 0);
```

5. Add the nested loops that perform the sort. The outer loop controls the number of passes through the list, and the inner loop controls the comparisons on each pass through the list. When any two adjacent elements

are out of order, they are swapped. At the end of the nested loop, the current list is output and the number of comparisons to be made on the next pass is reduced by one.

```
for(a = 0; a < someNums.length - 1; ++a)
{
    for(b = 0; b < comparisonsToMake; ++b)
    {
        if(someNums[b] > someNums[b + 1])
        {
            temp = someNums[b];
            someNums[b] = someNums[b + 1];
            someNums[b + 1] = temp;
        }
    }
    display(someNums, (a + 1));
    --comparisonsToMake;
}
```

6. After the closing brace for the `main()` method, but before the closing brace for the class, insert the `display()` method. It accepts the array and the current outer loop index, and it displays the array contents.

```
public static void display(int[] someNums, int a)
{
    System.out.print("Iteration " + a + ": ");
    for(int x = 0; x < someNums.length; ++x)
        System.out.print(someNums[x] + " ");
    System.out.println();
}
```

7. Save the file as **BubbleSortDemo.java**, and then compile and execute it. **Figure 8-26** shows a typical execution. Notice that after the first iteration, the largest value has sunk to the bottom of the list. After the second iteration, the two largest values are at the bottom of the list, and so on.
8. Modify the `BubbleSortDemo` application to any size array you choose. Confirm that no matter how many array elements you specify, the sorting algorithm works correctly and ends with a completely sorted list, regardless of the order of your entered values.

Figure 8-26 Typical execution of the `BubbleSortDemo` application

```
Enter number 1 >> 88
Enter number 2 >> 77
Enter number 3 >> 66
Enter number 4 >> 55
Enter number 5 >> 44
Iteration 0: 88 77 66 55 44
Iteration 1: 77 66 55 44 88
Iteration 2: 66 55 44 77 88
Iteration 3: 55 44 66 77 88
Iteration 4: 44 55 66 77 88
```

Using an Insertion Sort

In this section, you modify the `BubbleSortDemo` program so it performs an insertion sort.

1. Open the `BubbleSortDemo.java` file. Change the class name to `InsertionSortDemo`, and immediately save the file as `InsertionSortDemo.java`.
2. Remove the declaration for `comparisonsToMake`.

3. Remove the 14 lines of code that constitute the nested loops that perform the bubble sort. In other words, remove all the lines from the start of the second `for` loop through the closing curly brace following the statement that decrements `comparisonsToMake`.
4. Replace the removed lines with the statements that perform the insertion sort:

```
a = 1;
while(a < someNums.length)
{
    temp = someNums[a];
    b = a - 1;
    while(b >= 0 && someNums[b] > temp)
    {
        someNums[b + 1] = someNums[b];
        --b;
    }
    someNums[b + 1] = temp;
    display(someNums, a);
    ++a;
}
```

5. Save the file as `InsertionSortDemo.java`, and then compile and execute it. **Figure 8-27** shows a typical execution. During the first loop, 77 is compared with 88 and inserted at the beginning of the array. In the second loop, 66 is compared with both 77 and 88 and inserted at the beginning of the array. Then the same thing happens with 55 and 44 until all the values are sorted.
6. Try the program with other input values and examine the output so that you understand how the insertion sort algorithm works.

Figure 8-27 Typical execution of the `InsertionSortDemo` program

```
Enter number 1 >> 88
Enter number 2 >> 77
Enter number 3 >> 66
Enter number 4 >> 55
Enter number 5 >> 44
Iteration 0: 88 77 66 55 44
Iteration 1: 77 88 66 55 44
Iteration 2: 66 77 88 55 44
Iteration 3: 55 66 77 88 44
Iteration 4: 44 55 66 77 88
```

8.8 Using Two-Dimensional and Other Multidimensional Arrays

When you declare an array such as `int [] someNumbers = new int [3];`, you can envision the three declared integers as a column of numbers in memory, as shown in **Figure 8-28**. In other words, you can picture the three declared numbers stacked one on top of the next. An array that you can picture as a column of values, and whose elements you can access using a single subscript, is a **one-dimensional array** or **single-dimensional array**. You can think of the size of the array as its height.

Java also supports two-dimensional arrays. A **two-dimensional array** has two or more columns of values, as shown in **Figure 8-29**. The two dimensions represent the height and width of the array. Another way to picture a two-dimensional array is as an array of arrays. It is easiest to picture two-dimensional arrays as having both rows and columns. You must use two subscripts when you access an element in a two-dimensional array. When mathematicians use a two-dimensional array, they often call it a **matrix** or a **table**; you might have used a two-dimensional array called a spreadsheet.

When you declare a one-dimensional array, you type a set of square brackets after the array's data type. To declare a two-dimensional array in Java, you type two sets of brackets after the array type. For example, the array in Figure 8-29 can be declared as follows, creating an array named `someNumbers` that holds three rows and four columns:

```
int[][] someNumbers = new int[3][4];
```

Figure 8-29 View of a two-dimensional array in memory

someNumbers [0] [0]	someNumbers [0] [1]	someNumbers [0] [2]	someNumbers [0] [3]
someNumbers [1] [0]	someNumbers [1] [1]	someNumbers [1] [2]	someNumbers [1] [3]
someNumbers [2] [0]	someNumbers [2] [1]	someNumbers [2] [2]	someNumbers [2] [3]

Just as with a one-dimensional array, if you do not provide values for the elements in a two-dimensional numeric array, the values default to zero. You can assign other values to the array elements later. For example, `someNumbers [0] [0] = 14;` assigns the value 14 to the element of the `someNumbers` array that is in the first column of the first row.

Alternatively, you can initialize a two-dimensional array with values when it is created. For example, the following code assigns values to `someNumbers` when it is created:

```
int[][] someNumbers = { {8, 9, 10, 11},
                       {1, 3, 12, 15},
                       {5, 9, 44, 99} };
```

The `someNumbers` array contains three rows and four columns. You do not *need* to place each row of values for a two-dimensional array on its own line. However, doing so makes the positions of values easier to understand. You contain the entire set of values within an outer pair of curly braces.

- › The first row of the array holds the four integers 8, 9, 10, and 11. Notice that these four integers are placed within their own inner set of curly braces to indicate that they constitute one row, or the first row, which is row 0.
- › Similarly, 1, 3, 12, and 15 make up the second row (row 1), which you reference with the subscript 1.
- › Next, 5, 9, 44, and 99 are the values in the third row (row 2), which you reference with the subscript 2.

The value of `someNumbers [0] [0]` is 8. The value of `someNumbers [0] [1]` is 9. The value of `someNumbers [2] [3]` is 99. The value within the first set of brackets following the array name always refers to the row; the value within the second brackets refers to the column.

As an example of how useful two-dimensional arrays can be, assume that you own an apartment building with four floors—a basement, which you refer to as floor zero, and three other floors numbered one, two, and three. In addition, each of the floors has studio (with no bedroom) and one- and two-bedroom apartments. The monthly rent for each type of apartment is different—the higher the floor, the higher the rent (the view is better), and the rent is higher for apartments with more bedrooms. **Table 8-2** shows the rental amounts.

Figure 8-28 View of a single-dimensional array in memory

someNumbers [0]
someNumbers [1]
someNumbers [2]

Table 8-2 Rents charged (in dollars)

FLOOR	ZERO BEDROOMS	ONE BEDROOM	TWO BEDROOMS
0	400	450	510
1	500	560	630
2	625	676	740
3	1,000	1,250	1,600

To determine a tenant's rent, you need to know two pieces of information: the floor on which the tenant rents an apartment and the number of bedrooms in the apartment. Within a Java program, you can declare an array of rents using the following code:

```
int[][] rents = { {400, 450, 510},
                  {500, 560, 630},
                  {625, 676, 740},
                  {1000, 1250, 1600} };
```

If you declare two integers named `floor` and `bedrooms`, then any tenant's rent can be referred to as `rents[floor][bedrooms]`. **Figure 8-30** shows an application that prompts a user for a floor number and number of bedrooms. **Figure 8-31** shows a typical execution.

Figure 8-30 The `FindRent` class

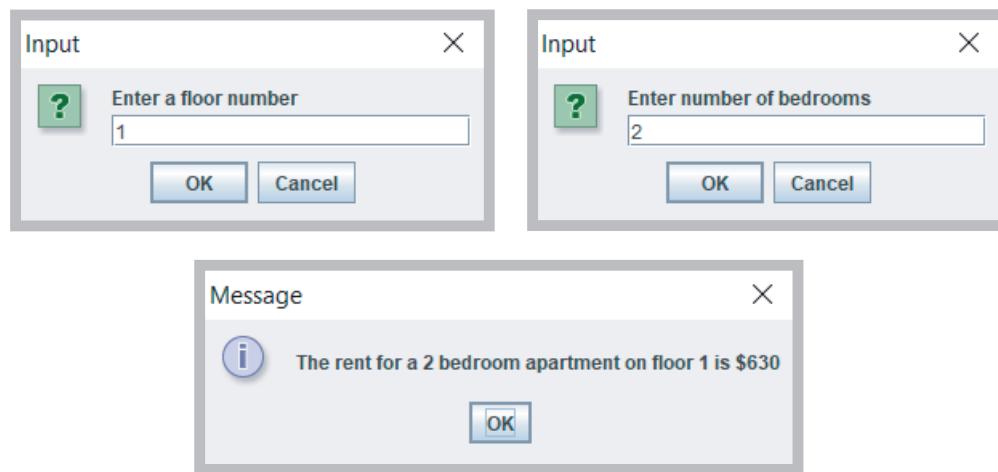
```
import javax.swing.*;
class FindRent
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int[][] rents = { {400, 450, 510},
                          {500, 560, 630},
                          {625, 676, 740},
                          {1000, 1250, 1600} };

        String entry;
        int floor;
        int bedrooms;
        entry = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
            "Enter a floor number ");
        floor = Integer.parseInt(entry);
        entry = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
            "Enter number of bedrooms ");
        bedrooms = Integer.parseInt(entry);
        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null,
            "The rent for a " + bedrooms +
            " bedroom apartment on floor " + floor +
            " is $" + rents[floor][bedrooms]);
    }
}
```

Passing a Two-Dimensional Array to a Method

When you pass a two-dimensional array to a method, you pass the array name just as you do with a one-dimensional array. A method that receives a two-dimensional array uses two bracket pairs following the data type in the parameter list of the method header. For example, the following method headers accept two-dimensional arrays of `ints`, `doubles`, and `Employees`, respectively:

```
public static void displayScores(int[][] scoresArray)
public static boolean areAllPricesHigh(double[][] prices)
public static double computeTotalPayroll(Employee[][] staff)
```

Figure 8-31 Typical execution of the `FindRent` program

In each case, notice that the brackets indicating the array in the method header are empty. There is no need to insert numbers into the brackets because each passed array name is a starting memory address. The way you manipulate subscripts within the method determines how rows and columns are accessed.

Using the `length` Field with a Two-Dimensional Array

With a one-dimensional array, the `length` field holds the number of elements in the array. With a two-dimensional array, the `length` field holds the number of rows in the array. Each row, in turn, has a `length` field that holds the number of columns in the row. For example, suppose you declare a `rents` array as follows:

```
int[][] rents = { {400, 450, 510},
                  {500, 560, 630},
                  {625, 676, 740},
                  {1000, 1250, 1600} };
```

The value of `rents.length` is 4 because there are four rows in the array. The value of `rents[0].length` is 3 because there are three columns in the first row of the `rents` array. Similarly, the value of `rents[1].length` also is 3 because there are three columns in the second row.

Figure 8-32 shows an application that uses the `length` fields associated with the `rents` array to display all the rents. The `floor` variable varies from 0 through one less than 4 in the outer loop, and the `bdrms` variable varies from 0 through one less than 3 in the inner loop. **Figure 8-33** shows the output.

Figure 8-32 The `DisplayRents` class

```
class DisplayRents
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int[][] rents = { {400, 450, 510},
                          {500, 560, 630},
                          {625, 676, 740},
                          {1000, 1250, 1600} };
        int floor;
        int bdrms;
        for(floor = 0; floor < rents.length; ++floor)
            for(bdrms = 0; bdrms < rents[floor].length; ++bdrms)
                System.out.println("Floor " + floor +
                    " Bedrooms " + bdrms + " Rent is $" +
                    rents[floor][bdrms]);
    }
}
```

Figure 8-33 Output of the `DisplayRents` program

```
Floor 0 Bedrooms 0 Rent is $400
Floor 0 Bedrooms 1 Rent is $450
Floor 0 Bedrooms 2 Rent is $510
Floor 1 Bedrooms 0 Rent is $500
Floor 1 Bedrooms 1 Rent is $560
Floor 1 Bedrooms 2 Rent is $630
Floor 2 Bedrooms 0 Rent is $625
Floor 2 Bedrooms 1 Rent is $676
Floor 2 Bedrooms 2 Rent is $740
Floor 3 Bedrooms 0 Rent is $1000
Floor 3 Bedrooms 1 Rent is $1250
Floor 3 Bedrooms 2 Rent is $1600
```

Understanding Jagged Arrays

In a two-dimensional array, each row also is an array. In Java, you can declare each row to have a different length. When a two-dimensional array has rows of different lengths, it is a **jagged array** or **ragged array** because you can picture the ends of each row as uneven. Because a two-dimensional array with equal-length rows is rectangular, a jagged array can also be called a *non-rectangular array*.

You create a jagged array by defining the number of rows for a two-dimensional array but not defining the number of columns in the rows. For example, suppose that you have four sales representatives, each of whom covers a different number of states as their sales territory. Further suppose that you want an array to store total sales for each state for each sales representative. You would define the array as follows:

```
double[][] sales = new double[4][];
```

This statement declares an array with four rows, but the rows are not yet created. Then, you can declare the individual rows, based on the number of states covered by each salesperson as follows:

```
sales[0] = new double[12];
sales[1] = new double[18];
sales[2] = new double[9];
sales[3] = new double[11];
```

Using Other Multidimensional Arrays

Besides one- and two-dimensional arrays, Java also supports arrays with three, four, and more dimensions. The general term for an array with more than one dimension is **multidimensional array**.

For example, if you own an apartment building with a number of floors and different numbers of bedrooms available in apartments on each floor, you can use a two-dimensional array to store the rental fees. If you own several apartment buildings, you might want to employ a third dimension to store the building number. An expression such as `rents [building] [floor] [bedrooms]` refers to a specific rent value for a building whose building number is stored in the `building` variable and whose floor and bedroom numbers are stored in the `floor` and `bedrooms` variables. Specifically, `rents [5] [1] [2]` refers to a two-bedroom apartment on the first floor of building 5. Other examples of three-dimensional arrays follow:

- An array that stores daily rainfall. You might access it with a statement such as `rainfall [year] [month] [day]`.
- An array that stores color values. You might access it with a statement such as `colors [redComponent] [greenComponent] [blueComponent]`.
- An array that stores test scores for students over the course of an academic year. You might access it with a statement such as `scores [studentID] [semester] [weekInSemester]`.

When you are programming in Java, you can use four, five, or more dimensions in an array. As long as you can keep track of the order of the variables needed as subscripts, and as long as you don't exhaust your computer's memory, Java lets you create arrays of any size.

Two Truths & a Lie | Using Two-Dimensional and Other Multidimensional Arrays

1. Two-dimensional arrays have both rows and columns, so you must use two subscripts when you access an element in a two-dimensional array.
2. The following array contains two columns and three rows:


```
int [] [] myArray = { {12, 14, 19},
                           {33, 45, 88} };
```
3. With a two-dimensional array, the `length` field holds the number of rows in the array; each row has a `length` field that holds the number of columns in the row.

The false statement is #2. The array shown has two rows and three columns.

You Do It | Using a Two-Dimensional Array

In this section, you create an application that demonstrates using a two-dimensional array.

1. Open a new file in your text editor, and start a class that will demonstrate a working two-dimensional array:

```
import java.util.Scanner;
class TwoDimensionalArrayDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

2. Declare a three-by-three array of integers. By default, the elements will all be initialized to 0.

```
int [] [] count = new int[3][3];
```

3. Declare a `Scanner` object for input, variables to hold a row and column, and a constant that can be used to indicate when the user wants to quit the application.

```
Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
int row, column;
final int QUIT = 99;
```

4. Prompt the user to enter a row or the `QUIT` value to quit, and then accept the user's input.

```
System.out.print("Enter a row or " + QUIT + " to quit > ");
row = input.nextInt();
```

5. In a loop that continues if the user has not entered the `QUIT` value, prompt the user for a column. If the row and column are both within appropriate ranges, add 1 to the element in the selected position.

```
while(row != QUIT)
{
    System.out.print("Enter a column > ");
    column = input.nextInt();
    if(row < count.length && column < count[row].length)
    {
        count[row][column]++;
    }
}
```

6. Still within the `if` statement that checks for a valid row and column, add a nested loop that displays each row and column of the newly incremented array. The elements in each row are displayed on the same line, and a new line is started at the end of each row. Add a closing curly brace for the `if` statement.

```
for(int r = 0; r < count.length; ++r)
{
    for(int c = 0; c < count[r].length; ++c)
        System.out.print(count[r][c] + " ");
    System.out.println();
}
```

7. Add an `else` clause to the `if` statement to display an error message when the row or column value is too high.

```
else
    System.out.println("Invalid position selected");
```

8. At the end of the loop, prompt the user for the next row number, and then accept it. Add closing curly braces for the loop, the `main()` method, and the class.

```
System.out.print("Enter a row or " + QUIT + " to quit > ");
row = input.nextInt();
}
}
}
```

9. Save the file as **TwoDimensionalArrayDemo.java**. Compile and execute the program. **Figure 8-34** shows a typical execution. As the user continues to enter row and column values, the appropriate elements in the array are incremented.

Figure 8-34 Typical execution of the TwoDimensionalArrayDemo program

```
Enter a row or 99 to quit > 0
Enter a column > 0
1 0 0
0 0 0
0 0 0
Enter a row or 99 to quit > 2
Enter a column > 1
1 0 0
0 0 0
0 1 0
Enter a row or 99 to quit > 0
Enter a column > 0
2 0 0
0 0 0
0 1 0
Enter a row or 99 to quit > 5
Enter a column > 5
Invalid position selected
Enter a row or 99 to quit > 99
```

8.9 Using the Arrays Class

When you fully understand the power of arrays, you will want to use them to store all kinds of objects. Frequently, you will want to perform similar tasks with different arrays—for example, filling them with values and sorting their elements. Java provides an **Arrays class** that contains many useful methods for manipulating arrays.

Table 8-3 shows some of the useful methods of the **Arrays class**. For example, the **Arrays class** can be used to fill, sort, and search an array. For each method listed in the left column of the table, **type** stands for a data type; an overloaded version of each method exists for each appropriate data type. For example, there is a version of the **sort()** method to sort **int**, **double**, **char**, **byte**, **float**, **long**, **short**, and **Object** arrays. (You will learn about the **Object class** later in this course.)

Table 8-3 Useful methods of the **Arrays class**

METHOD	PURPOSE
<code>static int binarySearch(type[] a, type key)</code>	Searches the specified array for the specified key value using the binary search algorithm
<code>static boolean equals(type[] a, type[] a2)</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the two specified arrays of the same type are equal to one another
<code>static void fill(type[] a, type val)</code>	Assigns the specified value to each element of the specified array
<code>static void sort(type[] a)</code>	Sorts the specified array into ascending order
<code>static void sort(type[] a, int fromIndex, int toIndex)</code>	Sorts the specified range of the array into ascending order
<code>static void parallelSort(type[] a)</code>	Sorts the specified array into ascending order
<code>static void parallelSort(type[] a, int fromIndex, int toIndex)</code>	Sorts the specified range of the array into ascending order

The methods in the **Arrays class** are **static** methods, which means you use them with the class name without instantiating an **Arrays object**. The **Arrays class** is located in the **java.util** package, so you can use the statement `import java.util.Arrays` or `import java.util.*`; to access it. The **ArraysDemo** application in **Figure 8-35** demonstrates how you can use some of the methods in the **Arrays class**. In the **ArraysDemo** class, the **myScores** array is created to hold five integers. Then, a message and the array reference are passed to a **display()** method.

The first line of the output in **Figure 8-36** shows that the original array is filled with **0s** at creation. After the first display, the **Arrays.fill()** method is called. Because the arguments are the name of the array and the number **8**, the output is all **8s** when the array is displayed a second time. In the application, two of the array elements are changed to **6** and **3**, and the array is displayed again. Finally, the **Arrays.sort()** method is called. The output in **Figure 8-36** shows that when the **display()** method executes the fourth time, the array elements have been sorted in ascending order.

The **Arrays class** **parallelSort()** methods were a new feature in Java 8. You use the methods the same way you use the **sort()** methods, but their algorithms make the sorting more efficient if thousands or millions of objects need to be sorted.

The **Arrays class** **binarySearch()** methods provide convenient ways to search through sorted lists of values of various data types. It is important that the list be in order before you use it in a call to **binarySearch()**; otherwise, the results are unpredictable. You do not have to understand how a binary search works to use the **binarySearch()** method, but basically the operation takes place as follows:

- » You have a sorted array and an item for which you are searching within the array. Based on the array size, you determine the middle position. (In an array with an even number of elements, this can be either of the two middle positions.)
- » You compare the item you are looking for with the element in the middle position of the array and decide whether your item is above that point in the array—that is, whether your item's value is less than the middle-point value.

Figure 8-35 The `ArraysDemo` application

```

import java.util.*;
public class ArraysDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int[] myScores = new int[5];
        display("Original array:          ", myScores);
        Arrays.fill(myScores, 8); Fills array with 8s
        display("After filling with 8s:   ", myScores);
        myScores[2] = 6;
        myScores[4] = 3;
        display("After changing two values: ", myScores);
        Arrays.sort(myScores); Sorts array values
        display("After sorting:           ", myScores);
    }
    public static void display(String message, int array[])
    {
        int sz = array.length;
        System.out.print(message);
        for(int x = 0; x < sz; ++x)
            System.out.print(array[x] + " ");
        System.out.println();
    }
}

```

Figure 8-36 Output of the `ArraysDemo` application

```

Original array:      0 0 0 0 0
After filling with 8s: 8 8 8 8 8
After changing two values: 8 8 6 8 3
After sorting:       3 6 8 8 8

```

- › If it is above that point in the array, you next find the middle position of the top half of the array; if it is not above that point, you find the middle position of the bottom half. Either way, you compare your item with that of the new middle position and divide the search area in half again.
- › Ultimately, you find the element or determine that it is not in the array.

Note

Programmers often refer to a binary search as a “divide and conquer” procedure. If you have ever played a game in which you tried to guess what number someone was thinking, you might have used a similar technique.

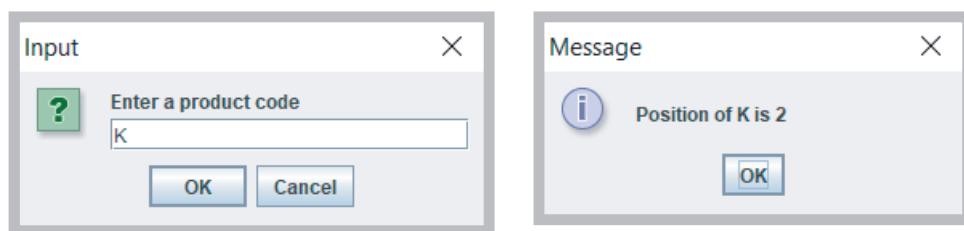
Suppose your organization uses six single-character product codes. **Figure 8-37** contains a `VerifyCode` application that verifies a product code entered by the user. The array `codes` holds six values in ascending order. The user enters a code that is extracted from the first `String` position using the `String` class `charAt()` method. Next, the array of valid characters and the user-entered character are passed to the `Arrays.binarySearch()` method. If the character is found in the array, its position is returned. If the character is not found in the array, a negative integer is returned and the application displays an error message. **Figure 8-38** shows the execution of the `VerifyCode` program when the user enters `K`; the character is found in position 2 (the third position) in the array.

Figure 8-37 The VerifyCode application

```

import java.util.*;
import javax.swing.*;
public class VerifyCode
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        char[] codes = {'B', 'E', 'K', 'M', 'P', 'T'};
        String entry;
        char usersCode;
        int position;
        entry = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
            "Enter a product code");
        usersCode = entry.charAt(0);
        position = Arrays.binarySearch(codes, usersCode);
        if(position >= 0)
            JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Position of " +
                usersCode + " is " + position);
        else
            JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, usersCode +
                " is an invalid code");
    }
}

```

Figure 8-38 Typical execution of the VerifyCode application**Note**

The negative integer returned by the `binarySearch()` method when the value is not found is the negative equivalent of the array size. In most applications, you do not care about the exact value returned when there is no match; you care only whether it is negative.

Note

The `sort()` and `binarySearch()` methods in the `Arrays` class are very useful in that they allow you to achieve results by writing fewer instructions than if you had to write the methods yourself. This does not mean you wasted your time reading about sorting and searching methods earlier in this chapter. The more completely you understand how arrays can be manipulated, the more useful, efficient, and creative your future applications will be.

Two Truths & a Lie | Using the Arrays Class

1. The `Arrays` class contains methods for manipulating arrays, such as `binarySearch()`, `fill()`, and `sort()`.
2. You can use the `Arrays` class `binarySearch()` method successfully on any array as soon as you have assigned values to the array elements.
3. The `binarySearch()` method works by continually deciding whether the element sought is above or below the halfway point in sublists of the original list.

The false statement is #2. Before you can use the `Arrays` class `binarySearch()` method successfully, the array elements must be in order.

You Do It | Using Arrays Class Methods

In this section, you create an application that demonstrates several `Arrays` class methods. The application will allow the user to enter a menu of entrées that are available for the day at a restaurant. Then, the application will present the menu to the user, allow a request, and indicate whether the requested item is on the menu.

1. Open a new file in your text editor, and type the `import` statements you need to create an application that will use the `JOptionPane` and `Arrays` classes:

```
import java.util.*;
import javax.swing.*;
```

2. Add the first few lines of the `MenuSearch` application class:

```
public class MenuSearch
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

3. Declare an array to hold the day's menu choices; the user is allowed to enter up to 10 entrées. Also declare two `String`s—one to hold the user's current entry and the other to accumulate the entire menu list as it is entered. The two `String` variables are initialized to empty `String`s using quotation marks; if you do not initialize these `String`s, you receive a compiler error because you might attempt to display them without having entered a legitimate value. Also, declare an integer to use as a subscript for the array, another to hold the number of menu items entered, and a third to hold the highest allowable subscript, which is 1 less than the array size:

```
String[] menuChoices = new String[10];
String entry = "", menuString = "";
int x = 0;
int numEntered;
int highestSub = menuChoices.length - 1;
```

4. Use the `Arrays.fill()` method to fill the menu array with z characters, as shown in the following line of code. You use this method so that when you perform a search later, actual values will be stored in any unused menu positions. If you ignore this step and fill less than half the array, your search method might generate an error.

```
Arrays.fill(menuChoices, "zzzzzz");
```

Lowercase zs were purposely chosen as the array fill characters because they have a higher value than any other letter. Therefore, when the user's entries are sorted, the zzzzzz entries will be at the bottom of the list.

5. Display an input dialog box into which the user can enter a menu item. Allow the user to quit before entering 10 items by typing zzz. (Using a value such as zzz is a common programming technique to check for the user's desire to stop entering data. If the data items are numeric instead of text, you might use a value such as 999. Values the user enters that are not "real" data, but just signals to stop, are often called **dummy values**.) After the user enters the first menu item, the application enters a loop that continues to add the entered item to the menu list, increase the subscript, and prompt for a new menu item. The loop continues while the user has not entered zzz and the subscript has not exceeded the allowable limit. When the loop ends, save the number of menu items entered.

```
menuChoices[x] = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
    "Enter an item for today's menu, or zzz to quit");
while(!menuChoices[x].equals("zzz") && x < highestSub)
{
    menuString = menuString + menuChoices[x] + "\n";
    ++x;
    if(x < highestSub)
        menuChoices[x] = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
            "Enter an item for today's menu, or zzz to quit");
}
numEntered = x;
```

6. When the menu is complete, display it for the user and allow the user to make a request:

```
entry = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
    "Today's menu is:\n" + menuString +
    "Please make a selection:");
```

7. Sort the array from index position 0 to numEntered so that it is in ascending order prior to using the binarySearch() method. If you do not sort the array, the result of the binarySearch() method is unpredictable. You could sort the entire array, but it is more efficient to sort only the elements that hold actual menu items:

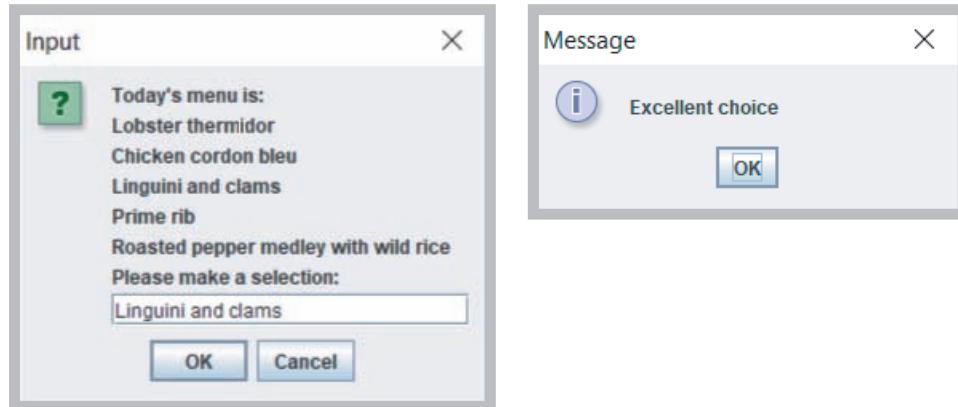
```
Arrays.sort(menuChoices, 0, numEntered);
```

8. Use the Arrays.binarySearch() method to search for the requested entry in the previously sorted array. If the method returns a non-negative value that is less than the numEntered value, display the message *Excellent choice*; otherwise, display an error message:

```
x = Arrays.binarySearch(menuChoices, entry);
if(x >= 0 && x < numEntered)
    JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Excellent choice");
else
    JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null,
        "Sorry - that item is not on tonight's menu");
```

9. Add the closing curly braces for the main() method and the class, and save the file as **MenuSearch.java**. Compile and execute the application. When prompted, enter as many menu choices as you want, and enter zzz when you want to quit data entry. When prompted again, enter a menu choice and observe the results. (A choice you enter must match the spelling in the menu exactly.) **Figure 8-39** shows a typical menu as it is presented to the user and the results after the user makes a valid choice.

Figure 8-39 Typical execution of the **MenuSearch** application



8.10 Creating Enumerations

You have learned that Java's built-in data types can hold only specific values. For example, an int can hold values between -2,147,483,648 and 2,147,483,647.

You also have learned that an array is a list of values that can be accessed using a subscript, and that the first element in an array uses subscript 0.

You can create your own **enumerated data type** that, like Java's built-in data types, has a finite set of legal values; also, the first position in it is position 0, as with an array.

In Java, you create an enumerated data type in a statement that uses the keyword **enum**, an identifier for the type, and a pair of curly braces that contain a list of the **enum constants**, which are the allowed values for the type. For example, the following code creates an enumerated type named Month that contains 12 values:

```
enum Month {JAN, FEB, MAR, APR, MAY, JUN,
    JUL, AUG, SEP, OCT, NOV, DEC};
```

By convention, the identifier for an enumerated type begins with an uppercase letter. This makes sense because an enumerated type is a class. Also, by convention, the enum constants, like other constants, appear in all uppercase letters. The constants are not strings and they are not enclosed in quotes; they are Java identifiers.

After you create an enumerated data type, you can declare variables of that type. For example, you might declare the following:

```
Month mon;
```

You can assign any of the enum constants to the variable. Therefore, you can code a statement such as the following:

```
mon = Month.MAY;
```

An enumeration type such as Month is a class, and its enum constants act like objects instantiated from the class, including having access to the methods of the class. These built-in methods include the ones shown in **Table 8-4**. Each of these methods is nonstatic; that is, each is used with an enum object.

Table 8-4 Some useful nonstatic enum methods

METHOD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE IF mon = Month.MAY
toString()	Returns the name of the calling constant object	mon.toString() is "MAY"
ordinal()	Returns an integer that represents the constant's position in the list of constants; as with arrays, the first position is 0	mon.ordinal() is 4
equals()	Returns true if its argument is equal to the calling object's value	mon.equals(Month.MAY) is true mon.equals(Month.NOV) is false
compareTo()	Returns a negative integer if the calling object's ordinal value is less than that of the argument, 0 if they are the same, and a positive integer if the calling object's ordinal value is greater than that of the argument	mon.compareTo(Month.JUL) is negative mon.compareTo(Month.FEB) is positive mon.compareTo(Month.MAY) is 0

Several static methods also are available to use with enumerations. These are used with the type and not with the individual constants. **Table 8-5** describes two useful static methods to use with enumerations.

Table 8-5 Some static enum methods

METHOD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE WITH Month ENUMERATION
valueOf()	Accepts a string parameter and returns an enumeration constant	Month.valueOf("DEC") returns the DEC enum constant
values()	Returns an array of the enumerated constants	Month.values() returns an array with 12 elements that contain the enum constants

You can declare an enumerated type in its own file, in which case the filename matches the type name and has a *.java* extension. Alternatively, you can declare an enumerated type within a class, but not within a method. **Figure 8-40** is an application that declares a Month enumeration and demonstrates its use.

Figure 8-40 The `EnumDemo` class

```

import java.util.Scanner;
public class EnumDemo
{
    enum Month {JAN, FEB, MAR, APR, MAY, JUN,
               JUL, AUG, SEP, OCT, NOV, DEC};
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Month birthMonth; A Month type variable is declared.
        String userEntry;
        int position;
        int comparison;
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.println("The months are:");
        for(Month mon : Month.values())
            System.out.print(mon + " ");
        System.out.print("\n\nEnter the first three letters of " +
                       "your birth month >> ");
        userEntry = input.nextLine().toUpperCase();
        birthMonth = Month.valueOf(userEntry); valueOf() converts
                                             string to an enumeration
                                             value.
        System.out.println("You entered " + birthMonth);
        position = birthMonth.ordinal(); ordinal() gets
                                         position of string.
        System.out.println(birthMonth + " is in position " + position);
        System.out.println("So its month number is " + (position + 1));
        comparison = birthMonth.compareTo(Month.JUN); compareTo()
                                                 compares
                                                 entered string to
                                                 the JUN constant.
        if(comparison < 0)
            System.out.println(birthMonth +
                               " is earlier in the year than " + Month.JUN);
        else
            if(comparison > 0)
                System.out.println(birthMonth +
                                   " is later in the year than " + Month.JUN);
            else
                System.out.println(birthMonth + " is " + Month.JUN);
    }
}

```

In the application in Figure 8-40, a `Month` enumeration is declared; in the `main()` method, a `Month` variable is declared. Then, an enhanced `for` loop declares a local `Month` variable named `mon` that takes on the value of each element in the `Month.values()` array in turn so it can be displayed.

In the program in Figure 8-40, the user then is prompted to enter the first three letters for a month, which are converted to their uppercase equivalents. The `valueOf()` method is used to convert the user's string to an enumeration value. The program gets the position of the month in the enumeration list, compares the entered month to the `JUN` constant, and displays whether the user's entered month comes before `JUN` in the list, comes after `JUN`, or is equivalent to it. **Figure 8-41** shows a typical execution of the `EnumDemo` application.

Figure 8-41 Typical execution of the `EnumDemo` application

```

The months are:
JAN FEB MAR APR MAY JUN JUL AUG SEP OCT NOV DEC

Enter the first three letters of your birth month >> Sep
You entered SEP
SEP is in position 8
So its month number is 9
SEP is later in the year than JUN

```

You also can use comparison operators with enumeration constants instead of using the `compareTo()` method to return a number. For example, you can write the following:

```
if(birthMonth < Month.JUN)
    System.out.println(birthMonth +
        " is earlier in the year than " + Month.JUN);
```

You can use enumerations to control a `switch` structure. **Figure 8-42** contains a class that declares a `Property` enumeration for a real estate company and then uses a `switch` structure to display an appropriate message when the listing fee is 5 percent for single- or multifamily properties or 6 percent for condominium properties.

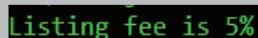
Figure 8-42 The `EnumDemo2` class

```
import java.util.Scanner;
public class EnumDemo2
{
    enum Property {SINGLE_FAMILY, MULTIPLE_FAMILY,
                   CONDOMINIUM, LAND, BUSINESS};
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Property propForSale = Property.MULTIPLE_FAMILY;
        switch(propForSale)
        {
            case SINGLE_FAMILY:
            case MULTIPLE_FAMILY:
                System.out.println("Listing fee is 5%");
                break;
            case CONDOMINIUM:
                System.out.println("Listing fee is 6%");
                break;
            case LAND;
            case BUSINESS:
                System.out.println
                    ("We do not handle this type of property");
        }
    }
}
```

In the `EnumDemo2` application, `propForSale` is assigned the `MULTIPLE_FAMILY` constant, so **Figure 8-43** shows the correct output.

Creating an enumeration type provides you with several advantages. For example, the `Month` enumeration improves your programs in the following ways:

Figure 8-43 Output of the `EnumDemo2` application



Listing fee is 5%

- › If you did not create an enumerated type for month values, you could use another type—for example, `ints` or `Strings`. The problem is that any value could be assigned to an `int` or `String` variable, but only the 12 allowed values can be assigned to a `Month`.
- › If you did not create an enumerated type for month values, you could create another type to represent months, but invalid behavior could be applied to the values. For example, if you used integers to represent months, you could add, subtract, multiply, or divide two months, which is not logical. Programmers say using enums makes the values type-safe. **Type-safe** describes a data type for which only appropriate behaviors are allowed.
- › The enum constants provide a form of self-documentation. Someone reading your program might misinterpret what `9` means as a month value, but there is less confusion when you use the identifier `OCT`.
- › As with other classes, you can also add methods and other fields to an enum type.

Two Truths & a Lie | Creating Enumerations

Assume that you have coded the following:

```
enum Color {RED, WHITE, BLUE};
Color myColor = Color.RED;
```

1. The value of `myColor.ordinal()` is 1.
2. The value of `myColor.compareTo(Color.RED)` is 0.
3. The value of `myColor < Color.WHITE` is true.

The false statement is #1. As the first `enum` constant, the value of `myColor.ordinal()` is 0.

You Do It | Creating Enumerations

In this section, you create two enumerations that hold colors and car model types. You will use them as field types in a `Car` class and write a demonstration program that shows how the enumerations are used.

1. Open a new file in your text editor, and type the following `Color` enumeration:

```
enum Color {BLACK, BLUE, GREEN, RED, WHITE, YELLOW};
```

2. Save the file as `Color.java`.

3. Open a new file in your text editor, and create the following `Model` enumeration:

```
enum Model {SEDAN, CONVERTIBLE, MINIVAN};
```

4. Save the file as `Model.java`. Next, open a new file in your text editor, and start to define a `Car` class that holds three fields: a year, a model, and a color.

```
public class Car
{
    private int year;
    private Model model;
    private Color color;
```

5. Add a constructor for the `Car` class that accepts parameters that hold the values for year, model, and color as follows:

```
public Car(int yr, Model m, Color c)
{
    year = yr;
    model = m;
    color = c;
}
```

6. Add a `display()` method that displays a `Car` object's data, and then add a closing curly brace for the class.

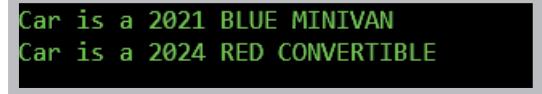
```
public void display()
{
    System.out.println("Car is a " + year +
        " " + color + " " + model);
}
```

7. Save the file as **Car.java**.
8. Open a new file in your text editor, and write a short demonstration program that instantiates two `Car` objects and assigns values to them using enumeration values for the models and colors.

```
public class CarDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Car firstCar = new Car(2021, Model.MINIVAN, Color.BLUE);
        Car secondCar = new Car(2024, Model.CONVERTIBLE, Color.RED);
        firstCar.display();
        secondCar.display();
    }
}
```

9. Save the file as **CarDemo.java**, and then compile and execute it. **Figure 8-44** shows that the values are assigned correctly.

Figure 8-44 Output of the `CarDemo` program



```
Car is a 2021 BLUE MINIVAN
Car is a 2024 RED CONVERTIBLE
```

Don't Do It

- › Don't forget that the lowest array subscript is 0.
- › Don't forget that the highest array subscript is one less than the length of the array.
- › Don't forget that a semicolon follows the closing curly brace in an array initialization list.
- › Don't forget that `length` is an array property and not a method. Conversely, `length()` is a `String` method, and not a property.
- › Don't place a subscript after an object's field or method name when accessing an array of objects. Instead, the subscript for an object follows the object and comes before the dot and the field or method name.
- › Don't assume that an array of characters is a string. Although an array of characters can be treated like a string in languages like C++, you can't do this in Java. For example, if you display the name of a character array, you will see its address, not its contents.
- › Don't forget that array names are references. Therefore, you cannot assign one array to another using the `=` operator, nor can you compare array contents using the `==` operator.
- › Don't use brackets with an array name when you pass it to a method. Do use brackets in the method header that accepts the array.
- › Don't forget that the first subscript used with a two-dimensional array represents the row, and that the second subscript represents the column.
- › Don't think enum constants are strings; they are not enclosed in quotes.



Summary

- › An array is a named list of data items that all have the same type. You declare an array variable by inserting a pair of square brackets after the data type. To reserve memory space for an array, you use the keyword new. You use a subscript contained within square brackets to refer to one of an array's variables, or elements. In Java, any array's elements are numbered beginning with zero.
- › Array names represent computer memory addresses. When you declare an array name, no computer memory address is assigned to it, and the array variable name has the value null. When you use the keyword new or supply an initialization list, an array acquires an actual memory address. When an initialization list is not provided, each data type has a default value for its array elements.
- › You can shorten many array-based tasks by using a variable as a subscript. When an application contains an array, it is common to perform loops that execute from 0 to one less than the size of the array. The length field is an automatically created field that is assigned to every array; it contains the number of elements in the array.
- › You can declare arrays that hold elements of any type, including Strings and other objects. To use a method that belongs to an object that is part of an array, you insert the appropriate subscript notation after the array name and before the dot that precedes the method name.
- › By looping through an array and making comparisons, you can search an array to find a match to a value. You can use a parallel array with the same number of elements to hold related elements. You perform a range match by placing end values of ranges in an array and making greater-than or less-than comparisons to each array element.
- › You can pass a single array element to a method, and the array receives a copy of the passed value. You can pass an array name to a method, and the method receives a copy of the array's memory address and has access to the values in the original array.
- › Sorting is the process of arranging a series of objects in ascending or descending order. With a bubble sort, you continue to compare pairs of items, swapping them if they are out of order, so that the smallest items "bubble" to the top of the list, eventually creating a sorted list.
- › You can sort arrays of objects in much the same way that you sort arrays of primitive types. The major difference occurs when you make the comparison that determines whether you want to swap two array elements. When array elements are objects, you usually want to sort based on a particular object field.
- › With an insertion sort, you look at each list element one at a time, and if an element is out of order relative to any of the items earlier in the list, you move each earlier item down one position and then insert the tested element.
- › A one-dimensional or single-dimensional array is accessed using a single subscript. Two-dimensional arrays have both rows and columns and require two subscripts to access. To declare a two-dimensional array, you type two sets of brackets after the array type.
- › The Java Arrays class contains many useful methods for manipulating arrays. The Arrays methods provide ways to easily search, compare, fill, and sort arrays.
- › An enumerated data type is a programmer-created type with a fixed set of values. In Java, you create an enumerated data type in a statement that uses the keyword enum, an identifier for the type, and a pair of curly braces that contain a list of the enum constants, which are the allowed values for the type.

Key Terms

algorithm	flag	passed by value
array	foreach loop	populating an array
Arrays class	index	ragged array
ascending order	initialization list	range match
bubble sort	insertion sort	searching an array
descending order	jagged array	single-dimensional array
dummy values	matrix	sorting
element	multidimensional array	subscript
enhanced for loop	one-dimensional array	table
enum	out of bounds	two-dimensional array
enum constants	parallel array	type-safe
enumerated data type	passed by reference	

Review Questions

- An array is a list of data items that all _____.
 - have the same type
 - have different names
 - are integers
 - are null
- When you declare an array, _____.
 - you always reserve memory for it in the same statement
 - you might reserve memory for it in the same statement
 - you cannot reserve memory for it in the same statement
 - the ability to reserve memory for it in the same statement depends on the type of the array
- For how many integers does the following statement reserve room?

```
int [] values = new int[34];
```

 - 0
 - 33
 - 34
 - 35
- Which of the following can be used as an array subscript?
 - char
 - String
 - double
 - int
- If you declare an array as follows, how do you indicate the final element of the array?

```
int [] nums = new int[6];
```

 - nums [0]
 - nums [5]
 - nums [6]
 - impossible to tell
- If you declare an integer array as follows, what is the value of nums [2]?

```
int [] nums = {101, 202, 303, 404, 505, 606};
```

 - 101
 - 202
 - 303
 - impossible to tell

7. When you initialize an array by giving it values upon creation, you _____.
 a. do not explicitly give the array a size
 b. also must give the array a size explicitly
 c. must make all the values zero, blank, or `false`
 d. must make certain each value is different from the others
8. In Java, you can declare an array of 12 elements and initialize _____.
 a. only the first one
 b. all of them
 c. either one or all of them
 d. only the first and last ones
9. Assume `x` is an integer and an array is declared as follows. Which of the following statements correctly assigns the value 100 to each of the array elements?
 int [] nums = new int [4];
 a. `for(x = 0; x < 3; ++x)`
 `nums [x] = 100;`
 b. `for(x = 0; x < 4; ++x)`
 `nums [x] = 100;`
 c. `for(x = 1; x < 4; ++x)`
 `nums [x] = 100;`
 d. `for(x = 1; x < 5; ++x)`
 `nums [x] = 100;`
10. Suppose you have declared an array as follows:
 int [] creditScores = {670, 720, 815};
 What is the value of `creditScores.length`?
 a. 0
 b. 1
 c. 2
 d. 3
11. A parallel array is one that _____.
 a. holds values that correspond to those in another array
 b. holds an even number of values
 c. is placed adjacent to another array in code
 d. is placed adjacent to another array in memory
12. When you pass an array element to a method, the method receives _____.
 a. a copy of the array
 b. the address of the array
 c. a copy of the value in the element
 d. the address of the element
13. A single array element of a primitive type is passed to a method by _____.
 a. value
 b. reference
 c. address
 d. osmosis
14. When you pass an array to a method, the method receives _____.
 a. a copy of the array
 b. a copy of the first element in the array
 c. the address of the array
 d. nothing
15. When you place objects in order beginning with the object with the highest value, you are sorting in _____ order.
 a. descending
 b. ascending
 c. demeaning
 d. arithmetic
16. Using a bubble sort involves comparing each array element with _____.
 a. the corresponding element in a parallel array
 b. the adjacent element
 c. the arithmetic average
 d. the lowest element value

17. The following defines a _____ array:

```
int [] [] nums = { {1, 2}, {3, 4}, {5, 6} };
```

- a. one-dimensional
- b. two-dimensional
- c. three-dimensional
- d. six-dimensional

18. How many rows are contained in the following array?

```
double [] [] prices = { {2.56, 3.57, 4.58, 5.59},
{12.35, 13.35, 14.35, 15.00} };
```

- a. 1
- b. 2
- c. 4
- d. 8

19. In the following array, what is the value of codes [2] [1]?

```
char [] [] codes = { {'A', 'D', 'M'},
{'P', 'R', 'S'},
{'U', 'V', 'Z'} };
```

- a. 'P'
- b. 'R'
- c. 'U'
- d. 'V'

20. The methods in the Arrays class _____.

- a. are static methods
- b. are always used after instantiating an Arrays object
- c. must be modified by a programmer before they are useful
- d. can be used without importing any package

Programming Exercises

1. Write an application that stores nine integers in an array named `numbers`. Display the integers from first to last, and then display the integers from last to first. Save the file as **NineInts.java**.
2. Allow a user to enter any number of double values up to 15. The user should enter `99999` to quit entering numbers. Display an error message if the user quits without entering any numbers; otherwise, display a count of the numbers entered, the arithmetic average of the numbers, and each entered value and its distance from the average. Save the file as **DistanceFromAverage.java**.
3.
 - a. Write an application for Chapa's Car Care Shop that shows a user a list of available services: *oil change*, *tire rotation*, *battery check*, or *brake inspection*. Allow the user to enter a string that corresponds to one of the options, and display the option and its price as \$25, \$22, \$15, or \$5, accordingly. Display an error message if the user enters an invalid item. Save the file as **CarCareChoice.java**.
 - b. It might not be reasonable to expect users to type long entries such as *oil change* accurately. Modify the `CarCareChoice` class so that as long as the user enters the first three characters of a service, the choice is considered valid. Save the file as **CarCareChoice2.java**.
4. Create an application that prompts a user for 10 integers and stores them in an array. The application should call five methods that in turn (1) display all the integers, (2) display all the integers in reverse order, (3) display the sum of the integers, (4) display all values less than 12 or a message if none are less than 12, and (5) display all values that are higher than the calculated average value. Save the file as **ArrayMethodDemo.java**.

5. a. Create a class named `Salesperson`. Data fields for `Salesperson` include an integer ID number and a double annual sales amount. Methods include a constructor that requires values for both data fields, as well as get and set methods for each of the data fields. Write an application named `DemoSalesperson` that declares an array of 10 `Salesperson` objects named `salesPeople`. Set each ID number to 9999 and each sales value to zero. Display the 10 `Salesperson` objects. Save the files as `Salesperson.java` and `DemoSalesperson.java`.
- b. Modify the `DemoSalesperson` application so each `Salesperson` has a successive ID number from 111 through 120 and a sales value that ranges from \$25,000 to \$70,000, increasing by \$5,000 for each successive `Salesperson`. Save the file as `DemoSalesperson2.java`.
- c. Create an application that allows a user to enter values for an array of seven `Salesperson` objects. Offer the user the choice of displaying the objects in order by either ID number or sales value. Save the application as `SalespersonSort.java`.
- d. Create an application that allows you to store an array that acts as a database of any number of `Salesperson` objects up to 20. While the user decides to continue, offer three options: to add a record to the database, to delete a record from the database, or to change a record in the database. Then proceed as follows:
- › If the user selects the add option, issue an error message if the database is full. Otherwise, prompt the user for an ID number. If the ID number already exists in the database, issue an error message. Otherwise, prompt the user for a sales value and add the new record to the database.
 - › If the user selects the delete option, issue an error message if the database is empty. Otherwise, prompt the user for an ID number. If the ID number does not exist, issue an error message. Otherwise, do not access the record for any future processing.
 - › If the user selects the change option, issue an error message if the database is empty. Otherwise, prompt the user for an ID number. If the requested record does not exist, issue an error message. Otherwise, prompt the user for a new sales value and change the sales value for the record.
 - › After each option executes, display the updated database in ascending order by `Salesperson` ID number and prompt the user to select the next action. Save the application as `SalespersonDatabase.java`.
6. a. Create a `CollegeCourse` class. The class contains fields for the course ID (for example, *CIS 210*), credit hours (for example, 3), and a letter grade (for example, *A*). Include get and set methods for each field. Save the file as `CollegeCourse.java`.
- b. Create a `Student` class containing an ID number and an array of five `CollegeCourse` objects. Create a get and set method for the `Student` ID number. Also create a get method that returns one of the `Student`'s `CollegeCourses`; the method takes an integer argument and returns the `CollegeCourse` in that position (0 through 4). Next, create a set method that sets the value of one of the `Student`'s `CollegeCourse` objects; the method takes two arguments—a `CollegeCourse` and an integer representing the `CollegeCourse`'s position (0 through 4). Save the file as `Student.java`.
- c. Write an application that prompts a professor to enter grades for five different courses each for 10 students. Prompt the professor to enter data for one student at a time, including student ID and course data for five courses. Use prompts containing the number of the student whose data is being entered and the course number—for example, *Enter ID for student #1*, and *Enter course ID #5*. Verify that the professor enters only *A*, *B*, *C*, *D*, or *F* for the grade value for each course. Save the file as `InputGrades.java`.
7. Write an application that allows a user to enter the names and birthdates of up to 10 friends. Continue to prompt the user for names and birthdates until the user enters the sentinel value *ZZZ* for a name or has entered 10 names, whichever comes first. When the user is finished entering names, produce a count of how many names were entered, and then display the names. In a loop, continually ask the user to type one of the names and display the corresponding birthdate or an error message if the name has not been previously entered. The loop continues until the user enters *ZZZ* for a name. Save the application as `BirthdayReminder.java`.

8. Create a personal phone directory that contains room for first names and phone numbers for 30 people. Assign names and phone numbers for the first 10 people. Prompt the user for a name, and if the name is found in the list, display the corresponding phone number. If the name is not found in the list, prompt the user for a phone number, and add the new name and phone number to the list. Continue to prompt the user for names until the user enters *quit*. After the arrays are full (containing 30 names), display a message if the user tries to make an additional entry, and end the program. Save the file as **PhoneNumbers.java**.
9. a. Create a class named **Purchase**. Each **Purchase** contains an invoice number, amount of sale, and amount of sales tax. Include set methods for the invoice number and sale amount. Within the set method for the sale amount, calculate the sales tax as 5 percent of the sale amount. Also include a display method that displays a purchase's details. Save the file as **Purchase.java**.
 b. Write a program that declares an array of five **Purchase** objects and prompt a user for their values. As each **Purchase** object is created, continually prompt until the user enters an invoice number between 1000 and 8000 inclusive and a non-negative sale amount. Prompt the user for values for each object and then display all the values. Save the file as **PurchaseArray.java**.
10. a. Each week, the Pickering Trucking Company randomly selects one of its 30 employees to take a drug test. Write an application that determines which employee will be selected each week for the next 52 weeks. Use the `Math.random()` function explained in Appendix D to generate an employee number between 1 and 30; you use a statement similar to:
- ```
testedEmployee = 1 + (int)(Math.random() * 30);
```
- After each selection, display the number of the employee to test. Display four employee numbers on each line. It is important to note that if testing is random, some employees will be tested multiple times, and others might never be tested. Include a count and display of the number of times each employee is selected. Also display a list of employee numbers that never were selected for testing. Save the program as **DrugTests2.java**.  
 b. When a series of random numbers is generated, it is quite common for the same number to be selected consecutively multiple times. Although duplicates happen in randomized lists, humans tend to see such repetition as “unfair.” Modify the **DrugTests2** class so that if an employee number is selected immediately after it was already selected, a new number is selected for the week. Also display a message explaining that a new number is being selected. Save the file as **DrugTests3.java**.
11. Write an application containing an array of 15 **String** values. Accept any number of **Strings** up to 15 from a user, and display them in ascending order. Save the file as **StringSort.java**.
12. a. The mean of a list of numbers is its arithmetic average. The median of a list is its middle value when the values are placed in order. For example, if an ordered list contains 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 10, 11, and 12, then the mean is 6, and their median is 5. Write an application that allows you to enter nine integers and displays the values, their mean, and their median. Save the file as **MeanMedian.java**.  
 b. Revise the **MeanMedian** class so that the user can enter any number of values up to 20. If the list has an even number of values, the median is the numeric average of the values in the two middle positions. Save the file as **MeanMedian2.java**.
13. a. Radio station KJAVA wants a class to keep track of recordings it plays. Create a class named **Recording** that contains fields to hold methods for setting and getting a **Recording**'s title, artist, and playing time in seconds. Save the file as **Recording.java**.  
 b. Write an application that instantiates five **Recording** objects and prompts the user for values for the data fields. Then prompt the user to enter which field the **Recordings** should be sorted by—song title, artist, or playing time. Perform the requested sort procedure, and display the **Recording** objects. Save the file as **RecordingSort.java**.

14. Write an application that stores at least five different college courses (such as *CIS101*), the time it first meets in the week (such as *Mon 9 am*), and the instructor (such as *Khan*) in a two-dimensional array. Allow the user to enter a course name and display the corresponding time and instructor. If the course exists twice, display details for both sessions. If the course does not exist, display an error message. Save the file as **TimesAndInstructors.java**.
15. Create an application that contains an enumeration that represents the days of the week. Display a list of the days, and then prompt the user for a day. Display business hours for the chosen day. Assume that the business is open from 11 to 5 on Sunday, 9 to 9 on weekdays, and 10 to 6 on Saturday. Save the file as **DayOfWeek.java**.
16. Create a program with an enumeration that contains the names of the eight planets in our solar system. Prompt the user for a planet name and use the `ordinal()` method to display the planet's position. Save the file as **Planets.java**.

## Debugging Exercises

1. Each of the following files in the Chapter08 folder of your downloadable student files has syntax and/or logic errors. In each case, determine the problem and fix the program. After you correct the errors, save each file using the same filename preceded with *Fix*. For example, *DebugEight1.java* will become **FixDebugEight1.java**.
  - a. *DebugEight1.java*
  - b. *DebugEight2.java*
  - c. *DebugEight3.java*
  - d. *DebugEight4.java*

## Game Zone

1. Write an application that contains an array of 10 multiple-choice quiz questions related to your favorite hobby. Each question contains three answer choices. Also create an array that holds the correct answer to each question—A, B, or C. Display each question and verify that the user enters only A, B, or C as the answer—if not, keep prompting the user until a valid response is entered. If the user responds to a question correctly, display *Correct!*; otherwise, display *The correct answer is* and the letter of the correct answer. After the user answers all the questions, display the number of correct and incorrect answers. Save the file as **Quiz.java**.
2. a. Create a **Die** class whose constructor sets a value from 1 to 6. Include a method to return the value. Save the file as **Die.java**. Create an application that randomly “throws” five dice for the computer and five dice for the player, with the dice having values 1 through 6. The application displays the values and determines the winner based on the following hierarchy of values. Any higher combination beats a lower one—for example, five of a kind beats four of a kind.
  - Five of a kind
  - Four of a kind
  - Three of a kind
  - A pair
 For this game, the dice values do not count; for example, if both players have three of a kind, it’s a tie, no matter what the values of the three dice are. Additionally, the game does not recognize other poker hand combinations such as a full house (three of a kind plus two of a kind) or a straight (sequential values). **Figure 8-45** shows a sample execution. Save the application as **FiveDice2.java**.

**Figure 8-45** Typical execution of the FiveDice2 application

```

Computer rolled: 1 4 3 4 4
You rolled: 6 4 2 3 4
Computer has 3 of a kind
You have 2 of a kind
Computer wins

```

- b. Improve the FiveDice2 game so that when both players have the same combination of dice, the higher value wins. For example, two 6s beats two 5s. Save the application as **FiveDice3.java**.
- 3.
- a. Create a Card class so that each Card holds the name of a suit (*Spades, Hearts, Diamonds, or Clubs*) as well as a value (*Ace, King, Queen, Jack*, or a number value). Save the file as **Card.java**.
  - b. Create an array of 52 Card objects, assigning a different value to each Card, and display each Card. Save the application as **FullDeck.java**.
  - c. Create a game that uses the Card class to play 26 rounds of War, dealing a full deck with no repeated cards. Some hints:
- › Start by creating an array of all 52 playing cards.
  - › Select a random number for the deck position of the player's first card, and assign the card at that array position to the player.
  - › Move every higher-positioned card in the deck "down" one to fill in the gap. In other words, if the player's first random number is 49, select the card at position 49, move the card that was in position 50 to position 49, and move the card that was in position 51 to position 50. Only 51 cards remain in the deck after the player's first card is dealt, so the available-card array is smaller by one.
  - › In the same way, randomly select a card for the computer and "remove" the card from the deck.
  - › Display the values of the player's and computer's cards, compare their values, and determine whether the result is a tie or there is a winner.
  - › When all the cards in the deck are exhausted, display a count of the number of times the player wins, the number of times the computer wins, and the number of ties.
- Save the game as **War3.java**.
4. Create a Secret Phrase game similar to Hangman, in which the user guesses letters in a partially hidden phrase in an attempt to determine the complete phrase. Within the program:
- › The phrase to be guessed is selected randomly from a list of at least 10 phrases.
  - › The clue is presented to the user with asterisks replacing letters to be guessed but with spaces in the appropriate locations. For example, if the phrase to be guessed is *No man is an island*, then the user sees the following as a first clue:
- ```
***** * * *****
```
- The spaces indicate where individual words start and end.
- › Make sure that when a user makes a correct guess, all the matching letters are filled in, regardless of case.
- Save the game as **SecretPhrase2.java**.
5. Magic 8 Ball is a toy developed in the 1950s and used for fortune-telling or advice-seeking. A player asks or thinks of a yes-or-no question such as *Will I be rich someday?* The player then turns the ball over to see one of 20 randomly chosen responses—for example, *It is certain* or *Very doubtful*. Create a program that simulates the toy by allowing a user to type a question; the user then receives one of 20 random responses. Allow the user to keep asking questions until the user types in a sentinel value. Save the program as **Magic8Ball.java**.

6. Create a guessing game called “Does It Have Legs?”, in which you think of an animal and the computer tries to guess what it is. The game continually becomes “smarter” as you play because you teach it how to become more specific with its questions. For example, a typical game session might proceed as follows:

Computer: Does the animal you are thinking of have legs?

Player: Yes.

Computer: Is it a Dog?

Player: Yes.

Computer: Yay! I win. Do you want to play again?

Player: Yes.

Computer: Does the animal you are thinking of have legs?

Player: Yes.

Computer: Is it a Dog?

Player: No.

Computer: I give up. What was your animal?

Player: Horse.

Computer: Type a question for which the answer is Yes for Dog but No for Horse.

Player: Does it live in the house?

Computer: Do you want to play again?

Player: Yes.

Computer: Does the animal you are thinking of have legs?

Player: Yes.

Computer: Does it live in the house?

Player: No.

Computer: Is it a Horse?

Player: No.

Computer: I give up. What was your animal?

Player: Cow.

Computer: Type a question for which the answer is Yes for Horse but No for Cow.

Player: Do people ride it?

Computer: Do you want to play again?

Player: Yes.

Computer: Does the animal you are thinking of have legs?

Player: Yes.

Computer: Does it live in the house?

Player: No.

Computer: Do people ride it?

Player: No.

Computer: Is it a Cow?

Player: Yes.

Computer: Yay! I win. Do you want to play again?

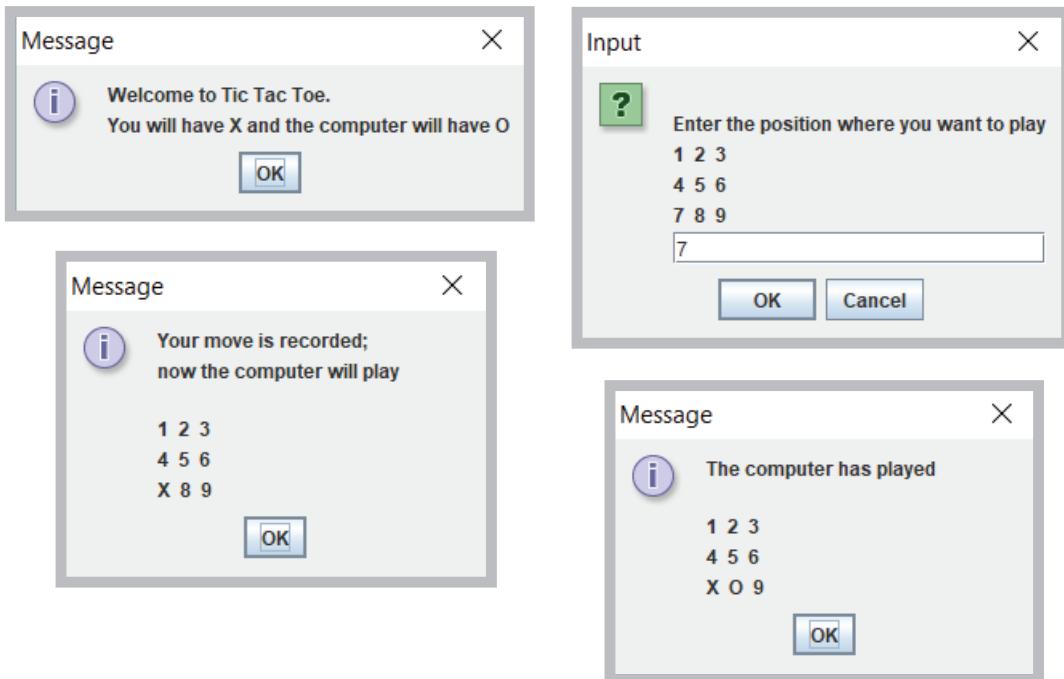
Player: No.

(Hint: You might want to look up *binary trees* on the Internet as a method to organize this application.)

Save the application as **DoesItHaveLegs.java**.

7. a. Create a Tic Tac Toe game. In this game, two players alternate placing Xs and Os into a grid until one player has three matching symbols in a row, horizontally, vertically, or diagonally. Create a game in which the user is presented with a three-by-three grid containing the digits 1 through 9. When the user chooses a position by typing a number, place an X in the appropriate spot. Generate a random number for the position where the computer will place an O. Do not allow the player or the computer to place a symbol where one has already been placed. **Figure 8-46** shows the first four windows in a typical game. When either the player or computer has three symbols in a row, declare a winner; if all positions have been exhausted and no one has three symbols in a row, declare a tie. Save the game as **TicTacToe.java**.

Figure 8-46 Typical execution of **TicTacToe** application



- b. In the TicTacToe application, the computer's selection is chosen randomly. Improve the game so that when the computer has two Os in any row, column, or diagonal, it selects the winning position for its next move rather than selecting a position randomly. Save the improved game as **TicTacToe2.java**.



Case Problems

1.
 - a. In previous chapters, you developed classes that work with catering event information for Yummy Catering. Now modify the Event class to include an integer field that holds an event type. Add a final String array that holds names of the types of events that Yummy caters—*wedding*, *baptism*, *birthday*, *corporate*, and *other*. Include get and set methods for the integer event type field. If the argument passed to the method that sets the event type is larger than the size of the array of String event types, then set the integer to the element number occupied by *other*. Include a get method that returns an event's String event type based on the numeric event type. Save the file as **Event.java**.
 - b. Create an EventDemo class that uses an array of eight Event objects. Get data for each of the objects, including an integer for the event type. Prompt the user to choose an option to sort Events in ascending order by event number, number of guests, or event type. Display the sorted list of Events, including Event number, number of guests, price per guest, total price, phone number, Event type number, and Event type String. Continue to prompt the user for sorting options and display the requested lists until the user enters a sentinel value. Save the file as **EventDemo.java**.
2.
 - a. In previous chapters, you developed classes that hold rental contract information for Sunshine Seashore Supplies. Now modify the Rental class to include an integer field that holds an equipment type. Add a final String array that holds names of the types of equipment that Sunshine rents—*personal watercraft*, *pontoon boat*, *rowboat*, *canoe*, *kayak*, *beach chair*, *umbrella*, and *other*. Include get and set methods for the integer equipment type field. If the argument passed to the method that sets the equipment type is larger than the size of the array of String equipment types, then set the integer to the element number occupied by *other*. Include a get method that returns a Rental's String equipment type based on the numeric equipment type. Save the file as **Rental.java**.
 - b. Write a program that uses an array of eight Rental objects. Prompt the user for values for the Rental objects, including an integer for the equipment type. Prompt the user to choose an option to sort Rentals in ascending order by contract number, price, or equipment type. Display the sorted list, and continue to prompt the user for sorting options and display the requested lists until the user enters a sentinel value. Save the file as **RentalDemo.java**.

Inheritance and Interfaces

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to:

- 9.1** Describe the concept of inheritance
- 9.2** Extend classes
- 9.3** Override superclass methods
- 9.4** Call constructors during inheritance
- 9.5** Access superclass methods
- 9.6** Employ information hiding
- 9.7** Describe which methods you cannot override
- 9.8** Create and use abstract classes
- 9.9** Use dynamic method binding
- 9.10** Create arrays of subclass objects
- 9.11** Use the `Object` class and its methods
- 9.12** Create and use interfaces
- 9.13** Use records, anonymous inner classes, and lambda expressions

9.1 Learning About the Concept of Inheritance

You are familiar with the concept of *inheritance* from all sorts of nonprogramming situations. When you use the term *inheritance*, you might think of genetic inheritance. You know from biology that your blood type and eye color are the product of inherited genes; many facts about you—your attributes, or “data fields”—are inherited. Similarly, you often can credit your behavior to inheritance. For example, your attitude toward saving money might be the same as your grandmother’s, and the odd way that you pull on your ear when you are tired might match what your Uncle Steve does—thus, your methods are inherited, too.

You also might choose plants and animals based on inheritance. You plant impatiens next to your house because of your shady location; you adopt a Doberman Pinscher because you need a watchdog. Every individual plant and pet has slightly different characteristics, but within a species, you can count on many consistent inherited attributes and behaviors.

Similarly, the classes you create in object-oriented programming languages can inherit data and methods from existing classes. In Java and all object-oriented languages, *inheritance* is a mechanism that enables one class to acquire all the behaviors and attributes of another class, meaning that you can create a new class simply by indicating the ways in which it differs from a class that already has been developed and tested. When you create a class by making it inherit from another class, the new class automatically contains the data fields and methods of the original class.

For example, consider the simple Employee class shown in **Figure 9-1**. The class contains two data fields, id and salary, and four methods: a get and set method for each field.

Figure 9-1 The Employee class

```
public class Employee
{
    private int id;
    private double salary;
    public int getId()
    {
        return id;
    }
    public double getSalary()
    {
        return salary;
    }
    public void setId(int idNum)
    {
        id = idNum;
    }
    public void setSalary(double sal)
    {
        salary = sal;
    }
}
```

After you create the Employee class, you can create specific Employee objects, such as the following:

```
Employee receptionist = new Employee();
Employee deliveryPerson = new Employee();
```

These Employee objects eventually can possess different ID numbers and salaries, but because they are Employee objects, you know that each Employee has *some* ID number and salary.

Suppose that you hire a new type of Employee such as a salesperson or service representative that requires not only an ID number and a salary, but also a data field to indicate the territory served. You can create a class with a name such as EmployeeWithTerritory, and provide the class three fields (id, salary, and territory) and six methods (get and set methods for each of the three fields). When you do this, however, you are duplicating much of the work that you already have done for the Employee class. The wise, efficient alternative is to create the class EmployeeWithTerritory so it inherits all the attributes and methods of Employee. Then, you can add just the one field and two methods that are new within EmployeeWithTerritory objects. When you use inheritance to create the EmployeeWithTerritory class, you:

- Save time because the Employee fields and methods already exist
- Reduce errors because the Employee methods already have been used and tested
- Reduce the amount of new learning required for programmers to use the new class if they already are familiar with the original class

Besides creating `EmployeeWithTerritory`, you also can create several other specific `Employee` classes (perhaps `EmployeeEarningCommission`, including a commission rate, or `DismissedEmployee`, including a reason for dismissal). By using inheritance, you can develop each new class correctly and more quickly. The concept of inheritance is useful because it makes a class's code more easily reusable. Each defined data field and each method already written and tested in the original class becomes part of the new class that inherits it.

Inheritance does not give you the ability to write programs that you could not write otherwise. If Java did not allow you to use inheritance to create new classes, you *could* create every part of a program from scratch. Inheritance simply makes your job easier.

Inheritance Terminology

A class that is used as a basis for inheritance, such as `Employee`, is a **base class**. When you create a class that inherits from a base class (such as `EmployeeWithTerritory`), it is a **derived class**. When considering two classes that inherit from each other, you can tell which is the base class and which is the derived class by using the two classes in a sentence with the phrase “is a(n).” A derived class always “is a” case or example of the more general base class. For example, a `Tree` class can be a base class to an `Evergreen` class. An `Evergreen` “is a” `Tree`, so `Tree` is the base class; however, it is not true for all `Trees` that “a `Tree` is an `Evergreen`.” Similarly, an `EmployeeWithTerritory` “is an” `Employee`—but not the other way around—so `Employee` is the base class.

Note

You can use the phrase *is-a* to describe an object’s relationship to its class. For example, `theTreeInMyYard` “is a” `Tree`. Programmers also use the term *is-a* when describing inheritance. For example, every `EvergreenTree` “is a” `Tree`.

Do not confuse “is a” situations with “has a” situations. “Is a” describes inheritance, but “has a” describes **containment**.

- › For example, you might create a `Business` class that contains an array of `Department` objects. You would not say, “A department is a business,” but you would say, “A business *has* departments.” Therefore, this relationship is not inheritance; it is a form of containment called *composition*—the relationship in which a class contains one or more members of another class, when those members would not continue to exist without the object that contains them. (For example, if a `Business` closes, its `Departments` do too.)
- › Similarly, each `Department` object might contain an array of `Employee` objects. In this case, you would not say, “An employee *is* a department,” but you would say, “A department *has* employees.” This relationship is not inheritance either; it is a specific type of containment known as *aggregation*—the relationship in which a class contains one or more members of another class, when those members *would* continue to exist without the object that contains them. (For example, if a business or department closed, the employees would continue to exist.) On the other hand, if `Employees` no longer existed, no `EmployeeWithTerritory` would exist either.

You can use the terms **superclass** and **subclass** as synonyms for *base class* and *derived class*, respectively. Thus, `Evergreen` can be called a subclass of the `Tree` superclass. You can also use the terms **parent class** and **child class**. An `EmployeeWithTerritory` is a child to the `Employee` parent. Use the pair of terms with which you are most comfortable; all of these terms are used interchangeably throughout this course.

As an alternative way to discover which of two classes is the base class or subclass, you can try saying the two class names together. When people say their names together, they state the more specific name before the all-encompassing family name, as in *Ginny Kroening*. Similarly, with classes, the order that “makes more sense” is the child-parent order. *Evergreen Tree* makes more sense than *Tree Evergreen*, so `Evergreen` is the child class.

Finally, you usually can distinguish superclasses from their subclasses by size. Although it is not required, in general a subclass is larger than a superclass because it usually has additional fields and methods. A subclass description might look small, but any subclass contains all the fields and methods of its superclass, as well as the new, more specific fields and methods you add to that subclass.

Two Truths & a Lie | Learning About the Concept of Inheritance

1. When you use inheritance in Java, you can create a new class that contains all the data and methods of an existing class.
2. When you use inheritance, you save time and reduce errors.
3. A class that is used as a basis for inheritance is called a subclass.

The false statement is #3. A class that is used as a basis for inheritance is called a superclass, base class, or parent class. A subclass is a class that inherits from a superclass.

9.2 Extending Classes

You use the keyword **extends** to achieve inheritance in Java. For example, the following class header creates a superclass–subclass relationship between Employee and EmployeeWithTerritory:

```
public class EmployeeWithTerritory extends Employee
```

Each EmployeeWithTerritory automatically receives the data fields and methods of the superclass Employee; you then add new fields and methods to the newly created subclass. **Figure 9-2** shows an EmployeeWithTerritory class.

Figure 9-2 The EmployeeWithTerritory class

```
public class EmployeeWithTerritory extends Employee
{
    private int territory;
    public int getTerritory()
    {
        return territory;
    }
    public void setTerritory(int terr)
    {
        territory = terr;
    }
}
```

You can write a statement that instantiates a derived class object, such as the following:

```
EmployeeWithTerritory northernRep = new EmployeeWithTerritory();
```

Then you can use any of the next statements to get field values for the northernRep object:

```
>northernRep.getId();
>northernRep.getSalary();
>northernRep.getTerritory();
```

The northernRep object has access to all three get methods—two methods that it inherits from Employee and one method that belongs to EmployeeWithTerritory.

Similarly, after the northernRep object is declared, any of the following statements are legal:

```
>northernRep.setId(915);
>northernRep.setSalary(210.00);
>northernRep.setTerritory(5);
```

The `northernRep` object has access to all the parent `Employee` class set methods, as well as its own class's new `set` method.

Inheritance is a one-way proposition; a child inherits from a parent, not the other way around. When you instantiate an `Employee` object, it does not have access to the `EmployeeWithTerritory` methods. It makes sense that a parent class object does not have access to its child's data and methods. When you create the parent class, you do not know how many future subclasses it might have or what their data fields or methods might look like.

In addition, subclasses are more specific than the superclass they extend. An `Orthodontist` class and `Periodontist` class are children of the `Dentist` parent class. You do not expect all members of the general parent class `Dentist` to have the `Orthodontist`'s `applyBraces()` method or the `Periodontist`'s `deepClean()` method. However, `Orthodontist` objects and `Periodontist` objects have access to the more general `Dentist` methods `conductExam()` and `billPatients()`.

You can use the `instanceof` operator to determine whether an object is a member or descendant of a class. For example, if `northernRep` is an `EmployeeWithTerritory` object, the value of each of the following expressions is `true`:

- › `northernRep instanceof EmployeeWithTerritory`
- › `northernRep instanceof Employee`

If `aClerk` is an `Employee` object, the following is `true`:

- › `aClerk instanceof Employee`

However, the following is `false`:

- › `aClerk instanceof EmployeeWithTerritory`

Programmers say that `instanceof` yields `true` if the operand on the left can be **upcast** to the operand on the right.

Two Truths & a Lie | Extending Classes

1. You use the keyword `inherits` to achieve inheritance in Java.
2. A derived class has access to all its parents' nonprivate methods.
3. Subclasses are more specific than the superclass they extend.

The false statement is #1. You use the keyword `extends` to achieve inheritance in Java.

You Do It | Demonstrating Inheritance

In this section, you create a working example of inheritance for a party planner. A general `Party` class will serve as a basis for a more specific `DinnerParty` class that includes a dinner. To see the effects of inheritance, you create this example in four stages:

- › First, you create a `Party` class that holds just one data field and three methods.
- › After you create the general `Party` class, you write an application to demonstrate its use.
- › Then, you create a more specific `DinnerParty` subclass that inherits the fields and methods of the `Party` class.
- › Finally, you modify the demonstration application to add an example using the `DinnerParty` class.

Creating a Superclass and an Application to Use It

1. Open a new file, and enter the following first few lines for a simple `Party` class. The class hosts one integer data field—the number of guests expected at the party:

```
public class Party
{
    private int guests;
```

2. Add the following methods that get and set the number of guests:

```
public int getGuests()
{
    return guests;
}
public void setGuests(int numGuests)
{
    guests = numGuests;
}
```

3. Add a method that displays a party invitation:

```
public void displayInvitation()
{
    System.out.println("Please come to my party!");
}
```

4. Add the closing curly brace for the class, and then save the file as `Party.java`. Compile the class; if necessary, correct any errors and compile again.

Writing an Application That Uses the `Party` Class

Now that you have created a class, you can use it in an application. A very simple application creates a `Party` object, prompts the user for the number of guests at the party, sets the data field, and displays the results.

1. Open a new file, and start to write a `UseParty` application that has one method—a `main()` method. Declare a variable for the number of guests, a `Party` object, and a `Scanner` object to use for input:

```
import java.util.*;
public class UseParty
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int guests;
        Party aParty = new Party();
        Scanner keyboard = new Scanner(System.in);
```

2. Continue the `main()` method by prompting the user for a number of guests and accepting the value from the keyboard. Set the number of guests in the `Party` object, and then display the value.

```
System.out.print("Enter number of guests for the party >> ");
guests = keyboard.nextInt();
aParty.setGuests(guests);
System.out.println("The party has " +
    aParty.getGuests() + " guests");
```

3. Add a statement to display the party invitation, and then add the closing curly braces for the `main()` method and for the class:

```
aParty.displayInvitation();
}
```

4. Save the file as `UseParty.java`, then compile and run the application. **Figure 9-3** shows a typical execution.

Figure 9-3 Typical execution of the `UseParty` application

```
Enter number of guests for the party >> 20
The party has 20 guests
Please come to my party!
```

Creating a Subclass from the `Party` Class

Next, you create a class named `DinnerParty`. A `DinnerParty` "is a" type of `Party` at which dinner is served, so `DinnerParty` is a child class of `Party`.

1. Open a new file, and type the first few lines for the `DinnerParty` class:

```
public class DinnerParty extends Party
{
```

2. A `DinnerParty` contains a number of guests, but you do not have to define the variable here. The variable is already defined in `Party`, which is the superclass of this class. You only need to add any variables that are particular to a `DinnerParty`. Enter the following code to add an integer for the dinner menu choice:

```
private int dinnerChoice;
```

3. The `Party` class already contains methods to get and set the number of guests, so `DinnerParty` only needs methods to get and set the `dinnerChoice` variable as follows:

```
public int getDinnerChoice()
{
    return dinnerChoice;
}
public void setDinnerChoice(int choice)
{
    dinnerChoice = choice;
}
```

4. Add a closing curly brace for the class.

5. Save the file as `DinnerParty.java`, and then compile it.

Creating an Application That Uses the `DinnerParty` Class

Now, you can modify the `UseParty` application so that it creates a `DinnerParty` as well as a plain `Party`.

1. Open the `UseParty.java` file, and change the class name to `UseDinnerParty`. Immediately save the file as `UseDinnerParty.java`.

2. Include a new variable that holds the dinner choice for a `DinnerParty`:

```
int choice;
```

3. After the statement that constructs the `Party` object, type the following `DinnerParty` object declaration:

```
DinnerParty aDinnerParty = new DinnerParty();
```

4. At the end of the `main()` method, after the `Party` object data and invitation are displayed, add a prompt for the number of guests for the `DinnerParty`. Accept the value the user enters and assign it to the object. Even though the `DinnerParty` class does not contain a `setGuests()` method, its parent class does, so `aDinnerParty` can use the method.

```
System.out.print("Enter number of guests for the dinner party >> ");
guests = keyboard.nextInt();
aDinnerParty.setGuests(guests);
```

5. Next, prompt the user for a dinner choice. To keep this example simple, the program provides only two choices and does not provide range checking. Accept a response from the user, assign it to the object, and then display all the data for the `DinnerParty`. Even though the `DinnerParty` class does not contain a `getGuests()` method, its parent class does, so `aDinnerParty` can use the method. The `DinnerParty` class uses its own `setDinnerChoice()` and `getDinnerChoice()` methods.

```
System.out.print
    ("Enter the menu option -- 1 for chicken or 2 for beef >> ");
choice = keyboard.nextInt();
aDinnerParty.setDinnerChoice(choice);
System.out.println("The dinner party has " +
    aDinnerParty.getGuests() + " guests");
System.out.println("Menu option " +
    aDinnerParty.getDinnerChoice () + " will be served");
```

6. Add a statement to call the `displayInvitation()` method with the `DinnerParty` object. Even though the `DinnerParty` class does not contain a `displayInvitation()` method, its parent class does, so `aDinnerParty` can use the method.

```
aDinnerParty.displayInvitation();
```

7. Save the file, compile it, and run it using values of your choice. **Figure 9-4** shows a typical execution. The `DinnerParty` object successfully uses the data field and methods of its superclass, as well as its own data field and methods.

Figure 9-4 Typical execution of the `UseDinnerParty` application

```
Enter number of guests for the party >> 20
The party has 20 guests
Please come to my party!
Enter number of guests for the dinner party >> 8
Enter the menu option -- 1 for chicken or 2 for beef >> 2
The dinner party has 8 guests
Menu option 2 will be served
Please come to my party!
```

9.3 Overriding Superclass Methods

When you create a subclass by extending an existing class, the new subclass contains data and methods that were defined in the original superclass. In other words, any child class object has all the attributes of its parent. Sometimes, however, the superclass data fields and methods are not entirely appropriate for the subclass objects; in these cases, you want to override the parent class members. To **override** a field or method in a child class means to use the child's version instead of the parent's version. When you use the English language, you often use the same method name to indicate diverse meanings. For example, if you think of `MusicalInstrument` as a class, you can think of `play()` as a method of that class. If you think of various subclasses such as `Guitar` and `Drum`, you know that you carry out the `play()` method quite differently for each subclass. Using the same method name to indicate different implementations is called *polymorphism*, a term meaning *many forms*—many different forms of action take place, even though you use the same word to describe the action. In other words, many forms of the same action-describing word exist, depending on the associated object.

Note

Polymorphism is one of the basic principles of object-oriented programming. If a programming language does not support polymorphism, the language is not considered object oriented.

For example, suppose that you create an `Employee` superclass containing data fields such as `firstName`, `lastName`, `socialSecurityNumber`, `dateOfHire`, `rateOfPay`, and so on, and the methods contained in the `Employee` class include the usual collection of get and set methods. If your usual time period for payment to each `Employee` object is weekly, your `displayRateOfPay()` method might include a statement such as:

```
System.out.println("Pay is " + rateOfPay + " per week");
```

Imagine your company has a few `Employees` who are not paid weekly. Maybe some are paid by the hour, and others are `Employees` whose work is contracted on a job-to-job basis. Because each `Employee` type requires different paycheck-calculating procedures, you might want to create subclasses of `Employee`, such as `HourlyEmployee` and `ContractEmployee`.

When you call the `displayRateOfPay()` method for an `HourlyEmployee` object, you want the display to include the phrase *per hour*, as in *Pay is \$19.75 per hour*. When you call the `displayRateOfPay()` method for a `ContractEmployee`, you want to include *per contract*, as in *Pay is \$2,000 per contract*. Each class—the `Employee` superclass and the two subclasses—requires its own `displayRateOfPay()` method. Fortunately, if you create separate `displayRateOfPay()` methods for each class, the objects of each class use the appropriate method for that class. When you create a method in a child class that has the same name and parameter list as a method in its parent class, you override the method in the parent class. When you use the method name with a child object, the child's version of the method is used.

It is important to note that each subclass method overrides any method in the parent class that has both the same name and parameter list. If the parent class method has the same name but a different parameter list, the subclass method does not *override* the parent class version; instead, the subclass method *overloads* the parent class method, and any subclass object has access to both versions.

Note

You first learned the term *override* in this course when you learned that a variable declared within a block overrides another variable with the same name declared outside the block.

If you could not override superclass methods, you could always create a unique name for each subclass method, such as `displayRateOfPayForHourly()`, but the classes you create are easier to write and understand if you use one reasonable name for methods that do essentially the same thing. Because you are attempting to display the rate of pay for each object, `displayRateOfPay()` is a clear and appropriate method name for all the object types.

Note

A child class object can use an overridden parent's method by using the keyword `super`. You will learn about this keyword later in this chapter.

Object-oriented programmers use the term *polymorphism* when discussing any operation that has multiple meanings, regardless of whether inheritance is involved. For example, the plus sign (+) is polymorphic because it operates differently depending on its operands. You can use the plus sign to add integers or doubles, to concatenate strings, or alone to indicate a positive value. As another example, methods with the same name but different parameter lists are polymorphic because the method call operates differently depending on its arguments. When Java developers refer to methods that work appropriately for subclasses of the same parent class, the more specific term is **subtype polymorphism**.

Using the @Override Annotation

When you override a parent class method in a child class, you can insert an `@Override` annotation just prior to the method. The **@Override annotation** lets the compiler know that your intention is to override a method in the parent class rather than create a method with a new signature. For example, if the `Employee` class contains a `displayRateOfPay()`

method that displays a weekly pay rate and your intention is to override the method in the child `ContractEmployee` class to display a contractual pay rate, you can write the child class method as follows:

```
@Override
public void displayRateOfPay()
{
    System.out.println("Pay is " + rateOfPay +
        " per contract ");
}
```

The `@Override` tag before the method header announces your intention to override a parent class method and causes the compiler to issue an error message if you do not—most likely because you made a typographical error in the method header in the child class so that it does not match the parent class version. A program will work and properly override parent class methods without any `@Override` tags, but using the tags can help you prevent errors and serves as a form of documentation for your intentions.

Note

Some programmers place the `@Override` tag on the same line as the method header. You should use the style that is conventional in your organization.

Two Truths & a Lie | Overriding Superclass Methods

1. Any child class object has all the attributes of its parent, but all of those attributes might not be directly accessible.
2. You override a parent class method by creating a child class method with the same identifier but a different parameter list or return type.
3. When a child class method overrides a parent class method, and you use the method name with a child class object, the child class method version executes.

The false statement is #2. You override a parent class method by creating a child class method with the same identifier and parameter list. The return type is not a factor in overriding.

You Do It | Overriding a Superclass Method

In the previous “You Do It” section, you created `Party` and `DinnerParty` classes. The `DinnerParty` class extends `Party`, and so can use its `displayInvitation()` method. Suppose that you want a `DinnerParty` object to use a specialized invitation. In this section, you override the parent class method so that the same method name acts uniquely for the child class object.

1. Open the `DinnerParty.java` class. Change the class name to `DinnerParty2`, and save the file as `DinnerParty2.java`.
2. Create a `displayInvitation()` method that overrides the parent class method with the same name as follows:

```
@Override
public void displayInvitation()
{
    System.out.println("Please come to my dinner party!");
}
```

3. Save the class and compile it.
4. Open the `UseDinnerParty.java` file. Change the class name to `UseDinnerParty2`, and immediately save the file as `UseDinnerParty2.java`.
5. Change the declaration of the `aDinnerParty` object so that it uses the `DinnerParty2` class as a data type and `DinnerParty2` as the constructor name.
6. Save the class, compile it, and execute it. **Figure 9-5** shows a typical execution. Each type of object uses its own version of the `displayInvitation()` method.

Figure 9-5 Typical execution of the `UseDinnerParty2` program

```
Enter number of guests for the party >> 40
The party has 40 guests
Please come to my party!
Enter number of guests for the dinner party >> 6
Enter the menu option -- 1 for chicken or 2 for beef >> 1
The dinner party has 6 guests
Menu option 1 will be served
Please come to my dinner party!
```

7. Purposely introduce an error into the child class `displayInvitation()` method header. For example, you might make the `I` lowercase, as in `displayinvitation()`. Save and compile the `DinnerParty2.java` file. You receive a compiler error message similar to the following:

Method does not override or implement a method from a supertype.

8. Comment out the `@Override` annotation by inserting two forward slashes (//) in front of it. Save and compile the `DinnerParty2.java` file. This time the compilation is successful because `displayinvitation()` is a valid method name—it's just not one that overrides a parent class method. If you wanted to use this method in an application, you would have to remember to use a lowercase `i` for `invitation` in the method name. However, it would not be recommended because you could easily confuse `displayinvitation()` with `displayInvitation()`.
9. Remove the comment slashes from the `@Override` annotation and reinstate the uppercase `I` in the `displayInvitation()` method header. Save and recompile the class, and confirm it is error-free.

9.4 Calling Constructors During Inheritance

When you create any object, as in the following statement, you are calling a constructor:

```
SomeClass anObject = new SomeClass();
```

When you instantiate an object that is a member of a subclass, you actually are calling both the constructor for the base class and the constructor for the extended, derived class. When you create any subclass object, the superclass constructor must execute first, and *then* the subclass constructor executes.

When a superclass contains a default constructor and you instantiate a subclass object, the execution of the superclass constructor usually is transparent—that is, nothing calls attention to the fact that the superclass constructor is executing unless the constructor contains some action such as displaying a message. However, you should realize that when you create a child object, *both* the parent and child constructors execute.

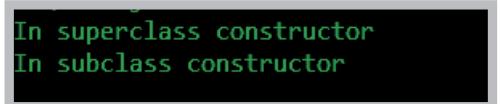
For example, **Figure 9-6** shows three classes. The class named `ASuperClass` has a constructor that displays a message. The class named `ASubClass` descends from `ASuperClass`, and its constructor displays a different message. The `DemoConstructors` class contains just one statement that instantiates one object of type `ASubClass`.

Figure 9-6 Three classes that demonstrate constructor calling when a subclass object is instantiated

```
public class ASuperClass
{
    public ASuperClass()
    {
        System.out.println("In superclass constructor");
    }
}
public class ASubClass extends ASuperClass
{
    public ASubClass()
    {
        System.out.println("In subclass constructor");
    }
}
public class DemoConstructors
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        ASubClass child = new ASubClass();
    }
}
```

Figure 9-7 shows the output when `DemoConstructors` executes. You can see that when the program instantiates the `ASubClass` object, the parent class constructor executes first, displaying its message, and then the child class constructor executes. Even though only one object is created, two constructors execute.

Figure 9-7 Output of the `DemoConstructors` application



```
In superclass constructor
In subclass constructor
```

Of course, most constructors perform many more tasks than displaying a message to inform you that they exist. When constructors initialize variables, you usually want the superclass constructor to take care of initializing the data fields that originate in the superclass. Usually, the subclass constructor needs to initialize only the data fields that are specific to the subclass.

Using Superclass Constructors That Require Arguments

When you do not provide a constructor for a class, Java automatically supplies you with a default constructor—one that never requires arguments. When you write your own constructor, you replace the automatically supplied version. Depending on your needs, a constructor you create for a class might be a default constructor or might require arguments. When a superclass has only constructors that require arguments, you must be certain that any subclasses provide the superclass constructor with the arguments it needs.

Note

Don't forget that a class can have many constructors. As soon as you create at least one constructor for a class, you can no longer use the automatically supplied version.

When a superclass has a default constructor, you can create a subclass with or without its own constructor. This is true whether the default superclass constructor is the automatically supplied one or one you have written.

When a superclass contains only constructors that require arguments, however, you must include at least one constructor for each subclass you create. Your subclass constructors can contain any number of statements, but if all superclass constructors require arguments (that is, if the superclass does not contain a default constructor), then the first statement within each subclass constructor must call one of the superclass constructors. In other words, when a superclass requires constructor arguments upon object instantiation, even if you have no other reason to create a subclass constructor, you must write the subclass constructor so it can call one of the constructors of the superclass. If a superclass has multiple constructors but one is a default constructor, you do not have to create a subclass constructor unless you want to. If the subclass contains no constructor, all subclass objects use the superclass default constructor when they are instantiated. **Table 9-1** summarizes the conditions under which subclass constructors are required.

Table 9-1 Conditions under which a subclass constructor is required

IF A SUPERCLASS CONTAINS:	THEN ITS SUBCLASSES:
No constructors written by the programmer	Do not require constructors
A default constructor written by the programmer	Do not require constructors
Only nondefault constructors	Must contain a constructor that calls the superclass constructor

The format of the statement that calls a superclass constructor from the subclass constructor is:

```
super(list of arguments);
```

The keyword **super** always refers to the superclass of the class in which you use it.

If a superclass contains only constructors that require arguments, you must create a subclass constructor, but the subclass constructor does not necessarily have to have parameters of its own. For example, suppose that you create an `Employee` class with a constructor that requires three arguments—a character, a double, and an integer—and you create an `HourlyEmployee` class that is a subclass of `Employee`. The following code shows a valid constructor for `HourlyEmployee`:

```
public HourlyEmployee()
{
    super('P', 22.35, 40);
    // Other statements can go here
}
```

This version of the `HourlyEmployee` constructor requires no arguments, but it passes three constant arguments to its superclass constructor.

A different, overloaded version of the `HourlyEmployee` constructor can require arguments. It could then pass the appropriate arguments to the superclass constructor. For example:

```
public HourlyEmployee(char dept, double rate, int hours)
{
    super(dept, rate, hours);
    // Other statements can go here
}
```

Except for any comments, the `super()` statement must be the first statement in any subclass constructor that uses it. Not even data field definitions can precede it. Although it seems that you should be able to use the superclass constructor name to call the superclass constructor—for example, `Employee()`—Java does not allow this. You must use the keyword `super`.

Note

You can call one constructor from another using `this()`, or you can call a base class constructor from a derived class using `super()`. However, you cannot use both `this()` and `super()` in the same constructor because each is required to be the first statement in any constructor in which it appears.

Two Truths & a Lie

Calling Constructors During Inheritance

- When you create any subclass object, the subclass constructor executes first, and then the superclass constructor executes.
- When constructors initialize variables, you usually want the superclass constructor to initialize the data fields that originate in the superclass and the subclass constructor to initialize the data fields that are specific to the subclass.
- When a superclass contains only nondefault constructors, you must include at least one constructor for each subclass you create.

The false statement is #1. When you create any subclass object, the superclass constructor must execute first, and then the subclass constructor executes.

You Do It

Understanding the Role of Constructors in Inheritance

Next, you add a constructor to the `Party` class. When you instantiate a subclass object, the superclass constructor executes before the subclass constructor executes.

- Open the `Party.java` file, and save it as `PartyWithConstructor.java`. Change the class name to `PartyWithConstructor`.
 - Following the statement that declares the `guests` data field, type a constructor that does nothing other than display a message indicating it is working:
- ```
public PartyWithConstructor()
{
 System.out.println("Creating a Party");
}
```
- Save the file and compile it.
  - Open the `DinnerParty2.java` file, and change the class name to `DinnerPartyWithConstructor`. Change the class in the `extends` clause to `PartyWithConstructor`. Save the file as `DinnerPartyWithConstructor.java`, and compile it.
  - Open a new file so you can write an application to demonstrate the use of the base class constructor with an extended class object. This application creates only one child class object:

```
public class UseDinnerPartyWithConstructor
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 DinnerPartyWithConstructor aDinnerParty =
 new DinnerPartyWithConstructor();
 }
}
```

6. Save the application as **UseDinnerPartyWithConstructor.java**, then compile and run it. The output is shown in **Figure 9-8**. Even though the application creates only one subclass object (and no superclass objects) and the subclass contains no constructor of its own, the superclass constructor executes.

#### Inheritance When the Superclass Requires Constructor Arguments

Next, you modify the **PartyWithConstructor** class so that its constructor requires an argument. Then, you observe that a subclass without a constructor cannot compile.

1. Open the **PartyWithConstructor.java** file, and then change the class name to **PartyWithConstructor2**.
2. Replace the existing constructor with a new version using the new class name. This constructor requires an argument, which it uses to set the number of guests who will attend a party:

```
public PartyWithConstructor2(int numGuests)
{
 guests = numGuests;
}
```

3. Save the file as **PartyWithConstructor2.java**, and then compile it.
4. Open the **DinnerPartyWithConstructor.java** file, and change the class header as follows so that the name of the class is **DinnerPartyWithConstructor2**, and inherits from **PartyWithConstructor2**:

```
public class DinnerPartyWithConstructor2 extends
 PartyWithConstructor2
```

5. Save the file as **DinnerPartyWithConstructor2.java**, and then compile it. An error message appears, as shown in **Figure 9-9**. When you attempt to compile the subclass, no parameterless constructor can be found in the superclass, so the compile fails.

**Figure 9-9** Error message generated when compiling the **DinnerPartyWithConstructor2** class

```
DinnerPartyWithConstructor2.java:1: error: constructor PartyWithConstructor2 in class
PartyWithConstructor2 cannot be applied to given types;
public class DinnerPartyWithConstructor2 extends PartyWithConstructor2
^
 required: int
 found: no arguments
 reason: actual and formal argument lists differ in length
1 error
```

6. To correct the error, open the **DinnerPartyWithConstructor2.java** file. Following the **dinnerChoice** field declaration, insert a constructor for the class as follows:

```
public DinnerPartyWithConstructor2(int numGuests)
{
 super(numGuests);
}
```

7. Save the file, and compile it. This time, the compile is successful because the subclass calls its parent's constructor, passing along an integer value. Note that you could have created the **DinnerPartyWithConstructor2** subclass constructor without the integer argument to pass to the parent constructor. For example, it would be acceptable to create a subclass constructor that required no arguments but passed a constant (for example, 0) to its parent. Similarly, the subclass constructor could require several arguments, pass one of them to its parent, and use the others for different purposes. The requirement is not that the subclass constructor must have the same number or types of parameters as its parent; the only requirement is that the subclass constructor calls **super()** and passes to the parent what it needs to execute.

**Figure 9-8** Output of the **UseDinnerPartyWithConstructor** application

```
Creating a Party
```

## 9.5 Accessing Superclass Methods

Earlier in this chapter, you learned that a subclass can contain a method with the same name and arguments (the same signature) as a method in its parent class. When this happens and you use the method name with a subclass object, the subclass method overrides the superclass method. However, if a method has been overridden but you want to use the superclass version within the subclass, you can use the keyword `super` to access the parent class method.

For example, examine the `Customer` class in **Figure 9-10** and the `PreferredCustomer` class in **Figure 9-11**. A `Customer` has an `idNumber` and `balanceOwed`. In addition to these fields, a `PreferredCustomer` receives a `discountRate`. In the `PreferredCustomer` `display()` method, you want to display all three fields—`idNumber`, `balanceOwed`, and `discountRate`. Because two-thirds of the code to accomplish the display already has been written for the `Customer` class, it is convenient to have the `PreferredCustomer` `display()` method use its parent's version of the `display()` method before displaying its own discount rate.

**Figure 9-10** The `Customer` class

```
public class Customer
{
 private int idNumber;
 private double balanceOwed;
 public Customer(int id, double bal)
 {
 idNumber = id;
 balanceOwed = bal;
 }
 public void display()
 {
 System.out.println("Customer #" + idNumber +
 " Balance $" + balanceOwed);
 }
}
```

**Figure 9-11** The `PreferredCustomer` class

```
public class PreferredCustomer extends Customer
{
 double discountRate;
 public PreferredCustomer(int id, double bal, double rate)
 {
 super(id, bal);
 discountRate = rate;
 }
 @Override
 public void display()
 {
 super.display();
 System.out.println(" Discount rate is " + discountRate);
 }
}
```

This statement calls the superclass `display()` method.

**Figure 9-12** shows a brief application that displays one object of each class—`Customer` and `PreferredCustomer`. **Figure 9-13** shows the output of the program.

When you call a superclass constructor from a subclass constructor, the call must be the first statement in the constructor. However, when you call an ordinary superclass method within a subclass method, the call is not required to be the first statement in the method, although it can be, as shown in the `display()` method in Figure 9-11.

**Figure 9-12** The TestCustomers application

```
public class TestCustomers
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 Customer oneCust = new Customer(124, 123.45);
 PreferredCustomer onePCust = new
 PreferredCustomer(125, 3456.78, 0.15);
 oneCust.display();
 onePCust.display();
 }
}
```

**Figure 9-13** Output of the TestCustomers application

```
Customer #124 Balance $123.45
Customer #125 Balance $3456.78
Discount rate is 0.15
```

## Comparing this and super

In a subclass, the keywords `this` and `super` sometimes refer to the same method, but sometimes they do not.

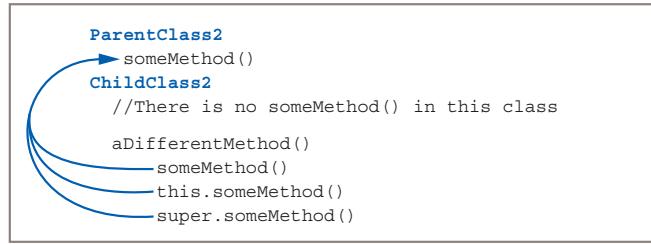
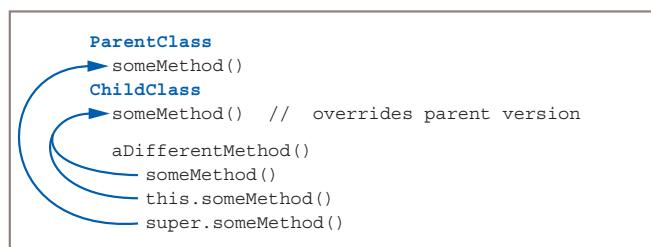
For example, if a subclass has overridden a superclass method named `someMethod()`, then within the subclass:

- › `super.someMethod()` refers to the superclass version of the method
- › `someMethod()` refers to the subclass version
- › `this.someMethod()` also refers to the subclass version

On the other hand, if a subclass has *not* overridden a superclass method named `someMethod()`, the child can use the method name in the following ways:

- › With `super` (because the method is a member of the superclass)
- › With `this` (because the superclass method is a member of the subclass by virtue of inheritance)
- › Alone (again, because the superclass method is a member of the subclass)

**Figure 9-14** illustrates the conditions under which `this` and `super` refer to different methods.

**Figure 9-14** Comparing use of `this` and `super` in a subclass

## Two Truths & a Lie

### Accessing Superclass Methods

1. You can use the keyword `this` within a method in a derived class to access an overridden method in a base class.
2. You can use the keyword `super` within a method in a derived class to access an overridden method in a base class.
3. You can use the keyword `super` within a method in a derived class to access a method in a base class that has not been overridden.

The false statement is #1. You can use the keyword `super` within a method in a derived class to access an overridden base class method. If you use the keyword `this` in a method in the derived class, you will access the method defined in the derived class.

## 9.6 Employing Information Hiding

The Student class shown in **Figure 9-15** is an example of a typical Java class. Within the Student class, as with most Java classes, the keyword `private` precedes each data field, and the keyword `public` precedes each method. In fact, the four get and set methods are `public` within the Student class specifically because the data fields are `private`. Without the `public` get and set methods, there would be no way to access the `private` data fields.

**Figure 9-15** The Student class

```
public class Student
{
 private int idNum;
 private double gpa;
 public int getIdNum()
 {
 return idNum;
 }
 public double getGpa()
 {
 return gpa;
 }
 public void setIdNum(int num)
 {
 idNum = num;
 }
 public void setGpa(double gradePoint)
 {
 gpa = gradePoint;
 }
}
```

When an application is a client of the Student class (that is, it instantiates a `Student` object), the client cannot directly alter the data in any `private` field. For example, suppose that you write a `main()` method that creates a `Student` as:

```
Student someStudent = new Student();
```

Then you cannot change the `Student`'s `idNum` with a statement such as:

```
someStudent.idNum = 812;
```

#### Don't Do It

You cannot access a `private` data member of an object.

The `idNum` of the `someStudent` object is not accessible in the `main()` method that uses the `Student` object because `idNum` is `private`. Only methods that are part of the `Student` class itself are allowed to alter `private` `Student` data. To alter a `Student`'s `idNum`, you must use a `public` method, as in the following:

```
someStudent.setIdNum(812);
```

The concept of keeping data private is known as *information hiding*. When you employ information hiding, your data can be altered only by the methods you choose and only in ways that you can control. For example, you might want the `setIdNum()` method to check to make certain the `idNum` is within a specific range of values. If a class other than the `Student` class could alter `idNum`, `idNum` could be assigned a value that the `Student` class couldn't control.

When a class serves as a superclass to other classes you create, your subclasses inherit all the data and methods of the superclass. The methods in a subclass can use all of the data fields and methods that belong to its parent, with one exception: `private` members of the parent class are not accessible within a child class's methods. If a new class could simply extend your `Student` class and get to its data fields without going through the proper channels, information hiding would not be operating.

### Note

If the members of a base class don't have an explicit access specifier, their access is package by default. Such base class members cannot be accessed within a child class unless the two classes are in the same package. You will learn about packages as you continue to study Java.

Sometimes, you want to access parent class data within a subclass. For example, suppose that you create two child classes—`PartTimeStudent` and `FullTimeStudent`—that extend the `Student` class. If you want the subclass methods to be able to directly access `idNum` and `gpa`, these data fields cannot be `private`. However, if you don't want other, nonchild classes to access these data fields, they cannot be `public`. To solve this problem, you can create the fields using the specifier `protected`.

When you want an intermediate level of security between `public` and `private` access, you can use **protected access**. If you create a `protected` data field or method, it can be used within its own class or in any classes extended from that class, but it cannot be used by "outside" classes. In other words, `protected` members are those that can be used by a class and its descendants.

You seldom are required to make parent class fields `protected`. A child class can access its parent's `private` data fields by using `public` methods defined in the parent class, just as any other class can. You need to make parent class fields `protected` only if you want child classes to be able to access parent data directly, but you still want to prohibit other classes from accessing the fields. (For example, perhaps you do not want a parent class to have a `public` `get` method for a field, but you do want a child class to be able to access the field. As another example, perhaps a parent class `set` method enforces limits on a field's value, but a child class object should not have such limits.)

Using the `protected` access specifier for a field can be convenient, and it also improves program performance because a child class can use an inherited field directly instead of "going through" methods to access the data. However, `protected` data members should be used sparingly. Whenever possible, the principle of information hiding should be observed, so even child classes usually should have to go through `public` methods to "get to" their parent's private data. When child classes are allowed direct access to a parent's fields, the likelihood of future errors increases. Classes that directly use fields from parent classes are said to be **fragile** because they are prone to errors—that is, they are easy to "break."

## Two Truths & a Lie | Employing Information Hiding

1. Information hiding describes the concept of keeping data private.
2. A subclass inherits all the data and methods of its superclass, except the `private` ones.
3. If a data field is defined as `protected`, a method in a child class can use it directly.

The false statement is #2. A subclass inherits all the data and methods of its superclass, but it cannot access the `private` ones directly.

## 9.7 Methods You Cannot Override

Sometimes when you create a class, you might choose not to allow subclasses to override some of the superclass methods. For example, an `Employee` class might contain a method that calculates each `Employee`'s ID number based on specific `Employee` attributes, and you might not want any derived classes to be able to provide their own versions of this method. As another example, perhaps a class contains a statement that displays legal restrictions to using the class. You might decide that no derived class should be able to display a different version of the statement.

The three types of methods that you cannot override in a subclass are:

- › `static` methods
- › `final` methods
- › Methods within `final` classes

### A Subclass Cannot Override `static` Methods in Its Superclass

A subclass cannot override methods that are declared `static` in the superclass. In other words, a subclass cannot override a class method—a method you use without instantiating an object. A subclass can *hide* a `static` method in the superclass by declaring a `static` method in the subclass with the same signature as the `static` method in the superclass. Then, you can call the new `static` method within the subclass or in another class by using a subclass object. However, this `static` method that hides the superclass `static` method cannot access the parent method using the `super` object.

**Figure 9-16** shows a `BaseballPlayer` class that contains a single `static` method named `showOrigins()`. **Figure 9-17** shows a `ProfessionalBaseballPlayer` class that extends the `BaseballPlayer` class to provide a salary. Within the `ProfessionalBaseballPlayer` class, an attempt is made to create a nonstatic method that overrides the static `showOrigins()` method to display the general Abner Doubleday message about baseball from the parent class as well as the more specific message about professional baseball. However, the compiler returns the error messages shown in **Figure 9-18**—you cannot override a `static` method with a nonstatic method.

**Figure 9-16** The `BaseballPlayer` class

```
public class BaseballPlayer
{
 private int jerseyNumber;
 private double battingAvg;
 public static void showOrigins()
 {
 System.out.println("Abner Doubleday is often " +
 "credited with inventing baseball");
 }
}
```

**Figure 9-17** The `ProfessionalBaseballPlayer` class attempting to override the parent's `static` method

```
public class ProfessionalBaseballPlayer extends BaseballPlayer
{
 double salary;
 @Override
 public void showOrigins()
 {
 super.showOrigins();
 System.out.println("The first professional " +
 "major league baseball game was played in 1871");
 }
}
```

**Don't Do It**  
A nonstatic method cannot override a static member of a parent class.

**Figure 9-18** Error messages when compiling the ProfessionalBaseballPlayer class in Figure 9-17

```
ProfessionalBaseballPlayer.java:5: error: showOrigins() in ProfessionalBaseballPlayer
cannot override showOrigins() in BaseballPlayer
 public void showOrigins()
 ^
 overridden method is static
ProfessionalBaseballPlayer.java:4: error: method does not override or implement a method from a supertype
 @Override
 ^
2 errors
```

**Figure 9-19** shows a second version of the ProfessionalBaseballPlayer class. In this version, the showOrigins() method has been changed to static in an attempt to fix the problem in Figure 9-18. **Figure 9-20** shows the error message that appears when this class is compiled. Because this method version is static, the method is not used with an object and does not receive a this reference. The keyword super can be used in child class, nonstatic, and instance methods and constructors, but not in child class static methods.

**Figure 9-19** The ProfessionalBaseballPlayer class with a static method that attempts to reference super

```
public class ProfessionalBaseballPlayer extends BaseballPlayer
{
 double salary;
 @Override
 public static void showOrigins()
 {
 super.showOrigins(); ← Notice method is static
 System.out.println("The first professional " +
 "major league baseball game was played in 1871");
 }
}
```

**Figure 9-20** Error messages when compiling the ProfessionalBaseballPlayer class in Figure 9-19

```
ProfessionalBaseballPlayer.java:4: error: method does not override or implement a method from a supertype
 @Override
 ^
ProfessionalBaseballPlayer.java:7: error: non-static variable super cannot be referenced from a static context
 super.showOrigins();
 ^
2 errors
```

Finally, **Figure 9-21** shows a ProfessionalBaseballPlayer class that compiles without error. The class extends BaseballPlayer, and its showOrigins() method is static. Because this method has the same name as the parent class method, when you use the name with a child class object, this method hides the original. However, it cannot use the super keyword to access the Abner Doubleday method. If you want the ProfessionalBaseballPlayer class to display information about baseball in general as well as professional baseball in particular, you can do either of the following:

- » You can repeat the parent class message within the child class using a println() statement.
- » You can use the parent class name, a dot, and the method name. Although a child class cannot inherit its parent's static methods, it can access its parent's nonprivate, static methods the same way any other class can. The program in Figure 9-21 uses this approach.

**Figure 9-21** The ProfessionalBaseballPlayer class

```
public class ProfessionalBaseballPlayer extends BaseballPlayer
{
 double salary;
 public static void showOrigins()
 {
 BaseballPlayer.showOrigins();
 System.out.println("The first professional " +
 "major league baseball game was played in 1871");
 }
}
```

Child class can access its parent's nonprivate, static method.

**Figure 9-22** shows a class that creates a ProfessionalBaseballPlayer and tests the method; **Figure 9-23** shows the output. Notice that the @Override tag is not used with the showOrigins() method because the method does not override the static version in the parent class—it only hides the parent class version.

**Figure 9-22** The TestProPlayer class

```
public class TestProPlayer
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 ProfessionalBaseballPlayer aYankee =
 new ProfessionalBaseballPlayer();
 aYankee.showOrigins();
 }
}
```

**Figure 9-23** Output of the TestProPlayer application

```
Abner Doubleday is often credited with inventing baseball
The first professional major league baseball game was played in 1871
```

## A Subclass Cannot Override final Methods in Its Superclass

A subclass cannot override methods that are declared `final` in the superclass. For example, consider the `BasketballPlayer` and `ProfessionalBasketballPlayer` classes in **Figures 9-24** and **9-25**, respectively. When you attempt to compile the `ProfessionalBasketballPlayer` class, you receive the error message in **Figure 9-26**, because the class cannot override the `final` `displayMessage()` method in the parent class.

**Figure 9-24** The BasketballPlayer class

```
public class BasketballPlayer
{
 private int jerseyNumber;
 public final void displayMessage()
 {
 System.out.println("Michael Jordan is the " +
 "greatest basketball player - and that is final");
 }
}
```

### Note

If you make the `displayMessage()` method `final` in the `ProfessionalBasketballPlayer` class in Figure 9-25, you receive the same compiler error message as shown in Figure 9-26. If you make the `displayMessage()` method `static` in the `ProfessionalBasketballPlayer` class, the class does not compile, but you do receive an additional error message.

**Figure 9-25** The ProfessionalBasketballPlayer class that attempts to override a `final` method

```
public class ProfessionalBasketballPlayer extends BasketballPlayer
{
 double salary;
 @Override
 public void displayMessage()
 {
 System.out.println("I have nothing to say");
 }
}
```

**Don't Do It**  
A child class method cannot override a `final` parent class method.

**Figure 9-26** Error message when compiling the ProfessionalBasketballPlayer class in Figure 9-25

```
ProfessionalBasketballPlayer.java:5: error: displayMessage() in ProfessionalBasketballPlayer cannot override displayMessage() in BasketballPlayer
 public void displayMessage()
 ^
 overridden method is final
1 error
```

You can use the `final` modifier with methods when you don't want the method to be overridden—that is, when you want every child class to use the original parent class version of a method.

In Java, all instance method calls are **virtual method calls** by default—that is, the method used is determined when the program runs because the type of the object used might not be known until the method executes. For example, with the following method you can pass in a `BasketballPlayer` object, or any object that is a child of `BasketballPlayer`, so the “actual” type of the argument `bbplayer` and which version of `displayMessage()` to use is not known until the method executes.

```
public void display(BasketballPlayer bbplayer)
{
 bbplayer.displayMessage();
}
```

In other words, the version of the method used is not determined when the program is compiled; it is determined when the method call is made. Determining the correct method takes a small amount of time. An advantage to making a method `final` is that the compiler knows there is only one version of the method—the parent class version. Therefore, the compiler *does* know which method version to use—the only version—and the program is more efficient.

Because a `final` method's definition can never change—that is, can never be overridden with a modified version—the compiler can optimize a program's performance by removing the calls to `final` methods and replacing them with the expanded code of their definitions at each method call location. This process is called **inlining** the code. When a program executes, you are never aware that inlining is taking place; the compiler chooses to use this procedure to save the overhead of calling a method, and the program runs faster. The compiler chooses to inline a `final` method only if it is a small method that contains just one or two lines of code.

## A Subclass Cannot Override Methods in a `final` Superclass

You can declare a class to be `final`. When you do, all of its methods are `final`, regardless of which access specifier precedes the method name. A `final` class cannot be a parent. **Figure 9-27** shows two classes: a `HideAndGoSeekPlayer` class that is a `final` class because of the word `final` in the class header, and a `ProfessionalHideAndGoSeekPlayer` class that attempts to extend the `final` class, adding a `salary` field. **Figure 9-28** shows the error message generated when you try to compile the `ProfessionalHideAndGoSeekPlayer` class.

**Figure 9-27** The `HideAndGoSeekPlayer` and `ProfessionalHideAndGoSeekPlayer` classes

```

public final class HideAndGoSeekPlayer
{
 private int count;
 public void displayRules()
 {
 System.out.println("You have to count to " + count +
 " before you start looking for hiders");
 }
}
public final class ProfessionalHideAndGoSeekPlayer
 extends HideAndGoSeekPlayer
{
 private double salary;
}

```

**Figure 9-28** Error message when compiling the `ProfessionalHideAndGoSeekPlayer` class in Figure 9-27

```

ProfessionalHideAndGoSeekPlayer.java:2: error: cannot inherit from final HideAndGoSeek
Player
 extends HideAndGoSeekPlayer
 ^
1 error

```

**Note** | Java's `Math` class is an example of a `final` class.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Methods You Cannot Override

1. A subclass cannot override methods that are declared `static` in the superclass.
2. A subclass cannot override methods that are declared `final` in the superclass.
3. A subclass cannot override methods that are declared `private` in the superclass.

The false statement is #3. A subclass can override `private` methods as well as `public` or `protected` ones.

## 9.8 Creating and Using Abstract Classes

A **concrete class** is one from which you can instantiate objects. Sometimes, a class is so general that you never intend to create any specific instances of the class. For example, you might intend never to create an object that is “just” an `Employee`; each `Employee` is more specifically a `SalariedEmployee`, `HourlyEmployee`, or `ContractEmployee`. A class such as `Employee` that you create only to extend from is not a concrete class; it is an **abstract class**. You have learned that you can create `final` classes if you do not want other classes to be able to extend them. Classes that you declare to be `abstract` are the opposite; your only purpose in creating them is to enable other classes to extend them. If you attempt to instantiate an object from an abstract class, you receive an error message from the compiler that you have committed an `InstantiationException`. You use the keyword `abstract` when you declare an abstract class. (In other programming languages, such as C++, an abstract class is known as a **virtual class**.)

**Note**

Number is an abstract, built-in Java class. You cannot create a Number object, but you can create objects from its subclasses, including Double, Float, and Integer.

A method within an abstract class can be one of the following types:

- › A **nonabstract method**, like a method you can create in any class, is implemented (given a body) in the abstract class and is simply inherited by its children.
- › An **abstract method** has no body (no curly braces and no statements), and it must be implemented (given a body) in its child classes.

Abstract classes usually contain at least one abstract method. When you create an abstract method, you provide the keyword `abstract` and the rest of the method header, including the method type, name, and parameters. However, the declaration ends there. You do not provide curly braces or any statements within the method—just a semicolon at the end of the declaration. If you create an empty method within an abstract class, the method is abstract even if you do not explicitly use the keyword `abstract` when defining the method, although programmers often include the keyword for clarity.

When making abstract declarations:

- › If you declare a class to be abstract, each of its methods can be abstract or not.
- › If you declare a method to be abstract, you also must declare its class to be abstract.

When you create a subclass that inherits an abstract method, you write a method with the same signature. You are required to code a subclass method to override every empty, abstract superclass method that is inherited. Either the child class method must itself be abstract, or you must provide a body, or implementation, for the inherited method.

Suppose that you want to create classes to represent different animals, such as Dog and Cow. You can create a generic abstract class named `Animal` so you can provide generic data fields, such as the animal's name, only once. An `Animal` is generic, but all specific `Animals` make a sound; the actual sound differs from `Animal` to `Animal`. If you code an empty `speak()` method in the abstract `Animal` class, you require all future `Animal` subclasses to code a `speak()` method that is specific to the subclass. **Figure 9-29** shows an abstract `Animal` class containing a data field for the name, `getName()` and `setName()` methods, and an abstract `speak()` method.

**Figure 9-29** The abstract `Animal` class

```
public abstract class Animal
{
 private String name;
 public abstract void speak();
 public String getName()
 {
 return name;
 }
 public void setName(String animalName)
 {
 name = animalName;
 }
}
```

The class is abstract, which means no `Animal` objects can be created.

The method is abstract, meaning child classes must contain a `speak()` method.

The `Animal` class in Figure 9-29 is declared as abstract. You cannot create a class in which you declare an `Animal` object with a statement such as the following:

```
Animal myPet = new Animal("Murphy");
```

Any program that attempts to instantiate an `Animal` object does not compile. `Animal` is an abstract class, so no `Animal` objects can exist.

You create an abstract class such as `Animal` only so you can extend it. For example, because a dog is an animal, you can create a `Dog` class as a child class of `Animal`. **Figure 9-30** shows a `Dog` class that extends `Animal`.

**Figure 9-30** The `Dog` class

```
public class Dog extends Animal
{
 @Override
 public void speak()
 {
 System.out.println("Woof!");
 }
}
```

The `speak()` method within the `Dog` class is required because you want to create `Dog` objects and the abstract, parent `Animal` class contains an abstract `speak()` method. You can code any statements you want within the `Dog speak()` method, but the `speak()` method must exist. If you do not want to create `Dog` objects but want the `Dog` class to be a parent to further subclasses, then the `Dog` class also must be abstract. In that case, you can write code for the `speak()` method within the subclasses of `Dog`. Recall that the `@Override` annotation for the `speak()` method is not necessary, but it provides error checking and documentation. Technically, `speak()` implements the empty parent class method as well as overrides it.

If `Animal` is an abstract class, you cannot instantiate an `Animal` object; however, if `Dog` is a concrete class, instantiating a `Dog` object is perfectly legal. When you code the following, you create a `Dog` object:

```
Dog myPet = new Dog("Murphy");
```

Then, when you code `myPet.speak();`, the correct `Dog speak()` method executes.

The classes in **Figures 9-31** and **9-32** also inherit from the `Animal` class and implement `speak()` methods. **Figure 9-33** contains a `UseAnimals` application.

**Figure 9-31** The `Cow` class

```
public class Cow extends Animal
{
 @Override
 public void speak()
 {
 System.out.println("Moo!");
 }
}
```

**Figure 9-32** The `Snake` class

```
public class Snake extends Animal
{
 @Override
 public void speak()
 {
 System.out.println("Sssss!");
 }
}
```

**Figure 9-33** The `UseAnimals` application

```
public class UseAnimals
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 Dog myDog = new Dog();
 Cow myCow = new Cow();
 Snake mySnake = new Snake();
 myDog.setName("My dog Murphy");
 myCow.setName("My cow Elsie");
 mySnake.setName("My snake Sammy");
 System.out.print(myDog.getName() + " says ");
 myDog.speak();
 System.out.print(myCow.getName() + " says ");
 myCow.speak();
 System.out.print(mySnake.getName() + " says ");
 mySnake.speak();
 }
}
```

The output in **Figure 9-34** shows that when you create Dog, Cow, and Snake objects, each is an Animal with access to the Animal class `getName()` and `setName()` methods, and each uses its own `speak()` method appropriately.

**Figure 9-34** Output of the `UseAnimals` application

```
My dog Murphy says Woof!
My cow Elsie says Moo!
My snake Sammy says Ssss!
```

Recall that using the same method name to indicate different implementations is *polymorphism*. Using polymorphism, one method name causes different and appropriate actions for diverse types of objects.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Creating and Using Abstract Classes

1. An abstract class is one from which you cannot inherit, but from which you can create concrete objects.
2. Abstract classes usually have one or more empty abstract methods.
3. An abstract method has no body, curly braces, or statements.

The false statement is #1. An abstract class is one from which you cannot create any concrete objects, but from which you can inherit.

## You Do It | Creating an Abstract Class

In this section, you create an abstract `Vehicle` class. The class includes fields for the power source, the number of wheels, and the price. `Vehicle` is an abstract class; there will never be a “plain” `Vehicle` object. Later, you will create two subclasses, `Sailboat` and `Bicycle`; these more specific classes include price limits for the vehicle type, as well as different methods for displaying data.

1. Open a new file, and enter the following first few lines to begin creating an abstract `Vehicle` class:

```
public abstract class Vehicle
{
```

2. Declare the data fields that hold the power source, number of wheels, and price. Declare `price` as `protected` rather than `private`, because you want child classes to be able to access the field.

```
private String powerSource;
private int wheels;
protected int price;
```

3. The `Vehicle` constructor accepts two parameters and calls three methods. The first method accepts the `powerSource` parameter, the second accepts the `wheels` parameter, and the third method prompts the user for a vehicle price.

```
public Vehicle(String powerSource, int wheels)
{
 setPowerSource(powerSource);
 setWheels(wheels);
 setPrice();
}
```

4. Include the following three get methods that return the values for the data fields:

```
public String getPowerSource()
{
 return powerSource;
}
public int getWheels()
{
 return wheels;
}
public int getPrice()
{
 return price;
}
```

5. Enter the following set methods, which assign values to the powerSource and wheels fields.

```
public void setPowerSource(String source)
{
 powerSource = source;
}
public void setWheels(int numWheels)
{
 wheels = numWheels;
}
```

6. The `setPrice()` method is an abstract method. Each subclass you eventually create that represents different vehicle types will have a unique prompt for the price and a different maximum allowed price. Type the abstract method definition and the closing curly brace for the class:

```
public abstract void setPrice();
}
```

7. Save the file as **Vehicle.java**, and compile it.

### Extending an Abstract Class

You just created an abstract class, but you cannot instantiate any objects from this class. Rather, you must extend this class to be able to create any `Vehicle`-related objects. Next, you create a `Sailboat` class that extends the `Vehicle` class. This new class is concrete; that is, you can create actual `Sailboat` class objects.

1. Open a new file, and then type the following, including a header for a `Sailboat` class that extends the `Vehicle` class:

```
import javax.swing.*;
public class Sailboat extends Vehicle
{
```

2. Add the declaration of a length field that is specific to a `Sailboat` by typing the following code:

```
private int length;
```

3. The `Sailboat` constructor must call its parent's constructor and send two arguments to provide values for the `powerSource` and `wheels` values. It also calls the `setLength()` method that prompts the user for and sets the length of the `Sailboat` objects:

```
public Sailboat()
{
 super("wind", 0);
 setLength();
}
```

4. Enter the following `setLength()` and `getLength()` methods, which respectively ask for and return the Sailboat's length:

```
public void setLength()
{
 String entry;
 entry = JOptionPane.showInputDialog
 (null, "Enter sailboat length in feet ");
 length = Integer.parseInt(entry);
}
public int getLength()
{
 return length;
}
```

5. The concrete Sailboat class must contain a `setPrice()` method because the method is abstract in the parent class. Assume that a Sailboat has a maximum price of \$100,000. Add the following `setPrice()` method that prompts the user for the price and forces it to the maximum value if the entered value is too high. Include the `@Override` annotation because the `setPrice()` method overrides the Vehicle version.

```
@Override
public void setPrice()
{
 String entry;
 final int MAX = 100000;
 entry = JOptionPane.showInputDialog
 (null, "Enter sailboat price ");
 price = Integer.parseInt(entry);
 if(price > MAX)
 price = MAX;
}
```

6. The Object class `toString()` method converts any object to a `String`. You can override that method for this class by writing your own version as follows. You can include the `@Override` annotation to indicate that this version of `toString()` is intended to override the Object class version. When you finish, add a closing curly brace for the class.

```
@Override
public String toString()
{
 return("The " + getLength() +
 " foot sailboat is powered by " +
 getPowerSource() + "; it has " + getWheels() +
 " wheels and costs $" + getPrice());
}
```

7. Save the file as **Sailboat.java**, and then compile the class.

### Extending an Abstract Class with a Second Subclass

The Bicycle class inherits from Vehicle, just as the Sailboat class does. Whereas the Sailboat class requires a data field to hold the length of the boat, the Bicycle class does not. Other differences lie in the content of the `setPrice()` and `toString()` methods.

1. Open a new file, and then type the following first lines of the Bicycle class:

```
import javax.swing.*;
public class Bicycle extends Vehicle
{
```

2. Enter the following `Bicycle` class constructor, which calls the parent constructor, sending it power source and wheel values:

```
public Bicycle()
{
 super("a person", 2);
}
```

3. Enter the following `setPrice()` method that forces a `Bicycle`'s price to be no greater than \$4,000:

```
@Override
public void setPrice()
{
 String entry;
 final int MAX = 4000;
 entry = JOptionPane.showInputDialog
 (null, "Enter bicycle price ");
 price = Integer.parseInt(entry);
 if(price > MAX)
 price = MAX;
}
```

4. Enter the following `toString()` method, and add the closing curly brace for the class:

```
@Override
public String toString()
{
 return("The bicycle is powered by " +
 getPowerSource() + "; it has " + getWheels() +
 " wheels and costs $" + getPrice());
}
```

5. Save the file as `Bicycle.java`, and then compile the class.

### Instantiating Objects from Subclasses

Next, you create a program that instantiates concrete objects from each of the two child classes you just created.

1. Open a new file, and then enter the start of the `DemoVehicles` class as follows:

```
import javax.swing.*;
public class DemoVehicles
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
```

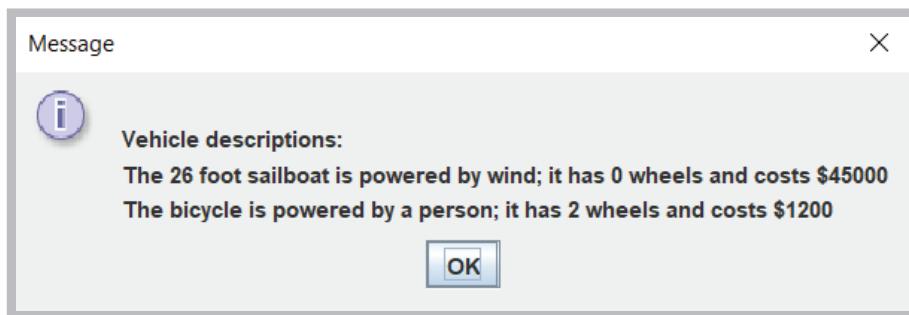
2. Enter the following statements that declare an object of each subclass type.

```
Sailboat aBoat = new Sailboat();
Bicycle aBike = new Bicycle();
```

3. Enter the following statement to display the contents of the two objects. Add the closing curly braces for the `main()` method and the class:

```
JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null,
 "\nVehicle descriptions:\n" +
 aBoat.toString() + "\n" + aBike.toString());
}
```

4. Save the file as `DemoVehicles.java`, and then compile it. After you compile the class with no errors, run the application. When the application prompts you, enter the length and price for a sailboat, and the price for a bicycle. **Figure 9-35** shows output after typical user input.

**Figure 9-35** Typical output of the `Demovehicles` application

## 9.9 Using Dynamic Method Binding

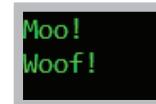
When you create a superclass and one or more subclasses, each object of each subclass “is a” superclass object. Every `SalariedEmployee` “is an” `Employee`; every `Dog` “is an” `Animal`. (The opposite is not true. Superclass objects are not members of any of their subclasses. An `Employee` is not a `SalariedEmployee`. An `Animal` is not a `Dog`.) Because every subclass object “is a” superclass member, you can convert subclass objects to superclass objects.

As you are aware, when a superclass is abstract, you cannot instantiate objects of the superclass; however, you can indirectly create a reference to a superclass abstract object. A reference is not an object, but it points to a memory address. When you create a reference, you do not use the keyword `new` to create a concrete object; instead, you create a variable name in which you can hold the memory address of a concrete object. So, although a reference to an abstract superclass object is not concrete, you can store a concrete subclass object reference there.

For example, if you create an `Animal` class, as shown previously in Figure 9-29, and various subclasses such as `Dog`, `Cow`, and `Snake`, as shown in Figures 9-30 through 9-32, you can create an application containing a generic `Animal` reference variable into which you can assign any of the concrete `Animal` child objects. **Figure 9-36** shows an `AnimalReference` application. The variable `animalRef` is a type of `Animal`. No superclass `Animal` object is created (none can be); instead, `Dog` and `Cow` objects are created using the `new` keyword. When the `Cow` object is assigned to the `Animal` reference, the `animalRef.speak()` method call results in “Moo!”; when the `Dog` object is assigned to the `Animal` reference, the method call results in “Woof!” Recall that assigning a variable or constant of one type to a variable of another type is called *promotion*, *implicit conversion*, or *upcasting*.

**Figure 9-36** The `AnimalReference` application

```
public class AnimalReference
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 Animal animalRef;
 animalRef = new Cow();
 animalRef.speak();
 animalRef = new Dog();
 animalRef.speak();
 }
}
```

**Figure 9-37** Output of the `AnimalReference` application

**Figure 9-37** shows the output of the `AnimalReference` application. The program shows that using a reference polymorphically allows you to extend a base class and use extended objects when a base class type is expected. For example, you could pass a `Dog` or a `Cow` to a method that expects an `Animal`. This means that all methods written to accept a superclass argument also can be used with its children—a feature that saves child class creators a lot of work.

The application in Figure 9-37 demonstrates polymorphic behavior. The same statement, `animalRef.speak();`, repeats after `animalRef` is assigned each new animal type. Each call to the `speak()` method results in different output. Each reference “chooses” the correct `speak()` method based on the type of animal referenced. This flexible behavior is most useful when you pass references to methods; you will learn more about this in the next section. In Java, all instance method calls are virtual method calls by default—the method that is used is determined when the program runs, because the type of the object used might not be known until the method executes. An application’s ability to select the correct subclass method depending on the argument type is known as **dynamic method binding**. When the application executes, the correct method is attached (or bound) to the application based on the current, changing (dynamic) context. Dynamic method binding also is called **late method binding**. The opposite of dynamic method binding is **static method binding**, also called **fixed method binding**. In Java, instance methods (those that receive a `this` reference) use dynamic binding; class methods use static method binding. Dynamic binding makes programs flexible; however, static binding operates more quickly.

### Note

In the example in this section, the objects using `speak()` happen to be related (Cow and Dog are both `Animals`). Be aware that polymorphic behavior can apply to nonrelated classes as well. For example, a `DebateStudent` and a `VentriloquistsDummy` also might `speak()`. When polymorphic behavior depends on method overloading, it is called **ad-hoc polymorphism**; when it depends on using a superclass as a method parameter, it is called **pure polymorphism** or **inclusion polymorphism**.

## Using a Superclass as a Method Parameter Type

Dynamic method binding is most useful when you want to create a method that has one or more parameters that might be one of several types. For example, the header for the `talkingAnimal()` method in **Figure 9-38** accepts any type of `Animal` argument. The method can be used in programs that contain `Dog` objects, `Cow` objects, or objects of any other class that descends from `Animal`.

**Figure 9-38** The TalkingAnimalDemo class

```
public class TalkingAnimalDemo
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 Dog dog = new Dog();
 Cow cow = new Cow();
 dog.setName("Ginger");
 cow.setName("Molly");
 talkingAnimal(dog);
 talkingAnimal(cow);
 }
 public static void talkingAnimal(Animal animal)
 {
 System.out.println("Come one. Come all.");
 System.out.println
 ("See the amazing talking animal!");
 System.out.println(animal.getName() +
 " says");
 animal.speak();
 System.out.println("*****");
 }
}
```

This method can accept  
any object that descends  
from Animal.

The TalkingAnimalDemo application first passes a Dog and then a Cow to the method. **Figure 9-39** shows the output, in which you can see that the speak() method works appropriately no matter which type of Animal descendant it receives.

**Figure 9-39** Output of the TalkingAnimalDemo application

```
Come one. Come all.
See the amazing talking animal!
Ginger says
Woof!

Come one. Come all.
See the amazing talking animal!
Molly says
Moo!

```

## Two Truths & a Lie | Using Dynamic Method Binding

1. If Parent is a parent class and Child is its child, then you can assign a Child object to a Parent reference.
2. If Parent is a parent class and Child is its child, then you can assign a Parent object to a Child reference.
3. Dynamic method binding refers to a program's ability to select the correct subclass method for a superclass reference while a program is running.

The false statement is #2. If Parent is a parent class and Child is its child, then you cannot assign a Parent object to a Child reference; you can only assign a Child object to a Child reference. However, you can assign a Parent object or a Child object to a Parent reference.

## 9.10 Creating Arrays of Subclass Objects

Recall that every array element must be the same data type, which can be a primitive, built-in type or a type based on a more complex class. When you create an array in Java, you are not constructing objects. Instead, you are creating space for references to objects. In other words, although it is convenient to refer to *an array of objects*, every array of objects is really an array of object references. When you create an array of superclass references, it can hold subclass references. This is true whether the superclass in question is abstract or concrete.

For example, even though Employee is an abstract class, and every Employee object is either a SalariedEmployee or an HourlyEmployee subclass object, it can be convenient to create an array of generic Employee references. Likewise, an Animal array might contain individual elements that are Dog, Cow, or Snake objects. As long as every Employee subclass has access to a calculatePay() method, and every Animal subclass has access to a speak() method, you can manipulate an array of superclass objects and invoke the appropriate method for each subclass member.

The following statement creates an array of three Animal references:

```
Animal[] animalRef = new Animal[3];
```

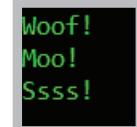
The statement reserves enough computer memory for three Animal objects named animalRef[0], animalRef[1], and animalRef[2]. The statement does not actually instantiate Animals; Animal is an abstract class and cannot be instantiated. The Animal array declaration simply reserves memory for three object references. If you instantiate objects from Animal subclasses, you can place references to those objects in the Animal array, as **Figure 9-40** illustrates.

In the AnimalArrayDemo application in Figure 9-40, a reference to an instance of the Dog class is assigned to the first Animal reference, and then references to Cow and Snake objects are assigned to the second and third array elements. After the object references are in the array, you can manipulate them like any other array elements. The application in Figure 9-40 uses a for loop and a subscript to get each individual reference to speak(). Figure 9-41 shows the output of the AnimalArrayDemo application. The array of three references is used to access each appropriate speak() method.

**Figure 9-40** The AnimalArrayDemo application

```
public class AnimalArrayDemo
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 Animal[] animalRef = new Animal[3];
 animalRef[0] = new Dog();
 animalRef[1] = new Cow();
 animalRef[2] = new Snake();
 for(int x = 0; x < animalRef.length; ++x)
 animalRef[x].speak();
 }
}
```

**Figure 9-41** Output of the AnimalArrayDemo application



Woof!  
Moo!  
Ssss!

## Two Truths & a Lie | Creating Arrays of Subclass Objects

1. You can assign a superclass reference to an array of its subclass type.
  2. The following statement creates an array of 10 Table references:
- ```
Table[] table = new Table[10];
```
3. You can assign subclass objects to an array that is their superclass type.

The false statement is #1. You can assign a subclass reference to an array of its superclass type but not the other way around.

You Do It | Using Object References

Next, you write an application in which you create an array of Vehicle references. Within the application, you assign Sailboat objects and Bicycle objects to the same array. Then, because the different object types are stored in the same array, you can easily manipulate them by using a for loop.

1. Open a new file, and then enter the following first few lines of the VehicleDatabase program:

```
import javax.swing.*;
public class VehicleDatabase
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

2. Create the following array of five Vehicle references and an integer subscript to use with the array:

```
Vehicle[] vehicles = new Vehicle[5];
int x;
```

3. Enter the following for loop that prompts you to select whether to enter a sailboat or a bicycle in the array. Based on user input, instantiate the appropriate object type.

```

for(x = 0; x < vehicles.length; ++x)
{
    String userEntry;
    int vehicleType;
    userEntry = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
        "Please select the type of\n" +
        "vehicle you want to enter: \n1 - Sailboat\n" +
        " 2 - Bicycle");
    vehicleType = Integer.parseInt(userEntry);
    if(vehicleType == 1)
        vehicles[x] = new Sailboat();
    else
        vehicles[x] = new Bicycle();
}

```

Note

If there were several vehicle types instead of just two, you might prefer to use a `switch` statement to choose which type of vehicle to instantiate. Additionally, a better program might ensure the user's entered option is not something other than 1 or 2.

- After entering the information for each vehicle, display the array contents by typing the following code. First, create a `StringBuffer` to hold the list of vehicles. Then, in a `for` loop, build an output `String` by repeatedly adding a newline character, a counter, and a vehicle from the array to the `StringBuffer` object. Display the constructed `StringBuffer` in a dialog box. Then type the closing curly braces for the `main()` method and the class:

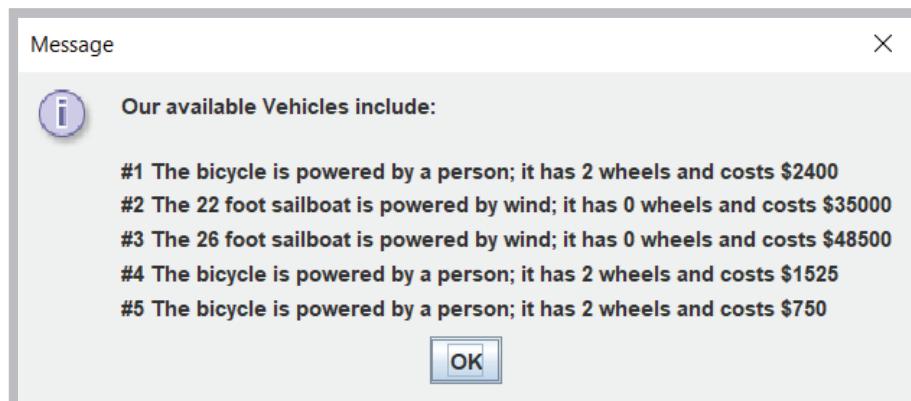
```

StringBuffer outString = new StringBuffer();
for(x = 0; x < vehicles.length; ++x)
{
    outString.append("\n#" + (x + 1) + " ");
    outString.append(vehicles[x].toString());
}
JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null,
    "Our available Vehicles include:\n" + outString);
}
}

```

- Save the file as `VehicleDatabase.java`, and then compile it. Run the application, entering five objects of your choice. **Figure 9-42** shows typical output after the user has entered data.

Figure 9-42 Typical output of the `VehicleDatabase` application



9.11 Using the Object Class and Its Methods

Every class in Java is actually a subclass, except one. When you define a class, if you do not explicitly extend another class, your class implicitly is an extension of the `Object` class. The `Object` class is defined in the `java.lang` package, which is imported automatically every time you write a program; in other words, the following two class declarations have identical outcomes:

```
public class Animal
{
}
public class Animal extends Object
{
}
```

The `Object` class includes methods that descendant classes can use, overload, or override. **Table 9-2** describes the methods built into the `Object` class; every class you create has access to these methods. You have already learned to use the `equals()` method with `String` objects. This chapter describes the `equals()` method in more detail, and teaches you about `toString()`; you will learn about the other methods as you continue to study Java.

Table 9-2 Object class methods

METHOD	DESCRIPTION
<code>Object clone()</code>	Creates and returns a copy of this object
<code>boolean equals (Object obj)</code>	Indicates whether some object is equal to the parameter object (this method is described in detail below)
<code>void finalize()</code>	Called by the garbage collector on an object when there are no more references to the object
<code>Class<?> getClass()</code>	Returns the class to which this object belongs at runtime
<code>int hashCode()</code>	Returns a hash code value for the object (this method is described briefly below)
<code>void notify()</code>	Wakes up a single thread that is waiting on this object's monitor
<code>void notifyAll()</code>	Wakes up all threads that are waiting on this object's monitor
<code>String toString()</code>	Returns a string representation of the object (this method is described in detail below)
<code>void wait()</code>	Causes the current thread to wait until another thread invokes either the <code>notify()</code> method or the <code>notifyAll()</code> method for this object
<code>void wait (long timeout)</code>	Causes the current thread to wait until either another thread invokes the <code>notify()</code> method or the <code>notifyAll()</code> method for this object, or a specified amount of time has elapsed
<code>void wait (long timeout, int nanos)</code>	Causes the current thread to wait until another thread invokes the <code>notify()</code> or <code>notifyAll()</code> method for this object, some other thread interrupts the current thread, or a certain amount of real time has elapsed

Note

Table 9-2 refers to *threads* in several locations. Threads of execution are units of processing that are scheduled by an operating system and that can be used to create multiple paths of control during program execution.

Using the `toString()` Method

The `Object` class `toString()` method converts an `Object` into a `String` that contains information about the `Object`. Within a class, if you do not create a `toString()` method that overrides the version in the `Object` class, you can use the superclass version of the method. For example, examine the `Animal` and `Dog` classes originally shown earlier in this chapter and repeated in **Figure 9-43**.

Figure 9-43 The Animal and Dog classes and the DisplayDog application

```

public abstract class Animal
{
    private String name;
    public abstract void speak();
    public String getName()
    {
        return name;
    }
    public void setName(String animalName)
    {
        name = animalName;
    }
}
public class Dog extends Animal
{
    public void speak()
    {
        System.out.println("Woof! ");
    }
}
public class DisplayDog
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Dog myDog = new Dog();
        String dogString = myDog.toString();
        System.out.println(dogString);
    }
}

```

Even though neither the Animal nor the Dog class contains a `toString()` method, the Dog object can use it because it inherits from Object.

Notice that neither the Animal class nor the Dog class in Figure 9-43 defines a `toString()` method. Yet, as you can see from the output in **Figure 9-44**, when you write the DisplayDog application, a Dog object can use a `toString()` method. That is because Dog inherits `toString()` from Object.

The output of the DisplayDog application in Figure 9-44 is not very useful. It consists of the class name of which the object is an instance (Dog), the at sign (@), and a hexadecimal (base 16) identifier. The identifier (5679c6c6 in Figure 9-44) is an example of a **hash code**—a calculated number used to uniquely identify an object. Even if two objects in an application have the same Java identifier (as might be the case if the same identifier is used in different methods), each will have a unique hash code. Later in this chapter, you learn about the `equals()` method, which also uses a hash code.

Instead of using the automatic `toString()` method with your classes, it usually is more useful to write your own overloaded version that displays some or all of the data field values for the object with which you use it. A good `toString()` method can be very useful in debugging a program; if you do not understand why a class is behaving as it is, you can display the `toString()` value and examine its contents. For example, **Figure 9-45** shows a BankAccount class that contains a mistake—the BankAccount `balance` value is set to the account number instead of the balance amount. Of course, if you made such a mistake within one of your own classes, there would be no comment to help you find the mistake. In addition, a useful BankAccount class would be much larger, so the mistake would be more difficult to locate. However, when you ran programs containing BankAccount objects, you would notice that the balances of your BankAccounts are incorrect. To help you discover why, you could create a short application such as the TestBankAccount class in **Figure 9-46**. This application uses the BankAccount class `toString()` method to display the relevant details of a BankAccount object.

Figure 9-44 Output of the DisplayDog application


Dog@5679c6c6

Figure 9-45 The BankAccount class with an error

```

public class BankAccount
{
    private int acctNum;
    private double balance;
    public BankAccount(int num, double bal)
    {
        acctNum = num;
        balance = num; ←
    }
    @Override
    public String toString()
    {
        String info = "BankAccount acctNum = " + acctNum +
                      " Balance = $" + balance;
        return info;
    }
}

```

Don't Do It
The `bal` parameter should be assigned to `balance`.

Figure 9-46 The TestBankAccount application

```

public class TestBankAccount
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        BankAccount myAccount = new BankAccount(123, 4567.89);
        System.out.println(myAccount.toString());
    }
}

```

The output of the `TestBankAccount` application appears in **Figure 9-47**. In the figure, you can see that the account number and balance have the same value, and this knowledge might help you to pin down the location of the incorrect statement in the `BankAccount` class.

Figure 9-47 Output of the TestBankAccount application

```
BankAccount acctNum = 123  Balance = $123.0
```

Of course, you do not have to use a method named `toString()` to discover a `BankAccount`'s attributes. If the class had methods such as `getAcctNum()` and `getBalance()`, you could use them to create a similar application. The advantage of creating a `toString()` method for your classes is that `toString()` is Java's conventional name for a method that converts an object's relevant details into `String` format. Because `toString()` originates in the `Object` class, you can be assured that `toString()` compiles with any object whose details you want to see, even if the method has not been rewritten for the subclass in question. In addition, as you write your own applications and use classes written by others, you can hope that those programmers have overridden `toString()` to provide useful information. You don't have to search documentation to discover a useful method—instead you can rely on the likely usefulness of `toString()`.

Using the `equals()` Method

The `Object` class also contains an `equals()` method with the following header:

```
public boolean equals(Object obj)
```

The method is not static, and it takes a single argument that is compared to the calling object. For example, you might write a statement such as the following:

```
if(someObject.equals(someOtherObject))
    System.out.println("The objects are equal");
```

The `Object` class `equals()` method returns a boolean value indicating whether the objects are equal. This `equals()` method considers two objects to be equal only if they have the same hash code; in other words, they are equal only if one is a reference to the other. For example, two `BankAccount` objects named `myAccount` and `yourAccount` are not automatically equal, even if they have the same account numbers and balances; the inherited `equals()` method returns `true` only if they have the same memory address. If you want to consider two objects to be equal only when one is a reference to the other, you can use the built-in `Object` class `equals()` method. However, if you want to consider objects to be equal based on their contents, you must write your own `equals()` method for your classes.

Note

Java's `Object` class contains a public method named `hashCode()` that returns an integer representing the hash code. (Discovering this number usually is of little use to you. The default hash code is the internal JVM memory address of the object.)

When you want to create a method that compares two objects based on the values they hold, you have three choices:

- › You can create a method similar to those you have created for many classes and give it an identifier such as `areTheyEqual()`.
- › You can overload the `Object` class `equals()` method.
- › You can override the `Object` class `equals()` method.

The advantage to creating a method with an identifier other than `equals()` is that programmers will not mistake it for an overridden version of the `Object` class method. The advantage to using the `equals()` identifier is that programmers expect it to be used to compare objects. It is easier to overload the `equals()` method than to override it, so you learn how to overload it in the next section. Then you will read about how to override it.

Overloading `equals()`

Figure 9-48 shows a `BankAccount` class like the one in Figure 9-45, except the error in assigning the `balance` field has been corrected. The `CompareAccounts` application shown in **Figure 9-49** instantiates two `BankAccount` objects using this class. The `BankAccount` class does not include its own `equals()` method, so it neither overloads nor overrides the `Object` `equals()` method.

Figure 9-48 The `BankAccount` class

```
public class BankAccount
{
    private int acctNum;
    private double balance;
    public BankAccount(int num, double bal)
    {
        acctNum = num;
        balance = bal;
    }
    @Override
    public String toString()
    {
        String info = "BankAccount acctNum = " + acctNum +
                     " Balance = $" + balance;
        return info;
    }
}
```

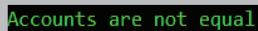
Figure 9-49 The CompareAccounts application

```

public class CompareAccounts
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        BankAccount acct1 = new BankAccount(1234, 500.00);
        BankAccount acct2 = new BankAccount(1234, 500.00);
        if(acct1.equals(acct2))
            System.out.println("Accounts are equal");
        else
            System.out.println("Accounts are not equal");
    }
}

```

The application in Figure 9-49 produces the output in **Figure 9-50**. Even though the two BankAccount objects have the same account numbers and balances, the BankAccounts are not considered equal because they do not have the same hash code. No two objects you declare in a program will ever have the same hash code unless you change one of them.

Figure 9-50 Output of the CompareAccounts application when BankAccount does not have its own equals() method


Accounts are not equal

If your intention is that within applications, two BankAccount objects with different hash codes but the same account number and balance should be considered equal, and you want to use the equals() method to make the comparison, you must write your own comparison method within the BankAccount class. For example, **Figure 9-51** shows a new version of the BankAccount class that contains an equals() method.

Figure 9-51 The BankAccount class containing its own equals() method

```

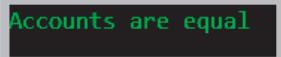
public class BankAccount
{
    private int acctNum;
    private double balance;
    public BankAccount(int num, double bal)
    {
        acctNum = num;
        balance = bal;
    }
    @Override
    public String toString()
    {
        String info = "BankAccount acctNum = " +
                      acctNum + " Balance = $" + balance;
        return info;
    }
    public boolean equals(BankAccount secondAcct)
    {
        boolean result;
        if(acctNum == secondAcct.acctNum && balance == secondAcct.balance)
            result = true;
        else
            result = false;
        return result;
    }
}

```

This equals() method overloads the one in the Object class. This method takes a BankAccount argument, but the one in the Object class takes an Object argument.

Figure 9-52 shows the output of the CompareAccounts program when the BankAccount class contains the new equals() method. The two BankAccount objects are considered to be equal because their account numbers and balances match. Because the equals() method in Figure 9-51 is part of the BankAccount class, and because equals() is a nonstatic method, the object that calls the method is held by the this reference within the method; that is, acct1 calls the method. That means the fields acctNum and balance refer to acct1 object values. In the CompareAccounts application, acct2 is the argument to the equals() method, so within the equals() method, acct2 becomes secondAcct, and secondAcct.acctNum and secondAcct.balance refer to acct2's values.

Figure 9-52 Output of the CompareAccounts application after adding an overloaded equals() method to the BankAccount class



Accounts are equal

The equals() method in the BankAccount class overloads the Object class equals() method. Recall that a method overloads another when their parameter lists differ. The BankAccount equals() method has a BankAccount parameter, but the Object equals() method has an Object parameter. Therefore, this equals() method overloads its parent's version, and a BankAccount object has access to two equals() methods—one that takes a BankAccount parameter and one that takes an Object parameter.

Note

You can implement the equals() method in any way that suits your needs. For example, your organization might consider BankAccount objects to be equal if their account numbers match without considering their balances.

Overriding equals()

When a subclass method overrides a parent's method, the signatures must be the same. Therefore, if you want a BankAccount equals() method to override the parent version, the method header must be written as follows with any identifier you choose for the Object parameter:

```
public boolean equals(Object obj)
```

Within an equals() method with this signature, you must cast the Object parameter to a BankAccount object before comparisons can be made. **Figure 9-53** shows the method.

Figure 9-53 BankAccount equals() method that overrides Object class version

```
@Override
public boolean equals(Object obj)
{
    BankAccount secondAcct = (BankAccount) obj;
    boolean result;
    if(acctNum == secondAcct.acctNum && balance == secondAcct.balance)
        result = true;
    else
        result = false;
    return result;
}
```

This statement casts an Object object to a BankAccount object.

The method in Figure 9-53 works correctly to compare BankAccount objects in most programs you will write. However, as you start to use more sophisticated Java techniques, you will run into strange errors unless you follow all the recommendations Java's creators have made for overriding equals(). These include the following:

- › Determine if the equals() argument is the same object as the calling object by using a comparison such as obj == this, and return true if it is.

- › Return `false` if the `Object` argument is `null`.
- › Return `false` if the calling and argument objects are not the same class.
- › Cast the `Object` argument to the same type as the calling object only if they are the same class.

Figure 9-54 shows an `equals()` method for the `BankAccount` class that includes all these recommendations.

Figure 9-54 Improved `BankAccount equals()` method that overrides `Object` class version

```
public boolean equals(Object obj)
{
    boolean result;
    if(obj == this)
        result = true;
    else
        if(obj == null)
            result = false;
        else
            if(obj.getClass() != this.getClass())
                result = false;
            BankAccount secondAcct = (BankAccount)obj;
            if(actNum == secondAcct.acctNum && balance == secondAcct.balance)
                result = true;
            else
                result = false;
    return result;
}
```

Java's creators have one additional recommendation to follow whenever you override the `equals()` method in a professional class:

- › You should override the `hashCode()` method as well, because equal objects should have equal hash codes.

If you fail to take this step, you won't notice the difference in many programs, but if more complicated programs that use hash-based methods use your class, you will encounter problems. When you override the `hashCode()` method, you compute a code using a combination of prime numbers and the values of any fields used in the class's `equals()` method. You can search online for recommendations for constructing hash codes.

Two Truths & a Lie | Using the `Object` Class and Its Methods

1. When you define a class, if you do not explicitly extend another class, your class is an extension of the `Object` class.
2. The `Object` class is defined in the `java.lang` package that is imported automatically every time you write a program.
3. The `Object` class `toString()` and `equals()` methods are abstract.

The false statement is #3. The `toString()` and `equals()` methods are not abstract—you are not required to override them in a subclass.

9.12 Creating and Using Interfaces

Some object-oriented programming languages, such as C++, allow a subclass to inherit from more than one parent class. The capability to inherit from more than one class is called **multiple inheritance**.

For example, you might create an `InsuredItem` class that contains data fields pertaining to each possession for which you have insurance. Data fields might include the name of the item, its value, the insurance policy type, and so on. You also might create an `Automobile` class that contains data fields such as vehicle identification number, make, model, and year. When you create an `InsuredAutomobile` class for a car rental agency, you might want to include `InsuredItem` information and methods, as well as `Automobile` information and methods. It would be convenient to inherit from both the `InsuredItem` and `Automobile` classes.

Many programmers consider multiple inheritance to be a difficult concept, and when inexperienced programmers use it they encounter many problems. Programmers have to deal with the possibility that variables and methods in the parent classes might have identical names, which creates conflict when the child class uses one of the names. Also, you already have learned that a child class constructor must call its parent class constructor. This task becomes more complicated when a subclass has two or more parents—to which class should `super()` refer when a child class has multiple parents? For all of these reasons, multiple inheritance is prohibited in Java. A class can inherit from a superclass that has inherited from another superclass—this represents single inheritance with multiple generations. However, Java does not allow a class to inherit directly from two or more parents.

Java does provide an alternative to multiple inheritance—an interface. An **interface** looks much like a class, except that all of its methods (if any) are implicitly `public` and `abstract`, and all of its data items (if any) are implicitly `public`, `static`, and `final`. An interface is a description of what a class does, but not how it is done; it declares method headers, but not the instructions within those methods. When you create a class that uses an interface, you include the keyword `implements` and the interface name in the class header. This notation requires class objects to include code for every method in the interface that has been implemented. Whereas using `extends` allows a subclass to use nonprivate, nonoverridden members of its parent's class, `implements` requires the subclass to implement its own version of each method.

Note

In English, an interface is a device or a system that unrelated entities use to interact. Within Java, an interface provides a way for unrelated objects to interact with each other. An interface is analogous to a protocol, which is an agreed-on behavior. In some respects, an `Automobile` can behave like an `InsuredItem`, and so can a `House`, a `TelevisionSet`, and a `JewelryPiece`.

As an example, recall the `Animal` and `Dog` classes from earlier in this chapter. **Figure 9-55** shows these classes, with `Dog` inheriting from `Animal`.

You can create a `Worker` interface, as shown in **Figure 9-56**. For simplicity, this example gives the `Worker` interface a single method named `work()`. When any class implements `Worker`, it either must include a `work()` method or the new class must be declared abstract, and then its descendants must implement the method.

Figure 9-55 The `Animal` and `Dog` classes

```
public abstract class Animal
{
    private String name;
    public abstract void speak();
    public String getName()
    {
        return name;
    }
    public void setName(String animalName)
    {
        name = animalName;
    }
}
public class Dog extends Animal
{
    public void speak()
    {
        System.out.println("Woof!");
    }
}
```

The WorkingDog class in **Figure 9-57** extends Dog and implements Worker. A WorkingDog contains a data field that a “regular” Dog does not—an integer that holds hours of training received. The WorkingDog class also contains get and set methods for this field. Because the WorkingDog class implements the Worker interface, it also must contain a work() method. In this example, the work() method calls the Dog speak() method, and then produces two more lines of output—a statement about working and the number of training hours.

Figure 9-57 The WorkingDog class

```
public class WorkingDog extends Dog implements Worker
{
    private int hoursOfTraining;
    public void setHoursOfTraining(int hrs)
    {
        hoursOfTraining = hrs;
    }
    public int getHoursOfTraining()
    {
        return hoursOfTraining;
    }
    public void work()
    {
        speak();
        System.out.println("I am a dog who works");
        System.out.println("I have " + hoursOfTraining +
            " hours of professional training!");
    }
}
```

Figure 9-56 The Worker interface

```
public interface Worker
{
    public abstract void work();
}
```

Note

As you know from other classes you have seen, a class can extend another class without implementing any interfaces. A class also can implement an interface even though it does not extend any other class. When a class both extends and implements, such as the WorkingDog class, by convention the implements clause follows the extends clause in the class header.

The DemoWorkingDogs application in **Figure 9-58** instantiates two WorkingDog objects. Each object can use the following methods:

- setName() and getName(), which WorkingDog inherits from the Animal class
- speak(), which WorkingDog inherits from the Dog class
- setHoursOfTraining() and getHoursOfTraining(), which are contained within the WorkingDog class
- work(), which the WorkingDog class was required to contain when it used the phrase implements Worker.

Figure 9-59 shows the output when the DemoWorkingDogs application executes. Each animal is introduced, then it “speaks,” and then each animal “works,” which includes speaking a second time. Each Animal can execute the speak() method implemented in its own class, and each can execute the work() method contained in the implemented interface. Of course, the WorkingDog class was not required to implement the Worker interface; instead, it could have just contained a work() method that all WorkingDog objects could use. If WorkingDog was the only class that would ever use work(), such an approach probably would be the best course of action. However, if many classes will be Workers—that is, require a work() method—they all can implement work(). If you already are familiar with the Worker interface and its method, when you glance at a class definition for a WorkingHorse, WorkingBird, Employee, or Machine and see that it implements Worker, you do not have to guess at the name of the method that shows the work the class objects perform. Notice that when a class implements

Figure 9-58 The DemoWorkingDogs application

```

public class DemoWorkingDogs
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        WorkingDog aSheepHerder = new WorkingDog();
        WorkingDog aSeeingEyeDog = new WorkingDog();
        aSheepHerder.setName("Simon, the Border Collie");
        aSeeingEyeDog.setName("Sophie, the German Shepherd");
        aSheepHerder.setHoursOfTraining(40);
        aSeeingEyeDog.setHoursOfTraining(300);

        System.out.println(aSheepHerder.getName() + " says ");
        aSheepHerder.speak();
        aSheepHerder.work();
        System.out.println(); //outputs a blank line for readability

        System.out.println(aSeeingEyeDog.getName() + " says ");
        aSeeingEyeDog.speak();
        aSeeingEyeDog.work();
    }
}

```

Figure 9-59 Output of the DemoWorkingDogs application

```

Simon, the Border Collie says
Woof!
Woof!
I am a dog who works
I have 40 hours of professional training!

Sophie, the German Shepherd says
Woof!
Woof!
I am a dog who works
I have 300 hours of professional training!

```

an interface, it represents a situation similar to inheritance. Just as a WorkingDog “is a” Dog and “is an” Animal, so too it “is a” Worker.

You can compare abstract classes and interfaces as follows:

- » Abstract classes and interfaces are similar in that you cannot instantiate concrete objects from either one.
- » Abstract classes differ from interfaces because abstract classes can contain nonabstract methods, but all methods within an interface must be abstract.
- » A class can inherit from only one abstract superclass, but it can implement any number of interfaces.

Table 9-3 summarizes the differences in the fields, constructors, and methods of abstract classes and interfaces.

Table 9-3 Comparing components of abstract classes and interfaces

	VARIABLES	CONSTRUCTORS	METHODS
Interface	All variables in an interface must be <code>public</code> , <code>static</code> , and <code>final</code> .	An interface has no constructor and cannot be instantiated.	All methods in an interface must be <code>public</code> , <code>abstract</code> , and <code>nonstatic</code> .
Abstract class	There are no restrictions on variables in an abstract class.	An abstract class's constructor is invoked when a child class object is instantiated.	There are no restrictions on methods in an abstract class, although an abstract class frequently contains one or more abstract methods.

Beginning programmers sometimes find it difficult to decide when to create an abstract superclass and when to create an interface. Remember, you create an abstract class when you want to provide data or methods that subclasses can inherit, but at the same time these subclasses maintain the ability to override the inherited methods.

Suppose that you create a `CardGame` class to use as a base class for different card games. It contains four methods named `shuffle()`, `deal()`, `displayRules()`, and `keepScore()`. The `shuffle()` method works the same way for every `CardGame`, so you write the statements for `shuffle()` within the superclass, and any `CardGame` objects you create later inherit `shuffle()`. The methods `deal()`, `displayRules()`, and `keepScore()` operate differently for every subclass (for example, for `TwoPlayerCardGames`, `FourPlayerCardGames`, `BettingCardGames`, and so on), so you force `CardGame` children to contain instructions for those methods by leaving them empty in the superclass. The `CardGame` class, therefore, should be an abstract superclass. When you write classes that extend the `CardGame` parent class, you inherit the `shuffle()` method, and write code within the `deal()`, `displayRules()`, and `keepScore()` methods for each specific child.

You create an interface when you know what actions you want to include, but you also want every user to separately define the behavior that must occur when the method executes. Suppose that you create a `MusicalInstrument` class to use as a base for different musical instrument object classes such as `Piano`, `Violin`, and `Drum`. The parent `MusicalInstrument` class contains methods such as `playNote()` and `outputSound()` that apply to every instrument, but you want to implement these methods differently for each type of instrument. By making `MusicalInstrument` an interface, you require every nonabstract subclass to code all the methods.

Note

An interface specifies only the messages to which an object can respond; an abstract class can include methods that contain the actual behavior the object performs when those messages are received.

You also create an interface when you want a class to implement behavior from more than one parent. For example, suppose that you want to create an interactive `NameThatInstrument` card game in which you play an instrument sound from the computer speaker, and ask players to identify the instrument they hear by clicking one of several cards that display instrument images. This game class could not extend from two classes, but it could extend from `CardGame` and implement `MusicalInstrument`.

Note

When you create a class and use the `implements` clause to implement an interface, but fail to code one of the interface's methods, the compiler error generated indicates that you must declare your class to be abstract. If you want your class to be used only for extending, you can make it abstract. However, if your intention is to create a class from which you can instantiate objects, do not make it abstract. Instead, find out which methods from the interface you have failed to implement within your class and code those methods.

Note

Java has many built-in interfaces with names such as `Serializable`, `Runnable`, `Externalizable`, and `Cloneable`. You will learn more about these interfaces as you continue to study Java.

Creating Interfaces to Store Related Constants

Interfaces can contain data fields, but they must be `public`, `static`, and `final`.

- It makes sense that interface data must not be `private` because interface methods cannot contain method bodies; without public method bodies, you have no way to retrieve `private` data.
- It also makes sense that the data fields in an interface are `static` because you cannot create interface objects.
- Finally, it makes sense that interface data fields are `final` because, without methods containing bodies, you have no way, other than at declaration, to set the data fields' values, and you have no way to change them.

Your purpose in creating an interface containing constants is to provide a set of data that a number of classes can use without having to redeclare the values. For example, the interface class in **Figure 9-60** provides a number of constants for a pizzeria. Any class written for the pizzeria can implement this interface and use the permanent values. **Figure 9-61** shows an example of one application that uses each value, and **Figure 9-62** shows the output. The application in Figure 9-61 needs only a declaration for the current special price; all the constants, such as the name of the pizzeria, are retrieved from the interface.

Figure 9-60 The PizzaConstants interface

```
public interface PizzaConstants
{
    public static final int SMALL_DIAMETER = 12;
    public static final int LARGE_DIAMETER = 16;
    public static final double TAX_RATE = 0.07;
    public static final String COMPANY = "Antonio's Pizzeria";
}
```

Figure 9-61 The PizzaDemo application

```
public class PizzaDemo implements PizzaConstants
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        double specialPrice = 11.25;
        System.out.println("Welcome to " + COMPANY);
        System.out.println("We are having a special offer:\n a " +
            SMALL_DIAMETER + " inch pizza with four toppings\n or a " +
            LARGE_DIAMETER +
            " inch pizza with one topping\n for only $" + specialPrice);
        System.out.println("With tax, that is only $" +
            (specialPrice + specialPrice * TAX_RATE));
    }
}
```

Figure 9-62 Output of the PizzaDemo application

```
Welcome to Antonio's Pizzeria
We are having a special offer:
a 12 inch pizza with four toppings
or a 16 inch pizza with one topping
for only $11.25
With tax, that is only $12.0375
```

Two Truths & a Lie | Creating and Using Interfaces

- Java's capability to inherit from more than one class is called multiple inheritance.
- All of the methods in an interface are implicitly `public` and `abstract`, and all of its data items (if any) are implicitly `public`, `static`, and `final`.
- When a class inherits from another, the child class can use the nonprivate, nonoverridden members of its parent's class, but when a class uses an interface, it must implement its own version of each method.

The false statement is #1. The ability to inherit from more than one class is called multiple inheritance, but Java does not have that ability.

You Do It | Using an Interface

In this section, you create an `Insured` interface for use with classes that represent objects that can be insured. For example, you might use this interface with classes such as `Jewelry` or `House`. Also in this section, you extend `Vehicle` to create an `InsuredCar` class that implements the `Insured` interface, and then you write a short program that instantiates an `InsuredCar` object.

1. Open a new file, and type the following `Insured` interface. A concrete class that implements `Insured` will be required to contain `setCoverage()` and `getCoverage()` methods because they are defined as abstract in the interface (as all methods in an interface must be).

```
public interface Insured
{
    public abstract void setCoverage();
    public abstract int getCoverage();
}
```

2. Save the file as `Insured.java` and compile it.
3. Open a new file, and start the `InsuredCar` class that extends `Vehicle` and implements `Insured`:

```
import javax.swing.*;
public class InsuredCar extends Vehicle implements Insured
{
```

4. Add a variable to hold the amount covered by the insurance:

```
private int coverage;
```

5. Add a constructor that calls the `Vehicle` superclass constructor, passing arguments for the `InsuredCar`'s power source and number of wheels.

```
public InsuredCar()
{
    super("gas", 4);
    setCoverage();
}
```

6. Implement the `setPrice()` method required by the `Vehicle` class. The method accepts the car's price from the user and enforces a maximum value of \$60,000.

```
public void setPrice()
{
    String entry;
    final int MAX = 60000;
    entry = JOptionPane.showInputDialog
        (null, "Enter car price ");
    price = Integer.parseInt(entry);
    if(price > MAX)
        price = MAX;
}
```

7. Implement the `setCoverage()` and `getCoverage()` methods required by the `Insured` class. The `setCoverage()` method sets the coverage value for an insured car to 90% of the car's price:

```
public void setCoverage()
{
    coverage = (int)(price * 0.9);
}
```

```
public int getCoverage()
{
    return coverage;
}
```

8. Create a `toString()` method, followed by a closing brace for the class:

```
public String toString()
{
    return("The insured car is powered by " +
        getPowerSource() + "; it has " + getWheels() +
        " wheels, costs $" + getPrice() +
        " and is insured for $" + getCoverage());
}
```

9. Save the file as `InsuredCar.java` and compile it.

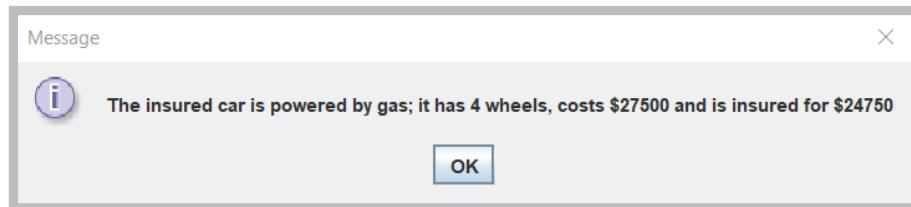
10. Create a demonstration program that instantiates an `InsuredCar` object and displays its values as follows:

```
import javax.swing.*;
public class InsuredCarDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        InsuredCar myCar = new InsuredCar();
        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null,
            myCar.toString());
    }
}
```

11. Save the file as `InsuredCarDemo.java`. Compile and execute it. You will be prompted to enter the car's price.

Figure 9-63 shows the output during a typical execution.

Figure 9-63 Typical output of the `InsuredCarDemo` program



9.13 Using records, Anonymous Inner Classes, and Lambda Expressions

Java provides many features that you could not appreciate until you understood a little more about classes, inheritance, hash codes, interfaces, and a few other more advanced topics. This section provides you some background in records, anonymous inner classes, and lambda expressions.

Using records

When programmers create classes, many require a lot of repetitious activity. If you create a class with 10 data fields, for example, you might code a constructor that sets the values for the fields and 10 get methods that each do nothing but return a field's value. Then, you might also want to create `equals()`, `hashCode()`, and `toString()` methods.

When you need a class that is intended to hold unchanging data, a lot of standard, tedious coding is needed to create all those components.

Java 16 and later versions include the **record** keyword, which can be used to declare a class that is meant to simply hold data that is not meant to change (in other words, is `final`), and that does not have elaborate or complicated get and set requirements. When you create a record, you code only field definitions. Then the constructor and methods to retrieve each field's value are generated automatically.

For example, suppose you need a class that holds data about a building, including a street address and the number of square feet. **Figure 9-64** shows a `BuildingClass` class with two `final` fields, a constructor that sets the field values, and two methods that retrieve the field values.

Figure 9-64 The `BuildingClass` class

```
public final class BuildingClass
{
    final String address;
    final int squareFeet;
    public BuildingClass(String address, int squareFeet)
    {
        this.address = address;
        this.squareFeet = squareFeet;
    }
    String address()
    {
        return address;
    }
    int squareFeet()
    {
        return squareFeet;
    }
}
```

As an alternative to writing this class, you can create a `Building` record, as shown in **Figure 9-65**. You use the keyword `record`, the record name (`Building`), and the parameters required by the constructor. All of the rest of the code is created for you.

Figure 9-65 The `Building` record

```
record Building(String address, int squareFeet)
{}
```

Note

In the declaration of the record in Figure 9-65, many programmers would place the opening and closing curly braces on the same line as the declaration. You should follow the standards used by your organization.

Figure 9-66 shows a program that declares a `Building` and passes a `String` and an `int` to the constructor. The program then uses two automatically created get methods. Notice that, like the `BuildingClass` class in Figure 9-64, the accessor methods do not include the prefix `get`—they use only the field names as method names. **Figure 9-67** shows the output.

Figure 9-66 The `TestBuildingRecord` application

```
public class TestBuildingRecord
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Building bldg = new Building("47 Oak Street", 600);
        System.out.println("The address is " + bldg.address());
        System.out.println("Square feet: " + bldg.squareFeet());
    }
}
```

Figure 9-67 Output of the `TestBuildingRecord` application

```
The address is 47 Oak Street
Square feet: 600
```

Whenever you create a record, you automatically receive the following:

- › A private final field for each component
- › A public constructor whose parameters are derived from the components list in the record definition
- › A public accessor method for each component with the same name and data type as the component
- › Implementations of equals(), hashCode(), and toString()

Java records have limitations. For example, if you need set methods or more complicated get methods, you have to create a class, not a record. Additionally, records cannot extend a class, cannot contain non-final instance fields (although they can contain static fields), and cannot be abstract. If you need a class that can accept those limitations, you can consider creating a record.

Note

Programmers might use the acronym **POJO** to describe a record. POJO stands for *Plain Old Java Object*, which is one that has no fancy features.

Using Anonymous Inner Classes

An **anonymous inner class** is a class that has no name and is defined inside another class. You create an anonymous inner class to save some work when you need a simple class that is instantiated only once in a program. You use the new operator to create an inner class and to simultaneously create an instance of it. The instance either extends a superclass or implements an interface, but you do not use the keyword extends or implements when defining the class.

For example, **Figure 9-68** shows the Worker interface, repeated from Figure 9-56.

Figure 9-68 The Worker interface

```
public interface Worker
{
    public abstract void work();
}
```

Figure 9-69 contains a program that demonstrates using an anonymous inner class. The program prompts the user for a capacity for a washing machine that “works.” Rather than create a separate file to define a class named WashingMachine and have it implement Worker, the program creates a washingMachine object without naming a class for it, saving the step of creating a separate file for a named class. The code for the object overrides the work() method, displaying information about how the washingMachine works.

Figure 9-69 The DemoAnonymousClass program

```
import java.util.Scanner;
public class DemoAnonymousClass
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int pounds;
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Enter capacity for washing machine" +
            " in pounds of laundry > ");
        pounds = input.nextInt();
        Worker washingMachine = new Worker()
        {
            public void work()
            {
                System.out.println("I get clothes clean");
                System.out.println(" and can handle " + pounds +
                    " pounds of laundry at a time.");
            }
        };
        washingMachine.work();
    }
}
```

In Figure 9-69, notice that the code for the object includes a semicolon after the closing curly brace; if you omit the semicolon, you receive a compiler error. The last statement in the program calls the `work()` method with the `washingMachine` object. **Figure 9-70** shows the output.

Figure 9-70 Typical execution of the `DemoAnonymousClass` program

```
Enter capacity for washing machine in pounds of laundry >> 12
I get clothes clean
    and can handle 12 pounds of laundry at a time.
```

An anonymous inner class must either implement an interface or extend another class. (If it extends a class, the superclass must have a default constructor that executes when the new object is created.) An anonymous inner class must override all the abstract methods contained in the interface or superclass. An anonymous inner class can access the variables of the method in which it resides, as long as the variables are declared prior to the anonymous class definition. However, the variables accessed either must be `final` or effectively final. An **effectively final variable** is one whose value is assigned only once. In other words, for example, in the program in Figure 9-69, the `pounds` variable could not be used in a loop that is repeatedly assigned new values.

Using Lambda Expressions

A **lambda expression** creates an object that implements a specific type of interface known as a functional interface. A **functional interface** is an interface that contains just one abstract method. In other words, the `Worker` interface qualifies as a functional interface.

Figure 9-71 contains a program that demonstrates a lambda expression. When an interface contains just one abstract method, you do not need to create an anonymous class. Instead, as shown in the figure, you can just create an object that implements the interface directly.

Figure 9-71 The `DemoLambda` program

```
import java.util.Scanner;
public class DemoLambda
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int pounds;
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Enter capacity for washing machine" +
            " in pounds of laundry >> ");
        pounds = input.nextInt();
        Worker washingMachine = () ->
        {
            System.out.println("I get clothes clean");
            System.out.println(" and can handle " + pounds +
                " pounds of laundry at a time.");
        };
        washingMachine.work();
    }
}
```

In the `DemoLambda` program, the `washingMachine` object implements the `Worker` interface. Because the interface contains only one method, the lambda expression knows to use that method. The empty parentheses indicate that the `work()` method takes no parameters; if it did, you could list comma-separated arguments between the parentheses. The **lambda operator** is composed of two characters—a minus sign and a greater-than sign. The code to implement the method is placed between curly braces; if the implementation required only one code line, then the braces could be omitted. The execution of the program in Figure 9-71 is identical to that shown in Figure 9-70.

Note

The lambda expression gets its name from *lambda calculus*, which is a system for developing logic introduced by mathematician Alonzo Church in the 1930s.

Two Truths & a Lie | Using records, Anonymous Inner Classes, and Lambda Expressions

1. When you create a record, a constructor and accessor methods are created for you automatically.
2. You use the keyword `extends` or `implements` when defining an anonymous inner class.
3. A lambda expression creates an object that implements an interface that contains one abstract method.

The false statement is #2. You use neither `extends` nor `implements` when defining an anonymous inner class.

Don't Do It

- › Don't capitalize the `o` in the `instanceof` operator. Although the second word in an identifier frequently is capitalized in Java, `instanceof` is an exception.
- › Don't try to directly access private superclass members from a subclass.
- › Don't forget to call a superclass constructor within a subclass constructor if the superclass does not contain a default constructor.
- › Don't try to override a `final` method in an extended class.
- › Don't try to extend a `final` class.
- › Don't write a body for an abstract method.
- › Don't forget to end an abstract method header with a semicolon.
- › Don't forget to override any abstract methods in any subclasses you derive.
- › Don't mistakenly overload an abstract method instead of overriding it; the subclass method must have the same parameter list as the parent's abstract method.
- › Don't try to instantiate an abstract class object.
- › Don't forget to override all the methods in an interface that you implement.

Summary

- › In Java, inheritance is a mechanism that enables one class to inherit both the behavior and the attributes of another class. Using inheritance saves time because the original fields and methods already exist, have been tested, and are familiar to users. A class that is used as a basis for inheritance is a base class. A class you create that inherits from a base class is called a derived class. You can use the terms *superclass* and *subclass* as synonyms for base class and derived class; you also can use the terms *parent class* and *child class*.
- › You use the keyword `extends` to achieve inheritance in Java. A parent class object does not have access to its child's data and methods, but when you create a subclass by extending an existing class, the new subclass contains data and methods that were defined in the original superclass.

- › Polymorphism is the act of using the same method name to indicate different implementations for methods based on the type of object. You use polymorphism when you override a superclass method in a subclass by creating a method with the same name and parameter list.
- › When you create any subclass object, the superclass constructor must execute first, and *then* the subclass constructor executes. When a superclass contains only constructors that require arguments, you must include at least one constructor for each subclass you create. Subclass constructors can contain any number of statements, but the first statement within each constructor must call the superclass constructor. When a superclass requires parameters upon instantiation, even if you have no other reason to create a subclass constructor, you must write the subclass constructor so it can call the constructor in its superclass.
- › A subclass can use any nonprivate methods of its superclass, but if the method is overridden in the child class, you can use the keyword `super` to access the parent class method.
- › Subclasses inherit all the data and methods of their superclasses, but private members of the parent class are not accessible with a child class's methods. However, if you create a protected data field or method, it can be used within its own class or in any classes extended from that class, but it cannot be used by "outside" classes.
- › A subclass cannot override methods that are declared `static` in the superclass. A subclass can *hide* a static method in the superclass by declaring a `static` method in the subclass with the same signature as the `static` method in the superclass. A subclass cannot override methods that are declared `final` in the superclass or methods declared within a `final` class.
- › A class that you create only to extend from, but not to instantiate from, is an abstract class. Usually, abstract classes contain one or more abstract methods—methods with no method statements. A subclass method overrides any inherited abstract superclass method.
- › Every subclass object "is an" instance of its superclass, so you can convert subclass objects to superclass objects. The ability of a program to select the correct method during execution based on argument type is known as dynamic method binding. You can create an array of superclass object references but store subclass instances in it.
- › An array of superclass references can hold subclass references.
- › Every class in Java is an extension of the `Object` class, whether or not you explicitly extend it. Every class inherits several methods from `Object`, including `toString()`, which converts an `Object` into a `String`, and `equals()`, which returns a boolean value indicating whether one object is a reference to another. You can override or overload these methods to make them more useful for your classes.
- › An interface is similar to a class, but all of its methods are implicitly `public` and `abstract`, and all of its data (if any) is implicitly `public`, `static`, and `final`. When you create a class that uses an interface, you include the keyword `implements` and the interface name in the class header. This notation serves to require class objects to include code for all the methods in the interface.
- › Abstract classes and interfaces are similar in that you cannot instantiate concrete objects from either. Abstract classes differ from interfaces because abstract classes can contain nonabstract methods, but all methods within an interface must be abstract. A class can inherit from only one abstract superclass, but it can implement any number of interfaces.
- › The `record` keyword can be used to declare a class that is meant to simply hold data that is not meant to change. When you create a `record`, you code only field definitions. Then the constructor and methods to retrieve each field's value are generated automatically. An anonymous inner class is a class that has no name and is defined inside another class. You create an anonymous inner class to save some work when you need a simple class that is instantiated only once in a program. A lambda expression creates an object that implements a functional interface that contains just one abstract method. The lambda operator is composed of two characters—a minus sign and a greater-than sign.



Key Terms

@Override annotation	fixed method binding	parent class
abstract class	fragile	protected access
abstract method	functional interface	pure polymorphism
ad-hoc polymorphism	hash code	record
aggregation	inclusion polymorphism	static method binding
anonymous inner class	Inlining	subclass
base class	interface	subtype polymorphism
child class	lambda expression	super
concrete class	lambda operator	superclass
containment	late method binding	upcast
derived class	multiple inheritance	virtual class
dynamic method binding	nonabstract method	virtual method calls
effectively final variable	Object class	
extends	override	



Review Questions

1. Employing inheritance reduces errors because _____.
 - a. subclasses have access to fewer data fields
 - b. subclasses have access to fewer methods
 - c. methods that have been created in the superclass can be copied and pasted into the subclass
 - d. many of the methods a subclass needs have already been used and tested

2. A base class can also be called a _____.
 - a. child class
 - b. superclass
 - c. derived class
 - d. subclass

3. Which of the following choices is the best example of a parent class/child class relationship?
 - a. BodyOfWater/River
 - b. Apple/Banana
 - c. Spaniel/Dog
 - d. Sparrow/Bird

4. A class named Building has a public, nonstatic method named getFloors(). If School is a child class of Building, and modelHigh is an object of type School, which of the following statements is valid?
 - a. Building.getFloors();
 - b. School.getFloors();
 - c. modelHigh.getFloors();
 - d. getFloors();

5. When a subclass method has the same name and argument types as a superclass method, the subclass method _____ the superclass method.
 - a. overrides
 - b. overuses
 - c. overloads
 - d. overcompensates

6. When you instantiate an object that is a member of a subclass, the _____ constructor executes first.
- a. subclass
 - b. child class
 - c. extended class
 - d. parent class
7. If the only constructor in a superclass requires arguments, its subclass _____.
- a. must contain a constructor
 - b. must not contain a constructor
 - c. must contain a constructor that requires arguments
 - d. must not contain a constructor that requires arguments
8. A child class `Motorcycle` extends a parent class `Vehicle`. Each class constructor requires one `String` argument. The `Motorcycle` class constructor can call the `Vehicle` class constructor with the statement _____.
- a. `Vehicle ("Honda") ;`
 - b. `Motorcycle ("Harley") ;`
 - c. `super ("Suzuki") ;`
 - d. `Vehicle (Motorcycle ("Yamaha")) ;`
9. If you create a data field or method that is _____, it can be used within its own class or in any classes extended from that class.
- a. public
 - b. protected
 - c. private
 - d. public or protected
10. You use a _____ method access specifier when you create methods for which you want to prevent overriding in extended classes.
- a. public
 - b. protected
 - c. final
 - d. subclass
11. When a parent class contains a `static` method, child classes _____ override it.
- a. frequently
 - b. seldom
 - c. must
 - d. cannot
12. Abstract classes differ from other classes in that you _____.
- a. must not code any methods within them
 - b. must instantiate objects from them
 - c. cannot instantiate objects from them
 - d. cannot have data fields within them
13. An abstract class `Dwelling` has two subclasses, `SingleFamily` and `MultiFamily`. None of the constructors for these classes requires any arguments. Which of the following statements is legal?
- a. `Dwelling myHome = new Dwelling();`
 - b. `SingleFamily myHome = new SingleFamily();`
 - c. `MultiFamily myHome = new Dwelling();`
 - d. `MultiFamily myHome = new SingleFamily();`
14. An abstract class `Employee` has two subclasses, `Permanent` and `Temporary`. The `Employee` class contains an abstract method named `setType()`. Before you can instantiate `Permanent` and `Temporary` objects, which of the following statements must be true?
- a. You must code statements for the `setType()` method within the `Permanent` class.
 - b. You must code statements for the `setType()` method within both the `Permanent` and `Temporary` classes.
 - c. You must not code statements for the `setType()` method within either the `Permanent` or `Temporary` class.
 - d. You can code statements for the `setType()` method within the `Permanent` class or the `Temporary` class, but not both.

15. Which of the following statements is true?
- a. Superclass objects are members of their subclass.
 - b. Superclasses can contain abstract methods.
 - c. You can create an abstract class object using the new operator.
 - d. An abstract class cannot contain an abstract method.
16. When you create a _____ in Java, you create a variable name in which you can hold the memory address of an object.
- a. field
 - b. reference
 - c. recommendation
 - d. pointer
17. An application's ability to select the correct subclass method to execute is known as _____ method binding.
- a. polymorphic
 - b. intelligent
 - c. early
 - d. dynamic
18. You _____ override the `toString()` method in any class you create.
- a. cannot
 - b. can
 - c. must
 - d. must implement `StringListener` to
19. The `Object` class `equals()` method takes _____.
- a. no arguments
 - b. one argument
 - c. two arguments
 - d. as many arguments as you need
20. The alternative to multiple inheritance in Java is known as a(n) _____.
- a. super object
 - b. abstract class
 - c. interface
 - d. lambda operator



Programming Exercises

1.
 - a. Create a class named `Horse` that contains data fields for the name, color, and birth year. Include get and set methods for these fields. Save the file as `Horse.java`.
 - b. Create a subclass of `Horse` named `RaceHorse`, which contains an additional field that holds the number of races in which the `Horse` has competed and additional methods to get and set the new field. Save the file as `RaceHorse.java`.
 - c. Write an application that prompts the user for appropriate field values and demonstrates using objects of each class, `Horse` and `RaceHorse`. Save the file as `DemoHorses.java`.
2.
 - a. Create a class named `Candle` for a candle-making business. Include data fields for `color`, `height`, and `price`. Create get methods for all three fields. Create set methods for `color` and `height`, but not for `price`. Instead, when `height` is set, determine the `price` as \$2 per inch. Save the file as `Candle.java`.
 - b. Create a child class named `ScentedCandle` that contains an additional data field named `scent` and methods to get and set it. In the child class, override the parent's method that sets the `height` to set the `price` of a `ScentedCandle` object at \$3 per inch. Save the file as `ScentedCandle.java`.
 - c. Write an application that instantiates a `Candle` object and `ScentedCandle` object. Prompt the user for values for each object. For the `ScentedCandle`, offer the user at least four choices for the scent, such as `gardenia`, but you do not need to verify that the user enters one of the four choices. Display the details for each `Candle`. Save the file as `DemoCandles.java`.

3.
 - a. Create a `TeeShirt` class for Tamjeed's Tee Shirt Company. Fields include an order number, size, color, and price. Create set methods for the order number, size, and color, and create get methods for all four fields. The price is determined by the size: \$22.99 for XXL or XXXL, and \$19.99 for all other sizes. Save the file as `TeeShirt.java`.
 - b. Create a subclass named `CustomTee` that descends from `TeeShirt` and includes a field to hold the slogan requested for the shirt. Include get and set methods for this field. Save the file as `CustomTee.java`.
 - c. Write an application that prompts a user for values, creates two objects of each class, and demonstrates that all the methods work correctly. Save the file as `DemoTees.java`.
4.
 - a. Create a class named `Poem` that contains fields for the name of the Poem and the number of lines in it. Include a constructor that requires values for both fields. Also include get methods to retrieve field values. Save the file as `Poem.java`.
 - b. Create three subclasses: `Couplet`, `Limerick`, and `Haiku`. The constructor for each subclass requires only a title; the lines field is set using a constant value. A couplet has two lines, a limerick has five lines, and a haiku has three lines. Save the files as `Couplet.java`, `Limerick.java`, and `Haiku.java`.
 - c. Create an application that prompts the user for the type of Poem to be created using an integer 1 through 4. Continue to reprompt the user until a valid number is entered. Then prompt the user for the title. If it is a plain `Poem`, also prompt the user for the number of lines. Instantiate the correct object, and display its details. Save the file as `DemoPoems.java`.
5.
 - a. Create a class named `BaseballGame` that contains data fields for two team names. Include a two-dimensional array that can hold the scores for each of two teams in each inning of the game. The `BaseballGame` class includes a `final int` that represents the number of innings in a `BaseballGame`—nine. The constructor initializes the two-dimensional array to dummy values for each team for the number of innings. Create set methods for the team names and the individual inning scores. The `setScore()` method requires parameters for the team, inning, and score for that inning. Create get methods for the names and inning scores. Save the file as `BaseballGame.java`.
 - b. Create two subclasses from `BaseballGame`: `HighSchoolBaseballGame` and `LittleLeagueBaseballGame`. High school baseball games have seven innings, and Little League games have six innings; override the parent class `final int` to represent the correct number of innings for each subclass. The constructor for each class should set the scores to a default value for the appropriate number of innings. Save the files as `HighSchoolBaseballGame.java` and `LittleLeagueBaseballGame.java`.
 - c. Write an application that allows the user to select a game type and enter two team names. Then, for each inning, allow the user to enter an inning score for each team and display the running scores so far. After all the innings are complete, display a message indicating which team won or if the result was a tie. Save the file as `DemoBaseballGame.java`.
6.
 - a. Create a class named `Pizza` with a `String` array data field that can hold the names of up to 10 pizza toppings. Also include a field for the price. Include a constructor that takes two parameters: the array of toppings and the number of toppings stored in the list. The constructor creates a `String` description from the list of toppings, adding a comma between each topping. It also sets the price at \$14 plus \$2 for each topping. Include a `toString()` method to display the `Pizza` description and price. Save the file as `Pizza.java`.
 - b. Create a subclass named `DeliveryPizza` that inherits from `Pizza` but adds a numeric delivery fee and a `String` delivery address. The constructor's parameters include the array of toppings, the delivery address, and the number of toppings. The delivery fee is \$3 if the `Pizza` ordered costs more than \$18; otherwise, the delivery fee is \$5. Save the file as `DeliveryPizza.java`.
 - c. Write an application that prompts the user for topping values for a `Pizza`. Allow the user to continually enter toppings until entering a QUIT constant or reaching 10 toppings. Also ask the user whether the

Pizza is to be delivered. If the Pizza is to be delivered, prompt the user for the delivery address and construct a `DeliveryPizza` object; otherwise, construct a `Pizza` object. Then, display all the values for the `Pizza`. Save the file as `DemoPizza.java`.

7.
 - a. Create a class named `Rock` that acts as a superclass for rock samples collected and catalogued by a natural history museum. The `Rock` class contains fields for a number of samples, a description of the type of rock, and the weight of the rock in grams. Include a constructor that accepts parameters for the sample number and weight. The `Rock` constructor sets the description value to *Unclassified*. Include get methods for each field. Save the file as `Rock.java`.
 - b. Create three child classes named `IgneousRock`, `SedimentaryRock`, and `MetamorphicRock`. The constructors for these classes require parameters for the sample number and weight. Search the Internet for a brief description of each rock type and assign it to the description field. Save the files as `IgneousRock.java`, `SedimentaryRock.java`, and `MetamorphicRock.java`.
 - c. Create an application that prompts the user for the type of `Rock` collected. If the user does not enter *U*, *I*, *S*, or *M* for the Rock type, then create a `Rock` with sample number 0 and weight 0. If the user selects a valid Rock type, then prompt the user for the sample number and the weight. Create the appropriate type of `Rock`, then pass it to a method that accepts a `Rock` parameter and displays all the details for the `Rock`. Save the file as `DemoRocks.java`.
8.
 - a. Create an abstract class named `Book`. Include a `String` field for the Book's title and a `double` field for the book's price. Within the class, include a constructor that requires the book title, and add two get methods—one that returns the title and one that returns the price. Include an abstract method named `setPrice()`. Save the file as `Book.java`.
 - b. Create two child classes of `Book`: `Fiction` and `NonFiction`. Each must include a `setPrice()` method that sets the price for all `Fiction` Books to \$24.99 and for all `NonFiction` Books to \$37.99. Write a constructor for each subclass, and include a call to `setPrice()` within each. Save the files as `Fiction.java` and `NonFiction.java`.
 - c. Write an application demonstrating that you can create both a `Fiction` and `NonFiction` Book, prompt the user for values, and display their fields. Save the file as `UseBook.java`.
 - d. Write an application named `BookArray` in which you create an array that holds 10 Books, some `Fiction` and some `NonFiction`. Using a `for` loop, prompt the user for a title and whether the Book is fiction or nonfiction (*F* or *N*). Create the appropriate book type and store it in the array. If the user does not select *F* or *N*, reprompt the user. In another `for` loop, display details about all 10 Books. Save the file as `BookArray.java`.
9.
 - a. The Talk-A-Lot Cell Phone Company provides phone services for its customers. Create an abstract class named `PhoneCall` that includes a `String` field for a phone number and a `double` field for the price of the call. Also include a constructor that requires a phone number parameter and that sets the price to 0.0. Include a `set` method for the price. Also include three abstract get methods—one that returns the phone number, another that returns the price of the call, and a third that displays information about the call. Save the file as `PhoneCall.java`.
 - b. Create two child classes of `PhoneCall`: `IncomingPhoneCall` and `OutgoingPhoneCall`. The `IncomingPhoneCall` constructor passes its phone number parameter to its parent's constructor and sets the price of the call to 2 cents. The method that displays the phone call information displays the phone number, the rate, and the price of the call (which is the same as the rate). The `OutgoingPhoneCall` class includes an additional field that holds the time of the call in minutes. The constructor requires both a phone number and the time. The price is 4 cents per minute, and the display method shows the details of the call, including the phone number, the rate per minute, the number of minutes, and the total price. Save the files as `IncomingPhoneCall.java` and `OutgoingPhoneCall.java`.

- c. Write an application in which you declare a `PhoneCall` reference. Then continually prompt the user for a type of call until a sentinel value is entered. Create either an `IncomingPhoneCall` object or an `OutgoingPhoneCall` object and assign it to the `PhoneCall` reference. Then display the data for the object. Save the file as **DemoPhoneCalls.java**.
10. a. Create an abstract `Division` class with fields for a company's division name and account number, and an abstract `display()` method. Use a constructor in the superclass that requires values for both fields. Save the file as **Division.java**.
- b. Create two subclasses named `InternationalDivision` and `DomesticDivision`. The `InternationalDivision` subclass includes a field for the country in which the division is located and a field for the language spoken; its constructor requires both. The `DomesticDivision` subclass includes a field for the state in which the division is located; a value for this field is required by the constructor. Save the files as **InternationalDivision.java** and **DomesticDivision.java**.
- c. Write an application named `UseDivision` that creates a `Division` reference. Ask the user whether a `DomesticDivision` or `InternationalDivision` object should be created. Prompt for appropriate values and assign a new subclass object to the `Division` reference. Then display the details of the created object. Save the file as **UseDivision.java**.
11. a. Create a class named `Blanket` with fields for a `Blanket`'s size, color, material, and price. Include a constructor that sets default values for the fields as *Twin, white, cotton, and \$30.00*. Include a set method for each of the first three fields. The method that sets size adds \$10 to the base price for a double blanket, \$25 for a queen blanket, and \$40 for a king. The method that sets the material adds \$20 to the price for wool and \$45 to the price for cashmere. In other words, the price for a king-sized cashmere blanket is \$115. Whenever the size or material is invalid, reset the blanket to the default values. Include a `toString()` method that returns a description of the blanket. Save the file as **Blanket.java**.
- b. Create a child class named `ElectricBlanket` that extends `Blanket` and includes two additional fields: one for the number of heat settings and one for whether the `ElectricBlanket` has an automatic shutoff feature. Default values are one heat setting and no automatic shutoff. Include get and set methods for the fields. Do not allow the number of settings to be fewer than one or more than five; if it is, use the default setting of 1. Add a \$5.75 premium to the price if the blanket has the automatic shutoff feature. Also include a `toString()` method that calls the parent class `toString()` method and combines the returned value with data about the new fields to return a complete description of features. Save the file as **ElectricBlanket.java**.
- c. Create an application that creates a `Blanket` and displays the starting values. Then, continually prompt the user for a `Blanket` material. Display the values, prompt the user for a size, and display the values again. Continue to get new material and size values until a sentinel value is entered. Then do the same for an `ElectricBlanket`, including allowing the user to change the number of settings and whether the `ElectricBlanket` has the automatic shutoff feature. Save the file as **DemoBlankets.java**.
12. a. Create an interface named `Turner`, with a single method named `turn()`. Save the file as **Turner.java**.
- b. Create a class named `Leaf` that implements `turn()` to display *Changing colors*. Create a class named `Page` that implements `turn()` to display *Going to the next page*. Create a class named `Pancake` that implements `turn()` to display *Flipping*. Save the files as **Leaf.java**, **Page.java**, and **Pancake.java**.
- c. Write an application named `DemoTurners` that prompts the user to enter a type of turner and demonstrates the `turn()` method for the class. Save the file as **DemoTurners.java**.
- d. Think of two more objects that use `turn()`, create classes for them, and then add objects to the `DemoTurners` application, renaming it **DemoTurners2.java**. Save the files, using the names of new objects that use `turn()`.

13. a. Create an abstract class called `GeometricFigure`. Each figure includes a height, a width, and a `String` figure type. Include an abstract method to determine the area of the figure. Save the file as `GeometricFigure.java`.
- b. Create two subclasses of `GeometricFigure` called `Square` and `Triangle`. Include a field in each to hold the area. Provide methods as necessary. Save the files as `Square.java` and `Triangle.java`.
- c. Create an application that prompts the user for values for at least five objects that can each be a `Square` or a `Triangle`, and store them in an array of `GeometricFigures`. Then display the figure type, height, width, and area of each `GeometricFigure`. Save the file as `UseGeometric.java`.
- d. Create an interface named `SidedObject` that contains a method called `displaySides()`; this method displays a `String` that explains the number of sides an object possesses. Save the file as `SidedObject.java`.
- e. Modify the `GeometricFigure` class to implement `SidedObject`. Make the `displaySides()` method abstract. Save the class as `GeometricFigure2.java`.
- f. Modify `Square` and `Triangle` to include implementations of the `displaySides()` method. Save the files as `Square2.java` and `Triangle2.java`.
- g. Modify the `UseGeometric` class to use the new class and interface when creating the array of five objects. Save the class as `UseGeometric2.java`.
14. a. Create an interface called `Runner`. The interface has an abstract method called `run()`. Save the file as `Runner.java`.
- b. Create classes called `Machine`, `Athlete`, and `PoliticalCandidate` that all implement `Runner`. The `run()` method displays a message describing the meaning of *run* to each class. Save the files as `Machine.java`, `Athlete.java`, and `PoliticalCandidate.java`.
- c. Create an application that prompts the user for the type of object to create. Create it, and display the message that describes *run* for the class. Save the file as `DemoRunners.java`.
15. a. Create a record named `Inventor` that stores two `Strings`: the name of an inventor and the inventor's country of origin. Save the file as `Inventor.java`.
- b. Create an `Invention` class with three fields: a `String` description of the invention, an `Inventor` object, and a `LocalDate` object that holds the date of the `Invention`. Create a constructor that requires values for all three fields and a `toString()` method that constructs a `String` that displays all the data about the `Invention`. Save the file as `Invention.java`.
- c. Write an `InventionDemo` application that prompts the user for all the data needed to create an `Invention` and then uses the `toString()` method to display the data. Save the file as `InventionDemo.java`.

Debugging Exercises

- Each of the following files in the Chapter09 folder of your downloadable student files has syntax and/or logic errors. In each case, determine the problem and fix the program. After you correct the errors, save each file using the same filename preceded with *Fix*. For example, `DebugNine1.java` will become `FixDebugNine1.java`.
 - a. `DebugNine1.java`
 - b. `DebugNine2.java`
 - c. `DebugNine3.java`
 - d. `DebugNine4.java`
 - e. Ten other Debug files are available in the Chapter09 folder; these files are used by the DebugNine exercises.

Game Zone

1.
 - a. Create a `Die` class that you can use to instantiate objects that each hold a value from 1 through 6. The field that holds the value of the `Die` should be `protected`, which will allow a child class to access the value. Save the file as `Die.java`.
 - b. Create a `LoadedDie` class that can be used to give a player a slight advantage over the computer. A `LoadedDie` never rolls a 1; it rolls only values 2 through 6. Save the file as `LoadedDie.java`.
 - c. Create a program that rolls two `Die` objects against each other 1,000 times and counts the number of times the first `Die` has a higher value than the other `Die`. Then roll a `Die` object against a `LoadedDie` object 1,000 times, and count the number of times the `Die` wins. Display the results. Save the application as `TestLoadedDie.java`. **Figure 9-72** shows two typical executions.

Figure 9-72 Two typical executions of the `TestLoadedDie` application

```
With two regular dice, the first die won 421 times out of 1000
With one die and one loaded die, the first die won 247 times out of 1000
```

```
With two regular dice, the first die won 403 times out of 1000
With one die and one loaded die, the first die won 293 times out of 1000
```

2.
 - a. Create an abstract `Alien` class. Include at least three `protected` data members of your choice, such as the number of eyes the `Alien` has. Include a constructor that requires a value for each data field and a `toString()` method that returns a `String` containing a complete description of the `Alien`. Save the file as `Alien.java`.
 - b. Create two classes—`Martian` and `Jupiterian`—that descend from `Alien`. Supply each with a constructor that sets the `Alien` data fields with values you choose. For example, you can decide that a `Martian` has four eyes but a `Jupiterian` has only two. Save the files as `Martian.java` and `Jupiterian.java`.
 - c. Create an application that instantiates one `Martian` and one `Jupiterian`. Call the `toString()` method with each object and display the results. Save the application as `CreateAliens.java`.
3.
 - a. Create a `Card` class that holds a suit and value for each `Card` object. Save the file as `Card.java`.
 - b. Create an abstract `CardGame` class similar to the one described in this chapter. The class contains a virtual deck of 52 playing cards that uses a `Card` class that holds a suit and value for each `Card` object. It also contains an integer field that holds the number of cards dealt to a player in a particular game. The class contains a constructor that initializes the deck of cards with appropriate values (for example, *King of Hearts*), and a `shuffle()` method that randomly arranges the positions of the `Cards` in the array. The class also contains two abstract methods: `displayDescription()`, which displays a brief description of the game in each of the child classes, and `deal()`, which deals the appropriate number of `Card` objects to one player of a game. Save the file as `CardGame.java`.
 - c. Create two child classes that extend `CardGame`. You can choose any games you prefer. For example, you might create a `Poker` class and a `Bridge` class. Create a constructor for each child class that initializes the field that holds the number of cards dealt to the correct value. (For example, in standard poker, a player receives 5 cards, but in bridge, a player receives 13.) Create an appropriate `displayDescription()` and `deal()` method for each child class. Save each file using an appropriate name—for example, `Poker.java` or `Bridge.java`.
 - d. Create an application that instantiates one object of each game type and demonstrates that the methods work correctly. Save the application as `PlayCardGames.java`.



Case Problems

1.
 - a. In Chapter 8, you created an `Event` class for Yummy Catering. Now extend the class to create a `DinnerEvent` class. In the extended class, include four new integer fields that represent numeric choices for an entrée, two side dishes, and a dessert for each `DinnerEvent` object. Also include three final arrays that contain `String` menu options for entrées, side dishes, and desserts, and store at least three choices in each array. Create a `DinnerEvent` constructor that requires arguments for an event number and number of guests, and integer menu choices for one entrée, two side dishes, and one dessert. Pass the first two parameters to the `Event` constructor, and assign the last four parameters to the appropriate local fields. Also include a `getMenu()` method that builds and returns a `String` including the `Strings` for the four menu choices. Save the file as `DinnerEvent.java`.
 - b. In Chapter 8, you also created an `EventDemo` program for Yummy Catering. The program uses an array of `Event` objects and allows the user to sort `Events` in ascending order by event number, number of guests, or event type. Now modify the program to use an array of four `DinnerEvent` objects. Prompt the user for all values for each object, and then allow the user to continually sort the `DinnerEvent` descriptions by event number, number of guests, or event type. Save the file as `DinnerEventDemo.java`.
2.
 - a. In Chapter 8, you created a `Rental` class for Sunshine Seashore Supplies. Now extend the class to create a `LessonWithRental` class. In the extended class, include a new boolean field that indicates whether a lesson is required or optional for the type of equipment rented. Also include a final array that contains `Strings` representing the names of the instructors for each of the eight equipment types, and store names that you choose in the array. Create a `LessonWithRental` constructor that requires arguments for a contract number, minutes for the rental, and an integer equipment type. Pass the first two parameters to the `Rental` constructor, and assign the last parameter to the equipment type. For the first two equipment types (personal watercraft and pontoon boat), set the boolean lesson required field to `true`; otherwise, set it to `false`. Also include a `getInstructor()` method that builds and returns a `String` including the `String` for the equipment type, a message that indicates whether a lesson is required, and the instructor's name. Save the file as `LessonWithRental.java`.
 - b. Create a program that uses an array of four `LessonWithRental` objects. Prompt the user for all values for each object, and then allow the user to continually sort the `LessonWithRental` descriptions by contract number, equipment type, or price. Confirm that an appropriate message is displayed when a `Rental` requires a lesson. Save the file as `LessonWithRentalDemo.java`.

Exception Handling

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to:

- 10.1 Describe exceptions
- 10.2 Try code and catch exceptions
- 10.3 Throw and catch multiple exceptions
- 10.4 Use the `finally` block
- 10.5 Appreciate the advantages of exception handling
- 10.6 Specify the exceptions that a method can throw
- 10.7 Trace exceptions through the call stack
- 10.8 Create your own `Exception` classes
- 10.9 Use an assertion
- 10.10 Provide a virtual keyboard for the user

10.1 Learning About Exceptions

An **exception** is an unexpected or error condition. The programs you write can generate many types of potential exceptions. As examples:

- › A program might issue a command to read a file from a disk, but the file does not exist there.
- › A program might attempt to write data to a disk, but the disk is full or unformatted.
- › A program might ask for user input, but the user enters an invalid data type.
- › A program might attempt to divide a value by 0.
- › A program might try to access an array with a subscript that is too large or too small.

These errors are called exceptions because, presumably, they are not usual occurrences; they are “exceptional.” **Exception handling** is the name for the object-oriented techniques that manage or resolve such errors. An unplanned exception that occurs during a program’s execution is also called a **runtime exception**, in contrast with a syntax error that is discovered during program compilation.

Note

An exception is not necessarily “bad.” For example, you might have been storing your company’s annual profit in an `int`, and without warning, the profit exceeds the highest value that an `int` can hold. That is good news, but it still is an exception.

Java includes two basic classes of errors: `Error` and `Exception`. Both of these classes descend from the `Throwable` class, as shown in **Figure 10-1**. Like all other classes in Java, `Error` and `Exception` originally descend from the `Object` class, which is defined in the automatically imported `java.lang` package.

- › The `Error` class represents more serious errors from which your program usually cannot recover. For example, there might be insufficient memory to execute a program. Usually, you do not use or implement `Error` objects in your programs. A program cannot recover from `Error` conditions on its own.
- › The `Exception` class comprises less serious errors that represent unusual conditions that arise while a program is running and from which the program *can* recover. For example, one type of `Exception` class error occurs if a program uses an invalid array subscript value, and the program could recover by assigning a valid value to the subscript variable.

Figure 10-1 The `Exception` and `Error` class inheritance hierarchy



Java displays an `Exception` message when the program code could have prevented an error. For example, **Figure 10-2** shows a class named `Division` that contains a single, small `main()` method. The method declares three integers, prompts the user for values for two of them, and calculates the value of the third integer by dividing the first two values.

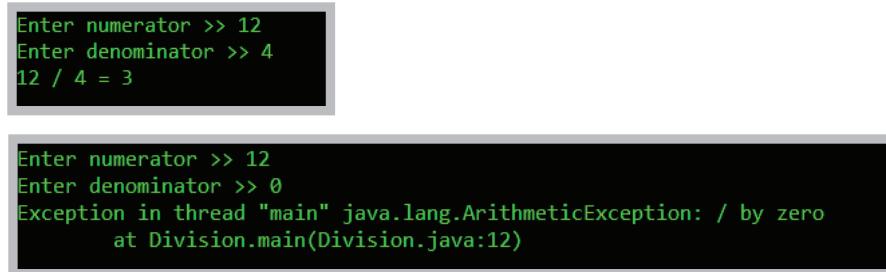
Figure 10-2 The Division class

```

import java.util.Scanner;
public class Division
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        int numerator, denominator, result;
        System.out.print("Enter numerator >> ");
        numerator = input.nextInt();
        System.out.print("Enter denominator >> ");
        denominator = input.nextInt();
        result = numerator / denominator;
        System.out.println(numerator + " / " + denominator +
                           " = " + result);
    }
}

```

Figure 10-3 shows two typical executions of the `Division` program. In the first execution, the user enters two usable values and the program executes normally. In the second execution, the user enters 0 as the value for the denominator and an Exception message is displayed. (Java does not allow integer division by 0, but floating-point division by 0 is allowed—the result is displayed as `Infinity`.) In the second execution in Figure 10-3, most programmers would say that the program experienced a **crash**, meaning that it ended prematurely with an error. The term *crash* probably evolved from the hardware error that occurs when a read/write head abruptly comes into contact with a hard disk, but the term has evolved to include software errors that cause program failure.

Figure 10-3 Two typical executions of the `Division` application

In Figure 10-3, you can see that the Exception is a `java.lang.ArithmException`. `Exception` is a superclass to `ArithmException`. Java acknowledges more than 75 categories of Exceptions with unusual names such as `ActivationException`, `AlreadyBoundException`, `AWTException`, `CloneNotSupportedException`, `PropertyVetoException`, and `UnsupportedFlavorException`.

Besides the type of Exception, Figure 10-3 also shows some information about the error (`/ by zero`), the method that generated the error (`Division.main`), and the file and line number for the error (`Division.java, line 12`).

Figure 10-4 shows two more executions of the `Division` class. In each execution, the user has entered noninteger data for the denominator—first a string of characters, and second, a floating-point value. In each case, a different type of Exception occurs. You can see from either set of error messages that the Exception is an `InputMismatchException`. The last line of the messages indicates that the problem occurred in line 11 of the `Division` program, and the second-to-last error message shows that the problem occurred within the call to `nextInt()`. Because the user did not enter an integer, the `nextInt()` method failed. The second-to-last message also shows that the error occurred in line 2115 of the `nextInt()` method, but clearly you do not want to alter the `nextInt()` method that resides in the `Scanner` class—you either want to rerun the program and enter an integer or alter the program so that these errors cannot occur in subsequent executions.

Note It is important to read error messages carefully; they can contain a lot of useful information.

Figure 10-4 Two executions of the Division application in which the user enters noninteger values

```
Enter numerator >> 12
Enter denominator >> three
Exception in thread "main" java.util.InputMismatchException
    at java.base/java.util.Scanner.throwFor(Scanner.java:860)
    at java.base/java.util.Scanner.next(Scanner.java:1497)
    at java.base/java.util.Scanner.nextInt(Scanner.java:2161)
    at java.base/java.util.Scanner.nextInt(Scanner.java:2115)
    at Division.main(Division.java:11)
```

```
Enter numerator >> 12
Enter denominator >> 3.0
Exception in thread "main" java.util.InputMismatchException
    at java.base/java.util.Scanner.throwFor(Scanner.java:860)
    at java.base/java.util.Scanner.next(Scanner.java:1497)
    at java.base/java.util.Scanner.nextInt(Scanner.java:2161)
    at java.base/java.util.Scanner.nextInt(Scanner.java:2115)
    at Division.main(Division.java:11)
```

The list of error messages after each attempted execution in Figure 10-4 is called a **stack trace history list**, or more simply, a **stack trace**. (You also might hear the terms *stack backtrace* or *stack traceback*.) The list shows each method that was called as the program ran. You will learn more about tracing the stack later in this chapter.

Just because an exception occurs, you don't necessarily have to deal with it. In the Division class, you can simply let the offending program terminate as it did in Figure 10-4. However, the program termination is abrupt and unforgiving. When a program divides two numbers, the user might be annoyed if the program ends abruptly. An abrupt conclusion could be disastrous, however, if the program is used for a mission critical task such as air-traffic control or to monitor a patient's vital statistics during surgery. (The term **mission critical** describes any process that is crucial to an organization.) Object-oriented exception-handling techniques provide more elegant and safer solutions for handling errors.

Of course, you can write programs without using exception-handling techniques—you already have written many such programs as you have worked through the examples in this course. Programmers had to deal with error conditions long before object-oriented methods were conceived. Probably the most common error-handling solution has been to use a decision to avoid an error. For example, you can change the `main()` method of the Division class to avoid dividing by 0 by adding the decision shown in **Figure 10-5**.

The Division2 program displays a message to the user when 0 is entered for a denominator value, but it is not able to recover when noninteger data such as a string or floating-point value is entered. Object-oriented exception handling enables such error recovery.

Programs that can handle exceptions appropriately are said to be more fault tolerant and robust. **Fault-tolerant** applications are designed so that they continue to operate, possibly at a reduced level, when some part of the system fails. **Robustness** represents the degree to which a system is resilient to stress and able to continue functioning.

Even if you choose never to use object-oriented exception-handling techniques in your own programs, you must understand them because built-in Java methods will throw exceptions.

Figure 10-5 The Division2 application using a traditional error-handling technique

```

import java.util.Scanner;
public class Division2
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        int numerator, denominator, result;
        System.out.print("Enter numerator >> ");
        numerator = input.nextInt();
        System.out.print("Enter denominator >> ");
        denominator = input.nextInt();
        if(denominator == 0)
            System.out.println ("Cannot divide by 0");
        else
        {
            result = numerator / denominator;
            System.out.println(numerator + " / " + denominator +
                " = " + result);
        }
    }
}

```

A decision prevents dividing by zero.

Two Truths & a Lie | Learning About Exceptions

1. Exception handling is the name for the object-oriented techniques used to manage runtime errors.
2. The `Error` class represents serious errors from which your program usually cannot recover, but the `Exception` class comprises less serious errors from which the program can recover.
3. When exceptions occur, object-oriented programs must handle them.

The false statement is #3. Just because an exception occurs, you don't necessarily have to deal with it. You already have written many programs that do not handle exceptions that arise.

10.2 Trying Code and Catching Exceptions

In object-oriented terminology, you “try” a procedure that might cause an error. A method that detects an error condition “throws an exception,” and if you write a block of code that processes the error, that block is said to “catch the exception.”

When you create a segment of code in which something might go wrong, you place the code in a **try block**, which is a block of code you attempt to execute while acknowledging that an exception might occur. A **try block** consists of the following elements:

- › The keyword `try` followed by a pair of curly braces
- › Executable statements between the curly braces, including some statements that might cause exceptions

To handle a thrown exception, you can code one or more **catch blocks** immediately following a **try block**. A **catch block** is a segment of code that can handle an exception that might be thrown by the **try block** that precedes it. The exception might be one that is thrown automatically, or you might explicitly write a **throw statement**. A **throw statement** is one that

sends an Exception object out of a block or a method so that it can be handled elsewhere. A thrown Exception can be caught by a catch block. Each catch block can “catch” one type of exception—that is, one object that is an object of type Exception or one of its child classes. You create a catch block by typing the following elements:

- › The keyword `catch` followed by a pair of parentheses
- › Between the parentheses, an `Exception` type and an identifier for an instance
- › A pair of curly braces that contain statements that take the actions you want to use to handle the error condition

Figure 10-6 shows the general format of a method that includes a `try...catch` pair. A catch block looks a lot like a method named `catch()` that takes an argument that is some type of `Exception`. However, it is not a method; it has no return type, and you can't call it directly. Some programmers refer to a catch block as a *catch clause*.

Figure 10-6 Format of `try...catch` pair

```
returnType methodName(optional arguments)
{
    // optional statements prior to code that is tried
    try
    {
        // statement or statements that might generate an exception
    }
    catch(Exception someException)
    {
        // actions to take if exception occurs
    }
    // optional statements that occur after try,
    // whether catch block executes or not
}
```

In Figure 10-6, `someException` represents an object of the `Exception` class or any of its subclasses; the name can be any legal Java identifier that the programmer chooses. If an exception occurs during the execution of the `try` block, the exception is thrown and the statements in the `catch` block execute. If no exception occurs within the `try` block, the `catch` block does not execute. Either way, any statements following the `catch` block execute normally.

Figure 10-7 shows an application named `DivisionMistakeCaught` that improves on the `Division` class. The `main()` method in the class contains a `try` block with code that attempts division. When illegal integer division is attempted, an `ArithmeticException` is created automatically and the `catch` block executes.

Figure 10-7 The `DivisionMistakeCaught` application

```
import java.util.Scanner;
public class DivisionMistakeCaught
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        int numerator, denominator, result;
        System.out.print("Enter numerator >> ");
        numerator = input.nextInt();
        System.out.print("Enter denominator >> ");
        denominator = input.nextInt();
        try
        {
            result = numerator / denominator;
            System.out.println(numerator + " / " + denominator +
                " = " + result);
        }
        catch(ArithmeticException mistake)
        {
            System.out.println("Arithmetic exception was thrown and caught");
        }
        System.out.println("End of program");
    }
}
```

Note

In the application in Figure 10-7, the throw and catch operations reside in the same method. Later in this chapter, you will learn that throws and their corresponding catch blocks frequently reside in separate methods.

Note

If you want to send error messages to a location other than “normal” output, you can use `System.err` instead of `System.out`. For example, if an application writes a report to a specific disk file, you might want errors to write to a different location—perhaps to a different disk file or to the screen.

The output in **Figure 10-8** shows two executions of the `DivisionMistakeCaught` application.

- › In the first example, when the user enters a valid denominator, the complete `try` block executes, including the statement that displays the result, and the `catch` block is bypassed.
- › In the second example, when the user enters `0` for the denominator, the `try` block is abandoned without displaying the division result, and the `catch` block executes, displaying the error message.

Figure 10-8 Two executions of the `DivisionMistakeCaught` application

```
Enter numerator >> 15
Enter denominator >> 3
15 / 3 = 5
End of program
```



```
Enter numerator >> 15
Enter denominator >> 0
Arithmetic exception was thrown and caught
End of program
```

Whether the denominator is valid or not, the *End of program* message is displayed. Instead of writing your own message in a catch block, you can use the `getMessage()` method that `ArithmaticException` inherits from the `Throwable` class to retrieve Java’s built-in message about an exception. For example, **Figure 10-9** shows a `DivisionMistakeCaught2` class that uses `getMessage()` to generate the message that “comes with” the caught `ArithmaticException` argument to the catch block.

Figure 10-9 The `DivisionMistakeCaught2` application

```
import java.util.Scanner;
public class DivisionMistakeCaught2
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        int numerator, denominator, result;
        System.out.print("Enter numerator >> ");
        numerator = input.nextInt();
        System.out.print("Enter denominator >> ");
        denominator = input.nextInt();
        try
        {
            result = numerator / denominator;
            System.out.println(numerator + " / " + denominator +
                " = " + result);
        }
        catch(ArithmaticException mistake)
        {
            System.out.println(mistake.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.println("End of program");
    }
}
```

Using the
`getMessage()`
method with the
`mistake` object

Figure 10-10 shows the output of the `DivisionMistakeCaught2` program; the message is `/ by zero`. It should be no surprise that the automatically generated error message is `/ by zero`; you saw the same message in Figure 10-3 when the programmer provided no exception handling, the exception was thrown, and its message was automatically supplied.

Figure 10-10 Output of the `DivisionMistakeCaught2` application

```
Enter numerator >> 15
Enter denominator >> 0
/ by zero
End of program
```

Note

As an example of another condition that could generate an `ArithmaticException`, if you create an object using Java's `BigDecimal` class and then perform a division that results in a nonterminating decimal division such as `1/3`, but you have specified that an exact result is needed, an `ArithmaticException` is thrown. As another example, you could create your own class containing a method that creates a new instance of the `ArithmaticException` class and throws it under any conditions you specify.

Of course, you might want to do more in a `catch` block than display an error message; after all, Java did that for you without requiring you to write the code to catch any exceptions. You also might want to add code to correct the error; for example, such code could force the arithmetic to divide by 1 rather than by 0. **Figure 10-11** shows `try...catch` code in which the `catch` block computes the result by dividing by 1 instead of by the denominator value. After the `catch` block, the application could continue with a guarantee that `result` holds a valid value—either the division worked in the `try` block and the `catch` block did not execute, or the `catch` block remedied the error.

Figure 10-11 A `try...catch` block in which the `catch` block corrects the error

```
try
{
    result = numerator / denominator;
}
catch(ArithmaticException mistake)
{
    result = numerator / 1;
}
// program continues here; result is guaranteed to have a valid value
```

Note

In the code in Figure 10-11, you can achieve the same result in the `catch` block by coding `result = numerator;` instead of `result = numerator / 1;`. Explicitly dividing by 1 simply makes the code's intention clearer, but it does require a small amount of time to execute the instruction. As an alternative, you could make the program more efficient by omitting the division by 1 and adding clarity with a comment.

Using a `try` Block to Make Programs “Foolproof”

One of the most common uses for a `try` block is to circumvent data entry errors. For example, when testing your own programs throughout this course, you might have entered the wrong data type accidentally in response to a prompt. If the user enters a character or floating-point number in response to a `nextInt()` method call, the program crashes. Using a `try` block can allow you to handle potential data conversion exceptions caused by careless users. You can place conversion attempts, such as calling `nextInt()` or `nextDouble()`, in a `try` block and then handle any generated errors.

You have learned to add a `nextLine()` call after any `next()`, `nextInt()`, or `nextDouble()` call to absorb the Enter key remaining in the input buffer before subsequent `nextLine()` calls. When you attempt to convert numeric data in a `try` block and the effort is followed by another attempted conversion, you also must remember to account for

the potential remaining characters left in the input buffer. For example, **Figure 10-12** shows a program that accepts and displays an array of six integers. The commented line is not part of the program when it is executed twice in **Figure 10-13**.

Figure 10-12 The EnteringIntegers program without the extra `nextLine()` call

```
import java.util.Scanner;
public class EnteringIntegers
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int[] numberList = {0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0};
        int x;
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        for(x = 0; x < numberList.length; ++x)
        {
            try
            {
                System.out.print("Enter an integer >> ");
                numberList[x] = input.nextInt();
            }
            catch (Exception e)
            {
                System.out.println("Exception occurred");
            }
            // input.nextLine();
        }
        System.out.print("The numbers are : ");
        for(x = 0; x < numberList.length; ++x)
            System.out.print(numberList[x] + " ");
        System.out.println();
    }
}
```

This line is commented out for the execution in Figure 10-13, but not Figure 10-14.

Figure 10-13 Two typical executions of the EnteringIntegers program without the extra `nextLine()` call

```
Enter an integer >> 11
Enter an integer >> 22
Enter an integer >> 33
Enter an integer >> 44
Enter an integer >> 55
Enter an integer >> 66
The numbers are: 11 22 33 44 55 66
```

```
Enter an integer >> 11
Enter an integer >> 22
Enter an integer >> ww
Exception occurred
Enter an integer >> Exception occurred
Enter an integer >> Exception occurred
Enter an integer >> Exception occurred
The numbers are: 11 22 0 0 0 0
```

In Figure 10-13, you can see that when a user enters valid data in the first execution, the program runs smoothly. However, in the second execution, the user enters some letters instead of numbers. The program correctly displays *Exception occurred*, but the user is not allowed to enter data for any of the remaining numbers. The problem can be corrected by uncommenting the `nextLine()` call in the program in Figure 10-12. After the program is recompiled, it executes as shown in **Figure 10-14**. Now, each data entry exception is noted, but the user can continue entering data for the remaining array elements.

Figure 10-14 A typical execution of the EnteringIntegers program with the extra `nextLine()` call

```
Enter an integer >> 22
Enter an integer >> 33
Enter an integer >> ww
Exception occurred
Enter an integer >> 44
Enter an integer >> xx
Exception occurred
Enter an integer >> 55
The numbers are: 22 33 0 44 0 55
```

Declaring and Initializing Variables in try...catch Blocks

You can include any legal Java statements within a `try` block or `catch` block, including variable declarations. However, you must remember that a variable declared within a block is local to that block. In other words, the variable goes out of scope when the `try` or `catch` block ends, so any variable declared within one of the blocks should serve only a temporary purpose.

If you want to use a variable both with a `try` or `catch` block and afterward, then you must declare the variable before the `try` block begins. However, if you declare a variable before a `try` block but wait to assign its initial usable value within the `try...catch` block, you must be careful that the variable receives a useful value; otherwise, when you use the variable after the `try...catch` pair ends, the program will not compile.

Figure 10-15 illustrates this scenario. In the `UninitializedVariableTest` program, `x` is declared and its value is received from the user in a `try` block. Because the user might not enter an integer, the conversion to an integer might fail, and an exception might be thrown. In this example, the `catch` block only displays a message and does not assign a useful value to `x`. When the program attempts to display `x` after the `catch` block, an error message is generated, as shown in **Figure 10-16**. You have three easy options for fixing this error:

- You can assign a value to `x` before the `try` block starts. That way, even if an exception is thrown, `x` will have a usable value to display in the last statement.
- You can assign a usable value to `x` within the `catch` block. That way, if an exception is thrown, `x` will again hold a usable value.
- You can move the output statement from after the `catch` block to within the `try` block. If the conversion of the user's entry to an integer is successful, the `try` block finishes execution and the value of `x` is displayed. However, if the conversion fails, the `try` block is abandoned, the `catch` block executes, the error message is displayed, and `x` is not used.

Figure 10-15 The `UninitializedVariableTest` program

```
import java.util.Scanner;
public class UninitializedVariableTest
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int x;
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        try
        {
            System.out.print("Enter an integer >> ");
            x = input.nextInt();
        }
        catch(Exception e)
        {
            System.out.println("Exception occurred");
        }
        System.out.println("x is " + x);
    }
}
```

Figure 10-16 The error message generated when compiling the `UninitializedVariableTest` program

```
UninitializedVariableTest.java:17: error: variable x might not have been initialized
```

```
    System.out.println("x is " + x);
```

```
1 error
```

Two Truths & a Lie | Trying Code and Catching Exceptions

1. A `try` block is a block of code you attempt to execute while acknowledging that an exception might occur.
2. You usually code at least one `catch` block immediately following a `try` block to handle an exception that might be thrown by the `try` block.
3. A `throw` statement is one that sends an `Exception` object to a `try` block so it can be handled.

The false statement is #3. A `throw` statement sends an `Exception` object to a `catch` block.

You Do It | Throwing and Catching an Exception

In this section, you create an application in which the user enters two values to be divided. The application throws a `NumberFormatException` to the operating system if either of the entered values is not an integer—in other words, if the `NumberFormatException` is not handled by the program. The application throws an `ArithmaticException` to a `catch` block if division by 0 is attempted—in other words, if the `ArithmaticException` is handled by the program.

1. Open a new file, and type the first few lines of an interactive application named `ExceptionDemo`.

```
import javax.swing.*;
public class ExceptionDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

2. Declare three integers—two to be input by the user and a third to hold the result after dividing the first two. The numerator and denominator variables must be assigned starting values because their values will be entered within a `try` block. The compiler understands that a `try` block might not complete; that is, it might throw an exception before it is through. Also declare an `inputString` to hold the return value of the `JOptionPane.showInputDialog()` method.

```
int numerator = 0, denominator = 0, result;
String inputString;
```

3. Add a `try` block that prompts the user for two values, converts each entered `String` to an integer, and divides the values, producing `result`.

```
try
{
    inputString = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
        "Enter a number to be divided");
    numerator = Integer.parseInt(inputString);
    inputString = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
        "Enter a number to divide into the first number");
    denominator = Integer.parseInt(inputString);
    result = numerator / denominator;
}
```

4. Add a `catch` block that catches an `ArithmaticException` object if division by 0 is attempted. If this block executes, display an error message, and force `result` to 0.

```
catch(ArithmaticException exception)
{
```

```

        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null,
            exception.getMessage());
        result = 0;
    }
}

```

5. Whether the `try` block succeeds or not, display the result (which might have been set to 0). Include closing curly braces for the `main()` method and for the class.

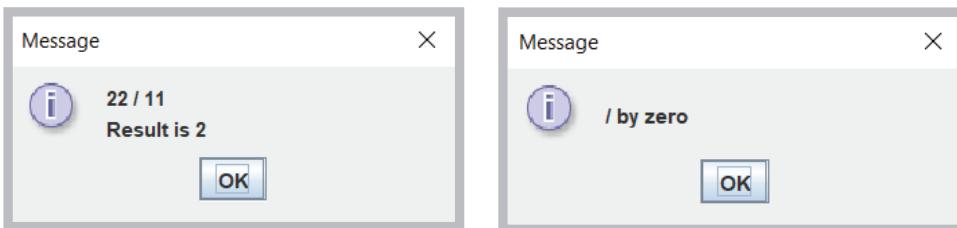
```

        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, numerator + " / " +
            denominator + "\nResult is " + result);
    }
}

```

6. Save the file as **ExceptionDemo.java**, and then compile and execute the application. Enter two nonzero integer values. For example, the first execution in **Figure 10-17** shows the output when you enter 22 and 11 as the two input values; the application completes successfully. Click **OK** to end the application, and execute the `ExceptionDemo` application again. This time, enter 0 for the second value; the output looks like the second part of Figure 10-17. Click **OK** to end the application.

Figure 10-17 Output of two executions of the `ExceptionDemo` application



10.3 Throwing and Catching Multiple Exceptions

You can place as many statements as you need within a `try` block, and you can catch as many exceptions as you want. If you try more than one statement, only the first error-generating statement throws an exception. As soon as the exception occurs, the logic transfers to the `catch` block, which leaves the rest of the statements in the `try` block unexecuted.

When a program contains multiple `catch` blocks, they are examined in sequence until a match is found for the type of exception that occurred. Then, the matching `catch` block executes, and each remaining `catch` block is bypassed.

For example, consider the application in **Figure 10-18**. The `main()` method in the `DivisionMistakeCaught3` class throws two types of `Exception` objects: an `ArithmaticException` and an `InputMismatchException`. The `try` block in the application surrounds all the statements in which the exceptions might occur.

Note

The program in Figure 10-18 must import the `java.util.InputMismatchException` class to be able to use an `InputMismatchException` object. The `java.util` package also is needed for the `Scanner` class, so it's easiest to import the whole package.

Note

If you use the `getMessage()` method with the `InputMismatchException` object, you see that the message is `null`, because `null` is the default message value for an `InputMismatchException` object.

Figure 10-18 The DivisionMistakeCaught3 class

```

import java.util.*;
public class DivisionMistakeCaught3
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        int numerator, denominator, result;
        try
        {
            System.out.print("Enter numerator >> ");
            numerator = input.nextInt();
            System.out.print("Enter denominator >> ");
            denominator = input.nextInt();
            result = numerator / denominator;
            System.out.println(numerator + " / " + denominator +
                " = " + result);
        }
        catch(ArithmeticException mistake)
        {
            System.out.println(mistake.getMessage());
        }
        catch(InputMismatchException mistake)
        {
            System.out.println("Wrong data type");
        }
        System.out.println("End of program");
    }
}

```

An InputMismatchException might be thrown here.

An ArithmeticException might be thrown here.

In the main() method of the program in Figure 10-18, the try block executes. Several outcomes are possible:

- › If the user enters two usable integers, result is calculated, normal output is displayed, and neither catch block executes.
- › If the user enters an invalid (noninteger) value at either the first or second input statement, an InputMismatchException object is created and thrown. When the program encounters the first catch block (that catches an ArithmeticException), the block is bypassed because the Exception types do not match. When the program encounters the second catch block, the types match, and the *Wrong data type* message is displayed.
- › If the user enters 0 for denominator, the division statement throws an ArithmeticException, and the try block is abandoned. When the program encounters the first catch block, the Exception types match, the value of the getMessage() method is displayed, and then the second catch block is bypassed.

Figure 10-19 shows the output of four typical program executions.

Figure 10-19 Four executions of the DivisionMistakeCaught3 application

Enter numerator >> 35 Enter denominator >> 5 35 / 5 = 7 End of program	Enter numerator >> six Wrong data type End of program
Enter numerator >> 6 Enter denominator >> two Wrong data type End of program	Enter numerator >> 4 Enter denominator >> 0 / by zero End of program

When you list multiple catch blocks following a try block, you must be careful that some catch blocks don't become unreachable. Unreachable statements are program statements that can never execute under any circumstances. For example, if two successive catch blocks catch an `ArithmaticException` and an ordinary `Exception`, respectively, the `ArithmaticException` errors cause the first catch to execute and other types that derive from `Exception` "fall through" to the more general `Exception` catch block. However, if you reverse the sequence of the catch blocks so that the one that catches general `Exception` objects is first, even `ArithmaticExceptions` would be caught by the `Exception` catch. The `ArithmaticException` catch block therefore is unreachable because the `Exception` catch block is in its way, and the class does not compile. Think of arranging your catch blocks so that the "bigger basket" is always below a smaller one. That is, each `Exception` should "fall through" as many catch blocks as necessary to reach the one that will hold it. Creating an unreachable catch block causes a compiler error that generates a message indicating that the exception "has already been caught."

Note | You have learned that statements that follow a method's `return` statement also are unreachable.

Sometimes, you want to execute the same code no matter which `Exception` type occurs. For example, within the `DivisionMistakeCaught3` application in Figure 10-18, each of the two catch blocks displays a unique message. Instead, you might want both catch blocks to display the same message. Because `ArithmaticExceptions` and `InputMismatchExceptions` are both subclasses of `Exception`, you can rewrite the program as shown in **Figure 10-20**, using a single generic catch block that can catch any type of `Exception` object.

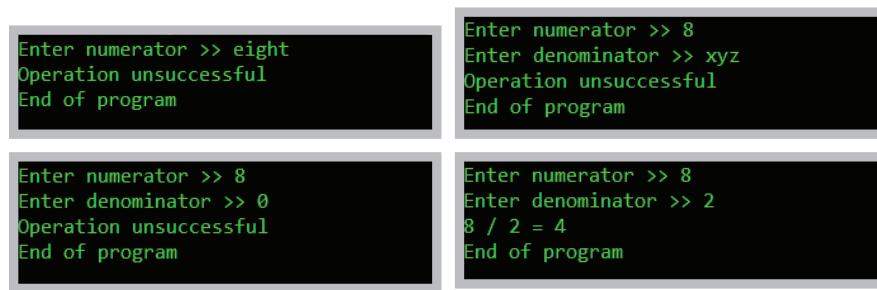
Figure 10-20 The `DivisionMistakeCaught4` application

```
import java.util.*;
public class DivisionMistakeCaught4
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        int numerator, denominator, result;
        try
        {
            System.out.print("Enter numerator >> ");
            numerator = input.nextInt();
            System.out.print("Enter denominator >> ");
            denominator = input.nextInt();
            result = numerator / denominator;
            System.out.println(numerator + " / " + denominator +
                " = " + result);
        }
        catch(Exception mistake)
        {
            System.out.println("Operation unsuccessful");
        }
        System.out.println("End of program");
    }
}
```

This catch block
can handle all
`Exception` types.

The catch block in Figure 10-20 accepts a more generic `Exception` argument type than that thrown by either of the potentially error-causing try statements, so the generic catch block can act as a "catch-all" block. When either an arithmetic error or incorrect input type error occurs, the thrown exception is promoted or upcast to an `Exception` error in the catch block. **Figure 10-21** shows several executions of the `DivisionMistakeCaught4` application. Notice that no matter which type of mistake occurs during execution, the general *Operation unsuccessful* message is displayed by the generic catch block.

Figure 10-21 Several executions of the `DivisionMistakeCaught4` application



A catch block also can be written to catch specific multiple exception types. For example, the following catch block catches two `Exception` types. When either is caught, its local identifier is `e`.

```
catch (ArithmeticException, InputMismatchException e)
{
}
```

Although a method can throw any number of `Exception` types, many developers believe that it is bad practice for a method to throw and catch more than three or four types. If it does, one of the following conditions might be true:

- › Perhaps the method is trying to accomplish too many diverse tasks and should be broken up into smaller methods.
- › Perhaps the `Exception` types thrown are too specific and should be generalized, as they are in the `DivisionMistakeCaught4` application in Figure 10-20.

Two Truths & a Lie | Throwing and Catching Multiple Exceptions

1. When multiple `try` block statements throw exceptions, multiple `catch` blocks might execute.
2. As soon as an exception occurs, the `try` block that contains it is abandoned and the rest of its statements are unexecuted.
3. When a program contains multiple `catch` blocks, the first one that matches the thrown `Exception` type is the one that executes.

The false statement is #1. If you try more than one statement, only the first error-generating statement throws an exception, and then the rest of the `try` block is abandoned.

You Do It | Using Multiple `catch` Blocks

In this section, you add a second `catch` block to the `ExceptionDemo` application.

1. Open the `ExceptionDemo.java` file. Change the class name to `ExceptionDemo2`, and save the file as `ExceptionDemo2.java`.
2. Execute the program, and enter a noninteger value at one of the prompts. Program execution fails. For example, **Figure 10-22** shows the error generated when the user types a string at the first prompt.

Figure 10-22 Error message generated by the current version of the `ExceptionDemo2` application when a user enters a noninteger value

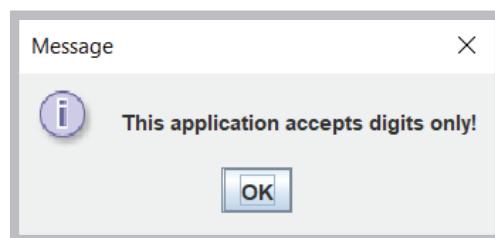
```
Exception in thread "main" java.lang.NumberFormatException: For input string: "four hundred and seventeen"
  at java.base/java.lang.NumberFormatException.forInputString(NumberFormatException.java:65)
  at java.base/java.lang.Integer.parseInt(Integer.java:652)
  at java.base/java.lang.Integer.parseInt(Integer.java:770)
  at ExceptionDemo2.main(ExceptionDemo2.java:12)
```

3. After the existing catch block that catches an `ArithmaticException` object, add a catch block that catches a `NumberFormatException` object if neither user entry can be converted to an integer. If this block executes, display an error message, set numerator and denominator to a default value of 999, and force result to 1.

```
catch(NumberFormatException exception)
{
    JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null,
        "This application accepts digits only!");
    numerator = 999;
    denominator = 999;
    result = 1;
}
```

4. Save, compile, and execute the program. This time, if you enter a noninteger value, the output appears as shown in **Figure 10-23**. Click **OK** to end the application.
5. Execute the application a few more times by entering a variety of valid and invalid data values. Confirm that the program works appropriately whether you type two usable integers, an unusable 0 for the second integer, or noninteger data such as strings containing alphabetic characters or punctuation.

Figure 10-23 Error message generated by the improved version of the `ExceptionDemo2` application when a user enters a noninteger value



10.4 Using the finally Block

When you have actions you must perform at the end of a `try...catch` sequence, you can use a **finally block**. The code within a `finally` block executes regardless of whether the preceding `try` block identifies an Exception. Usually, you use a `finally` block to perform cleanup tasks that must happen regardless of whether any Exceptions occurred and whether any Exceptions that occurred were caught. **Figure 10-24** shows the format of a `try...catch` sequence that uses a `finally` block.

Figure 10-24 Format of `try...catch...finally` sequence

```
try
{
    // statements to try
}
catch(Exception e)
{
    // actions that occur if exception was thrown
}
finally
{
    // actions that occur whether catch block executed or not
}
```

Compare Figure 10-24 to Figure 10-6 shown earlier in this chapter. When the `try` code works without error in Figure 10-6, control passes to the statements at the end of the method. Also, when the `try` code fails and throws an exception, and the `Exception` object is caught, the `catch` block executes and control again passes to the statements at the end of the method. At first glance, it seems as though the statements at the end of the method in Figure 10-6 always execute. However, the final set of statements might never execute for at least two reasons:

- › Any `try` block might throw an `Exception` object for which you did not provide a `catch` block. After all, exceptions occur all the time without your handling them, as one did in the first `Division` application in Figure 10-2 earlier in this chapter. In the case of an unhandled exception, program execution stops immediately, the exception is sent to the operating system for handling, and the current method is abandoned.
- › The `try` or `catch` block might contain a `System.exit()` statement, which stops execution immediately.

When you include a `finally` block, you are assured that the `finally` statements will execute before the method is abandoned, even if the method concludes prematurely. For example, programmers often use a `finally` block when the program uses data files that must be closed. You will learn more about writing to and reading from data files later. For now, however, consider the format shown in **Figure 10-25**, which represents part of the logic for a typical file-handling program:

Figure 10-25 Pseudocode that tries reading a file and handles an `IOException`

```

try
{
    // Open the file
    // Read the file
    // Place the file data in an array
    // Calculate an average from the data
    // Display the average
}
catch(IOException e)
{
    // Issue an error message
    // System exit
}
finally
{
    // If the file is open, close it
}

```

The pseudocode in Figure 10-25 represents an application that opens a file; in Java, if a file does not exist when you open it, an input/output exception, or `IOException`, is thrown and a `catch` block can handle the error. However, because the application in Figure 10-25 uses an array, an uncaught `IndexOutOfBoundsException` might occur even though the file opened successfully. (An `IndexOutOfBoundsException` occurs, as its name implies, when a subscript is not in the range of valid subscripts for an array.) The `IndexOutOfBoundsException` would not be caught by the existing `catch` block. Also, because the application calculates an average, it might divide by 0 and an `ArithmaticException` might occur; it also would not be caught. In any of these events, you might want to close the file before proceeding. By using the `finally` block, you ensure that the file is closed because the code in the `finally` block executes before control returns to the operating system. The code in the `finally` block executes no matter which of the following outcomes of the `try` block occurs:

- › The `try` ends normally.
- › The `catch` executes.
- › An uncaught exception causes the method to abandon prematurely. An uncaught exception does not allow the `try` block to finish, nor does it cause the `catch` block to execute.

If an application might throw several types of exceptions, you can try some code, catch the possible exception, try some more code and catch the possible exception, and so on. Usually, however, the superior approach is to try all

the statements that might throw exceptions, and then include all the needed `catch` blocks and an optional `finally` block. This is the approach shown in Figure 10-25, and it usually results in logic that is easier to follow.

You can avoid using a `finally` block, but you would need repetitious code. For example, instead of using the `finally` block in the pseudocode in Figure 10-25, you could insert the statement *If the file is open, close it* as both the last statement in the `try` block and the second-to-last statement in the `catch` block, just before `System.exit`. However, writing code just once in a `finally` block is clearer and less prone to error.

Note

If a `try` block calls the `System.exit()` method and the `finally` block calls the same method, the `exit()` method in the `finally` block executes. The `try` block's `exit()` method call is abandoned.

Note

C++ programmers are familiar with `try` and `catch` blocks, but C++ does not provide a `finally` block. C# and Visual Basic contain the keywords `try`, `catch`, and `finally`.

Two Truths & a Lie

Using the `finally` Block

1. The code within a `finally` block executes when a `try` block identifies an exception that is not caught.
2. Usually, you use a `finally` block to perform cleanup tasks that must happen regardless of whether any exceptions occurred and whether any exceptions that occurred were caught.
3. It's possible that the code that follows a `try...catch...finally` sequence might never execute—for example, if a `try` block throws an unhandled exception.

The false statement is #1. The code within a `finally` block executes whether the preceding `try` block identifies an exception or not, and whether an exception is caught or not.

10.5 Understanding the Advantages of Exception Handling

Before the inception of object-oriented programming languages, potential program errors were handled using somewhat confusing, error-prone methods. For example, a traditional, non-object-oriented procedural program might perform three methods that depend on each other using code that provides error checking similar to the pseudocode in Figure 10-26.

Figure 10-26 Pseudocode representing traditional error checking

```
call methodA()
if methodA() worked
{
    call methodB()
    if methodB() worked
    {
        call methodC()
        if methodC() worked
            everything's okay, so display finalResult
        else
            set errorCode to 'C'
    }
    else
        set errorCode to 'B'
}
else
    set errorCode to 'A'
```

Figure 10-26 represents an application in which the logic must pass three tests before `finalResult` can be displayed. The program executes `methodA()`; it then calls `methodB()` only if `methodA()` is successful. Similarly, `methodC()` executes only when `methodA()` and `methodB()` are both successful. When any method fails, the program sets an appropriate `errorCode` to *A*, *B*, or *C*. (Presumably, the `errorCode` is used later in the application.) The logic is difficult to follow, and the application's purpose and intended usual outcome—to display `finalResult`—is lost in the maze of `if` statements. Also, you can easily make coding mistakes within such a program because of the complicated nesting, indenting, and opening and closing of curly braces.

Compare the same program logic using Java's object-oriented, error-handling technique shown in **Figure 10-27**. Using the `try...catch` object-oriented technique provides the same results as the traditional method, but the statements of the program that do the “real” work (calling methods `methodA()`, `methodB()`, and `methodC()` and displaying `finalResult`) are placed together, where their logic is easy to follow. The `try` steps usually work without generating errors; after all, the errors are “exceptions.” It is convenient to see these business-as-usual steps in one location. The unusual, exceptional events are grouped and moved out of the way of the primary action.

Figure 10-27 Pseudocode representing object-oriented exception handling

```

try
{
    call methodA() and maybe throw an exception
    call methodB() and maybe throw an exception
    call methodC() and maybe throw an exception
    everything's okay, so display finalResult
}
catch(methodA()'s error)
{
    set errorCode to "A"
}
catch(methodB()'s error)
{
    set errorCode to "B"
}
catch(methodC()'s error)
{
    set errorCode to "C"
}

```

Besides clarity, an advantage to object-oriented exception handling is the flexibility it allows in the handling of error situations. When a method you write throws an exception, the same method can catch the exception, although it is not required to do so, and in most object-oriented programs it does not. Often, you don't want a method to handle its own exception. In many cases, you want the method to check for errors, but you do not want to require a method to handle an error if it finds one.

With object-oriented exception handling, you gain the ability to appropriately deal with exceptions as you decide how to handle them. When you write a method, it can call another that might throw an exception, your method can catch the thrown exception, and you can decide what you want to do. Just as a police officer has leeway to deal with a speeding driver differently depending on circumstances, programs can react to exceptions specifically for their current purposes.

Methods are flexible partly because they are reusable—that is, a well-written method might be used by any number of applications. Each calling application might need to handle a thrown error differently, depending on its purpose. For example, an application that uses a method that divides values might need to terminate if division by 0 occurs. A different program simply might want the user to reenter the data to be used, and a third program might want to force division by 1. The method that contains the division statement can throw the error, but each calling program can assume responsibility for handling the error detected by the method in an appropriate way.

Two Truths & a Lie | Understanding the Advantages of Exception Handling

1. An advantage to using object-oriented error-handling techniques is that programs are clearer and more flexible.
2. An advantage to using object-oriented error-handling techniques is that when a method throws an exception, it will always be handled in the same, consistent way.
3. In many cases, you want a method to check for errors, but you do not want to require the method to handle an error if it finds one.

The false statement is #2. A well-written method might be used by any number of applications. An advantage of object-oriented exception-handling techniques is that each calling application can handle thrown errors differently, depending on its purpose.

10.6 Specifying the Exceptions That a Method Can Throw

If a method throws an exception that it will not catch but that a different method will catch, you must create a **throws clause** by using the keyword `throws` followed by an `Exception` type in the method header. This practice is known as **exception specification**.

For example, **Figure 10-28** shows a `PriceList` class used by a company to hold a list of prices for items it sells. For simplicity, there are only four prices and a single method that displays the price of a single item. The `displayPrice()` method accepts a parameter to use as the array subscript, but because the subscript could be out of bounds, the method contains a `throws` clause, acknowledging it could throw an exception.

Figure 10-28 The `PriceList` class

```
public class PriceList
{
    private static final double[] prices = {15.99, 27.88, 34.56, 45.89};
    public static void displayPrice(int item) throws IndexOutOfBoundsException
    {
        System.out.println("The price is $" + price[item]);
    }
}
```



Figures 10-29 and **10-30** show two applications in which programmers have chosen to handle the potential exception differently. In the first program, `PriceListApplication1`, the catch block displays a price of \$0. In the second program, `PriceListApplication2`, the catch block uses the highest valid price. **Figure 10-31** shows an execution of each program when the subscript used is out of range. Other programmers writing other applications that use the `PriceList` class still could choose different actions in case of an exception, but they all can use the flexible `displayPrice()` method because it doesn't limit the calling method's choice of recourse.

For most Java methods that you write, you do not use a `throws` clause. For example, you have not needed to use a `throws` clause in any of the many programs you have written while working through this course; however, in those methods, if you divided by 0 or went beyond an array's bounds, an exception was thrown nevertheless. Most of the time, you let Java handle any exception by shutting down the program. Imagine how unwieldy your programs would

Figure 10-29 The PriceListApplication1 class

```

import java.util.*;
public class PriceListApplication1
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int item;
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Enter item number >> ");
        item = input.nextInt();
        try
        {
            PriceList.displayPrice(item);
        }
        catch(IndexOutOfBoundsException e)
        {
            System.out.println("Price is $0");
        }
    }
}

```

Figure 10-30 The PriceListApplication2 class

```

import java.util.*;
public class PriceListApplication2
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int item;
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        final int MAXITEM = 3;
        System.out.print("Enter item number >> ");
        item = input.nextInt();
        try
        {
            PriceList.displayPrice(item);
        }
        catch(IndexOutOfBoundsException e)
        {
            PriceList.displayPrice(MAXITEM);
        }
    }
}

```

Figure 10-31 Executions of PriceListApplication1 and PriceListApplication2 when an out-of-bounds value is entered

Enter item number >> 4 Price is \$0	Enter item number >> 4 The price is \$45.89
--	--

become if you were required to provide instructions for handling every possible error, including equipment failures and memory problems. Most exceptions never have to be explicitly thrown or caught, nor do you have to include a `throws` clause in the headers of methods that automatically throw these exceptions. The only exceptions that must be caught or named in a `throws` clause are the type known as *checked* exceptions.

Java's exceptions can be categorized into two types:

➤ **Unchecked exceptions**—These exceptions inherit from the `Error` class or the `RuntimeException` class.

Although you *can* handle these exceptions in your programs, you are not required to do so. For example, dividing by zero is a type of `RuntimeException`, and you are not required to handle this exception—you can simply let the program terminate.

- › **Checked exceptions**—These exceptions are the type that programmers should anticipate and from which programs should be able to recover. All exceptions that you explicitly throw and that descend from the Exception class are checked exceptions.

Java programmers say that checked exceptions are subject to the **catch or specify requirement**, which means if you throw a checked exception from a method, you must do one of the following:

- › *Catch* it within the method.
- › *Specify* the exception in your method header's throws clause.

Code that uses a checked exception will not compile if the catch or specify rule is not followed.

If you write a method with a throws clause in the header, then any method that uses your method must do one of the following:

- › Catch and handle the possible exception.
- › Declare the exception in its throws clause. The called method then can rethrow the exception to yet another method that might either catch it or throw it yet again.

In other words, when an exception is a checked exception, client programmers are forced to deal with the possibility that an exception will be thrown.

Note

Some programmers feel that using checked exceptions is an example of **syntactic salt**. **Syntactic sugar** is a term coined by Peter J. Landin to describe aspects of a computer language that make it “sweeter,” or easier, for programmers to use. For example, you do not have to write `import java.lang;` at the top of every Java program file because the package is imported automatically for you. Therefore, that feature is “sweet.” The metaphor has been extended by the term **syntactic salt**, which is a language feature designed to make it harder to write bad code.

If you write a method that explicitly throws a checked exception that is not caught within the method, Java requires that you use the throws clause in the header of the method. Using the throws clause does not mean that the method *will* throw an exception—everything might go smoothly. Instead, it means the method *might* throw an exception. You include the throws clause in the method header so applications that use your methods are notified of the potential for an exception.

Note

A method that overrides another cannot throw an exception unless it throws the same type as its parent or a subclass of its parent's thrown type. These rules do not apply to overloaded methods. Any exceptions might (or might not) be thrown from one version of an overloaded method without considering what exceptions are thrown by other versions of an overloaded method.

Recall that a method's signature is the combination of the method name and the number, types, and order of arguments. Some programmers argue that any throws clause is also part of the signature, but most authorities disagree. You cannot create a class that contains multiple methods that differ only in their return types; such methods are not overloaded. The same is true for methods with the same signatures that differ only in their throws clauses; the compiler considers the methods to have an identical signature. Instead of saying that the throws clause is part of the method's signature, you might prefer to say that it is part of the method's interface. Regardless of whether you consider the throws clause part of a method's signature, it is one of the characteristics you should know about every method you use. To be able to use a method to its full potential, you must know the method's name and three additional pieces of information:

- › The method's return type
- › The type and number of arguments the method requires
- › The type and number of exceptions the method throws

You can't call a method without knowing what types of arguments are required, but you can call a method without knowing its return type if you don't want to use the value it returns. However, if you use a method without knowing its return type, you probably don't understand the purpose of the method. Likewise, you can't make sound decisions about what to do in case of an error if you don't know what types of exceptions a method might throw.

When a method might throw more than one exception type, you can specify a list of potential exceptions in the method header by separating them with commas. As an alternative, if all the exceptions descend from the same parent, you can specify the more general parent class. For example, if your method might throw either an `ArithmaticException` or an `ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException`, you can just specify that your method throws a `RuntimeException`. One advantage to this technique is that when your method is modified to include more specific `RuntimeExceptions` in the future, the method header will not change. This saves time and money for users of your methods, who will not have to modify their own methods to accommodate new `RuntimeException` types.

An extreme alternative is simply to specify that your method throws a general `Exception` object, so that all exceptions are included in one clause. Doing this simplifies the exception specification you write. However, using this technique is not recommended because it disguises information about the specific types of exceptions that might occur, and such information usually has value to users of your methods.

Note

Usually, you declare only checked exceptions. Remember that runtime exceptions can occur anywhere in a program, and they can be numerous. Programs would be less clear and more cumbersome if you had to account for runtime exceptions in every method declaration. Therefore, the Java compiler does not require that you catch or specify runtime exceptions.

Two Truths & a Lie | Specifying the Exceptions That a Method Can Throw

1. Exception specification is the practice of listing possible exceptions in a `throws` clause in a method header.
2. Many exceptions never have to be explicitly thrown or caught, nor do you have to include a `throws` clause in the headers of methods that automatically throw these exceptions.
3. If you write a method with a `throws` clause for a checked exception in the header, then any method that uses your method must catch and handle the possible exception.

The false statement is #3. If you write a method with a `throws` clause for a checked exception in the header, then any method that uses your method must catch and handle the possible exception or declare the exception in its `throws` clause so the exception can be rethrown.

10.7 Tracing Exceptions Through the Call Stack

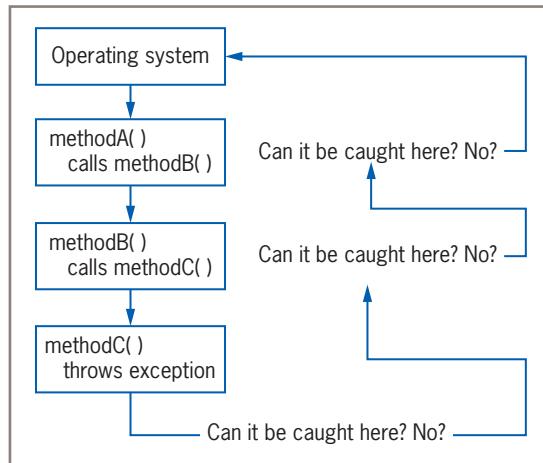
When one method calls another, the computer's operating system must keep track of the method call's origin, and program control must return to the calling method when the called method is completed. For example, if `methodA()` calls `methodB()`, the operating system has to "remember" to return to `methodA()` when `methodB()` ends. Likewise, if `methodB()` calls `methodC()`, the computer must "remember" after `methodC()` executes to return to `methodB()` and eventually to `methodA()`. The memory location known as the **call stack** is where the computer stores the list of memory locations to which the system must return when methods end. Programmers sometimes refer to the call stack as the *execution stack*, the *memory stack*, or just the *stack*.

When a method throws an exception and the method does not catch it, the exception is thrown to the next method up the call stack, or in other words, to the method that called the offending method. **Figure 10-32** shows how the

call stack works. If methodA() calls methodB(), and methodB() calls methodC(), and methodC() throws an exception, then:

- › Java first looks for a catch block in methodC().
- › If methodC() cannot catch the exception, Java looks for a catch block in methodB().
- › If methodB() does not have a catch block, Java looks to methodA().
- › If methodA() cannot catch the exception, it is thrown to the Java Virtual Machine, which displays a message at the command prompt.

Figure 10-32 Cycling through the call stack



For example, examine the application in **Figure 10-33**.

- › The main() method of the application calls methodA(), which displays a message and calls methodB().
- › Within methodB(), another message is displayed, and methodC() is called.

Figure 10-33 The DemoStackTrace class

```

public class DemoStackTrace
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        methodA(); // line 5
    }
    public static void methodA()
    {
        System.out.println("In methodA()");
        methodB(); // line 10
    }
    public static void methodB()
    {
        System.out.println("In methodB()");
        methodC(); // line 15
    }
    public static void methodC()
    {
        System.out.println("In methodC()");
        int [] array = {0, 1, 2};
        System.out.println(array[3]); // line 21
    }
}
  
```

Don't Do It

You never would purposely use an out-of-range subscript in a professional program.

- In methodC(), yet another message is displayed. Then, a three-integer array is declared, and the program attempts to display the fourth element in the array. This program compiles correctly—no error is detected until methodC() attempts to access the out-of-range array element.

In Figure 10-33, the comments indicate line numbers so you can more easily follow the sequence of generated error messages. You probably would not add such comments to a working application. **Figure 10-34** shows the execution.

Figure 10-34 Error messages generated by the `DemoStackTrace` application

```
In methodA()
In methodB()
In methodC()
Exception in thread "main" java.lang.ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException: 3
    at DemoStackTrace.methodC(DemoStackTrace.java:21)
    at DemoStackTrace.methodB(DemoStackTrace.java:15)
    at DemoStackTrace.methodA(DemoStackTrace.java:10)
    at DemoStackTrace.main(DemoStackTrace.java:5)
```

As you can see in Figure 10-34, three messages are displayed, indicating that `methodA()`, `methodB()`, and `methodC()` were called in order. However, when `methodC()` attempts to access the out-of-range element in the array, an `ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException` is automatically thrown. The error message generated shows that the exception occurred at line 21 of the file in `methodC()`, which was called in line 15 of the file by `methodB()`, which was called in line 10 of the file by `methodA()`, which was called by the `main()` method in line 5 of the file. Using this list of error messages, you could track down the location where the error was generated. Of course, in a larger application that contains thousands of lines of code, the stack trace history list would be even more useful.

The technique of cycling through the methods in the stack has great advantages because it allows methods to handle exceptions wherever the programmer has decided it is most appropriate—including allowing the operating system to handle the error. When a program uses several classes, however, the disadvantage is that the programmer finds it difficult to locate the original source of an exception.

You have already used the `Throwable` method `getMessage()` to obtain information about an `Exception` object. Another useful `Exception` method is the `printStackTrace()` method. When you catch an `Exception` object, you can call `printStackTrace()` to display a list of methods in the call stack so you can determine the location of the statement that caused the exception.

For example, **Figure 10-35** shows a `DemoStackTrace2` application in which the `printStackTrace()` method produces a trace of the trail taken by a thrown exception. The call to `methodB()` has been placed in a `try` block so that the exception can be caught. Instead of throwing the exception to the operating system, this application catches the exception, displays a stack trace history list, and continues to execute. The output of the list of methods in **Figure 10-36** is similar to the one shown in Figure 10-34, but the application does not end abruptly.

Usually, you do not want to place a `printStackTrace()` method call in a finished program. The typical application user has no interest in the cryptic messages that are displayed. While you are developing an application, however, `printStackTrace()` can be a useful tool for diagnosing the problems in your class.

Figure 10-35 The DemoStackTrace2 class

```

public class DemoStackTrace2
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        methodA(); // line 5
    }
    public static void methodA()
    {
        System.out.println("In methodA()");
        try
        {
            methodB(); // line 12
        }
        catch(ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException error)
        {
            System.out.println("In methodA() - The stack trace:");
            error.printStackTrace();
        }
        System.out.println("methodA() ends normally.");
        System.out.println("Application could continue " +
                           "from this point.");
    }
    public static void methodB()
    {
        System.out.println("In methodB()");
        methodC(); // line 26
    }
    public static void methodC()
    {
        System.out.println("In methodC()");
        int[] array = {0, 1, 2};
        System.out.println(array[3]); // line 32
    }
}

```

Figure 10-36 Output of the DemoStackTrace2 application

```

In methodA()
In methodB()
In methodC()
In methodA() - The stack trace:
java.lang.ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException:
        at DemoStackTrace2.methodC(DemoStackTrace2.java:32)
        at DemoStackTrace2.methodB(DemoStackTrace2.java:26)
        at DemoStackTrace2.methodA(DemoStackTrace2.java:12)
        at DemoStackTrace2.main(DemoStackTrace2.java:5)
methodA() ends normally.
Application could continue from this point.

```

Two Truths & a Lie | Tracing Exceptions Through the Call Stack

1. The call stack is where the computer stores the list of locations to which the system must return after each method call.
2. When a method throws an exception and the method does not catch it, the exception is thrown to the next method down the call stack—in other words, to the next method that the offending method calls.
3. When you catch an exception, you can call `printStackTrace()` to display a list of methods in the call stack so you can determine the location of the statement that caused the exception. However, usually you do not want to place a `printStackTrace()` method call in a finished program.

The false statement is #2. When a method throws an exception and the method does not catch it, the exception is thrown to the next method up the call stack—in other words, to the method that *called* the offending method.

10.8 Creating Your Own Exception Classes

Java provides dozens of categories of Exceptions that you can use in your programs. Java's creators, however, could not predict every condition that might be an exception in your applications. For example, you might want to declare an Exception when your bank balance is negative or when an outside party attempts to access your email account. Most organizations have specific rules for exceptional data; for example, an employee number must not exceed three digits, or an hourly salary must not be less than the legal minimum wage. Of course, you can handle these potential error situations with if statements, but Java also allows you to create your own Exception classes.

To create your own throwable Exception class, you must extend a subclass of Throwable. Recall from Figure 10-1 that Throwable has two subclasses, Exception and Error, which are used to distinguish between recoverable and nonrecoverable errors. Because you always want to create your own exceptions for recoverable errors, your classes should extend the Exception class. You can extend any existing Exception subclass, such as `ArithmaticException` or `NullPointerException`, but usually you want to inherit directly from `Exception`. It is conventional to end each `Exception` subclass name with `Exception`.

The `Exception` class contains four constructors as follows:

- › `Exception()`—Constructs a new `Exception` object with null as its detail message
- › `Exception(String message)`—Constructs a new `Exception` object with the specified detail message
- › `Exception(String message, Throwable cause)`—Constructs a new `Exception` object with the specified detail message and cause
- › `Exception(Throwable cause)`—Constructs a new `Exception` object with the specified cause and a detail message of `cause.toString()`, which typically contains the class and the detail message of `cause`, or null if the cause argument is null

For example, **Figure 10-37** shows a `HighBalanceException` class. Its constructor contains a single statement that passes a description of an error to the parent `Exception` constructor. This `String` would be retrieved if you called the `getMessage()` method with a `HighBalanceException` object.

Figure 10-37 The `HighBalanceException` class

```
public class HighBalanceException extends Exception
{
    public HighBalanceException()
    {
        super("Customer balance is high");
    }
}
```

Figure 10-38 shows a `CustomerAccount` class that uses a `HighBalanceException`. The `CustomerAccount` constructor header indicates that it might throw a `HighBalanceException`; if the balance used as an argument to the constructor exceeds a set limit, a new, unnamed instance of the `HighBalanceException` class is thrown.

Figure 10-38 The `CustomerAccount` class

```
public class CustomerAccount
{
    private int acctNum;
    private double balance;
    public static double HIGH_CREDIT_LIMIT = 20000.00;
    public CustomerAccount(int num, double bal) throws HighBalanceException
    {
        acctNum = num;
        balance = bal;
        if(balance > HIGH_CREDIT_LIMIT)
            throw(new HighBalanceException());
    }
}
```

Note

In the `CustomerAccount` class in Figure 10-38, you could choose to instantiate a named `HighBalanceException` and throw it when the balance exceeds the credit limit. By waiting and instantiating an unnamed object only when it is needed, you improve program performance.

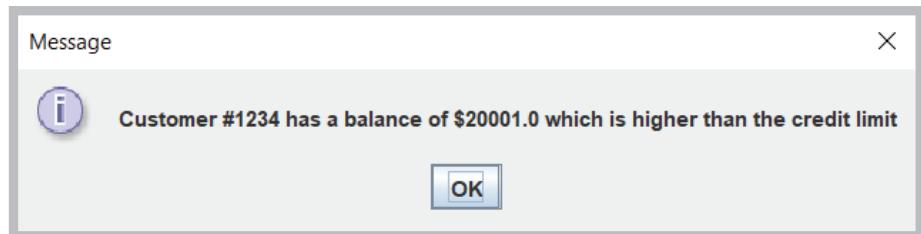
Figure 10-39 shows an application that instantiates a `CustomerAccount`. In this application, a user is prompted for an account number and balance. After the values are entered, an attempt is made to construct a `CustomerAccount` in a `try` block. If the attempt is successful—that is, if the `CustomerAccount` constructor does not throw an `Exception`—the `CustomerAccount` information is displayed in a dialog box. However, if the `CustomerAccount` constructor does throw a `HighBalanceException`, the `catch` block receives it and displays a message. A different application could take any number of different actions; for example, it could display the return value of the `getMessage()` method, construct a `CustomerAccount` object with a lower balance, or construct a different type of object—perhaps a child of `CustomerAccount` called `PreferredCustomerAccount` that allows a higher balance. **Figure 10-40** shows typical output of the application in a case in which a customer's balance is too high.

Figure 10-39 The `UseCustomerAccount` class

```
import javax.swing.*;
public class UseCustomerAccount
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int num;
        double balance;
        String input;
        input = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
            "Enter account number");
        num = Integer.parseInt(input);
        input = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null, "Enter balance due");
        balance = Double.parseDouble(input);
        try
        {
            CustomerAccount ca = new CustomerAccount(num, balance);
            JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Customer #" +
                num + " has a balance of $" + balance);
        }
        catch(HighBalanceException hbe)
        {
            JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Customer #" +
                num + " has a balance of $" + balance +
                " which is higher than the credit limit");
        }
    }
}
```

This constructor call might throw a HighBalanceException.

Figure 10-40 Typical output of the `UseCustomerAccount` application



Instead of hard coding error messages into your exception classes, as shown in Figure 10-39, you might consider creating a catalog of possible messages to use. This approach provides several advantages:

- › All the messages are stored in one location instead of being scattered throughout the program, making them easier to see and modify.
- › The list of possible errors serves as a source of documentation, listing potential problems when running the application.
- › Other applications might want to use the same catalog of messages.
- › If your application will be used internationally, you can provide messages in multiple languages, and other programmers can use the version that is appropriate for their country.

Note

You can throw any type of exception at any time, not just exceptions of your own creation. For example, within any program you can code `throw (new RuntimeException());`. Of course, you would want to do so only with good reason because Java handles `RuntimeExceptions` for you by stopping the program. Because you cannot anticipate every possible error, Java's automatic response is often the best course of action.

You should not create an excessive number of special `Exception` types for your classes, especially if the Java development environment already contains an `Exception` class that will catch the error. Extra `Exception` types add complexity for other programmers who use your classes. However, when appropriate, specialized `Exception` classes provide an elegant way for you to handle error situations. They enable you to separate your error code from the usual, nonexceptional sequence of events; they allow errors to be passed up the stack and traced; and they allow clients of your classes to handle exceptional situations in the manner most suitable for their application.

Two Truths & a Lie | Creating Your Own `Exception` Classes

1. You must create your own `Exception` classes for your programs to be considered truly object oriented.
2. To create your own throwable `Exception` class, you should extend the `Exception` class.
3. The `Exception` class contains four constructors, including a default constructor and one that requires a `String` that contains the message that can be returned by the `getMessage()` method.

The false statement is #1. You are not required to throw exceptions in object-oriented programs. Java, however, does provide many built-in categories of `Exceptions` that you can use, and you also can create your own `Exception` classes.

10.9 Using Assertions

Syntax errors are mistakes using the Java language; they are compile-time errors that prevent a program from compiling and creating an executable file with a `.class` extension.

You have learned that a program might contain logic errors even though it is free of syntax errors. Some logic errors cause runtime errors, or errors that cause a program to terminate. In this chapter, you learned how to use exceptions to handle many of these kinds of errors.

Some logic errors do not cause a program to terminate, but nevertheless produce incorrect results. For example, if a payroll program should determine gross pay by multiplying hours worked by hourly pay rate, but you inadvertently

divide the numbers, no runtime error occurs and no exception is thrown, but the output is wrong. An **assertion** is a Java language feature that can help you detect such logic errors and debug a program. You use an assert statement to state a condition that should be true, and Java throws an `AssertionError` when it is not.

The syntax of an assert statement is:

```
assert booleanExpression : optionalErrorMessage
```

The Boolean expression in the assert statement should always be true if the program is working correctly. The optionalErrorMessage is displayed if the booleanExpression is false.

Figure 10-41 contains an application that prompts a user for a number and passes it to a method that determines whether a value is even. Within the `isEven()` method, the remainder is taken when the passed parameter is divided by 2. If the remainder after dividing by 2 is 1, `result` is set to `false`. For example, 1, 3, and 5 all are odd, and all result in a value of 1 when `% 2` is applied to them. If the remainder after dividing by 2 is not 1, `result` is set to `true`. For example, 2, 4, and 6 all are even, and all have a 0 remainder when `% 2` is applied to them.

Figure 10-41 The flawed EvenOdd program without an assertion

```
import java.util.Scanner;
public class EvenOdd
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        int number;
        System.out.print("Enter a number >> ");
        number = input.nextInt();
        if(isEven(number))
            System.out.println(number + " is even");
        else
            System.out.println(number + " is odd");
    }
    public static boolean isEven(int number)
    {
        boolean result;
        if(number % 2 == 1)
            result = false;
        else
            result = true;
        return result;
    }
}
```

Figure 10-42 shows several executions of the application in Figure 10-41. The output seems correct until the last two executions. The values -5 and -7 are classified as even although they are odd. An assertion might help you to debug this application.

Figure 10-42 Typical executions of the EvenOdd application

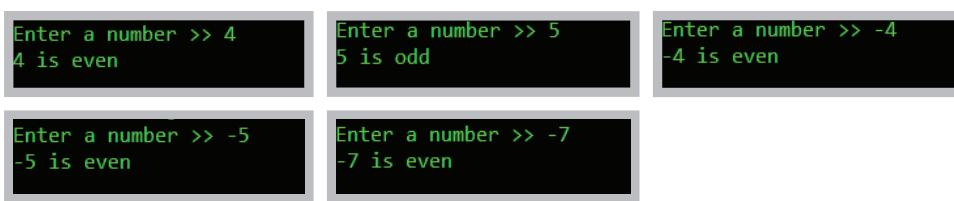


Figure 10-43 contains a new version of the `isEven()` method to which an assert statement has been added. The statement asserts that when the remainder of a number divided by 2 is not 1, it must be 0. If the expression is not true, a message is created using the values of both `number` and its remainder after dividing by 2.

Figure 10-43 The flawed `isEven()` method with an assertion

```
public static boolean isEven(int number)
{
    boolean result;
    if(number % 2 == 1)
        result = false;
    else
    {
        result = true;
        assert number % 2 == 0 : number + " % 2 is " + number % 2;
    }
    return result;
}
```

If you add the assertion shown in Figure 10-43 and then compile and execute the program in the usual way, you get the same incorrect output as in Figure 10-42. To enable the assertion, you must use the `-ea` option when you execute the program; *ea* stands for *enable assertion*. **Figure 10-44** shows the command prompt with an execution that uses the `-ea` option.

Figure 10-44 Executing an application using the enable assertion option

```
C:\Java\Ch12>java -ea EvenOdd
Enter a number >> -5
Exception in thread "main" java.lang.AssertionError: -5 % 2 is -1
    at EvenOdd.isEven(EvenOdd.java:23)
    at EvenOdd.main(EvenOdd.java:10)
```

When the `EvenOdd` program executes and the user enters `-5`, the program displays the messages in Figure 10-44 instead of displaying incorrect output. You can see from the message that an `AssertionError` was thrown and that the value of $-5 \% 2$ is -1 , not 1 as you had assumed. The remainder operator results in a negative value when one of its operands is negative, making the output in this program incorrect.

When the programmer sees that $-5 \% 2$ is -1 , the reasonable course of action is to return to the source code and change the logic.

Several adjustments are possible:

- › The programmer might decide to convert the parameter to the `isEven()` method to its absolute value before using the remainder operator, as in the following:

```
number = Math.abs(number);
```

- › Another option would be to change the `if` statement to test for even values by comparing `number % 2` to `0` first, as follows:

```
if(number % 2 == 0)
    result = true;
else
    result = false;
```

Then values of both 1 and -1 would be classified as not even.

- › Other options might include displaying an error message when negative values are encountered, reversing the `result` values of `true` and `false` when the parameter is negative, or throwing an exception.

An experienced programmer might have found the error in the original `EvenOdd` application without using an assertion. For example, the programmer might have previously used the remainder operator with a negative operand, remembered that the result might be negative, and changed the code accordingly. Alternatively, the programmer could

have inserted statements to display values at strategic points in the program. However, after the mistake is found and fixed, any extra display statements should be removed when the final product is ready for distribution to users. By contrast, any assert statements can be left in place, and if the user does not use the -ea option when running the program, the user will see no evidence that the assert statements exist. Placing assert statements in key program locations can reduce development and debugging time.

You do not want to use assertions to check for every type of error that could occur in a program. For example, if you want to ensure that a user enters numeric data, you should use exception-handling techniques that provide the means for your program to recover from the mistake. If you want to ensure that the data falls within a specific range, you should use a decision or a loop. Assertions are meant to be helpful in the development stage of a program, not when it is in production and in the hands of users.

Two Truths & a Lie | Using Assertions

1. All logic errors cause a program to terminate, and they should be handled by throwing and catching exceptions.
2. The Boolean expression in an assert statement should always be true if the program is working correctly.
3. To enable an assertion, you must use the -ea option when you execute the program.

The false statement is #1. Many logic errors do not cause program termination—they simply produce incorrect results.

You Do It | Creating a Class That Automatically Throws Exceptions

Next, you create a class that contains two methods that throw exceptions but don't catch them. The `PickMenu` class allows restaurant customers to choose from a dinner menu. Before you create `PickMenu`, you will create the `Menu` class, which lists dinner choices and allows a user to make a selection.

1. Open a new file, and then enter the following import statement, class header, and opening curly brace for the `Menu` class:

```
import javax.swing.*;
public class Menu
{
```

2. Type the following String array for three entrée choices. Also include a String to build the menu that you will display and an integer to hold the numeric equivalent of the selection.

```
private String[] entreeChoices = {"Rosemary Chicken",
    "Beef Wellington", "Maine Lobster"};
private String menu = "";
private int choice;
```

3. Add the `displayMenu()` method, which lists each entrée option with a corresponding number the customer can type to make a selection. Even though the allowable `entreeChoices` array subscripts are 0, 1, and 2, most users would expect to type 1, 2, or 3. So, you code `x + 1` rather than `x` as the number in the prompt. After the user enters a selection, convert it to an integer. Return the String that corresponds to the user's menu selection—the one with the subscript that is 1 less than the entered value. After the closing curly brace for the `displayMenu()` method, add the closing curly brace for the class.

```

public String displayMenu()
{
    for(int x = 0; x < entreeChoices.length; ++x)
    {
        menu = menu + "\n" + (x + 1) + " for " +
            entreeChoices[x];
    }
    String input = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(null,
        "Type your selection, then press Enter." + menu);
    choice = Integer.parseInt(input);
    return(entreeChoices[choice - 1]);
}
}

```

Note

The curly braces are not necessary in the `for` loop of the `displayMenu()` method because the loop contains only one statement. However, in a later exercise, you will add another statement within this block; then the curly braces will be necessary.

4. Examine the code within the `displayMenu()` method. Consider the exceptions that might occur. The user might not type an integer, so the `parseInt()` method can fail, and even if the user does type an integer, it might not be in the range allowed to access the `entreeChoices` array. Therefore, the `displayMenu()` method, like most methods in which you rely on the user to enter data, might throw exceptions that you can anticipate. (Of course, any method might throw an unanticipated exception.)
5. Save the file as `Menu.java`, and compile the class.

Creating a Class That Passes on an Exception Object

Next, you create the `PickMenu` class, which lets a customer choose from the available dinner entrée options. The `PickMenu` class declares a `Menu` and a `String` named `guestChoice` that holds the name of the entrée the customer selects. To enable the `PickMenu` class to operate with different kinds of `Menu`s in the future, you will pass a `Menu` to `PickMenu`'s constructor. This technique provides two advantages: First, when the menu options change, you can alter the contents of the `Menu.java` file without changing any of the code in programs that use `Menu`. Second, you can extend `Menu`, perhaps to `VegetarianMenu`, `LowSaltMenu`, or `KosherMenu`, and still use the existing `PickMenu` class. When you pass any `Menu` or `Menu` subclass into the `PickMenu` constructor, the correct customer options appear.

The `PickMenu` class is unlikely to directly generate any exceptions because it does not request user input. (Keep in mind that any class might generate an exception for such uncontrollable events as the system not having enough memory available.) However, `PickMenu` declares a `Menu` object; the `Menu` class, because it relies on user input, is likely to generate an exception.

1. Open a new file, and type the following first few lines of the `PickMenu` class with its data fields (a `Menu` and a `String` that reflects the customer's choice):

```

import javax.swing.*;
public class PickMenu
{
    private Menu briefMenu;
    private String guestChoice = new String();

```

2. Enter the following `PickMenu` constructor, which receives an argument representing a `Menu`. The constructor assigns the `Menu` that is the argument to the local `Menu`, and then calls the `setGuestChoice()` method, which prompts the user to select from the available menu. The `PickMenu()` constructor might throw an exception because it calls `setGuestChoice()`, which calls `displayMenu()`, a method that uses keyboard input and might throw an exception.

```

public PickMenu(Menu theMenu)
{
    briefMenu = theMenu;
    setGuestChoice();
}

```

3. The following `setGuestChoice()` method displays the menu and reads keyboard data entry (so the method throws an exception). It also displays instructions and then retrieves the user's selection.

```
public void setGuestChoice()
{
    JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null,
        "Choose from the following menu:");
    guestChoice = briefMenu.displayMenu();
}
```

4. Add the following `getGuestChoice()` method that returns a guest's String selection from the `PickMenu` class. Also, add a closing curly brace for the class.

```
public String getGuestChoice()
{
    return(guestChoice);
}
```

5. Save the file as `PickMenu.java`, and compile it.

Creating an Application That Can Catch Exceptions

You have created a `Menu` class that simply holds a list of food items, displays itself, and allows the user to make a selection. You also created a `PickMenu` class with fields that hold a user's specific selection from a given menu and methods to get and set values for those fields. The `PickMenu` class might throw exceptions, but it contains no methods that catch those exceptions. Next, you write an application that uses the `PickMenu` class. This application can catch exceptions that `PickMenu` throws.

1. Open a new file, and start entering the following `PlanMenu` class, which has just one method—a `main()` method:

```
import javax.swing.*;
public class PlanMenu
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

2. Construct the following `Menu` named `briefMenu`, and declare a `PickMenu` object that you name `entree`. You do not want to construct a `PickMenu` object yet because you want to be able to catch the exception that the `PickMenu` constructor might throw. Therefore, you want to wait and construct the `PickMenu` object within a `try` block. For now, you just declare `entree` and assign it `null`. Also, you declare a `String` that holds the customer's menu selection.

```
Menu briefMenu = new Menu();
PickMenu entree = null;
String guestChoice = new String();
```

3. Write the following `try` block that constructs a `PickMenu` item. If the construction is successful, the next statement assigns a selection to the `entree` object. Because `entree` is a `PickMenu` object, it has access to the `getGuestChoice()` method in the `PickMenu` class, and you can assign the method's returned value to the `guestChoice` `String`.

```
try
{
    PickMenu selection = new PickMenu(briefMenu);
    entree = selection;
    guestChoice = entree.getGuestChoice();
}
```

4. The catch block must immediately follow the try block. When the try block fails, guestChoice will not have a valid value, so recover from the exception by assigning a value to guestChoice within the following catch block:

```
catch(Exception error)
{
    guestChoice = "an invalid selection";
}
```

5. After the catch block, the application continues. Use the following code to display the customer's choice at the end of the PlanMenu application, and then add closing curly braces for the main() method and the class:

```
JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null,
    "You chose " + guestChoice);
}
```

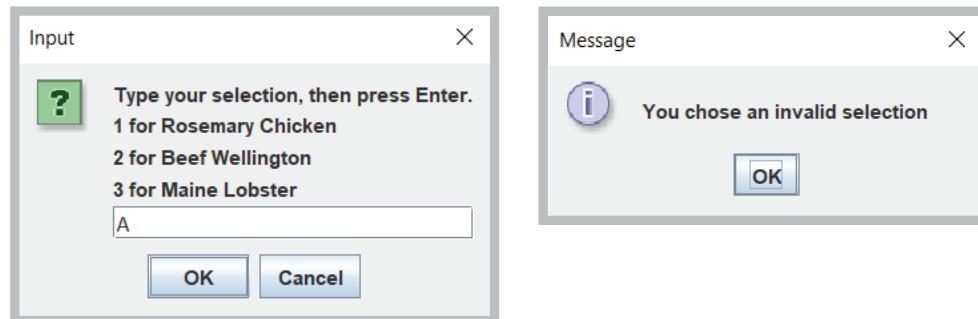
6. Save the file as **PlanMenu.java**, and then compile and execute it. Read the instructions, click **OK**, choose an entrée by typing its number from the menu, and click **OK** again. Confirm that the menu selection displayed is the one you chose, and click **OK** to dismiss the last dialog box. **Figure 10-45** shows the menu that appears after the first dialog box is dismissed and the user has entered 3; the figure also displays the output.

Figure 10-45 Typical execution of the **PlanMenu** application



7. The PlanMenu application works well when you enter a valid menu selection. One way that you can force an exception is to enter an invalid menu selection at the prompt. Run the PlanMenu application again, and type **4**, **A**, or any invalid value at the prompt. Entering 4 produces an `ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException`, and entering A produces a `NumberFormatException`. If the program lacked the try...catch pair, either entry would halt the program. However, because the `setGuestChoice()` method in the `PickMenu` class throws the exception and the PlanMenu application catches it, guestChoice takes on the value *an invalid selection* and the application ends smoothly, as shown in **Figure 10-46**.

Figure 10-46 Exceptional execution of the **PlanMenu** application



Extending a Class That Throws Exceptions

An advantage to using object-oriented exception-handling techniques is that you gain the ability to handle error conditions differently within each program you write. Next, you extend the `Menu` class to create a class named `VegetarianMenu`. Subsequently, when you write an application that uses `PickMenu` with a `VegetarianMenu` object, you can deal with any thrown exception differently than when you wrote the `PlanMenu` application.

1. Open the `Menu.java` file, and change the access specifier for the `entreeChoices` array from `private` to `protected`. That way, when you extend the class, the derived class will have access to the array. Save the file, and recompile it.

2. Open a new file, and then type the following class header for the `VegetarianMenu` class that extends `Menu`:

```
public class VegetarianMenu extends Menu
{
```

3. Provide new menu choices for the `VegetarianMenu` as follows:

```
String[] vegEntreeChoices = {"Spinach Lasagna",
    "Cheese Enchiladas", "Fruit Plate"};
```

4. Add the following constructor that calls the superclass constructor and assigns each vegetarian selection to the `Menu` superclass `entreeChoices` array, and then add the closing curly brace for the class:

```
public VegetarianMenu()
{
    super();
    for(int x = 0; x < vegEntreeChoices.length; ++x)
        entreeChoices[x] = vegEntreeChoices[x];
}
```

5. Save the class as `VegetarianMenu.java`, and then compile it.

6. Now write an application that uses `VegetarianMenu`. You could write any program, but for demonstration purposes, you can simply modify `PlanMenu.java`. Open the `PlanMenu.java` file, then immediately save it as `PlanVegetarianMenu.java`.

7. Change the class name in the header to `PlanVegetarianMenu`.

8. Change the first statement within the `main()` method as follows so it declares a `VegetarianMenu` instead of a `Menu`:

```
VegetarianMenu briefMenu = new VegetarianMenu();
```

9. Change the `guestChoice` assignment statement in the `catch` block as follows so it is specific to the program that uses the `VegetarianMenu`:

```
guestChoice = "an invalid vegetarian selection";
```

10. Save the file, compile it, and run the application. When you see the vegetarian menu, enter a valid selection and confirm that the program works correctly. Run the application again, and enter an invalid selection. The error message shown in **Figure 10-47** identifies your invalid entry as an *invalid vegetarian selection*. Remember that you did not change the `PickMenu` class. Your new `PlanVegetarianMenu` application uses the `PickMenu` class that you wrote and compiled before a `VegetarianMenu` ever existed. However, because `PickMenu` throws uncaught exceptions, you can handle those exceptions as you see fit in any new applications in which you catch them. Click **OK** to end the application.

Figure 10-47 Output of the `PlanVegetarianMenu` application when the user makes an invalid selection



Creating an Exception Class

Besides using the built-in classes that derive from `Exception` such as `NumberFormatException` and `IndexOutOfBoundsException`, you can create your own `Exception` classes. For example, suppose that although you have asked a user to type a number representing a menu selection, you realize that some users might mistakenly type the initial letter of an option, such as `R` for *Rosemary Chicken*. Although the user has made an error, you want to treat this type of error more leniently than other errors, such as typing a letter that has no discernible connection to the presented menu. In the next section, you create a `MenuException` class that you can use with the `Menu` class to represent a specific type of error.

1. Open a new file, and enter the `MenuException` class. The class extends `Exception`. Its constructor requires a `String` argument, which is passed to the parent class to be used as a return value for the `getMessage()` method.

```
public class MenuException extends Exception
{
    public MenuException(String choice)
    {
        super(choice);
    }
}
```

2. Save the file as `MenuException.java`, and compile it.

Using an Exception You Created

Next, you modify the `Menu`, `PickMenu`, and `PlanMenu` classes to demonstrate how to use a `MenuException` object.

1. Open the `Menu` file, and immediately save the file as `Menu2.java`.
2. Change the class name to `Menu2`.
3. At the end of the list of class data fields, add an array of characters that can hold the first letter of each of the entrées in the menu.

```
protected char initials[] = new char[entreeChoices.length];
```

4. At the end of the method header for the `displayMenu()` class, add the following clause:

```
throws MenuException
```

You add this clause because you are going to add code that throws such an exception.

5. Within the `displayMenu()` method, just before the closing curly brace of the `for` loop that builds the menu `String`, add a statement that takes the first character of each element in the `entreeChoices` array and stores it in a corresponding element of the `initials` array. At the end of the `for` loop, the `initials` array holds the first character of each available entrée.

```
initials[x] = entreeChoices[x].charAt(0);
```

6. After displaying the `JOptionPane` dialog box that shows the menu and receives the user's input, add a loop that compares the first letter of the user's choice to each of the initials of valid menu options. If a match is found, throw a new instance of the `MenuException` class that uses the corresponding entrée as its `String` argument. In other words, when this thrown `MenuException` is caught by another method, the assumed entrée is the `String` returned by the `getMessage()` method. By placing this test before the call to `parseInt()`, you cause entries of `R`, `B`, or `M` to throw a `MenuException` before they can cause a `NumberFormatException`.

```
for(int y = 0; y < entreeChoices.length; ++y)
    if(input.charAt(0) == initials[y])
        throw (new MenuException(entreeChoices[y]));
```

7. Save the class, and compile it.

8. Open the **PickMenu** file, and immediately save it as **PickMenu2.java**.
9. Change the class name to **PickMenu2**, and change the declaration of the **Menu** object to a **Menu2** object. Change the constructor name to **PickMenu2** and its argument to type **Menu2**. Also add a `throws` clause to the **PickMenu2** constructor header so that it throws a **MenuException**. This constructor does not throw an exception directly, but it calls the `setGuestChoice()` method, which calls the `displayMenu()` method, which throws a **MenuException**.
10. Add the following `throws` clause to the `setGuestChoice()` method header:


```
throws MenuException
```
11. Save your file, and compile it.
12. Open the **PlanMenu.java** file, and immediately save it as **PlanMenu2.java**.
13. Change the class name to **PlanMenu2**. Within the `main()` method, declare a **Menu2** object and a **PickMenu2** reference instead of the current **Menu** object and **PickMenu** reference.
14. Within the `try` block, change both references of **PickMenu** to **PickMenu2**. Add a `catch` block after the `try` block and before the existing `catch` block. This `catch` block will catch any thrown **MenuExceptions** and display their messages. The message will be the name of a menu item, based on the initial letter the user entered. All other **Exception** objects, including **NumberFormatExceptions** and **IndexOutOfBoundsExceptions**, will fall through to the second `catch` block and be handled as before.
15. Save the file, then compile and execute it several times. When you are asked to make a selection, try entering a valid number, an invalid number, an initial letter that is part of the menu, and a letter that is not one of the initial menu letters, and observe the results each time. Whether you enter a valid number or not, the application works as expected. Entering an invalid number still results in an error message. When you enter a letter or a string of letters, the application assumes that your selection is valid if you enter the same initial letter (using the same case) as one of the menu options.

10.10 Displaying the Virtual Keyboard

You can write many functional Java programs without using exception-handling techniques. After all, you have already done so earlier in this course. However, you will sometimes have to employ exception-handling techniques if you want to use methods written by others that throw exceptions. For example, if you want to display the virtual keyboard of the Windows system, you will have to accommodate a thrown exception.

A **virtual keyboard** is a computer keyboard that appears on the screen. A user operates it by using a mouse to point to and click keys; if the computer has a touch screen, the user also can touch keys with a finger or stylus. You can use code similar to that shown in **Figure 10-48** to bring up the virtual keyboard in the Windows operating system.

The application in Figure 10-48 contains standard input and output statements that use the `Scanner` class. The statement within the `try` block that defines a process is the only one that is new to you. Every Java application has a single instance of the `Runtime` class that allows the program to interface with its environment. The `exec()` method executes the operating system program named `osk.exe`. The acronym `osk` stands for *on-screen keyboard*. The `exec()` method throws an uncaught `IOException`, so its statement is contained in a `try` block. You were using `Scanner` class standard keyboard input and output shortly after you started working with Java. Now that you understand how exceptions are thrown, you also can use the virtual keyboard.

Figure 10-48 The VirtualKeyboardDemo application

```

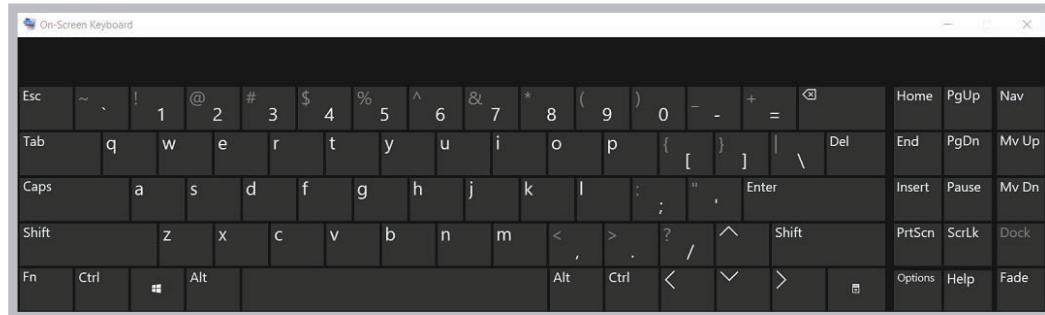
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.io.IOException;
public class VirtualKeyboardDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        try
        {
            Process proc = Runtime.getRuntime().exec
                ("cmd /c C:\\Windows\\System32\\osk.exe");
        }
        catch(IOException e)
        {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }
        String name;
        System.out.print("Enter name >> ");
        name = input.nextLine();
        System.out.println("Hello, " + name + "!");
    }
}

```

Note

When you write a program such as the one in Figure 10-48, it is unlikely that an exception will ever be thrown—an exception is far more likely to occur if you accept the `exec()` method's `String` argument from user input. Therefore, it does not matter what statements you place in the `catch()` block. Instead of using a `try...catch` pair in the `VirtualKeyboardDemo` application, many programmers would eliminate the `try` block, place the phrase `throws IOException` at the end of the `main()` method header, and allow any exceptions to be rethrown to the operating system.

Figure 10-49 shows the `VirtualKeyboardDemo` program during execution. The virtual keyboard appears as soon as the program starts. When the prompt appears at the command line, the user has the option of typing on the standard keyboard or using the on-screen version.

Figure 10-49 The `VirtualKeyboardDemo` program during execution**Note**

If you run the program in Figure 10-48 on a machine that does not have the `osk.exe` file, the program runs correctly but does not display a keyboard.

Two Truths & a Lie

Displaying the Virtual Keyboard

1. You can write functional Java programs without using exception-handling techniques.
2. You must have a touch screen to be able to display a virtual keyboard on a Windows system.
3. The `Runtime` class `exec()` method throws an `IOException`.

The false statement is #2. A virtual keyboard can be displayed on a standard screen and can be operated with a mouse or a stylus.

You Do It

Displaying the Windows Calculator

In this section, you create a program that asks a user to complete a simple arithmetic problem and displays the Windows calculator to help the user.

1. Open a new file, and then enter the following `import` statements, class header, and opening curly brace for the `CalculatorDemo` class:

```
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.io.IOException;
public class CalculatorDemo
{
```

2. Create the `main()` method header. The method throws an `IOException` because it will use the `Runtime exec()` method and not handle the exception the method throws.

```
public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException
{
```

3. Declare a `Scanner` object for input and a `Process` object that invokes the built-in calculator program named `calc.exe`.

```
Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
Process proc = Runtime.getRuntime().exec(
    "cmd /c C:\\Windows\\System32\\calc.exe");
```

4. Declare some values to be used in an arithmetic problem. Also declare a variable to hold the sum of the two numbers and another variable to hold the user's answer.

```
double num1 = 279.6;
double num2 = 872.8;
double answer = num1 + num2;
double usersAnswer;
```

5. Prompt the user for an answer, accept it, and then display an appropriate message. Include a closing curly brace for the `main()` method and another for the class.

```
System.out.print("What is the sum of " + num1 +
    " and " + num2 + "? >> ");
usersAnswer = input.nextDouble();
if(usersAnswer == answer)
    System.out.println("Correct!");
else
    System.out.println("Sorry - the answer is " + answer);
}
```

6. Save the file as **CalculatorDemo.java**, and then compile and execute it. When the program runs, the calculator appears on the screen for use. **Figure 10-50** shows a typical execution in progress.

Figure 10-50 Typical execution of **CalculatorDemo** program



7. If you have no further use for the calculator, dismiss it by clicking its **Close** button.

Don't Do It

- › Don't forget that all the statements in a `try` block might not execute. If an exception is thrown, no statements after that point in the `try` block will execute.
- › Don't forget that you might need a `nextLine()` method call after an attempt to read numeric data from the keyboard throws an exception.
- › Don't forget that a variable declared in a `try` block goes out of scope at the end of the block.
- › Don't forget that when a variable gets its usable value within a `try` block, you must ensure that it has a valid value before attempting to use it.
- › Don't forget to place more specific `catch` blocks before more general ones.
- › Don't forget to write a `throws` clause for a method that throws a checked exception but does not handle it.
- › Don't forget to handle any checked exception thrown to your method either by writing a `catch` block or by listing it in your method's `throws` clause.

Summary

- An exception is an unexpected or error condition. Exception handling is the name for the object-oriented techniques that manage or resolve such errors. In Java, the two basic classes of errors are `Error` and `Exception`; both descend from the `Throwable` class.
- In object-oriented terminology, a `try` block holds code that might cause an error and throw an exception, and a `catch` block processes the error.
- You can place as many statements as you need within a `try` block, and you can catch as many exceptions as you want. If you try more than one statement, only the first error-generating statement throws an exception. As soon as the exception occurs, the logic transfers to the `catch` block, which leaves the rest of the statements in the `try` block unexecuted. When a program contains multiple `catch` blocks, the first matching `catch` block executes, and each remaining `catch` block is bypassed.
- When you have actions you must perform at the end of a `try...catch` sequence, you can use a `finally` block that executes regardless of whether the preceding `try` block identifies an exception. Usually, you use a `finally` block to perform cleanup tasks.
- Besides clarity, an advantage to object-oriented exception handling is the flexibility it allows in the handling of error situations. Each calling application might need to handle the same error differently, depending on its purpose.
- When you write a method that might throw a checked exception that is not caught within the method, you must type the clause `throws <name>Exception` after the method header to indicate the type of `Exception` that might be thrown. Methods in which you explicitly throw a checked exception require a `catch` or a declaration.
- The call stack is the memory location where the computer stores the list of method locations to which the system must return. When you catch an exception, you can call `printStackTrace()` to display a list of methods in the call stack so you can determine the location of the exception.
- Java provides more than 40 categories of `Exceptions` that you can use in your programs. Java's creators, however, could not predict every condition that might be an `Exception` in your applications, so Java also allows you to create your own `Exceptions`. To create your own throwable `Exception` class, you must extend a subclass of `Throwable`.
- An assertion is a Java language feature that can help you detect logic errors and debug a program. When you use an assertion, you state a condition that should be true, and Java throws an `AssertionError` when it is not.
- You can call up Windows operating system programs such as the virtual keyboard using the `exec()` method in the `Runtime` class.

Key Terms

assertion	exception specification	syntactic salt
call stack	fault-tolerant	syntactic sugar
catch block	finally block	throw statement
catch or specify requirement	mission critical	throws clause
checked exceptions	robustness	try block
crash	runtime exception	unchecked exceptions
exception	stack trace	virtual keyboard
exception handling	stack trace history list	



Review Questions

1. In object-oriented programming terminology, an unexpected or error condition is a(n) _____.
 - a. anomaly
 - b. exception
 - c. deviation
 - d. aberration

2. All Java Exceptions are _____.
 - a. Errors
 - b. Omissions
 - c. Throwables
 - d. RunTimeExceptions

3. Which of the following statements is true?
 - a. Exceptions are more serious than Errors.
 - b. Errors are more serious than Exceptions.
 - c. Errors and Exceptions are different but equally serious.
 - d. Exceptions and Errors are the same thing.

4. The method that ends the current application and returns control to the operating system is _____.
 - a. System.exit()
 - b. System.done()
 - c. System.end()
 - d. System.abort()

5. In object-oriented terminology, you _____ a procedure that might not complete correctly.
 - a. handle
 - b. catch
 - c. try
 - d. encapsulate

6. A method that detects an error condition or Exception _____ an Exception.
 - a. throws
 - b. catches
 - c. handles
 - d. encapsulates

7. A try block includes all of the following elements except _____.
 - a. the keyword try
 - b. the keyword catch
 - c. curly braces
 - d. statements that might cause Exceptions

8. The segment of code that handles or takes appropriate action following an Exception is a _____ block.
 - a. try
 - b. catch
 - c. throws
 - d. handles

9. You _____ within a try block.
 - a. must place only a single statement
 - b. can place any number of statements
 - c. must place at least two statements
 - d. must place a catch block

10. If you include three statements in a try block and follow the block with three catch blocks, and the second statement in the try block throws an Exception, then _____.
 - a. the first catch block executes
 - b. the first two catch blocks execute
 - c. only the second catch block executes
 - d. the first matching catch block executes

11. When a `try` block does not generate an `Exception` and you have included multiple `catch` blocks, _____.
- a. no `catch` blocks execute
 - b. only the first `catch` block executes
 - c. only the first matching `catch` block executes
 - d. all the `catch` blocks execute
12. The `catch` block that begins `catch (Exception e)` can catch `Exceptions` _____.
- a. of type `IOException`
 - b. of type `ArithmetricException`
 - c. for both `IOExceptions` and `ArithmetricExceptions`
 - d. for neither `IOExceptions` nor `ArithmetricExceptions`
13. The code within a `finally` block executes _____.
- a. when the `try` block identifies exactly one `Exception`
 - b. only when the `try` block does not identify any `Exceptions`
 - c. only when the `try` block identifies multiple `Exceptions`
 - d. whether or not the `try` block identifies any `Exceptions`
14. An advantage to using a `try...catch` block is that exceptional events are _____.
- a. eliminated
 - b. reduced
 - c. integrated with regular events
 - d. isolated from regular events
15. Which methods can throw an `Exception`?
- a. methods with a `throws` clause
 - b. methods with a `catch` block
 - c. methods with both a `throws` clause and a `catch` block
 - d. any method
16. When a method throws an `Exception` and does not catch it, the `Exception` _____.
- a. is ignored
 - b. is thrown to the calling method, if there is one
 - c. creates its own `catch` block
 - d. is thrown to the next method to be called, if there is one
17. Which of the following is least important to know if you want to be able to use a method to its full potential?
- a. the number of statements within the method
 - b. the type of arguments the method requires
 - c. the method's return type
 - d. the type of `Exceptions` the method throws
18. The memory location where the computer stores the list of method locations to which the system must return is known as the _____.
- a. registry
 - b. archive
 - c. chronicle
 - d. call stack
19. You can get a list of the methods through which an `Exception` has traveled by using the _____ method.
- a. `printStackTrace()`
 - b. `callStack()`
 - c. `getPath()`
 - d. `getMessage()`
20. A(n) _____ is a statement used in testing programs that should be true; if it is not true, an `Exception` is thrown.
- a. verification
 - b. throwable
 - c. assertion
 - d. declaration



Programming Exercises

1. Write an application named `BadSubscriptCaught` in which you declare an array of eight first names. Write a `try` block in which you prompt the user for an integer and display the name in the requested position. Create a `catch` block that catches the potential `ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException` thrown when the user enters a number that is out of range. The `catch` block also should display an error message. Save the file as `BadSubscriptCaught.java`.
2. The `Double.parseDouble()` method requires a `String` argument, but it fails if the `String` cannot be converted to a floating-point number. Write an application in which you try accepting a `double` input from a user and catch a `NumberFormatException` if one is thrown. The `catch` block forces the number to 0 and displays an appropriate error message. Following the `catch` block, display the number. Save the file as `TryToParseException.java`.
3. Write a program that accepts a number of quarts from a user and converts the value to gallons. Include exception-handling capabilities in the program so that while any nonnumeric value is entered, the program continually displays an error message, reprompts the user, and accepts new input. Save the file as `QuartsToGallonsWithExceptionHandling.java`.
4. Write a program that prompts the user to enter an integer that represents an array size. Java generates a `NumberFormatException` if the user attempts to enter a noninteger value using `nextInt()`. Handle this exception by displaying an appropriate error message. If the size entered is an integer, create an array of type `double` using the integer entered as the size. Java generates a `NegativeArraySizeException` if you attempt to create an array with a negative size; handle this exception by setting the array size to a default value of five. If the array is created successfully, use exception-handling techniques to ensure that each entered array value is a `double`. Then calculate each element's distance from the average. Save the file as `DistanceFromAverageWithExceptionHandling.java`.
5. Write an application that prompts the user to enter an integer and displays its square root. Accept the user's entry as a `String` using the `nextLine()` method. Then try to use the `Integer.parseInt()` method to convert the `String` to an integer. If the conversion throws an `Exception`, display an error message, and set the number to 0. Then, if the entered number is less than 0, throw an `ArithmaticException` to a `catch` block that explains you cannot take the square root of a negative number. If the entered number is not less than 0, take the square root of the number using the `Math.sqrt()` method, and display the result. Save the file as `SqrtException.java`.
6.
 - a. Create a `CourseException` class that extends the Java `Exception` class and whose constructor receives a `String` that holds a college course's department (for example, `CIS`), a course number (for example, `101`), and a number of credits (for example, `3`). Save the file as `CourseException.java`.
 - b. Create a `Course` class with the same fields as those included in the `CourseException` class and whose constructor requires values for each field. Upon construction, throw a `CourseException` if the department does not consist of three letters, if the course number does not consist of three digits between 100 and 499 inclusive, or if the credits are less than 0.5 or more than 6. Each `CourseException` object should include an appropriate message that explains the reason the construction failed. Include a `toString()` method that returns a `String` that consists of an object's department, course number, and credits. Save the class as `Course.java`.
 - c. Write an application that establishes an array of six `Course` objects. Create an array of six `Strings` to hold department names, six `ints` to hold course numbers, and six `doubles` to hold credits. In a loop, prompt the user for values for each field. Accept any value for the department name. If the user does not enter an `int` for the course number, continually reprompt until an `int` is entered. If the user does not enter a numeric value for the credits, reprompt until a number is entered. In a new loop, try to construct six `Course` objects, each with values taken from the three arrays of field values. If a `CourseException`

is thrown when constructing any of the objects, create the object using the default constructor. Then, in a third loop, display all the stored Course values using the Course `toString()` method. Save the file as **ThrowCourseException.java**.

7.
 - a. Create a `UsedCarException` class that extends `Exception`; its constructor receives a value for a vehicle identification number (VIN) that is passed to the parent constructor so it can be used in a `getMessage()` call. Save the class as **UsedCarException.java**.
 - b. Create a `UsedCar` class with fields for a VIN, make, year, mileage, and price. The `UsedCar` constructor throws a `UsedCarException` when the VIN is not four digits; when the make is not *Ford*, *Honda*, *Toyota*, *Chrysler*, or *Other*; when the year is not between 1997 and 2024 inclusive; or either the mileage or price is negative. Save the class as **UsedCar.java**.
 - c. Write an application that establishes an array of at least seven `UsedCar` objects and prompts the user for values. Include two catch blocks. One catches any data entry Exceptions and displays a message. The other catches `UsedCarExceptions` that are thrown from the `UsedCar` constructor. When data entry is complete, display a list of only the `UsedCar` objects that were constructed successfully. Save the file as **ThrowUsedCarException.java**.
8.
 - a. Create a `ScoreException` class that extends `Exception` and whose constructor accepts a `String` parameter and passes it to the `Exception` class constructor. Save the file as **ScoreException.java**.
 - b. Write an application in which you store at least five student ID numbers in an array. One at a time, display the ID number and prompt the user to enter a test score for the student. Catch any `Exception` thrown if the user does not enter an integer for the score, display an error message, and set the score to 0. Throw a `ScoreException` if the user enters a score greater than 100. Catch the `ScoreException`, display an appropriate message, and then store a 0 for the student's score. At the end of the application, display all the student IDs and scores. Save the file as **TestScore.java**.
9.
 - a. Create an `Exception` class named `GradeException` that contains a `static public` array of valid grade letters (*A*, *B*, *C*, *D*, *F*, and *I*) that you can use to determine whether a grade is valid. Save the file as **GradeException.java**.
 - b. Write an application that displays a series of at least eight student ID numbers that you have stored in an array and asks the user to enter a letter grade for the student. Throw a `GradeException` if the user does not enter a valid letter grade as defined in the `GradeException` class. Catch the `GradeException`, and then display an appropriate message. In addition, store an *I* (for *Incomplete*) for any student for whom an `Exception` is caught. At the end of the application, display all the student IDs and grades. Save the file as **TestGrade.java**.
10.
 - a. Create a `DataEntryException` class whose `getMessage()` method returns information about invalid integer data. Save the file as **DataEntryException.java**.
 - b. Write a program named `GetIDAndAge` that continually prompts the user for an integer ID number and an integer age until a terminal 0 is entered for both. Throw a `DataEntryException` if the ID is not in the range of valid ID numbers (0 through 999), or if the age is not in the range of valid ages (0 through 119). Catch any `DataEntryException` or `InputMismatchException` that is thrown, and display an appropriate message. Save the file as **GetIDAndAge.java**.
11.
 - a. Serendipity Gifts accepts user orders for its products interactively. Users might make the following errors as they enter data:
 - › The item number ordered is not numeric, too low (less than 0), or too high (more than 9999).
 - › The quantity is not numeric, too low (less than 1), or too high (more than 12).
 - › The item number is not a currently valid item.
 Although the company might expand in the future, its current inventory consists of the items listed in **Table 10-1**.

Table 10-1 Item numbers and prices

ITEM NUMBER	PRICE (\$)
111	0.89
222	1.47
333	2.43
444	5.99

Create a class that stores an array of usable error messages; save the file as **OrderMessages.java**.

- b. Create an **OrderException** class that accepts one of the messages as its parameter. Save the file as **OrderException.java**.
 - c. Create an application that contains prompts for an item number and quantity. Allow for the possibility of nonnumeric entries as well as out-of-range entries and entries that do not match any of the currently available item numbers. The program should display an appropriate message stored in the **OrderMessages** class if an error has occurred. If no errors exist in the entered data, compute the user's total amount due (quantity times price each) and display it. Save the program as **PlaceAnOrder.java**.
12. In a "You Do It" section of this chapter, you created a **CalculatorDemo** program that asked the user to solve an arithmetic problem and provided the Windows system calculator for assistance. Now modify that program to include the following improvements:
- Both numbers in the arithmetic problem should be random integers between 1 and 5,000.
 - The program should ask the user to solve five problems.
 - The program should handle any noninteger data entry by displaying an appropriate message and continuing with the next problem.

Save the file as **CalculatorDemo2.java**.

Debugging Exercises

1. Each of the following files in the Chapter10 folder of your downloadable student files has syntax and/or logic errors. In each case, determine the problem and fix the program. After you correct the errors, save each file using the same filename preceded with *Fix*. For example, *DebugTen1.java* will become **FixDebugTen1.java**. You also will use a file named *DebugEmployeeIDException.java* with the *DebugTen4.java* file.
 - a. *DebugTen1.java*
 - b. *DebugTen2.java*
 - c. *DebugTen3.java*
 - d. *DebugTen4.java*

Game Zone

1. Create an application that generates a random integer for a player to guess. When the player's guess is not entered as an integer, catch the **Exception** that is thrown and allow the player to try again. When the guess is an integer that is too high or too low, display an appropriate message, and allow the player to guess again. When the user guesses correctly, display the number of attempts it took to get the right answer. Save the file as **RandomGuessWithExceptionHandling.java**.

2. Create a class that contains an array of 10 multiple-choice questions to which the user is required to respond with an *A*, *B*, or *C*. Display an error message if the user enters a character other than *A*, *B*, or *C*. If the user enters nothing—that is, if the user just presses the Enter key without making an entry, catch the thrown Exception, display an error message, and present the same question to the user again. Save the file as **QuizWithExceptionHandling.java**.

Case Problems

1. In Chapter 9, you created a `DinnerEventDemo` class that obtains user data for an array of dinner events for Yummy Catering and allows the user to sort the events using various criteria. Now, modify the application so that it becomes immune to user data entry errors by handling exceptions for each numeric entry. Each time the program requires numeric data—for example, for the number of guests or selected menu options—continually prompt the user until the data entered is the correct type. Save the revised program as **DinnerEventWithExceptionHandling.java**.
2. In Chapter 9, you created an interactive `LessonWithRentalDemo` class that obtains data for four rentals from Sunshine Seashore Supplies, including details about the contract number, length of the rental, and equipment type. After data entry, the application offers the user options for sorting order and displays the results. Now, modify the application so that it becomes immune to user data entry errors by handling exceptions for each numeric entry. Each time the program requires numeric data—for example, for the rental period in minutes—continually prompt the user until the data entered is the correct type. Save the revised program as **RentalDemoWithExceptionHandling.java**.

File Input and Output

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to:

- 11.1 Describe computer files
- 11.2 Use the Path and Files classes
- 11.3 Describe file organization, streams, and buffers
- 11.4 Use Java's IO classes to write to and read from a file
- 11.5 Create and use sequential data files
- 11.6 Describe random access files
- 11.7 Write records to a random access data file
- 11.8 Read records from a random access data file

11.1 Understanding Computer Files

Data items can be stored on two broad types of storage devices in a computer system:

- › **Volatile storage** is temporary; values that are volatile, such as those stored in variables, are lost when a computer loses power. **Random access memory (RAM)** is the temporary storage within a computer. When you write a Java program that stores a value in a variable, you are using RAM. Most computer professionals simply call volatile storage *memory*.
- › **Nonvolatile storage** is permanent storage; it is not lost when a computer loses power. When you write a Java program and save it to a disk, you are using permanent storage.

Note

When discussing computer storage, *temporary* and *permanent* refer to volatility, not length of time. For example, a *temporary* variable might exist for several hours in a large program or one that the user forgets to close, but a *permanent* piece of data might be saved and then deleted within a few seconds. In recent years, the distinction between memory and storage has blurred because many systems automatically save data to a nonvolatile device and retrieve it after a power interruption. Because you can erase data from files, some programmers prefer the term

persistent storage to permanent storage. In other words, you can remove data from a file stored on a device such as a disk drive, so it is not technically permanent. However, the data items remain in the file even when the computer loses power; so, unlike with RAM, the data items persist, or persevere.

A **computer file** is a collection of data stored on a nonvolatile device. A file exists on a **permanent storage device**, such as a hard disk, USB drive, reel or cassette of magnetic tape, and compact disc.

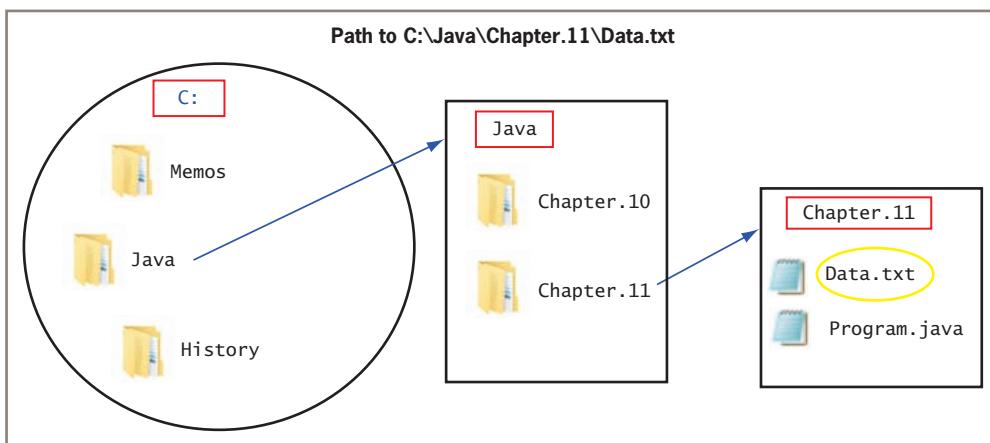
You can categorize files by the way they store data:

- A **text file** contains data that can be read in a text editor because the data has been encoded using a scheme such as ASCII or Unicode. (See Appendix B for more information on Unicode.) A text file might be a **data file** that contains facts and figures, such as a payroll file that contains employee numbers, names, and salaries. A text file might be a **program file** or **application file** that stores software instructions. You have created many program files throughout this course.
- A **binary file** contains data items that have not been encoded as text. A binary file's contents are in binary format, which means that you cannot understand the contents by viewing them in a text editor. Examples include images, music, and the compiled program files with a *.class* extension that you have created during this course.

Although their contents vary, files have many common characteristics—for example, each file has a size that specifies the space it occupies on a section of disk or other storage device. Each file also has a name and a specific time of creation.

When you store a permanent file, you can place it in the main or **root directory** of your storage device. If you compare computer storage to using a file cabinet drawer, saving to the root directory is equivalent to tossing a loose document into the drawer. For better organization, however, most office clerks place documents in folders, and most computer users organize their files by placing each into a **folder** or **directory**. Users also can create folders within folders to form a hierarchy. A complete list of the disk drive plus the hierarchy of directories in which a file resides is its **path**. For example, **Figure 11-1** illustrates the complete path for a Windows file named *Data.txt*, which is saved on the C drive in a folder named *Chapter.11* within a folder named *Java*.

Figure 11-1 Location of C:\Java\Chapter.11\Data.txt



In the Windows operating system, the backslash (\) is the **path delimiter**—the character used to separate path components. In the Solaris (UNIX) operating system, a slash (/) is used as the delimiter.

When you work with stored files in an application, you typically perform the following tasks:

- › Determining whether and where a path or file exists
- › Opening a file
- › Writing to a file
- › Reading from a file
- › Closing a file
- › Deleting a file

Java provides built-in classes that contain methods to help you with these tasks.

Two Truths & a Lie | Understanding Computer Files

1. An advantage of modern computer systems is that both internal computer memory and disk storage are nonvolatile.
2. Data files contain facts and figures; program files store software instructions that might use data files.
3. A complete list of the disk drive plus the hierarchy of directories in which a file resides is the file's path.

The false statement is #1. Internal computer memory (RAM) is volatile storage; disk storage is nonvolatile.

11.2 Using the Path and Files Classes

You can use Java's Path and Files classes to work with stored files.

- › The Path class is used to create objects that contain information about files and directories, such as their locations, sizes, creation dates, and whether they even exist.
- › The Files class is used to perform operations on files and directories, such as deleting them, determining their attributes, and creating input and output streams.

You can include the following statement in a Java program to use both the Path and Files classes:

```
import java.nio.file.*;
```

The *nio* in `java.nio` stands for *new input/output* because its classes are “new” in that they were not developed until Java 7.

Creating a Path

To create a Path, you first determine the default file system on the host computer by using a statement such as the following:

```
FileSystem fs = FileSystems.getDefault();
```

This statement creates a `FileSystem` object using the `getDefault()` method in the `FileSystems` class. The statement uses two different classes. The `FileSystem` class, without an ending *s*, is used to instantiate the object. `FileSystems`, with an ending *s*, is a class that contains factory methods. In object-oriented programming, a **factory** is an object that creates other objects.

After you create a `FileSystem` object, you can define a `Path` using the `getPath()` method with it:

```
Path filePath = fs.getPath("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\Data.txt");
```

Recall that the backslash is used as part of an escape sequence in Java. (For example, '`\n`' represents a newline character.) So, to enter a backslash as a path delimiter within a string, you must type two backslashes to indicate a single backslash. An alternative is to use the `FileSystem` method `getSeparator()`. This method returns the correct separator for the current operating system. For example, you can create a `Path` that is identical to the previous one using a statement such as the following:

```
Path filePath = fs.getPath("C:" + fs.getSeparator() + "Java" +
    fs.getSeparator() + "Chapter.11" + fs.getSeparator() +
    "Data.txt");
```

Another way to create a `Path` is to use the `Paths` class (notice the name ends with `s`). The `Paths` class is a helper class that eliminates the need to create a `FileSystem` object. The `Paths` class `get()` method calls the `getPath()` method of the default file system without requiring you to instantiate a `FileSystem` object. You can create a `Path` object by using the following statement:

```
Path filePath = Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\SampleFile.txt");
```

After the `Path` is created, you use its identifier (in this case, `filePath`) to refer to the file and perform operations on it. `C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\SampleFile.txt` is the full name of a stored file when the operating system refers to it, but the path is known as `filePath` within the application. The idea of a file having one name when referenced by the operating system and a different name within an application is similar to the way a student known as *Arthur* in school might be *Junior* at home. When an application declares a path and you want to use the application with a different file, you would change only the `String` passed to the instantiating method.

Every `Path` is either absolute or relative.

- › An **absolute path** is a complete path; it does not need any other information to locate a file on a system. A full path such as `C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\SampleFile.txt` is an absolute path.
- › A **relative path** depends on other path information. A simple path such as `SampleFile.txt` is relative. When you work with a path that contains only a filename, the file is assumed to be in the same folder as the program using it. Similarly, when you refer to a relative path such as `Chapter.11\\SampleFile.txt` (without the drive letter or the top-level `Java` folder), the `Chapter.11` folder is assumed to be a subfolder of the current directory, and `SampleFile.txt` is assumed to be within the folder.

Note

For Microsoft Windows platforms, the prefix of an absolute pathname that contains a disk-drive specifier consists of the drive letter followed by a colon. For UNIX platforms, the prefix of an absolute pathname is always a forward slash.

Retrieving Information About a Path

Table 11-1 summarizes several useful `Path` methods. As you have learned with other classes, the `toString()` method is overridden from the `Object` class; it returns a `String` representation of the `Path`. Basically, this is the list of path elements separated by copies of the default separator for the operating system. The `getFileName()` method returns the last element in a list of pathnames; frequently this is a filename, but it might be a folder name.

Table 11-1 Selected `Path` class methods

METHOD	DESCRIPTION
<code>String toString()</code>	Returns the <code>String</code> representation of the <code>Path</code> , eliminating double backslashes
<code>Path getFileName()</code>	Returns the file or directory denoted by this <code>Path</code> ; this is the last item in the sequence of name elements
<code>int getNameCount()</code>	Returns the number of name elements in the <code>Path</code>
<code>Path getName(int)</code>	Returns the name in the position of the <code>Path</code> specified by the integer parameter

A Path's elements are accessed using an index. The top-level element in the directory structure is located at index 0; the lowest element in the structure is accessed by the `getName()` method, and has an index that is one less than the number of items on the list. You can use the `getNameCount()` method to retrieve the number of names in the list and the `getName(int)` method to retrieve the name in the position specified by the argument.

Figure 11-2 shows a demonstration program that creates a Path and uses some of the methods in Table 11-1. **Figure 11-3** shows the output when the file named in the Path declaration exists.

Figure 11-2 The PathDemo class

```
import java.nio.file.*;
public class PathDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Path filePath =
            Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\Data.txt");
        int count = filePath.getNameCount();
        System.out.println("Path is " + filePath.toString());
        System.out.println("File name is " + filePath.getFileName());
        System.out.println("There are " + count +
            " elements in the file path");
        for(int x = 0; x < count; ++x)
            System.out.println("Element " + x + " is " +
                filePath.getName(x));
    }
}
```

Figure 11-3 Execution of the PathDemo program

```
Path is C:\Java\Chapter.11\Data.txt
File name is Data.txt
There are 3 elements in the file path
Element 0 is Java
Element 1 is Chapter.11
Element 2 is Data.txt
```

Converting a Relative Path to an Absolute One

The `toAbsolutePath()` method converts a relative path to an absolute path. For example, **Figure 11-4** shows a program that asks a user for a filename and converts it to an absolute path, if necessary.

Figure 11-4 The PathDemo2 class

```
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.nio.file.*;
public class PathDemo2
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        String name;
        Scanner keyboard = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Enter a file name >> ");
        name = keyboard.nextLine();
        Path inputPath = Paths.get(name);
        Path fullPath = inputPath.toAbsolutePath();
        System.out.println("Full path is " + fullPath.toString());
    }
}
```

When the PathDemo2 program executes and the filename that is input represents an absolute Path, the program does not modify the input. However, if the input represents a relative Path, this program then creates an absolute path by assigning the file to the current directory. **Figure 11-5** shows a typical program execution.

Figure 11-5 Execution of the PathDemo2 program

```
Enter a file name >> Memo.txt
Full path is C:\Java\Memo.txt
```

Checking File Accessibility

To verify that a file exists and that the program can access it as needed, you can use the `checkAccess()` method. The following `import` statement allows you to access constants that can be used as arguments to the method:

```
import static java.nio.file.AccessMode.*;
```

Assuming that you have declared a `Path` named `filePath`, the syntax you use with `checkAccess()` is as follows:

```
filePath.getFileSystem().provider().checkAccess();
```

You can use any of the following as arguments to the `checkAccess()` method:

- › No argument—Checks that the file exists
- › READ—Checks that the file exists and that the program has permission to read the file
- › WRITE—Checks that the file exists and that the program has permission to write to the file
- › EXECUTE—Checks that the file exists and that the program has permission to execute the file

Java's **static import feature** takes effect when you place the keyword `static` between `import` and the name of the package being imported. This feature allows you to use `static` constants without their class name. For example, if you remove `static` from the `import` statement for `java.nio.file.AccessMode`, you must refer to the `READ` constant by its full name as `AccessMode.READ`; when you use `static`, you can refer to it just as `READ`.

Note

As an alternative to using `checkAccess()` with no argument to determine whether a file exists, you can substitute the `Files.exists()` method and pass it a `Path` argument.

You can use multiple arguments to the `checkAccess()` method, separated by commas. If the file named in the method call cannot be accessed, an `IOException` is thrown. (Notice in **Figure 11-6** that the `java.io.IOException` package must be imported.) Figure 11-6 shows an application that declares a `Path` and checks whether a file named there can both be read and executed.

Figure 11-6 The PathDemo3 class

```
import java.nio.file.*;
import static java.nio.file.AccessMode.*;
import java.io.IOException;
public class PathDemo3
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Path filePath =
            Paths.get("C:\\\\Java\\\\Chapter.11\\\\PathDemo.class");
        System.out.println("Path is " + filePath.toString());
        try
        {
            filePath.getFileSystem().provider().checkAccess
                (filePath, READ, EXECUTE);
            System.out.println("File can be read and executed");
        }
        catch(IOException e)
        {
            System.out.println
                ("File cannot be used for this application");
        }
    }
}
```

Figure 11-7 shows the output of the program in Figure 11-6 when the *PathDemo.class* file is available in the specified location.

Figure 11-7 Execution of the *PathDemo3* program

```
Path is C:\Java\Chapter.11\PathDemo.class
File can be read and executed
```

Note

A program might find a file usable, but then the file might become unusable before it is actually used in a statement later in the program. This type of program bug is called a **TOCTTOU bug** (pronounced *tock too*)—it happens when changes occur from *Time Of Check To Time Of Use*. You can search the Internet for instructions on locking files in Java, which is one way to reduce the probability of a TOCTTOU error.

Deleting a Path

The *Files* class *delete()* method accepts a *Path* parameter and deletes the last element (file or directory) in a path or throws an exception if the deletion fails. For example:

- › If you try to delete a file that does not exist, a *NoSuchFileException* is thrown.
- › A directory cannot be deleted unless it is empty. If you attempt to delete a directory that contains files, a *DirectoryNotEmptyException* is thrown.
- › If you try to delete a file but you don't have permission, a *SecurityException* is thrown.
- › Other input/output errors cause an *IOException*.

Figure 11-8 shows a program that displays an appropriate message in each of the preceding scenarios after attempting to delete a file.

Figure 11-8 The *PathDemo4* class

```
import java.nio.file.*;
import java.io.IOException;
public class PathDemo4
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Path filePath =
            Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\Data.txt");
        try
        {
            Files.delete(filePath);
            System.out.println("File or directory is deleted");
        }
        catch (NoSuchFileException e)
        {
            System.out.println("No such file or directory");
        }
        catch (DirectoryNotEmptyException e)
        {
            System.out.println("Directory is not empty");
        }
        catch (SecurityException e)
        {
            System.out.println("No permission to delete");
        }
        catch (IOException e)
        {
            System.out.println("IO exception");
        }
    }
}
```

The *Files* class *deleteIfExists()* method also can be used to delete a file, but if the file does not exist, no exception is thrown.

Determining File Attributes

You can use the `readAttributes()` method of the `Files` class to retrieve useful information about a file. The method takes two arguments—a `Path` object and `BasicFileAttributes.class`—and returns an instance of the `BasicFileAttributes` class. You might create an instance with a statement such as the following:

```
BasicFileAttributes attr = Files.readAttributes(filePath, BasicFileAttributes.class);
```

After you have created a `BasicFileAttributes` object, you can use several methods for retrieving information about a file. For example, the `size()` method returns the size of a file in bytes. Methods such as `creationTime()` and `lastModifiedTime()` return important file times. **Figure 11-9** contains a program that uses these methods.

Figure 11-9 The `PathDemo5` class

```
import java.nio.file.*;
import java.nio.file.attribute.*;
import java.io.IOException;
public class PathDemo5
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Path filePath =
            Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\Data.txt");
        try
        {
            BasicFileAttributes attr =
                Files.readAttributes(filePath, BasicFileAttributes.class);
            System.out.println("Creation time " + attr.creationTime());
            System.out.println("Last modified time " +
                attr.lastModifiedTime());
            System.out.println("Size " + attr.size());
        }
        catch(IOException e)
        {
            System.out.println("IO Exception");
        }
    }
}
```

The time methods in the `PathDemo5` program each return a `FileTime` object that is converted to a `String` in the `println()` method calls. `FileTime` objects are represented in the following format:

YYYY-mm-ddThh:mm:ss

As the output in **Figure 11-10** shows, in a `FileTime` object, the four-digit year is followed by a hyphen, the two-digit month, another hyphen, and the two-digit day. Following a *T* for *Time*, the hour, minute, and seconds (including fractions of a second) are separated by colons.

Figure 11-10 Execution of the `PathDemo5` program

```
Creation time 2024-04-27T17:40:44.3320447Z
Last modified time 2024-04-28T17:49:30.4969912Z
Size 18
```

Frequently, you don't care about a file's exact `FileTime` value, but you are interested in comparing two files to discover which is newer. **Figure 11-11** demonstrates the `compareTo()` method, which returns a value of less than 0 if the first `FileTime` comes before the argument's `FileTime`. The method returns a value of greater than 0 if the first `FileTime` is later than the argument's, and it returns 0 if the `FileTime` values are the same.

Figure 11-12 shows the output of the application in Figure 11-11 when file1 was created before file2.

Figure 11-11 The PathDemo6 class

```
import java.nio.file.*;
import java.nio.file.attribute.*;
import java.io.IOException;
public class PathDemo6
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Path file1 =
            Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\Data.txt");
        Path file2 =
            Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\Data2.txt");
        try
        {
            BasicFileAttributes attr1 =
                Files.readAttributes(file1, BasicFileAttributes.class);
            BasicFileAttributes attr2 =
                Files.readAttributes(file2, BasicFileAttributes.class);
            FileTime time1 = attr1.creationTime();
            FileTime time2 = attr2.creationTime();
            System.out.println("file1's creation time is: " + time1);
            System.out.println("file2's creation time is: " + time2);
            if(time1.compareTo(time2) < 0)
                System.out.println("file1 was created before file2");
            else
                if(time1.compareTo(time2) > 0)
                    System.out.println("file1 was created after file2");
                else
                    System.out.println
                        ("file1 and file2 were created at the same time");
        }
        catch(IOException e)
        {
            System.out.println("IO Exception");
        }
    }
}
```

The compareTo() method compares FileTime objects.

Figure 11-12 Output of the PathDemo6 program

```
file1's creation time is: 2021-07-20T17:17:51.0983825Z
file2's creation time is: 2024-03-31T17:50:58.1597558Z
file1 was created before file2
```

Note

Besides BasicFileAttributes, Java supports specialized classes for DOS file attributes used on DOS systems and POSIX file attributes used on systems such as UNIX. For example, DOS files might be *hidden* or *read only* and UNIX files might have a group owner. For more details about specialized file attributes, you can search the Internet for *Java file attributes*.

Two Truths & a Lie

Using the Path and Files Classes

- Java's `Path` class is used to create objects that contain information to specify the location of files or directories.
- A relative path is a complete path; it does not need any other information to locate a file on a system.
- You can use the `readAttributes()` method of the `Files` class to retrieve information about a file, such as its size and when it was created.

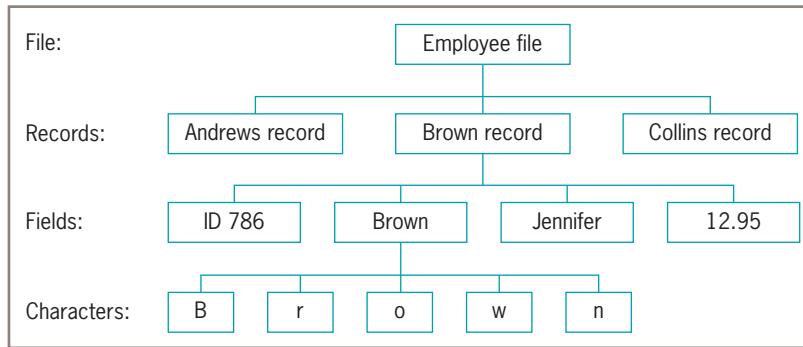
The false statement is #2. A relative path depends on other path information. An absolute path is a complete path; it does not need any other information to locate a file on a system.

11.3 File Organization, Streams, and Buffers

Most businesses generate and use large quantities of data every day. You can store data in variables within a program, but such storage is temporary. When the application ends, the variables no longer exist and the data values are lost because variables are stored in the computer's main or primary memory (RAM). When you need to retain data for any significant amount of time, you must save the data on a permanent, secondary storage device, such as a disk.

Businesses organize data in a hierarchy, as shown in **Figure 11-13**. The smallest useful piece of data to most users is the character. A **character** can be any letter, number, or other special symbol (such as a punctuation mark) that comprises data. Characters are made up of bits (the zeros and ones that represent computer circuitry), but people who use data typically do not care whether the internal representation for an *A* is 01000001 or 10111110. Rather, they are concerned with the meaning of *A*—for example, it might represent a grade in a course, a person's initial, or a company code.

Figure 11-13 Data hierarchy



In computer terminology, a **character** can be any group of bits, and it does not necessarily represent a letter or number; for example, some “characters” produce a sound or control the display. Also, characters are not necessarily created with a single keystroke; for example, escape sequences are used to create the '`\n`' character, which starts a new line, and '`\\`', which represents a single backslash. Sometimes, you can think of a character as a unit of information instead of data with a particular appearance. For example, the mathematical character pi and the Greek letter pi look the same (π), but have two different Unicode values.

When businesses use data, they group characters into fields. A **field** is a group of characters that has some meaning. For example, the characters *T*, *o*, and *m* might represent your first name. Other data fields might represent items such as last name, Social Security number, zip code, and salary.

Fields are grouped together to form records. A **record** is a collection of fields that contain data about an entity. For example, a person's first and last names, Social Security number, zip code, and salary represent that person's record.

When programming in Java, you have created many classes, such as an Employee class or a Student class. You can think of the data typically stored in each of these classes as a record. (You also have created objects of type `record`.) These classes contain individual variables that represent data fields. A business's data records usually represent a person, item, sales transaction, or some other concrete object or event.

Records are grouped to create files. Data files consist of related records, such as a company's personnel file that contains one record for each employee. Some files have only a few records; perhaps your professor maintains a file for your class with 25 records—one record for each student. Other files contain thousands or even millions of records. For example, an insurance company maintains a file of policyholders, and a mail-order catalog company maintains a file of available items.

A data file can be used as a **sequential access file** when each record is accessed one after another in the order in which it was stored. Most frequently, each record is stored in order based on the value in some field; for example, employees might be stored in Social Security number order, or inventory items might be stored in item number order. When records are not used in sequence, the file is used as a **random access file**. You learn more about random access files later in this chapter.

When records are stored in a data file, their fields can be organized one to a line, or a character can be used to separate them. A file of **comma-separated values (CSV)** is one in which each value in a record is separated from the next by a comma; CSV is a widely used format for files used in all sorts of applications, including databases and spreadsheets. Later in this chapter, you will see examples of CSV files.

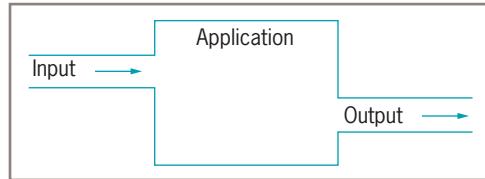
Before an application can use a data file, it must open the file. To **open a file** means to make it accessible. A Java application opens a file by creating an object and associating a stream of bytes with it. Similarly, when you finish using a file, the program should close it. To **close a file** means to make it no longer available to an application. If you fail to close an input file—a file from which you are reading data—there usually are no serious consequences; the data items still exist in the file. However, if you fail to close an output file—a file to which you are writing data—the data might become inaccessible. You should always close every file you open, and usually you should close the file as soon as you no longer need it. When you leave a file open for no reason, you use computer resources, and your computer's performance suffers. Also, particularly within a network, another program might be waiting to use the file.

Whereas people view a file as a series of records, with each record containing data fields, Java does not automatically attribute such meaning to a file's contents. Instead, Java simply views a file as a series of bytes. When you perform an input operation in an application, you can picture bytes flowing into your program from an input device through a **stream**, which functions as a pipeline or channel. When you perform output, some bytes flow out of your application through another stream to an output device, as shown in **Figure 11-14**. A stream is an object, and like all objects, streams have data and methods. The methods allow you to perform actions such as opening, closing, reading, and writing.

Most streams flow in only one direction; each stream is either an input or output stream. (Later in this chapter, you will learn that random access files use streams that flow in two directions.) You might open several streams at once within an application. For example, an application that reads a data disk and separates valid records from invalid ones might require three streams:

- › The data arrives via an input stream.
- › One output stream writes some records to a file of valid records.
- › Another output stream writes other records to a file of invalid records.

Figure 11-14 File streams



Input and output operations are usually among the slowest operations in any computerized system because of limitations imposed by the hardware. For that reason, professional programs often set aside a memory block called a **buffer**. You have learned that the `StringBuilder` object uses a buffer, for example. The same term describes a memory location where bytes are held after they are logically output but before they are sent to the output device. Using a buffer to accumulate input or output before issuing the actual IO command improves program performance. When you use an output buffer, you sometimes flush it before closing it. **Flushing** clears any bytes that have been sent to a buffer for output but have not yet been output to a hardware device.

Two Truths & a Lie

File Organization, Streams, and Buffers

1. A field is a group of characters that has some meaning; a record is a collection of fields.
2. A data file is used as a sequential access file when the first field for each record is stored first in a file, the second field for each record is stored next, and so on.
3. Java views files as a series of bytes that flow into and out of your applications through a stream.

The false statement is #2. A data file is used as a sequential access file when each record is stored in order based on the value in some field.

11.4 Using Java's IO Classes

Figure 11-15 shows a partial hierarchical relationship of some of the classes Java uses for input and output (IO) operations; it shows that `InputStream`, `OutputStream`, and `Reader` are subclasses of the `Object` class. All three of these classes are abstract. As you have learned, abstract classes contain methods that must be overridden in their child classes. The figure also shows the major IO child classes that you will study in this chapter. The capabilities of these classes are summarized in **Table 11-2**.

As its name implies, the `OutputStream` class can be used to produce output. **Table 11-3** shows some of the class's common methods. You can use `OutputStream` to write all or part of an array of bytes. When you finish using an `OutputStream`, you usually want to flush and close it.

Java's `System` class contains a `PrintStream` object named `System.out`; you have used this object extensively in this course, along with its `print()` and `println()` methods. Besides `System.out`, the `System` class defines a `PrintStream` object named `System.err`. The output from `System.err` and `System.out` can go to the same device; in fact, `System.err` and `System.out` are both directed by default to the command line on the monitor. The difference is that `System.err` is usually reserved for error messages, and `System.out` is reserved for valid output. You can direct either `System.err` or `System.out` to a new location, such as a disk file or printer. For example, you might want to keep a hard copy (printed) log of the error messages generated by a program, but direct the standard output to a disk file.

Although you usually have no need to do so, you can create your own `OutputStream` object and assign `System.out` to it. **Figure 11-16** shows how this works. The application declares a `String` of letter grades allowed in a course. Then, the `getBytes()` method converts the `String` to an array of bytes. An `OutputStream` object is declared, and `System.out` is assigned to the `OutputStream` reference in a `try` block.

In the program in Figure 11-16, the `write()` method accepts the byte array and sends it to the output device, and then the output stream is flushed and closed. **Figure 11-17** shows the execution.

Figure 11-15 Relationship of selected IO classes

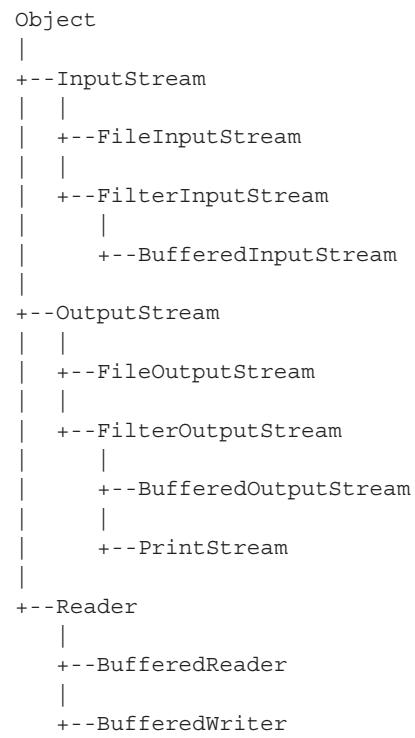


Table 11-2 Description of selected classes used for input and output

CLASS	DESCRIPTION
InputStream	Abstract class that contains methods for performing input
FileInputStream	Child of InputStream that provides the capability to read from disk files
BufferedInputStream	Child of FilterInputStream, which is a child of InputStream; BufferedInputStream handles input from a system's standard (or default) input device, usually the keyboard
OutputStream	Abstract class that contains methods for performing output
FileOutputStream	Child of OutputStream that allows you to write to disk files
BufferedOutputStream	Child of FilterOutputStream, which is a child of OutputStream; BufferedOutputStream handles input from a system's standard (or default) output device, usually the monitor
PrintStream	Child of FilterOutputStream, which is a child of OutputStream; System.out is a PrintStream object
Reader	Abstract class for reading character streams; the only methods that a subclass must implement are read(char[], int, int) and close()
BufferedReader	Reads text from a character-input stream, buffering characters to provide for efficient reading of characters, arrays, and lines
BufferedWriter	Writes text to a character-output stream, buffering characters to provide for the efficient writing of characters, arrays, and lines

Table 11-3 Selected OutputStream methods

OutputStream METHOD	DESCRIPTION
void close()	Closes the output stream and releases any system resources associated with the stream
void flush()	Flushes the output stream; if any bytes are buffered, they will be written
void write(byte[] b)	Writes all the bytes to the output stream from the specified byte array
void write(byte[] b, int off, int len)	Writes bytes to the output stream from the specified byte array starting at offset position off for a length of len characters

Figure 11-16 The ScreenOut class

```
import java.io.*;
public class ScreenOut
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        String s = "ABCDF";
        byte[] data = s.getBytes();
        OutputStream output = null;
        try
        {
            output = System.out;
            output.write(data);
            output.flush();
            output.close();
        }
        catch(Exception e)
        {
            System.out.println("Message: " + e);
        }
    }
}
```

Figure 11-17 Execution of the ScreenOut program


Writing to a File

The output in Figure 11-17 is not very impressive. Before you knew about streams, you wrote applications that displayed a string on the monitor by using the automatically created `System.out` object, so the application in Figure 11-16 might seem to contain a lot of unnecessary work at first. However, other output devices can be assigned to `OutputStream` references, allowing your applications to save data to them.

Instead of assigning the standard output device to `OutputStream`, you can assign a file. To accomplish this, you can construct a `BufferedOutputStream` object and assign it to the `OutputStream`. If you want to change an application's output device, you don't have to modify the application except to assign a new object to the `OutputStream`; the rest of the logic remains the same. Java lets you assign a file to a `Stream` object so that screen output and file output work in exactly the same manner.

You can create a writeable file by using the `Files` class `newOutputStream()` method. You pass a `Path` and a `StandardOpenOption` argument to this method. The method creates a file if it does not already exist, opens the file for writing, and returns an `OutputStream` that can be used to write bytes to the file. **Table 11-4** shows the `StandardOpenOption` arguments you can use as the second argument to the `newOutputStream()` method. If you do not specify any options and the file does not exist, a new file is created. If the file exists, it is truncated. In other words, specifying no option is the same as specifying both `CREATE` and `TRUNCATE_EXISTING`.

Table 11-4 Selected `StandardOpenOption` constants

StandardOpenOption CONSTANT	DESCRIPTION
<code>WRITE</code>	Opens the file for writing
<code>APPEND</code>	Appends new data to the end of the file; use this option with <code>WRITE</code> or <code>CREATE</code>
<code>TRUNCATE_EXISTING</code>	Truncates the existing file to 0 bytes so the file contents are replaced; use this option with the <code>WRITE</code> option
<code>CREATE_NEW</code>	Creates a new file only if it does not exist; throws an exception if the file already exists
<code>CREATE</code>	Opens the file if it exists or creates a new file if it does not
<code>DELETE_ON_CLOSE</code>	Deletes the file when the stream is closed; used most often for temporary files that exist only for the duration of the program

Figure 11-18 shows an application that writes a `String` of bytes to a file. The only differences from the preceding `ScreenOut` class are:

- › Additional import statements are used.
- › The class name is changed.
- › A `Path` is declared for a `Grades.txt` file.
- › Instead of assigning `System.out` to the `OutputStream` reference, a `BufferedOutputStream` object is assigned.

When the `FileOut` program executes, no output appears on the monitor, but a file is created at the location specified in the `Path` statement. **Figure 11-19** shows the file when it is opened in Notepad.

Note

Notepad is a basic text editor that allows you to create and read plain text files; it is included with installations of Windows.

Reading from a File

You use an `InputStream` like you use an `OutputStream`. If you want, you can create an `InputStream`, assign `System.in` to it, and use the class's `read()` method with the created object to retrieve keyboard input. Usually, however, it is more efficient to use the `Scanner` class for keyboard input and to use the `InputStream` class to input data that has been stored in a file.

Figure 11-18 The `FileOut` class

```

import java.nio.file.*;
import java.io.*;
import static java.nio.file.StandardOpenOption.*;

public class FileOut
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Path file =
            Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\Grades.txt");
        String s = "ABCDF";
        byte[] data = s.getBytes();
        OutputStream output = null;
        try
        {
            output = new
                BufferedOutputStream(Files.newOutputStream(file, CREATE));
            output.write(data);
            output.flush();
            output.close();
        }
        catch(Exception e)
        {
            System.out.println("Message: " + e);
        }
    }
}

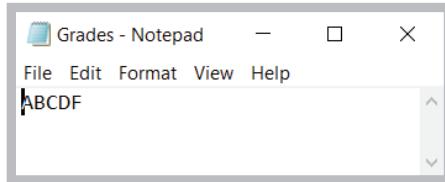
```

Additional import statements are needed.

Class name is changed.

Path for file is declared.

A `BufferedOutputStream` object is assigned to the `OutputStream` reference.

Figure 11-19 Contents of the *Grades.txt* file created by the `FileOut` program

To open a file for reading, you can use the `Files` class `newInputStream()` method. This method accepts a `Path` parameter and returns a stream that can read bytes from a file. **Figure 11-20** shows a `ReadFile` class that reads from the *Grades.txt* file created earlier. The `Path` is declared, an `InputStream` is declared using the `Path`, and a stream is assigned to the `InputStream` reference.

Note

If you needed to read and display multiple lines from the file in the program in Figure 11-20, you could use a loop such as the following:

```

while(s = reader.readLine() != null)
    System.out.println(s);

```

This loop continuously reads and displays lines from the file until the `readLine()` method returns `null`, indicating that no more data is available.

Figure 11-20 The ReadFile class

```

import java.nio.file.*;
import java.io.*;
public class ReadFile
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Path file = Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\Grades.txt");
        InputStream input = null;
        try
        {
            input = Files.newInputStream(file);
            BufferedReader reader = new
                BufferedReader(new InputStreamReader(input));
            String s = null;
            s = reader.readLine();
            System.out.println(s);
            input.close();
        }
        catch (IOException e)
        {
            System.out.println(e);
        }
    }
}

```

The `ReadFile` class declares a `BufferedReader` object. A `BufferedReader` reads a line of text from a character-input stream, buffering characters so that reading is more efficient. When the `ReadFile` program executes, the `readLine()` method gets the single line of text from the *Grades.txt* file, and then the line, *ABCDF*, is displayed.

When you use the `BufferedReader` class, you must import the `java.io` package into your program. **Table 11-5** shows some useful `BufferedReader` methods.

Table 11-5 Selected `BufferedReader` methods

BufferedReader METHOD	DESCRIPTION
<code>close()</code>	Closes the stream and any resources associated with it
<code>read()</code>	Reads a single character
<code>read(char[] buffer, int off, int len)</code>	Reads characters into a portion of an array from position <code>off</code> for <code>len</code> characters
<code>readLine()</code>	Reads a line of text
<code>skip(long n)</code>	Skips the specified number of characters

Two Truths & a Lie | Using Java's IO Classes

1. Java's `InputStream`, `OutputStream`, and `Reader` classes are used for handling input and output.
2. You can create your own `OutputStream` object, assign `System.out` to it, and use it for writing output to the screen, or you can use the `Files` class `newOutputStream()` method to create a file and open it for writing.
3. To open a file for reading, you can use the `newOutputStream()` method to get a stream that can read bytes from a file.

The false statement is #3. To open a file for reading, you can use the `newInputStream()` method to get a stream that can read bytes from a file.

11.5 Creating and Using Sequential Data Files

Frequently, you want to save more than a single `String` to a file. For example, you might have a data file of personnel records that include an ID number, name, and pay rate for each employee in your organization. **Figure 11-21** shows a program that reads employee ID numbers, names, and pay rates from the keyboard and sends them to a comma-separated file.

Figure 11-21 The `WriteEmployeeFile` class

```
import java.nio.file.*;
import java.io.*;
import static java.nio.file.StandardOpenOption.*;
import java.util.Scanner;
public class WriteEmployeeFile
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        Path file =
            Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\Employees.txt");
        String s = "";
        String delimiter = ",";
        int id;
        String name;
        double payRate;
        final int QUIT = 999;
        try
        {
            OutputStream output = new
                BufferedOutputStream(Files.newOutputStream(file, CREATE));
            BufferedWriter writer = new
                BufferedWriter(new OutputStreamWriter(output));
            System.out.print("Enter employee ID number >> ");
            id = input.nextInt();
            while(id != QUIT)
            {
                System.out.print("Enter name for employee #" +
                    id + " >> ");
                input.nextLine();
                name = input.nextLine();
                System.out.print("Enter pay rate >> ");
                payRate = input.nextDouble();
                s = id + delimiter + name + delimiter + payRate;
                writer.write(s, 0, s.length());
                writer.newLine();
                System.out.print("Enter next ID number or " +
                    QUIT + " to quit >> ");
                id = input.nextInt();
            }
            writer.close();
        }
        catch(Exception e)
        {
            System.out.println("Message: " + e);
        }
    }
}
```

BufferedWriter object is declared.

BufferedWriter object uses write() method.

Note

In Figure 11-21, notice the extra `nextLine()` call after the employee's ID number is entered. Recall that this extra call is necessary to consume the newline character that remains in the input buffer after the ID number is accepted.

The `WriteEmployeeFile` program creates a `BufferedWriter` named `writer`. The `BufferedWriter` class is the counterpart to `BufferedReader`. It writes text to an output stream, buffering the characters. The class has three overloaded `write()` methods that provide for efficient writing of characters, arrays, and strings, respectively. **Table 11-6** contains all the methods defined in the `BufferedWriter` class.

Table 11-6 `BufferedWriter` methods

BufferedWriter METHOD	DESCRIPTION
<code>close()</code>	Closes the stream, flushing it first
<code>flush()</code>	Flushes the stream
<code>newline()</code>	Writes a line separator
<code>write(String s, int off, int len)</code>	Writes a <code>String</code> from position <code>off</code> for length <code>len</code>
<code>write(char[] array, int off, int len)</code>	Writes a character array from position <code>off</code> for length <code>len</code>
<code>write(int c)</code>	Writes a single character

In the `WriteEmployeeFile` program, `Strings` of employee data are constructed within a loop that executes while the user does not enter the `QUIT` value. When a `String` is complete—that is, when it contains an ID number, name, and pay rate separated with commas—the `String` is sent to `writer`. The `write()` method accepts the `String` from position 0 for its entire length.

After the `String` is written, the system's newline character also is written. Although a data file would not require a newline character after each record (each new record could be separated with a comma or any other unique character that was not needed as part of the data), placing each record on a new line makes the output file easier for a person to read and interpret. Because not all platforms use '`\n`' to separate lines, the `BufferedWriter` class contains a `newLine()` method that uses the current platform's line separator. Alternatively, you could write the value of `System.getProperty("line.separator")`. This method call returns the default line separator for a system; the same separator is supplied either way because the `newLine()` method actually calls the `System.getProperty()` method for you.

Any of the input or output methods in the `WriteEmployeeFile` program might throw an exception, so all the relevant code in the class is placed in a `try` block. **Figure 11-22** shows a typical program execution during which the user enters data for three employees.

Figure 11-22 Typical execution of the `WriteEmployeeFile` program

```
Enter employee ID number >> 234
Enter name for employee #234 >> Harris
Enter pay rate >> 19.65
Enter next ID number or 999 to quit >> 319
Enter name for employee #319 >> Ravani
Enter pay rate >> 21.15
Enter next ID number or 999 to quit >> 451
Enter name for employee #451 >> Garcia
Enter pay rate >> 25.75
Enter next ID number or 999 to quit >> 999
```

Figure 11-23 shows the output file from the WriteEmployeeFile program when it is opened in Notepad. Each ID number, name, and pay rate is displayed, and fields are separated with commas.

Figure 11-23 Output of the execution of the WriteEmployeeFile program

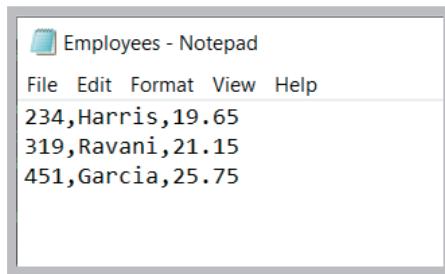


Figure 11-24 shows a program that reads the *Employees.txt* file created by the WriteEmployeeFile program. The program declares an `InputStream` for the file, then creates a `BufferedReader` using the `InputStream`. The first line is read into a `String`; as long as the `readLine()` method does not return `null`, the `String` is displayed and a new line is read.

Figure 11-24 The ReadEmployeeFile class

```
import java.nio.file.*;
import java.io.*;
public class ReadEmployeeFile
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Path file =
            Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\Employees.txt");
        String s = "";
        try
        {
            InputStream input = new
                BufferedInputStream(Files.newInputStream(file));
            BufferedReader reader = new
                BufferedReader(new InputStreamReader(input));
            s = reader.readLine();
            while(s != null)
            {
                System.out.println(s);
                s = reader.readLine();
            }
            reader.close();
        }
        catch(Exception e)
        {
            System.out.println("Message: " + e);
        }
    }
}
```

Figure 11-25 shows the output of the ReadEmployeeFile program when it uses the file that was created during the execution in Figure 11-22. Each comma-separated `String` is displayed on its own line.

Many applications would not want to use the file data only as a `String` like the ReadEmployeeFile program does. **Figure 11-26** shows a more useful program in which the retrieved file `Strings` are split into usable fields. The `String` class `split()` method accepts an argument that identifies the field

Figure 11-25 Output of the execution of the ReadEmployeeFile program

```
234,Harris,19.65
319,Ravani,21.15
451,Garcia,25.75
```

Figure 11-26 The `ReadEmployeeFile2` class

```

import java.nio.file.*;
import java.io.*;
public class ReadEmployeeFile2
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Path file =
            Paths.get("C:\\\\Java\\\\Chapter.11\\\\Employees.txt");
        String[] array = new String[3];
        String s = "";
        String delimiter = ",";
        int id;
        String name;
        double payRate;
        double gross;
        final double HRS_IN_WEEK = 40;
        double total = 0;
        try
        {
            InputStream input = new
                BufferedInputStream(Files.newInputStream(file));
            BufferedReader reader = new
                BufferedReader(new InputStreamReader(input));
            System.out.println();
            s = reader.readLine();
            while(s != null)
            {
                array = s.split(delimiter);
                id = Integer.parseInt(array[0]);
                name = array[1];
                payRate = Double.parseDouble(array[2]);
                gross = payRate * HRS_IN_WEEK;
                System.out.println("ID#" + id + " " + name +
                    " $" + payRate + " $" + gross);
                total += gross;
                s = reader.readLine();
            }
            reader.close();
        }
        catch(Exception e)
        {
            System.out.println("Message: " + e);
        }
        System.out.println(" Total gross payroll is $" + total);
    }
}

```

delimiter (in this case, a comma) and returns an array of `Strings`. Each array element holds one field. Then, methods such as `parseInt()` and `parseDouble()` can be used to reformat the split `Strings` into their respective data types.

As each record is read and split in the `ReadEmployeeFile2` class, its pay rate field is used to calculate gross pay for the employee based on a 40-hour work week. Then the gross is accumulated to produce a total gross payroll that is displayed after all the data has been processed. **Figure 11-27** shows the program's execution.

Figure 11-27 Execution of the `ReadEmployeeFile2` program

ID#234 Harris \$19.65 \$786.0
ID#319 Ravanı \$21.15 \$846.0
ID#451 Garcia \$25.75 \$1030.0
Total gross payroll is \$2662.0

Two Truths & a Lie

Creating and Using Sequential Data Files

1. A `BufferedWriter` writes text to an output stream, buffering the characters.
2. A data file does not require a newline character after each record, but adding a new line makes the output file easier for a person to read and interpret.
3. The `String` class `split()` method converts parts of a `String` to `ints`, `doubles`, and other data types.

The false statement is #3. The `String` class `split()` method accepts an argument that identifies a field delimiter and returns an array of `Strings` in which each array element holds one field. Then you can use methods such as `parseInt()` and `parseDouble()` to convert the `split` `Strings` to other data types.

11.6 Learning About Random Access Files

The file examples in the first part of this chapter have been sequential access files, which means that you work with the records in sequential order from beginning to end. For example, in the `ReadEmployeeFile` programs, if you write an employee record with an ID number of 145, and then write a second record with an ID number of 289, the records remain in the original data-entry order when you retrieve them. Businesses store data in sequential order when they use the records for **batch processing**, which involves performing the same tasks with many records, one after the other. For example, when a company produces customer bills, the records for the billing period are gathered in a batch and the bills are calculated and printed in sequence. It really doesn't matter whose bill is produced first because no bills are distributed to customers until all bills in a group or batch have been printed and mailed.

Note

Besides indicating a system that works with many records, the term *batch processing* can refer to a system in which you issue many operating-system commands as a group.

For many applications, sequential access is inefficient. These applications, known as **real-time** applications, require that a record be accessed immediately while a client is waiting. A program in which the user makes direct requests is an **interactive program**. For example, if a customer telephones a department store with a question about a monthly bill, the customer service representative does not want to access every customer account in sequence. Suppose that the store's database contains tens of thousands of account records to read, and that the customer record in question is near the end of the list. It would take too long to access the customer's record if all the records had to be read sequentially. Instead, a customer service representative requires a **random access file**—a file in which records can be accessed or retrieved directly in any order. A random access file can also be called a **direct access file** or **instant access file**.

You can use Java's `FileChannel` class to create your own random access files. A **file channel** object is an avenue for reading and writing a file. A file channel is **seekable**, meaning you can search for a specific file location and operations can start at any specified position. **Table 11-7** describes some `FileChannel` methods.

Table 11-7 Selected `FileChannel` methods

FileChannel METHOD	DESCRIPTION
<code>FileChannel open(Path file, OpenOption... options)</code>	Opens or creates a file, returning a file channel to access the file
<code>long position()</code>	Returns the channel's file position
<code>FileChannel position(long newPosition)</code>	Sets the channel's file position
<code>int read(ByteBuffer buffer)</code>	Reads a sequence of bytes from the channel into the buffer
<code>long size()</code>	Returns the size of the channel's file
<code>int write(ByteBuffer buffer)</code>	Writes a sequence of bytes to the channel from the buffer

Several methods in Table 11-7 use a ByteBuffer object. As its name describes, a ByteBuffer is simply a holding place for bytes waiting to be read or written. An array of bytes can be **wrapped**, or encompassed, into a ByteBuffer using the ByteBuffer `wrap()` method. Wrapping a byte array into a buffer causes changes made to the buffer to change the array as well, and causes changes made to the array to change the buffer. Creating a usable FileChannel for randomly writing data requires creating a ByteBuffer and several other steps:

- › You can use the Files class `newByteChannel()` method to get a ByteChannel for a Path. The `newByteChannel()` method accepts Path and StandardOpenOption arguments that specify how the file will be opened.
- › The ByteChannel returned by the `newByteChannel()` method then can be cast to a FileChannel using a statement similar to the following:

```
FileChannel fc = (FileChannel)Files.newByteChannel(file, READ, WRITE);
```

- › You can create a byte array. For example, a byte array can be built from a String using the `getBytes()` method as follows:

```
String s = "XYZ";
byte[] data = s.getBytes();
```

- › The byte array can be wrapped into a ByteBuffer as follows:

```
ByteBuffer out = ByteBuffer.wrap(data);
```

- › Then the filled ByteBuffer can be written to the declared FileChannel with a statement such as the following:

```
fc.write(out);
```

- › You can test whether a ByteBuffer's contents have been used up by checking the `hasRemaining()` method.

- › After you have written the contents of a ByteBuffer, you can write the same ByteBuffer contents again by using the `rewind()` method to reposition the ByteBuffer to the beginning of the buffer.

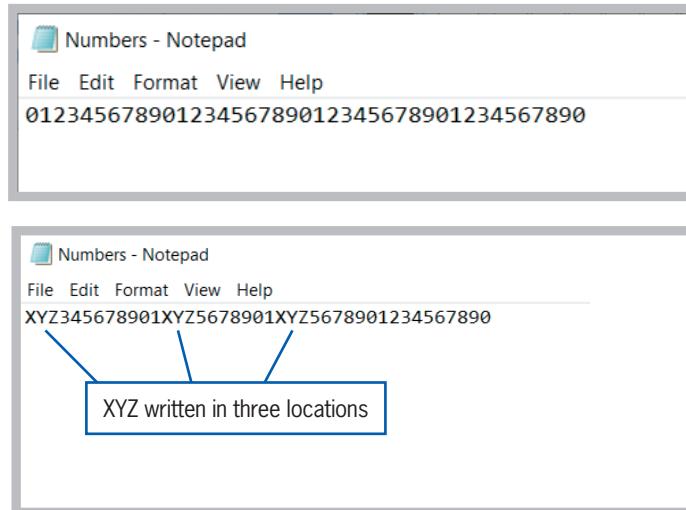
Figure 11-28 employs all these steps to declare a file and write some bytes in it randomly at positions 0, 22, and 12, in that order.

Figure 11-28 The RandomAccessTest class

```
import java.nio.file.*;
import java.io.*;
import java.nio.channels.FileChannel;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import static java.nio.file.StandardOpenOption.*;
public class RandomAccessTest
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Path file =
            Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\Numbers.txt");
        String s = "XYZ";
        byte[] data = s.getBytes();
        ByteBuffer out = ByteBuffer.wrap(data);
        FileChannel fc = null;
        try
        {
            fc = (FileChannel)Files.newByteChannel(file, READ, WRITE);
            fc.position(0);
            while(out.hasRemaining())
                fc.write(out);
            out.rewind();
            fc.position(22);
            while(out.hasRemaining())
                fc.write(out);
            out.rewind();
            fc.position(12);
            while(out.hasRemaining())
                fc.write(out);
            fc.close();
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            System.out.println("Error message: " + e);
        }
    }
}
```

Figure 11-29 shows the contents of the *Numbers.txt* text file before and after executing the *RandomAccessTest* program. The String *XYZ* has been written at positions 0, 22, and 12.

Figure 11-29 The *Numbers.txt* file before and after execution of *RandomAccessTest* program



Two Truths & a Lie | Learning About Random Access Files

1. Businesses store data in random order when they use the records for batch processing.
2. Real-time applications are interactive and require using random access data files.
3. A `FileChannel` object is a seekable channel for reading and writing a file.

The false statement is #1. Businesses store data in sequential order when they use the records for batch processing.

11.7 Writing Records to a Random Access Data File

Writing characters at random text file locations, as in the *RandomAccessTest* program, is of limited value. When you store records in a file, it is often more useful to be able to access the eighth or twelfth record rather than the eighth or twelfth byte. In such a case, you multiply each record's size by the position you want to access. For example, if you store records that are 50 bytes long, the first record is at position 0, the second record is at position 50, the third record is at position 100, and so on. In other words, you can access the *n*th record in a `FileChannel` named `fc` using the following statement:

```
fc.position((n - 1) * 50);
```

One approach to writing a random access file is to place records into the file based on a key field. A **key field** is the field in a record that makes the record unique from all others. For example, suppose you want to store employee ID numbers, last names, and pay rates in a random access file. In a file of employees, many records might have the same last name or pay rate, but each record has a unique employee ID number, so that field can act as the key field.

The first step in creating the random access employee file is to create a file that holds default records—for example, using zeroes for the ID numbers and pay rates and blanks for the names. For this example, assume that each employee ID number is three digits; in other words, you cannot have more than 1,000 employees because the ID number cannot surpass 999. **Figure 11-30** contains a program that creates 1,000 such records.

Figure 11-30 The CreateEmptyEmployeesFile class

```

import java.nio.file.*;
import java.io.*;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import static java.nio.file.StandardOpenOption.*;
public class CreateEmptyEmployeesFile
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Path file =
            Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\RandomEmployees.txt");
        String s = "000,           ,00.00" +
            System.getProperty("line.separator");
        byte[] data = s.getBytes();
        ByteBuffer buffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(data);
        final int NUMRECS = 1000;
        try
        {
            OutputStream output = new
                BufferedOutputStream(Files.newOutputStream(file, CREATE));
            BufferedWriter writer = new
                BufferedWriter(new OutputStreamWriter(output));
            for(int count = 0; count < NUMRECS; ++count)
                writer.write(s, 0, s.length());
            writer.close();
        }
        catch(Exception e)
        {
            System.out.println("Error message: " + e);
        }
    }
}

```

In the program in Figure 11-30, a `String` that represents a default record is declared as follows:

- › The three-digit employee number is set to zeros.
- › The name is set to seven blanks.
- › The pay rate is 00.00.
- › The `String` ends with the system's line separator value.

A `byte` array is constructed from the `String` and wrapped into a buffer. Then a file is opened in CREATE mode and a `BufferedWriter` is established.

At the end of the program in Figure 11-30, a loop executes 1,000 times. Within the loop, the default employee string is passed to the `BufferedWriter` object's `write()` method. **Figure 11-31** shows a few records from the created file when it is opened in Notepad.

The default fields in the base random access file don't have to be zeros and blanks. For example, if you wanted *000* to be a legitimate employee ID number or you wanted blanks to represent a correct name, you could use different default values such as *999* and *XXXXXXXX*. The only requirement is that the default records be recognizable as such. After you create the base default file, you can replace any of its records with data for an actual employee. You can locate the correct position for the new record by performing arithmetic with the record's key field.

For example, the application in **Figure 11-32** creates a single employee record. The record is for employee 002 with a last name of *Newmann* and a pay rate of 22.25. The length of this string is assigned to `RECSIZE`. (In this case,

Figure 11-31 The *RandomEmployees.txt* file created by the *CreateEmptyEmployeesFile* program

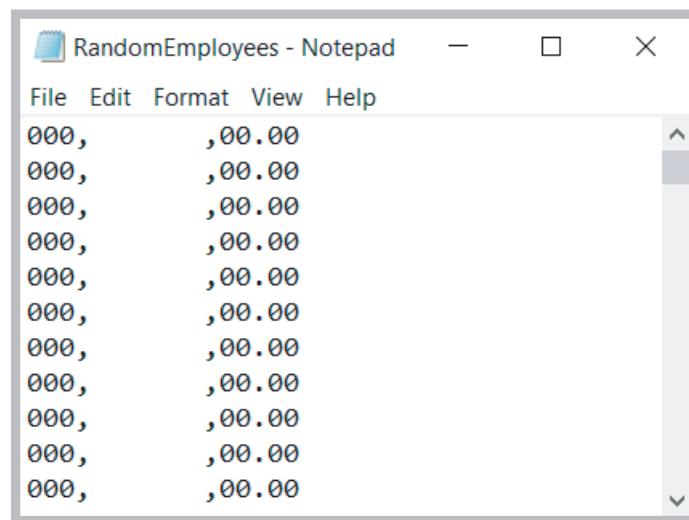


Figure 11-32 The *CreateOneRandomAccessRecord* class

```

import java.nio.file.*;
import java.io.*;
import java.nio.channels.FileChannel;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import static java.nio.file.StandardOpenOption.*;
public class CreateOneRandomAccessRecord
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Path file =
            Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\RandomEmployees.txt");
        String s = "002,Newmann,22.25" +
        System.getProperty("line.separator");
        final int RECSIZE = s.length();
        byte[] data = s.getBytes();
        ByteBuffer buffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(data);
        FileChannel fc = null;
        try
        {
            fc = (FileChannel)Files.newByteChannel(file, READ, WRITE);
            fc.position(2 * RECSIZE);
            fc.write(buffer);
            fc.close();
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            System.out.println("Error message: " + e);
        }
    }
}

```

Because employee number
is 2, position is set to 2 times
the size of each record.

RECSIZE is 19, which includes one character for each character in the sample record string, including the delimiting commas, plus two bytes for the line separator value returned by the `System.getProperty()` method.) After the `FileChannel` is established, the record is written to the file at the position that begins at two times the record size. The value 2 is hard coded in this demonstration program because the employee's ID number is 002.

Figure 11-33 shows the *RandomEmployees.txt* file contents after the `CreateOneRandomAccessRecord` program runs. The employee's data record is correctly placed in the third position in the file. Later, if employees are added that have ID numbers 000 and 001, they can be inserted as the first two records in the file.

Figure 11-33 The *RandomEmployees.txt* file after running the `CreateOneRandomAccessRecord` program

```

RandomEmployees - Notepad
File Edit Format View Help
000,      ,00.00
000,      ,00.00
002,Newmann,22.25
000,      ,00.00
000,      ,00.00
000,      ,00.00
000,      ,00.00
000,      ,00.00
000,      ,00.00
000,      ,00.00
000,      ,00.00

```

A program that inserts one hard-coded employee record into a data file is not very useful. The program in **Figure 11-34** accepts any number of records as user input and writes records to a file in a loop. Each employee's data value is accepted from the keyboard as a `String` and converted to an integer using the `parseInt()` method. Then, the record's desired position is computed by multiplying the ID number value by the record size.

Figure 11-35 shows a typical execution of the program, and **Figure 11-36** shows the resulting file. (This program was executed after rerunning the `CreateEmptyEmployeesFile` program, so all records started with default values, and the record created by the `CreateOneRandomAccessRecord` program shown in Figure 11-32 is not part of the file.) In Figure 11-36, you can see that each employee record is not stored based on the order in which it was entered, but is located in the correct spot based on its key field.

To keep this example brief and focused on the random access file writing, the `CreateEmployeesRandomFile` application makes several assumptions:

- › An employee record contains only an ID number, name, and pay rate. In a real application, each employee would require many more data fields, such as address, phone number, date of hire, and so on.
- › Each employee ID number is three digits. In many real applications, ID numbers would be longer to ensure unique values. (Three-digit numbers provide only 1,000 unique combinations.)
- › The user will enter valid ID numbers and pay rates. In a real application, this would be a foolhardy assumption because users might type too many digits or type nonnumeric characters. However, to streamline the code and concentrate on the writing of a random access file, error checking for valid ID numbers and pay rates is eliminated from this example.
- › The user will not duplicate employee ID numbers. In a real application, a key field should be checked against all existing key fields to ensure that a record is unique before adding it to a file.
- › The names entered are all seven characters. This permits each record to be the same size. Only when record sizes are uniform can they be used to arithmetically calculate offset positions. In a real application, you would have to pad shorter names with spaces and truncate longer names to achieve a uniform size.
- › Each employee's record is placed in the random access file position that is one less than the employee's ID number. In many real applications, the mathematical computations performed on a key field to determine file placement are more complicated.

Figure 11-34 The CreateEmployeesRandomFile class

```

import java.nio.file.*;
import java.io.*;
import java.nio.channels.FileChannel;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import static java.nio.file.StandardOpenOption.*;
import java.util.Scanner;
public class CreateEmployeesRandomFile
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        Path file =
            Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\RandomEmployees.txt");
        String s = "000,           ,00.00" +
            System.getProperty("line.separator");
        final int RECSIZE = s.length();
        FileChannel fc = null;
        String delimiter = ",";
        String idString;
        int id;
        String name;
        String payRate;
        final String QUIT = "999";
        try
        {
            fc = (FileChannel)Files.newByteChannel(file, READ, WRITE);
            System.out.print("Enter employee ID number > ");
            idString = input.nextLine();
            while(!(idString.equals(QUIT)))
            {
                id = Integer.parseInt(idString);
                System.out.print("Enter name for employee #" +
                    id + " > ");
                name = input.nextLine();
                System.out.print("Enter pay rate > ");
                payRate = input.nextLine();
                s = idString + delimiter + name + delimiter +
                    payRate + System.getProperty("line.separator");
                byte[] data = s.getBytes();
                ByteBuffer buffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(data);
                fc.position(id * RECSIZE);
                fc.write(buffer);
                System.out.print("Enter next ID number or " +
                    QUIT + " to quit > ");
                idString = input.nextLine();
            }
            fc.close();
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            System.out.println("Error message: " + e);
        }
    }
}

```

The employee's ID number will be used to determine the record's position.

The position is the ID number value times the size of each record.

Figure 11-35 Typical execution of the `CreateEmployeesRandomFile` program

```
Enter employee ID number >> 004
Enter name for employee #4 >> Ghazini
Enter pay rate >> 19.95
Enter next ID number or 999 to quit >> 014
Enter name for employee #14 >> Khawaja
Enter pay rate >> 26.75
Enter next ID number or 999 to quit >> 013
Enter name for employee #13 >> Simpson
Enter pay rate >> 22.15
Enter next ID number or 999 to quit >> 999
```

Figure 11-36 File created during the execution of the `CreateEmployeesRandomFile` program

ID	Name	Pay Rate
000		,00.00
000		,00.00
002	Newmann	,22.25
000		,00.00
004	Ghazini	,19.95
000		,00.00
000		,00.00
000		,00.00
000		,00.00
000		,00.00
000		,00.00
013	Simpson	,22.15
014	Khawaja	,26.75
000		,00.00
000		,00.00
000		,00.00
000		,00.00
000		,00.00
000		,00.00

Two Truths & a Lie | Writing Records to a Random Access Data File

1. You can set a `FileChannel`'s reading position based on a key field in a record and the record size.
2. A key field is the field in a record that holds the most sensitive information.
3. A useful technique for creating random access files involves first setting up a file with default records in each position.

The false statement is #2. A key field is the field in a record that makes the record unique from all others.

11.8 Reading Records from a Random Access Data File

Just because a file is created as a random access file does not mean it has to be used as one. You can process a random access file either sequentially or randomly.

Accessing a Random Access File Sequentially

The `RandomEmployees.txt` file created in the previous section contains 1,000 records, but only four of them contain valuable data. Displaying every record in the file would result in many irrelevant lines of output. It makes more sense to display only those records for which an ID number has been inserted. The application in **Figure 11-37** reads through the 1,000-record file sequentially in a `while` loop. The `if` statement checks for valid, non-zero ID numbers. If `000` could be a valid ID number, then you would want to check for a name that was blank, a pay rate that was 0, or both. **Figure 11-38** shows the application's output—a list of the entered records, conveniently in ID number order, which reflects their relative positions within the file.

Figure 11-37 The ReadEmployeesSequentially class

```
import java.nio.file.*;
import java.io.*;
import static java.nio.file.AccessMode.*;
public class ReadEmployeesSequentially
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Path file =
            Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\RandomEmployees.txt");
        String[] array = new String[3];
        String s = "";
        String delimiter = ",";
        int id;
        String stringId;
        String name;
        double payRate;
        double gross;
        final double HRS_IN_WEEK = 40;
        double total = 0;
        try
        {
            InputStream input = new
                BufferedInputStream(Files.newInputStream(file));
            BufferedReader reader = new
                BufferedReader(new InputStreamReader(input));
            System.out.println();
            s = reader.readLine();
            while(s != null)
            {
                array = s.split(delimiter);
                stringId = array[0];
                id = Integer.parseInt(array[0]);
                if(id != 0) ——————
                {
                    name = array[1];
                    payRate = Double.parseDouble(array[2]);
                    gross = payRate * HRS_IN_WEEK;
                    System.out.println("ID#" + stringId + " " +
                        name + " $" + payRate + " $" + gross);
                    total += gross;
                }
                s = reader.readLine();
            }
            reader.close();
        }
        catch(Exception e)
        {
            System.out.println("Message: " + e);
        }
        System.out.println(" Total gross payroll is $" + total);
    }
}
```

Records are printed only if the ID number is not zero.

Figure 11-38 Output of the `ReadEmployeesSequentially` application

```
ID#002 Newmann $22.25 $890.0
ID#004 Ghazini $19.95 $798.0
ID#013 Simpson $22.15 $886.0
ID#014 Khawaja $26.75 $1070.0
Total gross payroll is $3644.0
```

Accessing a Random Access File Randomly

If you simply want to display records in order based on their key field, you do not need to create a random access file and waste unneeded storage. Instead, you could sort the records using one of the techniques you have learned. The benefit of using a random access file is the ability to retrieve a specific record from a file directly, without reading through other records to locate the desired one.

In the `ReadEmployeesRandomly` application in **Figure 11-39**, the user is prompted for an employee ID number, which is converted to an integer with the `parseInt()` method. (To keep this example brief, the application does not check for a valid ID number, so the `parseInt()` method might throw an exception to the operating system, ending the execution of the application.) In the application in Figure 11-39, the position of the desired record is calculated by multiplying the ID number by the record size and then positioning the file pointer at the desired location. (Again, to keep the example short, the ID number is not checked to ensure that it is 999 or less.) The employee record is retrieved from the data file and displayed, and then the user is prompted for the next desired ID number. **Figure 11-40** shows a typical execution.

Figure 11-39 The `ReadEmployeesRandomly` class

```
import java.nio.file.*;
import java.io.*;
import java.nio.channels.FileChannel;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import static java.nio.file.StandardOpenOption.*;
import java.util.Scanner;
public class ReadEmployeesRandomly
{
    public static void main (String[] args)
    {
        Scanner keyBoard = new Scanner(System.in);
        Path file =
            Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\RandomEmployees.txt");
        String s = "000,          ,00.00" +
            System.getProperty("line.separator");
        final int RECSIZE = s.length();
        byte[] data = s.getBytes();
        ByteBuffer buffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(data);
        FileChannel fc = null;
        String idString;
        int id;
        final String QUIT = "999";
        try
        {
            fc = (FileChannel)Files.newByteChannel(file, READ, WRITE);
            System.out.print("Enter employee ID number or " +
                QUIT + " to quit >> ");
            idString = keyBoard.nextLine();
            while(!idString.equals(QUIT))
            {
                id = Integer.parseInt(idString);
                buffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(data);
                fc.position(id * RECSIZE);
                fc.read(buffer);
                s = new String(data);
```

(Continues)

Figure 11-39 The ReadEmployeesRandomly class—continued

```
        System.out.println("ID #" + id + " " + s);
        System.out.print("Enter employee ID number or " +
                        QUIT + " to quit >> ");
        idString = keyBoard.nextLine();
    }
    fc.close();
}
catch (Exception e)
{
    System.out.println("Error message: " + e);
}
}
```

Figure 11-40 Typical execution of the ReadEmployeesRandomly program

```
Enter employee ID number or 999 to quit >> 013
ID #13 013,Simpson,22.15

Enter employee ID number or 999 to quit >> 002
ID #2 002,Newmann,22.25

Enter employee ID number or 999 to quit >> 999
```

Two Truths & a Lie | Reading Records from a Random Access Data File

- When a file is created as a random access file, you also must read it randomly.
 - The benefit of using a random access file is the ability to retrieve a specific record from a file directly, without reading through other records to locate the desired one.
 - When you access a record from a random access file, you usually calculate its position based on a key.

The false statement is #1. Just because a file is created as a random access file does not mean it has to be used as one. You can process the file sequentially or randomly.

You Do It | Creating Multiple Random Access Files

In this section, you write a class that prompts the user for customer data and assigns the data to one of two files depending on the customer's state of residence. This program assumes that Wisconsin (WI) records are assigned to an in-state file and that all other records are assigned to an out-of-state file. First, you will create empty files to store the records, and then you will write the code that places each record in the correct file.

1. Open a new file, and type the following required import statements:

```
import java.nio.file.*;
import java.io.*;
import java.nio.channels.FileChannel;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import static java.nio.file.StandardOpenOption.*;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.text.*;
```

2. Enter the beginning lines of the program, which include a Scanner class object to accept user input:

```
public class CreateFilesBasedOnState
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
```

3. This program uses two Path objects to hold records for in-state and out-of-state customers. You can use a different String value for your Paths based on your System and the location where you want to save your files.

```
Path inStateFile =
    Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\InStateCusts.txt");
Path outOfStateFile =
    Paths.get("C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\OutOfStateCusts.txt");
```

4. Build a String that can be used to format the empty files that are created before any actual customer data is written. Include constants for the format of the account number (three digits), the customer name (10 spaces), the customer's state, and the customer's balance (up to 9999.99). After defining the field delimiter (a comma), you can build a generic customer string by assembling the pieces. The record size then is calculated from the dummy record. A consistent record size is important so that it can be used to calculate a record's position when the files are accessed randomly.

```
final String ID_FORMAT = "000";
final String NAME_FORMAT = "          ";
final int NAME_LENGTH = NAME_FORMAT.length();
final String HOME_STATE = "WI";
final String BALANCE_FORMAT = "0000.00";
String delimiter = ",";
String s = ID_FORMAT + delimiter + NAME_FORMAT +
    delimiter + HOME_STATE + delimiter + BALANCE_FORMAT +
    System.getProperty("line.separator");
final int RECSIZE = s.length();
```

5. The last declarations are for two FileChannel references; String and integer representations of the customer's account number; the customer's name, state, and balance fields; and a QUIT constant that identifies the end of data entry.

```
FileChannel fcIn = null;
FileChannel fcOut = null;
String idString;
int id;
String name;
String state;
double balance;
final String QUIT = "999";
```

6. Next, you call a method that creates the empty files into which the randomly placed data records eventually can be written. The method accepts the Path for a file and the String that defines the record format.

```
createEmptyFile(inStateFile, s);
createEmptyFile(outOfStateFile, s);
```

7. Add closing curly braces for the main() method and the class. Then save the file as **CreateFilesBasedOnState**. **java**, compile it, and correct any syntax errors before proceeding.

Writing a Method to Create an Empty File

In this section, you write the method that creates empty files using the default record format string. The method will create 1,000 records with an account number of 000.

- Just before the closing curly brace of the `CreateFilesBasedOnState` class, insert the header and opening brace for a method that will create an empty file to hold random access records. The method accepts a `Path` argument and the default record string.

```
public static void createEmptyFile(Path file, String s)
{
```

- Define a constant for the number of records to be written:

```
final int NUMRECS = 1000;
```

- In a `try` block, declare a new `OutputStream` using the method's `Path` parameter. Then create a `BufferedWriter` using the `OutputStream`.

```
try
{
    OutputStream outputStr =
        new BufferedOutputStream
            (Files.newOutputStream(file,CREATE));
    BufferedWriter writer =
        new BufferedWriter(new OutputStreamWriter(outputStr));
```

- Use a `for` loop to write 1,000 default records using the parameter `String`. Then close the `BufferedWriter`, and add a closing brace for the `try` block.

```
for(int count = 0; count < NUMRECS; ++count)
    writer.write(s, 0, s.length());
writer.close();
}
```

- Add a `catch` block to handle any `Exception` thrown from the `try` block, and add a closing curly brace for the method.

```
catch(Exception e)
{
    System.out.println("Error message: " + e);
}
```

- Save the file and compile it. Correct any errors.

Adding Data-Entry Capability to the Program

In these steps, you add the code that accepts data from the keyboard and writes it to the correct location (based on the customer's account number) within the correct file (based on the customer's state).

- After the calls to the `createEmptyFile()` method, but before the method header, start a `try` block that will handle all the data entry and file writing for customer records:

```
try
{
```

- Set up the `FileChannel` references for both the in-state and out-of-state files.

```
fcIn = (FileChannel)Files.newByteChannel
    (inStateFile, CREATE, WRITE);
fcOut = (FileChannel)Files.newByteChannel
    (outOfStateFile, CREATE, WRITE);
```

- Prompt the user for a customer account number, and accept it from the keyboard. Then start a loop that will continue as long as the user does not enter the `QUIT` value. Next, convert the entered account number to an integer so it can be used to calculate the file position for the entered record. In a full-blown application, you would add code to ensure that the account number is three digits, but to keep this example shorter, this program assumes that the user will enter valid account numbers.

```

System.out.print("Enter customer account number >> ");
idString = input.nextLine();
while(!(idString.equals(QUIT)))
{
    id = Integer.parseInt(idString);
}

```

4. Prompt the user for and accept the customer's name. To ensure that entered names are stored using a uniform length, assign the name to a `StringBuilder` object, and set the length to the standard length. Then assign the newly sized `StringBuilder` back to the `String`.

```

System.out.print("Enter name for customer >> ");
name = input.nextLine();
StringBuilder sb = new StringBuilder(name);
sb.setLength(NAME_LENGTH);
name = sb.toString();

```

5. Prompt the user for and accept the customer's state of residence. (In a fully developed program, you would check the entered state against a list of valid states, but this step is omitted to keep the program shorter.)

```

System.out.print("Enter state >> ");
state = input.nextLine();

```

6. Prompt the user for and accept the customer's balance. Because you use the `nextDouble()` method to retrieve the balance, you follow it with a call to `nextLine()` to absorb the Enter key value left in the input stream. Then you can use the `DecimalFormat` class to ensure that the balance meets the format requirements of the file. Because the `BALANCE_FORMAT` String's value is `0000.00`, zeros will be added to the front or back of any double that would not otherwise meet the standard. For example, `200.99` will be stored as `0200.99` and `0.1` will be stored as `0000.10`. Appendix C contains more information about the `DecimalFormat` class and describes other potential formats.

```

System.out.print("Enter balance >> ");
balance = input.nextDouble();
input.nextLine();
DecimalFormat df = new DecimalFormat(BALANCE_FORMAT);

```

7. Construct the `String` to be written to the file by concatenating the entered fields with the comma delimiter and the line separator.

```

s = idString + delimiter + name + delimiter + state + delimiter +
    df.format(balance) + System.getProperty("line.separator");

```

8. Convert the constructed `String` to an array of bytes, and wrap the array into a `ByteBuffer`.

```

byte data[] = s.getBytes();
ByteBuffer buffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(data);

```

9. Depending on the customer's state, use the in-state or out-of-state `FileChannel`. Position the file pointer to start writing a record in the correct position based on the account number, and write the data `String`.

```

if(state.equals(HOME_STATE))
{
    fcIn.position(id * RECSIZE);
    fcIn.write(buffer);
}
else
{
    fcOut.position(id * RECSIZE);
    fcOut.write(buffer);
}

```

10. Prompt the user for the next customer account number, and add a closing curly brace for the while loop.

```

        System.out.print("Enter next customer account number or " +
            QUIT + " to quit >> ");
        idString = input.nextLine();
    }
}

```

11. Close the `FileChannels`, and add a closing curly brace for the class.

```

    fcIn.close();
    fcOut.close();
}
}

```

12. Add a catch block that can handle any exceptions thrown from the `try` block you started in the first step of this section.

```

    catch (Exception e)
    {
        System.out.println("Error message: " + e);
    }
}

```

13. Save the file, and compile it. Execute the program, and enter several records. Make sure to include names that are longer and shorter than 10 characters and to include a variety of balance values. **Figure 11-41** shows a typical execution.

Figure 11-41 Typical execution of the `CreateFilesBasedOnState` program

```

Enter customer account number >> 102
Enter name for customer >> Lin
Enter state >> WI
Enter balance >> 2000
Enter next customer account number or 999 to quit >> 214
Enter name for customer >> Patel
Enter state >> NY
Enter balance >> 3000
Enter next customer account number or 999 to quit >> 105
Enter name for customer >> Hoffingberger
Enter state >> WI
Enter balance >> 400
Enter next customer account number or 999 to quit >> 218
Enter name for customer >> Suni
Enter state >> FL
Enter balance >> 200
Enter next customer account number or 999 to quit >> 103
Enter name for customer >> Davis
Enter state >> WI
Enter balance >> 1000
Enter next customer account number or 999 to quit >> 999

```

14. Locate and open the `InStateCusts.txt` and `OutOfStateCusts.txt` files. Scroll through the files until you find the records you created. **Figure 11-42** shows part of both files that contains the records added using the execution in Figure 11-41. Confirm that each record is placed in the correct file location, that each name and balance is in the correct format, and that the records with a state value of `WI` are placed in one file while all the other records are placed in the other file.

Figure 11-42 Part of the contents of the files created by the `CreateFilesBasedOnState` program

InStateCusts - Notepad	OutOfStateCusts - Notepad
File Edit Format View Help	File Edit Format View Help
000, ,WI,0000.00	000, ,WI,0000.00
102,Lin ,WI,2000.00	214,Patel ,NY,3000.00
103,Davis ,WI,1000.00	000, ,WI,0000.00
000, ,WI,0000.00	000, ,WI,0000.00
105,Hoffingber,WI,0400.00	000, ,WI,0000.00
000, ,WI,0000.00	218,Suni ,FL,0200.00
000, ,WI,0000.00	000, ,WI,0000.00
000, ,WI,0000.00	

Setting Up a Program to Read the Created Files

Now, you can write a program that can use either of the files you just created. The program has four parts:

- › The program will prompt the user to enter the filename to be used and set up all necessary variables and constants.
- › A few statistics about the file will be displayed.
- › The nondefault contents of the file will be displayed sequentially.
- › A selected record from the file will be accessed directly.

1. Open a new file. Enter all the required import statements and the class header for the `ReadStateFile` application.

```
import java.nio.file.*;
import java.io.*;
import java.nio.file.attribute.*;
import static java.nio.file.StandardOpenOption.*;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import java.nio.channels.FileChannel;
import java.util.Scanner;
public class ReadStateFile
{
```

2. Start a `main()` method in which you declare a `Scanner` object to handle keyboard input. Then declare a `String` that will hold the name of the file the program will use. Prompt the user for the filename, concatenate it with the correct path, and create a `Path` object.

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
    Scanner kb = new Scanner(System.in);
    String fileName;
    System.out.print("Enter name of file to use >> ");
    fileName = kb.nextLine();
    fileName = "C:\\Java\\Chapter.11\\" + fileName;
    Path file = Paths.get(fileName);
```

3. Add the `String` formatting constants and build a sample record `String` so that you can determine the record size. To save time, you can copy these declarations from the `CreateFilesBasedOnState` program.

```
final String ID_FORMAT = "000";
final String NAME_FORMAT = "           ";
final int NAME_LENGTH = NAME_FORMAT.length();
```

```

final String HOME_STATE = "WI";
final String BALANCE_FORMAT = "0000.00";
String delimiter = ",";
String s = ID_FORMAT + delimiter + NAME_FORMAT + delimiter +
    HOME_STATE + delimiter + BALANCE_FORMAT +
    System.getProperty("line.separator");
final int RECSIZE = s.length();

```

- The last set of declarations includes a byte array that you will use with a `ByteBuffer` later in the program, a `String` that represents the account number in an empty account, and an array of strings that can hold the pieces of a split record after it is read from the input file. Add a variable for the numeric customer balance, which will be converted from the `String` stored in the file. Also, declare a total and initialize it to 0 so the total customer balance due value can be accumulated.

```

byte data[] = s.getBytes();
final String EMPTY_ACCT = "000";
String[] array = new String[4];
double balance;
double total = 0;

```

- Add two closing curly braces for the method and the class. Save the file as `ReadStateFile.java`. Compile the file and correct any errors.

Displaying File Statistics

In the next section of the program, you display the creation time and size of the file.

- Just before the two closing curly braces you just added to the program, insert a `try` block in which you declare a `BasicFileAttributes` object. Then add statements to display the file's creation time and size. Include a `catch` block to handle any thrown exceptions.

```

try
{
    BasicFileAttributes attr =
        Files.readAttributes(file, BasicFileAttributes.class);
    System.out.println("\nAttributes of the file:");
    System.out.println("Creation time " + attr.creationTime());
    System.out.println("Size " + attr.size());
}
catch(IOException e)
{
    System.out.println("IO Exception");
}

```

- Save the file, then compile and execute it. When prompted, you can type the name of either the `InStateCusts.txt` file or the `OutOfStateCusts.txt` file. You will see the file creation time and the file size.

Reading a File Sequentially and Randomly

In these steps, you first display all the entered records in a file sequentially, and then you display one record that is accessed randomly.

- Start a new `try...catch` pair after the first one ends, but before the two closing curly braces in the program. Declare an `InputStream` and `BufferedReader` to handle reading the file.

```

try
{
    InputStream iStream = new
        BufferedInputStream(Files.newInputStream(file));
    BufferedReader reader = new
        BufferedReader(new InputStreamReader(iStream));
}

```

2. Display a heading, and then read the first record from the file into a String.

```
System.out.println("\nAll non-default records:\n");
s = reader.readLine();
```

3. In a loop that continues while there is more data to read, split the String using the comma delimiter. Test the first split element, the account number, and proceed only if it is not "000". If the record was entered in the previous program, display the split String elements. Add the balance to a running total. As the last action in the loop, read the next record.

```
while(s != null)
{
    array = s.split(delimiter);
    if(!array[0].equals(EMPTY_ACCT))
    {
        balance = Double.parseDouble(array[3]);
        System.out.println("ID #" + array[0] + " " +
                           array[1] + array[2] + " $" + array[3]);
        total += balance;
    }
    s = reader.readLine();
}
```

4. After all the records have been processed, display the total and close the reader. Add a closing curly brace for the try block.

```
System.out.println("Total of all balances is $" + total);
reader.close();
}
```

5. Create a catch block to handle any thrown exceptions.

```
catch(Exception e)
{
    System.out.println("Message: " + e);
}
```

6. After the closing brace of the last catch block, but before the two final closing braces in the class, add a new try block that declares a FileChannel and ByteBuffer and then prompts the user for and accepts an account to search for in the file.

```
try
{
    FileChannel fc = (FileChannel)Files.newByteChannel(file, READ);
    ByteBuffer buffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(data);
    int findAcct;
    System.out.print("\nEnter account to seek > ");
    findAcct = kb.nextInt();
```

7. Calculate the position of the desired record in the file by multiplying the record number by the file size. Read the selected record into the ByteBuffer, and convert the associated byte array to a String that you can display. Add a closing curly brace for the try block.

```
fc.position(findAcct * RECSIZE);
fc.read(buffer);
s = new String(data);
System.out.println("Desired record: " + s);
}
```

8. Add a catch block to handle any exceptions.

```
catch(Exception e)
{
    System.out.println("Message: " + e);
}
```

9. Save the file, and then compile and execute it. **Figure 11-43** shows a typical execution. First, the file attributes are displayed, then all the records are displayed, and then a record selected by the user is displayed.

Figure 11-43 Typical execution of ReadStateFile program

```
Enter name of file to use >> OutOfStateCusts.txt
Attributes of the file:
Creation time 2023-04-15T20:53:49.74636627
Size 27000

All non-default records:

ID #214 Patel NY $3000.00
ID #218 Suni FL $0200.00
Total of all balances is $3200.0

Enter account to seek >> 218
Desired record: 218,Suni ,FL,0200.00
```

Don't Do It

- › Don't forget that a Path name might be relative and that you might need to make the Path absolute before accessing it.
- › Don't forget that the backslash character starts the escape sequence in Java, so you must use two backslashes in a string that describes a Path in the DOS operating system.



Summary

- › Data items can be stored on two broad types of storage devices—temporary, volatile storage, or permanent, nonvolatile storage. A computer file is a collection of data stored on a nonvolatile device. Files can be text files or binary files, but all files share characteristics, such as a size, name, and time of creation.
- › Java's Path class is used to gather file information, such as its location, size, and creation date. You can use the Files class to perform operations on files and directories, such as deleting them, determining their attributes, and creating input and output streams.
- › Businesses organize data in a hierarchy of character, field, record, and file. When a program performs input and output operations, bytes flow into a program stream, which functions as a pipeline or channel. A buffer is a memory location where bytes are held after they are logically output but before they are sent to the output device. Using a buffer to accumulate input or output improves program performance. Flushing clears any bytes that have been sent to a buffer for output but that have not yet been output to a hardware device.

- › **InputStream**, **OutputStream**, and **Reader** are subclasses of the **Object** class that are used for input and output. Output devices can be assigned to **OutputStream** references, allowing applications to save data to them. You can create a file and write to it by using the **Files** class **newOutputStream()** method. To open a file for reading, you can use the **newInputStream()** method.
- › The **BufferedWriter** class contains **write()** methods that are used to create data files. Files can be read using the **BufferedReader** class. The **String** class **split()** method accepts an argument that identifies a field delimiter and returns an array of **Strings** in which each array element holds one field.
- › Businesses store data in sequential order when they use the records for batch processing. Real-time applications require interactive processing with random access files. Java's **FileChannel** class creates random access files. A file channel is seekable, meaning you can search for a specific file location and operations can start at any specified position.
- › One approach to writing a random access file is to place records into the file based on a key field that makes a record unique from all others. The first step in creating the random access file is to create a file that holds default records. Then you can replace any default record with actual data by setting the file channel position.
- › You can process a random access file either sequentially or randomly. The benefit of using a random access file is the ability to retrieve a specific record from a file directly, without reading through other records to locate the desired one.

Key Terms

absolute path	file channel	random access memory (RAM)
application file	flushing	real-time
batch processing	folder	record
binary file	instant access file	relative path
character	interactive program	root directory
close a file	key field	seekable
comma-separated values (CSV)	nonvolatile storage	sequential access file
computer file	open a file	static import feature
data file	path	stream
direct access file	path delimiter	text file
directory	permanent storage device	TOCTTOU bug
factory	program file	volatile storage
field	random access file	wrapped

Review Questions

1. Which of the following statements is true?
 - a. Volatile storage lasts only a few seconds.
 - b. Volatile storage is lost when a computer loses power.
 - c. Computer disks are volatile storage devices.
 - d. Volatile storage is also known as persistent storage.

2. A collection of data stored on a nonvolatile device in a computer system is _____.
 a. an application
 b. a file
 c. volatile
 d. a type of binary file
3. A complete list of the disk drive plus the hierarchy of directories in which a file resides is its _____.
 a. directory
 b. folder
 c. path
 d. delimiter
4. Which of the following statements creates a Path named p to a FileStream named f?
 a. Path p = new Path("C:\\Java\\MyFile.txt");
 b. Path p = f("C:\\Java\\MyFile.txt");
 c. Path p = f.getPath("C:\\Java\\MyFile.txt");
 d. Path p = getPath(new f("C:\\Java\\MyFile.txt"));
5. A path that needs no additional information to locate a file is _____.
 a. a constant path
 b. a relative path
 c. a final path
 d. an absolute path
6. The Path class getFileName() method returns _____.
 a. the String representation of a Path
 b. an absolute Path
 c. the first item in a Path's list of name elements
 d. the last item in a Path's list of name elements
7. Which of the following method calls always returns the same value as Files.exists(file)?
 a. file.checkAccess()
 b. file.checkAccess(EXISTS)
 c. file.checkAccess(READ, WRITE)
 d. file.checkAccess(file.exists())
8. You cannot delete a Path _____.
 a. under any circumstances
 b. if it represents a directory
 c. if it represents a directory that is not empty
 d. if it represents more than five levels
9. The data hierarchy occurs in the following order from the smallest to largest piece of data: _____.
 a. character, record, field, file
 b. character, file, record, field
 c. character, field, record, file
 d. record, character, field, file
10. When records are accessed one after the other in the order in which they were stored, their file is being used as a _____ access file.
 a. random
 b. binary
 c. chronological
 d. sequential
11. If you fail to close an output file, _____.
 a. there are usually no serious consequences
 b. you might lose access to the written data
 c. Java will close it for you automatically
 d. it becomes an input file
12. Which of the following is true of streams?
 a. Streams are channels through which bytes flow.
 b. Streams always flow in two directions.
 c. Only one stream can be open in a program at a time.
 d. In Java, streams are not objects.

13. A buffer _____.
- holds bytes that are scheduled for input or output
 - deteriorates program performance
 - cannot be flushed in Java
 - holds input bytes, but not output bytes
14. InputStream is _____.
- a child of OutputStream
 - an abstract class
 - used for screen output as opposed to file output
 - a concrete class
15. Java's print() and println() methods are defined in the _____ class.
- BufferedOutputStream
 - System
 - PrintStream
 - Print
16. The newOutputStream() method _____.
- is defined in the Object class
 - creates a file if it does not already exist
 - closes a file that has been written to
 - deletes a file if it has not been altered
17. Which of the following expressions does the same thing as the BufferedWriter class newLine() method?
- System.getProperty("line.separator")
 - Path.getProperty("line.separator")
 - System.out.println()
 - System.out.print("\n")
18. Which of the following systems is most likely to use batch processing?
- an airline reservation system
 - an email application
 - a point-of-sale credit checking system
 - a payroll system
19. Real-time applications _____.
- use sequential access files
 - use batch processing
 - use random access files
 - seldom are interactive
20. A file channel _____.
- cannot be read from
 - cannot be written to
 - is seekable
 - can only be used with sequential files

Programming Exercises

- Create a file using any word-processing program or text editor. Write an application that prompts the user for the filename and displays the file's path, name, folder, size, and time of last modification. Save the file as **FileStatistics.java**.
- Create a file that contains a line of your favorite song lyric. Use a text editor such as Notepad, and save the file. Copy the file contents, and paste them into a word-processing program such as Word. Write an application that prompts the user for the names of the files and displays the sizes of the two files as well as the ratio of their sizes to each other. Save the file as **FileSizeComparison.java**.

3. Write an application that determines which, if any, of the following files are stored in the folder where you have saved the exercises created in this chapter: *autoexec.bat*, *CompareFolders.java*, *FileStatistics.class*, and *Hello.doc*. Save the file as **FindSelectedFiles.java**.
4.
 - a. Create a program that allows a user to input customer records (ID number, first name, last name, and balance owed) and save each record to a file. Save the program as **WriteCustomerList.java**. When you execute the program, be sure to enter multiple records that have the same last name because you will search for repeated names in part d of this exercise.
 - b. Write an application that reads the file created by the *WriteCustomerList* application and displays the records. Save the file as **DisplaySavedCustomerList.java**.
 - c. Write an application that allows you to enter any ID number, reads the customer data file created in Exercise 4a, and displays the data for the customer. Display an appropriate message if the ID number cannot be found in the input file. Save the file as **DisplaySelectedCustomer.java**.
 - d. Write an application that allows you to enter any last name and displays all the data for customers with the given last name. Display an appropriate message if the name cannot be found in the input file. Save the file as **DisplaySelectedCustomersByName.java**.
 - e. Write an application that allows you to enter any purchase amount and displays all the data for customers with balances greater than the entered value. Display an appropriate message if no customers meet the criteria. Save the file as **DisplaySelectedCustomersByBalance.java**.
5. Using a text editor, create a file that contains a list of at least 15 six-digit account numbers. Write a program that reads in each account number in the file, and display whether the account number is valid. An account number is valid only if the last digit is equal to the remainder when the sum of the first five digits is divided by 10. For example, the number 223355 is valid because the sum of the first five digits is 15, the remainder when 15 is divided by 10 is 5, and the last digit is 5. Write only valid account numbers to an output file, each on its own line. Save the application as **ValidateCheckDigits.java**.
6.
 - a. Write an application that allows a user to enter a filename and an integer representing a file position. Assume that the file is in the same folder as your executing program. Access the requested position within the file, and display the next 10 characters there. Save the file as **SeekPosition.java**.
 - b. Modify the *SeekPosition* application so that instead of displaying 10 characters, the user enters the number of characters to display, beginning with the requested position. Save the file as **SeekPosition2.java**.
7.
 - a. Create an application that allows you to enter student data that consists of an ID number, first name, last name, and grade point average. Depending on whether the student's grade point average is at least 2.0, output each record either to a file of students in good standing or those on academic probation. Save the program as **StudentsStanding.java**.
 - b. Create an application that displays each record in the two files created in the *StudentsStanding* application in Exercise 7a. Display a heading to introduce the list produced from each file. For each record, display the student ID number, first name, last name, grade point average, and the amount by which the grade point average exceeds or falls short of the 2.0 cutoff. Save the program as **StudentsStanding2.java**.
8.
 - a. The Rochester Bank maintains customer records in a random access file. Write an application that creates 10,000 blank records and then allows the user to enter customer account information, including an account number that is 9998 or less, a last name, and a balance. Insert each new record into a data file at a location that is equal to the account number. Assume that the user will not enter invalid account numbers. Force each name to eight characters, padding it with spaces or truncating it if necessary. Also assume that the user will not enter a bank balance greater than 99,000.00. Save the file as **CreateBankFile.java**.
 - b. Create an application that uses the file created by the user in Exercise 8a and displays all existing accounts in account-number order. Save the file as **ReadBankAccountsSequentially.java**.
 - c. Create an application that uses the file created by the user in Exercise 8a and allows the user to enter an account number to view the account balance. Allow the user to view additional account balances until entering an application-terminating value of 9999. Save the file as **ReadBankAccountsRandomly.java**.

9. a. Write a program that allows you to create a file of customers for a company. The first part of the program should create an empty file suitable for writing a three-digit ID number, six-character last name, and five-digit zip code for each customer. The second half of the program accepts user input to populate the file. For this exercise, assume that the user will correctly enter ID numbers and zip codes, but force the customer name to six characters if it is too long or too short. Issue an error message, and do not save the records if the user tries to save a record with an ID number that already has been used. Save the program as **CreateCustomerFile.java**.
- b. Write a program that creates a file of items carried by the company. Include a three-digit item number and up to a 20-character description for each item. Issue an error message if the user tries to store an item number that already has been used. Save the program as **CreateItemFile.java**.
- c. Write an application that takes customer orders. Allow a user to enter a customer number and item ordered. Display an error message if the customer number does not exist in the customer file or the item does not exist in the item file; otherwise, display all the customer information and item information. Save the program as **CustomerItemOrder.java**.

Debugging Exercises

1. Each of the following files in the Chapter11 folder of your downloadable student files has syntax and/or logic errors. In each case, determine the problem and fix the program. After you correct the errors, save each file using the same filename preceded with *Fix*. For example, *DebugEleven1.java* will become **FixDebugEleven1.java**.
 - a. *DebugEleven1.java*
 - b. *DebugEleven2.java*
 - c. *DebugEleven3.java*
 - d. *DebugEleven4.java*

The Chapter11 folder contains four additional data files named *DebugData1.txt*, *DebugData2.txt*, *DebugData3.txt*, and *DebugData4.txt*. These files are used by the Debug programs.

Game Zone

1. a. In several Game Zone assignments earlier in this course, you created games similar to Hangman in which the user guesses a secret phrase by selecting a series of letters. These versions had limited appeal because each contained only a few possible phrases to guess; after playing the games a few times, the user would have memorized all the phrases. Now create a version in which any number of secret phrases can be saved to a file before the game is played. Use a text editor such as Notepad to type any number of phrases into a file, one per line. Save the file as **Phrases.txt**.
 - b. Create a game that randomly selects a phrase from the *Phrases.txt* file and allows a user to guess the phrase letter by letter. Save the game as **SecretPhraseUsingFile.java**.
2. Create a multiple-choice quiz on any topic. Include at least 10 questions. Store the player's highest score from any previous game in a file, and display the previous high score at the start of each new game. (The first time you play the game, the previous high score is 0.) Save the game as **QuizUsingFile.java**.
3. a. Use a text editor to create a comma-delimited file of user IDs and passwords. Save the file as **GamePlayers.txt**.
 - b. Revise any one of the games you have created throughout this course to use the file *GamePlayers.txt*. Require the user to enter a correct ID and its associated password before playing. Save the program as **GameWithPassword.java**.

Case Problems

1.
 - a. Throughout the Case Problems in this course, you have been using an Event class to store data about events for Yummy Catering. Now, create an application that prompts the user for details about eight Event objects, and create a data file that contains each event number, event type code, number of guests, and price. Save the program as **CreateEventFile.java**.
b. Write a program that displays the data saved in the file created in part 1a. Save the program as **DisplayEventFile.java**.
 2.
 - a. Throughout the Case Problems in this course, you have been using a Rental class that obtains all the data for rentals from Sunshine Seashore Supplies, including details about the contract number, length of the rental, and equipment type. Now, create an application that prompts the user for details about eight Rental objects, and create a data file that contains each contract number, equipment type code, rental time in hours and minutes, and price. Save the program as **CreateRentalFile.java**.
b. Write a program that displays the data saved in the file created in part 2a. Save the program as **DisplayRentalFile.java**.

Recursion

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to:

- 12.1 Describe recursion
 - 12.2 Use recursion to solve mathematical problems
 - 12.3 Use recursion to manipulate strings
 - 12.4 Use recursion to create visual patterns
 - 12.5 Describe recursion's relationship to iterative programming
-

12.1 Understanding Recursion

Recursion is a problem-solving method that breaks a problem's solution into smaller instances of the same problem. In other words, recursion is a technique that can be used when a problem's ultimate solution relies on a simpler solution to the same problem. Programs that use recursion have recursive methods; a **recursive method** is a method that calls itself.

Figure 12-1 shows a program that contains a method that calls itself, but it is not a useful example of recursion. In the program, the `main()` method calls a method named `messageMethod()`. The method displays a string and then calls itself. The string is displayed again, and the method is called again. The string displays infinitely, as shown in **Figure 12-2**, because the method never stops calling itself. So, although the method is recursive, it is not a useful method.

Note | Recall that you can stop execution of an infinite loop by pressing Ctrl and C.

Useful recursive methods must have a way to stop infinite repetition. **Figure 12-3** shows a modified version of the `DemoInfiniteRecursion` application. In this program, named `DemoRecursion`, an integer representing the number of desired repetitions is passed to the method, and an `if` statement controls whether the message is displayed and whether the method is called again. The current value of `reps` has been added to the output statement so that you can more easily follow the logic.

Figure 12-1 The DemoInfiniteRecursion application

```
public class DemoInfiniteRecursion
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        messageMethod();
    }

    public static void messageMethod()
    {
        System.out.println("Message ");
        messageMethod(); ←
    }
}
```

Don't Do It
This method call causes an infinite loop.

Figure 12-2 Execution of the DemoInfiniteRecursion application

```
Message
```

Figure 12-3 The DemoRecursion application

```
public class DemoRecursion
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        messageMethod(4);
    }

    public static void messageMethod(int reps)
    {
        if(reps > 0)
        {
            System.out.println("Message " + reps);
            messageMethod(reps - 1);
        }
    }
}
```

In the application in Figure 12-3, 4 is passed to the method and accepted as the parameter `reps`. When the method executes, it displays its message along with the value of `reps`. However, before the method calls itself a second time, it reduces the value of `reps` by 1. When the method executes a second time, the parameter has the value 3. The method displays the message and then reduces the value of `reps` by another 1 before calling itself again. So, in all, the method is called five times—when the value of `reps` is 4, 3, 2, 1, and 0. (The number of times that a method calls itself is the **depth of the recursion**.)

- › When the value of the parameter is 4, 3, 2, and 1, the value of the `if` expression is `true`, and the method displays the message and calls itself again.
- › When the value of the parameter is 0, the value of the `if` expression is `false`, and the method does not display the message, nor does it call itself again.

Figure 12-4 shows the execution of the DemoRecursion program.

You understood how to write a program that produces the output in Figure 12-4 before you ever heard of recursion. Figure 12-5 shows a program with a loop that displays the same output. This program does not use recursion. Instead, it passes a value to the `messageMethod()` and uses a loop to display the message when the value of `reps` is 4, 3, 2, and 1. The type of approach that produces solutions to a problem using looping is the **iterative approach**.

Figure 12-4 Execution of the DemoRecursion application

```
Message 4
Message 3
Message 2
Message 1
```

Figure 12-5 The DemoWithoutRecursion application

```
public class DemoWithoutRecursion
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        messageMethod(4);
    }
    public static void messageMethod(int reps)
    {
        while(reps > 0)
        {
            System.out.println("Message " + reps);
            reps = reps - 1;
        }
    }
}
```

You might wonder why anyone would bother with the recursive method for displaying the four lines of output in Figure 12-4 when the same result can be obtained using an iterative approach with a simple loop. Depending on your goals, you might use either approach.

- › Programmers sometimes choose the recursive approach because programmer development might be faster. When programmers are used to working with recursion, they can see a large problem solution as the repetition of increasingly smaller solutions, and they can develop the logic quickly.
- › Programmers sometimes choose the iterative approach instead of recursion because iterative programs usually run more quickly. When you use recursion, the computer must remember the location in the program to which the logic should return after each recursive method call. There is no such **overhead**, or excess computation time, in an iterative solution.

Note | Stephen Hawking once said, "To understand recursion, one must first understand recursion."

Two Truths & a Lie | Understanding Recursion

1. A recursive method is a method that calls itself.
2. Useful recursive methods must have a way to stop infinite repetition.
3. Programs that use recursion usually run more quickly than those that do not.

The false statement is #3. Programs that use recursion usually run more slowly than those that do not because the repeated method calls require overhead.

12.2 Using Recursion to Solve Mathematical Problems

Recursion is most useful when a problem can be solved by repeatedly solving simpler versions of the same problem. When you use recursion, you frequently ask a method to call itself repeatedly, using a simpler problem each time.

Computing Sums

Suppose you want to sum all the integers from 1 through 5. One way to approach the problem is as follows:

- › Start with 5.
- › Add 4, giving 9. Adding 5 and 4 is the “hardest” problem of the individual problems required to sum 1 through 5.
- › Add 3 to the first result, giving 12.
- › Add 2, giving 14.
- › Add 1, giving 15. Adding 1 to a value is the “easiest” problem of the individual problems.

The original problem, adding all the integers, can be solved by finding the solutions to increasingly simpler problems.

Figure 12-6 shows a program named `SumOfNumbers` that contains a method that solves the problem of adding the integers recursively. In the `sumNumbers()` method, the integer parameter is compared to 0. If the parameter is not 0, the method returns the value of the parameter added to the return value of a new method call with a value that is one less than the parameter. When a method does not complete before “leaving” to call itself again, a “reminder” to finish the call is placed in the call stack.

Figure 12-6 The `SumOfNumbers` application

```
public class SumOfNumbers
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int sum = sumNumbers(5);
        System.out.println("Sum is " + sum);
    }
    public static int sumNumbers(int x)
    {
        if(x != 0)
            return(x + sumNumbers(x - 1));
        else
            return(x);
    }
}
```

So, the method operates as follows:

- › In the `main()` method, 5 is sent to the `sumNumbers()` method.
- › The value is not 0, so the method returns 5 plus a new call to the method, passing 4. Note that the original call to `sumNumbers()` is not completed yet, so the program “remembers” it has to finish up one method call.
- › The value is not 0, so the method returns 4 plus a new call to the method, passing 3. The program remembers it has to finish up two method calls.
- › The value is not 0, so the method returns 3 plus a new call to the method, passing 2. The program remembers it has to finish up three method calls.
- › The value is not 0, so the method returns 2 plus a new call to the method, passing 1. The program remembers it has to finish up four method calls.
- › The value is not 0, so the method returns 1 plus a new call to the method, passing 0. The program remembers it has to finish up five method calls.
- › The value is 0, so the method returns 0 to finish the last call to `sumNumbers()`, which was in the statement that evaluated to `return(1 + sumNumbers(0))`. Now, the program remembers it has to finish up four more calls.
- › That call to `sumNumbers()` is now complete, so it returns the value of $2 + 1$, or 3, to the previous call. Now, the program remembers it has to finish up three more calls.

- › That call is now complete, so it returns the value of $3 + 3$, or 6, to the previous call. Now, the program remembers it has to finish up two more calls.
- › That call is now complete, so it returns the value of $6 + 4$, or 10, to the previous call. Now, the program remembers it has to finish up one more call.
- › That call is now complete, so it returns $10 + 5$, or 15, to the previous call, which was the first call. There are no more methods waiting in the call stack to be completed.
- › The method returns 15 to the `main()` program.

Figure 12-7 shows the program execution.

You can observe more about the logical flow in the `sumNumbers()` method by adding some output statements. **Figure 12-8** shows a modified version of the `SumOfNumbers` program so that you can see the value of `x` each time the method is reentered. **Figure 12-9** shows the execution.

Figure 12-8 The `SumOfNumbers2` application

```
public class SumOfNumbers2
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int sum = sumNumbers(5);
        System.out.println("Sum is " + sum);
    }
    public static int sumNumbers(int x)
    {
        if(x != 0)
        {
            System.out.println(x);
            return(x + sumNumbers(x - 1));
        }
        else
        {
            System.out.println("-----");
            return(x);
        }
    }
}
```

Figure 12-7 Typical execution of the `SumOfNumbers` application

Figure 12-9 Output of the `SumOfNumbers2` application

```
5
4
3
2
1
-----
Sum is 15
```

The **base case** is the case in a recursive method that does not make a recursive call. In other words, the base case is the case in which the problem can be solved without recursion. All the other cases are **recursive cases**. In the `sumNumbers()` method, the base case occurs when `x` is 0, and the recursive cases occur when `x` is 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5.

Note

Often, a recursive method has just one base case, but sometimes it has more. For example, in the exercises at the end of this chapter, you will create a Fibonacci sequence that has two base cases.

Computing Factorials

Many mathematical problems are more sophisticated than adding a series of numbers. In mathematics, the **factorial** of a nonnegative integer is the product of all the integers from 1 up to and including the integer. The following statements are true:

- › The factorial of 1 is 1.
- › The factorial of 2 is $1 * 2$, or 2.
- › The factorial of 3 is $1 * 2 * 3$, or 6.

- › The factorial of 4 is $1 * 2 * 3 * 4$, or 24.
- › The factorial of 5 is $1 * 2 * 3 * 4 * 5$, or 120.
- › ... and so on.

The value 0 is a special case; the factorial of 0 is 1.

The notation mathematicians use to indicate factorials is an exclamation point. For example, $4! = 24$.

Note

Mathematicians have many uses for factorials, including to compute the number of permutations of a number. (A *permutation* is the number of ways a group of items can be arranged.) For example, $3!$ is 6, and there are six possible orderings of the set of numbers from 1 through 3 (1, 2, 3). The orderings are (1, 2, 3), (1, 3, 2), (2, 1, 3), (2, 3, 1), (3, 1, 2), and (3, 2, 1).

When you look at the preceding factorial examples, you can see that the factorial value of any number greater than 0 is the number multiplied by the factorial value of the number that is one less. If $x = 0$, then the factorial of x is 1; otherwise, if x is greater than 0, then the factorial of x is the product of x and the factorial of $x - 1$. Computing factorials lends itself to recursion because computing the factorial of any number greater than 0 relies on multiplying the number by the factorial of the number that is one less. This process can be written as a Java method as follows:

```
private static int factorial(int x)
{
    if(x == 0)
        return 1;
    else
        return(x * factorial(x - 1));
}
```

Figure 12-10 shows a program that uses this method. When the program runs, suppose the user enters 4 at the prompt. Then, the following steps occur:

- › 4 is passed to the `factorial()` method. Because the value of x is not 0, the method should return 4 multiplied by a call to itself using the argument 3. The method does not return yet because it must calculate `factorial(3)` before the `return` statement is complete.
- › 3 is passed to the `factorial()` method. Because the value of x is not 0, the method should return 3 multiplied by a call to itself using the argument 2. The method does not return yet because it must calculate `factorial(2)` before the `return` statement is complete.
- › 2 is passed to the `factorial()` method. Because the value of x is not 0, the method should return 2 multiplied by a call to itself using the argument 1. The method does not return yet because it must calculate `factorial(1)` before the `return` statement is complete.
- › 1 is passed to the `factorial()` method. Because the value of x is not 0, the method should return 1 multiplied by a call to itself using the argument 0. The method does not return yet because it must calculate `factorial(0)` before the `return` statement is complete.
- › 0 is passed to the `factorial()` method. Because the value of x is 0, the method returns 1. Now the statement that returned `1 * factorial(0)` is complete and 1 is returned.
- › Now, the statement that returned `2 * factorial(1)` is complete and 2 is returned.
- › Now, the statement that returned `3 * factorial(2)` is complete and 6 is returned.
- › Now, the statement that returned `4 * factorial(3)` is complete and 24 is returned to the `main()` method, where the result is displayed.

Figure 12-11 shows a typical execution of the `FactorialDemo` program.

Figure 12-10 The FactorialDemo application

```

import java.util.Scanner;
public class FactorialDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        int x;
        int result;
        System.out.print("Enter a nonnegative number >> ");
        x = input.nextInt();
        result = factorial(x);
        System.out.println(x + "!" + " = " + result);
    }
    private static int factorial(int x)
    {
        if(x == 0)
            return 1;
        else
            return(x * factorial(x - 1));
    }
}

```

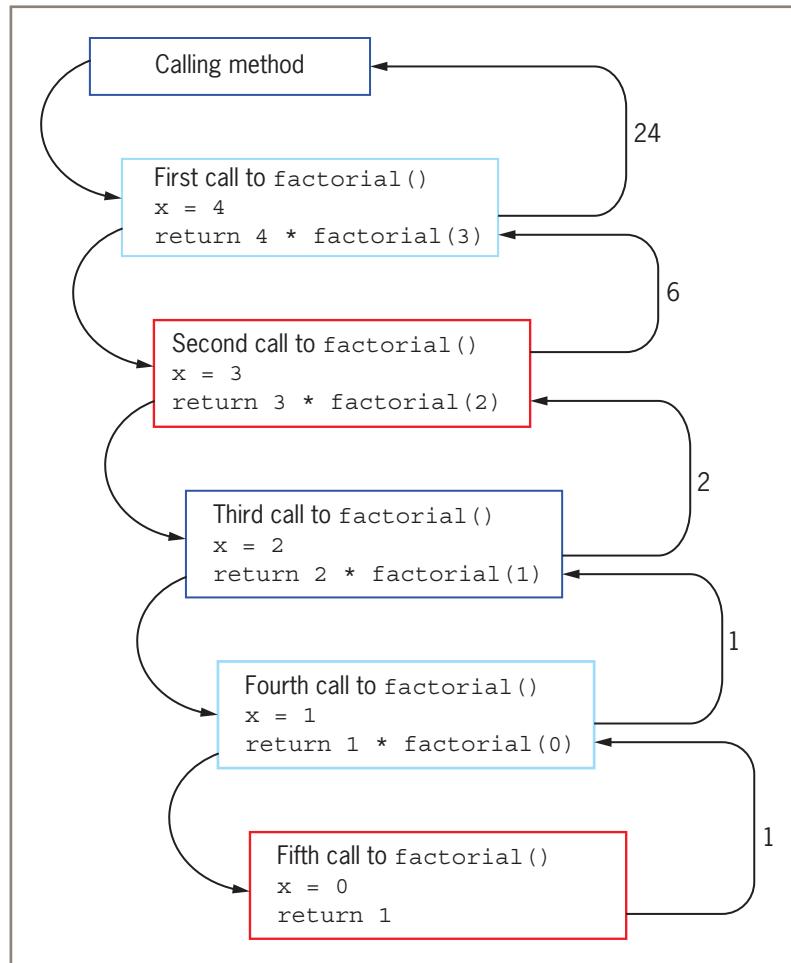
Figure 12-11 Typical execution of the FactorialDemo application

```

Enter a nonnegative number >> 4
4! = 24

```

Figure 12-12 illustrates how the series of method calls works in the FactorialDemo application. Down the left side of the figure, you can see the original calling method calls the recursive method named `factorial()`. Then, the first call to `factorial()` executes a new call in its `return` statement. The second call contains a `return` statement that calls the method a third time.

Figure 12-12 How the `factorial()` method works

The third execution makes the fourth call, and the fourth execution makes the fifth call. Then, reading up the right side of the figure, you can see that the fifth execution of the method returns 1 to finish the fourth call's `return` statement. The fourth execution returns 1 to finish the third call. The third execution returns 2 to finish the second call, and the second execution returns 6 to finish the first call. Finally, the first execution's `return` statement is complete, and it sends 24 to the original calling program.

Every useful recursive method must have a way to finally end. The `factorial()` method in the previous example can finally end when `x` is 0. No recursion is needed when the parameter is 0, so that is the base case. The recursive cases are all the cases in which the parameter is not 0.

Two Truths & a Lie | Using Recursion to Solve Mathematical Problems

1. The factorial of a nonnegative integer is the product of all the integers from 1 up to and including the integer.
2. The case in a recursive method that does not make a recursive call is the zero case.
3. The cases in a recursive method that make recursive calls are recursive cases.

The false statement is #2. The case in a recursive method that does not make a recursive call is the base case.

You Do It | Using Recursion to Solve Mathematical Problems

In this section, you write a short application that uses recursion to count from 10 down to 1 and then displays *Blastoff!*

1. Open a new file in your text editor. Create the first few lines of a class that will call a recursive method.

```
public class CountingDownDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

2. Call a method named `countingDown()` and pass it an initial value of 10. Then display *Blastoff!* and add a closing brace for the `main()` method:

```
    countingDown(10);
    System.out.println("Blastoff!");
}
```

3. Write the `countingDown()` method. The method accepts an integer parameter. If the value of the parameter is greater than zero, the value of the parameter is displayed. Then the method calls itself with a parameter value that is one less than the parameter that was passed in. The method calls itself using 9 as the argument. Then 9 is displayed and the method calls itself using 8, and so on.

```
public static void countingDown(int count)
{
    if(count > 0)
    {
        System.out.println(count);
        countingDown(count - 1);
    }
}
```

4. Add a closing curly brace for the class.
5. Save the file as **CountingDownDemo.java**. Compile and execute the program. The output appears as in **Figure 12-13**.

Figure 12-13 Execution of the CountingDownDemo application

```

10
9
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
Blastoff!

```

12.3 Using Recursion to Manipulate Strings

Recursion can be a useful technique to work through strings and analyze portions of them.

Using Recursion to Separate a Phrase into Words

Suppose you want to break a string into individual words and display the words one by one. **Figure 12-14** shows a program that accepts a string from the user and calls a recursive method named `breakIntoWords()`.

Figure 12-14 The SeparateStringDemo application

```

import java.util.Scanner;
public class SeparateStringDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        String userInput;
        System.out.print("Enter a phrase >> ");
        userInput = input.nextLine();
        breakIntoWords(userInput);
    }
    public static void breakIntoWords(String s)
    {
        int space = s.indexOf(' ');
        if(space == -1)
        {
            System.out.println(s);
        }
        else
        {
            breakIntoWords(s.substring(0, space));
            breakIntoWords(s.substring(space + 1));
        }
    }
}

```

The `breakIntoWords()` method accepts a `String` argument and uses the `indexOf()` method to find the location of the first space within the `String`. In the base case, if the method returns `-1`, it means there are no spaces in the `String`, the entire `String` is displayed, and the method ends.

However, if the `indexOf()` method returns a positive value, then there is a space in the `String` at the value's position. When this happens, the `breakIntoWords()` method calls itself twice.

- › The first call sends a substring of the original string from position 0 up to the space. For example, if the String is "Somewhere over the rainbow", then a space is found after "Somewhere"; so, in the first recursive method call in the else clause, "Somewhere" is sent to the method, no space is found, and "Somewhere" is displayed.
- › Then, in the second call to `breakIntoWords()` in the else clause, the original string from one position after the space to the end is sent to the method. In the case of "Somewhere over the rainbow", "over the rainbow" is sent to the method.

When "over the rainbow" is sent to the method, `breakIntoWords()` calls itself two more times in the else clause.

- › The next space is found after "over", so "over" is sent to the method and displayed.
- › The String from one position after the space—in other words, "the rainbow"—is sent to the method.

When "the rainbow" is sent to the method, `breakIntoWords()` calls itself two more times in the else clause.

- › The next space is found after "the", so "the" is sent to the method and displayed.
- › The String from one position after the space, "rainbow", is sent to the method.

When "rainbow" is sent to the method:

- › No spaces are found, so `indexOf(" ")` returns -1, and the entire string "rainbow" plus a new line are displayed.

Figure 12-15 shows two executions of the `SeparateStringDemo` application.

Figure 12-15 Two executions of the `SeparateStringDemo` application

```
Enter a phrase >> Somewhere over the rainbow
Somewhere
over
the
rainbow
```

```
Enter a phrase >> Blackbird singing in the dead of night
Blackbird
singing
in
the
dead
of
night
```

Using Recursion to Reverse the Characters in a String

You can use recursion to reverse the characters in a string. The recursive method in the program in **Figure 12-16** displays the last character in a string, shortens the length of the string by one, and displays the new last character continually until no characters remain. The base case occurs when the string has been reduced to a single character that is displayed. **Figure 12-17** shows the program execution.

Figure 12-16 The `ReverseStringDemo` program

```

public class ReverseStringDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        String s = "This is the original string";
        System.out.println(s);
        System.out.print("Here it is reversed: ");
        reverseString(s);
    }
    public static void reverseString(String s)
    {
        if(s.length() <= 1)
            System.out.println(s);
        else
        {
            System.out.print(s.charAt(s.length() - 1));
            reverseString(s.substring(0, s.length() - 1));
        }
    }
}

```

Figure 12-17 Execution of the `ReverseStringDemo` program

```

This is the original string
Here it is reversed: gnirts lanigiro eht si sihT

```

Two Truths & a Lie | Using Recursion to Manipulate Strings

- When you recursively separate a `String` into words, you examine each character to determine if it is an uppercase letter.
- If `s.indexOf(' ')` returns 4, a space has been located in `String s`.
- To use a recursive method to display the characters in a `String` in reverse order, you can continually send shorter and shorter substrings to the method.

The false statement is #1. When you recursively separate a `String` into words, you examine each character to determine if it is a space.

You Do It | Using Recursion to Manipulate Strings

In this section, you write an application that uses recursion to remove a specified character from a string. Suppose that you need an application that requests a user's telephone number. Some users might enter their numbers with embedded dashes, and some might enter just digits. If you want a uniform format for stored phone numbers, you can remove embedded dashes from any strings that contain them.

1. Open a new file in your text editor. Create the first few lines of a class that will remove embedded dashes from a phone number.

```
import java.util.Scanner;
public class RemoveDashes
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

2. Declare variables for Scanner input, an int to keep track of positions in a phone number String, and a String to hold the user's entered phone number.

```
Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
int x;
String phone;
```

3. Prompt the user for a phone number, and accept it. Call a method named removeDashes(), and pass the phone number to it. Include a println() statement to display a new line at the end of execution, and add a closing curly brace for the main() method.

```
System.out.print("Enter phone number >> ");
phone = input.nextLine();
removeDashes(phone);
System.out.println();
}
```

4. Write the removeDashes() method. The method operates as follows:

- › The method accepts a String parameter and uses indexOf(' - ') to find the location of the first dash in the String.
- › If the indexOf() method returns -1, it means there are no dashes in the String, and the String can be displayed just as it was received by the method.
- › Otherwise, a substring from the first String position (position 0) to the location of the dash is passed to the removeDashes() method. For example, if the user enters 111-222-3333, then 111 is passed to the method.
- › This substring 111 does not contain dashes, so it will be displayed.
- › Then, the logic returns to the second statement that follows the else in the if...else statement, and the substring from the dash location plus 1 is passed to the method. So, if the user originally entered 111-222-3333, now 222-3333 is passed.
- › The indexOf() call determines the location of the second dash, and 222 is passed to the method and displayed.
- › Then 3333 is passed to the method, no dashes are discovered, and 3333 is displayed.

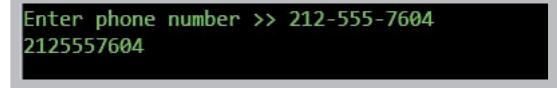
```
public static void removeDashes(String s)
{
    int dashLoc = s.indexOf('-');
    if(dashLoc == -1)
    {
        System.out.print(s);
    }
    else
    {
        removeDashes(s.substring(0, dashLoc));
        removeDashes(s.substring(dashLoc + 1));
    }
}
```

5. Include closing curly braces for the removeDashes() method and for the RemoveDashes class.

```
}
```

6. Save the file as **RemoveDashes.java**. Compile and execute the program. Test the program with different input values, some of which contain no dashes, and some of which contain one or more dashes. A typical execution is shown in **Figure 12-18**.

Figure 12-18 Typical execution of RemoveDashes program



```
Enter phone number >> 212-555-7604
2125557604
```

12.4 Using Recursion to Create Visual Patterns

Recursion can be successfully used to create interesting visual patterns. For example, suppose you want to place a series of characters running diagonally down the screen. You could use a conventional loop, but now that you have learned about recursion, you can see that the same problem can be approached in a different way. Each time you display a line that contains part of the diagonal, you include one additional space before displaying the character. Each line uses knowledge from the previous line in determining how many spaces to display. **Figure 12-19** shows a program that contains a recursive method named `display()`. The method accepts two parameters: One holds the number of spaces to be displayed prior to each output character, and one holds the number of lines for which the program continues.

Figure 12-19 The DiagonalOs program

```
import java.util.Scanner;
public class DiagonalOs
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        int lines;
        System.out.print("How many lines to display? >> ");
        lines = input.nextInt();
        display(0, lines);
    }
    public static void display(int spaces, int lines)
    {
        if(lines == 0)
            return;
        else
        {
            spaces++;
            for(int x = 0; x < spaces; ++x)
                System.out.print(" ");
            System.out.println("O");
            display(spaces, lines - 1);
        }
    }
}
```

The base case in the `display()` method occurs when there are 0 lines to be displayed. In that case, the method simply ends.

When one line is to be displayed, the method accepts the values 0 and 1. The value of `spaces` is incremented, and the `for` loop executes once, displaying one space. Then the character is displayed, and the output line ends. The `display()` method then calls itself using the arguments 1 and 0, and because the value of `lines` is 0 in the second iteration, the method ends after having displayed one space and one *O* in a single line.

When, for example, 5 lines are to be displayed, 0 and 5 are passed to the method. The following sequence of events follows:

- › One space and the *O* are displayed, and the values 1 and 4 are passed to the second iteration of the method.
- › Two spaces and the *O* are displayed, and the values 2 and 3 are passed to the third iteration of the method.
- › Three spaces and the *O* are displayed, and the values 3 and 2 are passed to the fourth iteration of the method.
- › Four spaces and the *O* are displayed, and the values 4 and 1 are passed to the fifth iteration of the method.
- › Five spaces and the *O* are displayed, and the values 5 and 0 are passed to the sixth iteration of the method.
- › The method ends because the second parameter, `lines`, is 0.

Figure 12-20 shows two typical executions of the `DiagonalOs` program—in the first execution, 5 lines are requested, and in the second execution, 8 lines are requested.

Figure 12-20 Two typical executions of the `DiagonalOs` program

```
How many lines to display? >> 5
 0
 0
 0
 0
 0

How many lines to display? >> 8
 0
 0
 0
 0
 0
 0
 0
 0
```

Note

Although it is beyond the scope of this course, you might want to search the Internet for information on using recursion to create fractals. A **fractal** is a picture that is created by using infinite copies of itself.

12.5 Recursion's Relationship to Iterative Programming

As you become more comfortable with recursion, you will continue to see additional situations in which to use it. For example, suppose you want to write a program that will compute the future value of a regular savings schedule. You can write a recursive method that accepts a dollar amount to save each year, the number of years for which you will save, the assumed interest rate that will be applied to your savings at the end of each year, and the amount you will start with, if any. The problem lends itself to a recursive approach because each subsequent year's earning is based on the previous year's value.

Figure 12-21 shows such a method named `computeSavings()`. You call the method using four arguments—the periodic investment, the number of years, the interest rate you will receive, and the total value of the investment before you start saving—that is, before the method is executed.

Figure 12-21 The `computeSavings()` method

```
public static double computeSavings(double amt, int years,
                                    double rate, double total)
{
    if(years == 0)
        return total;
    else
    {
        total = total + (total * rate) + amt;
        return computeSavings(amt, years - 1, rate, total);
    }
}
```

The base case for the method is when you will save for 0 years, in which case the method returns 0.

Suppose you decide you can save \$2,000 a year, receive 5 percent interest, and start with nothing. If you will save for only one year, the method computes the value of the total you will have at the end of the year by adding the following amounts:

- › The total you had previously (in this case 0)
- › The previous year's total multiplied by the interest rate (in this case 0)
- › The new amount saved (\$2,000)

That is, if you invest \$2,000, at the end of that year you will have just the \$2,000. The method calls itself using `years - 1`, or 0, as the new `years` argument, and the method ends.

However, if you save \$2,000 for two years at 5 percent, the method proceeds as follows:

- › The method is called using 2000, 2, 0.05, and 0 as arguments. During the first execution of `computeSavings()`, the total is calculated as 2000.
- › The method is called again, passing 2000, 1 (`years - 1`), 0.05, and 2000 as arguments. This time, the total is calculated as \$2,000 plus \$100 (2000 multiplied by the 5 percent rate), plus the new \$2,000 deposit for the second year. So, the account is worth \$4,100.
- › When the method is called again, the `years` value will have been reduced to 0, and \$4,100 will be returned to the calling method as the total value after two years.

Figure 12-22 shows a complete program that uses the `computeSavings()` method, and **Figure 12-23** shows three executions that assume \$2,000 was saved per year at 5 percent for 1, 2, and 30 years.

Figure 12-22 The `InterestEarned` program

```
import java.util.Scanner;
public class InterestEarned
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        double amt;
        int years;
        double rate;
        double futureValue;
        System.out.print("Enter amount to save every year >> ");
        amt = input.nextInt();
        System.out.print("Enter number of years to save >> ");
        years = input.nextInt();
        System.out.print("Enter annual interest rate as a decimal >> ");
        rate = input.nextDouble();
        futureValue = computeSavings(amt, years, rate, 0);
        System.out.println("Future value is " + futureValue);
    }
    public static double computeSavings(double amt, int years,
        double rate, double total)
    {
        if(years == 0)
            return total;
        else
        {
            total = total + (total * rate) + amt;
            return computeSavings(amt, years - 1, rate, total);
        }
    }
}
```

Figure 12-23 Three executions of the `InterestEarned` program

```
Enter amount to save every year >> 2000
Enter number of years to save >> 1
Enter annual interest rate as a decimal >> .05
Future value is 2000.0
```

```
Enter amount to save every year >> 2000
Enter number of years to save >> 2
Enter annual interest rate as a decimal >> .05
Future value is 4100.0
```

```
Enter amount to save every year >> 2000
Enter number of years to save >> 30
Enter annual interest rate as a decimal >> .05
Future value is 132877.69500602648
```

Note

For simplicity, the program in Figure 12-22 assumes that the saver always starts with a zero balance. You could add a prompt to ask the user how much money exists at the beginning of the savings plan, and then use that value as the last argument to `computeSavings()` in place of 0.

Now, consider the iterative version of the `computeSavings()` method shown in **Figure 12-24**. The method accepts the same arguments as the recursive version—the amount to be saved annually, the years, the earnings rate, and the total the user starts with. However, instead of using recursion, the method uses a `while` loop that executes once for each year of investment, accumulating interest for each year. Notice the similarities to the recursive method in Figure 12-21.

- › Each method accepts the same arguments.
- › Each method stops calculating when the `years` variable reaches 0.
- › Each method uses the same arithmetic calculation to accumulate interest (`total = total + (total * rate) + amt;`).
- › Each method decrements the `years` variable on each cycle.
- › When the calculations are complete, each method returns `total`.

Figure 12-24 Iterative version of the `computeSavings()` method

```
public static double computeSavings
    (double amt, int years, double rate, double total)
{
    while(years != 0)
    {
        total = total + (total * rate) + amt;
        --years;
    }
    return total;
}
```

The methods work identically and produce the same output when the same values are passed in. You might work in some environments where your supervisors prefer that you use the iterative approach to solving the problem, or you might work in an environment in which they prefer the recursive approach.

Note

You might encounter examples of **indirect recursion**, which occurs when a method calls another method that eventually results in the original method being called again. (Indirect recursion is sometimes called *mutual recursion*.)

Although recursion can be difficult to understand when you are first exposed to the concept, after you become accustomed to thinking about methods calling themselves, you may discover that recursion is more natural to you for solving some problems and iteration remains more natural for solving others.

Two Truths & a Lie | Recursion's Relationship to Iterative Programming

1. It is possible to write iterative and recursive methods that produce the same output.
2. Iterative programs always require more lines of code than recursive ones.
3. Recursion can be more natural than iteration for solving some problems.

The false statement is #2. Iterative programs may or may not require more code lines than recursive ones.

Don't Do It

- › Don't fail to provide a base case that terminates recursive method calls.
- › Don't use a recursive approach to a problem if program speed is critical; a program that uses an iterative approach usually runs more quickly.

Summary

- › Recursion is a problem-solving method that breaks a problem's solution into smaller instances of the same problem; it is the opposite of the iterative approach. A recursive method is a method that calls itself. The number of times that a method calls itself is the depth of the recursion. When programmers are used to working with recursion, they can see a large problem solution as the repetition of increasingly smaller solutions, and they can develop the logic quickly.
- › Using recursion, a hard problem can be solved by finding the solution to increasingly simpler problems. When a method does not complete before "leaving" to call itself again, a "reminder" to finish the call is placed in the call stack. The base case is the case in which a problem can be solved without recursion. All the other cases are recursive cases.
- › Recursion can be a useful technique to work through strings to analyze portions of them. For example, you can repeatedly search for a specific character in a string or reverse the order of characters in a string.

- › Recursion can be successfully used to create interesting visual patterns in which each display uses knowledge from the previous display.
- › As you become more comfortable with recursion, you will continue to see additional situations in which to use it, often replacing an iterative approach to the same problem. Indirect recursion occurs when a method calls another method that eventually results in the original method being called again.

Key Terms

base case	indirect recursion	recursive cases
depth of the recursion	iterative approach	recursive method
factorial	overhead	
fractal	recursion	

Review Questions

1. Recursion is a(n) _____.
 - a. problem-solving method
 - b. iterative technique
 - c. object-oriented technique
 - d. set of standards
2. Recursion is often used when a problem's solution relies on a _____.
 - a. more complicated solution to the same problem
 - b. simpler solution to the same problem
 - c. later solution to part of the problem
 - d. value that is user input
3. A recursive method is a method that _____.
 - a. contains no loops
 - b. is executed at least twice during program execution
 - c. calls itself
 - d. calls no other methods
4. A recursive method _____.
 - a. must serve a useful purpose
 - b. must never call itself
 - c. must never call itself more than twice
 - d. might contain any number of statements
5. A useful recursive method must _____.
 - a. call another method
 - b. produce output
 - c. provide a way to stop recursion
 - d. accept parameters
6. The approach to writing nonrecursive methods that include loops to produce results is _____.
 - a. sequential
 - b. iterative
 - c. object-oriented
 - d. procedural

7. A programmer might choose an iterative approach to a problem rather than a recursive one because iterative programs often _____.
- run more quickly
 - are faster to write
 - contain more code
 - impress the boss
8. The excess computation time required for repeated method calls in recursive programs is called _____.
- overload
 - backup
 - overhead
 - liability
9. When you use recursion, you frequently ask a method to call itself repeatedly, _____.
- increasing the complexity of the problem with each call
 - using a simpler version of the problem each time
 - using a different method name each time
 - using different parameter names each time
10. When a method calls another method, the location to return to when the second method finishes is stored in the _____.
- register
 - ROM holder
 - method cache
 - call stack
11. In a recursive method, there typically are _____.
- more base cases than `if` statements
 - more recursive cases than base cases
 - more base cases than while loops
 - more base cases than recursive cases
12. The case in a recursive method that does not make a recursive call is the _____.
- primary case
 - base case
 - extraordinary case
 - negative case
13. The cases in a recursive method that make recursive calls are the _____.
- recursive cases
 - base cases
 - relative cases
 - positive cases
14. The factorial of a nonnegative integer is the _____ of all the integers from 1 up to and including the integer.
- list
 - sum
 - product
 - reverse list
15. Computing factorials lends itself to recursion because _____.
- it is impossible to compute a factorial using a loop
 - recursion is most useful for all mathematical computations
 - computing the factorial of any number relies on computing the factorial of a simpler case
 - the series of `if` statements required to compute a factorial iteratively would be lengthy
16. In a recursive method, the case in which no recursive call is needed is the _____.
- iterative case
 - recursive case
 - negative case
 - base case

17. After using the statement `p = n.indexOf('A');`, if `p` contains 5, then _____.
- `n` is a string with 5 characters
 - there is no 'A' in the string `n`
 - there is an 'A' in the string `n`
 - there are five 'A' characters in the string `n`
18. Recursion can be successfully used to _____.
- solve mathematical problems
 - create visual patterns
 - solve mathematical problems and to create visual patterns
 - neither solve mathematical problems nor create visual patterns
19. Which of the following problems would lend itself most clearly to a recursive approach?
- displaying a list of all students with greater than a 3.0 grade point average but less than a 3.5
 - computing a total of 10 product price values input by a user
 - displaying a series of characters on consecutive lines where each is one space further to the right than the previous one
 - computing a student's test score average based on five tests
20. You can substitute a recursive solution to a problem for an iterative one _____.
- frequently
 - never
 - only if the iterative solution contains at least one `if` statement
 - only if the application is a mathematical one

Programming Exercises

- a. Write a program that prompts a user for two integers and then sums all the values between and including the two integers. Ensure that the second integer entered is larger than the first by continuing to reprompt the user until it is. Then pass the two integers to a recursive method that returns the sum of the integers to the `main()` method, where it is displayed. The method works by adding each integer in the set to the running sum of all the integers that are larger. You can accomplish this by continually passing two values to the method: the low value and the value that is one less than the current high value. The base case occurs when the second value passed is no longer greater than the first. Save the program as **AddingRecursively.java**.
 b. Modify the `AddingRecursively` class in Exercise 1 so that the program accepts any two integers from the user without requiring the user to make sure the second value is larger than the first. Save the program as **AddingRecursively2.java**.
- Write a program that prompts the user for two integers. Pass them to a recursive method that returns the product of the two integers without using multiplication. In other words, instead of using the multiplication operator, write the method using the knowledge that multiplication can be represented as a series of addition operations. For example, 4 multiplied by 6 is equivalent to $6 + 6 + 6 + 6$. Save the file as **MultiplicationByAdding.java**.
- Write a program that creates an array of at least 20 integers and do the following:
 - › Prompt the user for a starting position, and continually reprompt the user for a new value if the starting position is less than 0 or greater than the highest allowed subscript for the array.
 - › Prompt the user for an ending position, and continually reprompt the user for a new value if the ending position is not greater than or equal to the starting position and less than or equal to the highest allowed subscript for the array.

- › Display all the values in the requested range of the array.
- › Include a recursive method that sums all the values in the requested range. The method accepts the array, the starting position, and the ending position. The base case occurs when the starting position is greater than the ending position; if so, the method returns 0. Otherwise, the recursive cases return the value at the current starting position plus a new call to the method. The three arguments passed to the new method call are the array, the current starting position plus one, and the ending position.

Save the program as **SumRangeRecursively.java**.

4. Figure 12-20 earlier in this chapter shows the output of a program that displays any number of Os running diagonally from top left to bottom right. Now, write a program that prompts the user for a number of lines to display, and then use a recursive method to display Os from top right to bottom left. **Figure 12-25** shows a sample execution. Save the program as **OppositeDiagonal.java**.

Figure 12-25 Typical execution of the **OppositeDiagonal** program

```
How many lines to display? >> 10
0
0
0
0
0
0
0
0
0
0
```

5. **Figure 12-26** shows two typical executions of a program that displays a triangle. Create this program by prompting the user for a number of lines to display. The first row of the output contains the number of spaces that equals the number of lines that will eventually display. Pass the final number of lines, the current line number, the spaces to display, and the number of letters to display to a recursive method. The base case occurs when the current line equals the total number of lines to display. If the total number of lines has not yet been displayed, reduce the number of spaces, increase the number of letters, increase the current line number, and call the method again. Save the program as **TriangleRecursive.java**.

Figure 12-26 Two typical executions of the **TriangleRecursive** program

```
How many lines to display? >> 3
T
TT
TTT
```

```
How many lines to display? >> 7
T
TT
TTT
TTTT
TTTTT
TTTTTT
TTTTTTT
```

6. **Figure 12-27** shows two typical executions of a program that displays a large V on the screen after the user enters a height. Write a program that passes the following values to a recursive method that produces the V: the current line number, the number of lines to display, the number of spaces before the first output letter in a line, and the number of spaces between the output letters in a line. Save the program as **VeeRecursive.java**.

Figure 12-27 Two executions of the `VeeRecursive` program

```
Enter a height for your Vee >> 5
V      V
 V    V
  V  V
   V V
    V V

Enter a height for your Vee >> 10
V          V
 V        V
  V      V
   V    V
    V  V
     V V
      V V
       V V
        V V
         V V
```

7. The Fibonacci sequence is the series of numbers 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, and so on. The last number in the Fibonacci sequence is always the sum of the preceding two numbers. For example, 13 is the sum of 5 and 8, and 21 is the sum of 8 and 13. The sequence describes the way that many things in nature grow, as well as the way they decay. Write an application that accepts a positive ending value from the user; then, using a recursive method, display the Fibonacci sequence starting with 1 up to the requested ending value. Include the requested ending value if the value is part of the Fibonacci sequence. In other words, if the user enters 4 for the ending value, display 1 1 2 3, and if the user enters 5, display 1 1 2 3 5. Note that the solution to this problem has two base cases—when the ending number is 1 and when it is 2. In the two base cases, 1 is returned. Save the file as `FibDemo.java`.
8. Assume that the current population of California is 39 million and that the population of Texas is 28 million. The population of Texas appears to be growing at a faster rate than that of California. Write an application that accepts values for the projected growth rate of each state and computes the number of years it will take for the population of Texas to exceed California's. Use a recursive method that accepts the two growth rates, the two current populations in millions, and the current year (starting with 0), and then displays the population for each future year until the population of Texas is greater. If the user enters a smaller rate for Texas than for California, force the California rate to 0. The method returns an integer that represents the number of years in the future when the shift finally occurs. Save the program as `PopulationRecursive.java`.
9. Loris Manufacturing makes 1,000 products per month and has been increasing production at a rate of 6 percent each month. Write a program that accepts a production goal from the user. If the entered goal is less than 1,000, display a message that indicates the goal has already been met. Otherwise, call a recursive method that accepts the current month, the current production value, the rate of growth, and the goal. Then, display the number of months from the current one in which the goal will be met. Save the program as `ProductionGoal.java`.
10. Write a program that prompts the user for an integer. Pass the integer to a method that determines whether the number is greater than 0; if it is, the method displays the number and passes one less than the parameter value to a second method. The second method determines if the number passed in is greater than 0; if it is, the second method displays the number and passes one less than its parameter back to the first method. Save the program as `IndirectRecursionDemo.java`.

Debugging Exercises

1. Each of the following files in the Chapter12 folder of your downloadable student files has syntax and/or logic errors. In each case, determine the problem and fix the errors. After you correct the errors, save each file using the same filename preceded with `Fix`. For example, `DebugTwelve1.java` will become `FixDebugTwelve1.java`.
 - a. `DebugTwelve1.java`
 - b. `DebugTwelve2.java`
 - c. `DebugTwelve3.java`
 - d. `DebugTwelve4.java`

Game Zone

1. *Scrabble* and *Words with Friends* are games in which players score points by placing letters on a game board divided into squares. After the first word is placed on the board, subsequent plays must form words that intersect with other letters already in play. An important player skill is being able to recognize words by reordering the set of letters provided during every turn. (A recombination of letters in a string is called an *anagram*. For example, if a player holds *eat*, it is helpful to be able to recognize that *ate* and *tea* are possible anagrams that can be used on the board.)

To help players identify words from their letters, you can write a program that displays every combination of the given letters so a player can read them and notice possible plays. Such a program lends itself to recursion because you can create every combination of letters by taking one letter at a time (using the `substring()` method), using it as the first letter in a new combination, and then recombining all the letters that precede it and all the letters that follow it to form new words. (As you become more proficient with Java, you could compare each of the anagrams to words in an online dictionary and display only the ones that are legitimate words.) Save the program as `AnagramFinder.java`. **Figure 12-28** shows two typical executions of the program.

Figure 12-28 Two executions of the `AnagramFinder` program

```
Enter a word >> eat
eat eta aet ate tea tae

Enter a word >> spam
spam spma sapm samp smpa smap psam psma pasm pams pmsa pm
aspm asmp apsm apms amsp amps mspa mpsa mpas masp maps
```

2. Tower of Hanoi is a pyramid puzzle that uses three rods and a number of disks that have different diameters. The disks can slide onto any rod. The puzzle starts with the disks on the first rod, stacked from the smallest at the top to the largest on the bottom. **Figure 12-29** shows how the game looks at the start.

The goal of the game is to move all the disks from the first rod to the last rod following these rules:

- › Only one disk may be moved at a time.
- › Each move consists of taking the top disk from one of the stacks and placing it on top of another stack or an empty rod.
- › No disk may be placed on top of a disk that is smaller.

Write a program that uses a recursive method to solve the Tower of Hanoi puzzle. The program prompts the user for the number of disks to be used in the game, and then passes the number of disks and the positions of the starting rod (1), the ending rod (3), and the spare rod (2) to the method. When the number of disks is 1, display a statement that describes the move from rod to rod—for example, *Move the disk from 1 to 3*. When the number of disks is not 1, the method calls itself three times using these parameters:

- › The number of disks minus 1, the start position, the spare position, and the end position
- › 1, the start position, the end position, and the spare position
- › The number of disks minus 1, the spare position, the end position, and the start position

Figure 12-30 shows a typical execution. Save the program as `TowerOfHanoi.java`.

Figure 12-29 The Tower of Hanoi game

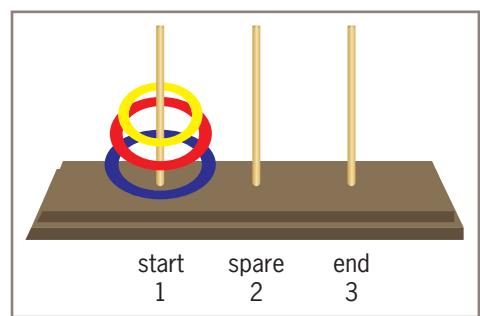


Figure 12-30 Typical execution of the TowerOfHanoi program

```
Enter number of disks >> 3
Move the disk from 1 to 3
Move the disk from 1 to 2
Move the disk from 3 to 2
Move the disk from 1 to 3
Move the disk from 2 to 1
Move the disk from 2 to 3
Move the disk from 1 to 3
```

Case Problems

- Yummy Catering provides meals for parties. In previous chapters, you have created an Event class that holds details for scheduled events, including an event number and number of guests. Now write an application that creates an array of five Event objects and prompts the user for the event number and number of guests for each. (If you are using an Event class from a chapter that required additional data, feel free to comment out or delete all references to fields other than the event number and number of guests. Doing so will reduce the amount of data entry you have to supply while testing the program.) After data entry is complete, display the event number and number of guests for each of the five Events. Then, find the Event with the largest number of guests by passing the Event array and its length to a recursive method named `findLargest()`. The recursive method works on the principle that you can compare array items by comparing each to the one next to it in turn. **Figure 12-31** shows a typical execution. Save the file as `EventDemoRecursive.java`.
- Sunshine Seashore Supplies rents beach equipment to tourists. In previous chapters, you developed a Rental class that holds equipment rental information, including a contract number and hours and minutes for each Rental. Now write an application that creates an array of seven Rental objects and prompts the user for the contract number and rental time in minutes for each. (If you are using a Rental class from a chapter that required additional data, feel free to comment out or delete all references to fields other than the contract number, the hours, and the minutes. This will reduce the amount of data entry you have to supply while testing the program.) After data entry is complete, display the contract number and time for each of the seven Rentals. Then, find the Rental with the longest rental period by passing the Rental array and its length to a recursive method named `findLargest()`. The recursive method works on the principle that you can compare array items by comparing each to the one next to it in turn. Save the file as `RentalDemoRecursive.java`.

Figure 12-31 Typical execution of the `EventDemoRecursive` program

```
Enter event number >> Q123
Enter number of guests >> 65

Enter event number >> W234
Enter number of guests >> 10

Enter event number >> E456
Enter number of guests >> 95

Enter event number >> R567
Enter number of guests >> 94

Enter event number >> T789
Enter number of guests >> 25

Event #:Q123 Guests: 65
Event #:W234 Guests: 10
Event #:E456 Guests: 95
Event #:R567 Guests: 94
Event #:T789 Guests: 25

The largest event is #E456 with 95 guests.
```

Collections and Generics

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to:

- 13.1 Use the Collection interface
- 13.2 Use the List interface
- 13.3 Use the ArrayList class
- 13.4 Use the LinkedList class
- 13.5 Use iterators
- 13.6 Create generic classes
- 13.7 Create generic methods

13.1 Understanding the Collection Interface

Computer programmers use the word **collection** to describe a group of objects that can be operated on together. To be considered a collection, the group size must be able to increase and decrease. Collections and arrays are similar in that they both hold references to objects and can be used as a group—for example, passed to a method. However:

- › Arrays need to be assigned a size or capacity when you instantiate them, and that size cannot change, but collections can grow and shrink in size automatically when objects are added or removed. Programmers say that a collection is **dynamically resizable**.
- › Arrays can hold primitive data types such as `int` and `double`; collections cannot. Collections can hold objects that are members of classes such as `String`, `Integer`, `Double`, `Student`, and `Employee`.

You have learned that an interface is similar to a class, but all of its methods are implicitly `public` and `abstract`. An interface declares method headers, but not the instructions within those methods. The **Java Collections framework** is a set of interfaces and classes that help you manage groups of objects. The interfaces in the Java Collections framework define collections, and the classes implement them.

Almost all collections in Java are derived from the **Collection interface**. Some of the methods in the interface include `add()` and `remove()`, which can add and remove an object from a collection. **Table 13-1** shows the methods in the Collection interface. Later in this chapter, you will see examples of some of these methods in use. For now, just read the table to get an idea of the sorts of operations that can be performed with collections.

Table 13-1 Collection methods

METHOD	DESCRIPTION
<code>boolean add(Object obj)</code>	Adds an object to a collection. Returns <code>true</code> if the addition was successful.
<code>boolean addAll(Collection c)</code>	Adds all the elements of a collection to another collection. Returns <code>true</code> if the addition was successful.
<code>void clear()</code>	Removes all elements from a collection.
<code>boolean contains(Object obj)</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if an object is an element of the collection.
<code>boolean containsAll(Collection c)</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if a collection contains all elements of the collection parameter.
<code>boolean equals(Object obj)</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if a collection and the parameter object are equal.
<code>int hashCode()</code>	Returns the hash code for the collection.
<code>boolean isEmpty()</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the collection is empty.
<code>Iterator iterator()</code>	Returns an iterator for the invoking collection.
<code>boolean remove(Object obj)</code>	Removes one instance of the parameter object from a collection. Returns <code>true</code> if the element was removed.
<code>boolean removeAll(Collection c)</code>	Removes all elements of one collection from another collection. Returns <code>true</code> if the elements were removed.
<code>boolean retainAll(Collection c)</code>	Removes all elements from the invoking collection except those in the Collection parameter. Returns <code>true</code> if the collection changed (in other words, if elements were removed).
<code>int size()</code>	Returns the number of elements held in the Collection.
<code>Object[] toArray()</code>	Returns an array that contains all the elements stored in the Collection. The array elements are copies.
<code>Object[] toArray(Object array[])</code>	Returns an array containing only those Collection elements whose type matches that of the array.

Note

Table 13-1 refers to the `Iterator` class. You will learn more about iterators and how they help you to loop through lists later in this chapter.

Two Truths & a Lie | Understanding the Collection Interface

1. Collections and arrays both hold references.
2. Collections and arrays both have a size that can increase.
3. Collections have a size that can decrease, but arrays do not.

The false statement is #2. An array's size cannot increase.

13.2 Understanding the List Interface

In programming, a **list** is a collection of an ordered sequence of objects. In Java, the **List interface** extends Collection. It includes the following features:

- › Elements can be inserted or accessed by their position in the list.
- › It can contain duplicate elements.

Note

When programmers discuss arrays, they frequently use the term *subscript* to describe the number that indicates an element's position. When using List containers, the preferred term is more often *index*.

Because List extends Collection, it contains all of the Collection methods, but it also defines some of its own, as shown in **Table 13-2**. These new methods all involve getting or accessing an index or an object located at a given index. (Like Table 13-1, Table 13-2 mentions *iterators*.)

Table 13-2 List methods

METHOD	DESCRIPTION
<code>void add(int index, Object obj)</code>	Inserts the Object parameter into the invoking list at the index, retaining any existing objects.
<code>Object get(int index)</code>	Returns the object stored at the specified index in the invoking list.
<code>boolean addAll(int index, Collection c)</code>	Inserts all elements of the Collection parameter into the list at the index parameter location, retaining any existing objects. Returns true if the invoking list changes.
<code>int indexOf(Object obj)</code>	Returns the index of the first instance of the Object parameter. If Object obj is not an element of the invoking list, -1 is returned.
<code>int lastIndexOf(Object obj)</code>	Returns the index of the last instance of the Object parameter in the invoking list. If Object obj is not an element of the list, -1 is returned.
<code>ListIterator listIterator()</code>	Returns an iterator to the start of the invoking list.
<code>ListIterator listIterator(int index)</code>	Returns an iterator to the invoking list that begins at the specified index.
<code>Object remove(int index)</code>	Removes the element at position index from the invoking list and returns the deleted element. The resulting list is compacted. In other words, the indexes of subsequent elements are decremented.
<code>Object set(int index, Object obj)</code>	Assigns obj to the location in the invoking list specified by index.
<code>List subList(int start, int end)</code>	Returns a list that includes elements from start to one less than end in the invoking list.

Note

In addition to List, other interfaces that extend Collection are Set, Queue, and Dequeue.

- › A Set is not ordered and does not allow duplicates.
- › A Queue is a collection in which the first element added must be the first removed.
- › A Dequeue is a double-ended Queue in which elements can be added or deleted from both ends. (Queue is pronounced "cue," but Dequeue is usually pronounced "deck.")

These interfaces are not covered in detail in this course, but their operations are similar to the other interfaces that extend Collection, and you can search for information about them on the Internet.

Two Truths & a Lie | Understanding the List Interface

1. With a List, elements can be accessed by their position.
2. A List can contain duplicate elements.
3. Collection contains all the methods of List.

The false statement is #3. List contains all the elements of Collection, but Collection does not contain all of the elements of List.

13.3 Using the ArrayList Class

Java includes a set of classes that implement Collection interfaces. Some of the classes are abstract; that is, they must be extended. Others are concrete, which means they provide full implementations. Some of the abstract classes include the following:

- › AbstractCollection, which implements most of the Collection interface
- › AbstractList, which extends AbstractCollection and implements the List interface
- › AbstractSequentialList, which extends AbstractList

Two commonly used concrete classes that extend Collection abstract classes are:

- › ArrayList, which extends AbstractList
- › LinkedList, which extends AbstractSequentialList

Note

In addition to ArrayList and LinkedList, two other concrete classes that implement List are Vector and Stack. They are not covered in this course, but you can search for them on the Internet.

When you learned about arrays earlier in this course, you also learned about the Arrays class, which contains many useful methods for manipulating arrays. For example, the Arrays class methods can be used to fill, sort, and search an array. In addition to the Arrays class, Java provides an **ArrayList class** that descends from AbstractList and can be used to create containers that store lists of objects. The ArrayList class provides some advantages over the Arrays class. Specifically, an ArrayList is dynamically resizable, meaning that its size can change during program execution. This means that, as with other Container objects, you can do the following:

- › You can add an item at any point in an ArrayList container, and the array size expands automatically to accommodate the new item.
- › You can remove an item at any point in an ArrayList container, and the array size contracts automatically.

To use the ArrayList class, you can use one of the following import statements:

```
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.*;
```

Then, to declare an ArrayList, you can use the default constructor, as in the following example that declares a list of String objects:

```
ArrayList<String> names = new ArrayList<String>();
```

An `ArrayList` can hold any type of object; adding a data type in angle brackets (such as `String`) causes Java to check whether additions you make to the list are the correct data type. You can omit the angle brackets and data type that follow the `ArrayList` identifier, but you receive a warning that you are using an unchecked or unsafe operation.

The default constructor creates an `ArrayList` with a capacity of 10 items. The **capacity of an `ArrayList`** is the number of items it can hold without having to increase its size. By definition, an `ArrayList`'s capacity is greater than or equal to its size. You can also specify a capacity. For example, the following statement declares an `ArrayList` that can hold 20 names:

```
ArrayList<String> names = new ArrayList<String>(20);
```

If you know you will need more than 10 items at the outset, it is more efficient to create an `ArrayList` with a larger capacity. The `ArrayList` class contains a `trimToSize()` method that you can use to reduce the capacity of an `ArrayList` to the amount of storage in use. For example, if you instantiate an `ArrayList` to hold 20 items, but you eventually store only 15 items there, the `trimToSize()` method eliminates the extra allocated storage.

As examples of how `ArrayList` methods work, consider the following:

- › To add an item to the end of an `ArrayList`, you can use the `add()` method. For example, to add the name *Anee* to an `ArrayList` named `names`, you can make the following statement:

```
names.add("Anee");
```

- › You can insert an item into a specific position in an `ArrayList` by using an overloaded version of the `add()` method that includes the position. For example, to insert the name *Bob* in the first position of the `names` `ArrayList`, you use the following statement:

```
names.add(0, "Bob");
```

- › You can change the value of an item at a specific position using the `set()` method. For example, to change the name in the first position, you use the following statement:

```
names.set(0, "Annette");
```

- › You can remove an item from a position using the `remove()` method. For example, to remove the second item, you use the following statement:

```
names.remove(1);
```

- › You can get the size of the `ArrayList` using the `size()` method. For example:

```
int sizeOfList = names.size();
```

With each of the methods described in this section, you receive an error message if the position number is invalid for the `ArrayList`. For example, even though you might have created an `ArrayList` with a capacity of 20, if you add only two elements to it, it is illegal to use any index other than 0 or 1.

Figure 13-1 contains a program that demonstrates the `add()`, `set()`, and `size()` methods.

In the application in Figure 13-1, an `ArrayList` is created and *Anee* is added to the list. The `ArrayList` is passed to a `display()` method that displays the current list size and all the names in the list. You can see from the output in **Figure 13-2** that at this point, the `ArrayList` size is 1, and the array contains just one name.

After *Brian* is added to the list, the output shows that the size is 2. Examine the program in Figure 13-1 along with the output in Figure 13-2 so that you understand how the `ArrayList` is altered as names are added, removed, and replaced.

Note

The `display()` method in Figure 13-1 can be made more efficient by calling `names.size()` just once, storing the returned value in a variable, and using that variable as the test value in a `for` loop. However, with a list of just a few names, the time saved will not make much difference.

Figure 13-1 The `ArrayListDemo` application

```

import java.util.ArrayList;
public class ArrayListDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        ArrayList<String> names = new ArrayList<String>();
        names.add("Anee");
        display(names);
        names.add("Brian");
        display(names);
        names.add("Zelda");
        display(names);
        names.add(2, "Juan");
        display(names);
        names.remove(1);
        display(names);
        names.set(0, "Dinh");
        display(names);
        names.add("Lee");
        display(names);
    }
    public static void display(ArrayList<String> names)
    {
        System.out.println("\nThe size of the list is " + names.size());
        System.out.println(names);
    }
}

```

Figure 13-2 Execution of the `ArrayListDemo` application

```

The size of the list is 1
[Anee]

The size of the list is 2
[Anee, Brian]

The size of the list is 3
[Anee, Brian, Zelda]

The size of the list is 4
[Anee, Brian, Juan, Zelda]

The size of the list is 3
[Anee, Juan, Zelda]

The size of the list is 3
[Dinh, Juan, Zelda]

The size of the list is 4
[Dinh, Juan, Zelda, Lee]

```

Notice in Figure 13-1 that the `names` `ArrayList` is an object that can be passed to a method. You can also pass just one `ArrayList` object to a method that accepts the correct type.

For example, suppose you create a method with the following header:

```
public static void displayOneName(String name)
```

Then you could pass one names ArrayList String to the method with the following statement:

```
displayOneName(names.get(0));
```

You can display the contents of an ArrayList of Strings in multiple ways:

- › You can display the contents in a comma-separated list between square brackets, as shown in Figure 13-2; that's the format of the output when the display() method is called in the program in Figure 13-1.
- › If the automatically generated comma-separated list doesn't suit your needs, you can loop through the ArrayList and use the get() method with each entry; that's the format of the output when the fancierDisplay() method is called in the program in **Figure 13-3**. The output appears in **Figure 13-4**.

Figure 13-3 The ArrayListDemo2 application

```
import java.util.ArrayList;
public class ArrayListDemo2
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        ArrayList<String> names = new ArrayList<String>();
        names.add("Anee");
        fancierDisplay(names);
        names.add("Brian");
        fancierDisplay(names);
        names.add("Zelda");
        fancierDisplay(names);
        names.add(2, "Juan");
        fancierDisplay(names);
        names.remove(1);
        fancierDisplay(names);
        names.set(0, "Dinh");
        fancierDisplay(names);
        names.add("Lee");
        fancierDisplay(names);
    }
    public static void fancierDisplay(ArrayList<String> names)
    {
        int x;
        System.out.println("\nThe size of the list is " + names.size());
        for(x = 0; x < names.size(); ++x)
            System.out.print("* " + names.get(x) + " *");
        System.out.println();
    }
}
```

An ArrayList can hold any reference type, but not a primitive type. That is, it can hold Integers, but not ints, and it can hold Doubles, but not doubles. For example, the program in **Figure 13-5** creates an ArrayList of Integer objects, then adds values. **Figure 13-6** shows the output.

You can also use an ArrayList with objects instantiated from your own classes. **Figure 13-7** shows a simple Employee class similar to many you have seen throughout this course. It contains two data fields, a set method for each field, a get method for each field, and a `toString()` method to override the Object class `toString()` method. **Figure 13-8** shows a program that declares two Employee objects and adds them to an ArrayList Container, displaying the output as each object is added. You can see from the output in **Figure 13-9** that the program works with Employee objects in very much the same way that String and Integer objects worked in the programs in Figures 13-1 and 13-5.

Note

The Employee class is not required to contain a `toString()` method; it automatically receives one because it extends Object. However, if you did not provide a `toString()` method for Employee, the `display()` method in Figure 13-8 would display hash codes for the objects instead of field values. Frequently, a user reading the output would find the Employee data values more useful than the hash code.

Figure 13-4 Execution of the `ArrayListDemo2` application

```
The size of the list is 1
* Anee *

The size of the list is 2
* Anee ** Brian *

The size of the list is 3
* Anee ** Brian ** Zelda *

The size of the list is 4
* Anee ** Brian ** Juan ** Zelda *

The size of the list is 3
* Anee ** Juan ** Zelda *

The size of the list is 3
* Dinh ** Juan ** Zelda *

The size of the list is 4
* Dinh ** Juan ** Zelda ** Lee *
```

Figure 13-5 The `ArrayListDemoInteger` application

```
import java.util.ArrayList;
public class ArrayListDemoInteger
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        ArrayList<Integer> nums = new ArrayList<Integer>();
        nums.add(10);
        display(nums);
        nums.add(20);
        display(nums);
        nums.add(30);
        display(nums);
        nums.add(1, 45);
        display(nums);
    }
    public static void display(ArrayList<Integer> nums)
    {
        System.out.println("\nThe size of the list is " + nums.size());
        System.out.println(nums);
    }
}
```

Notice that this `ArrayList` uses type `Integer`.

You can sort an `ArrayList` using the `Collections.sort()` method and providing the `ArrayList` as the argument. To use this method, you must import the `java.util.Collections` package at the top of the file using one of these statements:

```
import java.util.Collections;
import java.util.*;
```

Figure 13-6 Output of the `ArrayListDemoInteger` application

```
The size of the list is 1
[10]

The size of the list is 2
[10, 20]

The size of the list is 3
[10, 20, 30]

The size of the list is 4
[10, 45, 20, 30]
```

Figure 13-7 The `Employee` class

```
public class Employee
{
    private int empNum;
    private double payRate;
    public void setEmpNum(int num)
    {
        empNum = num;
    }
    public void setPayRate(double rate)
    {
        payRate = rate;
    }
    public int getEmpNum()
    {
        return empNum;
    }
    public double getPayRate()
    {
        return payRate;
    }
    public String toString()
    {
        return ("#" + empNum + " pay rate $ " + payRate);
    }
}
```

Figure 13-8 The `ArrayListDemoEmployee` application

```
import java.util.ArrayList;
public class ArrayListDemoEmployee
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        ArrayList<Employee> emps = new ArrayList<Employee>();
        Employee e1 = new Employee();
        Employee e2 = new Employee();
        e1.setEmpNum(123);
        e1.setPayRate(18.55);
        e2.setEmpNum(345);
        e2.setPayRate(33.15);
        emps.add(e1);
        display(emps);
        emps.add(e2);
        display(emps);
    }
    public static void display(ArrayList<Employee> emps)
    {
        System.out.println("\nThe size of the list is " + emps.size());
        System.out.println(emps);
    }
}
```

Figure 13-9 Output of the `ArrayListDemoEmployee` application

```
The size of the list is 1
[#123 pay rate $18.55]

The size of the list is 2
[#123 pay rate $18.55, #345 pay rate $33.15]
```

Figure 13-10 shows a program that adds double values to an `ArrayList`. The program displays the list in entry order, calls the `sort()` method, and then displays the list in sorted order. **Figure 13-11** shows the execution.

Figure 13-10 The SortArrayListDouble application

```

import java.util.*;
public class SortArrayListDouble
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        ArrayList<Double> list = new ArrayList<Double>();
        list.add(3.6);
        list.add(9.4);
        list.add(1.5);
        list.add(7.2);
        list.add(4.9);
        System.out.println("Before Sort: " + list);
        Collections.sort(list);
        System.out.println("After Sort: " + list);
    }
}

```

Figure 13-11 Execution of the SortArrayListDouble application

```

Before Sort: [3.6, 9.4, 1.5, 7.2, 4.9]
After Sort: [1.5, 3.6, 4.9, 7.2, 9.4]

```

The `Collections.sort()` method used in the program in Figure 13-10 works with the `ArrayList` by using the `compareTo()` method that has been built into many Java classes, including `String` and all the classes that derive from the `Number` class, such as `Integer`, `Float`, and `Double`. The `compareTo()` method can be used to place objects in their **class natural ordering**—in the case of `Strings`, this means alphabetical order, and in the case of `Numbers`, it means ascending numerical order.

When you create your own classes and you want to sort derived objects, you must decide what constitutes natural ordering. For example, if you create a `Student` class with multiple fields, you must decide whether you will compare students by ID number, name, birth date, grade point average, or some other value. If you want to use `Collections.sort()` with your class, you must write your own `compareTo()` method to override the inherited one.

Figure 13-12 shows a `Student` class with two fields that hold an ID number and a name. The class also contains a constructor that requires parameters for each field, a `toString()` method that displays a `Student` object's fields, and a `compareTo()` method.

The class in Figure 13-12 assumes that when you sort `Student` objects, they will be sorted by their ID number values. The first line of the `Student` class includes `implements Comparable<Student>` to indicate this class uses the `Comparable` interface to compare one `Student` to another. The `@Override` annotation that appears before the `compareTo()` method shows that the intention is to have this method override `compareTo()` in the `Object` class.

When you create a `compareTo()` method that overrides the `Object` class `compareTo()` method, your method should contain the following features:

- › It must be named `compareTo()`.
- › It must accept a parameter that indicates the type each object will be compared to.
- › It must return an `int`.
- › The returned value is `0` if the calling object and parameter object are equal based on the criteria you have defined. It should return `1` if the calling object is greater than the parameter object, and return `-1` if the calling object is less than the parameter object.

In the `Student` class in Figure 13-12, the `compareTo()` method returns `0` when the calling object's `id` value and the parameter object's `id` value are the same. The method returns `1` if the calling object has an `id` that is greater than the parameter's `id`, and it returns `-1` if the calling object's `id` is less.

Figure 13-12 The Student class

```

public class Student implements Comparable<Student>
{
    private int id;
    private String name;
    public Student(int id, String name)
    {
        this.id = id;
        this.name = name;
    }
    public String toString()
    {
        return "#" + id + " name: " + name;
    }
    @Override
    public int compareTo(Student s)
    {
        int result;
        if(id == s.id)
            result = 0;
        else
            if(id > s.id)
                result = 1;
            else
                result = -1;
        return result;
    }
}

```

The Student class implements Comparable.

The @Override annotation announces the intention to override the compareTo() method in the Object class.

The program in **Figure 13-13** shows a program that tests the Collections.sort() method. An ArrayList is declared, and five Student objects with different ID numbers and names are added to the ArrayList. The Students are displayed, the Collections.sort() method is called, and the Students are displayed again. **Figure 13-14** shows the output. The Students that were originally out of order by id have been placed in order by id.

Figure 13-13 The TestSortStudent application

```

import java.util.*;
public class TestSortStudent
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        ArrayList<Student> students = new ArrayList<Student>();
        students.add(new Student(103, "Manuel"));
        students.add(new Student(104, "Bonnie"));
        students.add(new Student(105, "Fred"));
        students.add(new Student(101, "Dominique"));
        students.add(new Student(102, "Mai"));
        System.out.println("Before sort: ");
        display(students);
        Collections.sort(students);
        System.out.println("After sort: ");
        display(students);
    }
    public static void display(ArrayList<Student> students)
    {
        int x;
        for(x = 0; x < students.size(); ++x)
            System.out.println(students.get(x));
        System.out.println();
    }
}

```

Figure 13-14 Execution of the TestSortStudent application

```

Before sort:
#103 name: Manuel
#104 name: Bonnie
#105 name: Fred
#101 name: Dominique
#102 name: Mai

After sort:
#101 name: Dominique
#102 name: Mai
#103 name: Manuel
#104 name: Bonnie
#105 name: Fred

```

Two Truths & a Lie | Using the ArrayList Class

1. ArrayList is an abstract class.
2. An ArrayList is dynamically resizable.
3. The default capacity of an ArrayList is 10 items.

The false statement is #1. ArrayList is a concrete class.

You Do It | Creating a Class That Implements the Comparable Interface

In this section, you will create a class to hold data about a user's purchases. The class implements the Comparable interface so the purchases can be sorted by category. Then you will write a program to store purchases in an ArrayList and sort them.

1. Open a new document in your text editor, and type the following class header and the opening curly brace for the class. The class implements the Comparable interface so that Purchase objects can be compared.

```
public class Purchase implements Comparable<Purchase>
{
```

2. Add two fields to the class that hold a category (for example, groceries or gas) and a price.

```
private String category;
private double price;
```

3. Create a constructor that accepts two parameters that are used to set the two fields.

```
public Purchase(String cat, double pr)
{
    category = cat;
    price = pr;
}
```

4. Include methods that return the value of each field.

```
public String getCategory()
{
    return category;
}
public double getPrice()
{
    return price;
}
```

5. Override the Object class compareTo() method to use the String class compareTo() method to compare a Purchase's category with another Purchase's category. Then add a closing curly brace for the class.

```
@Override
public int compareTo(Purchase p)
{
    int result;
    result = category.compareTo(p.getCategory());
    return result;
}
```

- Save the class as **Purchase.java**, compile it, and fix any errors.

Creating a Program to Store Purchase Objects in an ArrayList

In this section, you create a program that stores Purchase objects in an ArrayList and sorts the Purchases by category.

- Open a new file and enter the first statements needed to create an application that will be able to store Purchase objects in an ArrayList.

```
import java.util.*;
public class PurchasesArrayList
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

- Create an ArrayList of Purchases.

```
ArrayList<Purchase> purchases = new ArrayList<Purchase>();
```

- Include a Scanner object for data entry, variables to hold the category and price of each Purchase a user enters, and a sentinel value to end user data entry.

```
Scanner kb = new Scanner(System.in);
String category;
double price;
final String QUIT = "ZZZ";
```

- Prompt the user for a Purchase category. Accept the input, and while the user does not enter the QUIT value, prompt the user for the price of the Purchase, consume the Enter key left after the numeric data entry, add a new Purchase to the ArrayList, and prompt the user for another category.

```
System.out.print("Enter category for purchase or " + QUIT +
    " to quit >> ");
category = kb.nextLine();
while(!category.equals(QUIT))
{
    System.out.print("Enter amount spent >> ");
    price = kb.nextDouble();
    kb.nextLine();
    purchases.add(new Purchase(category, price));
    System.out.print("Enter category for purchase or " + QUIT +
        " to quit >> ");
    category = kb.nextLine();
}
```

- After data entry is complete, call a method to display the ArrayList, use the Collections.sort() method to sort the ArrayList, and display the ArrayList again. Add a closing brace for the main() method.

```
System.out.println();
System.out.println("Before sort: ");
display(purchases);
Collections.sort(purchases);
System.out.println("After sort: ");
display(purchases);
}
```

- The display() method accepts an ArrayList of Purchases and, in a loop, displays the field values for each Purchase. Add a closing brace for the class.

```
public static void display(ArrayList<Purchase> p)
{
    int x;
```

```

        for(x = 0; x < p.size(); ++x)
            System.out.println("    " + p.get(x).getCategory() +
                " " + p.get(x).getPrice());
        System.out.println();
    }
}

```

7. Save the file as **PurchasesArrayList.java**. Compile and execute the program. When prompted for a purchase category, enter a value such as *groceries*. Make as many entries as you like before entering *ZZZ* to quit. **Figure 13-15** shows a typical execution.

Figure 13-15 Typical execution of the **PurchasesArrayList** application

```

Enter category for purchase or ZZZ to quit >> groceries
Enter amount spent >> 35.75
Enter category for purchase or ZZZ to quit >> gas
Enter amount spent >> 25.95
Enter category for purchase or ZZZ to quit >> entertainment
Enter amount spent >> 15.99
Enter category for purchase or ZZZ to quit >> gas
Enter amount spent >> 22.75
Enter category for purchase or ZZZ to quit >> groceries
Enter amount spent >> 55.85
Enter category for purchase or ZZZ to quit >> gas
Enter amount spent >> 18.25
Enter category for purchase or ZZZ to quit >> ZZZ

Before sort:
    groceries 35.75
    gas 25.95
    entertainment 15.99
    gas 22.75
    groceries 55.85
    gas 18.25

After sort:
    entertainment 15.99
    gas 25.95
    gas 22.75
    gas 18.25
    groceries 35.75
    groceries 55.85

```

13.4 Using the **LinkedList** Class

A **linked list** is a collection of data elements in which each element holds the memory address of one or more other elements to which it is logically connected.

- A linked list element that holds only the address of the item that follows it resides in a **singly-linked list**.
- A linked element that holds the addresses of both the element that precedes it and the one that follows it is a **doubly-linked list**. The **LinkedList class** you use to store linked lists in Java is a doubly-linked list.

To use the `LinkedList` class, you can use one of the following import statements:

```
import java.util.LinkedList;
import java.util.*;
```

Suppose you want to create a `SchoolSupply` class in which to store data about some school supply objects. **Figure 13-16** shows what three objects that contain an item number and a description look like in memory when they are stored in item number order in an array. The three objects are stored adjacent to each other. When you use a subscript to access one of them, you really are just telling the program how far away from the start of the array to look. If school supply objects are, for example, 20 bytes each, then the object at location 0 is 0 times 20 bytes from the start of the array. The object at location 1 is 1 times 20 (or 20) bytes from the start of the array, and the object at location 2 is 2 times 20 (or 40) bytes from the start of the array.

If you store the same `SchoolSupply` objects in a doubly-linked list, each item is larger because it not only holds the item number and description data, but it also holds two memory addresses—the address of the preceding item and the address of the following item. Each memory address can also be called a *reference*. **Figure 13-17** illustrates.

Figure 13-16 Three `SchoolSupply` objects stored in an array

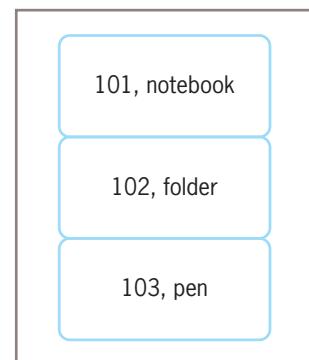
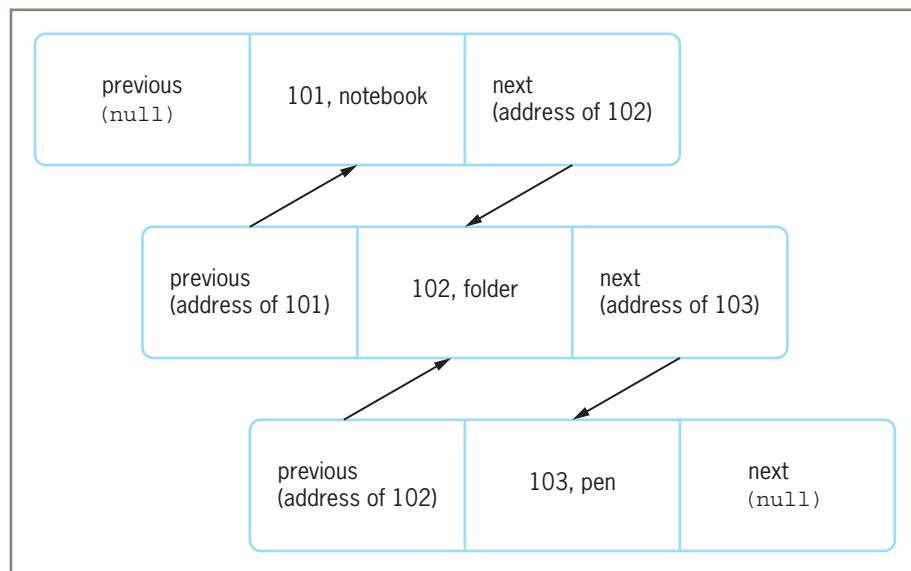


Figure 13-17 Three `SchoolSupply` objects stored in a linked list



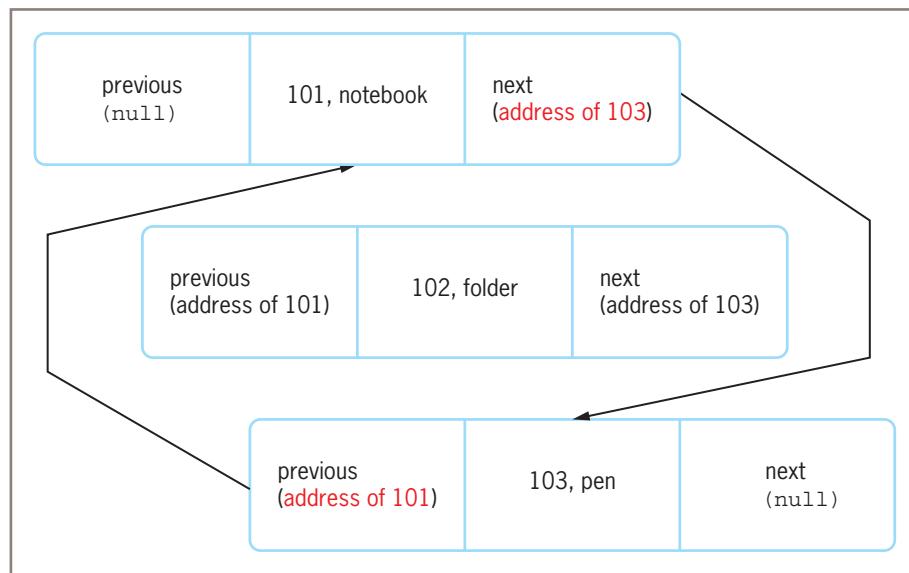
Note

Each element that is part of a linked list is often called a *node*. The parts of each node in the linked list that hold an address sometimes are called *pointers*.

Because each element of a linked list stores the address of the next item, the items do not have to be near each other in memory. Depending on your program, you might prefer a `LinkedList` to an `ArrayList` or you might prefer an `ArrayList` to a `LinkedList`.

» A `LinkedList` works better when you must move or relocate a lot of the data stored there. For example, when you remove an element from a `LinkedList`, you only change the references stored in the items that precede and follow it. **Figure 13-18** shows how the links would change if item 102 was removed from the `SchoolSupply` linked list.

Figure 13-18 SchoolSupply linked list after object 102, folder is removed



- › An `ArrayList` performs less efficiently when you move data. For example, if you remove an entry from an `ArrayList`, all the elements that come after the removed item have to be moved one element “higher” in the array. So, if you remove the second item from a 100-element array, 98 items must move.
- › A `LinkedList` works less efficiently when you have to sequentially store and retrieve a lot of data. For example, when you display every item in a `LinkedList`, the program has to display an item and then get the address of the next item before it can locate and display that item.
- › An `ArrayList` works better when you have to sequentially store and retrieve a lot of data. For example, when you display every item in an array, the program displays an item, increases the address by a fixed number of bytes, and displays the next item.

Because you have read about the `ArrayList` class, you already know quite a bit about how to use the `LinkedList` class. **Figure 13-19** shows a program named `LinkedListDemo` that is very much like the `ArrayListDemo` class in Figure 13-1. The differences from the `ArrayListDemo` program are indicated with asterisks (*) in the figure. Notice that:

- › A `LinkedList` of `String` objects is declared like an `ArrayList` of `Strings`.
- › The `add()`, `remove()`, and `set()` methods work just like they do with an `ArrayList`.
- › A `LinkedList` object can be passed to a method just like an `ArrayList`.

Figure 13-20 shows the output of the `LinkedListDemo` program. It is identical to the output produced by `ArrayListDemo` in Figure 13-1. With relatively small lists and relatively few operations, a program’s user will not notice any differences between the performance of an `ArrayList` and a `LinkedList`.

Two Truths & a Lie | Using the `LinkedList` Class

1. Each `LinkedList` in Java is doubly-linked.
2. `LinkedList` elements must be stored adjacently in memory.
3. A `LinkedList` has `add()` and `remove()` methods like an `ArrayList`.

The false statement is #2. A `LinkedList`’s elements do not need to be stored adjacently.

Figure 13-19 The `LinkedListDemo` application

```
import java.util.LinkedList; * *
public class LinkedListDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        LinkedList<String> names = new LinkedList<String>();
        names.add("Anee");
        display(names);
        names.add("Brian");
        display(names);
        names.add("Zelda");
        display(names);
        names.add(2, "Juan");
        display(names);
        names.remove(1);
        display(names);
        names.set(0, "Dinh");
        display(names);
        names.add("Lee");
        display(names);
    }
    public static void display(LinkedList<String> names)
    {
        System.out.println("\nThe size of the list is " + names.size());
        System.out.println(names);
    }
}
```

Figure 13-20 Typical execution of the `LinkedListDemo` program

```
The size of the list is 1
[Anee]

The size of the list is 2
[Anee, Brian]

The size of the list is 3
[Anee, Brian, Zelda]

The size of the list is 4
[Anee, Brian, Juan, Zelda]

The size of the list is 3
[Anee, Juan, Zelda]

The size of the list is 3
[Dinh, Juan, Zelda]

The size of the list is 4
[Dinh, Juan, Zelda, Lee]
```

13.5 Using Iterators

You can choose a variety of methods to loop through a Collection. For example, in Figure 13-3, you saw a program that uses a `for` loop to display values in an `ArrayList` that holds names. **Figure 13-21** shows a similar program that uses a `for` loop to display values in a `LinkedList`. **Figure 13-22** shows the output.

Figure 13-21 The `ForDemo` application

```
import java.util.*;
public class ForDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        LinkedList<Integer> sales = new LinkedList<Integer>();
        sales.add(75);
        sales.add(81);
        sales.add(43);
        sales.add(55);
        for(int x = 0; x < sales.size(); ++x)
            System.out.print(sales.get(x) + " ");
        System.out.println();
    }
}
```

Figure 13-22 Output of the `ForDemo` program

75 81 43 55

The loop in Figure 13-21 uses the `LinkedList`'s `size()` method to determine the number of iterations through the display loop, and uses an incremented integer with the `get()` method to access each element in the `LinkedList` in turn.

As an alternative, you can use an enhanced `for` loop, also known as a *foreach loop*, to process a Collection. **Figure 13-23** shows an enhanced `for` loop that produces output identical to that shown in Figure 13-22. The variable `amt` is used to hold each value in the `sales` `LinkedList` in turn, so no index is needed. The foreach loop creates an iterator behind the scenes to cycle through the list. An **iterator** is an object that can be used to loop through the elements in a Collection.

Figure 13-23 The `ForEachDemo` application

```
import java.util.*;
public class ForEachDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        LinkedList<Integer> sales = new LinkedList<Integer>();
        sales.add(75);
        sales.add(81);
        sales.add(43);
        sales.add(55);
        for(int amt: sales)
            System.out.print(amt + " ");
        System.out.println();
    }
}
```

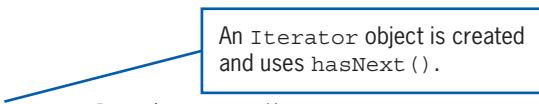
In Java, besides using the behind-the-scenes iterator, you can also create your own `Iterator` object. You must use one of the following `import` statements to create an `Iterator` object:

```
import java.util.Iterator;
import java.util.*;
```

Figure 13-24 shows a program that uses an `Iterator` to display all the elements in a `LinkedList`. The output, again, is the same as that shown in Figure 13-22.

Figure 13-24 The `IteratorDemo` application

```
import java.util.*;
public class IteratorDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        LinkedList<Integer> sales = new LinkedList<Integer>();
        sales.add(75);
        sales.add(81);
        sales.add(43);
        sales.add(55);
        Iterator<Integer> iter = sales.iterator();
        while(iter.hasNext())
            System.out.print(iter.next() + " ");
        System.out.println();
    }
}
```



An Iterator object is created and uses `hasNext()`.

In Figure 13-24, the `iterator()` method creates and returns an `Iterator` object. An `Iterator` object has access to three methods:

- › `hasNext()`, which returns a Boolean value indicating whether another object exists in a Collection
- › `next()`, which returns the next object in a Collection
- › `remove()`, which removes the last element returned by the `Iterator`

In Figure 13-24, the `hasNext()` method determines whether another object exists in the `LinkedList`. If it does, then the `next()` method retrieves it to display.

Note

If you use an `Iterator` object to loop through a Collection, and you need to loop through the Collection again, you do not need to reset the `Iterator`. Instead, you can simply create a new `Iterator` object.

Using an `Iterator` is more efficient than using a `for` loop to process every element in a Collection because you do not need to determine the size of a Collection; you just keep accessing the next object until no more objects exist. For a Collection with few elements, efficiency will not make much difference, so you might use any approach you prefer to cycle through a Collection's elements.

Two Truths & a Lie | Using Iterators

1. When you use an enhanced `for` loop, you need to use an index to access each list element.
2. The `Iterator` `hasNext()` method determines whether another element exists in a collection without retrieving it.
3. The `Iterator` `next()` method retrieves the next element in a collection.

The false statement is #1. The enhanced `for` loop eliminates the need to use an index.

13.6 Creating Generic Classes

Generic programming is a style of computer programming in which code is written with data types to be specified later. Generics enable nonprimitive data types to be parameters when defining classes, interfaces, and methods. Generics use one or more type parameters to stand in for a reference type. A **type parameter** is an identifier that specifies the name of the generic type that will be used in the class. An advantage of using type parameters is that they provide a way for you to reuse the same programming logic with different types.

A **generic class** is one that uses a type parameter. A generic class declaration looks like a nongeneric class declaration, except that the class name is followed by a **type parameter section** that is composed of one or more type parameters between angle brackets (< and >). If there is more than one type parameter, they are separated by commas. For example, **Figure 13-25** shows a simple class named `GenericClass`.

Figure 13-25 The `GenericClass` class

```
public class GenericClass<T>
{
    T obj;
    public GenericClass(T obj)
    {
        this.obj = obj;
    }
    public T getObject()
    {
        return this.obj;
    }
}
```

In Figure 13-25, the parameter `T` represents a generic type that might be `Integer`, `Double`, `String`, `Book`, `Employee`, or any other reference type. It cannot represent a primitive type such as `int` or `double`. The type can be any legal identifier, but Java programmers conventionally use a single uppercase letter to represent the type. Often they use `T`.

The class in Figure 13-25 contains a field named `obj` that is an object of type `T`. In other words, if the class is instantiated using an `Integer`, `obj` will be an `Integer`, and if the class is instantiated using a `Book`, then `obj` will be a `Book`.

The `GenericClass` in Figure 13-25 also contains a constructor that assigns a value to the data field, and a get method that returns the field to a calling program.

Figure 13-26 shows a simple `Book` class that contains one field, which is the `Book`'s title. It is a class like many you have seen before, with a constructor that sets the title and a get method that returns the title.

Figure 13-26 The `Book` class

```
public class Book
{
    private String title;
    public Book(String title)
    {
        this.title = title;
    }
    public String getTitle()
    {
        return title;
    }
}
```

Figure 13-27 contains a `TestGenericClass` program that tests the operation of the `GenericClass` class. The program instantiates a `Book` object, then it instantiates three `GenericClass` objects:

- › The first is named `integerObj`. The generic parameter is `Integer`, and the value passed to the constructor is 37.
- › The second is named `stringObj`. The generic parameter is `String`, and "Zebra" is passed to the constructor.
- › The third is named `bookObj`. The generic parameter is `Book`, and the previously declared `book` is passed to the constructor.

Figure 13-27 The `TestGenericClass` application

```
public class TestGenericClass
{
    public static void main (String[] args)
    {
        Book book = new Book("The Hunger Games");
        GenericClass<Integer> integerObj = new GenericClass<Integer>(37);
        GenericClass<String> stringObj = new GenericClass<String>("Zebra");
        GenericClass<Book> bookObj = new GenericClass<Book>(book);
        System.out.println("The integer is " + integerObj.getObject());
        System.out.println("The String is " + stringObj.getObject());
        System.out.println("The Book is " + bookObj.getObject().getTitle());
    }
}
```

The three output statements in Figure 13-27 show that each object was created correctly using the `GenericClass` class. The class works whether you instantiate objects using an `Integer`, `String`, `Book`, or any other reference type. **Figure 13-28** shows the output.

Figure 13-28 Execution of the `TestGenericClass` program

```
The integer is 37
The String is Zebra
The Book is The Hunger Games
```

Note

Note that if the last output statement in Figure 13-28 did not use the `getTitle()` method, then the default `toString()` method that `Book` inherits from the `Object` class would be used and the output would be something like `Book@4f023edb` instead of the title. Alternatively, you could create a `toString()` method within the `Book` class.

Now that you have seen how a generic class can be constructed, you might guess it is the technique that the developers of Java used to create `ArrayList`, `LinkedList`, and all the other `Container` classes. Those classes perform similar operations whether their parameters are `Integers`, `Doubles`, `Employees`, or `Books`, so they were ideal candidates to use generic types.

Two Truths & a Lie

Creating Generic Classes

1. A type parameter is used to specify a generic data type.
2. A type parameter section in a class header contains curly braces.
3. A type parameter is often named T.

The false statement is #2. A type parameter section in a class header contains angle brackets.

13.7 Creating Generic Methods

Like classes, methods can be generic. A **generic method** is one that uses one or more type parameters. As with generic classes, a type parameter for a generic method must be a reference type. When you create a generic method, you place a type parameter in the method header within angle brackets before the method's return type. If you need more than one type parameter, you separate them with commas.

Suppose your organization frequently wants to produce numbered lists of different data types. You could write a method that produces a numbered list of `Integers`, another that produces a numbered list of `Employees`, and so on, or you could do a lot less work by writing a generic method that produces a numbered list of any data type.

Figure 13-29 shows a program with a generic `displayNumberedList()` method. The program declares a `Character`, `Integer`, `Double`, and `String` array, each with a different number of elements. Then, the program passes each array in turn to the method, which accepts an array of any reference type.

Figure 13-29 The `TestGenericMethod` application

```
public class TestGenericMethod
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Character[] characterArray = { 'A', 'B' };
        Integer[] integerArray = { 13, 45, 68, 145, 412 };
        Double[] doubleArray = { 2.1, 2.3, 3.6, 4.7, 4.9, 5.1, 5.8 };
        String[] stringArray = {"table", "chair", "bed"};
        displayNumberedList(characterArray);
        displayNumberedList(integerArray);
        displayNumberedList(doubleArray);
        displayNumberedList(stringArray);
    }
    public static <T> void displayNumberedList(T[] array)
    {
        int count = 1;
        for(T element : array)
        {
            System.out.println(count + ". " + element);
            ++count;
        }
        System.out.println("-----");
    }
}
```

A type parameter is used here.

In this example, it is used for the array type in the method.

The type parameter is used for each element during processing.

Within the `displayNumberedList()` method, a variable `count` is initialized to 1. Then, for each element in the passed array, the count, a period, a space, and the elements are displayed. When the list is done for each array, a dashed line is displayed. **Figure 13-30** shows the output.

Note

When Java programmers write a generic method like `displayNumberedList()`, they often use `E` for the type parameter instead of `T`, because `E` stands for *element*. In particular, if you examine the Java documentation online, you will see `E` used frequently.

Like other methods, you can overload a generic method. For example, if you wanted different results when you called `displayNumberedList()` with an `Integer` object than when you called it with any other reference type, you could create two methods with the following headers:

```
>public static void displayNumberedList(Integer[] array)
>public static <T> void displayNumberedList(T[] array)
```

When an `Integer` array is passed to `displayNumberedList()`, the method with the first header executes. The method does not use a type parameter, and its parameter is an `Integer` array. When an array of any other reference type is passed to `displayNumberedList()`, the method with the second header executes. The method does use a type parameter (named `T` in this example), which is used as the type for the array passed to the method.

Figure 13-30 Execution of the `TestGenericMethod` application

The screenshot displays three distinct sections of output from the application. The first section shows a list of pairs: 1. A and 2. B, followed by a dashed line and then 1. 13, 2. 45, 3. 68, 4. 145, and 5. 412, also separated by a dashed line. The second section shows a list of floating-point numbers: 1. 2.1, 2. 2.3, 3. 3.6, 4. 4.7, 5. 4.9, 6. 5.1, and 7. 5.8, also separated by a dashed line. The third section shows a list of words: 1. table, 2. chair, and 3. bed, also separated by a dashed line.

```
1. A
2. B
-----
1. 13
2. 45
3. 68
4. 145
5. 412
-----
1. 2.1
2. 2.3
3. 3.6
4. 4.7
5. 4.9
6. 5.1
7. 5.8
-----
1. table
2. chair
3. bed
```

Creating a Generic Method with More than One Type Parameter

You can use as many type parameters in a method as you need, but when you use more than one, each needs its own identifier. For example, suppose you run a business that has both regular and preferred customers, and that manufactures both standard items and custom items. Also suppose that you apply different discount rates to the different item types and display an extra message for a preferred customer.

The simple class in **Figure 13-31** shows that a `RegularCustomer` has a customer number and a name, a constructor that assigns values to both fields, and a `toString()` method that returns a `String` that holds the details about a `RegularCustomer`.

Figure 13-31 The `RegularCustomer` class

```
public class RegularCustomer
{
    private int custNo;
    private String name;
    public RegularCustomer(int custNo, String name)
    {
        this.custNo = custNo;
        this.name = name;
    }
    public String toString()
    {
        String string = "Regular Customer #" + custNo + " " + name;
        return string;
    }
}
```

Figure 13-32 shows a PreferredCustomer class that is very similar to the RegularCustomer class except that the String returned by the `toString()` method contains an extra thank-you note.

Figure 13-32 The PreferredCustomer class

```
public class PreferredCustomer
{
    private int custNo;
    private String name;
    public PreferredCustomer(int custNo, String name)
    {
        this.custNo = custNo;
        this.name = name;
    }
    public String toString()
    {
        String string = "Preferred Customer #" + custNo + " " + name +
            "\n    Thank you for being a preferred customer";
        return string;
    }
}
```

Figure 13-33 shows a StandardItem class that holds an item number, price, and discount rate. The constructor accepts values for the item number and price, and sets the automatic discount rate for a regular item to 20 percent. The `toString()` method displays details about the item, including the item number, price, discount rate, and calculated final price after the discount is applied.

Figure 13-33 The StandardItem class

```
public class StandardItem
{
    private int itemNo;
    private double price;
    private double discount;
    public StandardItem(int itemNo, double price)
    {
        this.itemNo = itemNo;
        this.price = price;
        discount = 0.20;
    }
    public String toString()
    {
        double finalPrice = price - (price * discount);
        String string = "Standard Item #" + itemNo +
            " Price $" + price +
            "\nDiscount rate is " + discount +
            "\n    Final price is $" + finalPrice;
        return string;
    }
}
```

Figure 13-34 shows a CustomItem class that is very similar to the StandardItem class except that the discount rate on a CustomItem is only 5 percent.

The GenericInvoice class in **Figure 13-35** creates one StandardItem, one RegularCustomer, one CustomItem, and one PreferredCustomer. Then, in turn, each combination of items and customers is passed to a generic method that produces invoices. The `createInvoice()` method has two generic parameters. The parameter types can be represented by any identifier, but because T is commonly used when there is one generic parameter type, U, the next letter in the alphabet, is often used for a second parameter type.

When the `createInvoice()` method in Figure 13-35 executes, T sometimes represents a StandardItem and sometimes represents a CustomItem. The U parameter can be a RegularCustomer or PreferredCustomer. **Figure 13-36** shows the program execution. Four invoices are displayed, each with the correct discount and message for the parameter types sent to the `createInvoice()` method.

Figure 13-34 The CustomItem class

```
public class CustomItem
{
    private int itemNo;
    private double price;
    private double discount;
    public CustomItem(int itemNo, double price)
    {
        this.itemNo = itemNo;
        this.price = price;
        discount = 0.05;
    }
    public String toString()
    {
        double finalPrice = price - (price * discount);
        String string = "Custom Item #" + itemNo +
            "\n    Price $" + price +
            "\nDiscount rate is " + discount +
            "\n    Final price is $" + finalPrice;
        return string;
    }
}
```

Figure 13-35 The GenericInvoice application

```
public class GenericInvoice
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        StandardItem stdItem = new StandardItem(101, 100);
        RegularCustomer regCust = new RegularCustomer(301, "Gomez");
        CustomItem custItem = new CustomItem(102, 1000);
        PreferredCustomer prefCust = new PreferredCustomer(302, "Chen");
        createInvoice(stdItem, regCust);
        createInvoice(stdItem, prefCust);
        createInvoice(custItem, regCust);
        createInvoice(custItem, prefCust);
    }
    public static <T, U> void createInvoice(T item, U customer)
    {
        System.out.println("Invoice");
        System.out.println(customer);
        System.out.println(item);
        System.out.println("-----");
    }
}
```

T and U are two type parameters for this method.

Two Truths & a Lie | Creating Generic Methods

1. A generic method uses at least one type parameter.
2. Creating a generic method can save a lot of repetitious coding.
3. A generic method's type parameter can be a primitive data type.

The false statement is #3. A generic method's type parameter must be a reference type.

Figure 13-36 Output of the GenericInvoice program

```

Invoice
Regular Customer #301 Gomez
Standard Item #101 Price $100.0
Discount rate is 0.2
Final price is $80.0
-----
Invoice
Preferred Customer #302 Chen
    Thank you for being a preferred customer
Standard Item #101 Price $100.0
Discount rate is 0.2
Final price is $80.0
-----
Invoice
Regular Customer #301 Gomez
Custom Item #102 Price $1000.0
Discount rate is 0.05
Final price is $950.0
-----
Invoice
Preferred Customer #302 Chen
    Thank you for being a preferred customer
Custom Item #102 Price $1000.0
Discount rate is 0.05
Final price is $950.0
-----
```

You Do It | Creating a Generic Method

In this section, you will create a generic method that can display different data types different numbers of times.

1. Open a new file and type the first few lines of a GenericSequence application.

```

public class GenericSequence
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

2. Declare variables of different data types.

```

Character grade = 'A';
Integer score = 0;
Double pay = 21.34;
String word = "Hello";
```

3. Call a method named `duplicate()` four times, each time passing a different variable and a number of times to duplicate the variable. Add a closing brace for the `main()` method.

```

        duplicate(grade, 5);
        duplicate(score, 10);
        duplicate(pay, 3);
        duplicate(word, 7);
    }
```

4. Create a generic `duplicate()` method that accepts two parameters—a generic object and a number of times to duplicate the object. Within the method, display the passed object in a loop for the number of times passed as the second parameter. The output for each object appears on a single line, and when the loop is complete, a new line is displayed. At the end of the method, add a closing brace for the class.

```
public static <T> void duplicate(T obj, int num)
{
    int x;
    for(x = 0; x < num; ++x)
    {
        System.out.print(obj + " ");
    }
    System.out.println();
}
```

5. Save the file as **GenericSequence.java**. Then compile and execute the application. **Figure 13-37** shows the output. Each object is displayed the requested number of times.

Figure 13-37 Output of the **GenericSequence** program

```
A A A A A
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
21.34 21.34 21.34
Hello Hello Hello Hello Hello Hello Hello
```

Don't Do It

- › Don't use an array if the size of a collection must grow or shrink during a program's execution.
- › Don't use a `Collection` if you must hold elements that are primitive data types.
- › Don't omit the data type between angle brackets in an `ArrayList` declaration if you want to avoid an unchecked or unsafe operation.
- › Don't choose an `ArrayList` over a `LinkedList` for storing a collection if performance is important and a lot of data must be moved in a program.
- › Don't choose a `LinkedList` over an `ArrayList` if performance is important and a program must sequentially store and retrieve a lot of data.
- › Don't try to use a primitive data type as an argument to a method that uses a generic parameter; the argument must be a reference.

Summary

- › A collection is a group of objects that can be operated on together. In Java, a Collection is dynamically resizable and cannot hold primitive data types. The Java Collections framework is a set of interfaces and classes that help you manage groups of objects.
- › A list is a collection of an ordered sequence of objects. In Java, the List interface extends Collection. Elements can be inserted or accessed by their position in the list, and it can contain duplicate elements.
- › ArrayList is a concrete class that is dynamically resizable. The default constructor creates an ArrayList with a capacity of 10 items, but you can specify a different capacity. Methods that can be used with an ArrayList include add(), set(), remove(), and size(). You can sort an ArrayList using the Collections.sort() method and providing the ArrayList as the argument. If you want to use Collections.sort() with a class you have created, you must write a compareTo() method within the class.
- › A linked list is a collection of data elements in which each element holds the memory address of one or more other elements to which it is logically connected. A linked list can be singly-linked or doubly-linked; the LinkedList class in Java is a doubly-linked list. The LinkedList class works better than ArrayList when you must manipulate a lot of the data stored there. The LinkedList class works less efficiently than ArrayList when you have to store and sequentially retrieve a lot of data.
- › An iterator is an object that can be used to loop through the elements in a Collection. The foreach loop creates an iterator to cycle through a list. You can create an Iterator object that has access to hasNext(), next(), and remove() methods.
- › Generics enable nonprimitive data types to be parameters when defining classes, interfaces, and methods. Generics use one or more type parameters to stand in for a reference type. A generic class is one that uses a type parameter.
- › A generic method uses a type parameter that is a reference type.

Key Terms

ArrayList class	dynamically resizable	LinkedList class
capacity of an ArrayList	generic class	list
class natural ordering	generic method	List interface
collection	generic programming	singly-linked list
Collection interface	iterator	type parameter
compareTo()	Java Collections framework	type parameter section
doubly-linked list	linked list	



Review Questions

1. In programming, a(n) _____ is a group of objects that can be operated on together.
 - a. collision
 - b. anthology
 - c. assemblage
 - d. collection

2. A difference between a collection and an array is that a collection _____.
 - a. can hold references
 - b. can be passed to a method
 - c. is dynamically resizable
 - d. can hold primitive data types

3. The Java Collections framework contains _____.
 - a. interfaces, but not classes
 - b. classes, but not interfaces
 - c. both interfaces and classes
 - d. neither interfaces nor classes

4. The List interface _____.
 - a. allows items to be inserted after creation
 - b. cannot contain duplicate elements
 - c. does not allow items to be removed
 - d. cannot contain more than 100 elements

5. An advantage of using the ArrayList class over the Arrays class is that an ArrayList _____.
 - a. can hold more elements
 - b. is dynamically resizable
 - c. supports use with indexes
 - d. requires less memory

6. An ArrayList can hold _____.
 - a. any primitive type
 - b. any numeric type
 - c. any object type
 - d. only 10 objects

7. The number of items an ArrayList can hold is its _____.
 - a. sufficiency
 - b. scope
 - c. range
 - d. capacity

8. If you have declared an ArrayList of Strings named myStrings, which of the following is not a legal method call?
 - a. myStrings.add("onion");
 - b. myStrings.remove("onion");
 - c. int s = myStrings.size();
 - d. myStrings.add(0, "leek");

9. Suppose you have declared an ArrayList of Integers named numbers with a capacity of 10, and that you have assigned values to the first six elements. Which of the following is not legal?
 - a. numbers.get(9);
 - b. numbers.set(1, 55);
 - c. numbers.get(5);
 - d. numbers.add(77);

10. When you create a class from which you will instantiate objects to store in an ArrayList, _____.
 - a. you must create a `toString()` method
 - b. you must create a `compareTo()` method
 - c. you must create both a `toString()` method and a `compareTo()` method
 - d. you are not required to create either a `toString()` method or a `compareTo()` method

11. The method that can be used to sort an `ArrayList` is _____.
- a. `Collections.sort()`
 - b. `ArrayList.sort()`
 - c. `List.sort()`
 - d. `Sorting.sort()`
12. All of the following classes contain a built-in `compareTo()` method except _____.
- a. `Integer`
 - b. `String`
 - c. `Scanner`
 - d. `Double`
13. If you want to use `Collections.sort()` with a class you have created, you must _____.
- a. write your own `compareTo()` method
 - b. overload the `<` and `>` operators
 - c. write your own `toString()` method
 - d. write both a `compareTo()` method and `toString()` method
14. Which is not a requirement when you create a `compareTo()` method that overrides the `Object` class `compareTo()` method?
- a. It must accept a parameter.
 - b. Its return type must be `boolean`.
 - c. It should return a value that is `-1`, `0`, or `1`.
 - d. It must be named `compareTo()`.
15. Suppose you have created a `Student` class `compareTo()` method that is based on the value of a private `idNum` field. Assume the class contains a public `getId()` method that returns the `idNum` value. Also suppose that `stu1`'s `idNum` is `345` and that `stu2`'s `idNum` is `456`. Which of the following returns `1`?
- a. `stu1.compareTo(stu2)`
 - b. `stu2.compareTo(stu1)`
 - c. `stu2.compareTo(stu1.getId())`
 - d. `stu1.getId().compareTo(stu2.getId())`
16. Which of the following is true?
- a. The `ArrayList` class works better than a `LinkedList` when you must move a lot of the data stored there.
 - b. The `ArrayList` class works better than a `LinkedList` when you have to sequentially retrieve a lot of data.
 - c. An `ArrayList` always works more efficiently than a `LinkedList`.
 - d. An `ArrayList` always is less efficient than using a `LinkedList`.
17. An object that can be used in a `foreach` loop to process the elements in a Collection is a(n) _____.
- a. index
 - b. subscript
 - c. repeater
 - d. iterator
18. A generic class is one that uses a(n) _____.
- a. overloaded method
 - b. generic method
 - c. type parameter
 - d. empty method
19. A generic method _____.
- a. resides in a generic class
 - b. cannot be overloaded
 - c. can contain only one parameter
 - d. uses at least one type parameter
20. A generic method _____.
- a. must have a type parameter that represents a reference type
 - b. must return a generic parameter
 - c. must have an empty body that is created at runtime
 - d. can have no more than one type parameter

Programming Exercises

1.
 - a. Create a `Purchase` class similar to the one described in a “You Do It” section earlier in this chapter. The `Purchase` class contains a `String` category for the purchase (such as *groceries*) and a numeric price. Include a `compareTo()` method that will allow an application to sort purchases by category. Save the file as `Purchase.java`.
 - b. Write an application that continually prompts the user for `Purchase` categories and prices until the user enters a sentinel value. Store the `Purchases` in an `ArrayList` and then sort them. Display the `Purchase` object details with a total following each category. **Figure 13-38** shows a typical execution. (As you have learned, working with floating-point data can be imprecise. If you do not like the way your numeric output is formatted, you can improve it by using the techniques presented in Appendix C.) Save the file as `PurchasesArrayListWithTotals.java`.

Figure 13-38 Typical execution of the `PurchasesArrayListWithTotals` program

```
Enter category for purchase or ZZZ to quit >> housing
Enter amount spent >> 875.55
Enter category for purchase or ZZZ to quit >> gas
Enter amount spent >> 32.85
Enter category for purchase or ZZZ to quit >> groceries
Enter amount spent >> 23.75
Enter category for purchase or ZZZ to quit >> gas
Enter amount spent >> 15.92
Enter category for purchase or ZZZ to quit >> groceries
Enter amount spent >> 44.71
Enter category for purchase or ZZZ to quit >> entertainment
Enter amount spent >> 35.55
Enter category for purchase or ZZZ to quit >> gas
Enter amount spent >> 18.93
Enter category for purchase or ZZZ to quit >> ZZZ

entertainment 35.55
    Total for entertainment: 35.55
gas 32.85
gas 15.92
gas 18.93
    Total for gas: 67.7
groceries 23.75
groceries 44.71
    Total for groceries: 68.46
housing 875.55
    Total for housing: 875.55
```

2. Write a program that creates an `Integer` `ArrayList` and store at least four integers in it. Use an iterator to display all the numbers. Then prompt the user for a value to remove from the list. If the number appears in the list, remove it. Display the list again. Save the file as `RemoveNumber.java`.
3. Write a program that creates a `String` `ArrayList`. Continually prompt the user for `Strings` to add to the list until the user enters a sentinel value. Display the `Strings` in a single line separated by commas and ending with a period. Save the file as `CommaPlacement.java`.

4. Write a program that creates a `String ArrayList`. Continually prompt the user for `Strings` to add to the list until a sentinel value is entered. Use an iterator to display all the `Strings`, then continually ask the user for a `String` to eliminate until a sentinel value is entered. After each `String` is eliminated, display the new list. If the user attempts to continue to eliminate `Strings` after the list is empty, display an appropriate message, and end the program. Save the file as `RemoveWords.java`.
5. Write a program that creates two `ArrayLists`—one to hold `Strings` and one to hold `Integers`. Prompt the user for a word, and while the user does not enter a sentinel value, continue to add each entered word to the `ArrayList`, sort the list, pass the list to a `display()` method, and prompt for another word. After the user enters the sentinel value, prompt the user for an integer. While the user does not enter the sentinel value, continue to add each entered `Integer` to the `ArrayList`, sort the list, pass the list to the same `display()` method, and then prompt the user for another `Integer`. Save the program as `DisplaySortedLists.java`.
6.
 - a. Roberto has purchased buildings that contain apartments to rent. Create an `Apartment` class that contains fields for the street address, apartment number, monthly rent amount, and number of bedrooms for each `Apartment` that he owns. Include a constructor that assigns field values to the class, a `toString()` method that displays the `Apartment` values, and a `compareTo()` method that compares `Apartment` objects based on the rent value. Include any other methods that you think you might need. Save the file as `Apartment.java`.
 - b. Write an application that contains a `LinkedList` in which to store `Apartment` objects. Prompt the user for values for `Apartments` and add them to the `LinkedList` until a sentinel value is entered. Sort the `Apartments` by rent value, and then display the sorted list. Save the file as `ApartmentsLinkedList.java`.
 - c. Roberto sometimes sells one of his buildings. Modify the `ApartmentsLinkedList` application so that after data entry is complete and the list of `Apartment` objects is displayed, the application prompts the user for a street address to eliminate. Remove all the `Apartment` objects at the specified street address, and display the list of `Apartments` again. Save the file as `ApartmentsLinkedList2.java`.
7. Write a program that prompts a user for two `Strings` and two integers. Send the two `Strings` to a generic method that sends them to another method to display, swaps their values, and then sends them to the display method again. Then send the two integers to the same method. Save the file as `SwapAnyTypes.java`.

Debugging Exercises

1. Each of the following files in the Chapter13 folder of your downloadable student files has syntax and/or logic errors. In each case, determine the problem and fix the program. After you correct the errors, save each file using the same filename preceded with *Fix*. For example, `DebugThirteen1.java` will become `FixDebugThirteen1.java`.
 - a. `DebugThirteen1.java`
 - b. `DebugThirteen2.java`
 - c. `DebugThirteen3.java`
 - d. `DebugThirteen4.java`

Game Zone

1. In the children's game Out of Order, the user is presented with a series of values—for example, *A, B, C, E, D, F*—and is asked to identify the first item in the list that is out of order. Write a program that stores lists of letters, numbers, and words with one element in each list out of order. The lists do not need to be the same size. In

turn, pass each list to a generic method named `display()` that displays the list and the instructions for the game. Accept the user's answer, and then pass the user's answer and the correct answer to a generic method named `checkAnswer()` that displays both parameters. Save the program as `OutOfOrder.java`.

Case Problems

1.
 - a. In previous chapters, you have created an `Event` class for Yummy Catering. The class contains a default constructor as well as an overloaded constructor that requires an event number (a letter followed by three digits) and a number of guests attending the Event. The constructor calculates the price charged for the Event by multiplying the number of guests by the price per guest. The price per guest is \$32 for small events (50 guests or fewer) and \$35 for large events (more than 50 guests). Now modify the `Event` class as follows:
 - Create a `compareTo()` method that overrides the `Object` class `compareTo()` method to compare `Events` based on their total price.
 - Create a `toString()` method that returns the event number, number of guests, and total price in a readable format.
 Save the file as `Event.java`.
 - b. Write a program that declares an `ArrayList` of `Event` objects. Continually prompt the user for event numbers until a sentinel value is entered. Prompt the user for a number of guests, create an `Event` object using the event number and guest values, and add the object to the `ArrayList`. After the user enters the sentinel value, display the `ArrayList` using the `Event` `toString()` method, sort it using the `Collections.sort()` method, and display the `ArrayList` again. Save the program as `EventArrayList.java`.
2.
 - a. In previous chapters, you have created a `Rental` class for Sunshine Seashore Supplies. The class contains a default constructor as well as an overloaded version that requires a contract number (a letter followed by three digits), a time for the rental (in minutes), and an equipment type (an integer). The three-parameter constructor calculates the price charged for the `Rental` by multiplying the hours for the `Rental` by 40 and adding the value of the number of extra minutes, which cannot exceed 40. Now modify the `Rental` class as follows:
 - Create an overloaded constructor that requires only a contract number and minutes for the `Rental`.
 - Create a `compareTo()` method that overrides the `Object` class `compareTo()` method to compare `Rentals` based on their price.
 - Create a `toString()` method that returns the rental number, time in hours and minutes, and price in a readable format.
 Save the file as `Rental.java`.
 - b. Write a program that declares an `ArrayList` of `Rental` objects. Continually prompt the user for contract numbers until a sentinel value is entered. Prompt the user for a number of minutes for the `Rental`, create a `Rental` object using the contract number and minutes values, and add the object to the `ArrayList`. After the user enters the sentinel value, display the `ArrayList` using the `Rental` `toString()` method, sort it using the `Collections.sort()` method, and display the `ArrayList` again. Save the program as `RentalArrayList.java`.

Introduction to Swing Components

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to:

- 14.1 Describe Swing components
- 14.2 Use the JFrame class
- 14.3 Use the JLabel class
- 14.4 Use a layout manager
- 14.5 Extend the JFrame class
- 14.6 Add JTextFields and JButtons to a JFrame
- 14.7 Describe event-driven programming
- 14.8 Describe Swing event listeners
- 14.9 Use the JCheckBox, ButtonGroup, and JComboBox classes

14.1 Understanding Swing Components

Computer programs usually are more user friendly (and more fun to use) when they contain graphical user interface (GUI) components. **GUI components** are buttons, text fields, and other components with which the user can interact.

Java contains several sets of prewritten GUI components. These include the following:

- › The **Abstract Windows Toolkit (AWT)**, whose components are older and not as portable as the newer frameworks
- › JavaFX, which is newer but not widely used; it is the focus of Appendix F
- › **Swing**, whose components are newer than those included in the AWT and are still used in many programming environments

In the AWT, the components have simple names, such as Frame and Button. When Java's creators designed new, improved classes, they needed new names for the classes, so they used a *J* in front of each new class name. Hence, Swing components have names such as JFrame and JButton.

Note

Swing components were named after a musical style that was popular in the 1940s. The name is meant to imply that the components have style and pizzazz. You already have used the JOptionPane component that is part of the Swing class. The Swing classes are part of a more general set of GUI programming capabilities that are collectively called the **Java Foundation Classes (JFC)**. JFC includes Swing component classes and selected classes from the java.awt package.

GUI components are also called *controls* or *widgets*. Each Swing component is a descendant of JComponent, which in turn inherits from the java.awt.Container class. You can insert the statement `import javax.swing.*;` at the beginning of your Java program files so you can take advantage of all the Swing GUI components and their methods. The *x* in javax originally stood for *extension*, so named because the Swing classes were an extension of the original Java language specifications.

Note

Almost all Swing components are said to be **lightweight components** because they are written completely in Java and do not have to rely on the local operating system code. This means the components are not "weighed down" by having to interact with the operating system (for example, Windows or Macintosh) in which the application is running. Some Swing components, such as JFrames, are known as **heavyweight components** because they do require interaction with the local operating system. A lightweight component reuses the native (original) window of its closest heavyweight ancestor; a heavyweight component has its own opaque native window. The only heavyweight components used in Swing are swing.JFrame, swing.JDialog, swing.JWindow, awt.Component, awt.Container, awt.JComponent, and swing.JApplet. (The JApplet class is **deprecated**, which means it is considered obsolete, starting with Java 17.)

When you use Swing components, you usually place them in containers. A **container** is a type of component that holds other components so that you can treat a group of them as a single entity. Containers are defined in the Container class. Often, a container takes the form of a window that you can drag, resize, minimize, restore, and close.

As you know from reading about inheritance, all Java classes descend from the Object class. The Component class is a child of the Object class, and the Container class is a child of the Component class. Therefore, every Container object "is a" Component, and every Component object (including every Container) "is an" Object.

The Container class is also a parent class, and the Window class is a child of Container. A **window** is a rectangular container that can hold GUI controls. However, Java programmers often prefer to create a frame instead of a window. A **frame** is a window that has a title bar and border. In Java, Frame is a child of Window, and JFrame is the Swing object that is a child of Frame.

Two Truths & a Lie | Understanding Swing Components

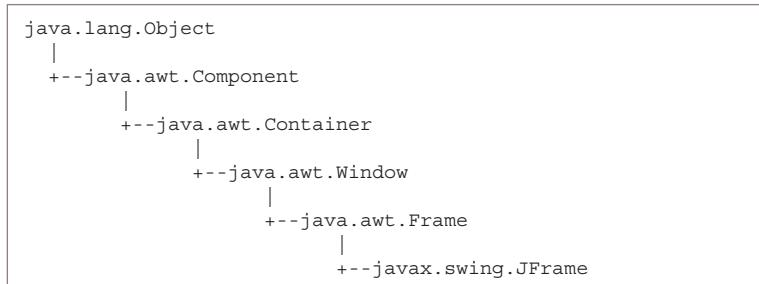
1. Swing components are elements such as buttons; you usually can recognize their names because they contain the word *Swing*.
2. Each Swing component is a descendant of JComponent, which in turn inherits from the java.awt.Container class.
3. You insert the import statement `import javax.swing.*;` at the beginning of your Java program files so you can use Swing components.

The false statement is #1. You can usually recognize Swing component names because they begin with *J*.

14.2 Using the JFrame Class

You usually create a `JFrame` so that you can place other objects within it for display. **Figure 14-1** shows the `JFrame`'s inheritance tree. Recall that the `Object` class is defined in the `java.lang` package, which is imported automatically every time you write a Java program. However, `Object`'s descendants (shown in Figure 14-1) are not imported automatically.

Figure 14-1 Relationship of the `JFrame` class to its ancestors



The `JFrame` class has four constructors:

- › `JFrame()` constructs a new frame that initially is invisible and has no title.
- › `JFrame(String title)` creates a new, initially invisible `JFrame` with the specified title.
- › `JFrame(GraphicsConfiguration gc)` creates a `JFrame` in the specified `GraphicsConfiguration` of a screen device with a blank title. (You will learn about the `GraphicsConfiguration` class as you continue to study Java.)
- › `JFrame(String title, GraphicsConfiguration gc)` creates a `JFrame` with the specified title and the specified `GraphicsConfiguration` of a screen.

You can construct a `JFrame` as you do other objects, using the class name, an identifier, the assignment operator, the new operator, and a constructor call. For example, the following two statements construct two `JFrames`: one with the title *Hello* and another with no title:

```
JFrame firstFrame = new JFrame("Hello");
JFrame secondFrame = new JFrame();
```

After you create a `JFrame` object, you can use the now-familiar object-dot-method format you have used with other objects to call methods that manipulate a `JFrame`'s features. **Table 14-1** describes some useful `JFrame` class methods.

Note

The methods in Table 14-1 represent only a small portion of the available methods you can use with a `JFrame`. Each of the methods listed in Table 14-1 is inherited from either `JFrame`'s `Component` or `Frame` parent class. These classes contain many useful methods in addition to the few listed here. You can read the documentation for all the methods by searching for them online.

Table 14-1 Useful methods inherited by the `JFrame` class

METHOD	PURPOSE
<code>void setTitle(String)</code>	Sets a <code>JFrame</code> 's title using the <code>String</code> argument
<code>void setSize(int, int)</code>	Sets a <code>JFrame</code> 's size in pixels with the width and height as arguments
<code>void setSize(Dimension)</code>	Sets a <code>JFrame</code> 's size using a <code>Dimension</code> class object; the <code>Dimension(int, int)</code> constructor creates an object that represents both a width and a height
<code>String getTitle()</code>	Returns a <code>JFrame</code> 's title

(continues)

Table 14-1 Useful methods inherited by the `JFrame` class (*continued*)

METHOD	PURPOSE
<code>void setResizable(boolean)</code>	Sets the <code>JFrame</code> to be resizable by passing <code>true</code> to the method, or sets the <code>JFrame</code> not to be resizable by passing <code>false</code> to the method
<code>boolean isResizable()</code>	Returns <code>true</code> or <code>false</code> to indicate whether the <code>JFrame</code> is resizable
<code>void setVisible(boolean)</code>	Sets a <code>JFrame</code> to be visible using the boolean argument <code>true</code> and invisible using the boolean argument <code>false</code>
<code>void setBounds(int, int, int, int)</code>	Overrides the default behavior for the <code>JFrame</code> to be positioned in the upper-left corner of the computer screen's desktop; the first two arguments are the horizontal and vertical positions of the <code>JFrame</code> 's upper-left corner on the desktop, and the final two arguments set the width and height

Figure 14-2 shows a program that declares a `JFrame` named `aFrame`, sets its size to 250 pixels horizontally by 100 pixels vertically, and sets its title to display a `String`. **Pixels** are the picture elements, or tiny dots of light, that make up the image on your computer monitor.

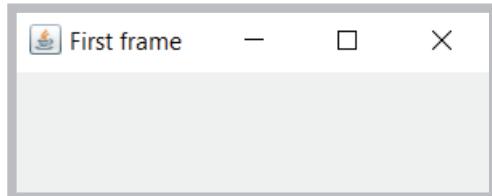
Note

When you set a `JFrame`'s size, you do not have the full area available to use because part of the area is consumed by the `JFrame`'s title bar and borders.

Figure 14-2 The `JFrame1` application

```
import javax.swing.*;
public class JFrame1
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        JFrame aFrame = new JFrame("First frame");
        aFrame.setSize(250, 100);
        aFrame.setVisible(true);
    }
}
```

The application in Figure 14-2 produces the `JFrame` shown in **Figure 14-3**. It resembles frames that you probably have seen when using GUI programs. One reason to use similar frame objects in your own programs is that users already are familiar with the frame environment. When users see frames on their computer screens, they expect to see a title bar at the top containing text information (such as *First frame*). Users also expect to see Minimize, Maximize or Restore, and Close buttons in the frame's upper-right corner. Most users assume that they can change a frame's size by dragging its border or reposition the frame on their screen by dragging the frame's title bar to a new location. The `JFrame` in Figure 14-3 has all of these capabilities.

Figure 14-3 Output of the `JFrame1` application

In the application in Figure 14-2, all three statements in the `main()` method are important. After you instantiate the `JFrame` object, you will not see it if you do not use `setVisible(true)`, and if you do not set its size, you see only the title bar of the `JFrame` because the `JFrame` size is 0×0 by default. It might seem unusual that the default state for a `JFrame` is invisible. However, consider that you might want to construct a `JFrame` in the background while other

actions are occurring and that you might want to make it visible later, when appropriate (for example, after the user has taken an action such as selecting an option for the `JFrame`'s appearance).

When a user closes a `JFrame` by clicking the Close button in the upper-right corner, the default behavior is for the `JFrame` to be hidden and for the application to keep running. This makes sense when there are other tasks for the program to complete after the main frame is closed—for example, displaying additional frames, closing open data files, or printing an activity report. To change this behavior, you can call a `JFrame`'s `setDefaultCloseOperation()` method and use one of the following four values as an argument:

- › `JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE` exits the program when the `JFrame` is closed.
- › `WindowConstants.DISPOSE_ON_CLOSE` closes the frame, disposes of the `JFrame` object, and keeps running the application.
- › `WindowConstants.DO NOTHING_ON_CLOSE` keeps the `JFrame` and continues running. In other words, it disables the Close button.
- › `WindowConstants.HIDE_ON_CLOSE` closes the `JFrame` and continues running; this is the default operation that you frequently want to override.

Note

Each of the four usable `setDefaultCloseOperation()` arguments represents an integer; for example, the value of `JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE` is 3. However, it is easier to remember the constant names than the numeric values they represent, and other programmers more easily understand your intentions if you use the named constant identifier.

If you are testing an application and you want to end the program when the user closes a `JFrame`, but you forget to change the default close operation, you can end the program by pressing Ctrl+C.

Customizing a `JFrame`'s Appearance

The appearance of the `JFrame` in Figure 14-3 is provided by the operating system in which the program is running (in this case, Windows). For example, the coffee-cup icon in the frame's title bar and the Minimize, Restore, and Close buttons look and act as they do in other Windows applications. The icon and buttons are known as **window decorations**. By default, window decorations are supplied by the operating system; however, you can request that Java's look and feel provide different decorations for a frame. **Look and feel (L & F)** comprises the elements of design, style, and functionality in any user interface.

Optionally, you can set a `JFrame`'s look and feel using the `setDefaultLookAndFeelDecorated()` method. For example, **Figure 14-4** shows an application that calls this method.

Figure 14-4 The `JFrame2` class

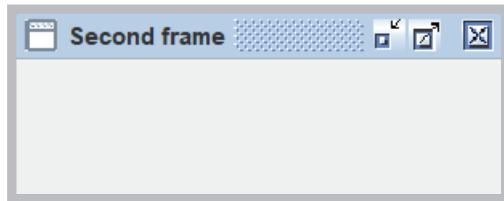
```
import javax.swing.*;
public class JFrame2
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        JFrame.setDefaultLookAndFeelDecorated(true);
        JFrame aFrame = new JFrame("Second frame");
        aFrame.setSize(250, 100);
        aFrame.setVisible(true);
    }
}
```

Note

You can provide a custom icon for a frame instead of using your operating system's default icon or the Java look-and-feel icon. For details, search online for *How to make Java JFrames*.

The program in Figure 14-4 differs from Figure 14-2 only in the class name, the text in the title bar, and the look-and-feel statement. **Figure 14-5** shows the output. If you compare the frame in Figure 14-5 with the one in Figure 14-3, you can see that Java's look and feel has similar features to that of Windows, but their appearance is different. Java's look and feel is also known by the name *Metal*.

Figure 14-5 Output of the `JFrame2` application



Note

Look and feel is a legal issue because some software companies claim that competitors are infringing on their copyright protection by copying the look and feel of their products.

Two Truths & a Lie | Using the `JFrame` Class

1. The `JFrame` class contains overloaded constructors; for example, you can specify a title or not.
2. An advantage of using a `JFrame` is that it resembles traditional frames that people are accustomed to using.
3. When a user closes a `JFrame` by clicking the Close button in the upper-right corner, the default behavior is for the application to end.

The false statement is #3. When a user closes a `JFrame` by clicking the Close button in the upper-right corner, the default behavior is for the `JFrame` to be hidden and for the application to keep running.

You Do It | Creating a `JFrame`

In this section, you create a `JFrame` object that appears on the screen.

1. Open a new file, and type the following statement to import the `javax.swing` classes:

```
import javax.swing.*;
```

2. On the next lines, type the following class header for the `JDemoFrame` class, its opening curly brace, the `main()` method header, and its opening curly brace:

```
public class JDemoFrame
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

3. Within the body of the `main()` method, enter the following code to declare a `JFrame` with a title, set its size, and make it visible. If you neglect to set a `JFrame`'s size, you see only the title bar of the `JFrame` (because the

size is 0×0 by default); if you neglect to make the `JFrame` visible, you do not see anything. Add two closing curly braces—one for the `main()` method and one for the `JDemoFrame` class.

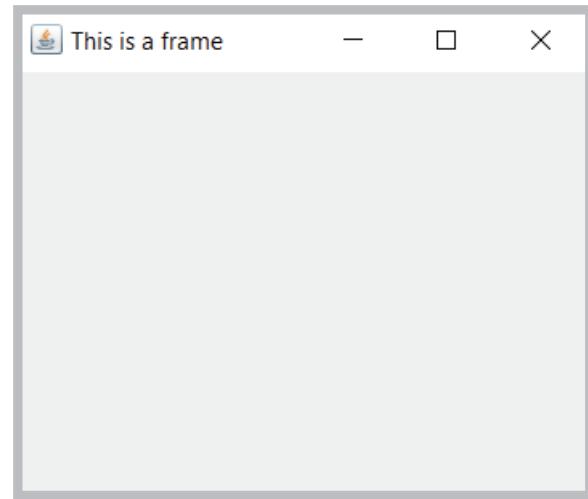
```

JFrame aFrame = new JFrame("This is a frame");
final int WIDTH = 300;
final int HEIGHT = 250;
aFrame.setSize(WIDTH, HEIGHT);
aFrame.setVisible(true);
}
}

```

4. Save the file as `JDemoFrame.java`. Compile and then run the program. The output looks like **Figure 14-6**—an empty `JFrame` a little wider than it is tall, with a title bar. The `JFrame` has all the properties of frames you have seen in applications you have used. For example, click the `JFrame`'s **Minimize** button, and the `JFrame` minimizes to an icon on the Windows taskbar.
5. Click the `JFrame`'s **icon** on the taskbar. The `JFrame` returns to its previous size.
6. Click the `JFrame`'s **Maximize** button. The `JFrame` fills the screen.
7. Click the `JFrame`'s **Restore** button. The `JFrame` returns to its original size.
8. Position your mouse pointer on the `JFrame`'s title bar, and then drag the `JFrame` to a new position on your screen.
9. Click the `JFrame`'s **Close** button. The `JFrame` disappears or hides. The default behavior of a `JFrame` is simply to hide when the user clicks the Close button—not to end the program.
10. To end the program and return control to the command line, click the **Command Prompt** window, and then press **Ctrl+C**. Earlier in this course, you learned to press **Ctrl+C** to stop a program that contains an infinite loop. This situation is similar—you want to stop a program that does not have a way to end automatically.

Figure 14-6 Output of the `JDemoFrame` application



Ending an Application When a `JFrame` Closes

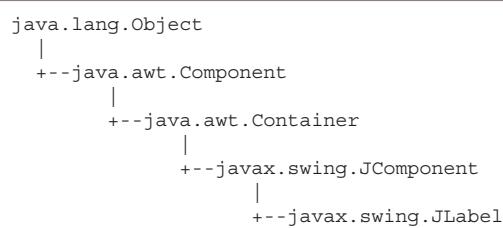
Next, you modify the `JDemoFrame` program so that the application ends when the user clicks the `JDemoFrame` Close button.

1. Within the `JDemoFrame` class file, change the class name to `JDemoFrameThatCloses`.
 2. Add a new line of code as the final executable statement within the `main()` method, as follows:
- ```
aFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
```
3. Save the file as `JDemoFrameThatCloses.java`, and compile and execute the application.
  4. When the `JFrame` appears on your screen, confirm that it still has Minimize, Maximize, and Restore capabilities. Then click the `JFrame`'s **Close** button. The `JFrame` closes, and the command prompt returns as the program relinquishes control to the operating system.

## 14.3 Using the JLabel Class

In a GUI environment, a **label** is an uneditable component that most often is used to provide information for a user. (**Editable** describes a component that can accept keystrokes.) **JLabel** is a built-in Java Swing class that allows you to create a label that you can display in a **JFrame**. The inheritance hierarchy of the **JLabel** class is shown in **Figure 14-7**.

**Figure 14-7** The **JLabel** class inheritance hierarchy



Available constructors for the **JLabel** class include the following:

- › **JLabel()** creates a **JLabel** instance with no image and with an empty string for the title.
- › **JLabel(Icon image)** creates a **JLabel** instance with the specified image.
- › **JLabel(Icon image, int horizontalAlignment)** creates a **JLabel** instance with the specified image and horizontal alignment.
- › **JLabel(String text)** creates a **JLabel** instance with the specified text.
- › **JLabel(String text, Icon icon, int horizontalAlignment)** creates a **JLabel** instance with the specified text, image, and horizontal alignment.
- › **JLabel(String text, int horizontalAlignment)** creates a **JLabel** instance with the specified text and horizontal alignment.

For example, you can create a **JLabel** named **greeting** that holds the words *Good day* by writing the following statement:

```
JLabel greeting = new JLabel("Good day");
```

You then can add the **greeting** object to the **JFrame** object named **aFrame** using the **add()** method as follows:

```
aFrame.add(greeting);
```

**Figure 14-8** shows an application in which a **JFrame** is created and its size, visibility, and close operation are set. Then a **JLabel** is created and added to the **JFrame**. **Figure 14-9** shows the output.

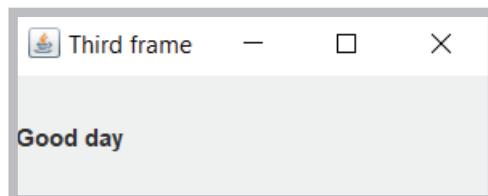
**Figure 14-8** The **JFrame3** class

```

import javax.swing.*;
public class JFrame3
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 final int FRAME_WIDTH = 250;
 final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 100;
 JFrame aFrame = new JFrame("Third frame");
 aFrame.setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
 aFrame.setVisible(true);
 aFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
 JLabel greeting = new JLabel("Good day");
 aFrame.add(greeting);
 }
}

```

**Figure 14-9** Output of the **JFrame3** application



The counterpart to the `add()` method is the `remove()` method. The following statement removes greeting from `aFrame`:

```
aFrame.remove(greeting);
```

If you add or remove a component from a container after it has been made visible, you also should call the `invalidate()`, `validate()`, and `repaint()` methods, or you will not see the results of your actions. Each performs slightly different functions, but all three together guarantee that the results of changes in your layout will take effect. The `invalidate()` and `validate()` methods are part of the `Container` class, and the `repaint()` method is part of the `Component` class.

### Note

If you add or remove a component in a `JFrame` during construction, you do not have to call `repaint()` if you later alter the component—for example, by changing its text. You only need to call `repaint()` if you add or remove a component after construction.

You can change the text in a `JLabel` by using the `Component` class `setText()` method with the `JLabel` object and passing a `String` to it. For example, the following code changes the value displayed in the greeting `JLabel`:

```
greeting.setText("Howdy");
```

You can retrieve the text in a `JLabel` (or other `Component`) by using the `getText()` method, which returns the currently stored `String`.

## Changing a `JLabel`'s Font

You probably are not very impressed with the simple application displayed in Figure 14-9. You might think that the string *Good day* is plain and lackluster. Fortunately, you can change the font of strings displayed in GUI components. A **font** is the size, weight, and style of a typeface, and Java provides you with a `Font` class from which you can create an object that holds typeface and size information. The `setFont()` method requires a `Font` object argument. To construct a `Font` object, you need three arguments: typeface, style, and point size.

- › The *typeface argument* to the `Font` constructor is a `String` representing a font. Common fonts have names such as *Arial*, *Century*, *Monospaced*, and *Times New Roman*. The typeface argument in the `Font` constructor is only a request; the system on which your program runs might not have access to the requested font, and if necessary, it substitutes a default font.
- › The *style argument* applies an attribute to displayed text and is one of three values: `Font.PLAIN`, `Font.BOLD`, or `Font.ITALIC`.
- › The *point size argument* is an integer that represents about 1/72 of an inch. Printed text is commonly 12 points; a headline might be 30 points.

### Note

In printing, point size defines a measurement between lines of text in a single-spaced text document. The point size is based on typographic points, which are approximately 1/72 of an inch. Java adopts the convention that one point on a display is equivalent to one unit in user coordinates. For more information, search for *Java Font class* online.

To give a `JLabel` object a new font, you can create a `Font` object, as in the following:

```
Font headlineFont = new Font("Monospaced", Font.BOLD, 36);
```

The typeface name is a `String`, so you must enclose it in double quotation marks. You can use the `setFont()` method to assign the `Font` to a `JLabel` with a statement such as:

```
greeting.setFont(headlineFont);
```

**Figure 14-10** shows a class named `JFrame4`. Notice the changes from the `JFrame3` program.

**Figure 14-10** The JFrame4 program

```

import javax.swing.*;
import java.awt.*;
public class JFrame4
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 final int FRAME_WIDTH = 250;
 final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 100;
 Font headlineFont = new Font("Arial", Font.BOLD, 36);
 JFrame aFrame = new JFrame("Fourth frame");
 aFrame.setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
 aFrame.setVisible(true);
 aFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
 JLabel greeting = new JLabel("Good day");
 greeting.setFont(headlineFont);
 aFrame.add(greeting);
 }
}

```

The program in Figure 14-10 includes a new import statement for the package that contains the `Font` class. The program contains a `Font` object named `headlineFont` that is applied to the `greeting`. **Figure 14-11** shows the execution of the `JFrame4` program; the greeting appears in a 36-point, bold, Arial font.

You are not required to provide an identifier for a `Font`. For example, you could omit the statement that declares `headlineFont` in Figure 14-10 and set the `greeting` `Font` with the following statement, which uses an anonymous `Font` object that is established within the method call:

```
greeting.setFont(new Font("Arial", Font.BOLD, 36));
```

After you create a `Font` object, you can create a new object with a different type and size using the `deriveFont()` method with appropriate arguments. For example, the following two statements create a `headlineFont` object and a `textBodyFont` object that is based on the first object:

```
Font headlineFont = new Font("Arial", Font.BOLD, 36);
Font textBodyFont = headlineFont.deriveFont(Font.PLAIN, 14);
```

Basing one font on another ensures that if the original font is changed in the future, the derived font will have the same look and feel relative to the first one.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Using the JLabel Class

1. `JLabel` is a built-in Java Swing class that holds text you can display.
2. You can change a `JLabel`'s text by using its `JFrame`'s name, a dot, and the `add()` method, and then using the desired text as the argument to the method.
3. If you add or remove a component from a container after it has been made visible, you should also call the `validate()` and `repaint()` methods, or else you will not see the results of your actions.

The false statement is #2. You change a `JLabel`'s text using the `setText()` method, including the new text as the argument. You add a `JLabel` to a `JFrame` by using the `JFrame`'s name, a dot, and the `add()` method, and then by using the `JLabel`'s name as an argument to the method.

**Figure 14-11** Output of the `JFrame4` program

## 14.4 Using a Layout Manager

When you want to add multiple components to a `JFrame` or other container, you usually need to provide instructions for the layout of the components. For example, **Figure 14-12** shows an application in which two `JLabel`s are created and added to a `JFrame`.

**Figure 14-12** The `JFrame5` program

```
import javax.swing.*;
import java.awt.*;
public class JFrame5
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 final int FRAME_WIDTH = 250;
 final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 100;
 JFrame aFrame = new JFrame("Fifth frame");
 aFrame.setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
 aFrame.setVisible(true);
 aFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
 JLabel greeting = new JLabel("Hello");
 JLabel greeting2 = new JLabel("Who are you?");
 aFrame.add(greeting);
 aFrame.add(greeting2);
 }
}
```

Although two `JLabel`s are added to the `JFrame`, only the last one added is visible.

**Figure 14-13** shows the output of the application in Figure 14-12. Although two `JLabel`s are added to the frame, only the last one added is visible. The second `JLabel` has been placed on top of the first one, totally obscuring it. If you continued to add more `JLabel`s to the program, only the last one added to the `JFrame` would be visible.

To place multiple components at specified positions in a container so they do not hide each other, you must explicitly use a **layout manager**—an object that controls component positioning. The normal (default) behavior of a `JFrame` is to use a **border layout manager**, which divides a container into regions. The Java class that provides this type of layout is named `BorderLayout`. When you use `BorderLayout` but do not specify a region in which to place a component (as the `JFrame5` program fails to do), all the components are placed in the same region, and they obscure each other.

When you use a **flow layout manager**, components do not lie on top of each other. Instead, the flow layout manager places components in rows; after any row is filled, additional components automatically spill into the next row. The Java class that provides this type of layout is `FlowLayout`.

Three constants are defined in the `FlowLayout` class that specify how components are positioned in each row of their container. These constants are `FlowLayout.LEFT`, `FlowLayout.RIGHT`, and `FlowLayout.CENTER`. For example, to create a layout manager named `flow` that positions components to the right, you can use the following statement:

```
FlowLayout flow = new FlowLayout(FlowLayout.RIGHT);
```

If you do not specify how components are laid out, by default they are centered in each row.

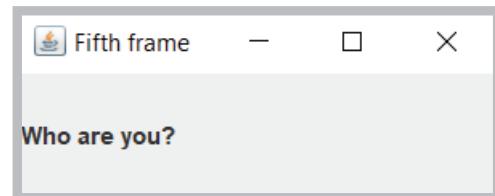
Suppose that you create a `FlowLayout` object named `flow` as follows:

```
FlowLayout flow = new FlowLayout();
```

Then the layout of a `JFrame` named `aFrame` can be set to the newly created `FlowLayout` using the statement:

```
aFrame.setLayout(flow);
```

**Figure 14-13** Output of the `JFrame5` program



A more compact syntax that uses an anonymous `FlowLayout` object is:

```
aFrame.setLayout(new FlowLayout());
```

**Figure 14-14** shows an application in which the `JFrame`'s layout manager has been set so that multiple components are visible.

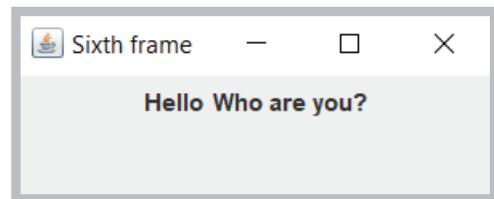
**Figure 14-14** The `JFrame6` program

```
import javax.swing.*;
import java.awt.*;
public class JFrame6
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 final int FRAME_WIDTH = 250;
 final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 100;
 JFrame aFrame = new JFrame("Sixth frame");
 aFrame.setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
 aFrame.setVisible(true);
 aFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
 JLabel greeting = new JLabel("Hello");
 JLabel greeting2 = new JLabel("Who are you?");
 aFrame.setLayout(new FlowLayout());
 aFrame.add(greeting);
 aFrame.add(greeting2);
 }
}
```

The layout manager allows multiple components in the `JFrame` to be visible.

**Figure 14-15** shows the execution of the `JFrame6` program. Because a `FlowLayout` is used, the two `JLabels` appear side by side. If there were more `JLabels` or other components, they would continue to be placed side by side across the `JFrame` until there was no more room. Then, the additional components would be placed in a new row beneath the first row of components.

**Figure 14-15** Output of the `JFrame6` program



### Note

Other layout managers allow you to position components in a container more precisely. The examples in this chapter will use `FlowLayout` because it is the easiest of the layout managers to use.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Using a Layout Manager

1. If you do not provide a layout manager for a `JFrame`, you cannot add multiple components to it.
2. The normal (default) behavior of a `JFrame` is to use a layout format named `BorderLayout`.
3. The flow layout manager places components in a row, and when a row is filled, it automatically spills components into the next row.

The false statement is #1. If you do not provide a layout manager for a `JFrame`, you can add multiple components to it, but only the most recently added one is visible.

## 14.5 Extending the JFrame Class

You can instantiate a simple `JFrame` object within an application's `main()` method or with any other method of any class you write. Alternatively, you can create your own class that descends from the `JFrame` class. The advantage of creating a child class of `JFrame` is that you can set the `JFrame`'s properties within your object's constructor; then, when you create your `JFrame` child object, it is automatically endowed with the features you have specified, such as title, size, and default close operation.

You already know that you create a child class by using the keyword `extends` in the class header, followed by the parent class name. You also know that you can call the parent class's constructor using the keyword `super`, and that when you call `super()`, the call must be the first statement in the constructor. For example, the `JMyFrame` class in **Figure 14-16** extends `JFrame`. Within the `JMyFrame` constructor, the `super()` `JFrame` constructor is called; it accepts a `String` argument to use as the `JFrame`'s title. (Alternatively, the `setTitle()` method could have been used.) The `JMyFrame` constructor also sets the size, visibility, and default close operation for every `JMyFrame`. Each of the methods—`setSize()`, `setVisible()`, and `setDefaultCloseOperation()`—appears in the constructor in Figure 14-16 without an object, because the object is the current `JMyFrame` being constructed. Each of the three methods could be preceded with a `this` reference with exactly the same meaning. That is, within the `JMyFrame` constructor, the following two statements have identical meanings:

```
setSize(WIDTH, HEIGHT);
this.setSize(WIDTH, HEIGHT);
```

Each statement sets the size of “this” current `JMyFrame` instance.

**Figure 14-16** The `JMyFrame` class

```
import javax.swing.*;
public class JMyFrame extends JFrame
{
 final int WIDTH = 300;
 final int HEIGHT = 120;
 public JMyFrame()
 {
 super("My frame");
 setSize(WIDTH, HEIGHT);
 setVisible(true);
 setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
 }
}
```

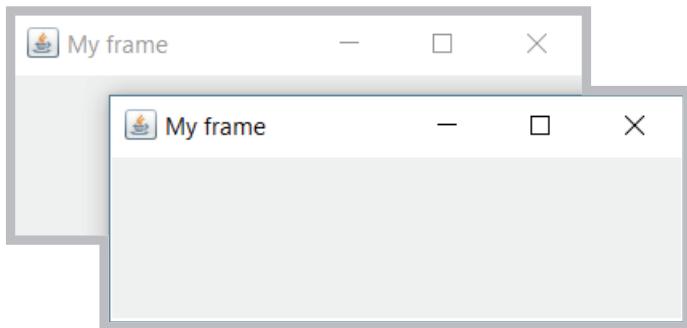
**Figure 14-17** shows an application that declares two `JMyFrame` objects. Each has the same set of attributes, determined by the `JMyFrame` constructor.

**Figure 14-17** The `CreateTwoJMyFrameObjects` application

```
public class CreateTwoJMyFrameObjects
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 JMyFrame myFrame = new JMyFrame();
 JMyFrame mySecondFrame = new JMyFrame();
 }
}
```

When you execute the application in Figure 14-17, the two `JMyFrame` objects are displayed with the second one on top of, or obscuring, the first. **Figure 14-18** shows the output of the `CreateTwoJMyFrameObjects` application after the top `JMyFrame` has been dragged to partially expose the bottom one.

**Figure 14-18** Output of the `CreateTwoJMyFrameObjects` application after dragging the top frame



### Note

You could use the `setBounds()` method with one of the `JMyFrame` objects that produces the output in Figure 14-18 so that you don't have to move one `JMyFrame` object to view the other. See Table 14-1 for details.

You exit the application when you click the Close button on either of the two `JMyFrame` objects shown in Figure 14-18. Each object has the same default close operation because each uses the same constructor that specifies this operation. To allow only one `JMyFrame` to control the program's exit, you could use the `setDefaultCloseOperation()` method with one or both of the objects in the application to change its close behavior. For example, you could use `DISPOSE_ON_CLOSE` to dismiss one of the frames but keep the application running.

When you extend a `JFrame` to create a new custom class, you must remember to decide which attributes you want to set within the class and which you want to leave to the applications that will use the class. For example, you can place the `setVisible()` statement within the `JFrame` child class constructor (using either an explicit or implied `this` reference), or you can allow the application to use a `setVisible()` statement (using the name of an instantiated object followed by a dot and the method name). Either one works, but if you fail to do either, the frame will not be visible.

### Note

Programmers frequently place a `main()` method within a class such as `JMyFrame`. Then the class provides the option to be used to instantiate objects, as in the `CreateTwoJMyFrameObjects` application, or to be used to execute as a program that creates an object.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Extending the `JFrame` Class

1. The advantage of creating a child class of `JFrame` is that you can set the `JFrame`'s properties within your object's constructor so it is automatically endowed with the features that you have specified.
2. When a class descends from `JFrame`, you can use `super()` or `setTitle()` to set the title within any of the child's methods.
3. When you extend a `JFrame` to create a new custom class, you can decide which attributes you want to set within the class and which you want to leave to the applications that will use the class.

The false statement is #2. When a class descends from `JFrame`, you can use `super()` or `setTitle()` to set the title within the child's constructor. However, `super()` does not work in other methods.

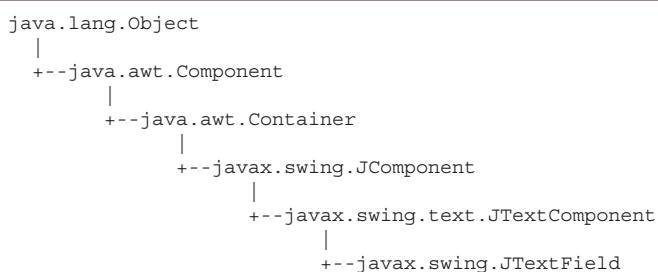
## 14.6 Adding JTextFields and JButtons to a JFrame

In addition to including JLabel objects, JFrame s often contain other window features, such as JTextFields and JButton s.

### Adding JTextFields to a JFrame

A **text field** is a component into which a user can type a single line of text data. (Text data comprises any characters you can enter from the keyboard, including numbers and punctuation.) The Swing class that creates a text field is JTextField. Figure 14-19 shows the inheritance hierarchy of the JTextField class.

**Figure 14-19** The JTextField class inheritance hierarchy



Typically, a user types a line into a JTextField and then presses Enter on the keyboard or clicks a button with the mouse to enter the data. You can construct a JTextField object using one of several constructors:

- › public JTextField() constructs a new JTextField.
- › public JTextField(int columns) constructs a new, empty JTextField with a specified number of columns.
- › public JTextField(String text) constructs a new JTextField initialized with the specified text.
- › public JTextField(String text, int columns) constructs a new JTextField initialized with the specified text and columns.

For example, to provide a JTextField that allows enough room for a user to enter approximately 10 characters, you can code the following:

```
JTextField response = new JTextField(10);
```

To add the JTextField named response to a JFrame named frame, you write:

```
frame.add(response);
```

The number of characters a JTextField can display depends on the font being used and the actual characters typed. For example, in most fonts, *w* is wider than *i*, so a JTextField of size 10 using the Arial font can display 24 *i* characters, but only eight *w* characters.

Try to anticipate how many characters your users might enter when you create a JTextField. The user can enter more characters than those that display, but the extra characters scroll out of view. It can be disconcerting to try to enter data into a field that is not large enough. It is usually better to overestimate than underestimate the size of a text field.

Several other methods are available for use with JTextField s. The setText () method allows you to change the text in a JTextField (or other Component) that has already been created, as in the following:

```
response.setText("Thank you");
```

After a user has entered text in a JTextField, you can clear it out with a statement such as the following, which assigns an empty string to the text:

```
response.setText("");
```

The getText() method allows you to retrieve the String of text in a JTextField (or other Component), as in:

```
String whatUserTyped = response.getText();
```

A JTextField is editable by default. If you do not want the user to be able to enter data in a JTextField, you can send a boolean value to the setEditable() method to change the JTextField's editable status. For example, if you want to give a user a limited number of chances to answer a question correctly, you can count data-entry attempts and then prevent the user from replacing or editing the characters in the JTextField by using a statement similar to the following:

```
if(attempts > LIMIT)
 response.setEditable(false);
```

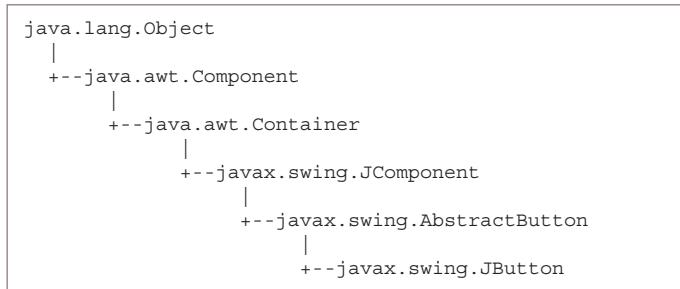
## Adding JButtons to a JFrame

In a GUI environment, a **button** is a component typically used to trigger an action or make a selection when the user clicks it. The Java class that creates a button is JButton. A JButton is even easier to create than a JTextField. There are five JButton constructors:

- › public JButton() creates a button with no set text.
- › public JButton(Icon icon) creates a button with an icon of type Icon or ImageIcon.
- › public JButton(String text) creates a button with text.
- › public JButton(String text, Icon icon) creates a button with initial text and an icon of type Icon or ImageIcon.
- › public JButton(Action a) creates a button in which properties are taken from the Action supplied. (Action is a Java class.)

The inheritance hierarchy of the JButton class is shown in **Figure 14-20**.

**Figure 14-20** The JButton class inheritance hierarchy



To create a JButton with the text *Press when ready*, you can write the following:

```
JButton readyJButton = new JButton("Press when ready");
```

You can add a JButton to a JFrame (or other container) using the add() method. You can change a JButton's text with the setText() method, as in:

```
readyJButton.setText("Don't press me again!");
```

You can retrieve the text from a JButton and assign it to a String object with the getText() method, as in:

```
String whatsOnJButton = readyJButton.getText();
```

**Figure 14-21** shows a class that extends `JFrame` and holds several components. As the components (two `JLabels`, a `JTextField`, and a `JButton`) are added to the `JFrame`, they are placed from left to right in horizontal rows across the `JFrame`'s surface. **Figure 14-22** shows the program that instantiates an instance of the `JFrame`.

**Figure 14-21** The `JFrameWithManyComponents` class

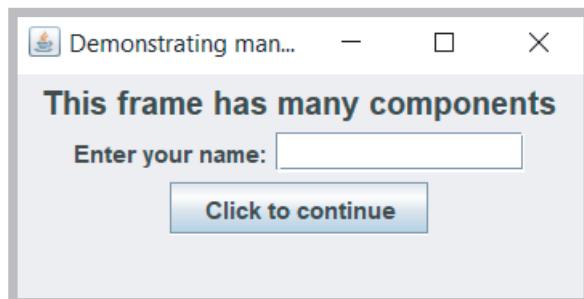
```
import javax.swing.*;
import java.awt.*;
public class JFrameWithManyComponents extends JFrame
{
 final int FRAME_WIDTH = 300;
 final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 150;
 public JFrameWithManyComponents()
 {
 super("Demonstrating many components");
 setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
 setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
 JLabel heading = new JLabel("This frame has many components");
 heading.setFont(new Font("Arial", Font.BOLD, 16));
 JLabel namePrompt = new JLabel("Enter your name:");
 JTextField nameField = new JTextField(12);
 JButton button = new JButton("Click to continue");
 setLayout(new FlowLayout());
 add(heading);
 add(namePrompt);
 add(nameField);
 add(button);
 }
}
```

**Figure 14-22** A `ComponentDemo` application that instantiates a `JFrameWithManyComponents`

```
public class ComponentDemo
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 JFrameWithManyComponents frame =
 new JFrameWithManyComponents();
 frame.setVisible(true);
 }
}
```

When you execute the `ComponentDemo` program, the `JFrame` contains all the components that were added in the frame's constructor, as shown in **Figure 14-23**. A user can minimize or restore the frame and alter its size by dragging the frame borders. The user can type characters in the `JTextField` and click the `JButton`. When the button is clicked, it appears to be pressed just like buttons you have used in professional applications. When the user types characters or clicks the button, however, no actions occur because code has not yet been written to handle any user-initiated events.

**Figure 14-23** Execution of the `ComponentDemo` program



## Two Truths & a Lie

Adding JTextFields and JButtons to a JFrame

1. A JTextField is a component into which a user can type a single line of text data.
2. A JButton is a Component the user can click to make a selection.
3. JTextField and JButton classes are unusual in that each contains only a default constructor.

The false statement is #3. JTextField and JButton classes each contain multiple constructors.

## You Do It

Adding Components to a JFrame

Next, you create a Swing application that displays a JFrame that holds a JLabel, JTextField, and JButton.

1. Open a new file, and then type the following first few lines of an application. The import statements make the Swing and AWT components available, and the class header indicates that the class is a JFrame. The class contains several components: a label, field, and button.

```
import javax.swing.*;
import java.awt.*;
public class JFrameWithComponents extends JFrame
{
 JLabel label = new JLabel("Name?");
 JTextField field = new JTextField(12);
 JButton button = new JButton("OK");
```

2. In the JFrameWithComponents constructor, set the JFrame title to *Frame with Components* and the default close operation to exit the program when the JFrame is closed. Set the layout manager. Add the label, field, and button to the JFrame.

```
public JFrameWithComponents()
{
 super("Frame with Components");
 setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
 setLayout(new FlowLayout());
 add(label);
 add(field);
 add(button);
}
```

3. Add a closing curly brace for the class, and then save the file as **JFrameWithComponents.java**.

4. Compile the class and correct any errors.

5. Next, write an application that creates a new JFrameWithComponents named *aFrame*, sizes it using the *setSize()* method, and then sets its visible property to true.

```
import javax.swing.*;
public class CreateJFrameWithComponents
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 JFrameWithComponents aFrame =
 new JFrameWithComponents();
```

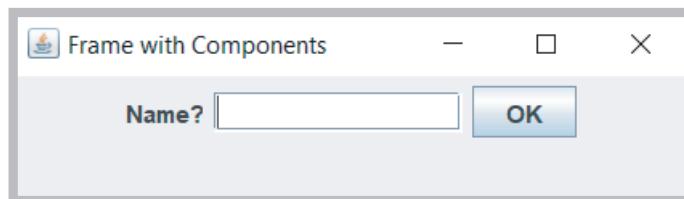
```

 final int WIDTH = 350;
 final int HEIGHT = 100;
 aFrame.setSize(WIDTH, HEIGHT);
 aFrame.setVisible(true);
 }
}

```

6. Save the file as `CreateJFrameWithComponents.java`. Compile and then execute the application. The output is shown in **Figure 14-24**.

**Figure 14-24** Execution of the `CreateJFrameWithComponents` application



7. Click the **JButton**. It acts like a button should—that is, it appears to be pressed when you click it, but nothing happens because you have not yet written instructions for the button clicks to execute.
8. Close the application.

## 14.7 Learning About Event-Driven Programming

An **event** occurs when a user takes action on a component, such as clicking the mouse on a **JButton** object. Procedural programs are programs in which actions take place one at a time in the sequence in which statements appear within a method. In an **event-driven program**, however, the user might initiate any number of events in any order. For example, if you use a word-processing program, you have dozens of choices at your disposal at any time. You can type words, select text with the mouse, click a button to change text to bold, click a button to change text to italic, choose a menu item, and so on. With each word-processing document you create, you choose options in any order that seems appropriate at the time. The word-processing program must be ready to respond to any event you initiate.

Within an event-driven program, a component on which an event is generated is the **source of an event**. An object that is interested in an event is a **listener**. Programmers sometimes say a source *triggers* an event or *fires* an event. For example, if a label appears or changes color when the user clicks a button, the button is the source of the event and the label is a listener. When the source fires an event, an event-handling method contained in the listener object's class responds to the event. A source and a listener can be the same object. For example, you might program a button to change its own text when a user clicks it.

Not all objects listen for all possible events—you probably have used programs in which clicking many areas of the screen has no effect. If you want an object to be a listener for an event, you must **register** or sign up the object as a listener for the source. Social networking sites maintain lists of people in whom you are interested and notify you each time a person on your list posts a comment or picture. Similarly, a Java component source object (such as a button) maintains a list of registered listeners and notifies all of them when an event occurs.

To respond to user events within any class you create, you must do the following:

- › Prepare your class to accept event messages by importing and implementing the appropriate listener interface.
- › Tell your class to expect events to happen by registering it as a listener.
- › Tell your class how to respond to events by writing necessary action statements in a method.

## Preparing Your Class to Accept Event Messages

The `java.awt.event` package includes event classes that provide the capability to work with user-generated events such as an `ActionEvent`, which is the type of event that occurs when a user clicks a button. You import the event package to gain access to the methods in the event classes, and then you prepare a class to work with events by adding an `implements` phrase to the class header. For example, implementing the `ActionListener` interface provides you with standard event method specifications that allow a listener to work with `ActionEvents`.

### Note

You have already learned how to create and implement interfaces. You can identify interfaces such as `ActionListener` because they are used in phrases with the keyword `implements`. In ordinary language, an item that is implemented is put into service, or used. Implementation has a similar meaning when applied to interfaces. By contrast, packages that are *imported* are brought into an application, and classes that acquire new features through inheritance are *extended*.

### Note

If you declare a class that extends a class that implements a listener, you do not need to include `implements` in the child class header because the new class inherits the implementation.

## Telling Your Class to Expect Events to Happen

You tell your class to expect an event using a method name that begins with the appropriate listener-registering method. The method that registers an `ActionEvent` is the `addActionListener()` method. (You learn about other listener-registering methods later in this chapter.) For example, suppose that you are creating a class that represents a frame; within the class, you have declared a `JButton` named `aButton`, and you want to perform an action when a user clicks `aButton`. In this case, `aButton` is the source of a message, and your class is a listener.

The following code in the frame class causes any `ActionEvent` messages (button clicks) that come from `aButton` to be sent to the frame:

```
aButton.addActionListener(this);
```

In this statement, the `this` reference means “this current object,” and `this` refers to the frame class in which the statement appears.

### Note

Not all `Events` are `ActionEvents` with an `addActionListener()` method. For example, `KeyListeners` have an `addKeyListener()` method, and `FocusListeners` have an `addFocusListener()` method.

## Telling Your Class How to Respond to Events

You tell your class what to do when an event is generated by writing statements in a specific method that is part of the listener interface. For example, the `ActionListener` interface contains the `actionPerformed()` method specification that executes when an event occurs. The method is an example of an **event handler**—it reacts to and takes care of generated events. When you implement the `ActionListener` interface, you must write the `actionPerformed()` method to overload the empty version in the interface. (All the methods in an interface are abstract, and therefore must be given a body in classes that use them.)

Suppose that you have created a class that extends `JFrame`, and that you have registered it as a listener for events triggered by a `JButton`. When a user clicks the `JButton`, the `actionPerformed()` method executes automatically. The `actionPerformed()` method must have the following header, in which `e` represents any name you choose for the `Event`:

```
public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent e)
```

The body of the method contains any statements that you want to execute when the action occurs. You might want to perform mathematical calculations, construct new objects, produce output, or execute any other operation.

## Writing an Event-Driven Program

For example, **Figure 14-25** shows a `JFrame` that reacts to a button click. The class contains a `JLabel` that prompts the user for a name, a `JTextField` into which the user can type a response, a `JButton` to click, and a second `JLabel` that displays the name entered by the user. The program imports the event package and implements the event listener. The frame is registered as a listener for button clicks; the `actionPerformed()` method is the method that executes when the button is clicked. Within the `actionPerformed()` method, the `String` that a user has typed into the `JTextField` is retrieved and stored in the `name` variable and then used in the text of a second `JLabel`. **Figure 14-26** shows an application that instantiates a `JHelloFrame` object and makes it visible.

**Figure 14-25** The `JHelloFrame` class that produces output when the user clicks the `JButton`

```
import javax.swing.*;
import java.awt.*;
import java.awt.event.*;
public class JHelloFrame extends JFrame implements ActionListener
{
 JLabel question = new JLabel("What is your name?");
 Font bigFont = new Font("Arial", Font.BOLD, 16);
 JTextField answer = new JTextField(10);
 JButton pressMe = new JButton("Press me");
 JLabel greeting = new JLabel("");
 final int WIDTH = 275;
 final int HEIGHT= 225;
 public JHelloFrame()
 {
 super("Hello Frame");
 setSize(WIDTH, HEIGHT);
 setLayout(new FlowLayout());
 question.setFont(bigFont);
 greeting.setFont(bigFont);
 add(question);
 add(answer);
 add(pressMe);
 add(greeting);
 setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
 pressMe.addActionListener(this);
 }
 @Override
 public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent e)
 {
 String name = answer.getText();
 String greet = "Hello, " + name;
 greeting.setText(greet);
 }
}
```

This program uses the event package.

This phrase implements the event listener.

The class (the frame) is registered as a listener for button clicks.

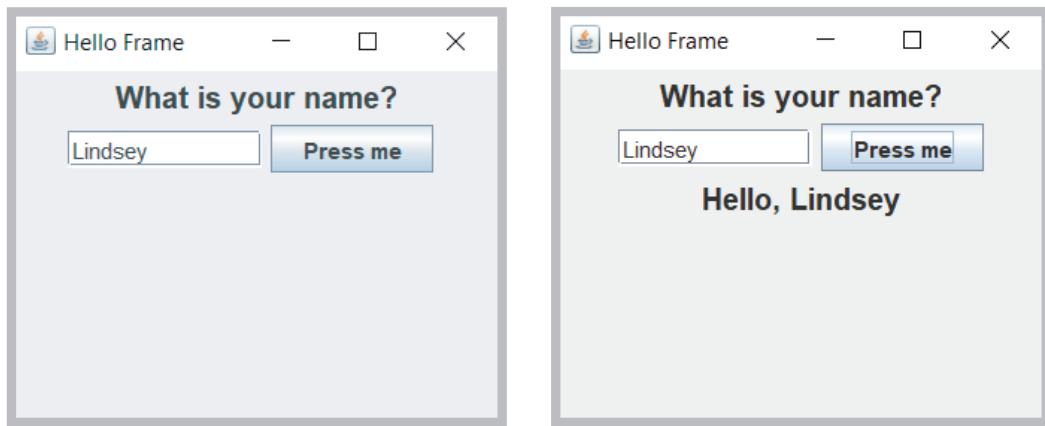
This method executes when the user clicks the button.

**Figure 14-26** An application that instantiates a `JHelloFrame` object

```
public class JHelloDemo
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 JHelloFrame frame = new JHelloFrame();
 frame.setVisible(true);
 }
}
```

**Figure 14-27** shows a typical execution of the JHelloDemo program. The user enters a name into the JTextField, and after the user clicks the button, the greeting that includes the name is displayed.

**Figure 14-27** Typical execution of the JHelloDemo program



## Using Multiple Event Sources

You can add more than one event source component to a listener. For example, in the JHelloFrame class in Figure 14-25, you might want the user to be able to see the message after either clicking the button or pressing Enter in the JTextField. In that case, you would designate both the pressMe button and the answer text field to be message sources by using the addActionListener() method with each, as follows:

```
pressMe.addActionListener(this);
answer.addActionListener(this);
```

These two statements make the JFrame a listener for messages from either object. The actionPerformed() method then executes when either the pressMe button or the answer text field generates an event.

If you want different actions to occur depending on whether the user clicks the button or presses Enter, you must determine the source of the event. Within the actionPerformed() method, you can use the getSource() method with the event parameter to determine which component generated the event. For example, when the parameter to the actionPerformed() method is named e, you can use the following statement to determine which object generated the ActionEvent:

```
Object source = e.getSource();
```

For example, if a JFrame contains two JButtons named option1 and option2, you can use the decision structure in the method in **Figure 14-28** to take different courses of action based on which button is clicked. Whether an event's source is a JButton, JTextField, or other Component, it can be assigned to an Object because all components descend from Object.

**Figure 14-28** An actionPerformed() method that takes one of two possible actions

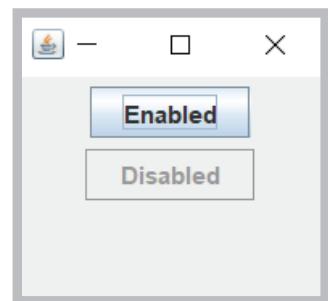
```
@Override
public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent e)
{
 Object source = e.getSource();
 if(source == option1)
 //execute these statements when user clicks option1
 else
 //execute these statements when user clicks any other option
}
```

Alternatively, you can also use the `instanceof` keyword to determine the source of the event. The `instanceof` keyword is used when it is necessary to know only the component's type, rather than what component triggered the event. For example, if you want to take some action when a user enters data into any `JTextField`, but not when an event is generated by a different Component type, you could use the method format shown in **Figure 14-29**.

**Figure 14-29** An `actionPerformed()` method that executes a block of statements when a user generates an event from any `JTextField`

```
@Override
public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent e)
{
 Object source = e.getSource();
 if(source instanceof JTextField)
 {
 // execute these statements when any JTextField
 // generates the event
 // but not when a JButton or other Component does
 }
}
```

**Figure 14-30** A `JFrame` with an enabled `JButton` and a disabled `JButton`



## Using the `setEnabled()` Method

You probably have used computer programs in which a component becomes disabled or unusable. For example, a `JButton` might become dim and unresponsive when the programmer no longer wants the user to have access to the `JButton`'s functionality. Components are enabled by default, but you can use the `setEnabled()` method to make a component available or unavailable by passing `true` or `false` to it, respectively. For example, **Figure 14-30** shows a `JFrame` with two `JButton` objects. The one on top is enabled, but the one on the bottom has been disabled.

### Note

Your downloadable student data files contain a file named `JTwoButtons.java` that produces the `JFrame` shown in Figure 14-30.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Learning About Event-Driven Programming

1. Within an event-driven program, a component on which an event is generated is a listener.
2. You prepare your class to accept button-press events by importing the `java.awt.event` package into your program and adding the phrase `implements ActionListener` to the class header.
3. A class that can react to `ActionEvents` includes an `actionPerformed()` method.

The false statement is #1. Within an event-driven program, a component on which an event is generated is the source of the event, and an object that is interested in an event is a listener.

## You Do It | Adding Functionality to a JButton and a JTextField

Next, you add functionality to the JButton and JTextField that you created in the JFrameWithComponents class.

1. Open the **JFrameWithComponents.java** file. Immediately save the file as **JAction.java**.
2. After the existing import statements at the top of the file, add the following import statement that will allow event handling:

```
import java.awt.event.*;
```

3. Change the class name to **JAction** to match the new filename. Also change the constructor header to match the new class name. Within the constructor, change the string argument to the super() method from *Frame with Components* to *Action*.
4. After extends JFrame at the end of the JAction class header, add the following phrase so that the class can respond to ActionEvents:

```
implements ActionListener
```

5. Register the JAction class as a listener for events generated by either the button or the text field by adding the following statements at the end of, but within, the JAction() constructor:

```
button.addActionListener(this);
field.addActionListener(this);
```

6. Just prior to the closing curly brace for the class, add the following actionPerformed() method that overrides the one defined in the ActionListener interface. The method changes the text on both the label and the button whenever the user clicks the button or presses Enter in the text field.

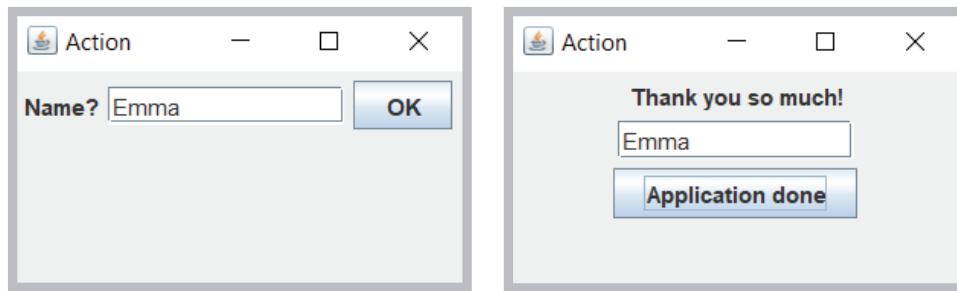
```
@Override
public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent e)
{
 label.setText("Thank you so much!");
 button.setText("Application done");
}
```

7. Just after the actionPerformed() method, and just before the closing curly brace for the class, add a main() method to the class so that you can instantiate a JAction object for demonstration purposes.

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
 JAction aFrame = new JAction();
 final int WIDTH = 250;
 final int HEIGHT = 150;
 aFrame.setSize(WIDTH, HEIGHT);
 aFrame.setVisible(true);
}
```

8. Save the file, then compile and execute it. At first, the frame appears as shown on the left side of **Figure 14-31**, with all the components in a row. Type a name in the text field, and click the **OK** button. Now, the text in the label and the text on the button both require more space, so all the components are redistributed because the FlowLayout manager places as many components as will fit horizontally in the top row before adding components to subsequent rows. The output looks like the right side of Figure 14-31.

**Figure 14-31** Typical execution of the `JAction` application before and after the user clicks the OK button



9. Close the application and then execute it again. This time, enter a name in the text field and press **Enter**. Again, the button text changes, showing that the `actionPerformed()` method reacts to actions that take place on either the button or the text field.
10. Close the application.

#### Distinguishing Event Sources

Next, you will modify the `actionPerformed()` method of the `JAction` class so that different results occur depending on which action a user takes.

1. Open the `JAction.java` file if it is not still open. Immediately save the file as `JAction2.java`.
2. Change the class name and the constructor name to match the new filename by adding **2** to each name.
3. In the `main()` method, change the statement that instantiates the `JFrame` object to the following:

```
JAction2 aFrame = new JAction2();
```

4. Within the `actionPerformed()` method, you can use the named `ActionEvent` argument and the `getSource()` method to determine the source of the event. Using an `if` statement, you can take different actions when the argument represents different sources. For example, you can change the label in the frame to indicate the event's source. Change the `actionPerformed()` method to:

```
@Override
public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent e)
{
 Object source = e.getSource();
 if(source == button)
 label.setText("You clicked the button");
 else
 label.setText("You pressed Enter");
}
```

5. Save the file (as `JAction2.java`), then compile and execute it. Type a name, press **Enter** or click the **button**, and notice the varying results in the frame's label.
6. Close the application.

## 14.8 Understanding Swing Event Listeners

Many types of listeners exist in Java, and each of these listeners can handle a specific event type. A class can implement as many event listeners as it needs—for example, a class might need to respond to both a mouse button press and a keyboard key press, so you might implement both `ActionListener` and `KeyListener` interfaces. **Table 14-2** lists some event listeners and the types of events for which they are used.

**Note**

As a shorthand, programmers sometimes refer to all the listener classes as a group using `XXXListener` or `<name>Listener`.

**Table 14-2** Alphabetical list of some event listeners

| LISTENER            | TYPE OF EVENTS        | EXAMPLE                         |
|---------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| ActionListener      | Action events         | Button clicks                   |
| AdjustmentListener  | Adjustment events     | Scroll bar moves                |
| ChangeListener      | Change events         | Slider is repositioned          |
| FocusListener       | Keyboard focus events | Text field gains or loses focus |
| ItemListener        | Item events           | Check box changes status        |
| KeyListener         | Keyboard events       | Text is entered                 |
| MouseListener       | Mouse events          | Mouse clicks                    |
| MouseMotionListener | Mouse movement events | Mouse rolls                     |
| WindowListener      | Window events         | Window closes                   |

An event occurs every time a user types a character, clicks a mouse button, taps a touch screen, or takes a similar action. Any object can be notified about an event as long as it implements the appropriate interface and is registered as an event listener on the appropriate event source. You already know that you establish a relationship between a JButton and a JFrame that contains it by using the `addActionListener()` method. Similarly, you can create relationships between other Swing components and the classes that react to users' manipulations of them. In **Table 14-3**, each component listed on the left is associated with a method on the right. For example, when you want a JCheckBox to respond to a user's clicks, you can use the `addItemListener()` method to register the JCheckBox as the type of object that can create an ItemEvent. (You learn more about JCheckBox objects later in this chapter.) The argument you place within the parentheses of the call to the `addItemListener()` method is the object that should respond to the event. The format is:

```
theSourceOfTheEvent.addListenerMethod(theClassThatShouldRespond);
```

As you already have learned, the class that should respond is frequently the `this` class.

**Table 14-3** Some Swing components and their associated listener-registering methods

| COMPONENT(S)                                                | ASSOCIATED LISTENER-REGISTERING METHOD(S)                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| JButton, JCheckBox, JComboBox, JTextField, and JRadioButton | <code>addActionListener()</code>                                                                                                              |
| JScrollBar                                                  | <code>addAdjustmentListener()</code>                                                                                                          |
| All Swing components                                        | <code>addFocusListener()</code> , <code>addKeyListener()</code> , <code>addMouseListener()</code> , and <code>addMouseMotionListener()</code> |
| JButton, JCheckBox, JComboBox, and JRadioButton             | <code>addItemListener()</code>                                                                                                                |
| All JWindow and JFrame components                           | <code>addWindowListener()</code>                                                                                                              |
| JSlider and JCheckBox                                       | <code>addChangeListener()</code>                                                                                                              |

**Note**

Programmers sometimes use the shorthand `addXXXListener()` or `add<name>Listener()` to refer to all the add listener methods as a group.

**Note**

Any event source can have multiple listeners registered on it. Conversely, a single listener can be registered with multiple event sources. In other words, a single instance of `JCheckBox` might generate `ItemEvents` and `FocusEvents`, and a single instance of the `JFrame` class might respond to `ActionEvents` generated by a `JButton` and `ItemEvents` generated by a `JCheckBox`.

The class of the object that responds to an event must contain an event-handling method that accepts the event object created by the user's action. You cannot choose your own name for event handlers—specific method identifiers react to specific event types. **Table 14-4** lists just some of the methods that react to events.

**Table 14-4** Selected methods that respond to events

| LISTENER           | METHOD                                                                      |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ActionListener     | <code>actionPerformed(ActionEvent)</code>                                   |
| AdjustmentListener | <code>adjustmentValueChanged(AdjustmentEvent)</code>                        |
| FocusListener      | <code>focusGained(FocusEvent)</code> and <code>focusLost(FocusEvent)</code> |
| ItemListener       | <code>itemStateChanged(ItemEvent)</code>                                    |

**Note**

Each listener in Table 14-4 is associated with only one or two methods. Other listeners, such as `KeyListener` and `MouseListener`, are associated with multiple methods. You will learn how to use these more complicated listeners as you continue to study Java.

Until you become familiar with the event-handling model, it can seem quite confusing. For now, remember these tasks you must perform when you declare a class that handles an event:

- » You must import the `java.awt.event` package in the class that handles the event.
- » The class that handles an event must either implement a listener interface or extend a class that implements a listener interface.
- » You must register each instance of the event-handling class as a listener for one or more components using an `addXXXListener()` method.
- » You must write an event handler method with an appropriate identifier (as shown in Table 14-4) that accepts the generated event and reacts to it.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Understanding Swing Event Listeners

1. A class can implement as many event listeners as it needs.
2. Any object can be notified about a mouse click or keyboard press as long as it implements the appropriate interface and is registered as an event listener on the appropriate event source.
3. Every event-handling method accepts a parameter that represents the listener for the event.

The false statement is #3. Every event-handling method accepts a parameter that represents the generated event.

## 14.9 Using the JCheckBox, ButtonGroup, and JComboBox Classes

Besides JButton and JTextField, several other Java components allow a user to make selections in a GUI environment. These include JCheckboxes, ButtonGroups, and JComboBoxes.

### The JCheckBox Class

A **check box** consists of a label positioned beside a square; you can click the square to display or remove a check mark. Usually, you use a check box to allow the user to turn an option on or off. The Java Swing class that creates a check box is JCheckBox. For example, **Figure 14-32** shows the code for an application that uses four JCheckBox objects, and **Figure 14-33** shows the execution.

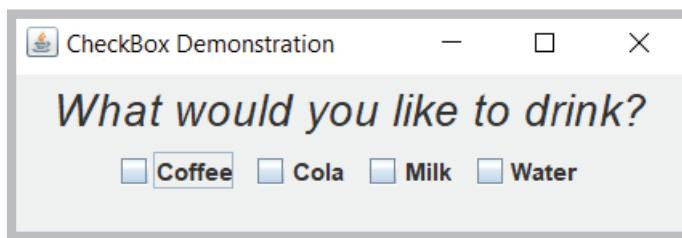
**Figure 14-32** The CheckBoxDemonstration class

```
import java.awt.*;
import javax.swing.*;
import java.awt.event.*;
public class CheckBoxDemonstration
 extends JFrame implements ItemListener
{
 FlowLayout flow = new FlowLayout();
 JLabel label = new JLabel("What would you like to drink?");
 JCheckBox coffee = new JCheckBox("Coffee", false);
 JCheckBox cola = new JCheckBox("Cola", false);
 JCheckBox milk = new JCheckBox ("Milk", false);
 JCheckBox water = new JCheckBox("Water", false);
 public CheckBoxDemonstration()
 {
 super("CheckBox Demonstration");
 setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
 setLayout(new FlowLayout());
 label.setFont(new Font("Arial", Font.ITALIC, 22));
 coffee.addItemListener(this);
 cola.addItemListener(this);
 milk.addItemListener(this);
 water.addItemListener(this);
 add(label);
 add(coffee);
 add(cola);
 add(milk);
 add(water);
 }
 @Override
 public void itemStateChanged(ItemEvent check)
 {
 // Actions based on choice go here
 }
 public static void main(String[] arguments)
 {
 final int FRAME_WIDTH = 350;
 final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 120;
 CheckBoxDemonstration frame =
 new CheckBoxDemonstration();
 frame.setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
 frame.setVisible(true);
 }
}
```

### Note

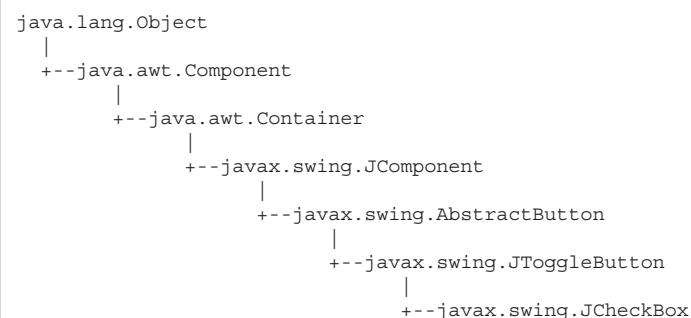
In the application in Figure 14-32, the CheckBoxDemonstration class and the main() method that instantiates an instance of it are part of the same class. You also could store the two parts in separate classes, as in previous examples.

**Figure 14-33** Execution of the CheckBoxDemonstration class



The inheritance hierarchy of the `JCheckBox` class is shown in **Figure 14-34**; frequently used `JCheckBox` methods appear in **Table 14-5**.

**Figure 14-34** The inheritance hierarchy of the `JCheckBox` class



**Table 14-5** Frequently used `JCheckBox` methods

| METHOD                                 | PURPOSE                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>void setText (String)</code>     | Sets the text for the <code>JCheckBox</code>                                                                        |
| <code>String getText ()</code>         | Returns the <code>JCheckBox</code> text                                                                             |
| <code>void setSelected(boolean)</code> | Sets the state of the <code>JCheckBox</code> to <code>true</code> for selected or <code>false</code> for unselected |
| <code>boolean isSelected ()</code>     | Gets the current state (checked or unchecked) of the <code>JCheckBox</code>                                         |

Several constructors can be used with `JCheckboxes`. When you construct a `JCheckBox`, you can choose whether to assign it a label; you also can decide whether the `JCheckBox` appears selected (`JCheckboxes` start unselected by default). The following statements create four `JCheckBox` objects—one with no label and unselected, two with labels and unselected, and one with a label and selected.

```

JCheckBox box1 = new JCheckBox();
// No label, unselected
JCheckBox box2 = new JCheckBox("Check here");
// Label, unselected
JCheckBox box3 = new JCheckBox("Check here", false);
// Label, unselected
JCheckBox box4 = new JCheckBox("Check here", true);
// Label, selected

```

If you do not initialize a `JCheckBox` with a label and you want to assign one later, or if you want to change an existing label, you can use the `setText ()` method, as in the following example:

```
box1.setText ("Check this box now");
```

You can set the state of a JCheckBox with the `setSelected()` method; for example, you can use the following statement to ensure that `box1` is unchecked:

```
box1.setSelected(false);
```

The `isSelected()` method is most useful in Boolean expressions, as in the following example, which adds one to a `voteCount` variable if `box2` is currently checked.

```
if(box2.isSelected())
 ++voteCount;
```

When the status of a JCheckBox changes from unchecked to checked (or from checked to unchecked), an ItemEvent is generated, and the `itemStateChanged()` method executes. You can use the `getItem()` method to determine which object generated the event and the `getStateChange()` method to determine whether the event was a selection or a deselection. The `getStateChange()` method returns an integer that is equal to one of two class variables—`ItemEvent.SELECTED` or `ItemEvent.DESELECTED`. For example, in **Figure 14-35** the `itemStateChanged()` method calls the `getItem()` method, which returns the object named `source`. Then, the value of `source` is tested in an `if` statement to determine if it is equivalent to a JCheckBox object named `checkBox`. If the two references are to the same object, the code determines whether the `checkBox` was selected or deselected, and in each case appropriate actions are taken.

**Figure 14-35** Typical `itemStateChanged()` method

```
@Override
public void itemStateChanged(ItemEvent e)
{
 Object source = e.getItem();
 if(source == checkBox)
 {
 int select = e.getStateChange();
 if(select == ItemEvent.SELECTED)
 // statements that execute when the box is checked
 else
 // statements that execute when the box is unchecked
 }
 else
 {
 // statements that execute when the source of the event is
 // some component other than the checkBox object
 }
}
```

## The ButtonGroup Class

Sometimes, you want options to be mutually exclusive—that is, you want the user to be able to select only one of several choices. When you create a **button group** using the `ButtonGroup` class, you can group several components, such as JCheckboxes, so a user can select only one at a time. When you group JCheckBox objects, all of the other JCheckboxes are automatically turned off when the user selects any one check box.

The inheritance hierarchy for the `ButtonGroup` class is shown in **Figure 14-36**. You can see that `ButtonGroup` descends directly from the `Object` class. Even though it does not begin with a *J*, the `ButtonGroup` class is part of the `javax.swing` package.

**Figure 14-36** The inheritance hierarchy for the `ButtonGroup` class

```
java.lang.Object
|
---javax.swing.ButtonGroup
```

**Note**

A group of `JCheckBoxes` in which a user can select only one at a time also acts like a set of radio buttons (for example, those used to select preset radio stations on an automobile radio), which you can create using the `JRadioButton` class. The `JRadioButton` class is very similar to the `JCheckBox` class, and you might prefer to use it when you have a list of mutually exclusive user options. It makes sense to use `ButtonGroups` with items that can be selected (that is, those that use an `isSelected()` method). You can find more information about the `JRadioButton` class by searching online.

To create a `ButtonGroup` in a `JFrame` and then add a `JCheckBox`, you must perform four steps:

- › Create a `ButtonGroup`, such as `ButtonGroup aGroup = new ButtonGroup();`.
- › Create a `JCheckBox`, such as `JCheckBox aBox = new JCheckBox();`.
- › Add `aBox` to `aGroup` with `aGroup.add(aBox);`.
- › Add `aBox` to the `JFrame` with `add(aBox);` or `this.add(aBox);`.

You can create a `ButtonGroup` and then create the individual `JCheckBox` objects, or you can create the `JCheckBoxes` and then create the `ButtonGroup`. If you create a `ButtonGroup` but forget to add any `JCheckBox` objects to it, then the `JCheckBoxes` act as individual, nonexclusive check boxes.

A user can set one of the `JCheckBoxes` within a group to “on” by clicking it, or the programmer can select a `JCheckBox` within a `ButtonGroup` with a statement such as the following:

```
aGroup.setSelected(aBox);
```

Only one `JCheckBox` can be selected within a group. If you assign the `selected` state to a `JCheckBox` within a group, any previous assignment is negated.

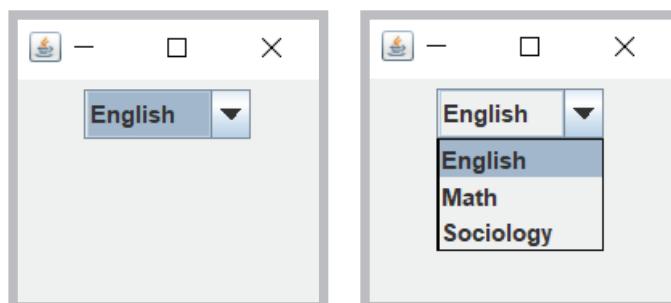
You can determine which, if any, of the `JCheckBoxes` in a `ButtonGroup` is selected using the `isSelected()` method.

After a `JCheckBox` in a `ButtonGroup` has been selected, one in the group will always be selected. In other words, you cannot “clear the slate” for all the items that are members of a `ButtonGroup`. A trick that you can use to cause all the `JCheckBoxes` in a `ButtonGroup` to initially appear unselected is to add one `JCheckBox` that is not visible (using the `setVisible()` method). Then, you can use the `setSelected()` method to select the invisible `JCheckBox`, and all the others appear to be deselected.

## The JComboBox Class

A **combo box** is a component that combines a button or an editable field and a drop-down list. The Swing class `JComboBox` creates a combo box. When a `JComboBox` appears on the screen, the default option is displayed in a field at the top of the box, and the list is not displayed. When the user clicks the button on the `JComboBox`, a list drops down; if the user selects an item from this list, it replaces the box’s displayed item. If the field at the top of the combo box is editable, the user also can type in it. The biggest advantage of using a `JComboBox` over displaying a series of choices with check boxes or buttons is that a combo box doesn’t take up much room in a frame until its list is expanded. **Figure 14-37** shows a `JComboBox` as it looks when first displayed and after a user clicks it.

**Figure 14-37** A `JComboBox` before and after the user clicks it



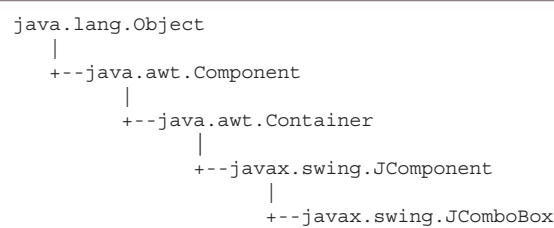
**Note**

The code that produces the JComboBox in Figure 14-37 is contained in the file named *ComboBoxDemonstration.java* in your downloadable student data files.

Users often expect to view JComboBox options in alphabetical order. If it makes sense for your application, consider displaying your options this way. Other reasonable approaches are to place choices in logical order, such as *small*, *medium*, and *large*, or to position the most frequently selected options first.

The inheritance hierarchy of the JComboBox class is shown in **Figure 14-38**.

**Figure 14-38** The inheritance hierarchy of the JComboBox class



You can build a JComboBox by using a constructor with no arguments and then adding items (for example, Strings) to the list with the addItem() method. The following statements create a JComboBox named *majorChoice* that contains three options from which a user can choose:

```

JComboBox<String> majorChoice = new JComboBox<String>();
majorChoice.addItem("English");
majorChoice.addItem("Math");
majorChoice.addItem("Sociology");

```

In the declaration of the JComboBox, notice the use of String following the constructor call. You have learned that requiring a data type with JComboBox means that the class uses *generics*. By default, a JComboBox expects items that are added to be Object types. Adding the angle brackets and String notifies the compiler of the expected data types in the JComboBox and allows the compiler to check for errors if invalid items are added. If you do not insert a data type for a JComboBox, the program compiles, but a warning message is issued with each addItem() method call.

As an alternative, you can construct a JComboBox using an array of Objects as the constructor argument; the Objects in the array become the listed items within the JComboBox. For example, the following code creates the same *majorChoice* JComboBox as the preceding code but uses an array of Strings as the argument to the JComboBox constructor:

```

String[] majorArray = {"English", "Math", "Sociology"};
JComboBox majorChoice = new JComboBox(majorArray);

```

**Table 14-6** lists some methods you can use with a JComboBox object. For example, you can use the setSelectedItem() or setSelectedIndex() method to choose one of the items in a JComboBox to be the initially selected item. You also can use the getSelectedItem() or getSelectedIndex() method to discover which item is currently selected.

You can treat the list of items in a JComboBox object as an array; the first item is at position 0, the second is at position 1, and so on. It is convenient to use the getSelectedIndex() method to determine the list position of the currently selected item; then you can use the index to access corresponding information stored in a parallel array. For example, if a JComboBox named *historyChoice* has been filled with a list of historical events, such as “Declaration of Independence,” “Pearl Harbor,” and “Man walks on moon,” you can code the following to retrieve the user’s choice:

```

int positionOfSelection = historyChoice.getSelectedIndex();

```

**Table 14-6** Some JComboBox class methods

| METHOD                        | PURPOSE                                                                            |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| void addItem(Object)          | Adds an item to the list                                                           |
| void removeItem(Object)       | Removes an item from the list                                                      |
| void removeAllItems()         | Removes all items from the list                                                    |
| Object getItemAt(int)         | Returns the list item at the index position specified by the integer argument      |
| int getItemCount()            | Returns the number of items in the list                                            |
| int getMaximumRowCount()      | Returns the maximum number of items the combo box can display without a scroll bar |
| int getSelectedIndex()        | Returns the position of the currently selected item                                |
| Object getSelectedItem()      | Returns the currently selected item                                                |
| Object[] getSelectedObjects() | Returns an array containing selected Objects                                       |
| void setEditable(boolean)     | Sets the field to be editable or not editable                                      |
| void setMaximumRowCount(int)  | Sets the number of rows in the combo box that can be displayed at one time         |
| void setSelectedIndex(int)    | Sets the index at the position indicated by the argument                           |
| void setSelectedItem(Object)  | Sets the selected item in the combo box display area to be the Object argument     |

The variable `positionOfSelection` now holds the position of the selected item, and you can use the variable to access an array of dates so you can display the date that corresponds to the selected historical event. For example, if you declare the following, then `dates [positionOfSelection]` holds the year for the selected historical event:

```
int[] dates = {1776, 1941, 1969};
```

### Note

A JComboBox can hold any reference type. In other words, instead of using parallel arrays to store String historical events and integer dates, you could design a `HistoricalEvent` class that encapsulates Strings for the event and ints for the date and use objects of that class in a JComboBox.

In addition to JComboBoxes for which users click items presented in a list, you can create JComboBoxes into which users type text. To do this, you use the `setEditable()` method. A drawback to using an editable JComboBox is that the text a user types must exactly match an item in the list box. If the user misspells the selection or uses the wrong case, a negative value is returned from the `getSelectedIndex()` method. You can use an `if` statement to test the value returned or take action such as forcing a default option or issuing an appropriate error message.

## Two Truths & a Lie | Using the JCheckBox, ButtonGroup, and JComboBox Classes

1. A JCheckBox consists of a label positioned beside a square; you can click the square to display or remove a check mark.
2. When you create a ButtonGroup, you can group several components, such as JCheckboxes, so a user can select multiple options simultaneously.
3. When a user clicks a JComboBox, a list of alternative items drops down; if the user selects one, it replaces the box's displayed item.

The false statement is #2. When you create a ButtonGroup, you can group several components, such as JCheckboxes, so a user can select only one at a time.

## You Do It | Including JCheckboxes in an Application

Next, you create an interactive program for a resort. The base price for a room is \$200, and a guest can choose from several options. Reserving a room for a weekend night adds \$100 to the price, including breakfast adds \$20, and including a round of golf adds \$75. A guest can select none, some, or all of these premium additions. Each time the user changes the option package, the price is recalculated.

1. Open a new file, and then type the following first few lines of a Swing application that demonstrates the use of a JCheckBox. Note that the JResortCalculator class implements the ItemListener interface:

```
import javax.swing.*;
import java.awt.*;
import java.awt.event.*;
public class JResortCalculator extends
 JFrame implements ItemListener
{
```

2. Declare the named constants that hold the base price for a resort room and the premium amounts for a weekend stay, including breakfast and a round of golf. Also include a variable that holds the total price for the stay, and initialize it to the value of the base price. Later, depending on the user's selections, premium fees might be added to totalPrice, making it more than BASE\_PRICE.

```
final int BASE_PRICE = 200;
final int WEEKEND_PREMIUM = 100;
final int BREAKFAST_PREMIUM = 20;
final int GOLF_PREMIUM = 75;
int totalPrice = BASE_PRICE;
```

3. Declare three JCheckBox objects. Each is labeled with a String that contains a description of the option and the cost of the option. Each JCheckBox starts unchecked or deselected.

```
JCheckBox weekendBox = new JCheckBox
 ("Weekend premium $" + WEEKEND_PREMIUM, false);
JCheckBox breakfastBox = new
 JCheckBox("Breakfast $" + BREAKFAST_PREMIUM, false);
JCheckBox golfBox = new JCheckBox
 ("Golf $" + GOLF_PREMIUM, false);
```

4. Include JLabels to hold user instructions and information and a JTextField in which to display the total price:

```
JLabel resortLabel = new JLabel("Resort Price Calculator");
JLabel priceLabel = new JLabel("The price for your stay is");
JTextField totPrice = new JTextField(4);
JLabel optionExplainLabel = new JLabel
 ("Base price for a room is $" + BASE_PRICE + ".");
JLabel optionExplainLabel2 = new JLabel
 ("Check the options you want.");
```

5. Begin the JResortCalculator class constructor. Include instructions to set the title by passing it to the JFrame parent class constructor, instructions to set the default close operation, and instructions to set the layout manager. Then add all the necessary components to the JFrame.

```
public JResortCalculator()
{
 super("Resort Price Estimator");
 setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
 setLayout(new FlowLayout());
```

```

 add(resortLabel);
 add(optionExplainLabel);
 add(optionExplainLabel2);
 add(weekendBox);
 add(breakfastBox);
 add(golfBox);
 add(priceLabel);
 add(totPrice);
 }
}

```

6. Continue the constructor by setting the text of the totPrice JTextField to display a dollar sign and the totalPrice value. Register the class as a listener for events generated by each of the three JCheckboxes. Finally, add a closing curly brace for the constructor.

```

 totPrice.setText("$" + totalPrice);
 weekendBox.addItemListener(this);
 breakfastBox.addItemListener(this);
 golfBox.addItemListener(this);
}
}

```

7. Begin the itemStateChanged() method that executes when the user selects or deselects a JCheckBox. Use the appropriate methods to determine which JCheckBox is the source of the current ItemEvent and whether the event was generated by selecting a JCheckBox or by deselecting one.

```

@Override
public void itemStateChanged(ItemEvent event)
{
 Object source = event.getSource();
 int select = event.getStateChange();
}
}

```

8. Write a nested if statement that tests whether the source is equivalent to the weekendBox, breakfastBox, or, by default, the golfBox. In each case, depending on whether the item was selected or deselected, add or subtract the corresponding premium fee from the totalPrice. Display the total price in the JTextField, and add a closing curly brace for the method.

```

if(source == weekendBox)
 if(select == ItemEvent.SELECTED)
 totalPrice += WEEKEND_PREMIUM;
 else
 totalPrice -= WEEKEND_PREMIUM;
else if(source == breakfastBox)
{
 if(select == ItemEvent.SELECTED)
 totalPrice += BREAKFAST_PREMIUM;
 else
 totalPrice -= BREAKFAST_PREMIUM;
}
else // if(source == golfBox) by default
 if(select == ItemEvent.SELECTED)
 totalPrice += GOLF_PREMIUM;
 else
 totalPrice -= GOLF_PREMIUM;
 totPrice.setText("$" + totalPrice);
}
}

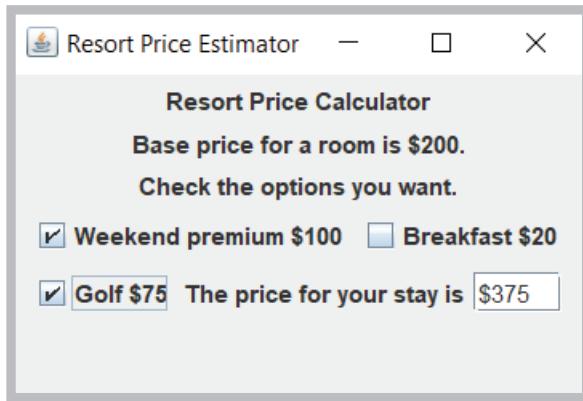
```

9. Add a `main()` method that creates an instance of the `JFrame` and sets its size and visibility. Then add a closing curly brace for the class.

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
 JResortCalculator aFrame = new JResortCalculator();
 final int WIDTH = 300;
 final int HEIGHT = 200;
 aFrame.setSize(WIDTH, HEIGHT);
 aFrame.setVisible(true);
}
```

10. Save the file as `JResortCalculator.java`. Compile and execute the application. The base price is set initially to \$200. Select the **Weekend premium** `JCheckBox`, and note the change in the total price of the event. Experiment with selecting and deselecting options to ensure that the price changes correctly. For example, **Figure 14-39** shows the application with the weekend and golf options selected, adding a total of \$175 to the \$200 base price. After testing all the option combinations, close the application.

**Figure 14-39** Typical execution of the `JResortCalculator` application



## Don't Do It

- › Don't forget the `x` in `javax` when you import Swing components into an application.
- › Don't forget to use a `JFrame`'s `setVisible()` method if you want the `JFrame` to be visible.
- › Don't forget to use `setLayout()` when you add multiple components to a `JFrame`.
- › Don't forget to call `validate()` and `repaint()` after you add or remove a component from a container that has been made visible.
- › Don't forget that the method `itemStateChanged()` that executes when an `ItemEvent` is generated in response to a check box action ends with a `d`, but the `getStateChange()` method that indicates whether a check box was selected or deselected does not.
- › Don't forget that creating a `ButtonGroup` does not cause components to be grouped; each component that should be in the group must be added explicitly.
- › Don't forget that the `ButtonGroup` class does not begin with a `J`.



## Summary

- › Swing components are GUI elements such as dialog boxes and buttons. Each Swing component is a descendant of a `JComponent`, which in turn inherits from the `java.awt.Container` class. Swing components usually are placed in a container; often, a container takes the form of a window that you can drag, resize, minimize, restore, and close.
- › A `JFrame` holds and displays other objects. Useful methods include `setSize()`, `setTitle()`, `setVisible()`, `setBounds()`, and `setDefaultCloseOperation()`. `JFrames` include a title bar at the top containing text information, and Minimize, Maximize or Restore, and Close buttons in the frame's upper-right corner. When a user closes a `JFrame` by clicking the Close button in the upper-right corner, the default behavior is for the `JFrame` to be hidden and for the application to keep running.
- › `JLabel` is a built-in Java Swing class that holds text. The `setFont()` method changes the font typeface, style, and point size.
- › A layout manager is a class that controls component positioning in a container. The normal (default) behavior of a `JFrame` is to use a layout format named `BorderLayout`. With `FlowLayout`, components are placed in rows; when any row is filled, additional components automatically spill into the next row.
- › The advantage of creating a child class of `JFrame` is that you can set the `JFrame`'s properties within your object's constructor; then, when you create your `JFrame` child object, it is automatically endowed with the features you have specified, such as title, size, and default close operation.
- › A `JTextField` is a component into which a user can type a single line of text data. A `JButton` is a component the user can click to make a selection.
- › Within an event-driven program, a component on which an event is generated is the source of the event, and an object that is interested in an event is a listener. You prepare your class to accept button-press events by importing the `java.awt.event` package into your program and adding the phrase `implements ActionListener` to the class header. You register your class as a listener with the `addActionListener()` method, and then you implement the `actionPerformed()` method to contain the actions that should occur in response to the event.
- › A class can implement as many event listeners as it needs. Examples of event listeners are `ActionListener`, `ItemListener`, `KeyListener`, and `MouseListener`. Any object can be notified about an event as long as it implements the appropriate interface and is registered as an event listener on the appropriate event source. Specific methods react to specific event types.
- › A `JCheckBox` consists of a label positioned beside a checkable square and frequently is used to allow the user to turn an option on or off. A `ButtonGroup` groups components so a user can select only one at a time. A `JComboBox` is a component that combines a display area showing a default option and a drop-down list box containing additional options.



## Key Terms

|                                       |                   |                             |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>Abstract Windows Toolkit (AWT)</b> | <b>combo box</b>  | <b>event-driven program</b> |
| <b>border layout manager</b>          | <b>container</b>  | <b>event handler</b>        |
| <b>button</b>                         | <b>deprecated</b> | <b>flow layout manager</b>  |
| <b>button group</b>                   | <b>editable</b>   | <b>font</b>                 |
| <b>check box</b>                      | <b>event</b>      | <b>frame</b>                |

|                                      |                                  |                           |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>GUI components</b>                | <b>lightweight components</b>    | <b>source of an event</b> |
| <b>heavyweight components</b>        | <b>listener</b>                  | <b>Swing</b>              |
| <b>Java Foundation Classes (JFC)</b> | <b>look and feel (L &amp; F)</b> | <b>text field</b>         |
| <b>label</b>                         | <b>pixels</b>                    | <b>window</b>             |
| <b>layout manager</b>                | <b>register</b>                  | <b>window decorations</b> |

## Review Questions

1. A `JFrame` is a descendant of each of the following classes except the \_\_\_\_\_ class.
  - a. `Component`
  - b. `Container`
  - c. `Jar`
  - d. `Window`
  
2. Unlike a `Window`, a `JFrame` \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. has a title bar and border
  - b. can be made visible
  - c. can have descendants
  - d. can hold other objects
  
3. The statement `JFrame myFrame = new JFrame();` creates a `JFrame` that is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. invisible and has a title
  - b. invisible and has no title
  - c. visible and has a title
  - d. visible and has no title
  
4. Which of the following does *not* set a `JFrame` named `aFrame` to be 300 pixels wide by 200 pixels tall?
  - a. `JFrame aFrame = new JFrame(300, 200);`
  - b. `aFrame.setSize(300, 200);`
  - c. `aFrame.setBounds(300, 200);`
  - d. `JFrame(aFrame(300, 200));`
  
5. When a user closes a `JFrame`, the default behavior is for \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. the `JFrame` to close and the application to keep running
  - b. the `JFrame` to be hidden and the application to keep running
  - c. the `JFrame` to close and the application to exit
  - d. nothing to happen
  
6. An advantage of extending the `JFrame` class is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. you can set the child class properties within the class constructor
  - b. there is no other way to cause an application to close when the user clicks a `JFrame`'s Close button
  - c. there is no other way to make a `JFrame` visible
  - d. there is no other way to set a `JFrame`'s size
  
7. Suppose that you create an application in which you instantiate a `JFrame` named `frame1` and a `JLabel` named `label1`. Which of the following statements within the application adds `label1` to `frame1`?
  - a. `frame1.add(label1);`
  - b. `label1.add(frame1);`
  - c. `this.add(label1);`
  - d. `frame1(label1);`
  
8. The arguments required by the `Font` constructor include all of the following *except* \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. typeface
  - b. mode
  - c. style
  - d. point size

9. A class that controls component positioning in a JFrame is a \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. container  
 b. design supervisor  
 c. formatter  
 d. layout manager
10. Which of the following is *not* true of a JTextField?  
 a. A user can type text data into it.  
 b. Its data can be set in the program instead of by the user.  
 c. A program can set its attributes so that a user cannot type in it.  
 d. It is a type of Container.
11. Which of the following can be specified by using a parameter in one or more versions of the JTextField constructor?  
 a. the initial text in the field  
 b. requiring that the value entered be nonnumeric  
 c. requiring that the entered value be numeric  
 d. making the text uneditable
12. Within an event-driven program, a component on which an event is generated is the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. performer  
 b. listener  
 c. source  
 d. handler
13. A class that will respond to button-press events must use which phrase in its header?  
 a. import java.event  
 b. extends Action  
 c. extends JFrame  
 d. implements ActionListener
14. A JFrame contains a JButton named button1 that should execute an actionPerformed() method when clicked. Which statement is needed in the JFrame class?  
 a. addActionListener(this);  
 b. addActionListener(button1);  
 c. button1.addActionListener(this);  
 d. this.addActionListener(button1);
15. When you use the getSource() method with an ActionEvent object, the result is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. Object  
 b. ActionEvent  
 c. Component  
 d. TextField
16. A class can implement \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. one listener  
 b. two listeners  
 c. as many listeners as it needs  
 d. any number of listeners as long as they are not conflicting listeners
17. When you write a method that reacts to JCheckBox changes, you name the method \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. itemStateChanged()  
 b. actionPerformed()  
 c. checkBoxChanged()  
 d. any legal identifier you choose
18. If a class contains two components that might each generate a specific event type, you can determine which component caused the event by using the \_\_\_\_\_ method.  
 a. addActionListener()  
 b. getSource()  
 c. whichOne()  
 d. identifyOrigin()
19. To group several components such as JCheckboxes so that a user can select only one at a time, you create a \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. CheckBoxGroup  
 b. JCheckBoxGroup  
 c. ButtonGroup  
 d. JButtonGroup

20. Suppose that you have declared a `ButtonGroup` named `twoOptions` and added two `JCheckBoxes` named `box1` and `box2` to it. Which box is selected after the following statements execute?

```
twoOptions.setSelected(box1);
twoOptions.setSelected(box2);
```

- a. box1
- b. box2
- c. both box1 and box2
- d. neither box1 nor box2

## Programming Exercises

1. a. Write an application that displays a `JFrame` containing the opening sentence or two from your favorite book. Save the file as **JBookQuote.java**.  
b. Add a button to the frame in the `JBookQuote` program. When the user clicks the button, display the title of the book that contains the quote. Save the file as **JBookQuote2.java**.
2. a. Write an application that instantiates a `JFrame` that contains a `JButton`. Disable the `JButton` after the user clicks it. Save the file as **JFrameDisableButton.java**.  
b. Modify the `JFrameDisableButton` program so that the `JButton` is not disabled until the user has clicked at least eight times. At that point, display a `JLabel` that indicates “That’s enough!” Save the file as **JFrameDisableButton2.java**.
3. Create an application with a `JFrame` and at least six labels that contain facts about your favorite topic—for example, the French Revolution or astronomy. Every time the user clicks a `JButton`, remove one of the labels and add a different one. Save the file as **JFacts.java**.
4. Write an application for Lambert’s Vacation Rentals. Use separate `ButtonGroups` to allow a client to select one of three locations, the number of bedrooms, and whether meals are included in the rental. Assume that the locations are parkside for \$600 per week, poolside for \$750 per week, or lakeside for \$825 per week. Assume that the rentals have one, two, or three bedrooms and that each number of bedrooms greater than one adds \$75 to the base price. Assume that if meals are added, the price is \$200 more per rental. Save the file as **JVacationRental.java**.
  - a. Write an application that allows a user to select one of at least five television shows to watch on demand. When the user selects a show, display a brief synopsis. Save the file as **JTVDownload.java**.
  - b. Change the `JTVDownload` application to include an editable combo box. Allow the user to type the name of a television show and display an appropriate error message if the desired show is not available. Save the file as **JTVDownload2.java**.
6. Design an application for the Sublime Sandwich Shop. The user makes sandwich order choices from list boxes, and the application displays the price. The user can choose from three main sandwich ingredients of your choice (for example, *chicken*) at three different prices. The user also can choose from three different bread types (for example, *rye*). Save the file as **JSandwich.java**.
7. Write an application that allows a user to select a country from a list box that contains at least seven options. After the user makes a selection, display the country’s capital city. Save the file as **JCapitals.java**.
8. Write an application that allows the user to choose insurance options in `JCheckBoxes`. Use a `ButtonGroup` to allow the user to select only one of two insurance types—HMO (health maintenance organization) or PPO (preferred provider organization). Use regular (single) `JCheckBoxes` for dental insurance and vision insurance options; the user can select one option, both options, or neither option. As the user selects each option, display its name and price in a text field; the HMO costs \$200 per month, the PPO costs \$600 per month, the dental coverage adds \$75 per month, and the vision care adds \$20 per month. When a user deselects an item, make the text field blank. Save the file as **JInsurance.java**.

9. a. Search the Internet for information about how to use a JTextArea, its constructors, and its `setText()` and `append()` methods. Write an application that allows the user to select options for a dormitory room. Use JCheckboxes for options such as private room, Internet connection, cable TV connection, microwave, refrigerator, and so on. When the application starts, use a text area to display a message listing the options that are not yet selected. As the user selects and deselects options, add appropriate messages to the text area so it accumulates a running list that reflects the user's choices. Save the file as **JDorm.java**.  
 b. Modify the JDorm application so that instead of a running list of the user's choices, the application displays only the current choices. Save the file as **JDorm2.java**.
10. Create an application for Paula's Portraits, a photography studio. The application allows users to compute the price of a photography session. Paula's base price is \$40 for an in-studio photo session with one person. The in-studio fee is \$75 for a session with two or more subjects, and \$95 for a session with a pet. A \$90 fee is added to take photos on location instead of in the studio. Include a set of mutually exclusive check boxes to select the portrait subject and another set for the session location. Include labels as appropriate to explain the application's functionality. Save the file as **JPhotoFrame.java**.

## Debugging Exercises

1. Each of the following files in the Chapter14 folder of your downloadable student files has syntax and/or logic errors. In each case, determine the problem and fix the program. After you correct the errors, save each file using the same filename preceded with *Fix*. For example, *DebugFourteen1.java* will become **FixDebugFourteen1.java**.
  - a. *DebugFourteen1.java*
  - b. *DebugFourteen2.java*
  - c. *DebugFourteen3.java*
  - d. *DebugFourteen4.java*

## Game Zone

1. a. Create a quiz game that displays, in turn, five questions about any topic of your choice. All five questions should have the same three possible multiple-choice answers. For example, you might ask trivia questions about U.S. states for which the correct response is either *California*, *Florida*, or *New York*. After each question is displayed, allow the user to choose one, two, or all three answers by selecting JCheckboxes. In other words, a user who is sure of an answer will select just one box, but an uncertain user might select two or three boxes. When ready to submit the answer(s), the user clicks a button. If the answer is correct and just one box was selected, award 5 points. If the user is correct but has selected two boxes, award 2 points. If the user has selected all three boxes, award 1 point. If the user has selected fewer than three boxes but is incorrect, no points are awarded. A total of 25 points is possible. If the user has accumulated more than 21 points at the end of the quiz, display the message *Fantastic!* For a score of more than 15 points, display the message *Very good*, and if the user has accumulated fewer points, display *Just OK*. Save the file as **HedgeYourBet.java**.  
 b. Modify the HedgeYourBet game so that it stores the player's score from the last game in a file and displays the previous score at the start of each new game. (The first time you play the game, the previous score should be 0.) Save the game as **HedgeYourBetUsingFile.java**.
2. Create a lottery game that uses check boxes. For this game, generate six random numbers, each between 0 and 30 inclusive. Allow the user to choose six check boxes to play the game. (Do not allow the user to choose more than six boxes.) After the player has chosen six numbers, display the randomly selected numbers, the player's numbers, and the amount of money the user has won, as follows:

| MATCHING NUMBERS          | AWARD (\$) |
|---------------------------|------------|
| Zero, one, or two matches | 0          |
| Three matches             | 100        |
| Four matches              | 10,000     |
| Five matches              | 50,000     |
| Six matches               | 1,000,000  |

Save the file as **JLottery.java**.

3. a. Create a game called Last Man Standing in which the objective is to select the last remaining JCheckBox. The game contains 10 JCheckBoxes. The player can choose one, two, or three boxes, and then click a JButton to indicate the turn is complete. The computer then randomly selects one, two, or three JCheckBox objects. When the last JCheckBox is selected, display a message indicating the winner. Save the game as **LastManStanding.java**.
- b. In the current version of the Last Man Standing game, the computer might seem to make strategic mistakes because of its random selections. For example, when only two JCheckBox objects are left, the computer might randomly choose to check only one, allowing the player to check the last one and win. Modify the game to make it as smart as possible, using a random value for the number of the computer's selection only when there is no superior alternative. Save the improved game as **SmarterLastManStanding.java**.

## Case Problems

1. In previous chapters, you have created a number of programs for Yummy Catering. Now, create an interactive GUI program that allows the user to enter the number of guests for an event into a text field; if the value entered is not numeric, set the event price to 0. Also allow the user to choose one entree from a group of at least four choices, up to two side dishes from a group of at least four choices, and one dessert from a group of at least three choices. Display the cost of the event as \$35 per person; as the user continues to make selection changes, display a list of the current items chosen. If a user attempts to choose more than two side dishes, remove all the current side dish selections so that the user can start over. Save the program as **JYummyCatering.java**.
2. In previous chapters, you have created a number of programs for Sunshine Seashore Supplies. Now, create an interactive GUI program that allows the user to enter a rental time in hours into a text field; if the value entered is not numeric, set the rental price to 0. Also allow the user to choose one equipment type to rent from a group of seven choices. The rental fee is \$40 per hour for a personal watercraft or pontoon boat; \$20 per hour for a rowboat, canoe, or kayak; and \$7 per hour for a beach chair or umbrella. Let the user add an equipment lesson for an extra \$5. Display a message that indicates all the details for the rental, including the total price. Save the program as **JSunshineSeashore.java**.

# Working with the Java Platform

## Learning Objectives

When you complete this appendix, you will be able to:

- A.1 Describe the Java SE Development Kit
- A.2 Configure Windows to work with the JDK
- A.3 Compile and execute a Java program

### A.1 Learning about the Java SE Development Kit

Several versions of Java are available for free at the Java website, which you can find by searching for *Java website*. The official name of the most recent version is Java Platform, Standard Edition *X*, where *X* stands for a version number. Java is releasing new versions about twice a year, so you might be working with Java 16, 17, 18, 19, or an even later version. The new version numbers reflect Java's evolving level of maturity. As updates to existing versions emerge or entirely new versions containing advanced features are released, you can download them.

#### Note

The different names for Java configurations are somewhat confusing and frequently misused. If you download Java to use with this course, you want to acquire the Java Standard Edition (SE) Development Kit, also known as the **JDK**. Java also supports the *Java Enterprise Edition (EE)*, which includes all of the classes in the Java SE, plus a number of classes that are more useful to programs running on servers than on workstations. The Java EE Development Kit is known as **SDK**. The names of the development kits have changed frequently; originally, JDK meant *Java Development Kit*, but that interpretation was used with the earliest Java versions and is no longer used officially.

The Java *Micro Edition (ME)* is another Java platform, which is used for devices such as cell phones and other small consumer appliances.

## A.2 Configuring Windows to Use the JDK

To configure your Windows operating system with the JDK, you must add the Java bin directory to the command path of your operating system (OS). That way, your OS will know where to look for the Java commands that you use.

One way to update the OS path for Windows is to type two commands at the command prompt when you want to begin a session of working on Java programs. (These two commands are described later in this appendix.)

You do not need to be an operating system expert to issue operating system commands. Learning just a few commands allows you to create and run all the examples in this course.

### Finding the Command Prompt

To locate the command prompt on your Windows 10 computer, you can click in the *Search* box at the bottom left of your screen and start to type *Command Prompt*. When *Command Prompt* appears in the list, click it. Several alternate ways to access the command prompt are available; using a browser, search for *Launch command prompt*.

#### Note

In earlier versions of Windows, the console window was called the *MS-DOS (Microsoft Disk Operating System) prompt*, or more simply, the *DOS prompt*. Many people still use this term instead of *command prompt*.

### Command Prompt Anatomy

The Windows command prompt contains at least a disk drive name followed by a colon, a backslash, and a greater-than sign (for example, C:\>). You might also see folder or directory names within the command prompt just before the greater-than sign, as shown in the following examples:

C:\Users\YourUserName>

C:\Documents and Settings>

C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>

Each directory in the path is separated by a backslash.

#### Note

The hard drive on your computer is usually named C because A and B are reserved for removable media such as diskettes. Most computer manufacturers stopped installing diskette drives in their machines in the mid-2000s, and it is unusual to see a computer with diskette drives anymore, but the names A and B are still reserved for them.

### Changing Directories

You can back up one directory level by typing cd for “change directory,” followed by two periods:

cd..

For example, if your command prompt contains C:\Users\<your name> and you type cd.., the command prompt changes to C:\Users>. If you type cd.. again, the prompt changes to C:\>, indicating the root directory.

When you have multiple directories to back through, it is easier to use the following command:

cd\

This takes you immediately to the root directory instead of backing up one level at a time. At the command prompt, you can change the directory by typing `cd` followed by the name of the directory. For example, if you have a folder named *Java* and it contains a folder named *Chapter01*, you can change the command prompt to the *Chapter01* folder by backing up to the root directory and typing the following:

```
cd Java
cd Chapter01
```

After these commands, the command prompt reads *C:\Java\Chapter01>*. When you compile and execute your Java programs, you should start from the command prompt where the files are stored.

When your command prompt display is filled with commands, it can look confusing. If you want, you can type `cls` (for Clear Screen) to remove old commands.

## Setting the class and classpath Variables

When you start a Java session, you might need to set the `class` and `classpath` options. These settings tell the operating system where to find the Java compiler and your classes. If you or someone else has altered your system to set the `class` and `classpath` options automatically on startup, you do not need to type them. Otherwise, every time you want to compile and execute Java programs, you need to type statements similar to the following:

```
path = c:\program files\java\jdk-19\bin
set classpath=.
```

After you have typed the `class` and `classpath` statements, you can compile and run as many Java programs as you want without typing these commands again. You must type them again if you close the Command Prompt window or restart your computer. The first statement sets the path and allows the OS to recognize the `javac` command you use when compiling programs. Consider the following example:

```
path = c:\program files\java\jdk-19\bin
```

This example assumes that you are using JDK 19 and that it is stored in the *java* folder in the *program files* folder. These are the defaults when you download Java from the Java website; if you installed Java in a different location, you need to alter the command accordingly.

The command `set classpath=.` tells Java to find your compiled classes in the current directory when you execute your applications. There must be no space between `classpath` and the equal sign, nor between the equal sign and the period. After you set the path correctly, you should be able to use the `javac` command. If you attempt to compile a Java class and see an error message that `javac` is not a recognized command, either Java was not properly installed or the path command was incorrect. If classes compile successfully but do not execute, you might have entered the `classpath` command incorrectly.

## Changing a File's Name

When working through the examples in this course, you often will find it convenient to change the name of an existing file—for example, when you want to experiment with altering code without losing the original version, or if you find that when you previously saved a file, you mistyped a filename so that it did not match the class name within the *.java* file you created. You can take at least three approaches:

- Open the existing file using the appropriate software application (for example, Notepad), click *File* on the menu bar, and then click *Save As*. Select the folder you want, then type a new filename for the file. Now you have two versions—one with the old name and one with the new.
- Open the folder where the file is located and find the misnamed file. Select the file and then click the filename. (Do not double-click the filename unless you want to open the file.) You can then edit the filename by using a combination of the Backspace, Delete, and character keys. Press *Enter* when the filename is correct. Alternately, you can right-click the filename and choose *Rename* from the menu that appears.

- At the command prompt, use the `rename` command. You type `rename`, a space, the old filename, another space, and the new filename. For example, to change a file named *Xyz.java* to *Abc.java*, type the following at the command prompt for the directory containing the existing file:

```
rename Xyz.java Abc.java
```

## A.3 Compiling and Executing a Java Program

At the command prompt, change from the default drive prompt to the drive where your application is stored. Then change the directory (or folder) to the directory that holds your application.

To compile an application, you type the `javac` command to start the Java compiler, then type a space and the complete name of the *.java* file—for example, *First.java*. If the application doesn't compile successfully, the path might not be set correctly to the Java JDK bin directory where the *javac.exe* file is located. Also, you might have failed to use the same spelling as the Java filename.

When you compile a *.java* file correctly, the Java compiler creates a *.class* file that has the same filename as the *.java* file. Thus, a successful compilation of the *First.java* file creates a file named *First.class*.

To run a Java application, you use the `java` command and the class name without the *.class* extension. For example, after an application named *First.java* is compiled, producing *First.class*, you execute the program using the following command:

```
java First
```

After the program executes, control is returned to the command prompt. If a program does not end on its own, or you want to end it prematurely, you can press **Ctrl+C** to return to the command prompt.

After you compile a Java program, you can execute it as many times as you want without recompiling. If you change the source code, you must save and compile again before you can see the changed results in an executed application.

### Note

When you are testing a Java program, you often issue the commands to compile and execute it many times before you are satisfied with the results. If you press the Up Arrow key at the command line, the previous commands appear in reverse succession. When you find the command you want to repeat, just press Enter.

## Key Terms

JDK

SDK

# Data Representation

## Learning Objectives

When you complete this appendix, you will be able to:

- B.1** Work with numbering systems
- B.2** Describe how numeric values are represented
- B.3** Describe how character values are represented

### B.1 Understanding Numbering Systems

You can use devices such as computers, cell phones, microwave ovens, and automobiles without understanding how they work internally. Likewise, you can write many Java programs without understanding how the data items they use are represented internally. After you learn how data items are stored, however, you gain a deeper understanding about computer programming in general and Java in particular. You also can more easily troubleshoot some types of problems that arise in your programs.

The numbering system you know best is the **decimal numbering system**, which is based on 10 digits, 0 through 9. When you use the decimal system, no other symbols are available; if you want to express a value larger than 9, you must use multiple digits from the same pool of 10, placing them in columns. Decimal numbers are also called *base 10 numbers*.

When you use the decimal system, you analyze a multicolumn number by mentally assigning place values to each column. The value of the rightmost column is 1, the value of the next column to the left is 10, the next column's value is 100, and so on; you multiply the column value by 10 as you move to the left. There is no limit to the number of columns you can use; you simply add them to the left as you need to express higher values. For example, **Figure B-1** shows how the value 305 is represented in the decimal system. You simply multiply the digit in each column by the value of the column, and then add the values together.

**Figure B-1** Representing 305 in the decimal system

| 100s | 10s | 1s | Value is             |
|------|-----|----|----------------------|
| 3    | 0   | 5  | $3 \times 100 = 300$ |
|      |     |    | $0 \times 10 = 0$    |
|      |     |    | $5 \times 1 = 5$     |
|      |     |    | -----                |
|      |     |    | 305                  |

The **binary numbering system** works in the same way as the decimal numbering system, except that it uses only two digits, 0 and 1. When you use the binary system and you want to express a value greater than 1, you must use multiple columns because no single symbol represents any value other than 0 or 1. Instead of each new column to the left being 10 times greater than the previous column, each new binary column is only two times the value of the previous column. Binary numbers are called *base 2 numbers*.

For example, **Figure B-2** shows how the decimal number 9 is represented in the binary system. Notice that both the binary and decimal systems allow you to create numbers with 0 in one or more columns. As with the decimal system, the binary system has no limit to the number of columns—you can use as many as it takes to express a value. For example, **Figure B-3** shows that the decimal number 50 requires six binary system columns.

**Figure B-2** Representing decimal value 9 in the binary system

|    |    |    |    | Value is  |       |
|----|----|----|----|-----------|-------|
| 8s | 4s | 2s | 1s | 1 × 8 = 8 |       |
| 1  | 0  | 0  | 1  | 0 × 4 = 0 |       |
|    |    |    |    | 0 × 2 = 0 |       |
|    |    |    |    | 1 × 1 = 1 |       |
|    |    |    |    |           | ----- |
|    |    |    |    |           | 9     |

**Figure B-3** Representing decimal value 50 in the binary system

|     |     |    |    |    |    | Value is    |       |
|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|-------------|-------|
| 32s | 16s | 8s | 4s | 2s | 1s | 1 × 32 = 32 |       |
| 1   | 1   | 0  | 0  | 1  | 0  | 1 × 16 = 16 |       |
|     |     |    |    |    |    | 0 × 8 = 0   |       |
|     |     |    |    |    |    | 0 × 4 = 0   |       |
|     |     |    |    |    |    | 1 × 2 = 2   |       |
|     |     |    |    |    |    | 0 × 1 = 0   |       |
|     |     |    |    |    |    |             | ----- |
|     |     |    |    |    |    |             | 50    |

A computer stores every piece of data it uses as a set of 0s and 1s. Each 0 or 1 is known as a **bit**, which is short for *binary digit*. Every computer uses 0s and 1s because all its values are stored as electronic signals that are either on or off. This two-state system is most easily represented using just two digits.

## B.2 Representing Numeric Values

A floating-point number contains decimal positions. The term *floating point* comes from the fact that the decimal point can be at any location in the stored value, allowing a much larger range of possible values to be stored in the same amount of memory. For example, assume that a computer could store only four digits and that the decimal point had to fall after the first two. The positive values that could be stored would then range from 00.00 through 99.99. However, if the decimal point could fall anywhere, the values could range from .0000 through 9999. Computers use more than four digits to store each value, and they can store negative values as well, but the principle is the same.

Because of the binary nature of computers, representing floating-point numbers is imprecise. For example, suppose you want to represent the value 1/10 (0.10). You could try using each of the following techniques:

- › If you use two bits to store the value, only four combinations are available (00, 01, 10, and 11), so they can only represent 0/4, 1/4, 2/4 (or 1/2), and 3/4. None of these is exactly 1/10, but 0/4 is the closest.
- › Suppose you use three bits. This allows twice as many combinations, or eight, and the closest to 1/10 is 1/8. The approximation is closer than with two bits, but still not exact.
- › Suppose you use four bits, which allows 16 combinations. The closest value to 1/10 is 2/16. This value is no closer to 1/10 than you could achieve with three bits.
- › Suppose you use eight bits. Now, there are 256 bit combinations from 0/256 through 255/256. The value of 26/256, at 0.1015625, is closer than any of the other values so far, but it's still not exact.
- › No matter how many bits you add to the representation, doubling the number of combinations each time, you can never express 0.1 exactly.

Although you cannot store 0.1 exactly, you can still display it. For example, the following two lines of code display 0.1 as expected:

```
double oneTenth = 0.1;
System.out.println(oneTenth);
```

When Java displays a floating-point number, it always displays at least one digit after the decimal. After that, it uses only as many digits as necessary to distinguish the number from the nearest floating-point value it can represent.

However, when you use 0.1 in an arithmetic statement, the imprecision becomes evident. **Figure B-4** shows a simple program that declares two variables named `oneTenth` and `threeTenths`; the variables contain the values 0.1 and 0.3, respectively.

**Figure B-4** The `FloatingPointTest` class

```
import java.util.Scanner;
public class FloatingPointTest
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 double oneTenth = 0.1;
 double threeTenths = 0.3;
 System.out.println(oneTenth + oneTenth + oneTenth);
 System.out.println(oneTenth + oneTenth + oneTenth == threeTenths);
 }
}
```

**Figure B-5** shows the result of summing `oneTenth` three times and then comparing that sum to `threeTenths`. Because of floating-point imprecision, the first value is calculated to be slightly more than 0.3, so the comparison of `oneTenth + oneTenth + oneTenth` to `threeTenths` is false.

**Figure B-5** Output of the `FloatingPointTest` program

```
0.3000000000000004
false
```

For many purposes, you do not care about the small imprecisions generated by floating-point calculations, but sometimes they can make a difference. For example, several popular movies have used the idea that small amounts of extra money can be sliced off bank balances when compounding interest and then siphoned to a criminal's account. Many programmers recommend that you use the Java class `BigDecimal` when working with monetary or scientific values where precision is important. Additionally, be aware that when you test two floating-point values for equivalency, you might not get the expected results.

When precision is not an issue, but better-looking output is important, you can format the output to eliminate the small imprecisions that occur far to the right of the decimal point. Appendix C teaches you many techniques for formatting output to a desired number of decimal places.

## B.3 Representing Character Values

The characters used in Java are represented in Unicode, a 16-bit coding scheme for characters. For example, the letter A actually is stored in computer memory as a set of 16 zeros and ones: 0000 0000 0100 0001 (a space is inserted after each set of four digits for readability). Because 16-digit numbers are difficult to read, programmers often use a shorthand notation called the **hexadecimal numbering system**, or *base 16*. The hexadecimal system uses 16 values, 0 through 9 and A through F, to represent the decimal values 0 through 15. In hexadecimal shorthand, binary 0000 becomes 0, binary 0100 becomes 4, and binary 0001 becomes 1, so the letter A is represented in hexadecimal as 0041. You tell the compiler to treat the four-digit hexadecimal 0041 as a single character by preceding it with the \u escape sequence. Therefore, each of the following declarations stores the character A:

```
char letter = 'A';
char letter = '\u0041';
char letter = 65;
```

The options that use hexadecimal and decimal values are more difficult and confusing to use than the first method, so it is not recommended that you store letters of the alphabet using numeric values. However, you can produce some interesting output using the Unicode format. For example, the sequence '\u0007' produces a bell-like noise if you send it to output. Letters from foreign alphabets that use characters instead of letters (Greek, Hebrew, Chinese, and so on) and other special symbols (foreign currency symbols, mathematical symbols, geometric shapes, and so on) are available using Unicode, but not on a standard keyboard, so it may be important that you know how to use Unicode characters. For more information about Unicode, go to [www.unicode.org](http://www.unicode.org).

### Note

Two-digit, base 16 numbers can be converted to base 10 numbers by multiplying the left digit by 16 and adding the right digit. For example, hexadecimal 41 is 4 times 16 plus 1, or 65.

### Note

Binary numbers and hexadecimal numbers have a special relationship because four binary digits become one hexadecimal digit. For example, binary 0000 is hexadecimal 0, binary 1100 is hexadecimal C, and binary 1111 is hexadecimal F, the highest single-character hexadecimal value.

In the United States, the most widely used character set traditionally has been **ASCII** (American Standard Code for Information Interchange). The ASCII character set contains 128 characters. You can create any Unicode character by adding eight 0s to the beginning of its ASCII character equivalent. This means that the decimal value of any ASCII character is the same as that of the corresponding Unicode character. For example, B has the value 66 in both character sets. The decimal values are important because they allow you to show nonprintable characters, such as a carriage return, in decimal codes. Also, the numeric values of the coding schemes are used when a computer sorts numbers and strings. When you sort characters in ascending order, for example, numbers are sorted first (because their Unicode values begin with decimal code 48), followed by capital letters (starting with decimal 65) and then lowercase letters (starting with decimal 97).

Chapter 2 contains a list of Unicode values for some commonly used characters. For a complete list, search the Internet for *Unicode character code charts*. You will find Greek, Armenian, Hebrew, Tagalog, and Cherokee character sets, along with a host of others. Unicode also contains characters for mathematical symbols, geometric shapes, and other unusual characters. The ASCII character set is more limited than Unicode; it contains only letters and symbols used in the English language.

## Key Terms

**ASCII**

**binary numbering system**

**bit**

**decimal numbering system**

**hexadecimal numbering system**

# Formatting Output

## Learning Objectives

When you complete this appendix, you will be able to:

- C.1 Round numbers
- C.2 Use the `printf()` method
- C.3 Use the `DecimalFormat` class

### C.1 Rounding Numbers

Floating-point numbers are imprecise. For example, if you write a program that subtracts 2.00 from 2.20, the result is not 0.20—it is 0.2000000000000018. To eliminate odd-looking output and nonintuitive comparisons caused by imprecise calculations in floating-point numbers, you can take the approach shown in the class in **Figure C-1**:

**Figure C-1** The `RoundingDemo1` program

```
public class RoundingDemo1
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 double answer = 2.20 - 2.00;
 boolean isEqual;
 isEqual = answer == 0.20;
 System.out.println("Before conversion");
 System.out.println("answer is " + answer);
 System.out.println("isEqual is " + isEqual);
 answer = answer * 100;
 answer = answer + 0.5;
 answer = (int)answer;
 answer = answer / 100;
 isEqual = answer == 0.20;
 System.out.println("After conversion");
 System.out.println("answer is " + answer);
 System.out.println("isEqual is " + isEqual);
 }
}
```

Together, these four statements round the number.

› Multiply the value by 100. So, for example:

- 0.416 would become 41.6.
- 0.20000000000000018 becomes 20.000000000000018.

› Add 0.5. This increases a value's whole number part by 1 if the fractional part is 0.5 or greater. For example:

- 41.6 would become 42.1.
- 20.000000000000018 becomes 20.500000000000018.

› Cast the value to an integer:

- 42.1 would become 42.
- 20.500000000000018 becomes 20.

› Divide by 100:

- If the original number was 0.416, it is now 0.42.
- If the original number was 0.20000000000000018, it becomes 0.20.

**Figure C-2** shows the output of the program. Without rounding, the displayed difference between 2.20 and 2.00 is the odd-looking, nonintuitive number with all the decimal places. However, after applying the rounding technique, the result is displayed as 0.2 as expected.

**Figure C-2** Output of the RoundingDemo1 program

```
Before conversion
answer is 0.20000000000000018
isEqual is false
After conversion
answer is 0.2
isEqual is true
```

As an alternative, you can use the `round()` method that is supplied with Java's `Math` class. The `round()` method returns the nearest `long` value. **Figure C-3** shows a program that multiplies the double `answer` by 100, rounds it, and then divides by 100.0. The output is identical to that shown in Figure C-2.

**Figure C-3** The RoundingDemo2 class

```
public class RoundingDemo2
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 double answer = 2.20 - 2.00;
 boolean isEqual;
 isEqual = answer == 0.20;
 System.out.println("Before conversion");
 System.out.println("answer is " + answer);
 System.out.println("isEqual is " + isEqual);
 answer = answer * 100;
 long roundedAnswer = Math.round(answer);
 answer = roundedAnswer / 100.0;
 isEqual = answer == 0.20;
 System.out.println("After conversion");
 System.out.println("answer is " + answer);
 System.out.println("isEqual is " + isEqual);
 }
}
```

These three statements produce the rounded number.

## C.2 Using the printf() Method

When you display numbers using the `println()` method in Java applications, it sometimes is difficult to make numeric values appear as you want. For example, in the output shown in Figure C-2, the difference between 2.20 and 2.00 is displayed as 0.2. By default, Java eliminates trailing zeros when floating-point numbers are displayed because they do not add any mathematical information. You might prefer to see 0.20 because both original numbers were expressed to two decimal places, or if the values represent currency.

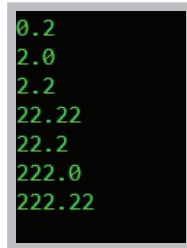
Additionally, you frequently want to align columns of numeric values. For example, **Figure C-4** shows a `NumberList` application that contains an array of floating-point values. The application displays the values using a `for` loop, but because the `println()` method displays values as `Strings`, the displayed values are left-aligned, just as series of words would be.

**Figure C-4** The `NumberList` application

```
public class NumberList
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 double[] list = {0.20, 2.00, 2.20, 22.22, 22.20, 222.00, 222.22};
 int x;
 for(x = 0; x < list.length; ++x)
 System.out.println(list[x]);
 }
}
```

As the output in **Figure C-5** shows, the numbers displayed by the program in Figure C-4 are not aligned by the decimal point as you usually would want numbers to be aligned. The numeric values are accurate; they just are not attractively or conventionally arranged.

**Figure C-5** Output of the `NumberList` application



The `System.out.printf()` method can be used to format numeric values. It was first included in the `Formatter` class in Java 5. Because this class is contained in the `java.util` package, you do not need to include any `import` statements to use it. The `printf()` method allows you to format numeric values in two useful ways:

- › By specifying the number of decimal places to display
- › By specifying the field size in which to display values

### Note

The `Formatter` class contains many formats that are not covered here. To view the details of formatting data types such as `BigDecimal` and `Calendar`, search for them on the Internet.

### Note

Although the `printf()` method is used in these examples, in Java, you can substitute `System.out.format()` for `System.out.printf()`. There is no difference in the way you use these two methods.

When creating numeric output, you can specify a number of decimal places to display by using the `printf()` method with two types of arguments that represent the following:

- › A format string
- › A list of arguments

A **format string** is a string of characters; it includes optional text (that is displayed literally) and one or more format specifiers. A **format specifier** is a placeholder for a numeric value. Within a call to `printf()`, you include one argument (either a variable or a constant) for each format specifier. The format specifiers for general, character, and numeric types contain the following elements, in order:

- › A percent sign (%). The percent sign starts every format specifier.
- › An optional argument index followed by a dollar sign (\$). The argument index is an integer that represents the position of the argument within the argument list. You will learn more about this option later in this appendix.
- › Optional flags that modify the output format. The set of valid flags depends on the data type being formatted. You can find more details about this feature online.
- › An optional field width. This integer indicates the minimum number of characters to be written to the output. You will learn more about this option later in this appendix.
- › An optional precision factor. The precision factor consists of a decimal point followed by a number. It typically is used to control the number of decimal places displayed. You will learn more about this option in the next section.
- › The required conversion character. This character indicates how its corresponding argument should be formatted. Java supports a variety of conversion characters, but the three you want to use most frequently are `d`, `f`, and `s`—the characters that represent decimal (base 10 integer) values, floating-point (`float` and `double`) values, and string values, respectively. Other conversion characters include those used to display hexadecimal numbers and scientific notation. If you need these display formats, you can find more details online.

For example, you can use the `ConversionCharacterExamples` class in **Figure C-6** to display a declared integer and `double`. The `main()` method of the class contains three `printf()` statements. The three calls to `printf()` in this class each contain a format string; the first two calls contain a single additional argument, and the last `printf()` statement contains two arguments after the string. None of the format specifiers in this class uses any of the optional parameters—only the required percent sign and conversion character. The first `printf()` statement uses `%d` in its format string as a placeholder for the integer argument at the end. The second `printf()` statement uses `%f` as a placeholder for the floating-point argument at the end. The last `printf()` statement uses both a `%d` and `%f` to indicate the positions of the integer and floating-point values at the end, respectively.

**Figure C-6** The `ConversionCharacterExamples` application

```
public class ConversionCharacterExamples
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 int age = 23;
 double money = 123.45;
 System.out.printf("Age is %d\n", age);
 System.out.printf("Money is $%f\n", money);
 System.out.printf
 ("Age is %d and money is $%f\n", age, money);
 }
}
```

If you attempt to use a conversion character that is invalid for the data type, the program will compile, but it will throw an exception during execution when it encounters the wrong conversion character for the value being displayed.

**Figure C-7** shows the output of the program in Figure C-6, in which the values are inserted in the appropriate places in their strings. Note that floating-point values are displayed with six decimal positions by default.

**Figure C-7** Output of the ConversionCharacterExamples application

```
Age is 23
Money is $123.450000
Age is 23 and money is $123.450000
```

Notice that in the `ConversionCharacterExamples` class, the output appears on three separate lines only because the newline character ('`\n`') has been included at the end of each `printf()` format string. Unlike the `println()` statement, `printf()` does not include an automatic new line.

## Specifying a Number of Decimal Places to Display with `printf()`

You can control the number of decimal places displayed when you use a floating-point value in a `printf()` statement by adding the optional precision factor to the format specifier. Between the percent sign and the conversion character, you can add a decimal point and the number of decimal positions to display. For example, the following statements produce the output *Money is \$123.45*, displaying the money value with just two decimal places instead of six, which would occur without the precision factor:

```
double money = 123.45;
System.out.printf("Money is $%.2f\n", money);
```

Similarly, the following statements display *8.10*. If you use the `println()` equivalent with `amount`, only *8.1* is displayed. If you use the `printf()` statement without inserting the `.2` precision factor, *8.100000* is displayed.

```
double amount = 8.1;
System.out.printf("%.2f", amount);
```

When you use a precision factor on a value that contains more decimal positions than you want to display, the result is rounded. For example, the following statements produce *100.457* (not *100.456*), displaying three decimals because of the precision factor.

```
double value = 100.45678;
System.out.printf("%.3f", value);
```

You cannot use the precision factor with an integer value; if you do, your program will throw an `IllegalFormatConversionException`.

## Specifying a Field Size with `printf()`

You can indicate a field size in which to display output by using an optional integer as the field width. For example, the `NumberList2` class in **Figure C-8** displays each array element in a field with a size of 6, using two decimal places.

**Figure C-8** The `NumberList2` program

```
public class NumberList2
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 double[] list = {0.20, 2.00, 2.20, 22.22, 22.20, 222.00, 222.22};
 int x;
 for(x = 0; x < list.length; ++x)
 System.out.printf("%6.2f\n", list[x]);
 }
}
```

**Figure C-9** shows the output of the application in Figure C-8. Each value is displayed right-aligned in its field; for example, 0.20 is preceded by two blank spaces, and 22.20 is preceded by one blank space. If a numeric value contains more positions than you indicate for its `printf()` field size, the field size is ignored, and the entire value is displayed.

**Figure C-9** Output of the `NumberList2` program

```
0.20
2.00
2.20
22.22
22.20
222.00
222.22
```

Throughout this course, you have been encouraged to use named constants for numeric values instead of literal constants, so that your programs are clearer. In the program in Figure C-8 you could define constants such as:

```
final int DISPLAY_WIDTH = 6;
final int DISPLAY_DECIMALS = 2;
```

Then the `printf()` statement would be:

```
System.out.printf("%" + DISPLAY_WIDTH + "." +
 DISPLAY_DECIMALS + "f\n", list[x]);
```

Another, perhaps clearer alternative is to define a format string such as the following:

```
final String FORMAT = "%6.2f\n";
```

Then the `printf()` statement would be:

```
System.out.printf(FORMAT, list[x]);
```

You can specify that a value be left-aligned in a field instead of right-aligned by inserting a negative sign in front of the width. Although you can do this with numbers, most often you choose to left-align strings. For example, the following code displays five spaces followed by *hello* and then five spaces followed by *there*. Each string is left-aligned in a field with a size of 10.

```
String string1 = "hello";
String string2 = "there";
System.out.printf("%-10s%-10s", string1, string2);
```

## Using the Optional Argument Index with `printf()`

The **argument index** is an integer that indicates the position of an argument in the argument list of a `printf()` statement. To separate it from other formatting options, the argument index is followed by a dollar sign (\$). The first argument is referenced by "1\$ ", the second by "2\$ ", and so on.

For example, the `printf()` statement in the program in **Figure C-10** contains four format specifiers but only two variables in the argument list.

**Figure C-10** The `ArgumentIndexDemo` program

```
public class ArgumentIndexDemo
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 int x = 56;
 double y = 78.9;
 System.out.printf("%1$6d%2$6.2f%1$6d%2$6.2f", x, y);
 }
}
```

The `printf()` statement in Figure C-10 displays the value of the first argument, `x`, in a field with a size of 6, and then it displays the second argument, `y`, in a field with a size of 6 with two decimal places. Then, the value of `x` is displayed again, followed by the value of `y`. The output appears as shown in **Figure C-11**.

**Figure C-11** Output produced by `ArgumentIndexDemo` program



```
56 78.90
56 78.90
```

## C.3 Using the DecimalFormat Class

The `DecimalFormat` class provides ways to easily convert numbers into strings, allowing you to control the display of leading and trailing zeros, prefixes and suffixes, grouping (thousands) separators, and the decimal separator. You specify the formatting properties of `DecimalFormat` with a pattern `String`. The **pattern String** is composed of symbols that determine what the formatted number looks like; it is passed to the `DecimalFormat` class constructor. The symbols you can use in a pattern `String` include the following:

- › A pound sign (#), which represents a digit
- › A period (.), which represents a decimal point
- › A comma (,), which represents a thousands separator
- › A zero (0), which represents leading and trailing zeros when it replaces the pound sign

### Note

The pound sign is typed using Shift+3 on standard computer keyboards. It also is called an **octothorpe**, a number sign, a hash sign, a square, a tic-tac-toe, a gate, and a crunch.

For example, the following lines of code result in `value` being displayed as 12,345,678.90.

```
double value = 12345678.9;
DecimalFormat aFormat = new DecimalFormat("#,###,###,##.00");
System.out.printf("%s\n", aFormat.format(value));
```

A `DecimalFormat` object is created using the pattern `#,###,###,##.00`. When the object's `format()` method is used in the `printf()` statement, the first two pound signs and the comma between them are not used because `value` is not large enough to require those positions. The value is displayed with commas inserted where needed, and the decimal portion is displayed with a trailing 0 because the 0s at the end of the pattern indicate that they should be used to fill out the number to two places.

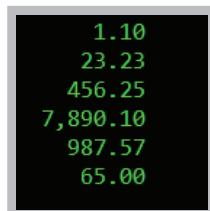
When you use the `DecimalFormat` class, you must use the following `import` statement:

```
import java.text.*;
```

**Figure C-12** shows a class that creates a `String` pattern that it passes to the `DecimalFormat` constructor to create a `moneyFormat` object. The class displays an array of values, each in a field that is 10 characters wide. Some of the values require commas, and some do not. **Figure C-13** shows the output.

**Figure C-12** The `DecimalFormatTest` program

```
import java.text.*;
public class DecimalFormatTest
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 String pattern = "###,###.00";
 DecimalFormat moneyFormat = new DecimalFormat(pattern);
 double[] list = {1.1, 23.23, 456.249, 7890.1, 987.5678, 65.0};
 int x;
 for(x = 0; x < list.length; ++x)
 System.out.printf("%10s\n", moneyFormat.format(list[x]));
 }
}
```

**Figure C-13** Output of the `DecimalFormatTest` program

```
1.10
23.23
456.25
7,890.10
987.57
65.00
```

## Key Terms

**argument index**  
**format specifier**

**format string**  
**octothorpe**

**pattern String**

# Generating Random Numbers

## Learning Objectives

When you complete this appendix, you will be able to:

- D.1 Describe computer-generated random numbers
- D.2 Use the `Math.random()` method
- D.3 Use the `Random` class

## D.1 Understanding Computer-Generated Random Numbers

A **random number** is a number whose value cannot be predicted. Many types of programs use random numbers. For example, simulations that predict phenomena such as urban traffic patterns, crop production, and weather systems typically use random numbers. Random numbers also are used in many computer game applications. When you play games with human opponents, their choices are often unpredictable (and sometimes even irrational). Computers usually are predictable and rational, so when you play a game against a computer opponent, the game frequently needs to generate random numbers. For example, a guessing game would not be very interesting if you were asked to guess the same number every time you played.

Most computer programming languages, including Java, come with built-in methods that generate random numbers. The random numbers are calculated based on a starting value, called a **seed**. The random numbers generated using these methods are not truly random; they are **pseudorandom** in that they produce the same set of numbers whenever the seed is the same. Therefore, if you seed a random-number generator with a constant, you always receive the same sequence of values. Many computer programs use the time of day as a random-number generating seed. For game applications, this method works well, as a player is unlikely to reset the computer's clock and attempt to replay a game beginning at exactly the same moment in time.

### Note

For applications in which randomness is more crucial than in game playing, you can use other methods (such as using the points in time at which a radioactive source decays) to generate truly random starting numbers.

There are two approaches to generating random numbers in Java. Both techniques are explained in this appendix and summarized in **Table D-1**.

**Table D-1** Generating random numbers in Java

| METHOD/CLASS                 | ADVANTAGES                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Math.random() method         | You do not need to create an object.<br>You do not need to understand constructors and multiple methods.                              |
| Random class and its methods | You can generate numbers in the format you need without arithmetic manipulation.<br>You can create reproducible results if necessary. |

## D.2 Using the Math.random() Method

Java's Math class provides a `random()` method that returns a double value in the range of 0.0 up to, but not including, 1.0. For example, the application in **Figure D-1** generates three random numbers and displays them. **Figure D-2** shows three successive executions of the program.

**Figure D-1** The `SomeRandomNumbers` program

```
public class SomeRandomNumbers
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 double randomNumber;
 randomNumber = Math.random();
 System.out.println(randomNumber);
 randomNumber = Math.random();
 System.out.println(randomNumber);
 randomNumber = Math.random();
 System.out.println(randomNumber);
 }
}
```

**Figure D-2** Three executions of the `SomeRandomNumbers` program

0.7566661267945178  
0.3696974932285457  
0.23899781086680938

0.8022072358470236  
0.10887117164071358  
0.6183173966496351

0.056031952197929336  
0.6576006818157192  
0.9266233862413465

The values displayed in Figure D-2 appear to be random, but they are not typical of the values you need in a game-playing program. Usually, you need a relatively small number of whole values. For example, a game that involves a coin flip might only need two values to represent heads or tails, and a dice game might need only six values to represent rolls of a single die. Even in a complicated game in which 40 types of space aliens might attack the player, you need only 40 whole numbers generated to satisfy the program requirements.

For example, suppose you need a random number from 1 to 10. To change any value generated by the `Math.random()` method to fall between 0 and 10, you can multiply the generated number by 10. For example, the last three numbers in Figure D-2 would become approximately 0.5, 6.6, and 9.3. Then, you can eliminate the fractional part of each number by casting it to an `int`; after this step, every generated number will be a value from 0 to 9 inclusive. Finally, you can add 1 to a value so it falls in the range from 1 to 10 instead of 0 to 9. In short, the following statement generates a random number from 1 through 10 inclusive, and assigns it to `randomNumber`:

```
int randomNumber = 1 + (int)(Math.random() * 10);
```

Suppose that, instead of 1 through 10, you need random numbers from 1 through 13. (For example, standard decks of playing cards have 13 values from which you might want to select.) When you use the modulus operator (%) to find a remainder, the remainder is always a value from 0 to one less than the number. For example, if you divide any number by 4, the remainder is always a value from 0 through 3. Therefore, to find a number from 1 through 13, you can use a statement like the following:

```
int ranCardValue = ((int)(Math.random() * 100) % 13 + 1);
```

In this statement, a randomly generated value (for example, 0.447) is multiplied by 100 (producing 44.7). The result is converted to an int (44). The remainder after dividing by 13 is 5. Finally, 1 is added so the result is 1 through 13 instead of 0 through 12. In this case, therefore, the result is 6. In short, the general format for assigning a random number to a variable is:

```
int result = ((int)(Math.random() * 100) %
 HIGHEST_VALUE_WANTED + LOWEST_VALUE_WANTED);
```

Instead of using 100 as the multiplier, you might prefer to use a higher value such as 1,000 or 10,000.

## D.3 Using the Random Class

The Random class provides a generator that creates a list of random numbers. To use this class, you must use one of the following import statements:

```
import java.util.*;
import java.util.Random;
```

You also must instantiate a random-number generator object using one of the following constructors:

- › Random(), in which the seed comes from the operating system; this constructor sets the seed of the random-number generator to a value that is probably distinct from any other invocation of this constructor
- › Random(long seed), in which you provide a starting seed so that your results are reproducible

After you create a random-number generator object, you can use any of the methods in **Table D-2** to get the next random number from the generator.

**Table D-2** Selected Random class methods

| METHOD         | EXPLANATION                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| nextInt(int n) | Returns a pseudorandom int value between 0 (inclusive) and the specified value n (exclusive), drawn from the random-number generator's sequence |
| nextInt()      | Returns a pseudorandom int value between 0 (inclusive) and 1.0 (exclusive), drawn from the random-number generator's sequence                   |
| nextLong()     | Returns the next pseudorandom long value from the generator's sequence                                                                          |
| nextFloat()    | Returns the next pseudorandom float value between 0.0 and 1.0 from the generator's sequence                                                     |
| nextDouble()   | Returns the next pseudorandom double value between 0.0 and 1.0 from the generator's sequence                                                    |
| nextBoolean()  | Returns the next pseudorandom boolean value from the generator's sequence                                                                       |

For example, **Figure D-3** contains an application that declares a Random generator named randomNumber, using the version of the constructor that takes no arguments. This ensures that the results are different each time the application runs. The program then defines LIMIT as 10, and calls randomNumber.nextInt(LIMIT) three times, displaying the results (see **Figure D-4**).

**Figure D-3** The SomeRandomNumbers2 program

```
import java.util.*;
public class SomeRandomNumbers2
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 Random randomNumber = new Random();
 final int LIMIT = 10;
 System.out.print(randomNumber.nextInt(LIMIT) + " ");
 System.out.print(randomNumber.nextInt(LIMIT) + " ");
 System.out.println(randomNumber.nextInt(LIMIT));
 }
}
```

**Figure D-4** Three executions of the SomeRandomNumbers2 program

4 9 3      2 2 4      6 0 5

In Figure D-4, each displayed value falls between 0 and LIMIT. (To select values between 1 and LIMIT inclusive, you could add 1 to each result.)

**Figure D-5** shows a class using the version of the Random constructor that takes an argument. In this example, a value between 0 and 6 inclusive is generated 15 times. **Figure D-6** shows the output when the program is run three times. Although the 15 numbers displayed for each execution constitute a random list, the list is identical in each program execution. You use a seed when you want random but reproducible results. For games, you usually want to use the no-argument version of the Random constructor.

**Figure D-5** The SomeRandomNumbers3 program

```
import java.util.*;
public class SomeRandomNumbers3
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 Random randomNumber = new Random(129867L);
 final int TIMES = 15;
 final int LIMIT = 7;
 for(int x = 0; x < TIMES; ++x)
 System.out.print(randomNumber.nextInt(LIMIT) + " ");
 System.out.println();
 }
}
```

**Figure D-6** Three executions of the SomeRandomNumbers3 program

0 5 4 1 5 1 1 3 6 4 1 0 1 2 6  
0 5 4 1 5 1 1 3 6 4 1 0 1 2 6  
0 5 4 1 5 1 1 3 6 4 1 0 1 2 6

## Key Terms

pseudorandom

random number

seed

# Javadoc

## Learning Objectives

When you complete this appendix, you will be able to:

- E.1 Describe the Javadoc documentation generator
- E.2 Describe Javadoc comment types
- E.3 Generate Javadoc documentation

### E.1 The Javadoc Documentation Generator

Javadoc is a documentation generator created by Sun Microsystems that allows you to generate Application Programming Interface (API) documentation in **HTML (Hypertext Markup Language)** format. HTML is a relatively simple language used to create Web pages; you also can use it to create Java documentation from source code. You have learned that you can place both line and block comments anywhere in a program to provide documentation that can be useful both to yourself and others. A Javadoc comment is a special form of block comment that provides a standard way to document Java code.

**Note**

Javadoc was originally called *JavaDoc* using an uppercase *D*. You might still find some references that use this form.

After you write Javadoc comments, they can be interpreted by special utility programs that generate an HTML document. The resulting HTML document provides an attractive format for the documentation when you open it in a browser. Most class libraries, both commercial and open source, provide Javadoc documents. If you have visited the Java website to research how to use a class, you most likely have viewed documentation created by the Javadoc utility.

In Java, block comments start with /\* and end with \*/. Javadoc comments start with /\*\* and end with \*/. Both of these comment types can span as many lines as necessary. For symmetry, many developers end their Javadoc comments with \*\*/. By convention, asterisks start intermediate lines in a Javadoc comment. This is not required, but it helps you more easily distinguish comments from code.

Javadoc comments can contain tags. A **Javadoc tag** is a keyword within a comment that the Javadoc tool can process. Tags begin with an at-sign (@) and use a limited vocabulary of keywords. Some commonly used Javadoc tags are shown in **Table E-1**.

**Table E-1** Common Javadoc tags

| JAVADOC TAG | DESCRIPTION                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| @author     | Describes the author of a document               |
| @param      | Describes a parameter of a method or constructor |
| @return     | Describes the return type of a method            |
| @throws     | Describes an exception a method may throw        |
| @exception  | Describes an exception                           |

## E.2 Javadoc Comment Types

There are two types of Javadoc comments:

- › Class-level comments that provide a description of a class
- › Member-level comments that describe the purposes of class members

**Class-level Javadoc comments** provide a description of a class; you place class-level comments above the code that declares a class. Class-level comments frequently contain author tags and a description of the class. **Figure E-1** shows a class-level comment in a class.

**Figure E-1** An Employee class with class-level comments

```
/*
 * @author Joyce Farrell.
 * The Employee class contains data about one employee.
 * Fields include an ID number and an hourly pay rate.
 */
public class Employee
{
 private int idNum;
 private double hourlyPay;
 public Employee(int id, double pay)
 {
 idNum = id;
 hourlyPay = pay;
 }
 int getIdNum()
 {
 return idNum;
 }
 void setIdNum(int id)
 {
 idNum = id;
 }
}
```

**Member-level Javadoc comments** describe the fields, methods, and constructors of a class. Method and constructor comments might contain tags that describe the parameters, and method comments also might contain return tags. **Figure E-2** shows a class with some member-level comments.

Like all program comments, Javadoc comments *can* contain anything. However, you should follow the conventions for Javadoc comments. For example, developers expect all Javadoc comments to begin with an uppercase letter, and they recommend that method comments start with a verb such as *Returns* or *Sets*. You can search online for other recommendations.

**Figure E-2** An `Employee2` class with class-level and member-level comments

```

public class Employee2
{
 /**
 * Employee ID number
 */
 private int idNum;
 /**
 * Employee hourly pay
 */
 private double hourlyPay;
 /**
 * Sole constructor for Employee2
 */
 public Employee2(int id, double pay)
 {
 idNum = id;
 hourlyPay = pay;
 }
 /**
 * Returns the Employee2 ID number
 *
 * @return int
 */
 int getIdNum()
 {
 return idNum;
 }
 /**
 * Sets the Employee2 ID number
 *
 * @param id employee ID number
 */
 void setIdNum(int id)
 {
 idNum = id;
 }
}

```

## E.3 Generating Javadoc Documentation

To generate the Javadoc documentation from your class, you should do the following:

1. Create a folder in which to store your class. For example, you might store the `Employee2.java` file in a folder named `Employee2`.
2. Within the folder, you can create a `Documents` subfolder to hold the documentation that you generate. However, if you omit this step and use the syntax described in Step 3, the folder is created for you automatically.
3. Go to the command prompt and navigate to the directory that holds the `Employee2.java` file. (See Appendix A for information about finding the command prompt and changing directories.) From the command prompt, run the following command:

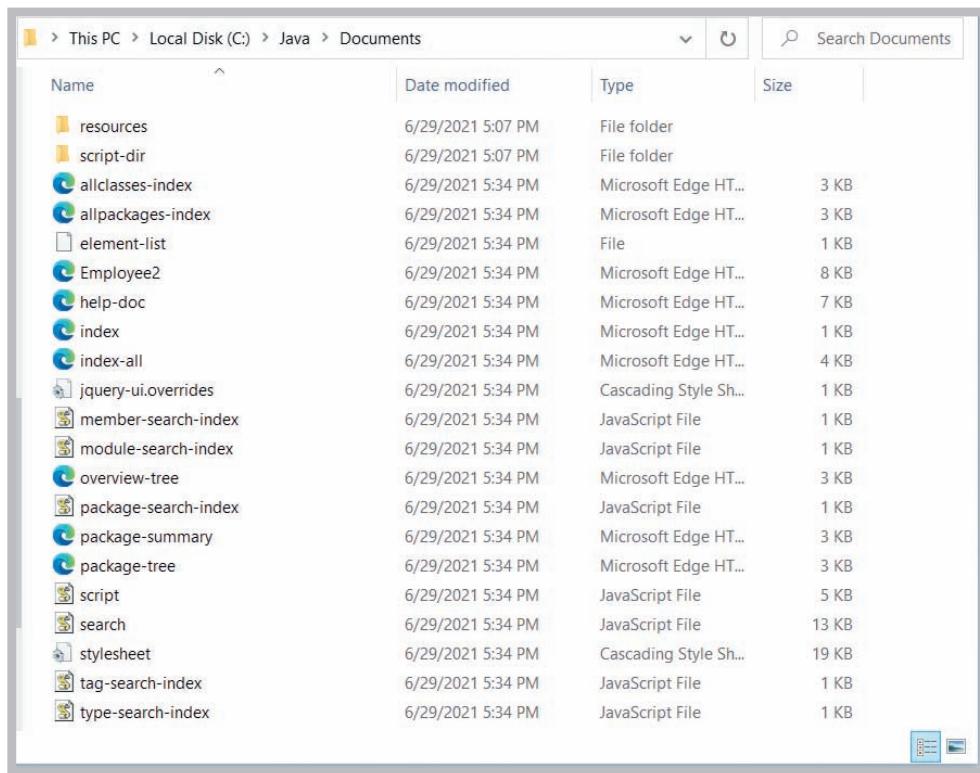
```
javadoc -d Documents *.java
```

The `-d` is the directory option. If you omit it, all the generated files are saved in the current directory. By including this option, you indicate that the files should be saved in the `Documents` directory.

To see the author's name in the resulting documentation, change the Javadoc command to the following:

```
javadoc -d Documents -author *.java
```

In File Explorer, navigate to the `Documents` folder. You will see a number of generated files, as shown in **Figure E-3**. The list includes HTML documents with information about your class.

**Figure E-3** Contents of the Employee2 Documents folder

The *index.html* file provides an index of all class interface, constructor, field, and method names; when you double-click it, the file opens in your default browser. **Figure E-4** shows how the first part of the *index.html* file for Employee2 appears in the Microsoft Edge browser. If you have searched the Java website for documentation, the format of the page in Figure E-4 is familiar to you. The class name and other information appear in a font and style consistent with other classes in the Java API. You can see information about the class constructor and the notes that you added in your comments. You see inheritance information—Employee2 descends directly from Object. The format of this documentation is familiar to users, making it much easier for them to find what they need than if each developer created documentation formats independently.

**Figure E-4** The Employee2 class documentation in Microsoft Edge

**Employee2**

**CLASS**

**Class Employee2**

java.lang.Object  
Employee2

public class Employee2  
extends Object

**Constructor Summary**

**Constructors**

| Constructor                   | Description                   |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Employee2(int id, double pay) | Sole constructor for Employee |

**Method Summary**

Methods inherited from class `java.lang.Object`

`clone()`, `equals()`, `finalize()`, `getClass()`, `hashCode()`, `notify()`, `notifyAll()`, `toString()`, `wait()`, `wait(long)`

**Constructor Details**

**Employee2**

`public Employee2(int id, double pay)`

Sole constructor for Employee

**Note**

The Javadoc tool will run on .java source files that are stub files with no method bodies. This means you can write documentation comments and run the Javadoc tool when you are first designing classes, before you have written implementations for the class's methods.

Writing acceptable Javadoc comments requires adherence to some style standards. For example, professionals recommend that multiple @author tags should be listed in chronological order, with the creator of the class listed at the top, and that multiple @param tags should be listed in argument-declaration order. Additionally, Javadoc comments can provide hyperlinks that allow navigation from one document to another. For example, when a class contains a field that is an object of another class, you might want to link to the other class's documentation. For more information, see the recommendations from Java developers online.

## Specifying Visibility of Javadoc Documentation

By default, Javadoc documents only public and protected members of an API. In other words, Javadoc comments for private members do not appear in the generated documentation unless you take special action to make them visible. Although the *index.html* file contains details about the Employee2 class's constructor and methods, there is no information about the private fields idNum and hourlyPay. To generate that documentation, you must specify private visibility by using the following javadoc command:

```
javadoc -d Documents -private *.java
```

**Figure E-5** shows the first part of the documentation generated by this command. You can see that the newly generated documentation includes a *Field Summary* section. It lists the fields in alphabetical order, preceded by their access specifiers and data types. Each field identifier is followed by the appropriate description that was provided in the Javadoc comment in the source code.

**Figure E-5** Part of the Employee2 class documentation when private members are included

**Class Employee2**

java.lang.Object ↗  
Employee2

public class Employee2  
extends Object ↗

**Field Summary**

| Fields | Modifier and Type | Field     | Description         |
|--------|-------------------|-----------|---------------------|
|        | private double    | hourlyPay | Employee hourly pay |
|        | private int       | idNum     | Employee ID number  |

**Constructor Summary**

| Constructors | Constructor                   | Description                    |
|--------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
|              | Employee2(int id, double pay) | Sole constructor for Employee2 |

**Method Summary**

| All Methods                                                                                                      | Instance Methods | Concrete Methods                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|---------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                  |                  |                                 |
| Modifier and Type                                                                                                | Method           | Description                     |
| (package private) int                                                                                            | getIdNum()       | Returns the Employee2 ID number |
| (package private) void                                                                                           | setIdNum(int id) | Sets the Employee2 ID number    |
| Methods inherited from class java.lang.Object ↗                                                                  |                  |                                 |
| clone(), equals(), finalize(), getClass(), hashCode(), notify(), notifyAll(), toString(), wait(), wait(), wait() |                  |                                 |

You can specify four types of visibility:

- › **public**—Displays public members only
- › **protected**—Displays public and protected members only; this is the default option
- › **package**—Displays package classes and members in addition to public and protected members
- › **private**—Displays all members

## Key Terms

**class-level Javadoc comments**

**HTML (Hypertext Markup Language)**

**Javadoc tag member-level Javadoc comments**

# Using JavaFX and Scene Builder

## Learning Objectives

When you complete this appendix, you will be able to:

- F.1 Describe JavaFX
- F.2 Describe the life cycle of a JavaFX application
- F.3 Identify the structure of JavaFX applications: stage, scene, panes, and widgets
- F.4 Implement an application using JavaFX
- F.5 Develop JavaFX applications using Scene Builder
- F.6 Use widgets as design elements in FXML layouts
- F.7 Use CSS to create visual effects
- F.8 Edit CSS files in Scene Builder
- F.9 Create animations in JavaFX

### F.1 What Is JavaFX?

**JavaFX** is a powerful media and graphics framework that creates applications that provide graphical user interfaces (GUIs) in Java.

#### Note

In Java, every screen that allows a user to interact with a program acts as an appropriate **user interface (UI)**. This includes plain-text, command-line style prompts and responses. When the UI uses picture-like tools such as buttons and text boxes, it is called a graphical user interface.

The tools in the JavaFX framework can be used to develop applications for the desktop, mobile devices, and the Web. You have already learned that *lightweight components* are written completely in Java and do not have to rely on the local operating system code. JavaFX is lightweight and **hardware accelerated**, which means that it takes advantage of computer hardware to perform some functions, such as media and graphics functions, more efficiently than standard hardware.

JavaFX is designed as a component of the Java GUI library for Java SE and can be integrated with the standard JDK and Java Runtime Environment (JRE). Additionally, JavaFX can integrate with Swing, and both are often used in the same application.

JavaFX provides two tools to help the programmer create visually pleasing interfaces:

- › **Scene Builder** is a GUI design tool that allows the developer to create a user interface visually without having to spend a lot of time trying to position all the controls within the interface. Scene Builder's drag-and-drop interface allows developers to create key UI elements without the coding constructs for the positions. The coding constructs for the provided objects are generated automatically.
- › **Cascading Style Sheets (CSS)** is a style sheet language that describes the presentation of documents, and is most often associated with HTML documents for the Web. For example, a CSS document might describe standard sizing and fonts for buttons or labels in a user interface. This allows for consistency in the appearance of multiple controls in a window and in multiple windows of a UI. When developing a clean UI, keeping consistent fonts and colors is important so that the UI is not overly distracting. You would use the same principle when formatting a research paper or resumé to achieve a consistent look throughout.

### Note

The term *cascading* in Cascading Style Sheets means that the lowest line of CSS code on the sheet is the most relevant to the styling of the document.

JavaFX uses **FXML**, which is an XML-based declarative markup language used to define UIs. **Markup languages** are used to design the presentation, formatting, layout, and style of text. A **declarative language** is a high-level language that defines the desired result without explicitly listing the commands or steps that must be performed to accomplish a particular task. FXML provides the dual advantages of being powerful and easy to use.

JavaFX simplifies code development by separating the UI development from the application logic. The ability to separate the UI from the code allows the developer to customize the UI easily for different platforms, such as mobile devices, desktops, and the Web.

JavaFX provides a strong GUI platform for Java applications, meaning it allows you to create a UI quickly with a minimum of code. The platform includes a large number of classes and libraries that can be used in tandem with various open-source frameworks, platforms, and toolkits. Open-source applications and infrastructure are available for free download and use; the users can contribute ideas and code to help improve the framework. Java's open-source community contributes to the language's development.

JavaFX can be deployed with relative ease to a number of systems, including macOS, Linux, Microsoft Windows, iOS, and Android.

## F.2 Learning the Life Cycle of JavaFX Applications

To instantiate a JavaFX application, you extend the `Application` class (which extends directly from the `Object` class). The `Application` class contains 10 methods. You must call the inherited `launch()` method explicitly to start an FX application. The `launch()` method is static and therefore must be called from a static context. Three other methods are called automatically when an application runs; they are `init()`, `start()`, and `stop()`.

- › The `init()` method is used for initialization tasks—that is, one-time tasks needed at the start of an application, such as opening a data file.
- › Most of the work of an `Application` is performed by the `start()` method.
- › The `stop()` method executes when an application is finished. It is used for one-time tasks at the end of an application, such as closing a file.

When you launch a JavaFX Application, the following steps happen in order:

1. The JavaFX runtime constructs an instance of the specified `Application` class.
2. The `init()` method executes.
3. The `start()` method executes.
4. JavaFX waits for the application to finish, which happens when either the application calls `Platform.exit()` or the last window in the application has been closed, and then the `stop()` method executes.

The `start()` method in the `Application` class is an abstract method. You've previously learned that abstract methods must be overridden in child classes, so every JavaFX application you write will contain a `start()` method. The `init()` and `stop()` methods are not abstract; they are concrete, and they are written to do nothing.

**Figure F-1** contains a JavaFX application that demonstrates an application's life cycle. The `main()` method calls `launch()` and passes it the `args` parameter that you are used to seeing in the `main()` method header. The `init()` method displays a message at the command prompt. The `start()` method sets and shows a `Stage`, which is a window with a title bar and Close button. You will learn about the `Stage` and all the statements in the `start()` method later in this appendix. For now, focus on the statement that uses `println()` to display a message at the command prompt.

**Figure F-1** `LifeCycleDemo` application

```
import javafx.application.Application;
import javafx.scene.Scene;
import javafx.scene.layout.StackPane;
import javafx.stage.Stage;

public class LifeCycleDemo extends Application
{
 public static void main(String[] args)
 {
 launch(args);
 }
 @Override
 public void init()
 {
 System.out.println("In init() method");
 }
 @Override
 public void start(Stage primaryStage)
 {
 primaryStage.setTitle("Life cycle demo");
 StackPane root = new StackPane();
 primaryStage.setScene(new Scene(root, 300, 75));
 primaryStage.show();
 System.out.println("In start() method");
 }
 @Override
 public void stop()
 {
 System.out.println("In stop() method");
 }
}
```

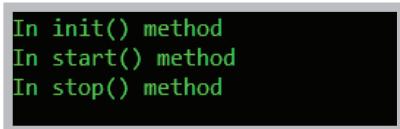
When the application is launched, the `init()` message and the `start()` message appear at the command line, and a window is displayed, as shown in **Figure F-2**.

**Figure F-2** `LifeCycleDemo` application at start of execution



After the user closes the window in the application, the `stop()` method executes automatically, and its message is added to the list of messages at the command line. See **Figure F-3**.

**Figure F-3** `LifeCycleDemo` output at end of execution



## F.3 Learning JavaFX Structure: Stage, Scene, Panes, and Widgets

Before you can create a JavaFX application, several classes need to be imported. These classes include the following:

- › The `Application` class, which provides the entry point for a JavaFX application
- › The `Stage` class, which represents the entire window in an application
- › The `Scene` class, which holds content inside a window
- › The `StackPane` class, which controls the design layout of scenes

Every JavaFX program is a child of the `Application` class. Like other Java applications, JavaFX programs begin execution with a `main()` method. Within the `main()` method, a call to the `launch()` method sets up the application as a JavaFX application. Most of the code executed by a JavaFX application is written within the `start()` method.

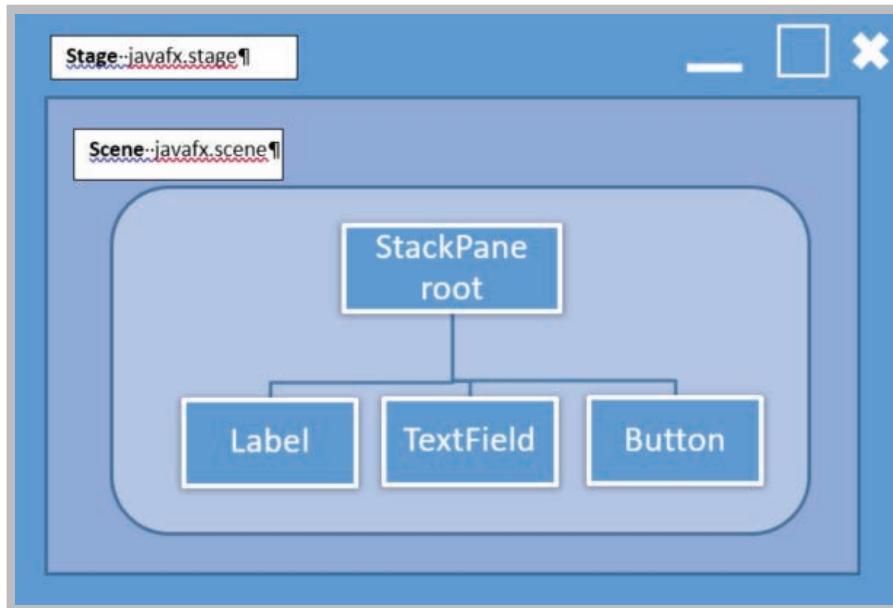
Learning about JavaFX requires learning some new terminology. The `Stage` class describes a container for an application; in a JavaFX application, a `Stage` object represents the entire window. The `Stage` class is represented by the package `javafx.stage`. The `Stage` class includes the title bar and the Minimize, Maximize, and Close buttons. When a JavaFX application is launched, it can contain multiple stages. A JavaFX stage can be created with the following command:

```
Stage myStage = new Stage();
```

A `Scene` resides inside the `Stage` and contains all of the content of the application.

**Figure F-4** shows the layout of `Stage` and `Scene` objects and how they are related to each other, as well as how widgets are used to set the scene.

**Figure F-4** Relationship of the stage, scene, and widgets in JavaFX



## Learning to Use StackPanes

The **StackPane** helps manage the layout of the Scene, and contains objects such as buttons. Several different panes are available for use in JavaFX, and each extends the Pane class but organizes the widgets differently. StackPane is a type of layout that allows various container objects to be used and stacked on top of each other within the layout pane. It stacks the pane layouts in a back-to-front order. The **root node**, or just the **root**, is the topmost layout and is passed to the scene constructor. The root is the only pane that does not have a parent.

The `start()` method shown in **Figure F-5** overrides the `start()` method in the Application class and passes in a Stage object named `primaryStage`, which is the main window for the application. The `primaryStage` is created by JavaFX, not the application. It is possible to have multiple stages in an application, but the `primaryStage` is the last window closed when the application ends. Because `start()` is an abstract method, it must be implemented.

**Figure F-5** MyFirstJavaFXApp application

```
import javafx.application.Application;
import javafx.event.ActionEvent;
import javafx.event.EventHandler;
import javafx.scene.Scene;
import javafx.scene.control.Button;
import javafx.scene.layout.StackPane;
import javafx.stage.Stage;

public class MyFirstJavaFXApp extends Application
{
 @Override
 public void start(Stage primaryStage)
 {
 Button btn = new Button();
 btn.setText("Click me");
 btn.setOnAction(new EventHandler<ActionEvent>()
 {
 @Override
 public void handle(ActionEvent event)
 {
 System.out.println("My First JavaFX App!!!");
 }
 });
 StackPane root = new StackPane();
 root.getChildren().add(btn);
 Scene scene = new Scene(root, 400, 300);

 primaryStage.setTitle("My First JavaFX App!!!");
 primaryStage.setScene(scene);
 primaryStage.show();
 }
}
```

In the example shown in Figure F-5, the `start()` method includes an `@Override` tag. The call to `setTitle()` sets the title for the main window by passing in a `String`. The code in Figure F-5 also includes a `Button` widget. Buttons allow users to execute tasks in the application. The `setText()` method changes the text on the button. An example of a button would be a submit button you click when you have completed a form in a Java application.

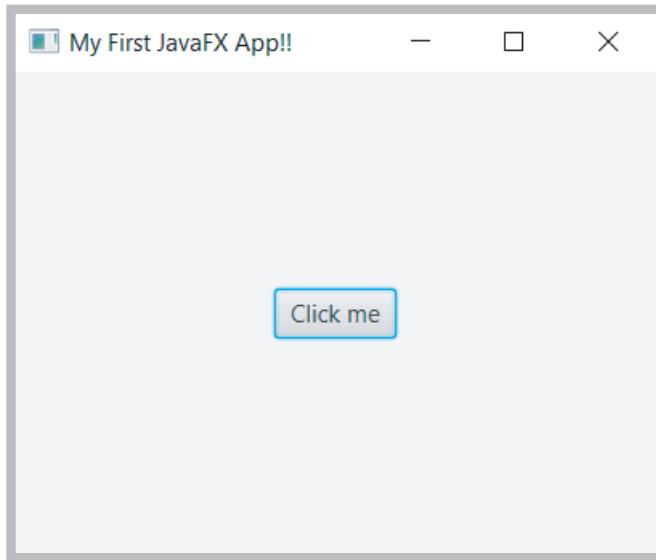
Although only a button is used in the layout within the code in Figure F-5, a layout still is required. So, the `StackPane` class is instantiated, and an object named `root` is created. Then, the `Scene` class is instantiated using the `root` object and two integers that represent the width and height of the `Scene` in pixels. The primary stage is set by calling

`setScene()` and passing in the `Scene` object. The final step in the program calls the `show()` method to actually display the `Scene`. The syntax for calling the `show()` method is as follows:

```
myStage.show();
```

The resulting output appears as shown in **Figure F-6**. A simple window displays the title, *My First JavaFX App!!*, and a button labeled *Click me*.

**Figure F-6** Output of `MyFirstJavaFXApp` application



## F.4 Deploying JavaFX Applications

You can deploy a JavaFX application by making use of four different methods:

- › The first method is to run the application as a stand-alone program. You can launch an application package available on a local drive by using a Java launcher, such as `java -jar MyApp.jar`, or by double-clicking the JAR file found in File Explorer.
- › A JavaFX application can also be launched from a remote server by clicking a link on a Web page. The application is downloaded to the local hard drive, and after the download is complete, a desktop shortcut can be used to start the Web application.
- › A JavaFX application can also be embedded in a Web page. In this case, the application is hosted and run on a remote Web server.
- › Finally, a JavaFX application can be self-contained and installed on a local hard drive. The application is launched in the same manner as other applications and uses a private copy of Java and JavaFX runtimes.

## F.5 Using Scene Builder to Create JavaFX Applications

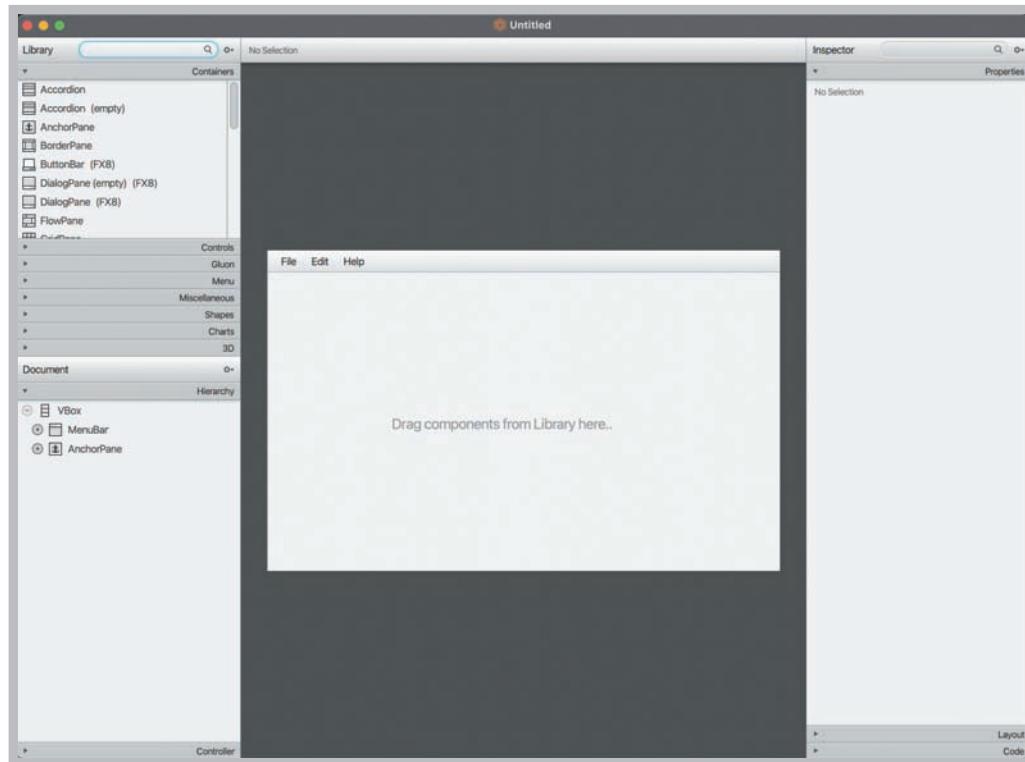
You can download Scene Builder from Oracle's website. At the website, you can search for Scene Builder; the search should direct you to the Download page. Download the version appropriate to your operating system and install the package.

JavaFX Scene Builder provides a visual layout environment that lets you design the UI for JavaFX applications without needing to write any code. You build the UI by dragging components onto a `Scene`; the FXML code for the layout is generated automatically.

You can perform live editing in Scene Builder. First, you access the JavaFX UI Controls Library and add CSS to your UI layout. This allows cross-platform development for Windows, Linux, macOS, and the Web.

**Figure F-7** shows the Scene Builder environment. The center of the screen holds the anchor pane, where you can drag and drop controls onto the stage. The left side of the screen lists the containers and widgets you can use. The right side displays the properties, layout, and code for your interface and its widgets. To save time, you can group widgets and set properties that are common to the group. You also can select predefined templates that are included in the sample download.

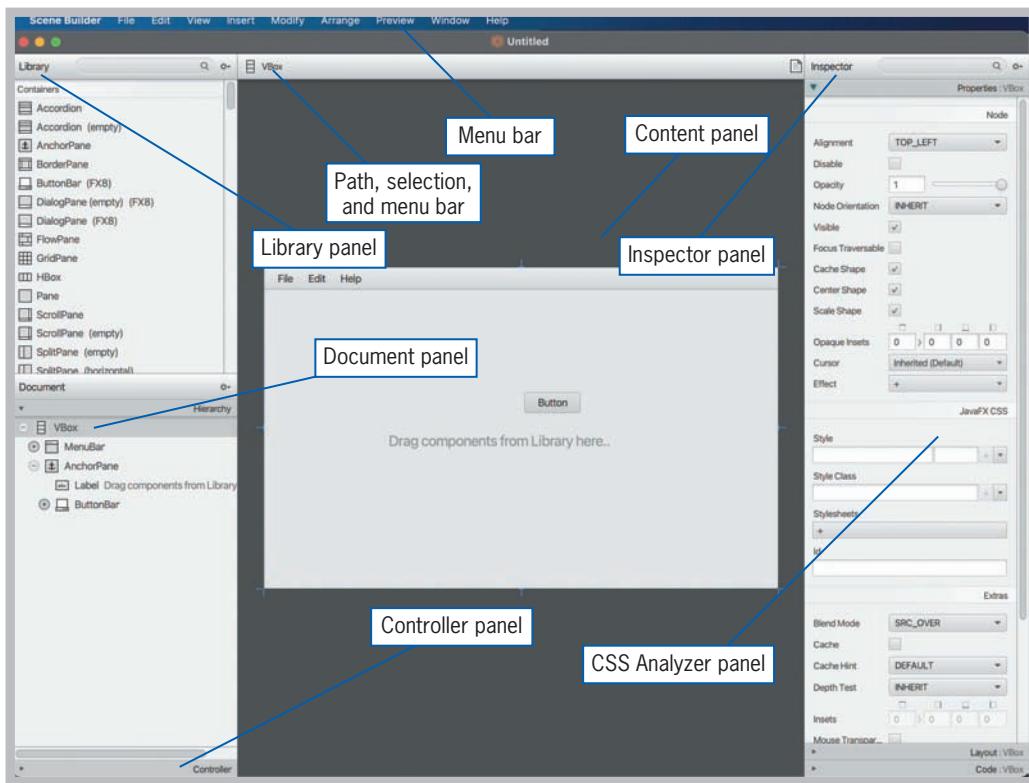
**Figure F-7** Scene Builder



## Scene Builder Sections

**Figure F-8** identifies the sections that appear in Scene Builder. The following sections appear by default.

- › **Menu bar**—The menu bar provides access to commands available in JavaFX Scene Builder.
- › **Path, selection, and message bar**—The message bar displays the path to a selected element. You can select a widget to put into focus. Focus is similar to activating or choosing a control to examine. The message bar also displays any error or status messages.
- › **Content panel**—The Content panel is the scene container where you position the widgets to create your FXML layout.
- › **Library panel**—The Library panel contains various widgets you can use to create your layout. The controls are grouped together so you can find them more easily. You also can perform a search for a particular item if you know its name. After a widget is selected, you can add it either to the Content panel or the Hierarchy section.
- › **Document panel**—The Document panel contains the Hierarchy section and Controller sections. The Hierarchy section displays a tree view representation of your layout. Any widget not visible in the Content panel can be placed into focus by selecting it in the Hierarchy section.
- › **Controller panel**—Use this panel to connect the GUI to the Java code in your IDE. You either type the name or choose the name of the FXMLDocumentController in the Controller text box.

**Figure F-8** Scene Builder sections

- › **Inspector panel**—This panel contains the Properties, Layout, and Code sections. The Properties and Layout sections allow you to set or modify the properties of the currently selected control in the Content panel or the Hierarchy section. The Code section enables you to manage the event-handling actions to use for the selected control. The list of events from which you can choose is extensive, and includes drag and drop, keyboard, mouse, rotation, swipe, touch, and zoom events. The Inspector panel also contains a Search text field that enables you to isolate specific properties that you want to modify.
- › **CSS Analyzer panel**—This panel is displayed in the main window when you select *View* from the main menu and then *Show CSS Analyzer*. This panel does not appear by default; it allows you to set the CSS properties for a JavaFX component on your FXML layout and helps you to build the CSS rules. This section also has a search feature.

## F.6 Using Widgets as Design Elements in FXML Layouts

The widgets used in JavaFX are similar to those used in Swing applications. *TextArea* widgets are similar to *TextFields*, but have multiple lines to allow more text. Radio buttons and check boxes use groups in a similar manner to Swing, but *ToggleGroups* are created in the Properties section within Scene Builder. The names of the *ToggleGroups* are listed in the drop-down box once you have typed the names into the text box. Each of these controls can be overridden when they need to be customized.

The Content panel in Scene Builder is like a canvas that provides a view of your design. You can manipulate the graphical elements used in your FXML layout by dragging a widget from the Library panel and placing it in the Content panel. Red guidelines appear to help with placement. To turn the guideline option on, select *View* from the menu bar and then *Enable Alignment Guides*. You can turn the option off by selecting *View* and then *Disable Alignment Guides*.

Alternatively, you can drag a control onto sections of each pane's node in the Hierarchy section for quick placement and then work on more precise placement later. This approach is helpful when you are designing a prototype and are less concerned with aesthetics. A widget can be duplicated by right-clicking it and clicking *Duplicate*. To delete a

widget, right-click it in the hierarchy node or the Content panel and then press the Delete key on your keyboard. You can resize widgets by using the handles that appear when they are selected. You can move a selected widget when the cursor changes to a pointing finger. You can also move a widget by hovering the mouse over it; when an arrow appears over the widget, click and drag it to the desired location.

Double-clicking a widget in the Content panel places the control in edit mode. If the control has a Text property, you can also press Enter when the control is selected to place it in edit mode.

Some widgets, such as FlowPane, TextFlow, TilePane, ToolBar, HBox, and VBox containers, can be re-ordered. A gray line will appear to show the placement or order location of the selected control.

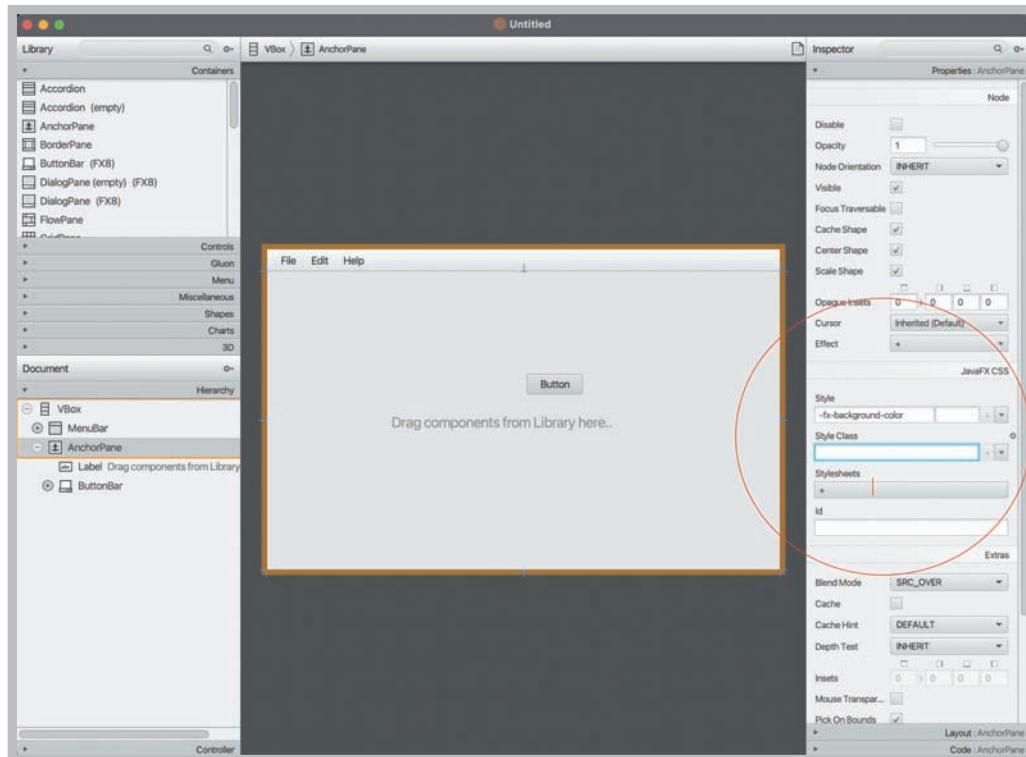
Numerous properties are associated with every widget; you can set their values to ensure that your design appears exactly as you want. You can set the widgets' sizes, padding, spacing, text, and colors, and then use commands to quickly align and resize your controls. Other settings allow you to resize widgets and adjust the spacing as the window is resized while the application is running. Such adjustment allows for a more responsive feel to the application.

## F.7 Using CSS to Create Visual Effects

Scene Builder uses JavaFX **Modena** FX8 CSS style by default when you drag and drop controls onto the Content panel. You can change the JavaFX theme used in your layout by selecting *Preview* from the menu bar and selecting one of the other JavaFX themes listed in the drop-down box. You also can customize the style in your application by changing any of the widgets' properties in the Inspector panel. Scene Builder does not generate CSS files, but it does enable you to use a CSS editor to write and modify your own CSS file. You can then use this file in your FXML layout within the Content panel.

You can use a style sheet on any level of your layout. For example, you can use it on the container level or on a particular widget control by assigning a style from the Stylesheets list in the CSS section of the Properties section. In **Figure F-9**, the background color of the anchor pane has been modified to blue; to create this setting, you select "background color" from the Style list in the Properties section, and then type *Blue*. The background color changes when you press Enter.

**Figure F-9** Individual CSS control edit

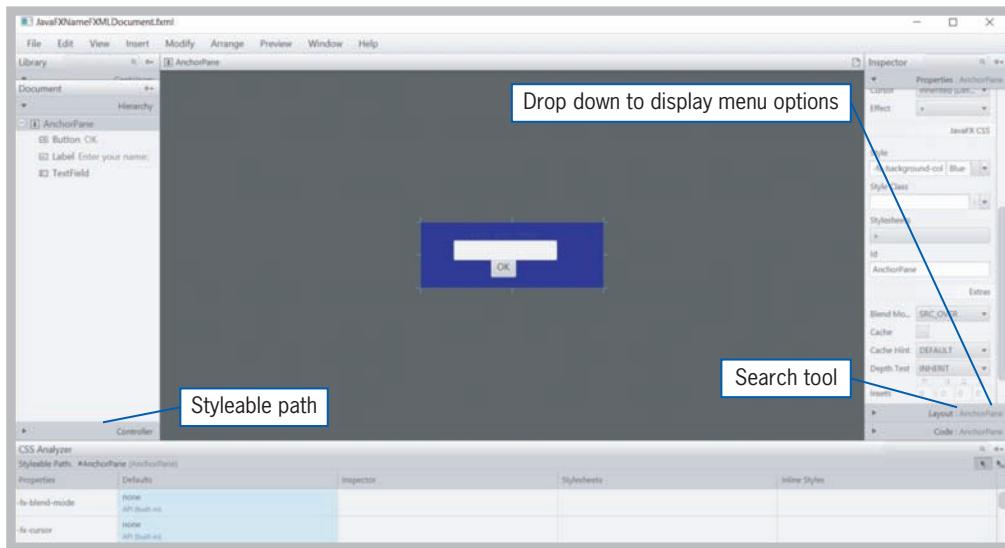


If you define CSS rules on a parent control, the rules will be inherited by all of the child widgets. The CSS files are referenced from the style sheet properties, and therefore are included in the FXML file.

## F8 Editing CSS Files in Scene Builder

To edit an existing CSS file using your system editor from inside Scene Builder, locate the Stylesheets property in the Properties section of the Inspector panel and click the plus (+) sign. Browse to the CSS file, select it, and select Open. Then, open the menu for the style sheet from the drop-down box in the Properties section. The options are *Remove*, *Open*, and *Reveal in Explorer*. The latter option shows the path to your CSS file from Windows Explorer. The *Open* option opens the CSS file in your default CSS editor. Your Java IDE can also serve as a CSS editor, if you prefer. You can add or open a CSS file in your project from the IDE, as shown in **Figure F-10**. It is convenient to store all of your source files in one location.

**Figure F-10** CSS Analyzer panel opened

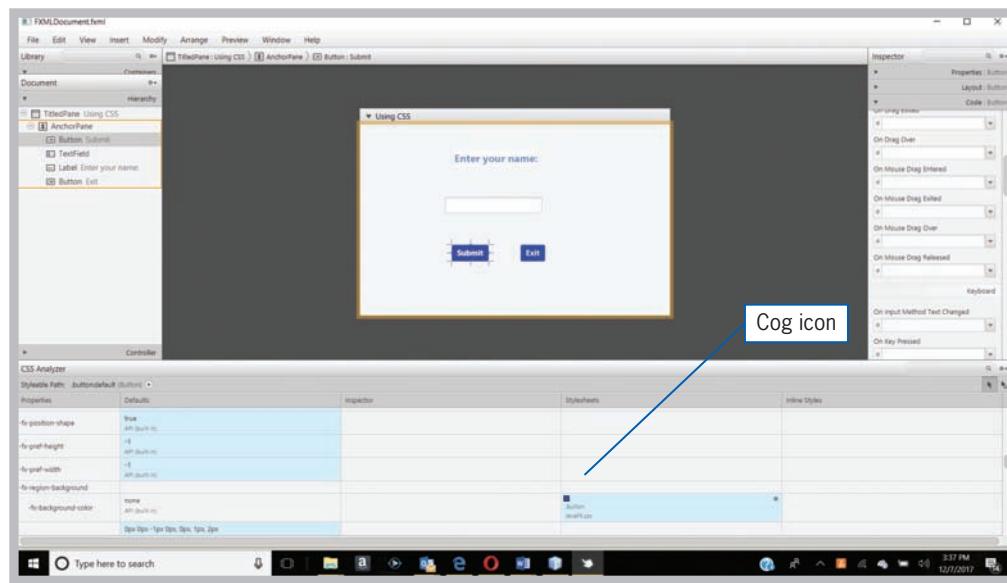


Alternatively, you can edit a CSS file directly from Scene Builder by selecting *Preview* and then *Scene Style Sheets* from the menu bar. You then can use the CSS Analyzer panel. The CSS Analyzer panel is not visible by default, so you might have to turn it on by selecting *View* from the main menu and then *Show CSS Analyzer*. The CSS Analyzer panel shows you how CSS rules affect a currently selected widget with CSS style sheets used in your layout.

As shown in **Figure F-11**, the panel includes several sections, including a Search option at the top right of the panel. Click the drop-down arrow next to the Search tool to display the following CSS Analyzer menu options:

- › **View As**—This option is used to select how you want to see the style properties. The choices are *Table*, *Rules*, and *Text*. The default option is *Table*.
- › **Copy Styleable Path**—This option is used to copy the value in the Styleable Path text field so that it can be pasted into the CSS file.
- › **Hide/Show Properties with Default Values**—This option is used to show or hide properties that have default values.
- › **Join/Split Defaults**—This option allows you to join or split the Defaults column. The column displays values set as a single column (Defaults) when joined, and as two separate columns, API Defaults and FX Theme Defaults, when split. *Joined* is the default value.

**Figure F-11** CSS Analyzer panel with cog icon



The Styleable Path text field is shown at the top left of the CSS Analyzer panel. It can be used to copy the path using the CSS Analyzer menu and then to paste the path in your CSS file to assign a new style value to your controls.

The CSS Picking Mode button, located beneath the Search tool, allows you to select a widget on the Content panel.

A table with five columns is displayed beneath the Styleable Path area:

- › The Properties column displays all the available style properties for the selected widget.
- › The second column is the Defaults column, which displays default values for the selected control and can be split to show both the API and JavaFX style defaults.
- › The Inspector column displays property values that have been set using the Inspector panel. If a property appears in both the Inspector panel and the CSS Analyzer panel, hover over the cell containing the property in the CSS Analyzer panel; a cog icon appears (see Figure F-11). When you click the cog icon, the property is highlighted in the Properties section of the Inspector panel.
- › The Stylesheets column displays the value defined for the widget in the Properties section of the Inspector panel. The cog icon in this column allows you to open the CSS file in your default CSS editor.
- › The final column is the Inline Styles column, which displays the value defined in the JavaFX CSS section of the Properties section. The cog icon in the cell allows you to select *Reveal in Inspector* to display the Style text view in the Inspector panel.

## F.9 Learning to Create Animations in JavaFX

Animation in JavaFX can be as simple as fading one scene to another, rotating an object, or having an object follow a path. To create an animation, you modify an object's properties, such as color, size, opacity, and location. Animation in JavaFX can use methods such as transitions, timelines, and interpolation.

Transitions in JavaFX can use different methods as well as an internal timeline. A **transition** is a change of some kind, such as in size, scale, color, fade, or position. You can create multiple animations that execute either sequentially or in parallel with each other. A **parallel transition** executes multiple transitions concurrently; a **sequential transition** executes transitions one after another.

**Timeline transitions** update property values along a time progression. This technique is similar to creating an animation using frames, as in a movie. JavaFX supports **key frame animation**, which uses start and end frames called key frames. Sometimes these are called snapshots. The transitions of the graphics from one scene to another are controlled by the state of a scene at a particular time. The animation can run, or it can be stopped, paused, rewound, resumed, or repeated by request. Transitions use the *javafx.animation.Animation* class.

**Interpolation** is a process in which the movement positions of an animated object are calculated between the start and end points of the object. JavaFX has an interpolator built in, but you can write your own custom interpolator.

Rather than using a container such as an anchor pane, animation uses a container called **Group**. A Group allows the developer to position objects that are rendered in the order of the node, rather than in the front-to-back order of a **StackPane**. Objects in a Group also are not included in a Group's layout bounds unless the property is set for each object. In other words, an object can disappear off the stage.

## Key Terms

Cascading Style Sheets (CSS)

declarative language

FXML

hardware accelerated

interpolation

JavaFX

key frame animation

markup languages

Modena

parallel transition

root node (root)

Scene

Scene Builder

sequential transition

StackPane

Stage

timeline transitions

transition

user interface (UI)

# GLOSSARY

## A

**absolute path** a complete file path that does not require any other information to locate a file on a system.

**abstract class** a class from which no concrete objects can be instantiated, but which can serve as a basis for inheritance. Abstract classes usually have one or more empty abstract methods. Contrast with *concrete class*.

**abstract data type (ADT)** a type whose implementation is hidden and accessed through its public methods.

**abstract method** a method declared with the keyword `abstract` and that has no body; a subclass must override each base class abstract method.

**Abstract Windows Toolkit (AWT)** a set of GUI components that predates Swing and is less portable than the set of Swing components.

**abstraction** the programming feature that allows a method name to encapsulate multiple statements.

**access modifier** defines the circumstances under which a class can be accessed; often used interchangeably with *access specifier*.

**access specifier** defines the circumstances under which a class can be accessed; often used interchangeably with *access modifier*.

**accessor methods** methods that return information about an object.

**accumulating** the process of repeatedly increasing a value by some amount to produce a total.

**actual parameter** an argument in a method call. Contrast with *formal parameter*.

**ad-hoc polymorphism** polymorphism that occurs when a single method name can be used with a variety of data types because various implementations exist; another name for method overloading.

**add and assign operator (+=)** an operator that alters the value of the operand on the left by adding the operand on the right to it; composed of a plus sign and an equal sign.

**aggregation** a type of containment in which a class contains one or more members of another class that would continue to exist without the object that contains them.

**algorithm** a process or set of steps that solves a problem.

**Allman style** the indent style in which curly braces are aligned and each occupies its own line; named for Eric Allman, a programmer who popularized the style. Contrast with *K & R style*.

**ambiguous** describes a situation in which the compiler cannot determine which method to use.

**anonymous classes** nested, local classes that have no identifier.

**anonymous inner class** a class that has no name and is defined inside another class.

**anonymous object** an unnamed object.

**application file** a file that stores software instructions.

**application software** programs that perform tasks for users. Contrast with *system software*.

**architecturally neutral** describes the feature of Java that allows a program to run on any platform.

**argument index** in a `printf()` statement, an integer that indicates the position of an argument in the argument list.

**arguments** data items sent to methods in a method call.

**array** a named list of data items that all have the same type.

**ArrayList class** a Java class that descends from `AbstractList` and can be used to create containers that store lists of objects.

**Arrays class** a built-in Java class that provides methods for manipulating arrays.

**ascending order** the order of objects arranged from lowest to highest value. See also *descending order*.

**ASCII** an acronym for American Standard Code for Information Interchange, a character set widely used to represent computer data.

**assertion** a Java language feature that can help detect logic errors and debug a program.

**assignment** the act of providing a value for a variable.

**assignment operator** the equal sign (=); any value to the right of the equal sign is assigned to the variable or constant on the left of the equal sign.

**associativity** describes the order in which operands are used with operators.

**at run time** describes the period of time during which a program executes.

**attributes** the characteristics that define an object as part of a class.

## B

**base case** the case in a recursive method that does not make a recursive call.

**base class** a class that is used as a basis for inheritance.

**batch processing** handling data by performing the same tasks with many records, one after the other.

**binary file** a file that contains data items that have not been encoded as text; the contents are in binary format.

**binary numbering system** the numbering system based on two digits, 0 and 1, in which each column represents a value two times higher than the column to its right.

**binary operators** operators that require two operands.

**bit** a binary digit, 0 or 1, used to represent computerized values.

**black box** a device that can be used solely in terms of input and output without regard to how it works internally.

**blank final** a final variable that has not yet been assigned a value.

**block comments** comments that start with a forward slash and an asterisk /\*) and end with an asterisk and a forward slash (\*/). Block comments can appear on a line by themselves, on a line before executable code, or on a line after executable code.

Block comments also can extend across as many lines as needed. Contrast with *line comments*.

**block of code** the code between a pair of curly braces.

**boolean** a data type that can hold only one of two values—true or false.

**border layout manager** a layout manager that divides a container into regions.

**bubble sort** a type of sort that operates by comparing pairs of items and swapping them if they are out of order so that the smallest items “bubble” to the top of the list, eventually creating a sorted list.

**buffer** a memory location that holds data temporarily—for example, when creating a `StringBuilder` object or during input and output operations.

**bugs** flaws or mistakes in a computer program.

**button** a GUI component typically used to trigger an action or make a selection when the user clicks it.

**button group** a GUI component that groups other components, such as check boxes, so a user can select only one at a time.

**byte** the data type that holds very small integers, from -128 to 127.

**bytecode** programming statements that have been compiled into binary format.

## C

**call a procedure** to invoke a method.

**call stack** the memory location where the computer stores the list of memory locations to which the system must return when methods end.

**called method** a term used to describe the relationship between two methods; a method that is invoked by another.

**calling method** a term used to describe the relationship between two methods; a method that invokes another.

**camel casing** a naming style in which an identifier begins with a lowercase letter and subsequent words within the identifier are capitalized. Contrast with *Pascal casing*.

**capacity of an ArrayList** the number of items an `ArrayList` can hold without having to increase its size.

**capacity of the StringBuilder object** the actual length of the buffer of a `StringBuilder`

object, as opposed to that of the string contained in the buffer.

**Cascading Style Sheets (CSS)** a language used for describing the presentation of a document written in a markup language.

**cast operator** an operator that performs an explicit type conversion; created by placing the desired result type in parentheses before the expression to be converted.

**catch block** a segment of code that can handle an exception that might be thrown by the `try` block that precedes it.

**catch or specify requirement** the Java rule that checked exceptions require catching or declaration.

**char** a data type that holds any single character.

**character** any letter, number, or special symbol (such as a punctuation mark) that comprises data.

**Character class** class whose instances can hold a single character value. This class also defines methods that can manipulate or inspect single-character data.

**check box** a GUI element with a label and a clickable square that frequently is used to turn an option on or off.

**checked exceptions** exceptions that a programmer should plan for and from which a program should be able to recover. Contrast with *unchecked exceptions*.

**child class** a derived class.

**class** a group or collection of objects with common properties.

**class body** the set of data items and methods between the curly braces that follow the class header.

**class client** an application or class that instantiates objects of another class. See also *class user*.

**class definition** a description of attributes and methods of objects instantiated from a class.

**class header** the first line of a class that contains an access specifier, the keyword `class`, and the class identifier.

**class methods** static methods that do not have a `this` reference (because they have no object associated with them).

**class natural ordering** the ordering described in a class's `compareTo()` method which, in the

case of `Strings` means alphabetical order, and in the case of `Numbers`, means ascending numerical order.

**class user** an application or class that instantiates objects of another prewritten class. See also *class client*.

**class variables** static variables that are shared by every instantiation of a class.

**class-level Javadoc comments** Javadoc comments that provide a description of a class.

**clean build** a compilation that is created after deleting all previously compiled versions of a class.

**close a file** to make a file no longer available to an application.

**closer in scope** a term that describes the status of a local variable over others that it shadows.

**collection** a group of objects that can be operated on together and whose size can be increased and decreased.

**Collection interface** the Java interface that is the parent class to most Collection interfaces; it includes methods such as `add()` and `remove()` that, respectively, can add and remove an object from a collection.

**combo box** a GUI component that combines a display area showing a default option and a list box containing additional options.

**comes into scope** describes what happens to a variable when it is declared. Contrast with *goes out of scope*.

**comma-separated values (CSV)** describes data stored in a file where fields are separated with a comma.

**commands** program statements.

**comment out** the technique of turning a program statement into a comment so the compiler will not execute its command.

**compareTo()** a method that can be used to place objects in their class natural ordering.

**comparison operator** a relational operator.

**compile-time error** an error for which the compiler detects a violation of language syntax rules and is unable to translate the source code to machine code.

**compiler** a program that translates language statements into machine code, translating an entire program before executing it. Contrast with *interpreter*.

**composition** describes the relationship between classes when one class object is a data field in another class. Also, sometimes more specifically, a containment relationship between classes when an object of the contained class would cease to exist without the containing class. See also *has-a relationship*.

**compound Boolean expression** an expression that contains an AND or OR operator.

**compound condition** the condition that is tested in a compound Boolean expression.

**computer file** a collection of stored information in a computer system.

**computer program** a set of instructions that tells a computer what to do; software. See also *program*.

**computer simulations** programs that attempt to mimic real-world activities so that their processes can be improved or so that users can better understand how the real-world processes operate.

**concatenated** describes values that are added onto the end of another value.

**concrete class** a nonabstract class from which objects can be instantiated. Contrast with *abstract class*.

**conditional operator** an operator that requires three expressions separated with a question mark and a colon; the operator is used as an abbreviated version of the `if...else` structure.

**confirm dialog box** a window that can be created using the `showConfirmDialog()` method in the `JOptionPane` class and that displays the options *Yes*, *No*, and *Cancel*.

**console applications** programs that support character or text output to a computer screen.

**constant** describes values that cannot be changed during the execution of an application.

**constructor** a method that establishes an object.

**container** a type of component that holds other components so they can be treated as a single entity.

**containment** the relationship between classes when one class contains fields that are members of another class. See *has-a relationship*, *composition*, and *aggregation*.

**counted loop** a definite loop.

**counter-controlled loop** a definite loop. Contrast with *event-controlled loop*.

**counting** the process of continually incrementing a variable to keep track of the number of occurrences of some event.

**crash** a premature, unexpected, and inelegant end to a program.

## D

**data fields** data variables declared in a class outside of any method.

**data file** a file that consists of related records that contain facts and figures, such as employee numbers, names, and salaries.

**data type** describes the type of data that can be stored in a variable, how much memory the item occupies, and what types of operations can be performed on the data.

**dead code** statements that cannot be executed because the logical path can never encounter them; in some languages, including Java, an unreachable statement causes a compiler error. Also called *unreachable statements*.

**debugging** the process of locating and repairing a program's errors.

**decimal numbering system** the numbering system based on 10 digits, 0 through 9, in which each column value is 10 times the value of the column to its right.

**decision structure** a logical structure that involves choosing between alternative courses of action based on some value within a program.

**declarative language** a high-level language that defines the desired result without explicitly listing the commands or steps needed to achieve it.

**decrementing** the act of subtracting 1 from a variable.

**default constructor** a constructor that requires no arguments.

**definite loop** a loop that executes a predetermined number of times; a counted loop. Contrast with *indefinite loop*.

**deprecated** describes a Java language feature that is considered obsolete.

**depth of the recursion** the number of times that a recursive method calls itself.

**derived class** a class that inherits from a base class.

**descending order** the order of objects arranged from highest to lowest value. See also *ascending order*.

**development environment** a set of tools that helps programmers by providing such features as displaying a language's keywords in color.

**dialog box** a GUI object resembling a window that displays messages. See also *input dialog box* and *confirm dialog box*.

**direct access file** a random access file.

**directory** element in a storage organization hierarchy. See also *folder*.

**divide and assign operator ( /= )** an operator that alters the value of the operand on the left by dividing the operand on the right into it; composed of a slash and an equal sign.

**do-nothing loop** a loop that performs no actions other than looping.

**do...while loop** a loop that executes a loop body at least one time; it checks the loop control variable at the bottom of the loop after one repetition has occurred.

**documentation comments** comments that automatically generate well-formatted program documentation.

**double** a data type that can hold a floating-point value of up to 14 or 15 significant digits of accuracy. Contrast with *float*.

**double-precision floating-point number** a type of value that is stored in a *double*.

**doubly-linked list** a linked list in which each element holds the addresses of both the element that precedes it and the one that follows it.

**dual-alternative selection** a selection that results in one of two possible courses of action.

**dummy values** values the user enters that are not "real" data, but just signals to stop data entry.

**dynamic method binding** the ability of an application to select the correct subclass method when the program executes. See also *late method binding*.

**dynamically resizable** describes an object whose size can change during program execution.

## E

**editable** describes a component that can accept keystrokes.

**effectively final variable** a variable whose value is assigned only once.

**element** one variable or object in an array.

**else...if clause** a format used in nested *if* statements in which each instance of *else* and its subsequent *if* are placed on the same line.

**else clause** the part of an *if...else* statement that executes when the evaluated Boolean expression is false.

**empty body** a loop block with no statements in it.

**empty statement** a statement that contains only a semicolon.

**encapsulation** the act of hiding data and methods within an object.

**enhanced for loop** a language construct that cycles through an array without specifying the starting and ending points for the loop control variable.

**enum** the keyword used to create an enumerated data type.

**enum constants** the allowed values for an enumerated data type.

**enumerated data type** a programmer-created data type with a fixed set of values.

**enumeration** a data type that consists of a list of values.

**equivalency operator ( == )** the operator composed of two equal signs that compares values and returns *true* if they are equal.

**escape sequence** a sequence that begins with a backslash followed by a character; the pair frequently represents a nonprinting character.

**event** result when a user takes action on a component.

**event handler** a method that executes because it is called automatically when an appropriate event occurs.

**event-controlled loop** an indefinite loop in which the number of executions is determined by user actions. Contrast with *counter-controlled loop*.

**event-driven program** a program in which the user might initiate any number of events in any order.

**exception** in object-oriented terminology, an unexpected or error condition.

**exception handling** an object-oriented technique for managing or resolving errors.

**exception specification** the practice of using the keyword *throws* followed by an *Exception* type in the method header; required when a method throws a checked *Exception* that it will not catch but will be caught by a different method.

**executing** the act of carrying out a program statement or program.

**explicit conversion** the data type transformation caused by using a cast operator.

**extended** describes classes that have descended from another class.

**extends** a keyword used to achieve inheritance in Java.

## F

**factorial** the product of all the integers from 1 up to and including a given integer.

**factory** an object that creates other objects.

**FAQs** acronym for Frequently Asked Questions.

**fault-tolerant** describes applications that are designed so that they continue to operate, possibly at a reduced level, when some part of the system fails.

**field** a data variable declared in a class outside of any method; in reference to file organization, a group of characters that has some meaning.

**file channel** an object that is an avenue for reading and writing a file.

**final** the keyword that precedes named constants, that describes superclass methods that cannot be overridden in a subclass, and that describes classes in which all methods are final.

**finally block** a block of code that executes at the end of a `try...catch` sequence.

**fixed method binding** the opposite of dynamic method binding; occurs when a subclass method is selected while the program compiles rather than while it is running. See also *static method binding*.

**flag** a variable that holds a value (often `true` or `false`) to indicate whether some condition has been met.

**float** a data type that can hold a floating-point value of up to six or seven significant digits of accuracy. Contrast with `double`.

**floating-point** describes a number that contains decimal positions.

**floating-point division** the operation in which two values are divided and either or both are floating-point values.

**flow layout manager** a layout manager that places components in rows; when any row is filled, additional components automatically spill into the next row.

**flowchart** a tool that helps programmers plan a program's logic by writing the steps in diagram form, as a series of shapes connected by arrows.

**flushing** an operation to clear bytes that have been sent to a buffer for output but that have not yet been output to a hardware device.

**folder** element in a storage organization hierarchy. See also *directory*.

**font** the size, weight, and style of a typeface.

**for loop** a loop that can be used when a definite number of loop iterations is required and that contains initialization, testing, and altering of a loop control variable.

**foreach loop** the enhanced `for` loop.

**formal parameter** a variable in a method declaration that accept the values from actual parameters. Contrast with *actual parameter*.

**format specifier** in a `printf()` statement, a placeholder for a numeric value.

**format string** in a `printf()` statement, a string of characters that includes optional text (that is displayed literally) and one or more format specifiers.

**fractal** a picture that is created by using infinite copies of itself.

**fragile** describes classes that are prone to errors.

**frame** a GUI component that is similar to a window, but that has a title bar and border.

**fully qualified identifier** describes a filename that includes the entire hierarchy in which a class is stored.

**function** a method with no side effect, in some programming languages.

**functional interface** an interface that contains just one abstract method.

**fundamental classes** basic classes contained in the `java.lang` package that are imported automatically into every program. Contrast with *optional classes*.

**FXML** an XML-based, declarative markup language used by JavaFX to define user interfaces.

## G

**garbage value** the unknown value stored in an uninitialized variable.

**generic class** a class that uses one or more type parameters.

**generic method** a method that uses one or more type parameters.

**generic programming** a style of computer programming in which code is written with data types to be specified later.

**goes out of scope** describes what happens to a variable at the end of the block in which it is declared. Contrast with *comes into scope*.

**graphical user interfaces (GUIs)** environments that allow users to interact with a program in a graphical environment.

**GUI components** graphical user interface components, such as buttons and text fields, with which the user can interact.

## H

**hardware** the general term for computer equipment.

**hardware accelerated** describes software that takes advantage of computer hardware to perform some functions, such as media and graphics, more efficiently.

**has-a relationship** a relationship based on containment.

**hash code** a calculated number used to identify an object.

**heavyweight components** components that require interaction with the local operating system. Contrast with *lightweight components*.

**hexadecimal numbering system** the numbering system based on 16 digits, 0 through 9 and A through F, in which each column represents a value 16 times higher than the column to its right.

**high-level programming language** a language that uses a vocabulary of reasonable terms, such as *read*, *write*, or *add*, instead of referencing the sequences of on and off switches that perform these tasks. Contrast with *low-level programming language*.

**HTML (Hypertext Markup Language)** a simple language used to create Web pages.

## I

**identifier** the name of a program component such as a class, object, or variable.

**if...else statement** a dual-alternative selection statement.

**if clause** the part of an if...else statement that executes when the evaluated Boolean expression is true.

**if statement** a single-alternative selection statement.

**immutable** describes objects that cannot be changed.

**implementation** the actions that execute within a method; the method body.

**implementation hiding** a principle of object-oriented programming that describes the encapsulation of method details within a class.

**implicit conversion** the automatic transformation of one data type to another. Also called *promotion*.

**import statement** a Java statement that allows access to a built-in Java class that is contained in a package.

**inclusion polymorphism** the situation in which a single method implementation can be used with a variety of related objects because they are objects of subclasses of the parameter type. See also *pure polymorphism*.

**incrementing** the act of adding 1 to a variable.

**indefinite loop** a loop in which the final number of iterations is unknown. Contrast with *definite loop*.

**index** a subscript.

**indirect recursion** recursion which occurs when a method calls another method that eventually results in the original method being called again.

**infinite loop** a loop that never ends.

**information hiding** the object-oriented programming principle used when creating private access for data fields that describes that a class's private data can be changed or manipulated only by a class's own methods.

**inheritance** a mechanism that enables one class to inherit, or assume, both the behavior and the attributes of another class.

**initialization** the act of making an assignment at the time of variable declaration.

**initialization list** a series of values provided for an array when it is declared.

**inlining** an automatic process that optimizes performance by replacing calls to methods with implementations.

**inner block** a block contained in an outer block.

**inner classes** nested classes that require an instance. See also *nonstatic member classes*.

**inner loop** a loop that is contained entirely within another loop.

**input dialog box** a GUI object that asks a question and provides a text field in which the user can enter a response.

**insertion sort** a sorting algorithm that operates by comparing each list element with earlier ones and, if the element is out of order, opening a spot for it by moving all subsequent elements down the list.

**instance** an existing object of a class.

**instance methods** methods used with object instantiations. See also *nonstatic methods*.

**instance variable** a nonstatic class field that exists separately for each instantiated object.

**instant access file** a random access file.

**instantiation** refers to the process of creating an object, and also describes one tangible object created from a class.

**int** a data type used to declare variables and constants that store integers in the range of -2,147,483,648 to 2,147,483,647.

**integer** a whole number without decimal places.

**integer division** the operation in which one integer value is divided by another; the result contains no fractional part.

**interactive program** a program in which the user makes direct requests.

**interface** a construct similar to a class, except that all of its methods must be abstract and all of its data (if any) must be `static final`; it declares method headers, but not instructions within those methods.

**interface to a method** describes the part of a method that a client sees and uses; includes the method's return type, name, and arguments.

**interpolation** a technique that determines how an animation transitions between values over its timeline.

**interpreter** a program that translates language statements into machine code. An interpreter translates and executes one statement at a time. Contrast with *compiler*.

**invoke** to call or execute a method.

**is-a relationship** the relationship between an object and the class of which it is a member.

**iteration** one loop execution.

**iterative approach** the type of approach used to produce a solution to a problem using looping as opposed to using recursion.

**iterator** an object that can be used to loop through the elements in a Collection.

## J

**jagged array** a two-dimensional array that has rows of different lengths. See also *ragged array*.

**Java** an object-oriented programming language used both for general-purpose business applications and for interactive, Web-based Internet applications.

**Java API** the application programming interface, a collection of information about how to use every prewritten Java class.

**Java Collections framework** a set of interfaces and classes that is part of the Java language and that help manage groups of objects.

**Java Foundation Classes (JFC)** selected classes from the `java.awt` package, including Swing component classes.

**Java FX** a software platform for creating desktop applications intended to replace Swing eventually.

**Java interpreter** the program that checks bytecode and communicates with the operating system, executing the bytecode instructions line by line within the Java Virtual Machine.

**Java Virtual Machine (JVM)** a hypothetical (software-based) computer on which Java runs.

**java.lang package** the package that is implicitly imported into every Java program and that contains the fundamental classes.

**Javadoc** a documentation generator that creates Application Programming Interface (API) documentation in Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) format from Java source code.

**Javadoc tag** a keyword within a comment that the Javadoc tool can process.

**JDK** the Java Standard Edition Development Kit.

## K

**K & R style** the indent style in which the opening brace follows the header line; it is named for Kernighan and Ritchie, who wrote the first book on the C programming language. Contrast with *Allman style*.

**key field** the field in a record that makes the record unique from all others.

**key frame animation** in JavaFX animations, a technique that uses specific locations for changes to occur.

**keyboard buffer** a small area of memory where keystrokes are stored before they are retrieved into a program. Also called the *type-ahead buffer*.

**keywords** the words that are part of a programming language.

## L

**label** an uneditable GUI component that most often is used to provide information for a user.

**lambda expression** an expression that creates an object that implements a functional interface.

**lambda operator** operator used in a lambda expression that is composed of a minus sign and greater-than sign.

**late method binding** the ability of an application to select the correct subclass method when the program executes. See also *dynamic method binding*.

**layout manager** class that controls component positioning in a UI environment.

**lexicographical comparison** a comparison based on the integer Unicode values of characters.

**library of classes** a folder that provides a convenient grouping for classes. See also *package*.

**lightweight components** components written completely in Java that do not have to rely on the code written to run in the local operating system. Contrast with *heavyweight components*.

**line comments** comments that start with two forward slashes (//) and continue to the end of the current line. Line comments can appear on a line by themselves or at the end of a line following executable code. Contrast with *block comments*.

**linked list** a collection of data elements in which each element holds the memory address of one or more other elements to which it is logically connected.

**LinkedList class** the Java class that stores linked lists; it is a doubly-linked list.

**list** a collection of an ordered sequence of objects.

**List interface** a Java language interface that extends `Collection` and provides the capability for elements to be inserted or accessed by their position in a list; it can contain duplicate elements.

**listener** an object that is interested in, and reacts to, an event.

**literal constant** a value that is taken literally at each use. See also *unnamed constant*.

**literal string** a series of characters that appear exactly as entered; in Java, a literal string appears between double quotation marks.

**local classes** nested classes that are local to a block of code.

**local variable** a variable known only within the boundaries of a method.

**logic** describes the order of program statements that produce correct results.

**logic error** a programming bug that allows a source program to be translated to an executable program successfully, but that produces incorrect results.

**logical AND operator ( && )** an operator used between Boolean expressions to determine whether both are true; written as two ampersands.

**logical OR operator ( || )** an operator used between Boolean expressions to determine whether either expression is true; written as two pipes.

**long** a data type that holds very large integers from -9,223,372,036,854,775,808 to 9,223,372,036,854,775,807.

**look and feel (L & F)** the elements of design, style, and functionality in a user interface.

**loop** a structure that allows repeated execution of a block of statements.

**loop body** the block of statements that executes when the Boolean expression that controls the loop is true.

**loop control variable** a variable whose value determines whether loop execution continues.

**loop fusion** the technique of combining two loops into one.

**lossless conversion** a data type conversion in which no data is lost.

**lossy conversion** a data type conversion in which some data is lost.

**low-level programming language** a language that corresponds closely to a computer processor's circuitry. Contrast with *high-level programming language*. Compare with *machine language*.

**lvalue** an expression that can appear only on the left side of an assignment statement. Contrast with *rvalue*.

## M

**machine code** machine language.

**machine language** circuitry-level language; a series of on and off switches. Compare with *low-level programming language*.

**magic number** a value that does not have immediate, intuitive meaning or a number that cannot be explained without additional knowledge. Unnamed constants are magic numbers.

**markup languages** languages that specify the design presentation, formatting, layout, and style of text on a Web page.

**matrix** a two-dimensional array.

**member-level Javadoc comments** Javadoc comments that describe the fields, methods, and constructors of a class.

**method** a program module that contains a series of statements that carry out a task.

**method body** the set of statements between curly braces that follow the method header and carry out the method's actions.

**method declaration** another name for a method header.

**method header** the declaration or first line of a method that contains information about how other methods interact with it.

**method's type** the method's return type.

**mission critical** any crucial process in an organization.

**Modena** in JavaFX, the default CSS style used by Scene Builder.

**modulus operator** the percent sign (%); when it is used with two integers, the result is an integer with the value of the remainder after division takes place. Also called the *remainder operator*, or *mod*.

**multidimensional array** an array that contains two or more dimensions.

**multiple inheritance** the capability to inherit from more than one class; Java does not support multiple inheritance.

**multiply and assign operator ( \*= )** an operator that alters the value of the operand on the left

by multiplying the operand on the right by it; composed of an asterisk and an equal sign.

**mutator methods** methods that set field values.

## N

**named constant** a named memory location whose value cannot change during program execution.

**NaN** abbreviation for *Not a Number*.

**nanosecond** one-billionth of a second.

**nested** describes the relationship of statements, blocks, or classes when one contains the other.

**nested classes** classes contained in other classes.

**nested if statements** describes *if* statements when one is contained within another.

**nested loops** describes loops when one is contained within another.

**new operator** an operator that allocates the memory needed to hold an object.

**nonabstract method** a method that is given a body.

**nonstatic member classes** nested classes that require an instance. See also *inner classes*.

**nonstatic methods** methods used with object instantiations. See also *instance methods*.

**nonvolatile storage** storage that does not require power to retain information. Contrast with *volatile storage*.

**NOT operator ( ! )** the operator that negates the result of any Boolean expression.

**null String** a *String* that does not hold a memory address and that can be created by assigning the value *null* or by making no assignment to a declared string.

**numeric constant** a number whose value is taken literally at each use.

## O

**object** an instance of a class.

**Object class** a class defined in the `java.lang` package that is imported automatically into every Java program; every Java class descends from the *Object* class.

**object-oriented programs** programs that use a style of programming that involves creating classes, creating objects from those classes, and

creating applications that use those objects. Contrast with *procedural programming*.

**octothorpe** the pound sign.

**one-dimensional array** an array that contains one column of values and whose elements are accessed using a single subscript. See also *single-dimensional array*.

**open a file** to make a file accessible; in Java, the action that creates an object and associates a stream of bytes with it.

**operand** a value used on either side of an operator.

**operator precedence** the rules for the order in which parts of a mathematical expression are evaluated.

**optional classes** classes that reside in packages that must be explicitly imported into programs. Contrast with *fundamental classes*.

**out of bounds** describes a subscript that is not within the allowed range for an array.

**outer block** a block that contains a nested block.

**outer loop** a loop that contains another loop.

**overhead** excess computation time when one problem-solving approach is used in lieu of another.

**overloading** describes using one term to indicate diverse meanings, or writing multiple methods with the same name but with different arguments.

**override** describes the precedence of a variable's name in a called method when the same name exists in the calling method; also to use the child class's version of a field or method instead of the parent's.

**@Override annotation** a directive that notifies the compiler of the programmer's intention to override a parent class method in a child class.

## P

**package** a named collection or library of classes. See also *library of classes*.

**parallel array** an array with the same number of elements as another, and for which the values in corresponding elements are related.

**parallel transition** in JavaFX animations, a transition that executes concurrently with others.

**parameter** a data item received by a method.

**parent class** a base class.

**parsing** the process of breaking something into its component parts.

**Pascal casing** the style of using an uppercase letter to begin an identifier and to start each new word in an identifier. Contrast with *camel casing*. Compare to *upper camel casing*.

**passed by reference** describes what happens when a reference (address) is passed to a method. Contrast with *passed by value*.

**passed by value** describes what happens when a variable is passed to a method and a copy is made in the receiving method. Contrast with *passed by reference*.

**passing arguments** the act of sending arguments to a method.

**path** the complete list of the disk drive plus the hierarchy of directories in which a file resides.

**path delimiter** the character used to separate path components.

**pattern string** an argument used with the DecimalFormat class that is composed of symbols that determine what a formatted number looks like.

**permanent storage device** a hardware storage device that retains data even when power is lost.

**pixels** the picture elements, or tiny dots of light, that make up the image on a video monitor.

**polymorphism** the feature of languages that allows the same word to be interpreted correctly in different situations based on the context; the act of using the same method name to indicate different implementations.

**populating an array** the act of providing values for all of the elements in an array.

**postfix decrement operator** an operator that subtracts 1 from a variable after evaluating it.

**postfix increment operator** an operator that is composed by placing two plus signs to the right of a variable; it evaluates the variable, then adds 1 to it. Contrast with *prefix increment operator*.

**posttest loop** a loop in which the loop control variable is tested after the loop body executes. Contrast with *pretest loop*.

**prefix decrement operator** an operator that subtracts 1 from a variable before evaluating it.

**prefix increment operator** an operator that is composed by placing two plus signs to the left of a variable; it adds 1 to the variable, then evaluates it. Contrast with *postfix increment operator*.

**pretest loop** a loop in which the loop control variable is tested before the loop body executes. Contrast with *posttest loop*.

**primary key** a unique identifier for data within a database.

**priming input** the first input statement prior to a loop that will execute subsequent input statements for the same variable.

**primitive type** a simple data type. Java's primitive types are byte, short, int, long, float, double, char, and boolean.

**private access** describes a field or method that no other classes can access.

**procedural programming** a style of programming in which sets of operations are executed one after another in sequence. Contrast with *object-oriented programs*.

**procedures** sets of operations performed by a computer program.

**program** a set of instructions that tells a computer what to do; software. See also *computer program*.

**program comments** nonexecuting statements added to a Java file for documentation.

**program file** a file that stores software instructions.

**program statements** similar to English sentences; instructions that carry out the tasks that programs perform.

**programmer-defined data type** a type that is created by a programmer and not built into the language; a class.

**promotion** the automatic transformation of one data type to another. Also called *implicit conversion*.

**prompt** a message that describes and requests user input.

**properties** the characteristics that define an object; an instance variable, field, or attribute of a class.

**protected access** describes an intermediate level of security between public and private; a class's protected members can be used by a class and its descendants, but not by outside classes.

**pseudocode** a tool that helps programmers plan a program's logic by writing plain English statements without concern for programming language syntax.

**pseudorandom** describes numbers that appear to be random, but are the same set of numbers whenever the seed is the same.

**public** a Java keyword that describes how methods can access a field or method.

**pure polymorphism** the situation in which a single method implementation can be used with a variety of related objects because they are objects of subclasses of the parameter type. See also *inclusion polymorphism*.

## R

**ragged array** a two-dimensional array that has rows of different lengths. See also *jagged array*.

**random access file** a file in which records can be accessed in any order.

**random access memory (RAM)** temporary, volatile storage.

**random number** a number whose value cannot be predicted.

**range check** a series of statements that determine within which of a set of ranges a value falls.

**range match** the process of comparing a value to the endpoints of numerical ranges to find a category to which the value belongs.

**real-time** describes applications that require a record to be accessed immediately while a client is waiting.

**record** a keyword that defines an immutable class that requires only field definitions.

**record** in file organization, a collection of fields that contain data about an entity.

**recursion** a problem-solving method that breaks a problem's solution into smaller instances of the same problem.

**recursive cases** the cases in a recursive method that make recursive calls.

**recursive method** a method that calls itself.

**redeclare a variable** to attempt to declare a variable twice—an illegal action.

**reference to an object** a memory address where an object is held.

**reference types** data types that hold memory addresses where values are stored.

**register** to sign up an object as an event listener.

**relational operator** an operator that compares two items; an expression that contains a relational operator has a Boolean value.

**relative path** a path that depends on other path information to be complete.

**remainder and assign operator ( %= )** an operator that alters the value of the operand on the left by assigning the remainder when the left operand is divided by the right operand; composed of a percent sign and an equal sign.

**remainder operator** the percent sign (%); when it is used with two integers, the result is an integer with the value of the remainder after division takes place. Also called the *modulus operator*.

**return a value** to send a data value from a called method back to the calling method.

**return statement** a statement that ends a method and frequently sends a value from a called method back to the calling method.

**return type** the type of data that, upon completion of a method, is sent back to its calling method.

**robustness** describes the degree to which a system is resilient to stress, maintaining correct functioning.

**root directory** the main directory of a storage device, outside any folders.

**root node (root)** In JavaFX, the topmost layout of the StackPane.

**runtime error** an error that occurs when a program compiles successfully but does not execute.

**runtime exception** an unplanned exception that occurs during a program's execution; used more specifically to describe a member of the RuntimeException class.

**rvalue** an expression that can appear only on the right side of an assignment statement. Contrast with *lvalue*.

## S

**Scene** a JavaFX class that resides inside the Stage and contains all of the content of an FX application.

**Scene Builder** a JavaFX design tool that allows a developer to create an interface visually.

**scientific notation** a display format that more conveniently expresses large or small numeric values; a multidigit number is converted to a single-digit number (possibly with decimal places) and multiplied by 10 to a power.

**scope** the part of a program in which a variable exists and can be accessed using its unqualified name.

**scope level** in Java, a variable's block. See also *scope*.

**SDK** a software development kit, or a set of tools useful to programmers; the Java EE Development Kit.

**searching an array** the process of comparing a value to a list of values in an array, looking for a match.

**seed** a starting value used with random number generators.

**seekable** describes a file channel in which operations can start at any specified position.

**semantic errors** the type of errors that occur when a correct word is used in the wrong context in program code.

**sentinel** a value that stops a loop.

**sequence structure** a logical structure in which one step follows another unconditionally.

**sequential access file** a data file that contains records that are accessed one after the other in the order in which they were stored.

**sequential transition** in JavaFX animation, a transition that executes in sequence with others.

**shadowing** the action that occurs when a local variable hides a variable with the same name that is further away in scope.

**short** the data type that holds small integers, from -32,768 to 32,767.

**short-circuit evaluation** describes the feature of the AND and OR operators in which evaluation is performed only as far as necessary to make a final decision.

**side effect** any action in a method other than returning a value.

**signature** a method's name and the number, types, and order of arguments.

**significant digits** refers to the mathematical accuracy of a value.

**single-alternative selection** a decision structure that performs an action, or not, based on one alternative.

**single-dimensional array** an array that contains one column of values and whose elements are accessed using a single subscript. See also *one-dimensional array*.

**single-precision floating-point number** a type of value that is stored in a `float`.

**singly-linked list** a linked list in which each element holds only the address of the item that follows it.

**software** the general term for computer programs.

**sorting** the process of arranging a series of objects in some logical order.

**source code** programming statements written in a high-level programming language.

**source of an event** a component on which an event is generated.

**stack trace** a list that displays all the methods that were called during program execution.

**stack trace history list** a list that displays all the methods that were called during program execution.

**stackPane** a JavaFX class that provides the layout of a Scene.

**stage** the JavaFX class that describes a container for an application.

**standard arithmetic operators** operators that are used to perform common calculations.

**standard input device** usually the keyboard.

**standard output device** usually the monitor.

**state** the values of the attributes of an object.

**static** a keyword that means a method is accessible and usable even though no objects of the class exist.

**static import feature** a feature in Java that allows you to use static constants without their class name.

**static member classes** nested classes that have access to all `static` methods of their top-level class.

**static method binding** the opposite of dynamic method binding; occurs when a subclass method is selected while the program compiles rather than while it is running. See also *fixed method binding*.

**stream** a pipeline or channel through which bytes flow into and out of an application.

**string class** a Java class that can be used to hold character strings.

**StringBuffer class** a thread safe class for storing and manipulating changeable data composed of multiple characters.

**StringBuilder class** an efficient built-in Java class for storing and manipulating changeable data composed of multiple characters.

**strongly typed language** a language in which all variables must be declared before they can be used.

**stub** a method that contains no statements; programmers create stubs as temporary placeholders during the program development process.

**subclass** a base class.

**subscript** an integer (contained within square brackets in Java) that indicates one of an array's variables, or elements.

**subtract and assign operator ( -= )** an operator that alters the value of the operand on the left by subtracting the operand on the right from it; it is composed of a minus sign and an equal sign.

**subtype polymorphism** the ability of one method name to work appropriately for different subclasses of a parent class.

**super** a Java keyword that always refers to a class's immediate superclass.

**superclass** a base class.

**Swing** a set of GUI elements such as dialog boxes and buttons that is newer and more portable than the set in the AWT; their names usually begin with `J`.

**switch expression** an alternative to the `switch` statement that can be used when all cases result in an assignment to the same variable.

**switch statement** a statement that uses up to four keywords to test a single variable against a series of exact integer or character values. The keywords are `switch`, `case`, `break`, and `default`.

**symbolic constant** a named constant.

**syntactic salt** describes a language feature designed to make it harder to write bad code.

**syntactic sugar** describes aspects of a computer language that make it "sweeter," or easier, for programmers to use.

**syntax** the rules that define how language elements are used together correctly to create usable statements.

**syntax error** a programming error that occurs when a program contains typing errors or incorrect language use; a program containing syntax errors cannot be translated into an executable program.

**system software** the set of programs that manage the computer. Contrast with *application software*.

## T

**table** a two-dimensional array; a matrix.

**ternary operator** an operator that needs three operands.

**text block** a multi-line string literal that avoids the need for an escape sequence to display output on multiple lines.

**text field** a GUI component into which the user can type a single line of text data.

**text file** a file that contains data that can be read in a text editor because the data has been encoded using a scheme such as ASCII or Unicode.

**this reference** a reference to an object that is passed to any object's nonstatic class method.

**threads of execution** units of processing that are scheduled by an operating system and that can be used to create multiple paths of control during program execution.

**throw statement** a statement that sends an Exception out of a block or a method so it can be handled elsewhere.

**throws clause** an exception specification in a method header.

**timeline transitions** in JavaFX, updates to property values over time.

**TOCTTOU bug** an acronym that describes an error that occurs when changes take place from Time Of Check To Time Of Use.

**token** a unit of data; the Scanner class separates input into tokens.

**top-level class** the containing class in nested classes.

**transition** a tool used in JavaFX for creating animations using an internal timeline.

**try block** a block of code that a programmer acknowledges might generate an exception.

**two-dimensional array** an array that contains two or more columns of values and whose elements are accessed using multiple subscripts. Contrast with *one-dimensional array*.

**type casting** an action that forces a value of one data type to be used as a value of another type.

**type conversion** the process of converting one data type to another.

**type parameter** an identifier that specifies the name of the generic type that will be used in a class.

**type parameter section** the section in a generic class declaration that is composed of one or more type parameters between angle brackets (< and >).

**type-ahead buffer** a small area of memory where keystrokes are stored before they are retrieved into a program. Also called the *keyboard buffer*.

**type-safe** describes a data type for which only appropriate behaviors are allowed.

**type-wrapper classes** classes that contain methods that can process primitive type values.

## U

**unary cast operator** a more complete name for the *cast operator* that performs explicit conversions.

**unary operator** an operator that uses only one operand.

**unchecked exceptions** exceptions that cannot reasonably be expected to be recovered from while a program is executing. Contrast with *checked exceptions*.

**Unicode** an international system of character representation.

**unifying type** a single data type to which all operands in an expression are converted.

**uninitialized variable** a variable that has been declared but that has not been assigned a value.

**unnamed constant** a constant value that has no identifier associated with it. See also *literal constant*.

**unreachable statements** statements that cannot be executed because the logical path can never encounter them; in some languages, including Java, an unreachable statement causes a compiler error. See also *dead code*.

**upcast** to change an object to an object of a class higher in its inheritance hierarchy.

**upper camel casing** the style of using an uppercase letter to begin an identifier and to start each new word in an identifier. Also called *Pascal casing*.

**user interface (UI)** the means by which a user and an application interact.

**V**

**validating data** the process of ensuring that a value falls within a specified range.

**variable** a named memory location whose contents can be altered during program execution.

**variable declaration** a statement that reserves a named memory location.

**virtual class** the name given to an abstract class in some other programming languages, such as C++.

**virtual keyboard** a computer keyboard that appears on the screen. A user operates it by using a mouse to point to and click keys; if the computer has a touch screen, the user touches keys with a finger or stylus.

**virtual method calls** method calls in which the method used is determined when the program runs, because the type of the object used might not be known until the method executes.

**void** a keyword that, when used in a method header, indicates that the method does not return any value when it is called.

**volatile storage** memory that requires power to retain information. Contrast with *nonvolatile storage*.

**W**

**while loop** a construct that executes a body of statements continually as long as the Boolean expression that controls entry into the loop continues to be true.

**whitespace** any combination of nonprinting characters; for example, spaces, tabs, and carriage returns (blank lines).

**wildcard symbol** a symbol used to indicate that it can be replaced by any set of characters. In a Java `import` statement, the wildcard symbol is an asterisk (\*).

**window** a rectangular container that can hold GUI components.

**window decorations** the icons and buttons that are part of a window or frame.

**windowed applications** programs that create a graphical user interface (GUI) with elements such as menus, toolbars, and dialog boxes.

**wrapped** to be encompassed in another type.

**wrapper** a class or object that is “wrapped around” a simpler element.

**“Write once, run anywhere” (WORA)** a slogan developed by Sun Microsystems to describe the ability of one Java program version to work correctly on multiple platforms.

**A**

absolute path, 444  
 abstract classes, 352–359  
*AbstractCollection*, 514  
 abstract data type (ADT), 128  
 abstraction, 85  
*AbstractList*, 514  
 abstract method, 353  
*AbstractSequentialList*, 514  
 Abstract Windows Toolkit (AWT), 546  
 access modifiers, 86  
 accessor methods, 119  
 access specifiers, 14, 86–87  
 accumulating, 210  
*ActionListener*, 569–571  
*actionPerformed()* method, 564–569  
 actual parameter, 94  
*addActionListener()* method, 564, 566, 570  
 add and assign operator ( $+=$ ), 211, 229  
*addItemListener()* method, 570  
*add()* method, 553  
 ad-hoc polymorphism, 360  
*AdjustmentListener*, 570, 571  
 aggregation, 331  
 algorithm, 293  
 Allman style, 16  
 ambiguity, 107–108  
 ambiguous, 107  
 American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII), 594  
 AND (`&&`) operator, 174, 176–177, 180–181, 194  
     and OR (`||`) operator, 188  
 anonymous classes, 151  
 anonymous inner class, 379–381  
 anonymous object, 241  
*append()* method, 255  
 Application class, 614–616  
 application file, 442  
 Application Programming Interface (API)  
     documentation, 607  
 applications, types of, 5  
 application software, 2  
 architecturally neutral, 8  
 argument index, 600–601  
 arguments, 11, 91, 95, 98–99  
 arithmetic expression, 97  
 arithmetic operators  
     associativity and precedence, 69

floating-point numbers, 70  
 relative precedence of, 69  
 shortcut, 210–213  
 statements efficiently, writing, 69–70  
 using variables and constants, 68–72  
*ArrayList* class, 514–524, 526, 528  
     capacity of, 515  
 arrays  
     class, 307–311  
     creating enumerations, 311–316  
     declaration of, 267–271  
     definition of, 268  
     initialization of, 271–273  
     multidimensional array, 304–305  
     of objects, 277–283  
     parallel, 284–286  
     part of, 275–277  
     passing and returning, from methods, 289–292  
     searching, 284, 286–288  
     sorting process, 292–300  
     of strings, 279–283  
     subclass objects, creation of, 361–363  
     two-dimensional arrays, 301–306  
     variable subscripts with, 273–277  
*Arrays.binarySearch()* method, 308, 311  
*Arrays* class, 307–311  
*Arrays.fill()* method, 307, 310  
*Arrays.sort()* method, 307  
 ascending order, 292  
 assertions, 421–424, 434  
 assert statement, 422, 424  
 assignment, 41  
 assignment operator, 41, 58, 125, 184  
     instead of equivalency operator, 165  
 associativity, 41, 69  
 at run time, 2  
 attributes, 6  
 automatic type conversion, 73

**B**

backslash (`\`), 55, 444, 450  
 base case, 491  
 base class. *See superclass*  
*BasicFileAttributes.class*, 448  
*BasicFileAttributes* object, 448  
 batch processing, 461

binary digit, 592  
 binary file, 442  
 binary numbering system, 592  
 binary operators, 68, 74  
`binarySearch()` method, 307–309  
 bit, 592  
 black box, 91  
 blank final, 42  
 block comments, 25, 26  
 block of code, 43, 99  
 blocks, 99–104  
 boolean data type, 51–52  
 Boolean expression, 186, 201  
 Boolean values, 162  
`BorderLayout`, 555  
 border layout manager, 555  
 bubble sort algorithm, 293–295, 298–300  
 buffer, 254, 451  
`BufferedInputStream`, 453  
`BufferedOutputStream`, 453, 454  
`BufferedReader`, 453, 456, 458, 459  
`BufferedWriter`, 453, 458, 461, 464  
 bugs, 3  
 button, defined, 560  
 button group, 574  
`ButtonGroup` class, 574–575  
`ByteBuffer` object, 462  
`ByteBuffer wrap()` method, 462  
 bytecode, 9, 18  
 byte data type, 47

**C**

call a procedure, 5  
 called method, 83, 91, 415  
 calling method, 83, 87, 91, 94, 95, 96, 415  
 call stack, 415, 416, 434  
     tracing exceptions through, 415–418  
 camel casing, 40  
`capacity()` method, 254  
 capacity of `ArrayList`, 515  
 capacity of the `StringBuilder` object, 254  
 Cascading Style Sheets (CSS), 614  
     create visual effects, 621–622  
     editing files, in Scene Builder,  
     622–623  
 cast operator, 73–74  
 catalog order, 11  
 catch block, 397–400, 409–410  
 catch or specify requirement, 414  
 change directory, 588–589  
`ChangeListener`, 570  
 Character class, 237, 258  
     definition, 239  
     methods, 238–240  
     testing, 240–241

characters, 450  
     literal string of, 11  
     newline, 55  
     nonprinting, 55  
     string of, 54  
 character values, 594  
`charAt()` method, 58, 246, 247,  
     255, 308  
 char data type, 53–57, 183, 238  
`checkAccess()` method, 446  
 check box, 572  
 checked exceptions, 413, 414  
 child class, 331  
 class, 6–7, 85. *See also specific entries*  
     anonymous inner class, 379–380  
     body, 14  
     composition, 150–151  
     concept of, 116  
     constructors, 125, 133–134, 147  
     creation, 117–119  
     data hiding, 126  
     data types, 128–131  
     definition, 6  
     extending, 332–336, 374  
     importing, 145–146  
     instance methods in, 119–124  
     instantiation of, 116  
     `Integer`, 250  
     library of, 143  
     methods, 139  
     nested, 151–152  
     object-oriented programming, 6–7  
     and objects, 115–117  
     `String`, 241  
     variables, 139  
     wrapper, 250  
 class and classpath variables, 589  
 class client, 117  
 class header, 14  
 class-level Javadoc comments, 608, 609  
 class natural ordering, 520  
 class user, 117  
 clean build, 24  
 client method. *See* calling method  
`close()` method, 456, 458  
 closer in scope, 136  
 collection, defined, 511  
 collection interface, 511–512  
`Collections.sort()` method, 518, 520,  
     521, 523  
 combo box, 575  
 comes into scope, 100  
 command prompt, 588–589  
 commands, 2  
 comma-separated values (CSV), 451  
 comment out, 25

comments  
 block, 25, 26  
 documentation, 25  
 to Java class, 25–27  
 Javadoc, 25, 26  
 line, 25, 26  
 types of, 25  
`compareTo()` method, 244, 245, 314, 448, 520  
 comparison operator, 51  
 compiler, 2, 107  
 compile-time errors, 20, 24  
 Component class, 546  
 composite type, 128  
 composition, 150–151, 154, 331  
 compound Boolean expression, 174  
 compound condition, 174  
 computer file, 441–443  
 computer-generated random numbers, 603–604  
 computer program, 1  
 in high-level programming language, 2  
 in low-level programming language, 2  
 computer simulations, 5  
 computer systems, 1  
`computeSavings()` method, 500–502  
 concatenated, 43  
 strings to variables and constants, 43–44  
 concrete class, 352  
 conditional operator, 186–187, 194  
`ConfirmDialog`, 64  
 confirm dialog boxes, 66–67  
 console applications, 9, 10  
 constant fields, 140–141  
 constants, 39  
 arithmetic using, 68–72  
 character values, 53  
 concatenating strings to, 43–44  
 declaring and using, 39–47  
 literal, 39  
 named. *See* named constants  
 numeric, 39, 53  
 scope of, 43  
 unnamed, 39  
 construction, 86–89  
 constructors, 125  
 to class, 133–134  
 creating and using, 131–133  
 default, 131  
 and inheritance, 339–343  
`JLabel` class, 552  
`JTextField`, 559  
 by mutator methods, 189  
 with parameters, 132–133  
 this reference to overloaded, 137–138  
 by using decision-making, 189–193  
 container, 546

Container class, 546  
 containment, 331  
`contains()` method, 247  
 Content panel, 619  
 controller panel, 619  
 controls, 546  
 correcting syntax errors, 19–20  
 counted loop, 202  
 counter-controlled loop, 206, 214  
 counting, 210  
`countingDown()` method, 494  
 crash, 395  
`CREATE`, 454  
`CREATE_NEW`, 454  
`creationTime()` method, 448  
 CSS Analyzer panel, 620, 622, 623  
 curly braces, 99

## D

data  
 arithmetic using variables and constants, 68–72  
 boolean data type, 51–52  
 char data type, 53–57  
 components, 118  
 constants and variables, 39–47  
`JOptionPane` class, 64–67  
`Scanner` class, 57–63  
 type conversion, 72–75  
 validating, 208–210  
 data-entry capability, 473–476  
 data fields, 118, 450  
 data file, 442  
 data hiding, 126  
 data hierarchy, 450  
 data representation, 591–594  
 data type, 40, 92, 150  
 boolean, 51–52  
 byte, 47  
 char, 53–57, 238  
 class, 128–131  
 double, 52  
 float, 52  
 floating-point, 52–53  
 int, 47  
 integer, 47–48  
 long, 47  
 primitive. *See* primitive types  
 programmer-defined, 128  
 short, 47  
 date-displaying methods, 106  
 dead code, 96  
 debugging process, 3  
`DecimalFormat` class, 601–602  
 decimal numbering system, 591

decision-making  
 conditional operator, 186–187  
 constructors efficient by, 189–193  
**if...else** statement, 166–171  
**if** statement, 163–166  
 logic, planning, 161–163  
 making accurate range checks, 178–179  
 making efficient range checks, 180  
 nested **if** and **if...else** statement, 172–173  
**NOT** operator (**!**), 187  
**AND** (**&&**) operator, 174, 180–181  
 operator precedence, 187–189  
**OR** (**||**) operator, 175, 180–181  
 short-circuit evaluation, 175–176  
 using **switch** statement, 181–186  
 decision structure, 162  
 declarative language, 614  
 decrementing, of control variable, 206  
 default constructor, 131, 153  
 definite loop, 202, 206, 217  
**deleteIfExists()** method, 447  
**delete()** method, 447  
**DELETE\_ON\_CLOSE**, 454  
 deprecated, 546  
 depth of the recursion, 488  
 derived class. *See* subclass  
**deriveFont()** method, 554  
 descending order, 292  
 development environment, 8  
 dialog box, 27, 64  
   creating, 29  
 direct access file, 461  
 directory, 442  
**DirectoryNotEmptyException**, 447  
**display()** method, 151, 499, 515  
**displayNumberedList()** method, 532, 533  
 divide and assign operator (**/=**), 211  
 documentation, Java, 29, 30  
 documentation comments, 25  
 Document panel, 619  
 do-nothing loop, 216  
 double data type, 52, 150, 241  
 double-precision floating-point number, 52  
 double quote, 55  
 doubly-linked list, 524  
**do...while** loop, 202, 217–219, 229  
   definition, 218  
   structure of, 218  
 dual-alternative selection, 166  
 dummy values, 310  
 dynamically resizable collection, 511  
 dynamic method binding, 359–361

**E**

**-ea** option, 423  
 echoing the input, 59

Eclipse, 8  
 editable, 552  
 effectively final variable, 380  
 element, of array, 268  
**else** clause, 166  
**else...if** clause, 181  
 empty body, 204  
   unintentional creation loop with, 204–206  
 empty method, 86  
 empty statement, 164  
 empty strings, 245  
 encapsulation, 6–7  
**endsWith()** method, 247  
 enhanced for loop, 275  
   with objects, 279  
 enum constants, 312  
 enumerated data type, 312  
 enumerations, 147  
 enum methods, nonstatic and **static**, 312  
 equal sign, 125  
**equalsIgnoreCase()** method, 244  
**equals()** method, 244, 245, 366–367  
   overloading, 367–369  
   overriding, 369–370  
 equivalency operator (**==**), 163, 165, 237, 238  
 error, 397  
   classes of, 393  
   compile-time, 24  
   correcting syntax, 19–20  
   runtime, 24  
   semantic, 4  
   syntax. *See* syntax error  
   type of, 24  
   typographical, 42  
 Error class, 394  
 error-handling technique, 396, 397, 411  
 error message, 19  
   programming language, 18  
 error-prone methods, 410  
 error recovery, 396  
 escape sequences, 55  
 event, 563  
   event-controlled loop, 206  
   event-driven program, 563–569  
 event handler, 564  
 event listeners, Swing components, 569–571  
 exception, 393, 394, 434  
   checked, 413, 414  
   unchecked, 413  
**Exception** class, 394, 398, 419–421, 429  
 exception handling, 393, 434  
   advantages of, 410–412  
   assertions, 421–424  
   exception specification and throws clause, 412–415  
   finally block, 408–410  
   object-oriented, 396, 411  
   own **Exception** class creation, 419–421

techniques, 430  
 throwing and catching multiple, 404–407  
 thrown exception, 424–430  
 tracing exceptions through call stack, 415–418  
 trying code and catching, 397–403  
 virtual keyboard displaying, 430–432  
 exception specification, 412–415  
`exec()` method, 430  
 executing, 2  
 execution stack. *See* call stack  
 explicit conversion, 73–74  
 extended, 117  
`extends` keyword, 332

**F**

factorial computation, 491–494  
`factorial()` method, 492, 494  
 factory methods, 443  
 fault-tolerant, 396  
 field, 450  
 file accessibility, 446–447  
 file channel object, 461  
`FileChannel open(Path file, OpenOption... options)`, 461  
`FileChannel position(long newPosition)`, 461  
 file closing, 451  
 file-handling program, 409  
 file input and output  
     computer files, 441–443  
     file attributes determination, 448–450  
     file organization, streams, and buffers, 450–452  
     Java's IO classes, 452–456  
     Path and Files classes, 443–450  
     Path deletion, 447  
     random access files. *See* random access files  
     reading from file, 454–456  
     sequential data files, 457–461  
     writing to file, 454  
`FileInputStream`, 453  
 file opening, 451  
`FileOut` class, 455  
`FileOutputStream`, 453  
`Files` class, 443  
`Files.exists()` method, 446  
 file's name, changing, 589–590  
 file statistics displaying, 477  
`FileSystems` class, 443–444  
 final, 42  
 final fields, 118, 140, 141  
     static and nonstatic, 141  
 finally block, 408–410, 434  
 final methods, 350–351  
`First` class, 12–14  
 First Java application, 11, 23  
`FirstWithMissingSemicolon` class, 19

fixed method binding, 360  
 flag, 284  
`float` data types, 52  
 floating-point data types, 52–53  
     double data types, 52  
     `float` data types, 52  
 floating-point division, 68  
 floating-point numbers, 52–53  
     double-precision, 52  
     imprecision in, 70  
     single-precision, 52  
 floating-point value, 395  
 flowchart, 161, 162  
     of loop structure, 202  
`FlowLayout` class, 555  
 flow layout manager, 555  
 flushing, 451  
`flush()` method, 458  
`FocusListener`, 570, 571  
 folder, 442  
 font, 553  
`Font` class, 553, 554  
 foreach loop, 275  
`for` loop, 202, 214–216, 229, 284, 286  
     creation, 216  
     with early exit, 286  
     parentheses of, 214  
     using compound test for termination, 286  
     variations in, 215–216  
 formal parameter, 94  
 format specifier, 598  
 format string, 598  
 formatting output, 595–602  
 fractal, 500  
 fragile class, 347  
 frame, 546  
 frequently asked questions (FAQs), 29  
 fully qualified identifier, 88  
 functional interface, 380  
 functions, 5, 176  
 fundamental classes, 144  
`FXML`, 614, 620–621

**G**

garbage collector, 242  
 garbage value, 41  
 generic classes, 530–532  
 generic method, 532–537  
 generic programming, 530  
`getCoverage()` method, 376  
`getDayOfMonth()` method, 147  
`getItem()` method, 574  
`getMessage()` method, 399, 420  
`getMonthValue()` method, 147  
`getPath()` method, 444  
`getSelectedIndex()` method, 577

`getSeparator()` method, 444  
`getStateChange()` method, 574  
 getters, 119  
`getText()` method, 553  
`getTitle()` method, 547  
`getYear()` method, 147  
 goes out of scope, 100  
 graphical user interfaces (GUIs), 5  
   components, 545  
 Java applications, 27–29  
`JOptionPane` class, 64–67  
 greater-than operator, 243  
 Group, 624

**H**

hardware, 1  
 hardware accelerated, JavaFX, 613  
 has-a relationship, 151  
 hash code, 365  
`hashCode()` method, 367, 370  
 heavyweight components, 546  
 hexadecimal numbering system, 594  
 high-level programming language, 2  
 Hypertext Markup Language (HTML), 607

**I**

identifiers, 12–13, 40, 87, 124  
   unique, 122  
`if` clause, 166  
`if...else` statement, 166–168  
   multiple statements in, 168–171  
   nested, 172–173  
`if` statement, 163–166, 193  
   assignment operator instead of equivalency operator  
     and, 165  
   compare objects using relational operators, 165–166  
   multiple statements in, 168–171  
   nested, 172–173  
   semicolon misplacement in, 164  
 immutable, 242  
 implementation, 86  
 implementation hiding, 7, 91  
`implements` keyword, 564  
 implicit conversion, 73  
`import` statement, 28, 145, 146  
 inclusion polymorphism, 360  
 incrementing, of control variable, 206  
 indefinite loop, 202  
 indent style, 15–16  
 index. *See* subscript  
`indexOf()` method, 246, 495  
`IndexOutOfBoundsException`, 409  
 indirect recursion, 503  
 infinite loop, 202, 203

information hiding, 7, 118, 346–347  
 inheritance, 7–8, 329–331  
   abstract classes, creation and usage, 352–359  
   accessing superclass methods, 344–346  
   anonymous inner class, 379–381  
   calling constructors during, 339–343  
   dynamic method binding, 359–361  
   extending classes, 332–336  
   information hiding, 346–347  
   lambda expression, 380–381  
   methods cannot override, 348–352  
   object class and methods, 364–370  
   overriding superclass methods, 336–339  
   subclass objects arrays creation, 361–363  
   superclass constructors requiring arguments, 340–342  
   terminology, 331–332  
   this and super comparison, 345–346  
   using records, 377–379, 381  
 initialization, 41  
 initialization list, 272  
 inlining process, 351  
 inner block, 99  
 inner class, 151, 379–380  
 inner loop, 220, 221  
`InputDialog`, 64  
 input dialog box, 64–66  
`InputMismatchException`, 395  
`InputStream`, 452, 453, 459  
 insertion sort algorithm, 296–298  
`insert()` method, 255  
 inspector panel, 620  
 instance, 6  
 instance methods, 119  
   in class, 119–124  
`instanceof` keyword, 567  
 instance variable, 118  
 instant access file, 461  
 instantiation, 6  
 int data type, 47, 150, 241  
 integer, 47  
   data types, 47–50  
   literal constant, 48  
   values by types, 47  
   working with, 48–50  
`Integer` class `toString()` method, 250  
 integer constant, 52  
 integer division, 68  
 integer values, 70  
 interactive program, 461  
 interface  
   comparison with abstract class, 373  
   creation, to store related constants, 374–375  
   creation and usage, 371–377  
   functional, 380  
   to method, 91

interpolation, 623  
 interpreter, 2, 3  
`int getNameCount() method`, 444  
`int read(ByteBuffer buffer)`, 461  
`int write(ByteBuffer buffer)`, 461  
`invalidate()` method, 553  
`InventoryItem` objects, 278  
`invoke`, 83  
`IO` classes, of Java, 452–456  
`IOException`, 409, 430, 446  
 is-a relationship, 116  
`isDigit()` method, 239  
`isEven()` method, 422, 423  
`isLetter()` method, 239  
`isLetterOrDigit()` method, 239  
`isLowerCase()` method, 239  
`isResizable()` method, 548  
`isSelected()` method, 574, 575  
`isUpperCase()` method, 239  
`isWhitespace()` method, 239  
`ItemListener`, 570, 571  
`itemStateChanged()` method, 574  
 iteration, 201  
 iterative approach, 489  
 iterative programming, recursion and, 500–503  
`iterator()` method, 529  
 iterators, 528–529

**J**

jagged arrays, 304  
 Java, 8  
     braces and brackets used in, 31  
     division types, 68  
     documentation, 29, 30  
     environment, 9  
     illegal class names in, 14  
     primitive data types, 40  
     reserved keywords, 12  
     statement, anatomy of, 11  
     unconventional and nonrecommended class names  
         in, 13  
     valid class names in, 13  
 Java API, 29  
 Java applications  
     console output, 10–17  
     correcting logic errors, 24  
     creation, for GUI output, 27–29  
     finding help, 29–30  
     indent style, 15–16  
     `main()` method, 14–15  
     running, 23  
     statement, 10–12  
     types of, 9  
     using `java` command, 23  
`java.awt.Container` class, 546

`java.awt.event` package, 564, 567  
`java.awt` package, 546  
 Java class, 16–17  
     adding comments to, 25–27  
     compiling, 18–22  
     modifying, 23–24  
 Java Collections framework, 511  
 Java Development Kit (JDK), 29–30, 587  
 Javadoc  
     comment types, 608–609  
     defined, 607  
     documentation generation, 609–612  
     tags, 607, 608  
 Javadoc comments, 25, 26  
 Java Enterprise Edition (EE), 587  
 Java Foundation Classes (JFC), 546  
 JavaFX, 613–614  
     animations creation in, 623–624  
     applications, life cycle of, 614–616  
     applications creation, using Scene Builder,  
         618–620  
     CSS files, 621–623  
     deploying applications, 618  
     Modena FX8 CSS, 621  
     structure, 616–618  
     widgets, design elements in FXML, 620–621  
`javafx.animation.Animation` class, 623  
 Java interpreter, 9  
`java.lang` package, 144  
`java.lang.String`, 241  
 Java Micro Edition (ME), 587  
 Java program, compiling and executing, 590  
 Java programming language  
     debugging, 3  
     development process, 3  
     features of, 8–10  
     object-oriented. *See object-oriented programming*  
     programming terminology, 1–4  
 Java SE Development Kit, 587  
 Java Virtual Machine (JVM), 8, 9, 31  
`JButton` class, 560–562, 568–569  
`JCheckBox` class, 570, 572–574, 578–580  
`JComboBox` class, 575–580  
`JComponent`, 546  
`JDeveloper`, 8  
`JFrame` class, 547–551  
     adding `JButton` to, 560–562  
     adding `JTextFields` to, 559–560, 562  
     components to, 562–563  
     constructors, 547  
     customizing `JFrame` appearance,  
         549–550  
     extending, 557–558  
     layout managers, 555–556  
     methods, 547–548  
`JFrame` component, 546

JLabel class, 552–554  
 JOptionPane class, 64–67  
   confirm dialog boxes, 66–67  
   input dialog box, 64–66  
   Scanner and, 145  
 JOptionPane component, 546  
 JOptionPane.showInputDialog() method, 247, 253  
 JTextFields, 559–560, 565–569

**K**

keyboard buffer, 60  
 key field, 463  
 key frame animation, 623  
 KeyListener class, 569, 570  
 keywords, 2  
 K & R style, 16

**L**

label, 552  
 lambda expression, 380–381  
 lambda operator, 380  
 language translator, 3  
 lastModifiedTime() method, 448  
 late method binding. *See dynamic method binding*  
 layout manager, 555–556  
 length() method, 246, 275, 279  
 less-than operator, 243  
 lexicographical comparison, 244  
 library of classes, 143  
 Library panel, 619  
 lightweight components, 546, 613  
 line comments, 25, 26  
 linked list, 524  
 LinkedList class, 514, 524–527, 526, 528  
 list, defined, 513  
 listener, 563  
 List interface, 513–514  
 literal constant, 39  
   integer, 48  
 literal string, 11, 241  
 local classes, 151  
 LocalDate object, 146–150  
 local variable, 93  
 logic, 2  
 logical AND operator (`&&`), 174, 176  
 logical OR operator (`||`), 175, 176  
 logic errors, 3, 4, 421  
   correcting, 24  
 long data type, 47  
 long position(), 461  
 long size(), 461

look and feel (L & F), 549  
 loop, 201. *See also looping*  
   altering definite loop control variable, 206  
   comparing to zero, 224–226  
   control variable within loop body, 204  
   counted, 202  
   counter-controlled, 206, 214  
   definite, 202, 206, 217  
   do-nothing, 216  
   event-controlled, 206  
   indefinite, 202, 206–208  
   infinite, 202, 203  
   inner, 220, 221  
   nested, 220–223  
   outer, 220, 221  
   performance improvement, 223–226  
   posttest, 218  
   pretest, 218  
   short-circuit operator evaluation order, 224  
   structure, flowchart of, 202  
   types of, 202  
   unintentional creation, with empty body, 204–205  
   unnecessary operation avoiding, 223–224  
   to validate data entries, 209–210  
 loop body, 201, 215  
 loop control variable, 202–204, 206, 214, 216, 225, 249  
 loop fusion, 226, 227  
 looping  
   `do...while` loop, 217–219  
   `for` loop creation, 214–216  
   nested loops, 220–223  
   performance improvement, 223–226  
   shortcut arithmetic operators, 210–213  
   structure, 201–202  
   `while` loop creation, 202–210  
 lossless conversion, 49  
 lossy conversion, 49  
 low-level programming language, 2, 4  
 lvalue, 41

**M**

machine code, 2  
 machine language, 2  
 magic number, 42  
 main() method, 14–15, 28, 83, 84, 85, 101, 130, 237, 289, 290, 313, 394, 417, 476, 487, 494, 498, 536, 557, 572, 598  
 markup languages, 614  
 Math class, 144–145  
 Math.random() method, 604–605  
 matrix, 301  
 member-level Javadoc comments, 608, 609

memory stack. *See* call stack  
 menu bar, 619  
 method, 6–7. *See also specific entries*  
     adding parameters to, 91–95  
     adds and subtracts, 147  
     ambiguity, 107–108  
     attributes and, 6  
     blocks and scope, 99–104  
     body, 86  
     calling, 83, 87, 94, 95, 96  
     calls and placement, 83–86  
     Character class, 238–240  
     construction, 86–89  
     declaration, 86  
     declaration objects and, 124–128  
     for empty file creation, 472–473  
     imported, prewritten constants and,  
         143–150  
     instance fields and, 123–124  
     JCheckBox, 573  
      JComboBox class, 577  
     Math class, 144–145  
     modifiers, 121  
     name, 87–88  
     overloading, 104–107  
     overriding superclass, 336–339  
     passing two-dimensional array to, 302–303  
     receiving single parameter, creation, 91–94  
     requiring multiple parameters, creation, 94  
     return type for, 95  
     return values, creation, 95–97  
     Scanner class, 58  
     showConfirmDialog(), 66  
     showInputDialog(), 64–65  
     showMessageDialog(), 44  
     signature, 94  
     type, 95  
 method header, 15, 86, 92, 93  
     access specifiers, 86–87  
     parentheses, 88  
     return type, 87  
     static modifier, 87  
 Microsoft Disk Operating System (MS-DOS), 588  
 mission critical, 396  
 Modena FX8 CSS, 621  
 modules, 5  
 modulus operator, 68  
 MouseListener, 570  
 MouseMotionListener, 570  
 multidimensional array, 304–305  
 multiple catch blocks, 407–408  
 multiple exceptions, throwing and catching,  
     404–407  
 multiple inheritance, 371  
 multiple random access files, 471–479

multiplication operation, 69  
 multiply and assign operator (`*=`), 211  
 mutator methods, 119, 189

## N

named constants, 42–43, 47, 51  
 nanosecond, 149  
 nested, 99  
 nested classes, 151–152  
 nested if statement, 172–173, 181  
 nested loops, 220–223  
 NetBeans, 8  
 newByteChannel() method, 462  
 newInputStream() method, 455  
 newline, 55  
 newline() method, 458  
 new operator, 125  
 newOutputStream() method,  
     454, 456  
 nextChar() methods, 58  
 nextDouble() method, 400, 474  
 nextInt() method, 58, 59, 395, 400  
 nextLine() method, 58, 247, 253,  
     400, 401  
 nextLine() method, 59–61, 458, 474  
 next() method, 400  
 node, 525  
 nonabstract method, 353  
 non-object-oriented procedural program, 410  
 nonprinting characters, 55  
 nonprivate methods, 118  
 non-rectangular arrays. *See* jagged arrays  
 nonstatic enum methods, 312  
 nonstatic final field, 140, 141  
 nonstatic member classes, 151  
 nonstatic methods, 119, 120, 123, 135, 153  
 nonvolatile storage, 441  
 NoSuchElementException, 447  
 Not a Number (NaN), 143  
 NOT operator (`!`), 187  
 novice programmers, 209  
 now() method, 147  
 null strings, 245  
 numbering systems, 591–592  
 numeric constant, 39, 53  
 numeric values, 592–593

## O

Object class, 364  
     equals() method, 366–370  
     toString() method, 364–366, 377  
 object-oriented exception-handling techniques,  
     396, 411

object-oriented programming (OOP), 5–6, 91, 115  
 class, 6–7  
 component of, 118  
 encapsulation, 6–7  
 inheritance, 7–8  
 languages, 410  
 objects, 6–7  
 polymorphism, 7–8  
 principle of, 126  
 objects, 6–7  
 arrays of, 277–283  
 classes and, 115–117  
`LocalDate`, 146–150  
 and methods, declaration, 124–128  
 nonstatic method, 135  
 property of, 275  
 sorting arrays of, 295–296  
 octothorpe, 601  
 offending method, 415  
`of()` method, 147  
 one-dimensional array, 300, 301  
 Open option, 622  
 operand, 68  
 operating systems, 8, 30  
 operator, 51  
   AND (`&&`), 174, 176–177, 180–181  
   arithmetic. *See arithmetic operators*  
   assignment, 58  
   binary, 68  
   conditional, 186–187  
   equivalency (`==`), 237, 238  
   modulus, 68  
   NOT (`!`), 187  
   OR (`||`), 175, 180–181  
   precedence, 187–189  
   relational, 163, 238  
   remainder, 68  
   shortcut arithmetic, 210–213  
   ternary, 186  
 operator precedence, 69  
 optional classes, 144  
 OR (`||`) operator, 175–177, 180–181, 188  
 outer block, 99  
 outer loop, 220, 221  
 out of bounds, 269  
`OutputStream`, 452, 453  
 overhead, iterative solution, 489  
 overloading method, 104–107  
 override, 136  
`@Override` annotation, 337–338, 354  
`@Override` tag, 617  
 overriding superclass methods, 336–339

**P**

package, 28, 143  
 parallel arrays, 284–286

`parallelSort()` method, 307  
 parallel transition, 623  
 parameter, 91, 92, 93  
   actual, 94  
   constructors with, 132–133  
   formal, 94  
 parent class, 331  
 parentheses, 88, 91. *See also specific entries*  
   of for loop, 214  
`parseDouble()` method, 250, 460  
`parseInt()` method, 250, 253, 460, 466, 470  
 parsing, 22  
 Pascal casing, 13  
 passed by reference, 290  
 passed by value, 289  
 passing arguments, 11  
 path, 442  
 path, selection, and message bar, 619  
 Path class  
   converting relative to absolute, 445–446  
   creation of, 443–444  
   retrieving information about, 444–445  
 Path deletion, 447  
 path delimiter, 442  
`Path getFileName()` method, 444  
`Path getName(int)` method, 444  
 pattern String, 601  
 permanent storage device, 442  
 pixels, 548  
 pointers, 525  
 point size argument, 553  
 polymorphism, 7–8, 44, 336, 337  
   advantages of, 8  
 populating an array, 272  
 postfix decrement operator, 213  
 postfix increment operator, 211, 213–214  
 posttest loop, 218  
 precedence, 69  
 prefix decrement operator, 213  
 prefix increment operator, 211, 213–214  
 pretest loop, 218  
 primary key, 122  
 priming input, 209  
 priming read, 209  
 primitive type, 40, 92, 124, 125, 128, 239, 241, 242, 247  
`printf()` method, 597–599  
   argument index with, 600–601  
   decimal places to display with, 599  
   field size with, 599–600  
`println()` method, 11, 23, 28, 43, 83, 84, 91, 97, 241, 247, 248, 448, 452, 597, 599  
`print()` method, 11, 43, 247, 248, 452  
`printStackTrace()` method, 417  
 PrintStream classes, 11  
 PrintStream object, 452, 453  
 private access, 118  
 private data/public method, 118

procedural programming, 4–5  
 procedures, 5  
 program, 1–2. *See also specific entries*  
     comments, 25, 31  
     development process, 3  
     file, 442  
 programmer-defined data type, 128  
 programmers, 128  
 programming language, 6  
     error message, 18  
     high-level, 2  
     low-level, 2, 4  
 programming terminology, 1–4  
 program statements, 2  
 promotion, 73  
 prompt, 59  
 properties, 6  
 property, of object, 275  
 protected access, 347  
 pseudocode, 161, 409, 410  
 pseudorandom, 603  
 public, 14, 15, 117, 118  
 public access, 14  
 public classes, 117  
 pure polymorphism, 360

**R**

ragged arrays, 304  
 random access files, 451, 461–463  
     accessing randomly, 470–479  
     reading records, 468–479  
     sequential access, 468–480  
     writing records, 463–468  
 random access memory (RAM), 441  
 Random class, 605–606  
 random numbers  
     defined, 603  
     in Java, 604  
 range check, 178  
     making accurate, 178–179  
     making efficient, 180  
 range match, searching an array for, 286–288  
 readAttributes() method, 448  
 read(char[] buffer, int off, int len)  
     method, 456  
 Reader, 452, 453  
 ReadFile class, 455, 456  
 readLine() method, 455, 456  
 read() method, 454, 456  
 real-time applications, 461  
 record, 377–379, 381, 450  
 recursion, 487–489  
     and iterative programming, 500–503  
     phrase into words separation, 495–496  
     reverse characters in string, 496–497  
     solve mathematical problems, 489–495

string manipulation, 495–499  
 visual patterns creation, 499–500  
 recursive cases, 491  
 recursive method, 487  
 redeclare a variable, 101  
 reference to an object, 125  
 reference type, 40, 125  
 regionMatches() method, 249  
 register, 563  
 relational operator, 51, 163, 238  
     compare objects using, 165–166  
 relative path, 444  
 remainder and assign operator (`%=`), 211  
 remainder operator, 68  
 remove() method, 553  
 repaint() method, 553, 554  
 replace() method, 247  
 return statement, 95  
 return types, 87, 107  
 return values, 87, 95–99  
 robustness, 396  
 root directory, 442  
 root node (root), 617  
 rounding numbers, 595–596  
 round() method, 596  
 runtime error, 24  
 runtime exception, 393  
 rvalue, 41

**S**

scalar, 128  
 Scanner class, 57–63, 454  
     to accept keyboard input, 57–61  
     and JOptionPane classes, 145  
     statement, 58  
     using nextLine() method, 59–61  
 Scene Builder, 614, 618–620  
     editing CSS files in, 622–623  
 Scene class, 616, 617  
 scientific notation, 52  
 scope, 43, 99–104  
     of variables and constants, 43  
 scope level, 100  
 ScreenOut class, 453, 454  
 searching an array, 284, 286–288  
 SecurityException, 447  
 seed, random numbers, 603  
 seekable file channel, 461  
 semantic errors, 4  
 sentinel, 208  
 sequence structure, 162  
 sequential access file, 451  
 sequential and random file reading,  
     477–479  
 sequential transition, 623  
 setBounds() method, 548, 558

**setColor()**, 8  
**setCoverage() method**, 376  
**setDefaultCloseOperation() method**, 549, 557  
**setDefaultLookAndFeelDecorated()**  
    method, 549  
**setEditable() method**, 560, 577  
**setEnabled() method**, 567  
**setFont() method**, 553  
**setLength() method**, 254, 255  
**setPrice() method**, 376  
**setResizable() method**, 548  
**setSelected() method**, 574, 575  
**setSize() method**, 547, 557  
**setters**, 119  
**setText() method**, 553, 573, 617  
**setTitle() method**, 547, 557  
**setVisible() method**, 548, 557, 558  
**shadowing**, 136  
**shell code**, 15  
**short-circuit evaluation**, 175–176  
**short-circuit operator**, 224, 226  
**shortcut arithmetic operators**, 210–213  
**short data type**, 47  
**showConfirmDialog() method**, 66  
**showInputDialog() method**, 64, 65  
**showMessageDialog() method**, 11, 28, 44, 237, 248  
**show() method**, 618  
**side effect**, 176  
**signature**, 94  
**significant digits**, 52  
**single-alternative selection**, 163  
**single-dimensional array**, 300, 301  
**single-precision floating-point number**, 52  
**singly-linked list**, 524  
**size() method**, 448  
**skip(long n) method**, 456  
**software**, 1–2  
**software development kit (SDK)**, 30, 587  
**someNums array elements**, 294  
**sorting, arrays**  
    definition of, 292  
    using bubble sort algorithm, 293–295, 298–300  
    using insertion sort algorithm, 296–298  
**sort() method**, 307, 309, 519  
**source, of event**, 563  
**source code**, 8, 18  
**split() method**, 459, 461  
**square() method**, 91  
**stack**, 415  
**stack backtrace/traceback**, 396  
**StackPane class**, 616–618  
**stack trace history list**, 396  
**Stage class**, 616  
**standard arithmetic operators**, 68  
**standard input device**, 57  
**StandardOpenOption constants**, 454  
**standard output device**, 11  
**start() method**, 617  
**startsWith() method**, 247  
**state**, 6  
**statement**, Java applications, 10–12  
**static**, 15, 118, 119, 123, 134  
    final field, 139–143  
    and nonstatic methods, 120  
**static enum methods**, 312  
**static import feature**, 446  
**static member classes**, 151  
**static method**  
    arguments and return a value, 98–99  
    with empty parentheses, 89–90  
**static (fixed) method binding**, 360  
**static methods**, 139, 153, 348–350  
**static modifier**, 87  
**stop() method**, 8  
**stream**, 451  
**String**, 54, 122  
**StringBuffer class**, 237, 253–256  
**StringBuilder class**, 237, 253–257  
**String class**, 15, 237, 241, 243. *See also specific entries*  
    equalsIgnoreCase() method, 244  
    equals() method, 244  
    online, 246  
**string data problems**, understanding, 237–238  
**string literal**, 241  
**string manipulation**, 495–499  
**String methods**, 246–253, 258  
**String objects**  
    conversion to numbers, 249–250  
    declaring and comparing, 241–246  
    manipulating arrays of, 279–283  
**String toString() method**, 444  
**String variable**, 241, 243, 245  
**strongly typed language**, 40  
**structured walkthrough**, 4  
**stub**, 86  
**style argument**, 553  
**subclass**, 331, 333. *See also specific entries*  
    cannot override final methods, in superclass, 350–351  
    cannot override methods, in final superclass, 351–352  
    cannot override static methods, in superclass, 348–350  
    constructor, 341  
    objects arrays creation, 361–363  
**subroutines**, 5  
**subscript**, 269  
**substring() method**, 248  
**subtract and assign operator (=)**, 211  
**subtype polymorphism**, 337  
**sumNumbers() method**, 490, 491

sums computation, 490–491  
 Sun Microsystems, 8, 9  
 superclass, 331  
   constructors requiring arguments, 340–342  
   final methods in, 350–351  
   as method parameter type, 360–361  
   methods, accessing, 344–346  
   methods, overriding, 336–339  
   static method in, 348–350  
 super() method, 371, 557  
 Swing class, 546  
 Swing components, 545–546  
   associated listener-registering methods, 570  
   ButtonGroup class, 574–575  
   event-driven program, 563–569  
   event listeners, 569–571  
   JCheckBox class, 572–574, 578–580  
   JComboBox class, 575–580  
   JFrame class. *See* JFrame class  
   JLabel class, 552–554  
   layout managers, 555–556  
 switch expression, 183–184  
 switch statement, 181–186, 194  
 symbolic constant, 42  
 syntactic salt, 414  
 syntactic sugar, 414  
 syntax, 2  
 syntax error, 3, 4, 18, 22, 24, 94, 393, 421  
 System classes, 11  
 System.err, 452  
 System.getProperty("line.separator"), 458  
 System.getProperty() method, 458, 465  
 System.in object, 57  
 System.out, 57, 452, 454  
 System.out.printf() method, 597  
 System.out.println(), 12, 23, 56  
 system program, 2  
 system software, 2

**T**

table, 301  
 ternary operator, 186  
 TextArea widgets, 620  
 text blocks, 56  
 text editor, 18  
 text field, 559  
 TextFields, 620  
 text file, 442  
 this reference, 134–139  
   to overloaded constructors, 137–138  
 threads of execution, 242, 253  
 Throwable method, 417  
 throws clause, 412, 414  
 throw statement, 397, 403

time-consuming process, 221  
 timeline transitions, 623  
 toAbsolutePath() method, 445  
 TOCTTOU bug, 447  
 ToggleGroups, 620  
 token, 58  
 toLowerCase() method, 239, 246  
 top-level class, 151  
 toString() method, 247, 248, 364–366, 377, 444, 517, 520, 533, 534  
 toUpperCase() method, 239, 246  
 transition, 623  
 TRUNCATE\_EXISTING, 454  
 try block, 397–399, 403, 409, 410, 430  
   for foolproof programs, 400–401  
 try...catch blocks, 398, 400, 409  
   declaring and initializing variables in, 402  
   object-oriented technique, 411  
 turn(), 8  
 twoDeclarations() method, 101  
 two-dimensional arrays, 301–302, 305–306  
   jagged arrays, 304  
   length field with, 303–304  
   passing, to method, 302–303  
 type-ahead buffer, 60  
 type casting, 73  
 type conversion, 72–75  
   automatic, 73  
   explicit, 73–74  
 typeface argument, 553  
 type parameter, 530  
 type-safe, 314  
 type-wrapper classes, 65  
 typographical errors, 42

**U**

unary cast operator, 74  
 unary operator, 74  
 unchecked exceptions, 413  
 unconditional sequence, 162  
 Unicode, 13, 53, 54, 238, 244, 594  
 unifying type, 73  
 uninitialized variable, 41, 46  
 UninitializedVariableTest program, 402  
 unique identifier, 122  
 unnamed constant, 39, 42  
 unreachable statement, 96  
 upcast, 333  
 upper camel casing, 13  
 user interface (UI), 613

**V**

validate() method, 553, 554  
 validating data, 208–210

valueOf() method, 313  
*variable*, 5, 40. *See also specific entries*  
 arithmetic using, 68–72  
 and blocks, 100  
 Boolean, 51  
 class, 139  
 concatenating strings to, 43–44  
 instance, 118  
 int, 51  
 names, 40  
 one value at a time, 45  
 primitive type, 124  
 scope of, 43  
 String, 241, 243, 245  
 subscripts, with array, 273–277  
 types for, 47  
 uninitialized, 41  
 variable declaration, 40–41, 45  
 virtual class. *See abstract classes*  
 virtual keyboard, 430–432  
 virtual method calls, 351  
 void, 15  
 void close() method, 453  
 void flush() method, 453  
 void write(byte[] b, int off, int len)  
     method, 453  
 void write(byte[] b) method, 453  
 volatile storage, 441

**W**

while loop, 229, 275, 468  
 altering definite loop control variable, 206  
 creation, 202–204  
 indefinite, 206–208  
 pitfalls, 204–205  
 validating data, 208–210  
 writing definite, 202–204  
 whitespace, 15  
 widgets, 546  
     design elements in FXML, 620–621  
 wildcard symbol, 146  
 window, 546  
 Window class, 546  
 window decorations, 549  
 windowed applications, 9  
 WindowListener, 570  
 Windows configuring, JDK, 588–590  
 World Wide Web-based Internet applications, 8  
 wrapped bytes, 462  
 wrapper class, 250  
 WRITE, 454  
 write(char[] array, int off, int len)  
     method, 458  
 write(int c) method, 458  
 write() method, 452, 458, 464  
 Write once, run anywhere (WORA), 9  
 write(String s, int off, int len) method, 458